



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

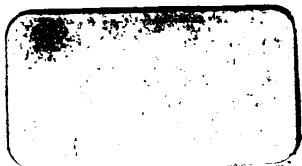
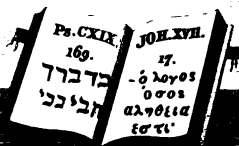


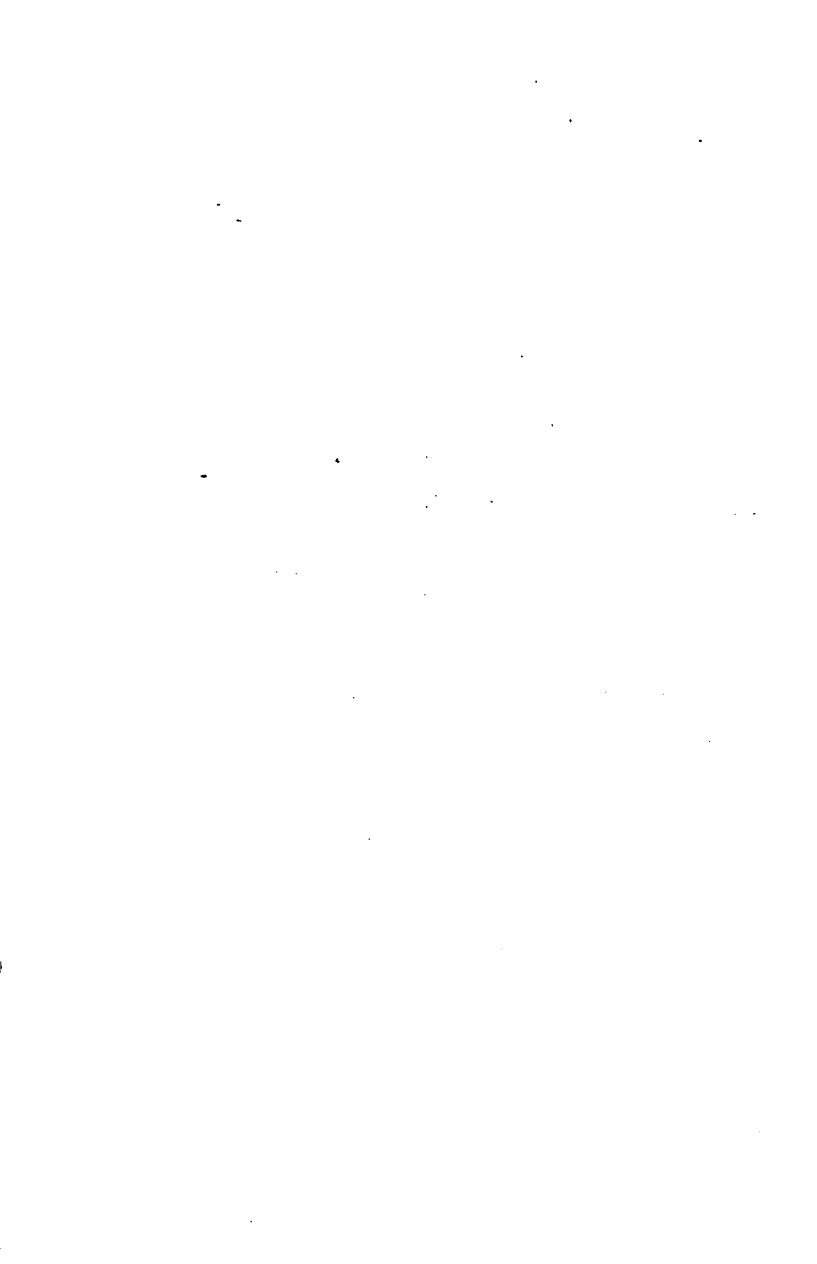
X 529

יהוה

INSTITVTIO THEOLOGICA

ANDOVER FUNDATA MDCCCXVII









A GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
LATIN LANGUAGE



A GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
LATIN LANGUAGE

FROM PLAUTUS TO SUETONIUS

BY

HENRY JOHN ROBY,  
M.A. late FELLOW OF ST JOHN'S COLL. CAMBRIDGE.

IN TWO PARTS

PART II. containing :—

BOOK IV. *SYNTAX*.

*Also PREPOSITIONS &c.*

NEW EDITION

London :  
MACMILLAN AND CO.  
1879

[*The Right of Translation is reserved.*]

Cambridge:

PRINTED BY C. J. CLAY, M.A.  
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.

29,978.

# Table of Contents.

## PREFACE.

### Observations on Book IV.

Remarks on method observed, p. xvii.

Of the analysis of the sentence, p. xxii.

Of the syntax of concord, p. xxiv.

Of the predicative dative, p. xxiv.

Alphabetical list of words so used, p. xxxvii.

Of the ablative, p. lvi.

Of the so-called genitive (locative) of value, p. lvii.

Of the gerund and gerundive, p. lxi.

i. Connexion of the various usages, p. lxiii.

A. Use of gerund as active and apparently as passive, p. lxiii.

B. Rise of (oblique) gerundive, p. lxvii.

C. Predicative use of nominative gerund, p. lxxi.

D. Use of gerundive with notion of 'obligation,' p. lxxiii.

E. Participial use of verbal stems in *-undo*, p. lxxviii.

Criticism of other theories, p. lxxxi.

ii. Origin of verbal stem in *-undo*, p. lxxxv.

iii. Analogies in other languages, especially English, p. lxxxvii.

History of English form in *-ing*, p. xciv.

Of the subjunctive mood generally, p. xcvi.

Especially in hypothetical and conditional sentences, p. xcix.

Of the expressions *dicat aliquis*, *dixerit aliquis*, p. ci.

Instances of *videro*, &c. p. cvi.

Advice to students of grammar, p. cvii.

Acknowledgment of obligations, p. cviii.

Miscellaneous remarks, p. cix.

*Addenda et Corrigenda*, p. cxi.

## BOOK IV. SYNTAX.

- Chap. I. Classification of words, p. 3.
- II. Parts of a simple sentence and use of Parts of speech,  
p. 5.  
i. Elements of a sentence, p. 5.  
ii. Of attributes, p. 7.  
iii. Of predicates, p. 8.  
iv. Of the use of oblique cases and adverbs, p. 9.  
v. Of coordination by conjunctions and otherwise,  
p. 11.  
vi. Of fragmentary or interjectional expressions, p. 11.
- III. Of the different kinds of sentences,  
Affirmative, negative, interrogative; simple, compound, p. 12.  
Coordinate sentences, p. 12.  
Subordinate sentences, p. 13.
- IV. Order of words and sentences.  
i. Order of words in a prose sentence, p. 16.  
ii. Position of subordinate sentences, p. 22.
- V. Use of NOUN INFLEXIONS, especially those of gender and number, p. 23.  
(A) General usage, p. 23.  
(B) Use of the Participles, p. 29.  
As predicate, p. 29; ordinary noun adjective, p. 30; noun substantive, p. 31.
- VI. Use of Cases, p. 32.
- VII. Use of Nominative Case, p. 33.  
(A) Person or thing spoken of.  
(B) Person (or thing) spoken to.

## VIII. Use of Accusative Case, p. 34.

## (A) Compass or measure, p. 34.

Of space, p. 34 ; of time, p. 36 ; extent of action, p. 36 ; cognate accusative, p. 40 ; part concerned, p. 40 ; description, p. 42 ; use with prepositions, p. 42.

## (B) Place towards which, p. 44.

An action as goal of motion (active supine), p. 46 ; Use with prepositions, p. 46.

## (C) Direct object, p. 48.

Double object, p. 50 ; object of passive verbs, p. 52 ; in exclamations, p. 52.

## IX. Use of Dative Case, p. 54.

## (A) Indirect object, p. 54.

Special usages, viz. ; of local relation, p. 58 ; agent, p. 60 ; person judging, p. 60 ; person interested (*dativus ethicus*), p. 62 ; person possessing, p. 62 ; in place of genitive, p. 62 ; work contemplated, p. 64.

## (B) Predicative, p. 64.

With *esse*, p. 65 ; with other verbs, p. 65.

## X. Use of Locative and Ablative Cases, p. 68.

## (A) Place where (Locative and Ablative), } p. 68.

## (B) Instrument (Ablative).

Place (Loc.), p. 68 ; (Abl.), p. 70 ;

Time (Loc.), p. 74 ; (Abl.), p. 76 ;

Amount (Loc.), p. 78.

Price, penalty (Abl.), p. 82.

Amount of difference, p. 84.

Part concerned, means, cause, p. 86.

Description, manner, circumstances, p. 96.

## (C) Place whence (Ablative), p. 108.

Of place, p. 108 ; of things, p. 110 ; origin, p. 110 ; standard of comparison, p. 112.



## XI. Use of Genitive Case, p. 116.

- (A) Dependent on nouns or as secondary predicate, p. 116.

Possessor, &c., p. 116; divided whole, p. 120;  
kind or contents, p. 124; description,  
p. 126; object, p. 128; thing in point of  
which, p. 130.

- (B) Dependent on verbs (and some adjectives).

Of accusing, &c., p. 132; of pitying, &c.,  
p. 134; of remembering, &c., p. 134; of  
filling or lacking, p. 136.

## XII. Use of Infinitive, p. 138.

- (A) Ordinary usages, p. 139.

As object, p. 139; oblique predicate, p. 142;  
secondary predicate, p. 143; subject, p.  
144; in exclamations, p. 145.

- (B) As primary predicate to a subject in nominative case, p. 146.

- (C) As genitive, ablative, or adverbial accusative,
- 
- p. 147.

## XIII. Tenses of Infinitive, when used,

- (A) as object, &c., p. 148.

- (B) as oblique predicate, p. 148.

- (C) in special usages, p. 150.

## XIV. Use of Verbal Nouns, especially the Gerund and Gerundive. General account, p. 152.

- (A) Verbal nouns in oblique cases; viz.

Accusative, p. 154; Dative, p. 156;

Ablative, i. Locative and Instrumental, p.  
158;

ii. expressing place whence, p. 161;  
Genitive, p. 163.

- 
- (B) Verbal nouns in nominative and (in oblique language) the accusative, p. 164.
- (C) Further uses of gerundive and passive participle, p. 166.
- XV. Use of VERB INFLEXIONS.  
Inflexions of voice, p. 171.  
Construction of passive verbs, p. 174.
- XVI. Use of Verbal Inflexions of Person and Number.  
i. Subject and predicate contained in verb, p. 177.  
ii. Subject expressed by a separate word, p. 180.  
iii. Omission of verbal predicate, p. 182.
- XVII. Of Indicative and Imperative moods and their tenses.  
(A) Tenses of Indicative, p. 185.  
i. Time to which the tenses relate, p. 186.  
ii. Completeness or incompleteness of the action, p. 187.  
Principal usages of  
Present tense p. 189; Future, p. 191; Imperfect, p. 192; Perfect, p. 194; Completed future, p. 196; Future in -so, p. 197; Pluperfect, p. 198.  
Future participle active with verb *sum*, p. 200.  
(B) Tenses of Imperative, p. 201.
- XVIII. Of the Subjunctive mood and its tenses.  
i. Of the mood, p. 202.  
ii. Of the tenses, p. 205.
- XIX. Typical examples of Subjunctive mood and its tenses.  
(A) Hypothetical, p. 208; (B) Conditional, p. 209;  
(C) Optative, Jussive, Concessive, p. 212;

- (D) Final, p. 213; (E) Consecutive, p. 214;
- (F) Expressing attendant circumstances, p. 215;
- (G) Expressing reported definitions, reasons, conditions, questions, p. 216;
- (H) Because dependent on subjunctive or infinitive, p. 217.

## XX. Use of Moods in Hypothetical and Conditional clauses.

- (A) Hypothetical subjunctive, p. 218.
  - i. With condition expressed in separate clause, p. 220.
  - ii. With condition not formally expressed, p. 224.

### *Contrasted Indicative*, p. 219.

- 1. *With conditions expressed in separate sentences*, p. 221.
- 2. *Unconditional statement of power, duty, &c.*, p. 225.
- 3. *Various uses of indicative*, p. 227.

## (B) Conditional subjunctive, p. 234.

- 1. With apodosis in subjunctive, p. 236.
- 2. With apodosis in infinitive, future, participle or gerund, p. 240.
- 3. With suppression or contraction of the proper hypothetical apodosis, p. 244.

### *Contrasted Indicative (and Imperative, § 537)*, p. 235.

- In conditional clause*, 1. *with apodosis in indicative*, p. 237.
- 2. *With apodosis in imperative*, p. 243.
- 3. *With apparent apodosis in subjunctive*, p. 245.

### *Indicative in sentences of comparison*, p. 249.

## XXI. Use of Subjunctive mood to express desire.

## (C) Optative and jussive subjunctive.

1. Expressing wish, p. 254.
2. Expressing simple command, p. 256.
3. In quasi-dependence on another verb,  
p. 260.
4. In interrogative sentences, p. 262.
5. In concessions, p. 266.

*Contrasted Indicative and Imperative*, p. 253.

1. *Various uses of Indic.*, e.g. *videro*, p. 255.
2. *Use of Imperative mood*, p. 257.
3. *Indicative in quasi-dependence*, *faxo scies*,  
&c., p. 261.
4. *Indicative in noticeable questions*, p. 263.
5. *Indicative and Imperative in concessions*,  
p. 267.

## (D) Final Subjunctive, p. 270.

1. With *qui* (adj.), p. 272.
2. With *ut*, *quo*; *ut ne*, *ne*; *quominus*, *quin*,  
p. 274.
3. With *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, p. 284;  
*prius* (ante) *quam*, *potiusquam*, p. 288.

*Contrasted Indicative*, p. 271.*With qui in simple statements*, p. 273.*Comparative sentences*, viz. *tantus...quantus*,  
*tam...quam*, *sic...ut*, p. 275.*With eo...quod*, *eo...quo*, p. 277; *mirum*  
*quantum*, *nimis quam*, &c., p. 279.*With sat in' ut*, *vide ut*, p. 281.*With ne...quidem*, *non modo...sed etiam*,  
p. 283.*With dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, *quamdiu*, p. 285.*With quam after prius*, *ante*, *citius*, &c.,  
p. 289.

## XXII. Use of Subjunctive mood to express causation.

## (E) Consecutive Subjunctive, p. 292.

1. With *qui* (adj.), *quin* (= *qui non*), *cum*, p. 294.
2. With *ut*, *ut qui* (adv.), *ut non*, *quin*, p. 300.

*Contrasted Indicative*, p. 293.

*With qui* (adj.) *in simple definitions*, p. 295.

*With qui quidem*, *qui modo*, p. 299; *quis-quis*, *quamquam*, &c. p. 301.

*With quod*, 'that,' p. 303; *tantum quod*, p. 303.

*With ut*, 'as,' p. 305.

## (F) Subjunctive of attendant circumstances, p. 308.

1. With adjectives *qui*, *ut qui*, *utpote qui*, *quippe qui*; also *ut ubi*, p. 310.
2. Of cases frequently occurring; with *quicumque*, *cum*, 'whenever,' *ubi*, &c., p. 312.
3. With *cum* (a) 'when,' p. 314; (b) 'whereas,' p. 316; (c), (d) 'although,' p. 316.

*Contrasted Indicative, especially with temporal conjunctions*, p. 309.

1. *With adjectives qui*, *quippe qui*, p. 311; *qui*, 'such,' p. 311.
2. *Of cases frequently occurring; with quicumque*, *cum*, 'whenever,' &c., p. 313.
3. *With other conjunctions of time*, e.g. *ut*, *ubi*, *posteaquam*, &c., p. 315.
4. *With cum* (a) 'when,' p. 315; (b) 'to the time that,' p. 317; (c) 'because,' p. 319; (d) 'in that,' p. 319; 'although,' p. 321; (e) 'and then,' p. 321; (f) 'whilst,' 'both,' p. 321.

## XXIII. Use of Subjunctive to express alien or contingent assertions.

## (G) Subjunctive of reported statements, p. 322.

1. Reported definition with *qui* (adj.), p. 324.
2. Reported or assumed reason with *quod*, *quia*, &c., p. 324.
3. Reported condition with *si*, *ni*, p. 328.
4. Other reported clauses, e. g. of time, p. 332.
5. Reported question, p. 332; *forſitan*, *quin*, p. 334.

*Contrasted Indicative*, p. 323.

1. *With qui* (adj.) *of facts*, p. 325.
2. *With causal conjunctions quod, quia, &c.*, p. 325.
3. *Vide si, &c., mirum ni, nimirum*, p. 331.
4. *In direct questions, especially in connexion with expletives, as dic mihi, ſcio, vident, &c.*, p. 333.
5. *ſcio quod quaeris; forſitan*, p. 335; *nescio quis, &c.*, p. 337.

## (H) Subjunctive because dependent

1. on infinitive, p. 338.
2. on subjunctive, p. 340.

*Contrasted Indicative.**Indicative, although dependent*

1. *on infinitive*, p. 339.
2. *on subjunctive*, p. 341.

## XXIV. Of Reported Speech.

Use of moods, tenses, persons, p. 342.

Tabular statement of same, p. 344.

Examples, p. 345.

## SUPPLEMENT TO SYNTAX.

## I. Prepositions and quasi-prepositional adverbs.

Summary, p. 351.

<b>Abs</b> , <b>ab</b> , <b>a</b> , <b>af</b> , p. 353.	<b>Palam</b> , p. 415.
<b>Absque</b> , p. 357.	<b>Penes</b> , p. 416.
<b>Ad</b> , p. 357.	<b>Per</b> , p. 416.
<b>Adversum</b> , <b>Adversus</b> ; <b>exadversum</b> , <b>exadversus</b> , p. 363.	<b>Pone</b> , p. 420.
<b>Amb-</b> , <b>am-</b> , <b>an-</b> , p. 364.	<b>Por-</b> , p. 420.
<b>An-</b> ( <i>ἀνά</i> ), p. 365.	<b>Post</b> , <b>pos</b> , <b>postid</b> , <b>poste</b> , p. 420.
<b>Ante</b> ( <i>αντί</i> ), p. 365.	<b>Præ</b> , p. 422.
<b>Apud</b> , p. 367.	<b>Præter</b> , p. 425.
<b>Circum</b> , <b>circa</b> , <b>circiter</b> , p. 368.	<b>Pro</b> , p. 427.
<b>Cis</b> , <b>citra</b> , <b>citro</b> , p. 371.	<b>Procul</b> , p. 430.
<b>Clam</b> , <b>clanculum</b> , p. 373.	<b>Prope</b> , p. 432.
<b>Com</b> , <b>cum</b> , p. 373.	<b>Propter</b> , p. 433.
<b>Contra</b> , p. 377.	<b>Red-</b> , <b>re</b> , p. 434.
<b>Coram</b> , p. 380.	<b>Retro</b> , p. 437.
<b>De</b> , p. 380.	<b>Sed</b> , <b>se</b> , p. 437.
<b>Dis-</b> , <b>di-</b> , p. 386.	<b>Secundum</b> , p. 439.
<b>Erga</b> , p. 387.	<b>-Secus</b> , p. 439.
<b>Ergo</b> , p. 388.	<b>Simul</b> , <b>simitu</b> , p. 439.
<b>Ex</b> , <b>e</b> , p. 389.	<b>Sub</b> , <b>subter</b> , p. 440.
<b>Extra</b> , <b>extrad</b> , p. 395.	<b>Super</b> , <b>insuper</b> , <b>desuper</b> , p. 445.
<b>In</b> , <b>endo</b> , <b>indu</b> , p. 397.	<b>Supra</b> , <b>supera</b> , p. 447.
<b>Infra</b> , p. 405.	<b>Tenus</b> , p. 449, <b>protenus</b> , <b>protinam</b> , p. 450.
<b>Inter</b> , p. 406.	<b>Trans</b> , p. 450.
<b>Intra</b> , <b>intro</b> , p. 409.	<b>Vorsus</b> , <b>vorsum</b> ( <b>versus</b> , <b>ver-</b> <b>sum</b> ), p. 451.
<b>Intus</b> , p. 410.	<b>Uls</b> , <b>ultra</b> , <b>ultro</b> , p. 453.
<b>Juxta</b> , p. 411.	<b>Usque</b> , p. 455.
<b>Ob</b> , <b>obs</b> , p. 412.	

## II. Conjunctions.

- i. Copulative, p. 457.
- ii. Adversative, p. 461.
- iii. Disjunctive, p. 464.

III. Negative Particles, p. 466.

IV. Interrogative Particles, p. 473.

i. In simple questions, p. 474.

ii. In alternative questions, p. 475.

V. Pronouns.

*Hic, iste, ille, is*, p. 476.

*Se, suus, ipse*, p. 478.

*Quis, quispiam, aliquis, quidam, alteruter, nonnemo, &c.*, p. 482.

*Quisquam, ullus, uter, quivis, quilibet, utervis*, p. 483.

*Quisque, uterque, omnes, ambo, singuli, alterni*, p. 485.

*Quisquis, quicunque, utercunque, &c.*, p. 487.

*Idem, alius, alter, ceteri*, p. 489.

*Quis ? quisnam ? ecquis ?* p. 491.

Miscellaneous Remarks on pronouns, p. 491.

INDEX, p. 495.





## Preface to Book IV.

### General Remarks on Method Observed.

IN writing this Book I have had three aims specially in view, which taken together have led to my treating the matter somewhat differently from most other recent writers on the subject.

1. I have endeavoured to set forth the usages both of the Latin of Plautus and of the post-Augustan writers, as well as the usage of Cicero and of the Augustan age. Few things can be more important in the treatment of language than an historical method: what appears hopelessly intricate and irrational, when judged from a scientific point of view which is not that of the historical development, becomes intelligible and almost simple, when we look along the line of growth. No doubt there is much about Latin constructions, as well as about Latin forms, which will always be dark, because we come upon the language not in its youth, but in its maturity, when it was no longer a mere rustic dialect, but a literary language; and, even so, we have at first but the plays of Plautus, a few fragments of other writers, and a few brief inscriptions. Nor have the materials, which exist, been as yet sufficiently studied from this point of view. There is no book on syntax which can bear comparison with Neue's work on inflexions. Yet something of the kind is necessary before a shorter treatise, such as I have attempted, can speak with real precision. Every year however increases the number of contributions to the work. All that I have thought to be within my limits of space and leisure is, starting from Cicero, Cæsar and Livy as a standard, to introduce earlier and later usages, when they are different, and to vary the sources of my examples where possible, so as to remind the reader that the question concerns the language, not of one writer or

period only, but of the Roman people. Especially I have aimed at doing this, when the nature of the usage in question was such as to suggest a doubt, whether it belonged to the early language. But other considerations rendered it difficult to carry the plan out systematically. For the collection of examples under any one head has a double purpose: it has to illustrate what I may call the internal extension of the principle in various grammatical connexions, as well as the external extension of the principle in the historical series of authors. The number of such combinations would soon become unmanageable, and a limit must be put. I fear none but an arbitrary limit is possible for a book like this.

2. Secondly, I have desired to set example above precept, and to appeal to the intuition of my readers rather than to their power of abstract grammatical conception. A writer on (written) language has herein a great advantage over expositors of many other branches of science, that he can incorporate in his work specimens of the natural objects. I have made full use of this advantage, and aimed at giving my book the form, not so much of a treatise, as of a scientific arrangement of specimens interwoven with a *catalogue raisonné*. For this puts grammar in the proper light, as an account of what men do say, not a theory of what they should say. Moreover few, except practised grammarians, can get a clear conception from grammatical exposition, except as a commentary on examples and as a clue and justification for the arrangement of them. On the selection of the examples I have naturally bestowed considerable pains. It is important that they should be various, exhibiting not only (as I have said above,) authors of more ages and styles than one, but also various types of circumstances in which the special case or mood in question occurs. A difference of tense often, and a difference of person sometimes, has influence over the mood; the presence or absence of an epithet, the meaning of the word itself, the character of the governing word, the position in the sentence, all have or may have a bearing on the particular case or construction. I have thought it well to give the examples with tolerable fulness, because we are hardly able to appreciate accurately the aspect of a particular expression, unless we see the whole of its surroundings. Further it is important that the exam-

ples should be typical. We have to note the deliberate speech, we have also to note the natural, ordinary, habitual speech. But the accidental clumsiness or eccentricity of an individual on this or that particular occasion is no subject of interest or instruction, unless it happen to illustrate general laws. In that case it may be a suitable text for a commentator; it will rarely be a fit specimen for the ordinary grammarian's museum. But many eccentric instances owe their peculiarities to the copyist: and I have therefore used none but the best critical texts so far as I knew them, and endeavoured to avoid examples which were not free from critical uncertainty, at least in the vital parts. It would be more easy to insure this, if convenient texts existed, containing at the foot of the page the most important of the deviations from the best MSS. Baiter and Kayser's Cicero and Madvig's Livy are sadly deficient in this respect. It is still more to be regretted that there is not even one convenient critical edition of Livy, of the oratorical books of Cicero, of half Plautus, of Ovid, of Suetonius, and of others. Cato, Varro and Columella *de re rustica* remain as they were edited eighty years ago. An Englishman has however little right to complain, for he can hardly hope for the defect to be supplied except by German scholars.

3. Thirdly, I have regarded syntax not as being a synthesis of rules for the formation of sentences, but as an analytical statement of the meaning and use of the inflexions and of the parts of speech. This is a province capable of definition, and large enough to justify separate treatment without the intrusion of foreign matter. Accordingly I have followed the inflexions as my guide. Uninflected words require simply to have their general functions described; the rest of their use depends on their individual meaning, and is matter for a dictionary. Inflected words require to be treated according to the general character of their inflexions. Pronouns for instance are either substantives or adjectives, and their inflexions are referable to the ordinary classes of gender, number and case. Their distinctions from one another, e.g. the distinction of *quisquam* from *aliquis*, is no part of syntax, but of lexicography. Adjectives require only the general significance of their inflexions to be set forth (§ 1060), and they then (in Latin) fall under the general laws which regulate the use of cases. Incidentally indeed many matters of phraseology in

which our own idiom differs from that of Rome, but which do not strictly belong to syntax, find place as illustrative of the use of the cases or moods, or as more or less directly affecting them. Thus *ut*, *cum*, *dum*, *si*, &c., receive tolerably full discussion, so far as they bear on tense or mood; the degrees of adjectives come into prominence in treating of the ablative and genitive cases; the pronouns in various parts; the prepositions as enforcing the meaning of the cases, and limiting, while supplementing, the independent use of the cases. Indeed the use of prepositions is so full of interest and grammatical bearing, that besides this incidental though frequent reference to them, I have treated them at some length in connexion with each other, in a supplement to the Syntax. Coordinating conjunctions, negative and interrogative particles and the distinctive use of various pronouns I have noticed briefly.

It will be seen that the Syntax here falls into three main divisions: the first of which is a general introduction describing the names and functions of the several parts of speech, the classification of sentences, the order of the words in a sentence (chapp. I—IV); the second contains the use of noun inflexions (chapp. V—XIV); the third contains the use of verb inflexions (chapp. XV—XXIV). The infinitive and its complement, the gerund and gerundive, are verbal nouns, and, as such, come naturally at the end of the noun inflexions. Participles are verbal adjectives, and the only notice which collectively they appear to require is part of the general doctrine of attribute and predicate. Their use in the ablative absolute cannot be separated from the treatment of the ablative. Some other uses give and receive most illustration in connexion with the gerundive (§§ 1402, 1406).

In the analysis both of cases and moods (and of prepositions) I have tried to avoid minute subdivisions, and to form the various applications of the cases, &c., at any rate primarily, into broad groups. If the ordinary English translation were chosen as the clue, the subdivision would frequently become so extreme as to bewilder a student. English and Latin, or indeed any two languages that may be taken, shew different modes of conceiving the relation of actions and circumstances, and a different development of the same conception, according as this or that, among many possible analo-

gies, has ruled the imagination. It thus becomes necessary to be constantly on one's guard against divorcing two usages of a case, because English does not use the same preposition, and against uniting two usages, because English does use the same. Much depends on the precise conception which belongs to the word itself, apart from consideration of its case or its tense or mood. This fact has led many grammarians to carry more of lexicography into grammar than it seems to me desirable to do. For such additions tend to obscure the main lines of the analysis, and lead to an insufficient and confused apprehension of the force of the case-suffix. The use of particular cases or particular prepositional constructions with particular verbs is a consequence of the notion, or circle of notions, which the Romans understood under that verb or adjective, and this notion or circle of notions it is for a dictionary to give. Whether such cases or expressions are usual or not with particular verbs or with particular classes of verbs, is the natural result of a harmony or want of harmony between the force of the case-suffix, and the sphere of the verb's meaning. The grammarian has done his part, when he has so explained the meaning of the case, as to render such a harmony or the want of it natural and intelligible. These case-suffixes are, as it were, the moulds into which the verbs or adjectives governing them must fit, and, as the case-suffixes are few, it is better to fix the attention on them, rather than distract it by enumerating the scores of different materials which can take the impress of the moulds. Hence, for instance, in my treatment of the dative, the enumeration of verbs and adjectives, whose meaning makes them associate with the dative, is omitted. For a grammar of the size of this cannot possibly give them fully; and to give them without properly distinguishing between ages, authors, styles and circumstances, is as likely to mislead as to instruct. A student had much better go to a dictionary at once for this information, as well as for much else. I have however endeavoured, by making a very full Index, to obviate any difficulties, which may naturally be experienced by those accustomed to a different conception of the subject and a different arrangement of the materials.

## Of the Analysis of the Simple Sentence.

The analysis of the simple sentence, although in some features the same as that put forth in my Elementary Grammar some years ago, has been further developed and corrected. I have thought it indefensible not to state at once that a predication may be made without a verb, when one has only to take up Livy and find the past participle used over and over again, without any form of the verb *sum* or of any other verb. Nor is it tolerable to see the finite verb spoken of primarily as predicate, or predicate and copula only, when every one knows, and is ready to whisper in a note, that it has subject and predicate combined in itself. Krüger, I find, in this as in many other matters, has clearly seen and stated the true view. It is probably the different formation of modern languages, which has prevented more general recognition of the fact. Again if in *fusi hostes*, *fusi* is a predicate, it seems to me merely the expression of an obvious truth, to give the same name of predicate to *fusi*, *fusus*, *fusis* in *fusi sunt hostes*, *fusi redeunt hostes*, *fusus vidi hostes*, *fusis hostibus redeunt*. It is most important to trace and mark an identity of relation under various forms and with words of various significance; and, if a familiar term is adequate to express it, so much the better. The same applies to the infinitive. *Cupio mortem* and *cupio mori* shew substantives in the same relation—that of an object, to the verb. In *dicar victor* and *dicar vincere*, these substantives are secondary predicates. But if we say *dicar esse* (or *mori*) *victor*, *cupio esse*, or *mori*, *victor*, *victor* is still (as well as *esse* and *mori*) a predicate—secondary, as I call it, tertiary as perhaps some may think it should strictly be called. The fact of the word *victor* being connected in sense with *esse* or *mori*, though these infinitives stand in different relations to *cupio* from what they do to *dicar*, makes no difference in the grammatical relation of *victor* to the subject of *dicar* or *cupio*. It is very remarkable how persistently a nominal predicate takes the case of its subject in spite of apparent impediments. In *cupio esse victor*, the *esse*, though the channel through which *victor* is brought into relation with the subject, would, if it had case inflexions, be put in the accusative. The absence of case inflexions in *esse* makes the use of the nominative *victor* to us less striking. But the Romans did not even require

this absence of inflexions to reconcile them to the maintenance of their rule, that a direct predicate should here, as elsewhere, be in the nominative. Look at the three last sentences in § 1069 and the passages from Liv. 41. 10 and 4. 44 in § 1073. The word *solus* in *gerendo solus censuram* is as closely connected with *gerendo* as is possible, but this neither hinders the predicate (*solus*) from being put in the nominative, nor the means (*gerendo*) from being put in the ablative. The same of *ipse*, *quisque*, and *adveniens*, in the other sentences. (See Madvig, *Em. Liv.* p. 311.) The Greeks have the same use; e.g. ὁπόθεν ποτὲ ταύτην τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἔλαβες τὸ μανικὸς καλεῖσθαι, οὐκ οἶδα ἔγωγε (Plat. *Symp.* 175 D); γίγνεται θεμιστοκλῆς παρὰ τῷ βασιλεῖ μέγας ἀπὸ τοῦ πείραν διδούς ξυνετὸς φαίνεσθαι (Thuc. 1. 138). They have even gone further; for *dixit non se sed cum imperatorem esse* is οὐκ ἔφη αὐτὸς, ἀλλ' ἐκείνον στρατηγεῖν.

The only deviation from this rule, that I have noticed, is that mentioned in § 1347 e.g. *descensuros pollicebantur*. I agree with Madvig (*Lat. Gr.* § 401), in regarding this use, though not rare, as an irregularity. It has arisen from the want of a proper future infinitive, which was therefore supplied by the use of the future participle in the case of the object, until this accusative case at length seemed part of this new infinitive, and not changeable with a change of position in the sentence. But the fuller and regular expression *descensuros se pollicebantur* is also the more common.

In the sentence so often quoted *civi Romano licet esse Gaditanum*, and the few others<sup>1</sup> like it (p. 145 note), *Gaditanum* is a predicate, not of *civi*, but of the unexpressed subject which lies in the abstract use of the infinitive: 'The being a Gaditan is a thing permitted to a Roman citizen.' But this again is not the way in which the Romans usually spoke: and the fact that *esse* is subject to *licet* did not prevent them from saying *Gaditano*, as they also in perfect consistency usually said *Nomen est mihi Marco*, although they could legitimately say, and often did say *nomen est mihi Marcus* (cf. §§ 1058, 1059). Similarly *tibi templum Statori Jovi voveo*, i.e. 'by the name of Jove the Stayer,' (infr. § 1751).

<sup>1</sup> I see Draeger (*Hist. Synt.* i. 400) quotes from Val. M. 6. 9. 14, *cui...consulem creari contigit*, but the best MS. has only the abbreviation *cons.* On some other passages, sometimes quoted, see Madvig *Opusc.* ii. 29.



## Of the Syntax of concord.

The three concords are in this book not honoured with the pre-eminence, which has long been assigned to them. In truth the first two are generally stated in a way, which disguises their true nature, and the third is apt to confuse a learner. In the grammatical construction of the relative adjective *qui*, &c., there is nothing to distinguish it from *is* or from any other demonstrative pronoun, or indeed really from any other adjective. The gender and number will be regulated by the meaning, the case will be regulated by the function the word performs in the sentence. The ordinary rule leads to awkward explanations, when the 'antecedent' is expressed in the same sentence as the relative, and when the 'antecedent' is really wanting; e.g. *solī sapientes, quod est proprium divitiarum, contenti sunt rebus suis* (C. Par. 6, § 52). The real fault of treatment here, as in the other concords, is in not putting prominently forward the significance of the inflexions. Grammarians too often start with an erroneous conception of the finite verb, as if it were not complete in itself, but required the separate expression of a subject, and again with an erroneous conception of the adjective as if it required the expression of a substantive. It is well indeed, if grammar be not distorted to please logic, and *videt* be resolved into *est videns*. But *rosa floret* is not first, and *floret* second with the ellipse of *rosa*, or *ea*, or something, to be accounted for, any more than *Jupiter pluit* is to be regarded as properly prior to *pluit*. Nor is *boni homines* first, and *boni* second, with an ellipse of *homines* to be accounted for. Just the contrary: *floret*, *pluit*, *boni* are not degenerate offspring of the fuller originals, but these fuller forms are simply explanations and specifications of the shorter and vaguer originals. The *i* in *boni* is even more indicative of males, than the *i* of *viri* is. For there are feminine substantives with an *i* in the nom. plural, e.g. *albi*, *ulmi*, &c., and there are no feminine adjectives with *i*; just as there are a few masculine substantives with *ae* in the nom. plural, but no adjectives. It will be seen that systematic regard to the significance of the inflexions leads to some novelties in the statement of the matter of Chapp. v. and xvi.; and, I think, simplifies the treatment

of some usages; e.g. *capita conjurationis caesi sunt* requires no special rule or justification. 'The heads of the conspiracy were slain males,' is the literal translation, and the discrepancy of genders is of no more importance than in *capita conjurationis viri sunt*. Such expressions as *triste lupus stabulis* are not deviations from a normal *tristis lupus stabulis* (as I fear some students are led to think), but have a different meaning and therefore a different form. There is no more necessity to account elaborately for *triste* than there would have been to account for *exitium*, if *exitium* had been used instead. *Tristis* is 'a grievous he or she,' *triste* is 'a grief.' And the rules of concord, were it not for old habits requiring a more distinct treatment of these usages, might almost be reduced to the simple statement, that if a writer wishes to say one thing, he must not select forms that convey another. There is no sin against grammar in a man's saying '*sum timida*' any more than in his saying '*sum timidus*,' but the propriety of his using the feminine depends on his wishing to charge himself with being a very woman for fear, and not merely to declare himself a fearful man. If he means this last, then his error is in forgetting the meaning of the inflexion, not in the disregard of a rule of positive obligation. The more a student accustoms himself to regard the use of a wrong inflexion, as saying what he does not mean, as putting, for instance, *man* for *woman*, a *thing* for a *person*, the clearer will be his insight into what may otherwise appear a tangle of obscure threads.

### Of the Predicative dative.

The second class of datives, commonly called datives 'of the purpose', deserve more special attention than grammarians have generally given to it. The class has well marked characteristics, although, as in other parts of grammatical classification, some ambiguous specimens will be found. Certain usages, not uncommonly referred to the same head, as what I have called predicative datives, appear to me to be of a different kind, and are therefore placed in §§ 1156 and 1163. I propose here to discuss more fully, than I could in the body of the work, the characteristics and connexions of this class of datives, and to subjoin a complete list of all

the instances that I have been able to collect. Some abridgment of this list might no doubt have been made without much probable loss, but on the whole the list tells its own tale better, if given in full. That it is some distance from being complete, I do not doubt; for, though I have hunted pretty vigorously, I have not *read* through the Latin authors for the purpose<sup>1</sup>. But the additions that I have been able to make lately, are so few and slight, as to suggest that the matter, though not exhausted, is unlikely to yield any instances of such a character, or so numerous, as seriously to affect the account I shall give of the usage. If a similar list were prepared of other usages, our grammars would gain greatly in precision, and possibly some considerable aid might be obtained for the criticism of the text of the authors.

The characteristics of the class, broadly stated, are these. This dative is (1) a semi-abstract substantive, (2) in the singular number, (3) used predicatively, (4) and most frequently with *est*. It is not qualified (5) by any adjective except the simplest adjectives of quantity, nor (6) by a genitive or prepositional phrase, though a personal dative, as indirect object, is a very frequent accompaniment. (7) The usage is not very frequent anywhere, except in the case of some few words; and (8) there is, as it appears to me, a noticeable capriciousness shewn in the use of some words in this case and the non-use of others. This statement requires some illustration and some modification.

1. The usage is nearly confined to semi-abstract substantives, i.e. names of actions, effects, feelings. The only words originally of a thoroughly concrete character are *cordi*, *cibo*, *frugi*, *melli*, *stomacho*, *veneno*, and of these only *cordi* occurs frequently, the rest being found once only, and only *cibo* is used in its original character, the rest are used metaphorically. Of other words, which occur tolerably often, *dono*, *impedimento*, *pignori*, *oneri*, *ornamento*, *remedio*, *spectaculo*, have the best claim to be regarded as concrete terms. But equally, or more, common are *auxilio*, *præsidio*, *subsidio*, *ludibrio*, *exitio*, *honori*, *vitio*, and the perhaps still more

<sup>1</sup> Especially I have paid little attention, here or elsewhere, to the post-Augustan epic poets; and I cannot speak at all confidently of the elder Pliny, or Vitruvius.

abstract *cure*, *glorie*, *odio*, *saluti*, *voluptati*, *usui*, *invidiæ*, *pudori*. Indeed there seems to have been on the one hand something which suggested abstract terms, and again an instinct which militated against an indiscriminate use of them. The stems in *-tu*, between 20 and 30 in number, are with the exception of *optentui*, *ostentui*, *potui*, *questui*, *sumptui* and *usui* rare, and found chiefly in Varro and Tacitus. (Apuleius does not come within my range.) Of other verbals, there are 14 with stems in *-tiōn*, but they are found rarely in more than one passage; stems in *-io* are 20 in number and oftener used; in *-ia* only 4 (from verbs); in *-ōr* 10; in *-mento* 16; in *-cūlo* 9. Of stems derived from adjectives there are 8 each in *-tāt*, and *-ia*. The rest (over 50) are various, but contain some of the words most in use, e.g. *cordi*, *cure*, *crimini*, *damno*, *dedecori*, *exemplo*, *dono*, *fraudi*, *frugi*, *bonori*, *laudi*, *malo*, *oneri*, *opera*, *pignori*, *prædæ*, *saluti*. But the etymological formation, though an objective, is not a certain criterion either way: an examination of the list will show that on the whole the words, used in this construction in more than isolated instances, are words of a somewhat ambiguous use, which denote sometimes a quality or an action, and sometimes an object which manifests that quality or action.

2. So far as I have noticed, this usage is absolutely confined to the singular number. We have *voluptati* and *amori*, but not *deliciis*; *prædæ*, but not *manubiis*; *maculæ* and *turpitudini*, but not *sordibus*; *odio*, but not *inimicitiiis*; *lucro*, *questui*, *emolumento*, *splendori*, &c.; but not *opibus*, or *divitiis*; *frugi*, not *frugibus*. This restriction seems to accord with the semi-abstract character of the usage.

3. This dative is used predicatively, and herein lies in my opinion the characteristic note of the usage. The word put in this dative is a name of the thing or person, of which it is predicated. 'To whom was it a benefit' (*bono*); 'That was not an hindrance' (*impedimento*); 'Food was not with them a lust or luxury;' 'You should be an honour to yourselves, a utility to your friends, a gain to the state;' 'His drink (*potui*) should be boiled water;' 'He leaves five cohorts, as a guard to the camp.' It is true there is not always such an English equivalent, as, being properly abstract, is

yet used in a concrete manner; but that is not a strong objection; there are enough such to show that the thing is possible, and indeed easy; and there is proof of the general truth in the fact, that many of these words are also found used predicatively in the nominative. Thus, besides the examples given in § 1161, may be mentioned such as *cura* (*nostra* C. Att. 10. 2); *insigne documentum* (L. 21. 19); *emolumentum* (C. Fin. 2. 18); *exitium* (*totius Asiae* C. Verr. Act. 1. 4); *indiciu* (L. 35. 44); *ludibrium* (Curt. 6. 10. 28); *monumentum* (C. Verr. 2. 2); *mora et impedimentum* (L. 23. 9); *pignus* (L. 43. 10); *praesidium* (Plin. 22. § 90); *pudor* (L. 40. 27); *remedium* (*manifestum*) Colum. 6. 6; *risus* (Ov. Fast. 1. 438); *rubor* (Val. M. 4. 4. 5); *una est salus* (L. 7. 35); *solacium* (Sen. Dial. 11. 1. fin.; ib. 5 fin.; but *solacio* ib. 12); *quæ verecundia est postulare vos* (L. 21. 19). Similarly *praesidium et decus meum* (Hor. Od. 1. 1. 2), *desiderium* (Catull. 2. 5), *ludibrium* and *pudor* (Lucan. 7. 380), *perniciēs* frequently, (e.g. Plaut. Pseud. 363; C. Verr. Act. 1. 1,) are used as names of persons. A remarkably close resemblance is seen in *maximum vero argumentum est naturam ipsam de immortalitate animorum tacitam judicare, quod omnibus curæ sunt, et maxumæ quidem, quæ post mortem futura sint* (C. T. D. 1. 14), compared with *magnoque esse argumento, homines scire pleraque ante quam nati sint, quod jam pueri ita celeriter res adripiant &c.* (C. Sen. 21). Further the use of *tibi*, not *tuo*, speaks strongly for the predicative character. *Tuæ gloriæ est* may be 'it contributes to your glory<sup>1</sup>, but *tibi gloriæ est* is more naturally 'it is a glory for you,' and when the latter form of expression is the regular one, and is never, or scarcely ever, exchanged for the former, the inference becomes inevitable, that the predicative conception is the true one. A good illustration may be seen in Cic. Dom. 33, where we have *illis injuria inimicorum probro non fuit* contrasted with *tuum scelus meum probrum esse*. The *meum* required *probrum*.

4. It is used most frequently with the *vero esse*. Of the whole number of datives about 117 are used with *esse* only; and there are

<sup>1</sup> Thus in C. Or. 2. 49 we have *saluti fuisse* and *auxilium ferre* in the same sentence. So also *non terrorem afferre, sed praesidio esse* (C. Mil. 26).

not more than 11 which I have found used with other verbs, but not used with *esse*. Of these latter only *vitio*, *dono*, and perhaps *muneri* are used often enough to make the non-occurrence of *esse* with them at all noticeable. The other verbs, which are used with this dative, are such as readily admit of an oblique predicate; e.g. *habere*, 'treat as' (*cure*, *questui*, *ludibrio*); *dare*, 'assign as' (*crimini*, *honori*, *hypothecæ*, *laudi*, &c.); *ducere*, 'consider as' (*damno*, *gloriæ*, &c.); *dicere*, 'declare to be' (*doti*); *ponere*, 'lay down as' (*exemplo*); *vertere*, 'make out to be' (*vitio*); *fieri*, *existere*, *accipere*, *interpretari*, &c. *Habere* and *dare* are the most frequent, being as it were active correlatives to the neuter *esse*. *Auxilio*, *præsidio*, *subsidio* are used with a great variety of verbs, e.g. *mittere*, *proficisci*, *venire*, *relinquere*, &c.

In apposition the use of this dative is quite exceptional. I have noticed only the following instances: *præsidio* once in Livy; *auxilio* twice in Petronius; the rest in Tacitus only; viz. *debonestamento*, *documento*, *subsidio*, *optentui* once, *ostentui* and *usui* twice each. On a special use of some words with stem in *-tu*, I will speak presently.

5. The limited number and character of epithets, which this dative admits of, is very remarkable. They are just such as give to a substantive the meaning which the suffixes of the comparative and superlative degrees, or which the relative particles *tam*, *quam*, give to an adjective, and, with the faintest exceptions, no more. They are *magnus*, *major*, *maximus*, *tantus*, and *quantus*. Besides these I have found only *bonæ frugis*, and (once) *bono usui*, both in Plautus only; *nimiæ voluptati* twice in Plautus; *minori curæ* in Cic., and (once) *minori gloriæ* in Justin; *nullo* (not *nulli*) with *adjumento* (once each) in Cornificius and Cicero, with *impedimento* once in Sallust, with *præsidio* once in Cicero, with *usui* once in Cæsar: *summo honori* occurs thrice, *summo præsidio* once in Cicero; *summæ sollicitudini* once in Plautus. All these are quantitative adjectives. So perhaps is *sem-piternæ (laudi)* which occurs once in Cicero; and *eidem cui* in C. Fam. 1. 9 § 22 if it refers to *cure*. One real exception occurs, in Vergil, viz. *justæ iræ*. It is an exception which proves the rule; for the whole expression is one of Vergil's experiments, and described as such by Macrobius. In Pliny (23 § 149), *Præsenti remedio* appears to be the dative, (*præsens remedium*, Colum. 6. 17. 24),

and he may have other exceptions<sup>1</sup>. Vitruvius has *majori et communi calamitati*. In Cæs. G. 7. 55 most editors read *ne cui esset usui*; Nipperdey has *quoi*: but all the best MSS., except one and that not the oldest, have *quo*, which I have no doubt is quite right. It is *ne quo*, 'lest for any purpose.' Compare Liv. 26. 9 (quoted in § 1225) and 27. 28 *si quo opera eorum opus esset*; also the use of *quo* interrogative<sup>2</sup>. (See too Madvig, *ad C. Fin.* 4. 12 § 30.)

Further it may be noticed, that it is only when used with *esse* that any epithet whatever is found.

6. This dative is rarely attended by any genitive or prepositional phrase. The habitual use of the personal dative renders a genitive of the possessor superfluous, and the objective genitive is found in but few cases. *Faliscorum auxilio venerunt* (L. 4. 17); *cujus rei...esse documento* (Quint. 7. 1. 2); *indicio dominatus* (C. Dom. 42); *indicio sui facti* (Lucr. 4. 1019); *causæ remotionis hoc nobis exemplo sit* (C. Inv. 2. 29); *ostentui scelerum* (Sall. J. 24); *ostentui clementiæ suæ* (Tac. A. 12. 14); *ejus rei testimonio sunt* (C. Rosc. C. 4.); probably also *monumento oppressæ spei* (Liv. 4. 16); possibly *lepus omnium prædæ nascens* (Plin. 8, § 219); and, if *deliquio* be a dative, Plaut. *Capt.* 626. Of prepositional phrases I have noted only *hæc res ad levandam annonam impedimento fuit* (L. 4. 13) and similar expressions in L. 8. 32; Cæs. G. 3. 46. Cælius (ap. C. Fam. 8. 11) has *tibi curæ fuisse de Sittiano negotio gaudeo* where *cur. fu.* is impersonal. So in C. Att. 7. 5. *In bellum usui esse* often occurs; and there are probably other instances which have not caught my eye.

7. This usage is not very frequent. For although the list I have made is a tolerably long one, yet one may turn over many pages of an author without finding a single instance. And in some authors instances appear to be distinctly rare, e.g. in Martial, and

<sup>1</sup> e.g. *feralis arbor et funebri indicio posita* (16 § 40); *funebri signo posita* (ib. § 139); *invidiæ probro* 18 § 13. The last word Urlichs takes as ablative and we have unquestionably such an abl. in *majore miraculo* (36 § 82), perhaps also *gratissimo pabulo* (18 § 120) is ablative of description.

<sup>2</sup> e.g. in such expressions as *nescis quo valeat nummus, quem præbeat usum?* (Hor. S. 1. 1. 73); *quo tamen hæc Ithaco?* (sc. *datis*) Ov. M. 13. 103. In a recent grammar I have seen this *quo* explained as equivalent to *cui usui*; in another as for *cui bono*. What is the authority for this supposed use of *cui* as a non-quantitative attribute to this dative?

the younger Pliny. There are between 170 and 180 such datives in my list; and of these little over one-third only have I found in five places or more. About forty words may be said to be pretty frequent; and half of these may be considered each as the standing expression for a particular idea. Thus *auxilio*, *præsidio*, *subsidio* in the military writers; *fraudi*, *pignori*, *hypothecæ* in the lawyers; *potui* in Celsus; *frugi* as an indeclinable adjective; *dono*, *cordi*, *curæ*, *impedimento*, *odio*, *saluti*, *usui* and some others in ordinary language. On the other hand upwards of fifty words are only found once, at least to my knowledge. No doubt in all such matters we ought to bear constantly in mind, what (to apply one of Darwin's phrases) I may call the imperfection of the philological record. There were a great many books written between Plautus and Tacitus, which have perished altogether; and many expressions may have been common enough in the talk of daily life, in the atrium and the forum, in the camp and on the farm, which have found but scanty recognition in a studied literature like the Roman. And the usage now in question, though capable of being applied to things of moment in a style elevated to the occasion, was yet mainly a usage of ordinary conversation.

8. There seems to be much capriciousness in the use and non-use of words in this manner. Thus *crimini* is tolerably frequent, *culpæ* rare; *amori* rare, *odio* very frequent, perhaps however because it was convenient to form a passive to *odi*, e.g. *odi odioque sum Romanis* (Liv. 35. 19). *Auspicio*, *beneficio*, *commodo*<sup>1</sup>, *incommodo*, *omini*, *prodigio*, *officio*, *compendio*, *effugio* are not used at all. Some words are only found, when the keynote is struck by another word, which is more frequently so used, e.g. *acerbitati* (*quibus odio sunt nostræ secures*, *nomen acerbitati*, *scriptura decumæ portorium mortis*, C. Flac. 8); *deformitati* (*si iudicibus ipsis aut gloriæ damnatio rei aut deformitati futura absolutio*, Quint. 6. 1. 12); and similarly *amori*, *frustratui*, *gratulationi*, *ignominia*, *libertati*, *maculæ*, *miseriæ*, *splendori*. The use of some words appears to have been hazarded on the analogy

<sup>1</sup> Diomedes (p. 295 Putsche) mentions *commodo tibi sum*, *commodo mihi est hæc res*; and both he and Charisius (p. 260 Putsche) speak of *consilio tibi sum* (which I have not found).



of other words of like or contrasted meaning. Thus Vergil uses *ira* on the analogy probably of *invidia*; and *venire excidio* on that of *venire auxilio*. Cicero probably would defend *stomacho* by *cordi*, *consolationi* by *solacio*, *damnationi* by *crimini*, which again may have suggested *absolutioni* to Tacitus. *Vituperationi* is a correlative to *laudi*, *offensioni* to *voluptati*. Sallust would not have said *urbs pænæ fuit* if he had not been going to couple it with *præda*.

In this connexion may be noticed the stems in *-tu*, which form in some respects a remarkable group, because of their semiverbal use in the accusative case, and the parallelism of their use in the accusative, dative and ablative cases to the gerund and gerundive (see Chap. XIV). Over thirty words of this formation are found in my list, and almost all are used passively; that is to say, the subject of the expression is the object of the action denoted. This is so with *amictui*, *cibatus*, *circumjectui*, *contemptui*, *derelictui*, *derisui*, *despectui*, *despicatus*, *divisui*, *esui*, *fructui*, *frustratus*, *indutus*, *irrisui*, *laniatus*, *neglectui*, *optatus*, *potui*, *satus*, *stratus*, *usui*. The only stems in *-tu* used actively are *extersui* (once), *ornatu* (once), *ostentui* (Sall. and Tac.). The rest, *qvæstui*, *receptui*, *sumptui*, *vestitui* (once), *victui* (once), can hardly be referred to either category. True this passive use is by no means confined to these stems: witness *amori*, *desiderio*, *dolori*, *fastidio*, *formidini*, *invidia*, *ludibrio*, *marori*, *miraculo*, *odio*, *rubori*, *spectaculo*, *timori*. The last word is the more remarkable because *terrori* (its opposite) is also found. (For *ludibrio* comp. Curt. 8. 6 § 23 *an tibi uni digni videmur esse ludibrio? Ille nec regem ludibrio nec se contemptu dignum esse respondit* 'deserving to be laughed at.') The possibility of such a double use is inherent in verbal substantives, as may be seen both in the use of the gerund, e.g. *vestimentorum sunt omnia lanæ &c. quæ induendi, præcingendi, amiciendi, insternendi, iniciendi, incubandive causa parata sunt* (Ulp. ap. Dig. 34. 2. 43), and in the traditional assignment of the two supines, one to the active and one to the passive voice. English corresponds very closely; e.g. *potum it*, 'he goes to drink'; *mibi potui dat*, 'he gives me to drink'; *potu jucundum*, 'pleasant to drink.' It is the predominance of the so-called passive use in these stems, that is here specially noticeable. None of them however occur very frequently, except *usui* and *potui*, and these have possibly been

the pattern for the others. It should be remembered, that *bibere* do or *ministro* (§ 1345) is an old phrase, which seems to belong to a time when *bibere* was realised as the dative of a verbal substantive (cf. § 612), though probably Cicero, when using it, regarded *bibere* as an object. Language, like political and social institutions, is continually being underpinned: the usage remains, but a new theory is made or assumed, consciously or unconsciously, to justify its existence.

Some of these words had a peculiar use, which may have been very common, and yet might have escaped us, had it not been for a few words in Varro (quoted in the list below, under *amictui*). *Amictui*, *circumjectui*, *indutui*, were used as indeclinable names of garments, in some such way as we speak of 'a wrap', 'a tie', and might speak of 'a throw-around', a 'put on'. Similarly, *stratui*, 'a spread' or 'spreads', is in fact what we call 'bedding' (cf. Ulp. ap Dig. 50. 16. 45); and *extersui* was probably 'a wipe', though we find it (like *frugi*) joined to *linteum* as an adjective, 'a wiping-towel'. *Receptui* is rarely so used as to bring it under the head of predicative dative. *Receptui signum dare* is parallel to *colloquio diem dicere*. In two passages of Livy (3. 22; 26. 44), where *receptui* occurs, most interpreters consider *canit* to be impersonal; but I believe *receptui* (originally *signum receptui*) is the subject, *si receptui cecinisset* being 'if the retreat should have sounded'. *Cibatus*, properly 'feeding', is practically identical with *cibus*, and so Varro uses *cibatui quod sit* as Sextus Ælius (or Scævola) spoke of *quæ esui et potui forent* (cf. § 1383); and Ulpian carried the analogy further in *verbo victus continentur, quæ esui, potui, cultuique corporis, quæque ad vivendum homini necessaria sunt* (ap Dig. 50. 16. 43). In *oleas esui optime condi scribit Cato* (Varr. R. R. 1. 60) I take *esui* with *oleas*, 'eating-olives', 'olives to eat', as *satui semen* in Cato (quoted in § 1137) is 'sowing seed'. *Potui* alone of these words is frequent, and exactly corresponds to our phrases 'to drink', 'as a drink'. (See below, pp. lxxxix, xci.) *Esui* they did not use so often, and we have no analogous expression 'as an eat'. The nearest phrase is 'this is good eating'. That words, properly meaning an action, should come to mean the object of the action, is not peculiar to this usage or to these stems: *venatio* 'hunting' came to mean 'game';

*sessio* 'a sitting' (as in English) means also 'a seat', as *exercitus* came to mean 'an army', and *quæstus* 'gain'; &c.

Some of these phrases, e.g. *signum receptui*, *linteum extersui*, *oleas esui*, *satus semen*, perhaps also *esui*, and *cultui corporis*, are scarcely assignable to the class of predicative datives, as I have defined it, and I have consequently put them under the head of 'Work contemplated' § 1156. These two heads are in other grammars apparently regarded as one under the general signification of 'purpose' (*Zweck*, *Ziel*, *Absicht*). I quite admit that there are some expressions, especially with stems in *-tu* (comp. 1156—1162, and 1382, 1383) which are ambiguous: e.g. in *eo natus sum ut Jugurthæ scelerum ostentui essem* (§ 1160) *ostentui* may be taken as either predicative or not, according as we consider it to mean 'a field on which to exhibit', or simply as equivalent to *ostentandis sceleribus* 'for exhibiting crimes'. But the dative gerundial expressions with *esse* have the meaning 'capable of', which is not Sallust's meaning here; and therefore, notwithstanding the dependent genitive, I am inclined to treat *ostentui* as predicative. *Potui dare* is similarly ambiguous, and though I have given it under the head of predicative dative, I think it perhaps strictly belongs to § 1156. On the other hand *domicilio locum deligere* is usually treated as an instance of the predicative dative, 'as a home', but the analogy of similar expressions is against it. And nearly as the two classes seem to touch one another, it is often in seeming only. *Comitia consulibus rogandis habita* has a very different dative from *comitia ludibrio* or *quæstui habita*, 'made fun of', 'made a gain of'. In a customs-law for Sicily (quoted by Alfenus ap. *Dig.* 50. 16. 203 *servos quos domum quis ducet suo usu, pro is portorium ne dato) ducet suo usu* means 'take with him for his own convenience': but *ducit sibi usui esse* would be 'thinks to be of use to him'. The words *nunquam fore in præoccupatis beneficio animis vero crimini locum* (L. 6. 20), 'there would not be room for the true charge to occupy' (where *crimini* may be referred to § 1152 or § 1156), would mean, if *crimini* be treated as predicative, 'the place could not be made into a charge'. When Sallust writes *penam illorum sibi oneri, impunitatem perdunde reipublicæ fore credebat* (*Cat.* 46), the two datives are not necessarily of the same type, because they are parallel; and we may translate, 'their

going unpunished would be capable of destroying the commonwealth'; but it is more likely that Sallust meant simply 'it would be the destruction of the state', though this use of the dative gerundive, as precisely equivalent to a predicative dative, is at least rare. Had it been in Tacitus we might almost have inferred a difference in syntax from the correspondence in the sentence; comp. *gratia oneri, ultio in questu habetur* (Hist. 4. 3).

But besides the dative of 'work contemplated' there are two other usages of the indirect object which verge upon the predicative dative. The first is that noticed in § 1163. *Ignavia in hoc illi tribuebatur ignavia* is generally classed with predicative datives, and possibly it may be so, on the analogy of *crimini* or *vitio datur*. But this would not suit all the passages in that section. The second usage is the ordinary indirect object, when dependent on an adjective. Compare

*Vides urbem sine legibus, sine judiciis, relictam direptioni et insidiis.*  
(C. Fam. 4. 1.)

*Vasa omnis generis usui magis quam ornamento in speciem facta.*  
(L. 41. 18.)

*Exitio nata theatra meo.* (Prop. 3. 15.)

*Exitio suo omniumque vivere.* (Suet. Cal. 11.)

with

*Quid si Hannibal velit castra invadere, praeda relictæ sine viribus, sine imperio, sine auspicio.* (L. 27. 44.)

*Intellegat nullam rem sibi majori usui aut ornamento quam meam commendationem esse potuisse.* (C. Fam. 13. 49.)

*Quum ita (i.e. cum dentibus) nata esset Valeria, exitio civitati, in quam delata esset, futuram vaticinati baruspices.*  
(Plin. 7. § 69.)

The resemblance is great: but in the first example *direptioni* is an action, not like *præda* a thing, 'booty': and the two differ as 'abandoned to plundering' differs from 'abandoned as plunder'. In the others *facta*, *nata* and *vivere* are full-blooded words, not mere expressions of predication like *esse*. It is possible that the origin of the predicative dative is to be sought in *esse* having had, or having been conceived to have had, originally a fuller meaning;

just as *decemviri legibus scribendis* is very possibly an abbreviated expression for *decemviri legibus scribendis creati*<sup>1</sup>. The expression in Cato R. R. 3 (if indeed the text is right), *Patremfamiliae villam rusticam bene edificatam habere expedit, cellam oleariam vinariam, dolia multa, uti lubeat caritatem expectare, et rei et virtuti et glorie erit*, may mean 'it will be to him a property, and a virtue, and a glory', but this is awkward for *rei*, and it seems better to translate 'it will advance his property, and his manliness, and his fame'<sup>1</sup>. Compare *si in rem tuam esse videatur, glorie aut fame, sinam* (Pl. Trin. 629); and *si quid rei esse videbitur* (Fronto p. 107, Naber) where *rei* means 'of importance' just as *usui* means 'of use'. So we have come to drop the preposition and predicate identity, when we say 'What use is it?' 'it is no use'.

Key (Lat. Gr. §§ 982, 983) seeks the origin of the predicative dative in book-keeping, and the pattern in such expressions as *postulare id gratiae apponi sibi*: and the dative he ultimately identifies with the locative. I dare say Gellius took *cordi* for a locative, when he wrote *hos versus habere cordi et memoriae operae pretium est* (2. 29; &c.). But we lose hold of all fast ground, when we refer any usage to the locative, which has not the characteristics of *-ae* in *-a* stems, and *-i* in *-o* stems. The Latin locative has just that characteristic and no other. Mere suitability of meaning is too indefinite to trust to against such a difficulty from the form. Nor can such instances as are put under 'work contemplated' (§ 1156) be regarded with much confidence as the path of historical transit from the indirect object to the predicative dative. I think they, or most of them, are not improbably of later origin, in fact, a cross between the two main heads. Doubtless such expressions as *decemviri legibus scribendis* are much older than any literature that we have, but so are also, I expect, such expressions as *cordi esse, frugis, fraudi esse, dono dare*, and others: *penae* (see s.v.) was perhaps so used in the Twelve Tables. The usage was fully developed at the time when Roman literature begins, for Plautus uses between forty and fifty words in this dative.

That the usage is sufficiently distinct to demand a coordinate,

<sup>1</sup> The same three words occur together in Cic. Or. 2. 55. *Cui rei, cui gloria, cui virtuti studere (te dicam)?*

not subordinate, rank to the indirect object, appears to me the ultimate result, to which we can at present attain. It may be historically a daughter, though so old as to look like a sister. Intermediate usages may be found, but such would almost inevitably exist, even if the two classes had quite distinct origin. And till we know the precise meaning and history of the suffix which forms the dative case, it is impossible to be confident whether the tree had one trunk or two.

The following is a list of all the words that I have found in writers (not later than Suetonius) used in this dative, and of the places where they occur.

**absolutioni** 'ground for acquittal'; **esse** Tac. *A.* 3. 13.  
**acerbitati** 'a bitterness'; **esse** Cic. *Verr.* 4. 30; *Flac.* 8.  
**adjumento** 'an aid'; **esse** Varr. *L. L.* 5. 90; Corn. 2. 11 (*nullo*);  
 ib. 18; ib. 30; 3. 5; ib. 16; 4. 23; ib. 27; Cic. *Quint.* 1;  
*Verr. Act.* 1. 3; ib. 5. 40 (*nullo*); *Mur.* 5 (*magno*); *Font.* 21;  
*Planc.* 9 (*quanto*); *Balb.* 7; *Fam.* 2. 6 (*tanto*); 13. 29; 30;  
 38; 39; 46; 71; 77 (all *magno*); ib. 24; 34 (both *maximo*);  
 14. 18; *Att.* 12. 31 (*magno*); Brut. *Ep. ad Cic.* 1. 4 (*maximo*);  
 Plin. *Ep.* 4. 20.

**admirationi** 'a subject of wonder'; **esse** Just. 12. 3.

**alimento** 'food'; **esse** Sen. *Ben.* 4. 14.

**amictui** 'a cloak'; **esse** Var. *L. L.* 5 § 131 (*amictui quæ sunt*);  
 Compare ib. § 132 (*amictui dictum, quod ambiectum est, id est, circumjectum: a quo etiam, quo vestitas se involvunt, circumjectui appellant; et quod amictui habet purpuram circum, vocant circumtextum. Antiquissimis amictui ricinium*); Cic. *T. D.* 5. 32.

**amiculo** 'a cloak'; **esse** Sall. ap. Macro. *Sat.* 3. 13 § 9.

**amori** 'a cause of love', 'loveable'; **esse** Cass. ap. C. *Fam.* 15. 19 (*quanto*).

**argumento** 'a proof'; **esse** Cic. *Verr.* 3. 65; 5. 19 bis; *Phil.* 2. 16 (*magno*); *Fam.* 10. 5; *Att.* 10. 12; *Fin.* 2. 10; *N. D.* 1. 1 (*magno*); *Sen.* 21; *Liv.* 4. 29; 5. 33; ib. 44; ib. 54; 26. 31 (*maximo*); 39. 10; ib. 51. Plin. 33 § 28; *eventire* Plin. 14 § 37 (perhaps *ablat.*).

**arrhaboni** 'as earnest' **dare** Plaut. *Most.* 649; **relinqui** Ter. *Haut.*

**auxilio** 'an assistance', 'support'; **esse** Plaut. *Amph.* 92; *Aul.* 707; *Ep. d.* 5. 2. 11; *Most.* 146; *Pæn.* 5. 3. 18; 5. 4. 107; Ter. *Haut.* 992; Corn. 1. 5; 3. 5; 4. 33; *ib.* 34 (*magno*); Cic. *Verr.* 4. 35; *ib.* 45; *Mil.* 34; *Pis.* 9; *Prov. Cons.* 8; Pseudo-Cic. *Or. prid. q. in exil.* 9; *ib.* 10; Cæs. *G.* 5. 44; *C. i.* 80; 3. 20; *ib.* 79; Pseudo-Cæs. *B. Afric.* 26; Sall. *C.* 2; *J.* 52; Nep. 1. 5; 25. 11; Verg. *A.* 11. 428; Hor. *S. i.* 4. 141; Ov. *M.* 12. 90; Liv. 2. 29; *ib.* 55 § 5; 3. 49; *ib.* 65; 4. 53; *ib.* 60; 5. 6; 9. 26 § 10; *ib.* 34 fin.; 21. 39; 28. 45 bis; 38. 52; *ib.* 57; Val. M. 5. 3; ext. 2; 6. 5. 4; Sen. *Ben.* 5. 9; Plin. 26 § 139; 32 § 43; Stat. *Theb.* 2. 199.

In apposition, Petron. 89. 45; **adcurrere**, Sall. *J.* 101; **addere**, Sall. *J.* 56; **adesse**, Plaut. *Amph.* 1131; **adtrahere**, Colum. 10. 24; **arcessere**, Cæs. *G.* 3. 11; **mittere**, Cæs. *G.* 1. 18; 4. 37; Nep. 20. 1; **proficiaci**, Nep. 13. 1; **reperire**, Plin. 25 § 20; **subire**, Verg. *A.* 2. 216; **summittere**, Cæs. *G.* 7. 81; **superesse**, Verg. *A.* 11. 420; **venire**, Cæs. *G.* 2. 29; 6. 8; *C.* 3. 51; Sall. *J.* 56; Verg. *A.* 7. 551; Liv. 4. 17; 9. 43; Nep. 8. 3; Stat. *Theb.* 9. 122; **vocare**, Tac. *A.* 12. 45.

**bono** 'an advantage', 'serviceable'; **esse** Corn. 2. 4 bis; 4. 41; Cic. *Rosc. Am.* 5 *ib.* 30; *Mil.* 12; *Pbil.* 2. 14; Liv. 7. 12; Phædr. 5. 4. 12; Sen. *Ben.* 4. 14 (*quanto*); *Ir.* 1. 12; *Ep.* 110 § 10; Pseudo-Ov. *Nux.* 96.

**calamitati** 'a calamity', 'disastrous'; **esse** Cic. *Brut.* 35; *Verr.* 4. 34; *Balb.* fin.; *Flac.* 42; Nep. 14. 6 (*majori*); 16. 3 (*quantæ*); Pseudo-Cic. *Or. prid. q. in exil.* 9; Vitruv. 2. 8 § 20 (*majori et communi*).

**captioni** 'a catch', 'snare'; **esse** Plaut. *Most.* 922; *Lex Rubr.* (*Corp. I. R. i. No. 205*) xx. 45.

**causæ** 'a cause'; **esse** Cic. *Inv.* 2. 6; *Brut.* 23; *Cæcin.* 7; *Flac.* 17; *Att.* 15. 3; *Fat.* 15; Cæs. *C.* 3. 72; Ov. *Am.* 2. 6. 31; Liv. 38. 52 bis.

Probably also in the expressions *quid est causæ, hoc causæ est &c.* where the genitive is possible; Plaut. *Most.* 202; *Rud.* 758; Cic. *Verr.* 3. 46; *Chu.* 21; *Rab. P.* 14; *Pbil.* 1. 5; *Fat.* 20; *Fam.* 2. 13; *Att.* 15. 7; Hor. *S. i.* 1. 20; Quint. 6. 2. 26; Compare Cic. *Verr.* 5. 41 (*hoc causæ dicit*).

[*censæ* probably genitive, Ter. *Haut.* 211 (*quid censæ siet*).]

*cibatus* 'food'; *esse* Varr. R. R. 3. 8. 3; *ponere* Varr. R. R. 3. 5.

4 (*cibatus offas positus*).

*cibo* 'food'; *esse* Lucr. 6. 771.

*circumjectus* 'a wrap'; Varr. L. L. 5. 132 (see above s. v. *amictus*).

*cladi* 'disastrous'; *esse* Sall. J. 85 § 43.

*commendationi* 'a recommendation'; *esse* Sen. Rhet. Contr. 3. præf. § 3 (*majori*).

*consolationi* 'a consolation'; *esse* Cic. Fam. 5. 17.

*contemptus* 'contemptible'; *esse* Cæs. G. 2. 30; Sen. Rhet. Contr. 9. 25 § 20; Suet. Claud. 15; *habere* Suet. Aug. 93.

*cordi* 'dear'; *esse* Plaut. Bac. 1078; Cist. 1. 1. 111; Cato ap. Macr. Sat. 3. 5 § 10; Ter. Andr. 238; Phorm. 800; Lucil. ap. Non. p. 88 bis (xxvi. 12; 21; ed. Müll.); Afran. ap. Prisc. 5. 44; Varr. R. R. 2. 10 § 3; Cic. Quint. 30; Verr. 1. 44; Or. 16; Læl. 4; Att. 5. 3; Catull. 81. 5; 64. 158; Lucr. 5. 1391; Cæs. G. 6. 19; Bibul. ap. Suet. Jul. 49; Verg. A. 9. 615 (without *esse*); 11. 369; Cir. 260; Hor. Od. 1. 17. 14; Qv. Med. form. 32; Liv. (usually with *diis*) 1. 39; 6. 9; ib. 20; 8. 7; 9. 1 bis; ib. 8; 10. 42; 22. 1; 23. 31; 26. 50; 28. 20; 30. 17; Sen. Rhet. Contr. 2. 9 § 36; Sen. Ben. 1. 15; Curt. 4. 3 § 23; 6. 9 § 36; 9. 2 § 6; ib. 3 § 5; 10. 1. § 26; Colum. 5. 5 § 9; 6. 27 § 1; Plin. 18 § 36; Sil. 5. 97; 7. 320; 15. 350; Stat. Silv. 1. 4. 4; 3. 3. 108; ib. 5. 14; 4. 4. 46; ib. 5. 53; Tbeb. 5. 473; 12. 113; Petron. § 121; Tac. H. 3. 53; *habere* only in Gell. 2. 29; 17. 19; 18. 7.

*corruptelæ* 'a corrupting influence'; *esse* Plaut. As. 867 Fleck.

*crimini* 'ground for charge'; *esse* Cic. Brut. 35; Rosc. A. 17 bis; Verr. 5. 8; Mur. 35; Liv. 2. 52; 40. 15; Vell. 2. 116.

*dare* Corn. 4. 36; Cic. Inv. 2. 24; Brut. 80; Rosc. Am. 17; Cæcil. 10 bis; ib. 11; Verr. 5. 29 bis; ib. 50; Dom. 35; Nep. 15. 8; Liv. 1. 5; 7. 4; ib. 20; 40. 15; Just. 8. 1; 43. 2; Tac. A. 1. 73; 6. 18; 13. 10.

*culpæ* 'ground for blame'; *esse* Colum. 5. 1 § 2; *adsignare* C. Verr. 5. 50; *dare* C. Rosc. Am. 16.

*cultui esse* See under *esui*, and p. xxxiii.

*curæ* 'a subject for care'; *esse* Plaut. Bac. 1076; Merc. 120 Ritschl; Men. 761 Ritschl; Ter. Hec. 193; Ad. 129 bis; 680; 894; Corn. 2. 30 (*quantæ*); Poet. ap. C. T. D. 4. 34; Lucr. 5.



982; Cic. *Inv.* 1. 53; *Verr.* 3. 60 (*quantæ*); 4. 33 (*magnæ*); *post red. ad Quir.* 9 (*majori*); *Man.* 7; *Pbil.* 2. 40; 3. 3; *ib.* 15 (*magnæ*); *Fin.* 3. 2 (*magnæ*); *T. D.* 1. 14 (*maximæ*); *Læl.* 12 (*minori*); *Fam.* 1. 9 § 22 (possibly with *eidem cui*); *ib.* § 24 (*tantæ*); 2. 6 (*tantæ quantæ*); *ib.* 11 (*magnæ*); 18 (*majori*); 3. 5 (*magnæ*); *ib.* 8 § 9; 9 *fin.*; 6. 2 (*minori*); *ib.* 3 (*maximæ*); 5 (*maximæ, magnæ*); 10 (*minori*); 7. 10 (*minori*); *ib.* 18 (*majori*); 9. 16 § 1 (*quantæ*); *ib.* 24 (*magnæ*); 10. 1 (*maximæ*); *ib.* 27 (*magnæ*); 11. 27 (*majori*); 12. 1 (*maximæ*); *ib.* 17; *ib.* 19; 13. 11; *ib.* 14; 68; 14. 19; 15. 2 *ter* (*magnæ, tantæ*); 15. 13; 16. 19; *Q. Fr.* 2. 4 § 1; *ib.* 12 (14) § 2 (*maximæ*); *Att.* 1. 1 (*summæ*); 4. 16 § 4; 5. 13; 6. 2 § 2 (*maximæ*); 7. 5 (*curæ esse de*); 11. 6; 12. 37 *bis* (*magnæ, majori*); *ib.* 49; 14. 18; *Anton. ap. C. Att.* 10. 8 A (*magnæ*); *Brut. Ep. ad Cic.* 1. 17 *fin.*; *D. Brut. ap. C. Fam.* 11. 4; *Cæl. ap. C. Fam.* 8. 2; 8. 8 § 10; *ib.* 11 § 4 (*curæ esse de*); *Cass. ap. C. Fam.* 12. 12; *Lentul. ap. C. Fam.* 12. 14; *Mat. ap. C. Att.* 9. 15; *Planc. ap. C. Fam.* 10. 24 § 2; *Trebon. ap. C. Fam.* 12. 16; *Cæs. G.* 1. 33; *ib.* 40; *Sall. J.* 14; 26; 75; *Or. Pbil.* 15; *Nep.* 25. 12; *Verg. G.* 3. 112 (*tantæ*); 4. 113; *ib.* 178; *Hor. S.* 1. 6. 34; *ib.* 8. 18; 2. 4. 8; *Ep.* 1. 3. 30 (*quantæ*); *Tibull.* 1. 5. 29; 2. 3. 43; *Ov. Ep.* 7. 73; 16 (17). 160; *A. A.* 1. 749; *Met.* 1. 250; 2. 683; *Trist.* 3. 14. 8; 5. 12. 41; *Fast.* 4. 4. 37; *Pont.* 2. 118; *Liv.* 2. 24; 4. 7; *ib.* 21; 10. 25 (*majori*); *ib.* 45; 25. 15; 26. 2; *ib.* 32; 30. 31; 34. 32; 35. 23; *ib.* 44; 39. 13; 42. 14; 44. 19; *ib.* 34; *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 1. 2 § 18; 2 *præf.* § 4; *Vell.* 2. 97; *Sen. Ir.* 2. 35; *Clem.* 1. 13; *N. Q.* 1. 1. 4; *Ep.* 88 § 23; *Curt.* 6. 7 § 21; 7. 5 § 41; *Colum.* 6. 30. 22; *ib.* 35; 12. 12. 3; *Petron.* 71; *Plin.* 2 § 117; 7 § 49; 36 § 157; *Stat. Tbeb.* 11. 428; *Quint.* 2. 4. 5; 7. 1. 4; 9. 3. 74; 10. 1. 131 (*magnæ*); 12. 1. 8; *Plin. Ep.* 1. 17; 7. 10; *ib.* 33 § 2; *Traj. ap. Plin. Ep.* 7. 10; 8. 14 § 10; *Tac. A.* 1. 73 (*est* not expressed); *H.* 1. 3; *habere Pl. Men.* 991; *Cæl. ap. C. Fam.* 8. 8 *fin.*; *Sall. C.* 21; *Nep.* 25. 20; *Ov. Am.* 1. 8. 32; *Corp. I. R.* i. p. 285 (*curai sibi babuit*); *Val. M.* 5. 1. 1 *fin.*; *Sen. Dial.* 2. 1; *Ben.* 1. 8; 2. 4; *Quint. Pref.* 16; *Suet. Aug.* 48; *Cand. ap. Dig.* 16. 3. 28. **damnationi** 'ground for condemnation'; *esse C. Verr.* 3. 40.

- damno** 'a loss', 'cause of loss'; **esse** Plaut. *Asin.* 571; *Bac.* 1103; *Cist.* 1. 1. 52; *Trin.* 585; Hor. *S. I.* 2. 52; Ov. *Am.* 1. 10. 35; *Ep.* 16 (17). 39; ib. 169; *Met.* 2. 540; 10. 339; *Trist.* 2. 338; ib. 492; *Pont.* 3. 1. 155; *Nux.* 49; Liv. 4. 13 fin.; 9. 18; 23. 27 (*quanto*); 26. 37; 27. 8; ib. 34 (*magno*); 38. 34 (*tanto*); 40. 17; Plin. 14. § 5; **ducere** Plaut. *Bac.* 1103.
- decori** 'an honour', 'a credit'; **esse** Plaut. *Asin.* 192 (*decōri*); Corn. 4. 15; Lucr. 2. 643 (*decōri*); Verg. *B.* 5. 32 (*decōri*); Prop. 5. 11. 29 (*decōri*); Ov. *Met.* 13. 849 (*decōri*); Sall. *J.* 19; ib. 73; ib. 85 § 40; Sen. *Clem.* 1. 3. **habere** Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cæs.* 1. 8.
- dedecori** 'a disgrace', 'cause of disgrace'; **esse** Plaut. *Asin.* 571; *Bac.* 1201; Ter. *Haut.* 334; Corn. 3. 7 bis; 4. 35; Cic. *Dom.* 33; *Q. Fr.* 1. 4; *Att.* 8. 11. § 1; *Off.* 1. 39; Pseudo-Cæs. *Bell. Alex.* 15 (*magno*); Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cæs.* 2. 9 (*maximo*); Hor. *S. I.* 2. 53; Ov. *Am.* 2. 15. 21; Liv. 4. 13; Rutil. *Lup.* 2. 9; Fronto p. 235 Naber; **neri** C. *Off.* 1. 39.
- deformati** 'a disgrace'; **esse** Quint. 6. 1. 12.
- dehonestamento** 'a dishonour'; in apposition. Tac. *A.* 12. 14.
- delectationi** 'a source of delight', 'delightful'; **esse** Cic. *Fam.* 4. 3; 6. 6 § 12 (*quantæ*); *Att.* 13. 23 (*majori*); Varr. *R. R.* 3. 3. § 1.
- ?deliquo** 'a ground for losing'; **esse** Plaut. *Capt.* 622. dat. or nom.?
- derelictui** 'as a castaway', **habere** Censor. *edict.* (?) ap. Gell. 4. 12. (In Cic. *Att.* 8. 1, we have *pro derelicto habere*.)
- deridiculo** 'an object of ridicule'; **esse** Pl. *Mil.* 92 ed. Ritschl; Tac. *A.* 3. 57.
- derisui** 'matter for scorn'; **esse** Phædr. 1. 11. 2; Tac. *Agr.* 39.
- desiderio** 'regretted'; **esse** Ter. *Haut.* 753 (*magno*); Sen. *Dial.* 11. 5.
- despectui** 'an object of contempt'; **esse** Tac. *H.* 4. 57; Suet. *Galb.* 17: [opponi, Corn. 4. 39, probably belongs to § 1163].
- despicatui** 'an object of contempt'; **habere** Plaut. *Men.* 693; Fronto p. 205 Naber; **duci** C. *Flac.* 27.
- detrimento** 'a source of loss'; **esse** Corn. 3. 7 bis; Cic. *Inv.* 2. 32 (*magno*); *Cecil.* 4; *Verr.* 3. 62; Cæs. *G.* 1. 44; Sall. *C.* 48; Sen. *Ben.* 4. 36 (*magno*).

- dignitatē** 'a source of dignity'; **esse** Cic. *Dom.* 33; *Phil.* 13 fin.; *Lael.* 19.; *Liv.* 23. 15.
- disciplinæ** 'a model'; **esse** Plaut. *Most.* 154.
- dividiæ** 'a worry'; **esse** Plaut. *Bac.* 770; *ib.* 1033; *Casin.* 2. 2. 11; *Merc.* 615; *Stich.* 19; *Truc.* 4. 4. 3; Turpil. ap. Non p. 96. Varro *L. L.* 7. 60 apparently found *dividiæ* in Nævius.
- divisul** 'matter for distribution'; **esse** *Liv.* 1. 54 fin.; 33. 46.
- documento** 'a proof', 'a warning'; **esse** Cæs. *G.* 7. 4; *Civ.* 3. 10; *Liv.* 3. 56; 4. 31; 5. 51; 6. 25; 7. 6; 24. 8 fin. (but doubtful text); 26. 5; 28. 41 § 15; *ib.* 42 § 1; § 17; 45. 44; Quint. 6. 3. 10; 7. 1. 2; 11. 3. 4; 12. 11. 23; in appos. Tac. *A.* 15. 27; **habere** Cic. *Agr.* 1 fin.
- dolori** 'a cause of grief'; **esse** Cic. *Har. Resp.* 18; *ib.* 20; *Fam.* 6. 10 (*magno*); 7. 2; 13. 5 (*magno*); Cæs. *G.* 5. 29 (*magno*); Pseudo-Cæs. *Bell. Alex.* 15 (*magno*); Catull. 96. 5 (*tanto*); Ov. *Am.* 3. 9. 57; *Met.* 1. 246; *Pont.* 1. 1. 61; *Liv.* 26. 37. Possibly also Sulpic. ap. Tib. 4. 10. 5 (but *doloris* Haupt).
- [**domicillio deligere** Cæs. *G.* 1. 30; 2. 29; *Liv.* 35. 37; belongs to § 1156; compare *castris locum capere* *Liv.* 9. 17 § 15; &c. *hunc urbi condendæ locum elegerunt* *Liv.* 5. 54.]
- dono** 'as a gift'; **accipere** Tac. *A.* 15. 27; **dari atque accipi** Sall. *J.* 85 § 38; *Or. Cott.* 5; **dare** Corp. *I. R.* i. No. 173, 177, 183 (but Mommsen, p. 33, takes *dono* as accus. Other old inscriptions (no. 166, 190, 191) have *donom*, *donum*. See p. 555); Plaut. *Amp.* 534; 538; 790; *Asin.* 194; *Cist.* 1. 2. 14; *Men.* 689; *Merc.* 400; *Pæn.* 1. 1. 41; 2. 21; *Stich.* 665; *Truc.* 4. 3. 28; Ter. *Eun.* (eight times); *Haut.* 1050; Sall. *J.* 5; *Or. Lep.* 17; *Cott.* 12; *Macr.* 27; Verg. *B.* 2. 37; *Liv.* 2. 13; *ib.* 14; 3. 57; 4. 51; 6. 41; 7. 37; 24. 21; 40. 17; 42. 61; 45. 44; Mela 3. 45; Sen. *Dial.* 6. 10; Curt. 4. 11 § 15; 8. 5 § 20; *ib.* 13 § 16; 10. 5 § 28; Plin. 2. § 170; 8 § 149; 35 § 86; Suet. *Aug.* 7; *Tib.* 11; Tac. *A.* 15. 55; *H.* 1. 78; Just. 3. 7. **advehere** Pl. *Merc.* 333; **ducere** 'lead', Ter. *Eun.* 229; **emere** Ter. *Eun.* 135; **figere** *Liv.* 4. 20; **habere** Pl. *Pseud.* 1074.
- doti** 'as dowry'; **esse**, Formula ap. Dig. 23. 3. 25; *ib.* 44 § 1; *ib.* 46 § 1; *ib.* 57; &c. **dicere** Ter. *Haut.* 942; Cic. *Flac.* 35; **dari** Curt. 4. 5 § 7. (In ordinary legal language *in dotem esse*, *dare*, &c.)

- amolumento** 'source of gain'; **esse** Cic. *Or.* 1. 8; *Rosc. Am.* 49; *Fam.* 7. 10; *Liv.* 23. 15; 24. 48.
- ?esui** 'to eat', 'as an eatable'; **esse** Sext. *Æl.* (?) ap. Gell. 4. 1 § 20 Varr. *R. R.* 1. 60; (*oleas esui condi* 'eating olives') Ulpian ap. *Dig.* 33. 9. 3 ter (*quæ esui potuique sunt*); 50. 16. 43 (*verbo victus continenter quæ esui potui cultuique corporis, quæque ad vivendum homini necessaria sunt*); ap. Macrobi. *Sat.* 3. 19 § 1; *dare* Cels. 4. 16 (9); *Plin.* 20 § 178.
- exemplo** 'an example'; **esse** Corn. 4. 12; Cic. *Inv.* 2. 29; *Brut.* 69; *Lael.* 21; Hor. *S. I.* 1. 33; Ov. *Ep.* 8. 19; *Liv.* 2. 46; 4. 57; 9. 45 § 18; 25. 31; Sen. *Dial.* 11. 5 § 4; Curt. 6. 4 § 24; Quint. 2. 5 § 16; Suet. *Gram.* 2; **assumere** Tac. *A.* 6. 8; **ponere** Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 2. 9 § 8.
- exitio** 'fatal', 'the ruin of'; **esse** Plaut. *Bac.* 947; 953; Lucr. 6. 1229; Cic. *Q. Fr.* 1. 4; Verg. *G.* 3. 511; *A.* 9. 315; Hor. *Od.* 1. 28. 18; *Liv.* 4. 9; Val. M. 7. 2. ext. 1; Sen. *Dial.* 7. 1; *Plin.* 7 § 69; 8 § 79; 28 § 149; Stat. *Silv.* 2. 1. 214 (without *est*); Tac. *A.* 3. 28; *ib.* 55; 11. 24; *H.* 1. 80; Suet. *Jul.* 1; Just. 12. 7; 43. 4. **exstare** Pseudo-Cic. *Or. pr. q. in exil.* 9; **haberi** Tac. *A.* 6. 30.
- ?experimento fidei super ipsam Rbeni ripam collocati** Tac. *G.* 28. (dat. or abl.?)
- excidio venire** 'come to devastate'; Verg. *A.* 1. 22.
- expectationi** 'a thing to wait for'; **esse** Plaut. *Mil.* 1279 *ex conj.* (*in expectatione* Lorenz).
- [**extersui** Plaut. *Curc.* 578 *lintheum extersui* (so Fleck.) 'a wiping towel'. Comp. *amictui, esui*.]
- ?famæ esse** Cato *R. R.* 3; and perhaps Plaut. *Trin.* 629, see p. xxxvi.
- fastidio** 'a cause of disgust', 'wearisome'; **esse** Val. M. 6. 3. ext. 1; Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 10. præf. § 1; Sen. *Dial.* 9. 2 § 13; *ib.* § 15; 12. 7; *Ben.* 6. 16; *Ep.* 102 § 2; Curt. 4. 10 § 3; 5. 5 § 12; 10. 2 § 23; *Plin.* 7 § 8; 29 § 28; Tac. *H.* 1. 7.
- firmamento** 'a stay' **esse** Cæs. *Civ.* 2. 15.
- flagitio** 'a disgrace'; **esse** Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cæs.* 1. 8; Fronto p. 235 Naber.
- formidini** i.e. 'to inspire dread'; **esse** Sall. *G.* 20 § 7; Sen. *Ir.* 2. 11.
- ?fortunæ** 'a piece of luck'; **esse** Cæs. *G.* 6. 30 (*magnæ*); (dat. or gen.?)

**fraudi** 'cause of risk' or 'of damage'; **esse** Cic. *Rosc. Am.* 17; *Verr.* 2. 71; 3. 40; *Clu.* 33; *Mur.* 35; *Rab. Post.* 7; *Phil.* 5. 12; *ib.* 14; 8. 9; *ib.* 11; *Att.* 5. 21 § 12; *Fam.* 1. 5 a (*majori*); 7. 26; *Lucr.* 6. 187; *Ov. Trist.* 2. 463; *Nux.* 106; *Liv.* 1. 47 § 9; 3. 53; *ib.* 54; 7. 41 bis; 27. 17; 30. 19; 33. 20; *S. C. ap. Liv.* 39. 14; *ib.* 19; *Val. M.* 6. 1. 13; *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 9. 27 § 9; *Sen. Ben.* 1. 3; *Suet. Aug.* 54; *Fronto* p. 102 *Naber*.

*Lex Rubr.* 21 *id ei fraudi pænæ ne esto*; *Fragm. Tuder.* (Bruns p. 90) *id ei fraudi multæ pænæ ne esto*: *Lex de imp. Vesp. fin.* (Bruns p. 94) *id ei ne fraudi esto*; *S. C. de edif. non dir.* (Bruns p. 111) *ne quid fraudi multæ pænæque esset Celsillæ*.

**fructui** 'source of profit'; **esse** *Varr. R. R.* 3. 3 § 1; *Cic. Man.* 6; *Fam.* 10. 5 (*majori*); *Liv.* 5. 4; 34. 36; *Suet. Gr.* 24; *Papin. ap. Dig.* 6. 1. 64 (*ea quæ usui, non fructui, sunt*).

**frugi** 'thrifty'; **esse** *Plaut. Asin.* 175; 498; *Bac.* 370; 654; *Epid.* 3. 4. 57; *Mil.* 1360; *Pæn.* 3. 4. 11; 5. 2. 3; *Trin.* 1182; *Ter. Eun.* 608; 816; *Haut.* 597; *Cic. T. D.* 3. 8; *Cic. fil. ap. C. Fam.* 16. 21 (*vita est frugi*); *Hor. Ep.* 1. 16. 49; *Petron.* 75; 140 (*tam frugi*); *censere Pl. Cas.* 3. 2. 32; *dicl. Hor. S.* 1. 3. 49; *existimare C. Fam.* 5. 6; *Plin. Pan.* 88; *fieri C. Phil.* 2. 28; *habere Mart.* 6. 21. 8 (*tam frugi*); *haberi Pl. Men.* 577; *reri Pl. Asin.* 857; 861; *videri Pl. Pers.* 841 (*sat frugi*).

**bonæ frugi esse** *Pl. As.* 602; *Capt.* 956; *Cas.* 2. 4. 5; *ib.* 5. 19; *Curc.* 521; *Pæn.* 4. 2. 23; 5. 4. 56; *Pseud.* 339; 468; *Trin.* 321; *Truc.* 20; *Cic. Att.* 4. 8; **arbitrari** *Pl. Merc.* 321 (where *Ambr.* has *bona berclæ fruge*). (*Gellius* 6 (7) 11 § 1, and later writers use *bonæ frugis*: see *Charis.* p. 105, ed. *Keil*.)

**frugi** is used attributively as indecl. adj. generally in nom. or acc.; with *homo* *Pl. Epid.* 5. 2. 27; *Trin.* 1018 (*cum frugi hominibus*); *Ter. Haut.* 580 (*hominis*); *Ad.* 959; *Nov.* 61 ed. *Ribb.*; *Laber.* 18 ed. *Ribb.*; *Syr.* 190; *Cic. Verr.* 3. 27 (*plane frugi*); *Dejot.* 9; *T. D.* 3. 8; 4. 16; *Brut. ad Cic.* 1. 6. 2; *Corp. I. R.* no. 1098; *Petron.* 73; *Quint.* 1. 6. 29; also with other words: *quisquam Pl. Curc.* 502; *servus Pl. Cas.* 2. 37 (*servo frugi*); *ib.* 50; *mancipium Hor. S.* 2. 7. 3; *populus Hor. Ep.* 2. 3. 207; *filia Phædr.* 4. 5. 5; by itself, *Mart.* 12. 62. 14.: and as epithet of a woman, *Hor. S.* 2. 5. 81 (*tam frugi tamque*

*pudica*); Corp. I. R. 1256 *bona proba frugei salve*); 1301 (*p. f. frugi*); 1072 *Pontia uxor fruge bona pudica ave*): as name of L. Piso C. Fin. 2. 28; Font. 17 § 39; and on coins of L. Piso C. I. R. 411; of C. Piso ib. 463; of M. Piso ib. 501; and in inscr. C. I. R. 594.

In post-Augustan writers also used of things *atrium* Plin. Ep. 2. 17 § 4; *cena* Juv. 3. 167; Plin. Ep. 3. 1; ib. 19; *jentacula* Mart. 13. 31; *victus* Quint. 5. 10. 21.

*frustratui* 'to trick'; *habere* Pl. Men. 695 (*Quando tu me bene merentem tibi habes despiciatui. Nisi feres argentum frustra's: me ductare non potes. Aliam posthac invenito quam habeas frustratui*).

*gaudio* 'a joy'; *esse* Pl. Pæn. 5. 4. 47; Sall. J. 9; Liv. 26. 37; Plin. Ep. 2. 11 § 1; 4. 19 § 1.

*gloriæ* 'a glory'; *esse* Cato R. R. 3; Plaut. Trin. 629 (? see p. xxxvi); Cic. Planc. 36 (*maximæ*); Fam. 5. 12 § 7; 10. 5 (*majori*); Sall. J. 6; ib. 7 § 2; Liv. 27. 20; 34. 58 § 7; 40. 15 § 5; ib. § 8; Sen. Rhet. Contr. 9. 24 § 15; Sen. Clem. 1. 3; Quint. 6. 1. 12; Suet. Gram. 24; Just. 28. 2 (*minori*); *ducere* C. Gracch. ap. Gell. 11. 10; *haberi* Just. 43. 3.

*gratulationi* 'a voice of congratulation'; *esse* C. Mur. 5, following *adjumento* and *solacio*.

*honori* 'an honour'; *esse* Plaut. Epid. 1. 1. 31; Corn. 4. 13; Cic. Or. 1. 8; ib. 25 (*magno*); Planc. 10 bis; Mil. 35; Phil. 13 fin.; Læl. 19; Off. 1. 39; 2. 17 (*magno*); ib. (*summo*); 3. 20 (*summo*); Fam. 5. 2 (*summo*); Att. 3. 22; 11. 3; ap. Rutil. Lup. 1. 3 (*honoris* MSS.); Cæs. ap. Gell. 4. 16; Sall. C. 12; Liv. 3. 68; 4. 3; 25. 31; 26. 4; 27. 17; 45. 15; Curt. 3. 7 § 12 (*magno*); 7. 5 § 42; Vell. 2. 95; Fronto p. 195 Naber; *duci* Sall. J. 11; *habere* Sall. J. 31 § 10; (al. *honores*) Tac. A. 3. 32; *interpretari* Plin. 15 § 91; *dari* Fronto p. 136 Naber.

*hortamento* 'an encouragement'; *esse* Sall. J. 98.

[*hospitio patere* Verg. A. 1. 299; but more probably ablative.]

*hypothecæ* 'mortgaged'; *esse* Gai. Dig. 20. 1. 1. 15 § 2; Marcian ib. 1. 11 § 3; &c. *dare* Marcian Dig. 20. 1. 1. 11 § 2; ib. 1. 16 often; &c.

*ignominia* 'a disgrace'; *esse* S. C. ap. Liv. 39. 19; *haberi* Tac. A. 3. 32.

**impedimento** 'a hindrance'; **esse** Plaut. *Cas.* prol. 61; Ter. *Andr.* 707; Corn. 1. 12; 2. 11 (*maximo*); 4. 1; Cic. *Inv.* 2. 30; ib. 31; ib. 33; *Rosc. Am.* 4; ib. 51; *Vat.* 6; *Balb.* 7; *Flac.* 28; *Rab.* 7; *Fam.* 3. 10 § 6; 10. 22; 11. 2 § 3; Cæs. *G.* 1. 25 (*magno*); 2. 25; *Civ.* 3. 46 (*magno*); *Bell. Alex.* 23; ib. 61 (*magno*); Sall. *J.* 97 (*nullo*); Liv. 4. 13; 6. 15; 8. 32; 9. 18; 26. 24; 28. 2; 38. 40 § 13; 39. 39 § 7; 40. 51; 41. 11; 44. 46; 45. 39 § 18; Cels. 8. 25; Val. *M.* 1. 1 § 8; 5. 1 § 5; 6. 9 § 5; Curt. 4. 2 § 15 (*magno*); Quint. 1. 2 § 12; 2. 5 § 2; 5. 10 § 123; 5. 14 fin.; 7 præf. § 2; 11. 3 § 142; Plin. *Ep.* 6. 28; Tac. *A.* 14. 15.

**impensæ** 'an expense'; **esse** Liv. 28. 45.

**indictio** 'evidence'; **esse** Ter. *Haut.* 384; *Ad.* 4; Varr. *L. L.* 7. 4; Cic. *Dom.* 42; Or. *prid. q. in exil.* 11; Lucr. 2. 433; 4. 1019; Nep. 6. 3; 20. 2; 25. 16; Verg. *G.* 2. 182; Liv. 3. 6; 7. 33; 22. 61 § 10; 23. 19; 44. 46 fin.; Hygin. ap. Macr. *Sat.* 1. 7 § 24; Plin. 6 § 1; 7 § 69; ib. § 210; 14 § 88; 15 § 87; 19 § 17; § 169; 22 § 78; 29 § 58; 33 § 15; 36 § 185; 37 § 43.

**indutui** 'a shirt'; Varr. *L. L.* 5 § 131 (*Indutui alterum quod subtus, a quo subucula; alterum quod supra, &c.*); ib. 10 § 27 (*eam dicimus muliebrem tunicam, quæ de eo genere est, quo indutui mulieres ut uterentur est institutum*); gerere Tac. *A.* 16. 4. Comp. above amictui.

**infamiae** 'discreditable'; **esse** Ter. *Andr.* 444; Cic. *Verr.* 3. 62; Liv. 29. 9 fin.; 39. 6.

**invidiæ** 'a cause of ill-will'; **esse** Cato ap. Fronton. p. 100 Naber; Cic. *Verr.* 3. 62; 5. 8; Sall. *J.* 73; Nep. 10. 4 (*magnæ*); Prop. 1. 12. 9; Ov. *Am.* 3. 3. 17; ib. 3. 12. 14; *Met.* 10. 731; Liv. 2. 52; 4. 49; ib. 53; 29. 9 fin.; Tac. *H.* 2. 95.

**iræ** 'cause of anger'; **esse** Verg. *A.* 10. 714 (*justæ*); commented on by Macrob. *Sat.* 66 § 9.

**irridiculo** 'a laughing-stock'; **haberi** Plaut. *Cas.* 5. 2. 3; *Pæn.* 5. 4. 10.

**irrisui** 'an object of derision'; **esse** Cæs. *C.* 2. 15; Plin. 22 § 15; Tac. *A.* 14. 39; *H.* 1. 7.

**jucunditati** 'an enjoyment'; **esse** Cic. *Dom.* 28 (*tantæ*).

**labori** 'a trouble'; **esse** Plaut. *Rud.* 190; Ter. *Haut.* 82 Wagner; C. *Verr.* 1. 6; Hor. *S.* 1. 8. 18.

- lætitiæ** 'a delight'; **esse** Sall. *C.* 51 § 34; Nep. 13. 2 (*tantæ*); Liv. 45. 13 (*tantæ*); Ov. *M.* 8. 430.
- laniatui** 'object for mangling' i.e. 'torn to pieces'; **esse** Val. *M.* 9. 2. ext. 11.
- laudi** 'creditable'; **esse** Ter. *Ad.* 382; 418; Corn. 3. 7; Cic. *Fam.* 2. 7 (*sempiternæ*); 5. 8; 13. 73; Nep. 15. 2 (*magnæ*); Hor. *S.* 2. 3. 99 (*magnæ*); Ov. *F.* 5. 290; **dare** Cic. *Clu.* 19; *Planc.* 36; *T. D.* 1. 2; *Off.* 1. 21; Tac. *Or.* 19 (*laudi dabatur*; al. *laudabat*); **ducere** Ter. *Ad.* 5; 105; Nep. *præf.* § 4.
- levamento** 'an alleviation'; **esse** Cic. *Att.* 12. 43; Sen. *Dial.* 11. 9 init. (*magno*).
- levationi** 'relief'; **esse** Cic. *Fam.* 6. 4 § 5 (*magnæ*).
- libertati** 'liberty,' i.e. 'cause of liberty'; **esse** Plaut. *Pan.* 5. 4. 48 (following *gaudio* and *voluptati*).
- lubidini** 'a lust'; **esse** Sall. *J.* 89.
- lucro** 'a gain'; **esse** Pl. *As.* 192; *Cist.* 1. 1. 52; *Men.* 355; *Mil.* 675; Ter. *Hec.* 287; Anton. ap. C. *Phil.* 13. 19; Pseudo-Ov. *Nux* 41; **jacere** Lucr. 5. 875.
- ludibrio** 'a jest, sport'; **esse** Cic. *Verr.* 5. 38; *Ep. ad Brut.* 1. 2 § 2; Sall. *C.* 13; ib. 20 § 9; *J.* 31 § 2; Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cas.* 1. 5; in Cic. sub init.; Liv. 1. 41; 2. 23; 4. 12; 5. 45; 9. 2; 24. 34; 39. 4; 40. 4; ib. 22; Val. *M.* 6. 2 § 4; 9. 1 § 8; Curt. 6. 11 § 4; Tac. *Agr.* 31; [In Liv. 1. 7 *ludibrio fratris* we have probably ablative]; **habere** Plaut. *Cas.* 3. 5 19; 5. 1. 13; *Epid.* 5. 2. 1; *Men.* 396; 782; Ter. *Hec.* 149; 526; Lucr. 5. 1235; Sall. *J.* 34; Liv. 28. 40; Sen. *Dial.* 6. 14; [opponi Corn. 4. 3. 9 probably belongs to § 1163; **retentus** Plin. *Ep.* 8. 14 § 8 to § 1142.]
- ludificatui** 'sport'; **habere** Plaut. *Pan.* 5. 4. 2 *ex conj.*
- luxuriæ** 'a luxury'; **esse** Sall. *J.* 89.
- maculæ** 'a stain'; **esse** Corn. 4. 35; Cic. *Verr.* 3. 62.
- maerori** 'a grief'; **esse** Cic. *Or.* 3. 3 bis; Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cas.* 2. 4 (*quanto*); Sen. *Dial.* 6. 24.
- maledicto** 'a term of reproach'; **esse** Sen. *Ep.* 115 § 11.
- malo** 'harm'; **esse** Plaut. *Curc.* 499; *Mil.* 492 (*magno*); *Men.* 355; Corn. 2. 24; Cic. *Par.* 1 § 7; *Att.* 14. 22; Nep. 7. 7; Ov. *Ep.* 16 (17), 147; *Met.* 2. 597; Phædr. 5. 4. 12; Pseudo-Ovid *Nux* 108; 109; Sen. *N. Q.* 2. 49; *Ep.* 94 § 67; **vertere** Tac. *A.* 6. 19.



[**mancipio dare** Plaut. *Curc.* 494; *Pers.* 525, 589; Lucr. 3. 971; Cic. *Att.* 13. 50 bis; *Top.* 10 ter; Sen. *Ep.* 72 § 7; Gai. *Inst.* 1. 121; 4. 79; *Corp. I. R.* ii. 5042. Inscr. ap. Bruns p. 132 sq.; **accipere** Plaut. *Curc.* 495; Cic. *Agr.* 3. 2; Gai. l. c.; Inscr. l. c. &c. I take *mancipio* as abl. 'by handtake', for which the later language used *mancipatione* from the secondary verb *mancipare*. See § 1243. **Dono dare** is different; because *donum* is the effect of a transaction, not the mode of transacting.]

**melli** 'honey'; **esse** Hor. *S.* 2. 6. 32.

**miraculo** 'a surprise'; **esse** Liv. 1. 27; ib. 45; 25. 8; 42. 62; Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 1. 2 § 17; Plin. 7 § 6; ib. § 180; 11 § 111; 34 § 41; 36 § 59 (*magno*); Tac. *A.* 4. 66.

**miseriæ** 'a source of misery'; **esse** Sall. *G.* 10.

**molestiæ** 'an annoyance'; **esse** Plaut. *Asin.* 571; *Curc.* 501; *Pæn.* prol. 35 (dat. or plur. nom.); Cic. *Att.* 6. 2 § 1 (*magne*).

**monumento** 'a monument'; **esse** Liv. 1. 12; 2. 33; 4. 16; 8. 11.

**moræ** 'to cause delay'; **esse** Plaut. *Bac.* 224; Ter. *Ad.* 712; ib. 904 (*hoc mihi moræ est*); L. 7. 34 (*id moræ Samnitibus esset*); Bell. *Afr.* 1 (*sibi moræ quicquam esse* dat. or gen.); L. 35. 38 (*quid moræ esset?*) [In C. *Verr.* 4. 64 *ut aliquid esset moræ* the case appears to be the genitive. So also in L. 22. 12 *nihil aliud, quam quod impar erat imperio, moræ ad rempublicam præcipitandam habebat*.]

**morbo** 'a cause of disease'; **esse** Plaut. *Truc.* 2. 5. 14; Lucr. 6. 1095.

**morti** 'a cause of death'; **esse** Cic. *Flac.* 8; *Phil.* 9. 1; Lucr. 6. 1095.

**multæ esse** 'to be cause for fine'; see under **fraudi**.

**muneri** 'as a present'; **accipere** Tac. *A.* 14. 31; **dare** Nep. 8. 4; 17. 8; 23. 12; Quint. 1. 10. 16; Suet. *Gram.* 21; **mittere** Catull. 12. 15; Nep. 4. 2; 25. 8; Val. M. 4. 8. ext. 1; Plin. 37 § 74.

**munimento** 'a defence'; **esse** Sall. *J.* 47; 50; 97.

**neglectui** 'a matter to neglect'; **esse** Ter. *Haut.* 357 (*neglectumst Bemb.*).

**noxæ esse** 'to be prejudicial' Sall. *Or. Phil.* § 1; Suet. *Oth.* 10; Tac. *A.* 3. 13; 4. 36 [**dedere** Liv. 26. 29; Col. 1 *procem*; see Gai. *Inst.* 4. 75 sq.; ap. *Dig.* 9. 4 *passim*; Just. *Inst.* 4. 8. I think *noxæ* was not originally a predicative dative (see § 1163);

but, by Justinian's time at any rate, it came to be so considered, as is shewn by the definition *noxæ est corpus quod nocuit*. In a few places e.g. *Dig.* 4. 3. 9; 9. 4. 8 (*si dederis, dederit*) probably by mistake the perfect of *dare*, not *dedere*, is found. But always, I believe *deditio*, not *datio*; *dedendo*, not *dando* &c.]

*noxæ esse* 'to be prejudicial'; *Liv.* 8. 18 (some MSS. *noxæ*); 10. 19; 33. 20; 34. 19; 36. 7; *Cels. ap. Dig.* 17. 1. 48 pr.

*oblectamento* 'an amusement'; *esse* *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 2. 9 § 13; *Sen. Ben.* 6. 1.

*obtrectationi* 'ground for reproach'; *esse* *Tac. Agr.* 1.

*odio* 'hateful'; *esse* *Plaut. Curc.* 499; *Men.* 111; *Merc.* 81; *Mil.* 748; *Pæn. prol.* 50; *ib.* 4. 2. 100; *Pseud.* 1264; *Trin.* 632; *Truc.* 1. 2. 23; *Turpil. ap. Non. p.* 2; *Ter. Hec.* 343; *Cic. Verr.* 1. 13; 2. 5 (*tanto quanto*); 4. 7; *ib.* 30; *Agr.* 2. 37; *Myr.* 40; *Flac.* 8; *ib.* 29; *Vat.* 3; *Mil.* 21 (*quanto*); *Fin.* 5. 22; *Fam.* 12. 10 (*tanto*); *Att.* 4. 8; *Cæl. ap. C. Fam.* 8. 6; *Cass. ap. C. Fam.* 15. 19 (*quanto*); *Catull.* 66. 15; *Hirt. G.* 8. 7 (*summo*); *Pseudo-Cæs. Bell. Alex.* 53; *Verg. B.* 8. 33; *Hor. Epist.* 1. 14. 11; *ib.* 2. 1. 101; *Liv.* 3. 42; 35. 19; *Ov. Met.* 2. 438; *Rutil. Lup.* 2. 1. (*magno*); *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 7. 18 § 7; *Val. M.* 5. 1. ext. 2; *Sen. Dial.* 7. 7; *ib.* 19; *Ir.* 1. 14 bis; *Quint.* 3. 7 § 24; *Tac. A.* 15. 21. *habere* *Plaut. Men.* 111; *Pers.* 206; *Ov. Rem.* 124; *Sen. Ben.* 5. 5; *venire* *Plin.* 28 § 106.

*offensioni* 'annoyance'; *esse* *Cic. Att.* 13. 23 (*majori*).

*oneri* 'a burden'; *esse* *Lucr.* 5. 539; *ib.* 541; *Cæs. C.* 1. 32; *Cic. ap. Rutil. Lup.* 1. 3 (MSS. *oneris*); *Sall. C.* 2; *ib.* 10; *J.* 14 § 5; *Ep. Pomp.* § 9; *Liv.* 1. 56; 23. 43; *ib.* 48; 42. 1; *Ov. Ep.* 16. 167; *A. A.* 2. 586; *Met.* 10. 195; *Sen. Ben.* 6. 16; *Plin.* 11 § 78; 18 § 31; *Tac. A.* 2. 37; *haberi* *Tac. H.* 4. 3.

*operæ* 'matter for attention'; *esse* (e.g. *mibi non est operæ*, 'I have not time') *Plaut. Amph.* 151; *Mil.* 252; 817; *Merc.* 10; 917; *Pseud.* 377; *Truc.* 4. 4. 30; *Enn. ap. Pers.* 6. 9; *Liv.* 1. 24; 4. 8; 5. 15; 9. 23; 21. 9; 29. 17; 33. 20; 41. 26; 44. 36; *Sen. Rhet. Suas.* 6 § 23. See § 1283.

*opprobrio* 'ground for reproach'; *esse* *Nep.* 9. 3; *Ov. Trist.* 2. 445; *Quint.* 3. 7 § 19; *Suet. Gram.* 24.

*optentui* 'a cloak' (metaph.); *esse* *Sall. Or. Lep.* § 24; *Pseudo-*

- Sall. *ad Cæs.* 2. 11; Val. M. 6. 5. 4; Tac. *H.* 1. 49; in apposition Tac. *H.* 2. 14; *sumi* Tac. *A.* 1. 10.
- ornamento 'a distinction'; *esse* Cic. *Inv.* 1. 4; *Rosc. Am.* 49; *Verr.* Act. 1. 5; 4. 3; ib. 33; ib. 54 bis; *Font.* 21; *Balb.* fin.; *Off.* 2. 18; *Fam.* 3. 10 § 9 (*magno*); 11. 22 (*magno*); 13. 34 (*maximo*); ib. 36 (*magno*); ib. 49 (*majori*); *Cæs. G.* 1. 44; 7. 15; *Nep.* 10. 2 (*quanto*); *Sen. Dial.* 18; *Quint.* 5 fin.
- ornatu 'an ornament'; *esse* *Cæs. ap. Gell.* 4. 16.
- ostentui *esse* 'to show off'; Sall. *J.* 24; Tac. *A.* 15. 64; in apposition Tac. *A.* 12. 14; *H.* 1. 78; *abdicere* Tac. *A.* 1. 29; *credere*, 'believe it to be' Sall. *J.* 46; *ire* Tac. *A.* 15. 29; *mittere* Tac. *H.* 3. 35.
- ? *perfidiae esse* Pseudo-Sall. in Cic. sub init. Read *præda*?
- periculo 'a source of danger'; *esse* Cic. *Verr.* 4. 49; *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 2. 9 § 11; *Sen. Ir.* 3. 43; *Suet. Oth.* 10.
- pernicii (cf. § 360) 'a cause of destruction'; *esse* *Nep.* 8. 2; 12. 4.
- pigneri 'a pledge'; *esse* *Plaut. Most.* 978; *Cato R. R.* 147; 149; 150; *C. Clu.* 67; *Curt.* 7. 10 § 9; 10. 2 § 26; *Edict. ap. Dig.* 20. 1. 1. 11; *Gai.* ib. 1. 15 § 2; *Papin.* ib. 1. 1 § 2; *Jul. ap. Dig.* 30. 86; and other places; *accipi* Tac. *H.* 3. 65; *Paul. ap. Dig.* 9. 4. 1. 22; *dare* *Ulp. ap. Dig.* 4. 3. 9; *Papin. ap. Dig.* 20. 1. 1. 1 quater; ib. 4. 1. 1; &c. *ponere* *Ulp. ap. Dig.* 13. 7. 1. 27; *retinere* *Plaut. Capt.* 651.
- pœnæ 'a ground of penalty'; *esse* *Lex xii. Tab. ap. Gell.* 20. 1 § 12 (where *pœnæ* appears to have been taken for nom. plur. by Festus p. 371 ed. Mull.): *Prop.* 4. 5 (6), 20; *Mela* 3 § 35. See also under *fraudi*. In Sall. *J.* 69 *urbs cuncta pœnæ aut prædæ fuit*, the datives (or genitives) mean 'an object of punishment or plunder.'
- potui 'a drink'; *esse* *Sext. Æl. ap. Gell.* 4. 1; Tac. *G.* 23; *Ulp. ap. Dig.* 33. 9. 3 ter; 50. 16. 43; (see under *esui*); *dare* *Cels.* 2. 13; 3. 6; ib. 9; 4. 11 (5); 14 (7); ib. 16 (9); ib. 19 (12); 21 (14); &c. *Plin.* 13 § 131; 21 § 126; 22 § 26; ib. 49; 29 § 50; *sumere* *Cels.* 4. 8 (4); *offerre* *Cels.* 4. 20 (13); *præstare* *Cels.* 4. 12 (5). See p. xxxiii.
- prædæ 'plunder', 'source of plunder'; *esse* *Varr. R. R.* 2. 9 § 3; Cic. *Verr.* 3. 37; 5. 31; Sall. *C.* 21; ib. 48; (*J.* 69 see under *pœnæ*); Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cæs.* 1. 5; *Liv.* 1. 56; 3. 29; 4. 51;

9. 36; 24. 24; ib. 36; 25. 25; 26. 39; 31. 28; 33. 46; Curt. 5. 1 § 6; Quint. præf. 14; Just. 30. 4; 31. 1<sup>1</sup> (*præda* Jeep.); (See also under *perfidia*.) *habere* Sall. J. 31 § 10; *jacere* Lucr. 5. 875. Probably here belong *dari* Liv. 2. 25; Tac. A. 1. 57; *relinquere* Liv. 27. 44; possibly *nascens* Plin. 8 § 219. Comp. however p. 59, note 11.

*præmio* 'reward', 'ground for reward'; *esse* Nep. 4. 4; 23. 10 (both *magno*); Liv. 24. 45; 31. 28.

*præsidio* 'a protection', 'a garrison'; *esse* Scip. Æmil. ap. Fest. p. 151 Müller; Varr. R. R. 2. 9. 3; ib. 6; Cic. Inv. 1. 4; Quint. 1 (*nullo*); Verr. 1. 58; 2. 56; 5. 65; Planc. 33; Mil. 26; Phil. 3. 15; 7. 4; Fam. 3. 10 § 3 (*summo*); ib. § 9 (*magno*); 15. 2 § 7; Or. prid. q. in exil. 9; Planc. ap. C. Fam. 10. 7 (*maximo*); Pomp. ap. C. Att. 8. 12. A; Lucr. 1. 643; Cæs. G. 1. 25; ib. 44; 2. 19; 5. 9; 6. 34; 7. 15; ib. 57; Cív. 2. 8 (*magno*); 3. 46; ib. 89; ib. 99; ib. 101; Hirt. G. 8. 29; Pseudo-Cæs. Bell. Afr. 46; 55; 85 bis; Sall. C. 36; J. 19; ib. 93; Or. Phil. 21; Nep. 9. 2; 17. 7; 25. 10; Liv. 6. 6 § 14; 21. 21; 22. 57; 25. 31; 26. 2; 27. 8 (ex Madv. conj.); 29. 5; ib. 25; 31. 11; 35. 29; 37. 22; 42. 67; 44. 4; Colum. 6. 3 § 3; 11. 2 § 71; Sen. Rhet. Contr. 2. 9 § 11; Plin. 28 § 35; 30 § 135; Plin. Ep. 3. 2 § 31.

In apposition Liv. 22. 23; *adesse*, Sall. J. 85 § 4; *ducere* 'to lead' Cæs. C. 3. 7; Tac. A. 3. 9; *deducti* Cæs. C. 2. 19; *educti* Cæs. C. 2. 23; *mittere* Cic. Cat. 3. 2; Hirt. G. 8. 11; ib. 17; Cæs. C. 3. 75; Sall. J. 106; *præmittere* Pseudo-Cæs. B. Afr. 60; *proficisci* Nep. 17. 3; *relinquere* Cæs. G. 3. 26; 5. 11; 6. 32; 7. 40; ib. 49; 60; 62; 68; G. 1. 41 bis; ib. 55; 63; 69; 2. 22; ib. 39; 3. 36; ib. 89; 95; 101; Pseudo-Cæs. Bell. Alex. 76; Liv. 1. 59; 22. 59; 29. 22 fin.; 37. 39; 44. 38; *restare* Hirt. G. 8. 35; *stare* Tac. A. 1. 8; *transire* Cæs. C. 1. 40.

*probre* 'a disgrace'; *esse* Cic. Rosc. Am. 17; Dem. 33; Vat. 2 (*quanto*); Sen. Ep. 115 § 11; Fronto p. 235 Naber; *ducere* 'consider' Pl. Amph. 492; Scip. Æm. ap. Macr. Sat. 3. 14. 7; *haberi* Sall. C. 12.

<sup>1</sup> Madvig (as I have since seen) makes the same correction, Adv. ii. 617.

**propugnaculo** 'a bulwark'; **esse** Cic. *Verr.* 5. 34.

**pudori** 'a source of shame', i.e. 'a thing to be ashamed of'; **esse**

Hor. *Od.* 2. 4. 1; *A. P.* 406; Sulp. ap. Tibull. 4. 7. 1; Ov. *Am.*

3. 14. 21; *Met.* 5. 526; 7. 687; Liv. 24. 24; 34. 58 § 7;

40. 15 § 6; Val. M. 9. 5. ext. 1; Tac. *A.* 2. 37; 4. 57.

**questui** 'gain'; **esse** Cic. *Quint.* 3; *Verr.* 3. 7 (*magno*); ib. 37;

ib. 40; ib. 71; 5. 49; ib. 52; Sall. *J.* 31 § 12; Liv. 3. 68;

4. 30; **habere** Plaut. *Pan.* 3. 3. 13; Cic. *Off.* 2. 22; Cæs. *C.*

3. 60.

**receptaculo** 'a retreating place'; **esse** Liv. 9. 41.

**receptui** 'a retreating place'; **esse** Sall. *J.* 50. [The expressions

**canere receptui**, **signum receptui** appear to belong to § 1156.

They occur as follows: **canere** Cic. *Phil.* 12. 3; *T. D.* 3. 15;

*R. P.* 1. 2; Pseudo-Cæs. *B. Alex.* 47; *L.* 3. 22; 22. 29; 26.

44; 27. 42; ib. 47; Quintil. 12. 11 § 4; Plin. *Ep.* 3. 1 § 11;

Tac. *H.* 2. 26; **cani** Cæs. *G.* 7. 47; Pseudo-Cæs. *B. Afr.* 40;

*L.* 4. 31; 26. 6 § 7; Colum. 6. 23; **signum** Cic. *Phil.* 13. 7; Liv.

2. 62; ib. 64; 25. 19; ib. 37; 26. 45; Curt. 4. 6 § 10. In *L.*

3. 22, and 26. 44, **receptui** appears to be subject to **canit**.]

**rei esse** Cato *R. R.* 3. (See above p. xxxvi.) Front. p. 107 Naber.

**religioni** 'a ground of pious scruples'; **esse** Liv. 5. 13; ib. 31;

41. 16; **habere** Cic. *Div.* 1. 35; *Off.* 2. 14; Atei. Cap. ap.

Gell. 4. 6 fin.

**remedio** 'a remedy'; **esse** Corn. 3. 12; Liv. 5. 52; 26. 2; Cels.

4. 27 (20); Curt. 9. 10 § 1; Col. 6. 4 § 3; 6 § 2; 7 § 2;

10 § 2; 13 § 1; 27. 11; 30 § 3; 12. 11; Plin. 11 § 90; 12

§ 78; 21 § 108; 22 § 116; 23 § 149 (*presenti*, cf. p. xxix.);

25 § 152; ib. § 165; 28 § 45; 29 § 39; ib. § 88; ib. § 89;

32 § 56.

**ridiculo** 'a joke'; **esse** Ter. *Eun.* 1004.

**risui** 'a subject of laughter'; **esse** Liv. 4. 35; 6. 34.

**rubori** 'a cause of blushing'; **esse** Ov. *A. A.* 3. 83; Liv. 45. 13

(*ruboris* MSS.); Sen. *Ben.* 4. 36 (*magno*); Tac. *A.* 11. 17;

14. 55.

**saluti** 'a cause of safety'; **esse** Plaut. *Capt.* 952; *Merc.* 143;

*Most.* 351; Lucil. ap. Non. 13 (v. 7, ed. Müll.); Cic. *Inu.* 1.

38; *Verr.* 4. 49; 5. 31; ib. 46; *Rosc. Am.* 28; *Lig.* 5; *Arch.* 1;

*Planc.* 1; *Agr.* 2. 18; *Or.* 1. 9; 2. 48; ib. 49; *Brut.* 3; *R. P.* 1.

- 1; *Leg.* 2 (*quantæ*); *Fam.* 15..4 § 6; *Q. Fr.* 1. 1 § 10; *Att.* 9. 11 A; *Q. Cic. pet. cons.* 6; *Cæs. G.* 5. 44; 7. 50; *Sall. J.* 33; *Nep.* 2. 2 (*quantæ*); 8. 2; 17. 6; *Liv.* 1. 51; 5. 47; 22. 51; 31. 37; 37. 40; 41. 27 § 4; 43. 10; *Val. M.* 1. 5 § 5; *Vell.* 2. 82; *Curt.* 4. 5 § 15; 5. 1 § 5; 7. 9 § 7; 8. 4 § 10; *ib.* § 17; *ib.* 11 § 18; 9. 1 § 18.
- [*satul semen* 'sowing-seed'; *Cato R. R.* 5. Compare *esul*, *extersul*.]  
*senio* 'old age'; *esse* *Plaut. Stich.* 19; *Truc.* 2. 5. 14; *Turpil. ap. Non.* 1. 2.
- sermoni* 'common talk'; *esse* *Plaut. Pseud.* 418.
- signo* 'a sign'; *esse* *Cic. Inv.* 1. 34; *ib.* 43; *ib.* (*magno*); *dari* *Val. M.* 1. 5. 7.
- solacio* 'a solace'; *esse* *Cic. Mur.* 5 (*magno?*); *Fam.* 6. 6 § 12 (*quanto*); 9. 1; *Cæs. C.* 1. 22; *Liv.* 40. 57; *Vell.* 2. 19. *Curt.* 4. 10 § 21; *Sen. Dial.* 6. 26; 11. 12 (*maximo*); *Ep.* 78. 3.
- sollicitudini* 'a subject of anxiety'; *esse* *Plaut. Mil.* 671 (*summæ*); *Ter. Ph.* 588; *Q. Cic. ap. C. Fam.* 16. 8 (*magnæ*); *Sen. Dial.* 6. 24.
- spectaculo* 'a spectacle'; *esse* *Cic. Att.* 10. 2; *Nep. præf.* § 5; *Liv.* 1. 23; *ib.* 25; 2. 5; *ib.* 38; *ib.* 46; 3. 17; 25. 29; 35. 11; 41. 11; 45. 33; *Val. M.* 3. 2. 23; *Curt.* 8. 7 § 5; *Frontin. Strat.* 1. 5. 16; *Just.* 11. 13; 38. 8.
- splendori esse* 'confer splendour on'; *Corn.* 4. 15.
- stomacho esse* 'to occasion displeasure'; *Cic. Att.* 5. 1 § 4 (*majori*).
- ?*stratui esse*; *Testamentum ap. Bruns p.* 151 (*stratui* 'couch coverings' cf. *indutui*).
- studio* 'an object of pursuit'; *habere* *Ter. Ad.* 382.
- subsidio* 'reinforcement'; *esse* *Cic. Sull.* 16; *Cæs. G.* 2. 20; *Pseudo-Cæs. B. Hisp.* 31; *Ov. Ib.* 281.
- In apposition *Tac. A.* 12. 29; *addi* *Cæs. C.* 3. 64 (or abl.); *adducere* *Cæs. G.* 7. 87; *comparare* *Cic. Quint.* 1. (but *subsidium* *Bait. Kays.*); *deponi* *Varr. L. L.* 5. 89; *ducere* *Cæs. G.* 2. 8; *C.* 3. 69; *egredi* *Pseudo-Cæs. B. Afr.* 25; *ire* *Pomp. ap. C. Att.* 8. 12 A; *Pseudo-Cæs. B. Afr.* 11; 25; *Nep.* 17. 8; *Liv.* 2. 53; 27. 27; *mittere* *Cæs. G.* 2. 7; *ib.* 26; 5. 15; 7. 62; *ib.* 86; *C.* 1. 40; *ib.* 55; 2. 3; *Pseudo-Cæs. B. Alex.* 21; *Bell. Hisp.* 34; *Liv.* 3. 4; 4. 58; *Nep.* 6. 3; *Stat. Theb.* 3. 10; *Tac. A.* 4. 73; *occurrere* *Pseudo-Cæs. Bell. Afr.* 18; 85;

- poscere** Tac. *A.* 6. 2; **proficisci** Cic. *Phil.* 5. 17; Cæs. *C.* 3. 78; Nep. 11. 2; 16. 5; **succurrere** Pseudo-Cæs. *B. Afr.* 6; **summittere** Cæs. *C.* 3. 64; **venire** Cic. *Font.* 20 (16); *Att.* 8. 7; Cæs. *G.* 5. 27; 7. 36; *C.* 1. 19; 3. 80; Pseudo-Cæs. *B. Alex.* 59; *Bell. Hisp.* 4; 7; 18; Nep. 1. 5; 12. 1; Liv. 2. 48; 3. 12; 5. 13; 8. 11; 9. 43; 27. 19; 31. 25; 35. 22; 36. 19; 40. 25; Tac. *A.* 4. 59.
- sumptui** 'an expense'; **esse** Plaut. *Mil.* 672 (*tanto*); 740 Ritschl (*quanto*); Cic. *Verr.* 1. 6; *Att.* 5. 14; Sall. *Ep. Pomp.* § 9; Liv. 23. 48; 42. 1.
- [**supplemento** in apposition Liv. 8. 11, probably ind. obj. belonging to § 1156.]
- tædio** 'a (cause of) weariness'; **esse** Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 10. præf. § 1; Sen. *Dial.* 7. 7 § 4; Plin. *Ep.* 8. 18 § 8.
- tegimento** 'a covering'; **esse** Cæs. *C.* 2. 9.
- terrori** 'a terror'; **esse** Cæs. *G.* 7. 66; Sall. *J.* 7 § 4 (*maxumo*); Liv. 10. 29; 26. 2; 37. 30 (*maximo*); Vell. 2. 42; Sen. *Ir.* 2. 11; Curt. 5. 4 § 25; Plin. 28 § 30; *ib.* § 31 (*tanto*); *ib.* § 93; 31 § 28; Just. 4. 1; 14. 1.
- testimonio** 'evidence'; **esse** Cic. *Quint.* 13; *Rosc. Com.* 4; *Verr.* 5. 22; *Font.* 7 (3); *Cæcin.* 18; Planc. ap. *C. Fam.* 10. 17; Pomp. ap. *C. Att.* 8. 12 B; Cæs. *G.* 6. 28; Quint. 1. 10. 10; 12. 1. 16.
- timori** 'cause of dread'; **esse** Cic. *Har. Resp.* 20; Cæc. ap. *C. Fam.* 8. 12; Sen. *Ir.* 3. 43.
- tormento** 'a torment'; **esse** Sen. *Dial.* 11. 5.
- turpitudini** 'disgraceful'; **esse** Nep. præf. 5; Rutil. *Lup.* 1. 3.
- tutelæ** 'a protection'; **esse** Fronto p. 195 Naber. (In *L.* 42. 19 *petere ut eum, non sub hospitum modo privatorum custodia, sed publicæ etiã curæ ac velut tutelæ vellent esse* we have probably genitives; cf. Liv. 21. 41 in § 1282.)
- veneno** 'poison'; **esse** Varr. *R. R.* 1. 2. 18.
- enerationi** 'object of awe or worship'; **esse** Vell. 2. 42; Plin. 34 § 45.
- verecundiæ** 'a cause of shame'; **esse** Liv. 3. 62; *ib.* 70; 9. 26 § 18.
- vestitui** 'dress'; **esse** Tac. *G.* 46.
- victui** 'food'; **esse** Tac. *G.* 46; **obicere** Varr. *R. R.* 3. 10 § 6.

[*visui præbere* Tac. *A.* 12. 21 probably not 'as a sight', but 'to the sight' (§ 1143 note 11), or 'to look at' (§ 1156).]

*viti* 'as a fault'; *dare* Ter. *Andr.* 8; *Ad.* 418; Cic. *Rasc. Am.* 16; *Off.* 1. 21; ib. 31; 2. 17; Matius ap. C. *Fam.* 11. 28; *duci* Ter. *Ad.* 5; *vertere* Plaut. *As.* 450; *Capt.* 256; *Epid.* 1. 2. 5; 3. 3. 50; *Mil.* 1350; *Pers.* 387; *Rud.* 700; *Lucr.* 5. 1357; Cic. *Fam.* 7. 6; Hor. *S.* 1. 6. 85; *Liv.* 8. 32.

*vituperationi* 'matter for blame'; *esse* Cic. *Brut.* 25; *Fam.* 13. 73.

*voluptati* 'a source of pleasure'; *esse* Plaut. *Cas.* 2. 8. 29; *Pen.* 1. 1. 17; 5. 4. 35 (*nimiae*); ib. 47; *Pseud.* 1280 (*nimiae*); *Rud.* 1183; 1373; Ter. *Haut.* 71; 1024; *Hec.* 859; Cic. *Ferr.* 3. 69; 5. 52; *Mur.* 19; *Planc.* 33; *p. red. ad Quir.* 1 (*tantæ...quantæ* Schol. but abl. MSS.); *Fam.* 1. 7 fin.; 2. 10 (*magnæ*); 3. 10; *Att.* 2. 25; 14. 19 (*magnæ*); *Pseudo-Cic. prid. q. in exil.* 3; *Sall. C.* 2; *Pseudo-Sall. ad Cæs.* 2. 4 (*tantæ*); *Corp. I. R. i.* 1008; *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 9. 25 § 7; *Sen. Dial.* 1. 4; 9. 2 § 12; *Ir.* 3. 40; *Ben.* 2. 31; *Ep.* 98. 1; *Plin.* 8 § 20. *habere* *Sall. J.* 100.

*usui* 'of use', 'useful'; *esse* Plaut. *Cist.* 4. 2. 23; *Cure.* 499 (*bono*); *Men.* 358; *Merc.* 32; *Mil.* 603, 604; *Pseud.* 305 (*quanto*); *Corn.* 2. 17; Cic. *Inv.* 2. 35 (*magno*); *Verr.* 3. 69; *Flac.* 5 (*magno*); *Balb.* 9 (*magno*); *Pbil.* 9. 7 (*magno*); 10 fin (*magno*); *Brut.* 4 (*tanto*); *Off.* 2. 4; *R. P.* 1. 20; *Fam.* 4. 3; 12. 29 (*maximo*); 13. 10; ib. 16; 20; 35; 71 (all *magno*); ib. 49 (*majori*); *Att.* 1. 1 § 3 (*magno*); 1. 2 (*maximo*); 7. 12 (*magno*); *Cæs. G.* 3. 14; 4. 20; ib. 25 (all three *magno*); 28; 31; 5. 1; 7. 41 (*magno*); ib. 55 (where *quo usui* should be retained: see above, p. xxx.); *Civ.* 1. 19; ib. 45; 2. 7 (*nullo*); ib. 8 (*magno*); ib. 15; 35; *Pseudo-Cæs. B. Alex.* 61; *B. Afr.* 47; *Sall. J.* 4 (*magno*); 14 § 1 (*maximo*); ib. § 5; 54; and see p. lvi.; *Pseudo-Sall. ad Cæs.* 2. 6; ib. 9; 12 (*maximo*); 13 fin.; *Nep.* 9. 2 (*magno*); *Liv.* 3. 33; 10. 9 (*majori*); 24. 36; ib. 46; 26. 40; 27. 45; 31. 42 (*maximo*); ib. 45; 34. 6 § 6; 37. 15; 38. 22 (*maximo*); 40. 26; 42. 27; *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 2. 9 § 36; *Sen. Ben.* 6. 1; *Ep.* 98. 1; *Curt.* 3. 4 § 3; 8. 14 § 16; *Vell.* 2. 95; *Plin.* 2 § 182; 8 § 97; *Just.* 20. 5 (*magno*); *S. C. ap. Bruns.* p. 111; *Fronto p.* 142 *Naber* (*magno*); *Tac. A.* 3. 54; 12. 11; 15. 15; *H.* 1. 79; *Papin. ap. Dig.* 6. 1. 64.



So *bello usui esse* Sall. *C.* 32; 39; *J.* 27; 36; 37; 91; 93; Liv. 44. 17; *ad bellum usui* Cæsar. *G.* 1. 38; Pseudo-Cæsar. *Bell. Afr.* 36; *in bellum usui* Liv. 31. 9; *in bello usui* Sall. *J.* 43.

In apposition Tac. *A.* 11. 14; *H.* 3. 20; *habere* Tac. *A.* 3. 31.

*utilitati* 'of service'; *esse* Cic. *Or.* 1. 8; *Planc.* 5 (*magnæ*); *R. P.* 2. 9 (*quantæ*).

### Of the Ablative.

Unlike the other cases the ablative has a confused birth. It plays a very important part in Latin, but the precise arrangement of its meanings, which shall best correspond either with the historical development, or with that living sense of its analogies, which the Roman writers had, is hard to determine. The arrangement which I have made is dictated by consideration of Latin usage only, excepting that I have been assisted in assigning the ablative of 'the standard of comparison' to the ablative proper ('place whence') by the fact of the genitive, not the dative, being so used in Greek. But the analogy of other languages, even those so nearly allied as Greek and Sanskrit, must not be pressed very far in such a matter. For it would not be difficult to account for any particular use of a case on more than one theory of its origin, as correlatively we find several relations expressible by more than one case. The dative in Latin sometimes occupies the positions which a genitive (§§ 1154, 1143), or an accusative (§ 1107) might claim; the genitive stands side by side with the ablative (§§ 1201, 1309, 1335), with the accusative (§ 1333), with the locative (§§ 1190, 1325); the ablative is used where the accusative is also found (§§ 1087, 1099, 1184, 1223) and the dative (§§ 1215, 1217, 1229). Moreover a class of verbs, which have a common general meaning, may have arrived at this meaning by a different path and from a different origin, and consequently find their appropriate companion in a different case. *Rego, impero*, and *potior, laedo* and *noceo, præsto* and *excello*, have respectively a general resemblance to one another in meaning, but yet, owing to their own special history, take different cases. It requires therefore a very careful analysis of the lexicography, as well as the grammar,

of two languages, before we can fairly treat the syntactical usages, at least of some kinds, in one, as entitled to much weight in deciding on the classification and arrangement of the usages in another. Delbrück has in his tract (*Ablativ Localis Instrumentalis im Altindischen Lateinischen Griechischen und Deutschen* 1867) instituted a comparison of the Latin ablative usages with those of Sanskrit, on the principle of taking the use in the Rigveda as the clue to the assignment of these usages among the three original cases. Knowing nothing of Sanskrit, I cannot test his accuracy, but I am glad to find that in the main the distribution appears to agree with mine. Specially to the ablative proper he refers the ablative of the 'standard of comparison,' and that after verbs and adjectives of want; to the locative, the 'ablative absolute'; to the instrumental, the ablative of 'manner,' 'time throughout which,' 'road by which,' 'price,' 'part concerned,' and the ablative after verbs denoting abundance, and in such expressions as *omnibus copiis proficiscitur*. The confusion of cases is not peculiar to Latin. The old Sanskrit has the same form for ablative and dative in plural, for ablative dative and instrumental in dual, and for genitive and locative in dual.

### Of the (so-called) Genitive of value or price.

I have ventured to refer this usage to the locative<sup>1</sup> and will briefly give my reasons. Those who may not agree with me in this, will still not object to find examples of this usage placed in the Grammar in immediate neighbourhood to those of the ablative. How great the intermixture of the two cases in this meaning is, may be seen from Madvig's account: viz., (1) that the *cost* or *price* may be expressed by this genitive of *tantus*, *quantus* and the comparatives; by the ablative of *nihilum*, *tantulum* and of the positives and superlatives: (2) that *value* is expressed by either the ablative or genitive after *estimo*, but, after other verbs (*duco*, *facio*, *habeo*, *pendo*, *puto*, *taxo* and *sum*), by the genitive only; and that in the language of every-day life after verbs of valuing (with a negative), *flocci*,

<sup>1</sup> Practically this is Key's view, but he calls the locative an 'old dative.' He points out that Catullus (17. 17) says, *nec pili facit uni* (not *unius*). *Lat. Gr.* § 946 note.

*nauci, assis (unius assis), teruncii, bujus* occur. There must have been some confusion or false analogy to produce such a result.

Now the only words which are shewn by their form to be genitive, as distinguished from locative, are (cf. § 1187) *pluris, minoris, majoris, bujus, assis, unius assis, decussis, centussis*. Of these *pluris* and *minoris* alone, I believe, occur more than once, and alone occur before Terence. They alone therefore seem to be of any real weight in this matter. *Pluris facere* occurs in Nævius (ap. Charis. p. 210 Keil), *pluris refert, pluris est, minoris facere* occur in Plautus; who has also *me nemo potest minoris quisquam nummo ut surgam subigere* (Pseud. 809) and possibly other expressions of the kind.

The use of the genitive is therefore certainly old, but it is not found in many words in the early language. Yet Latin was spoken for hundreds of years before Nævius, and simple expressions of value must have been among the earliest subjects of conversation. And there was every circumstance to make people think *tanti* and *magni* to be the genitive, and thus to give rise by a false analogy to *pluris* and *minoris*. For the form of the genitive and the locative were exactly alike both in *-o* stems and *-a* stems; indeed absolutely identical, if, as Bopp and others have supposed, the proper genitive was supplanted by the locative in these stems. Nor is this usage one, which, superficially regarded, is unlike other genitival usages. Hence if the case really was the locative, some such use as that of *pluris* and *minoris* might very probably have arisen from the specious appearance of analogy<sup>1</sup>. The existence of such true genitives in this sense is not therefore a fatal objection to the supposition that the original case was the locative.

But further, these words themselves are noticeable, especially *pluris*. If the Romans ceased to use the proper locative in these stems, it was not without reason. For, first, a locative or ablative singular from *plus* ceased to be in use in any sense. The only trace we have of it is in the assertion of Charisius (quoted in § 1187) that the ancients said *plure* or *minore emptum*, and in his quotations from Cicero and Lucilius (Keil, p. 109), and from Plautus, *plure altero tanto ejus fundus esse velim* (Keil, p. 211), to which

<sup>1</sup> Compare the discussion in § 1321.

may be added Lucil. xv. 23, *præterquam in pretio primus semisse, secundus nummo, tertius jam plurest quam totu' medimnus* (so L. Müller for codd. *plures*). In all these places the case is this ablative or locative of value or cost. And, curiously enough, the only other singular form of this so-called adjective, besides *plus* itself, is *pluris*, and *pluris* is used in this sense only. And the only instance of this singular being used as an adjective, not as a substantive, is in *pluris pretii* (see § 1187). Secondly, comparatives would often have an ablative (either of the measure § 1204, or standard of comparison § 1266) dependent on them, and this fact at once gives a reason for the eventual preference of *pluris* and *minoris* to *plure* and *minore*. (In C. Att. i. 12 we have *minore centesimis* used of interest; whether *minore* occurs elsewhere I do not know. Charisius refers to it; see above.) It is clear therefore that the forms *plure*, *minore*, which may have been locatives (locative and ablative being indistinguishable in *i* and consonant stems), once existed in this sense, and were, for the above-named or for some other reason, driven out of the field by *pluris*, *minoris*. Similarly *asse carum est* (§ 1196), a phrase of Cato's, shews a construction prior to *assis*, which Catullus used.

Now, if we look to the meaning and general habit of the cases, the improbability that this use originally belonged to the genitive seems to me considerable.

1. *Tanti*, *magni*, &c., qualify verbs not substantives. *Nihili* seems to be the only word of this class, which is used more than once, and, except *trioboli* in Plaut. *Pæn.* i. 2. 168, the only word used at all, with a substantive. Now the genitive, above all other cases, has the habit of depending on a noun; and, even when it does depend on a verb, seems to rest on some noun-notion in the verb; e.g. *impleo* = *plenum facio*; *indigeo* = *indigus sum*; *accuso sceleris* = *causam sceleris duco*, *memini* = *memor sum*; *pudet me* = *pudor me capit*, &c. (See also § 1327.)

2. The genitival usages most nearly approaching *tanti est*, &c., are such as (a) *facere dicionis*, *stulti esse* (§ 1282); (b) *facere lucri* or *compendi* (§ 1306); and (c) *vestis magni pretii* (§ 1308). But in the first two of these classes (a b) the person or thing denoted by the genitive is capable of being regarded as a possessor or a whole, whereas *tanti*, *magni*, &c., are words of the meagrest

meaning, not capable of filling the grooves of *stulti* or *lucri*. True, *floci*, *nauci*, &c., have somewhat more meaning, but no one will regard them as the originals and *tanti*, *magni*, &c., to be due to a supposed analogy with them. The descriptive genitive (*c*) has two characteristics: it is almost always dependent on a substantive, and itself shews a combination of adjective and substantive. If *tanti* be taken to be a substantivally used adjective, it fails to exhibit either of the two characteristics: and if we adopt the only other course, that of supposing the full form to have been *tanti pretii*, we must concede what should never be conceded without reluctance, an almost perpetual ellipse (of *pretii*). It is curious that while this last theory may claim in its favour the fact that *magni* (never *multi*, except in a fragment of Cato) is used, a contrary inference may be drawn from the fact that *pluris* is used and *majoris* never used, except once and that in Phædrus.

3. These simple quantitative adjectives used substantivally are a class not found in the genitive (at least in other uses) nor in the dative, the case which perhaps in character is nearest akin to the genitive; but found frequently in the adverbial accusative and the ablative, which are the cases standing nearest to the locative.

For the claims of the locative we have these considerations:

1. The form is quite right, with the exceptions of *pluris*, *minoris*, &c., and these are known to have been to some extent usurpers.

2. The locative is, like the forms under discussion, regularly dependent on verbs, not on nouns.

3. There is a similar interchange of these forms in *i* with the ablative in questions of amount (compare §§ 1186—1194 with 1196—1202), to that which is found between the locative and ablative in expressions of place where and time where. There is also some interchange with adverbs; comp. *care veneunt* (Varr. *R. R.* 3. 5. 2); *vilissime constare* (Cat. ap. Plin. 18 § 44): and *magni*, *pluris*, *multum*, *plus*, *magis*, *maxime*, all occur with *refert* and *interest* (cf. § 1189).

4. The meaning of the case seems to be precisely suitable. Value is naturally figured to the imagination by place on a scale. Compare English; 'at Rome,' 'at twelve o'clock,' 'at so much,' 'at a high price.'

Apart from the use of *pluris* and *minoris* I should have little or no hesitation in referring this usage to the locative; and the use of *pluris* and *minoris*, being quite capable of explanation on the locative theory, seems to me insufficient to outweigh the other considerations.

Greek can hardly be brought into the discussion, as its genitive differs in use greatly from the Latin genitive, and *ποῦ* is genitive as well as *πόσου*.

The confusion prevalent in actual use arose probably thus: The forms in *i* denoted *value*; the ablative denoted *price* (as a means). The forms in *-i* became naturally applied to price, and only by accident became in this use restricted to *tanti*, and *quantī*. The use of the ablative was extended to express value after *estimo*, perhaps through some original meaning of that word, and was excluded accidentally only from *tantus*, and *quantus*. *Pluris* and *minoris* in expressions of price supplanted *plure*, *minore*, according to Charisius, after Cicero's time.

### Of the Gerund and Gerundive.

The use of the Latin Gerund and Gerundive is so remarkable and apparently anomalous, that it has been the subject of much discussion from the times of the Roman grammarians to the present. Weissenborn has written an elaborate monograph on the subject (Eisenach 1844) in which he recounts and criticises with much fairness and sense, though in a very heavy style, the different theories which have been held, and adds a learned account of the use of the forms. This has been of much service to me, though the view I take was formed before I saw Weissenborn's book. The most important of the other books dealing with the matter, so far as I know are Madvig's *Bemerkungen*, p. 39 sq.; Donaldson's *Varronianus* (Chap. XI. § 13, pp. 428, 429 ed. 3); Corssen's *Krit. Beitr.* p. 120 sq.; *Nachtr.* p. 138 sq.; Pott's *Etym. Forsch.* II. p. 489 sq. ed. 2; Schömann's *Die Lehre von der Redetheilen*, p. 56 sq.; Schröder's paper in *Zeitschr. Vergl. Spr.* XIV. 350; and L. Tobler's paper in the same journal XVI. p. 241; Bopp, Schleicher, and L. Meyer's Comparative Grammars; and Ruddimann's, G. T. Krüger's,

Kühner's and Key's Latin Grammars. My view agrees most, I think, with Key's and Donaldson's, but partly with Madvig's.

I use the term *gerund* for the substantive in the nominative<sup>1</sup> as well as in the oblique cases; *gerundive* for the adjective.

The principal points on which the discussion turns are five: viz.

A. The use of the gerund in apparently both an active and passive sense; e.g. *Vir ad agendum idoneus* and *res ad tolerandum facilis*.

B. The coincidence in meaning of the oblique gerund and oblique gerundive; e.g. *cupido salutem dandi* and *cupido salutis dandæ*.

C. The meaning of *obligation* attached to the nominative use of both gerund and gerundive; e.g. *eundem est*, 'we (you, they) must go'; *hec facienda sunt*, 'This must be done.'

D. The coincidence of meaning of the old (active) form *agitandum est vigilas* with the more usual (apparently passive) form *agitandæ sunt vigilæ*.

E. The connexion of the gerund and gerundive with such phrases as *volvenda dies (hoc) attulit ultro* (Verg. *A.* 9. 7), and with the verbal adjectives in *-bundus* and *-cundus*.

I propose first to explain the development of these different usages; secondly to discuss briefly the origin of the form; lastly to point out some analogies in other languages. I put the parts of the discussion in this order, that I may avoid appearing even to base the development either upon a particular explanation of the form, or upon the usages of other languages. For the etymology of a suffix seems to me a matter which in the present state of our knowledge scarcely admits of sure conviction; and the usages of other languages, much as they may surprise us by their resemblance to Latin, yet, unless their several histories, as well as that of the Latin usage, are known, or at least probably conjectured, may be incomparable, because not analogous, but derived from a widely different origin.

<sup>1</sup> Krüger, Madvig, and others consider *agendum* in the nominative to be the neuter of the gerundive.

## i. The connexion of the Latin usages.

A. I assume as the primary notion of the gerund, that of a neuter verbal substantive expressing action (or state), less abstract than (say) a substantive in *-tion*, and practically equivalent in meaning to a declinable infinitive (cf. § 1342). Now when the gerund denotes an action which does not require or imply an object, or when its object is expressed in grammatical dependence upon it, no notion of a passive meaning can arise. But when the gerund does require or imply an object, and this object is expressed, or plainly presumed in the sentence, but is not grammatically dependent on the gerund, a notion of the gerund being passive will arise or not according to the sense and grammatical frame of the sentence. The two opposite poles are when the subject of the clause is the subject of the gerund (e.g. *vir aptus est ad judicandum*), and when the subject of the clause is the object of the gerund (e.g. *facilis est res ad judicandum*). I say 'subject of the clause,' because the relation may for this question be the same, when the gerund is not in direct relation to the subject of the sentence, e.g. *viro utor apto ad judicandum, rem ad judicandum facillimam propono*. But between these two poles lie other, which seem mediating, usages. Accordingly I arrange the usages of the (oblique) gerund thus:

1. An action either upon no object or upon an object grammatically dependent on the gerund. This may be either

(a) An action of the subject of the clause: e.g.

*Sum defessus quæritando.* (Pl. *Amph.* 1014.)

*Fac tibi jucundam vitam omnem pro illa sollicitudinem deponendo.*

(Sen. *Ep.* 4.)

*Judicem conciliabimus nobis non tantum laudando eum, sed &c.*

(Quint. 4. 1, § 16.)

(b) An action of a person or thing, which is named or clearly implied, but is not the subject of the clause: e.g.

*Per exordium orationis animus auditoris constituitur ad audiendum.*

(Corn. 1. 2.)

*Dies hic mihi, ut satis sit, vereor, ad agendum.* (Ter. *Andr.*



*Et difficiliorem cogitationem exprimit et expellit dicendi necessitas et secundos impetus auget placendi cupido.* (Quint. 10. 7, § 17.)

(c) An action quite abstractly, without reference to any particular subject: e.g.

*Triste enim est nomen ipsum carendi.* (C. T. D. 3. 36.)

*Hæ fere sunt emendate loquendi scribendique partes.* (Quint. 1. 7, § 32.)

*Audendo atque agendo res Romana crevit.* (L. 22. 14.)

*Hæc res ad volgi assensum spectat, et ad aurium voluptatem, quæ duo sunt ad judicandum levissima.* (C. Or. fin.)

2. An action upon a person or thing, which is named in the sentence, but is not grammatically dependent on the gerund.

(a) If the person or thing so named is not the subject of the clause, the gerund may or may not according to circumstances appear to assume a passive meaning.

*Multa sæpe ad te cobortandi gratia scripsimus.* (C. Off. 3. 2.)

*Cæsar oppidum ad diripiendum militibus concessit.* (Cæs. C. 3. 80.)

*Ornatissimos scriptores ad cognoscendum imitandumque delegit.* (C. Or. 3. 31.)

*Quanto illud flagitiosius cum, a quo pecuniam ob absolvendum acceperis, condemnare?* (C. Verr. 2. 32.)

and Cic. T. D. 1. 28 (quoted in § 1377).

(b) If the person or thing so named is the subject of the sentence, the gerund appears to assume a passive meaning: e.g.

*Ulcus inveterascit alendo.* (Lucr. 4. 1068.)

*Hæc ad judicandum sunt facillima.* (C. Off. 3. 6.)

*Ubi ad decuriandum aut centuriandum convenissent, sua voluntate ipsi inter sese, decuriati equites, centuriati pedites, conjurabant.* (L. 22. 38.)

*Adice cotidianas sollicitudines, quæ pro modo habendi quemque dis-cruciant.* (Sen. Ep. 115, § 16.)

The notion that the gerund is passive as well as active, is based on its use in such sentences as those under the last head. No doubt in such cases the subject of the sentence is the object of the action

denoted by the gerund. But the gerund is not predicated of the subject, and there is no difficulty in allowing it its active signification, the reference to its proper subject being easily supplied. In many cases the gerund should be regarded as purely abstract.

Other instances of this apparently passive, or quasi-passive use, are the following, which may be divided into three classes, the first (a) containing those instances in which the supposed subject of the gerund would, if expressed as its object, be in the accusative case; the second (b) containing those in which it would be in the dative or ablative case; the third (c) containing those instances, where the gerund may be regarded not as passive but as reflexive.

(a) ACCUSATIVE: *boves ad domandum proni* (Varr. R. R. 1. 20); *difficilis ad distinguendum similitudo* (C. Or. 2. 53); *cibus facillimus ad concoquendum* (C. Fin. 2. 28); *beluam facilem ad subigendum frenat* (C. R. P. 2. 40); *res difficilis ad explicandum* (C. Att. 2. 6); *res ad patiendum tolerandumque difficilis* (C. T. D. 2. 7); *quo ad cognoscendum omnia magis illustria sint* (Sall. J. 5 § 3); *equi ante domandum ingentis tollunt animos* (Verg. G. 3. 206).

DATIVE: *nullum semen ultra quadrimum utile est, dumtaxat serendo* (Plin. 19 § 181); *ferrum rubens non est habile tundendo* (Plin. 34 § 149).

ABLATIVE: *servi studiosiores ad opus fiunt liberalius tractando* (Varr. R. R. 1. 17. 7); *catuli, quam paucissimos reliqueris, tam optimi in alendo fiunt* (Varr. R. R. 2. 9 § 12); *anulus subter tenuatur babendo* (Lucr. 1. 312); *fluctus murmur dant in frangendo graviter* (id. 6. 143); *ne fando quidem auditum* (C. N. D. 1. 29); *fando aliquid pervenit ad auris* (Verg. A. 2. 81); *videbamus, quemadmodum res obscuræ dicendo fierent apertiores, sic res apertas obscuriores fieri oratione* (C. Inv. 2. 51); *id malum opprimi sustentando ac prolatando nullo modo potest* (C. Cat. 4. 4); *tellus lentescit babendo* (Verg. G. 2. 250); *urit videndo femina* (ib. 3. 215); *vulnera curando fieri majora* (Ov. Pont. 3. 7. 25); *differendo elanguit res* (Liv. 5. 26); *res sæpius usurpando excitata* (7. 2); *se daturum (venenum), quod nec in dando nec datum ullo signo deprendi posset* (L. 42. 17); *vel optima nomina non appellando fieri mala fenerator Alpbius dixit* (Col. 1. 7. 2); *memoria excolendo augetur* (Quint. 11. 2. 1).

GENITIVE: *navis inchoandi exordium cepit* (Ennius ap. Corn.

2. 22); *esse in imaginibus causa videtur cernundi* (Lucr. 4. 257); *jus lectica per urbem vebendi* (Suet. Claud. 28; but *vebens* also is used of the person carried). So *equitum turmas frequenter recognovit, reducto more transvectionis, sed in travebendo, &c.* (Suet. Aug. 38). In some of the half compounds with *facere* we see a similar use of an apparently active form to suggest a passive sense, e.g. *perterrefacio*, 'I frighten' (cf. § 994).

(b) ACCUSATIVE: *Equus bujuscemodi, cum est æger, ad medendum est appositus* (Varr. R. R. 2. 7. 25); *Jugurtha ad imperandum vocatur*, 'to receive commands' (Sall. J. 62); *nunc ades ad imperandum vel ad parendum potius, sic enim antiqui loquebantur* (C. Fam. 9. 25); *pecus ad vescendum hominibus apta* (C. N. D. 2. 64); *pecudes ad vescendum videmus* (C. T. D. 1. 28); *voluptas percipitur rebus exquisitissimis ad epulandum* (C. Fin. 2. 28).

DATIVE: perhaps *charta emporetica inutilis scribendo* (Plin. 13 § 76).

ABLATIVE: *violentia ægrescit medendo* (Verg. A. 12. 40); *cantando rumpitur anguis* (id. B. 8. 71).

GENITIVE: *unus imperitat, nullis jam exceptionibus, non precario jure parendi* (Tac. G. 44); perhaps *habet percipiendi notam* 'it has a mark by which one perceives it' (C. Ac. 2. 31).

Abstract substantives are found used in a similar manner; e.g. *iter summa cum admiratione fecimus* (C. Att. 5. 11 § 5); *cum privamur dolore, ipsa liberatione et vacuitate omnis molestiæ gaudemus* (C. Fin. 1. 11); cf. §§ 1387, 1390; Nägelsbach, *Stilistik* § 59. Pott (*l. c.* pp. 504, 505) compares Fr. *Il est digne de remarquer*: Germ. *bemerkenswerth*; so *das Kleid ist noch zu tragen, prächtig anzusehen*: Ital. *bello a vedere*; Gr. ἀνὴρ ῥάων φυλάσσειν.

(c) *Ceteris, quæ moventur, hoc principium est movendi* (which however may be taken actively; C. T. D. 1. 23); *neque signo recipiendi dato constiterant* (Cæs. G. 7. 52); *quibus ad recipiendum crates disjectæ magno impedimento fuerunt* (Cæs. C. 3. 46); *pueros ante urbem lusus exercendique causa producere* (L. 5. 27); *robur legionum perexiguo ad instruendum dato tempore, aciem direxit* (L. 28. 22); *vix spatium instruendi fuit* (L. 31. 21); *dat ipsa lex potestatem defendendi* (C. Mil. 4).

Compare also the use of *parcens*, *versans* (e.g. L. 2. 46), *vebens*, *volvens* (e.g. Verg. G. 1. 163); *volutans* (e.g. Verg. A. 3. 607); *loca nuda gignentium* 'of growing things' (Sall. J. 81); *res moventes* 'moveables' (L. 5. 25). See Neue II. 103: Madvig *ad C. Fin.* 1. 20, and in Liv. Vol. III. Part I. p. xxix.

B. The gerundive is due to an attraction<sup>1</sup> caused by a concurrence of three tendencies.

(1) The sense of the active meaning of the gerund is weakened by its being thus used either as a mere equivalent for an abstract substantive, or without having for its subject the subject of the sentence. The mind is thus predisposed to accept a passive usage as compatible with the form.

(2) The object of the action, which is denoted by the gerund, must often be in some sort an object or qualification of that on which the gerund depends. Thus by comparing

*Peligni miserunt Romam oratores pacis petendæ amicitiaque*

(L. 9. 45 fin.)

with *Ad senatum pacis oratores missi* (L. 9. 43) we see that *pacis* will express the meaning as well as *pacis petendæ = pacem petendi*.

So in such sentences as

*Materiam excitandi belli querebat* (L. 1. 22);

*Dictator feriarum constituendarum causa dicitur* (L. 7. 28);

*Hic adeo his rebus anulus fuit initium inveniendis* (Ter. Hec. 821);

*Galli locum oppido condendo ceperunt* (L. 39. 22);

*Hodie stat Asia Luculli institutis servandis et quasi vestigiis persequendis* (C. Ac. 2. 1);

*His artibus instituimur, ad hunc usum forensem, ad capessendam rem publicam, ad honorem, gloriam, dignitatem* (C. Cæl. 30);

*Cesar ad vexandos hostes profectus* (Cæs. G. 6. 43);

*In voluptate spernenda virtus vel maxime cernitur* (C. Leg. 1. 19);

we might omit the gerundive, and yet have much the same sense, though not so clearly defined and guarded against ambiguity. But that sense would be more precisely given, if the gerundive were in each of these sentences converted into the gerund, and the substan-

<sup>1</sup> So also says M. Schmidt (ap. Weissenborn, p. 93).

tive were made dependent on it. All these changes would not be in conformity with the Latin usage<sup>1</sup>, but that is not now the question. They help to shew us how easily the mind might be led to view the case, in which the gerund itself stands, as not inapplicable to the word which in strict meaning depends upon the gerund. This word however, (if the gerundive did not exist as well as the gerund,) would have a different case, and therefore be out of relation to the word which governed the gerund.

An attempt seems at one time to have been made to preserve the gerund, and yet to put the dependent substantive into direct relation to the principal governor. The following are all the instances of this that are now extant and trustworthy (see Madvig *ad C. Fin.* 1. 18). *Nominandi istorum tibi erit magis quam edundi copia* (Pl. *Capt.* 848); *date crescendi copiam, novarum qui spectandi faciunt copiam* (Ter. *Haut.* 29); *pænarum solvendi tempus* (Lucr. 5. 1225); *principium generandi animalium* (Varr. *R. R.* 2. 1); *exemplorum eligendi potestas* (C. *Inv.* 2. 1); *reiciundi amplius quam trium judicum potestatem* (Verr. 2. 31); *earum rerum nullam neque infitiandi rationem neque defendendi facultatem* (ib. 4. 47); *facultas agrorum suis latronibus condonandi* (Phil. 5. 3, quoted at length in § 1396); *eorum adipiscendi causâ* (Fin. 5. 7); *reliquorum siderum quæ causa conlocandi fuerit, quæque eorum sit conlocatio, differendum* (Tim. 9); and perhaps *quarum potiendi spe* (Fin. 1. 18); *licentia diripiendi pomorum et obsoniorum* (Suet. *Aug.* 98 but text doubtful); and three passages in Gellius, 4. 15 § 1; 5. 10 § 5; 16. 8 § 3. The similarity of the governing substantive (*copia, potestas, ratio, facultas, causa, principium, &c.*) in all these cases is noticeable.

In the following sentences Madvig considers the gerund to form as it were one notion with the substantive: *quarum (translationum) aut inveniendi rationem aut genera ponam* (C. *Or.* 3. 38); *omnium rerum una est definitio comprehendendi* (Ac. 2. 41); *quorum (sc. verborum) quattuor explanandi gradus* (Varr. *L. L.* 5 § 7). Compare *quæ omnia perfacilem rationem habent reprehendendi* (C. *Cel.* 26); *omnis res eandem habet naturam ambigendi* (Or. 3. 29).

Madvig thinks the desire of avoiding the long termination of the

<sup>1</sup> See § 1375 sqq.; Madvig *Opusc.* 1. 380 sq.; Weissenborn *de gerundivo* p. 113 n. Corssen (*Beitr.* p. 134) seems actually to believe in such expressions as *ad levandum fortunam* even in Cicero.

genitive plural of the gerundive had something to do with this use. There seem indeed to be at most two instances of it, in which the substantive is not in the plural; viz. *ejus* (sc. *uxoris*) *videndi cupidus* (Ter. *Hec.* 372), and *lucis tuendi copiam* (Pl. *Capt.* 1008). But Cicero was not always solicitous to avoid the sonorous termination; e.g. *audaciæ decemviralis corrumpendarum tabularum publicarum, fingendorumque senatus consultorum* (Agr. 2. 14). Many other instances are quoted by Ruddiman 2. 253.

[The usual mode of accounting for this gerund (adopted by Corssen, Key, &c.), viz. that the gerund as a substantive (*condonandi* = *condonationis*) has here a genitive dependent upon it, is liable to the objection, that it is only the *genitive* gerund that is ever so used, whereas the theory would equally account for the dative, ablative, or accusative, gerund having a similar use. Weissenborn (p. 122) takes a middle line, and suggests that the genitive was so far substantival that it could, as we see in these instances, have a genitive dependent, but so predominantly verbal, that it had this rarely, and only when it was supported by another substantive. As this support could be given only to the genitive gerund, the genitive gerund alone is found in this use.]

(3) A string of substantival words dependent on each other is very awkward; but besides awkwardness, ambiguity arises from the tendency of Latin (as of German) to inclose the governed words between the first links of the chain.

Thus if a Latin writer had put *ad veterum rerum memoriam comprehendendum impulsus sumus* (cf. C. *Brut.* 5) a hearer or reader would have at first naturally supposed *ad* to be connected with *memoriam*, and *comprehendendum* would have been perplexing.

Again in *vestis frigus depellendi causa reperta primo est* (cf. C. *Or.* 3. 38) *vestis* and *frigus* might at first be supposed to be in some way co-ordinate with one another, or *frigus* might be supposed to depend on some verb at the end of the sentence. The substitution of *frigoris* for *frigus* removes this ambiguity.

Livy (34. 48) speaking of Philip's præfects says *cum suæ factionis hominum vires augendo jus ac libertatem aliorum deprimerent*. This would have been clearer, if he had written *augendis suæ factionis hominum viribus*.

To these three causes (1, 2, 3) concurrent I am inclined to refer the rise of the gerundive. To avoid ambiguity by giving gerund and dependent noun identical or at least corresponding inflexions, to gratify an instinctive sense of a real connexion between the word which governs, and the word which the gerund governs, by giving it a grammatical expression, and to do this at the cost only of using, as if it were passive, a form not identical but cognate with an active form, which active form itself sometimes almost demanded a passive signification to be given to it—to do this, by the creation of the gerundive, was a triumph of grammatical genius, and the result is seen in the great flexibility combined with precision which characterises much of the Latin style. The creation was long prior to any Latin literature which we possess, and probably to any systematic grammatical study; it was a natural growth, and as such took place gradually and left several traces in the language in the shape of transitional usages, which survived by the side of those more fully developed. Or rather, it may be more correct to say, the causes which produced the gerundive, being continually present, were always capable of initiating the process afresh, and thus Cicero, when he says *agrorum...condonandi*, is not necessarily to be conceived as reproducing an archaism, but as (at least partly) again venturing by a natural instinct on the path which had already led to the discovery of the gerundive.

The gerundive when created was instinctively subjected to regulation in accordance with the analogies which led to it. Theory regarded it as passive; therefore it should not be used in intransitive verbs. The exceptions are very few; three of them are from Varro; they are all expressions of the same nature and all from verbs in *-sc-*. *Seclum spatium annorum centum vocarunt, dictum a sene, quod longissimum spatium senescendorum hominum id putarant* (Varr. *L. L.* 6. 11), where *senesc. hom.* is 'of the old-ageing of man.' (*Senescendi hominibus* would have been better Latin.) *Ad homines quoque nascendos vim numeri istius porrigi pertinereque ait M. Varro* (Gell. 3. 10 § 7), i.e. 'to the birth of men.' *Præter hoc modum esse dicit summum adolescendi humani corporis septem pedes* (ibid. § 10), 'of the growth of the human body.' *Ædis Floræ quæ rebus florescendis præest*, 'over the flowering of things' (Verrius Flaccus in the Prænestine Calendar, *Corp. I. R.* 1. 317).

C. The nominative of the gerund is used with the verb *est*, and with a substantive in the dative case to express the agent; and though both *est* and dative are often omitted, the full expression seems to be the original, and best expresses the meaning. Now as *est mihi domus* means 'there is a house for me' or 'I have a house,' so *est mihi agendum* means 'there is acting for me' or 'I have an acting.' And since *egi* or sometimes *est mihi* (or *a me*) *actum* means 'I have acted,' 'action has been taken by me,' and *ago*, or sometimes *a me agitur*, means 'I am acting,' or 'action is being taken by me,' *est mihi agendum* can be used without risk of confusion for 'I have action to take,' 'I am to act.' This notion of an action existing, but unperformed, is in fact the notion of an action requiring to be done. The action exists in the imagination, as a spur to the will. The phrase thus acquires or contains the notion of obligation<sup>1</sup>, but the notion does not lie in the word itself, etymologically considered, but in the predication; and predication may exist in this case as in others, though the word *est* be not present to express it.

That this notion of obligation is not in the form, but in the predication of an abstract substantive, denoting action, is seen from the similar meaning of the verbal substantives in *-ion* (cf. § 1400): e.g.

*Mibi cautiost, ne nucifrangibula excussit ex malis meis* (Pl. *Bac.* 598), 'I must take care' = *cavendumst*. So Ter. *Andr.* 400. *Me sinas curare ancillas, quæ meast curatio* (Pl. *Cas.* 2. 3. 43) = *quod mihi est curandum*.

The use of *opus est*, *usus est* is analogous also. Both these expressions have the notion absorbed into the words themselves, so that *opus* and *usus* have come to mean not 'work' and 'employment' but 'need.' *Usus est filio viginti minis* is not what it should literally mean 'some one is employing 20 minæ for my son,' but 'my son requires 20 minæ.'

<sup>1</sup> The equivalence of the gerund and gerundive to an infinitive with *oportet* is clearly seen in such sentences as *In cubilibus quom parturient, acus substernendum, quom pepererunt, tollere substramen et recens aliud subicere* (Varr. *B. B.* 3. 9. 8), where *tollere* and *subicere* are used as if *substernere oportet* had preceded. So *Quod si dies notandus fuit, eumne potius, quo natus, an eum quo sapiens factus est?* (C. *Fin.* 2. 31), where *eum* (object) shews that *notare oportuit* is supposed to have preceded. See other passages in Madvig's note ad C. *Fin.* 1.c.



Other phrases somewhat similar have obtained a different shade of meaning, that of *possibility*, e.g. *quod versu dicere non est* (Hor. S. 1. 5. 87); *neque est te fallere quicquam* (Verg. G. 4. 447); *necnon et Tityon terræ omniparentis alumnus cernere erat* (id. A. 6. 595). So also *regressus inde in tuto non erat* (L. 38. 4), 'there was no retracting' = 'they could not retract.' *Erat nulla omnino recusatio* (C. Rab. P. 10), 'there was no refusing' = it could not be refused; *ibi occultatio nulla est* (C. Att. 9. 13 § 5), 'there no concealment is possible' (Nägelsbach, § 58). How much in these matters depended on the context and on association with particular phrases or turns of language, is seen from comparing *est dicere* (above) with *hæc fere dicere habui* (§ 1345), 'I had to say' = *hæc mihi erant dicenda*.

There is nothing in the origin of this usage of the gerund which should restrict it either to transitive or to intransitive verbs, and accordingly we find instances of both. But while the gerund from intransitive verbs is at all times frequent, with and without an indirect object, the gerund from transitive verbs is usual, only where no object is specified. Thus *serviundum populo est*, *utendum est populo*, *eundum est*, *agendum est*, are all normal expressions; but *agendum est hanc rem* is used by two writers only in more than isolated passages. These writers are Lucretius and Varro, both comparatively early writers, and both lovers of older language than their time. The following list contains all the instances (except in Varro) that I have met with:

PLAUTUS Trin. 869 (quoted § 1398).

AFRANIUS. *Optandum uxorem quæ non vereatur viri* (ap. Non. p. 496 = 99 ed. Ribbeck). As however this is a single line, we can scarcely be sure that *optandam* (as part of an infinitive sentence) was not what Afranius wrote:

Lucretius 1. III (quoted § 1398); 138; 381; 2. 492; II 29; 3. 391 (e conj.); 4. 777; 5. 43; 6. 917 (3. 626 and 926 are not properly instances, as the accusative is subject to an oblique predicate and is not a mere object).

Varro L. L. 7. 4; 9. 48; ib. III; R. R. 1. 6 § 1; II § 2; 12 § 1; 17 § 5; 20 § 1 bis &c.; 2. 2 § 13; § 18; 7 § 11; § 12 &c.; 3. 9 § 6; § 8; § 13 ter &c. (Instances of transitive

gerunds without a direct object expressed, and of the gerundive used predicatively, are also common.)

CICERO *Scaur.* 7; *Sen.* 2 (quoted § 1398).

CATULL. 39. 9 (quoted § 1398).

VERGIL *A.* II. 230 (on authority of Donatus and Servius).

SILIUS II. 562; 15. 105.

QUINTIL. 4. 5 § 17 (Halm reads *audenda*, against the Ambr. MS. which has *audendum*).

PAPINIAN ap. *Dig.* 15. 1. 50 § 3 (*admittendum esse distinctionem* &c.).

TRYPHONINUS ap. *Dig.* 49. 15. 12 § 2.

PAULUS ap. *Dig.* 2. 11. 12 § 1; 3. 5. 19 § 1 (*reddendum rationem intellegi*); 46. 2. 19 fin.

If we may suppose, as seems most natural, that these instances of the transitive gerund used with a direct object are but relics of a use much more common once, they form a significant fact in the history of these forms. The eventual disappearance of this use altogether and its rarity in most writers find a ready solution in the rise of the gerundive and its application as a predicate.

D. This predicative use of the gerundive was inevitable, when its use for the oblique gerund had become established, and may very probably have been developed along with that. For *virtus colenda est* stands in the same relation to *virtutem est colendum* that *ad virtutem colendam* does to *ad virtutem colendum*. Just as the object of the gerund is in some sort frequently an object of that on which the gerund depends, so the object of *colendum est* would also be a possible subject to *est*. That is to say, *virtutem mihi colendum est* and *virtus mihi est* might together produce *virtus mihi est colenda*. As soon as this last usage had grown up, and the conception of a passive signification became attached to an adjectival gerund, (as the gerundive would at first appear to be,) the active use (e.g. *virtutem est colendum*) becomes an awkward-looking anomaly, and is retained only where it is justified by the analogy of other passive forms, i.e. as a so-called impersonal in the third person and neuter gender. And as they said *virtus colitur*, *virtus culta est*, and *virtuti invidetur*,

*virtuti inuisum est*, so while they could say *virtus colenda est*, they might say *virtuti invidendum est*. But to say *virtutem colendum est* would have been as irregular as to say *virtus invidenda est*; and if *virtutem colendum est* was to be allowed, there would be risk of people saying *virtutem cultum est* and *virtutem colitur*. But such expressions as *actum est* and *agitur* were used absolutely, though from a transitive verb; and accordingly *agendum est* was similarly retained.

There are two points which, though certainly not conclusive, seem to afford some confirmation of this view, that the passive sense of the gerundive is really due to an attraction and not to any original passive meaning.

(a) The agent with passive verbs is regularly expressed by the ablative with *ab*; the agent with the gerundive is regularly expressed by the dative (§ 1152). There are, it is true, instances of the use of a dative with the passive participle, very few of its use with other parts of the passive verb: and there are instances of the ablative with *ab* being used with the gerundive; but they are by no means numerous; and moreover it is not absolute, but relative, frequency which has most bearing on this point. Of the relative frequency the best test is the examination of a continuous passage.

In the first book of Cicero *de officiis*, if I have counted rightly, there are

- (a) 22 instances of *ab* with agent after past participle passive;
- (b) 15       ,,       ,,       ,, after finite passive verb;
- (c) 11       ,,       dative of agent after gerundive.

In the second *Philippic* the numbers are respectively (a) 31, (b) 12 and (c) 8.

In neither of these writings is there a single instance of the agent being expressed either by the dative after a passive, or by the ablative with *ab* after a gerundive.

The speech *pro lege Manilia* happens to contain two instances of *ab* with the agent after the gerundive. But it contains (in Madvig's edit.) 24 instances of *ab* with the agent after passive verbs [viz. 17 instances of (a), and 7 of (b)]; 10 instances of (c); and no instance of the dative of the agent after a passive. (I do not reckon instances of *videor*, for they belong to a different class, § 1148.)

So much for the relative frequency of the usage. As to its absolute frequency, all the instances of the gerundive used with the agent expressed by the ablative with *ab*, that I have been able to find referred to in grammars and annotations, are the following:—

CORNIFICIUS I. 3 § 5.

CICERO *Or.* 2. 20 § 85; 3. 36 § 147; *Part. Or.* 30 § 103; *Verr.* 3. 24 § 60; *Font.* 19 § 42; *Cæcin.* 12 § 33; *Man.* 2 § 6; 12 § 34; *Agr.* 2. 35 init.; *C. Rabir.* 2 init.; *Mur.* 26 § 54; *Sull.* 8 § 23; *post red. in sen.* 12 § 31; *Har. Resp.* 3 § 5; *Sest.* 18 § 41; *Balb.* 3 § 7; *Planc.* 3 § 8; 32 § 78; *Scaur.* 22 § 44; *Mil.* 38 § 104; *Phil.* 3. 8 § 21; 13. 11 § 24; 14. 4 § 11; *Att.* 6. 6 § 4; 10. 4 § 6; 11. 3 § 3; 13. 30 § 2; *Fam.* 3. 11 § 3; 13. 16 § 2; 15. 4 § 11; *Brut. ap. C. Fam.* 11. 20.

LIVIVS 9. 40 § 17 (*initium fori ornandi ab ædilibus*).

OVID *Met.* 8. 710.

JUVENAL 12. 14.

In most cases the reason of divergence from the ordinary construction is evident (see § 1147). It will be observed that no instance is produced from early writers<sup>1</sup>, and that Cicero has most of these instances, as he has of those on p. lxviii.

(b) The other point is that deponent verbs have the gerundive in full use just as much as other verbs. Now deponents are verbs which have received passive (or reflexive) inflexions in order to adapt their original stem to the meaning they are to bear, and cannot consequently make a further use of these inflexions in order to have a passive meaning as well as an active one. And besides the forms with (ordinarily) passive inflexions, which with them have an active meaning, they also take the present and future participles belonging to the active voice, and attach to them active meanings. If therefore the gerundive is really passive, it would be the single passive form to which they gave a passive sense, i. e. the passive of that which appears to us, who translate the deponent by an active verb, to be their ordinary active sense.

<sup>1</sup> Ter. *Andr.* 156 is not an instance.

Corssen indeed in order to justify his supposition of the gerundive's being a form common to active and passive voices, instances the use of some past participles of deponents, e.g. *testatus*, *meditatus* &c. (cf. § 734) in both an active and passive sense. But the cases are far from parallel. (a) The passive meaning of such words is exceptional, as compared with their ordinary use, whereas the use of the gerundive is universal. (b) Some of these verbs had in the early language an active form, and the use of the participle in *-to* as passive is a reminiscence of the fact. (c) The form in *-to*, being in the great mass of verbs passive, was not unnaturally so used even in deponents, when the reason of their being deponents had faded from the consciousness of the language.

From this predicative use of the gerundive, analogous to the nominative gerund, have arisen two other uses of the gerundive in which it stands alone.

1. The use of the gerundive in such expressions as *Demus nos philosophiæ excolendos*, *Pontem faciendum locant*, &c. is obviously a natural extension of the foregoing usages of the gerundive. The former sentence, it might be thought, exhibits an extension principally of D; the latter of B.

Now the words used with such a dependent gerundive are such as the following. (Instances of those here given without a reference will be found in § 1401.) *Accipere* (Verg. *A.* 6. 770); *adnotare* (Plin. *Ep.* 10. 96); *attribuere* (C. *Cat.* 4. 6); *conducere* (C. *Div.* 2. 21); *curare* (often); *denotare* (C. *Man.* 3); *deposcere* (Suet. *Vitel.* 1); *dividere*; *dare* (often); *edicere* (Verg. *A.* 3. 235); *edocere*; *ferre* (Plin. *Ep.* 5. 14); *habere*; *locare* (often); *mandare* (Suet. *Jul.* 26); *obicere* (L. 3. 19 § 9); *permittere* (Ov. *M.* 1. 57); *petere* (Pl. *Aul.* 397); *ponere* (Verg. *A.* 4. 602); *præbere* (Ov. *M.* 2. 866); *propinare* (Ter. *Eun.* 1087); *relinquere* (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 7. 19); *rogare*; *suscipere*; *tradere* (Hor. *S.* 2. 5. 51); *vovere* (C. *R. P.* 2. 20). In all these cases the proper object of the verb is the person or thing itself, not the doing of the action upon the person or thing. All these verbs can have as their object a substantive of this kind in the accusative and without the gerundive. Nor do we ever find the gerund used as a substitute for such a gerundival expression. Hence we may conclude that this usage is not so much a development of B, as of D.

Another class of expressions is at first sight similar: e.g. *Non illi ornandum M. Catonem sed relegandum, nec illi committendum illud negotium sed imponendum putaverunt* (C. Sest. 28). So probably *sistendam puellam promittere* (L. 3. 45 § 3). These instances are to the others as *scio eum (esse) mortuum* is to *relinquo eum mortuum*. In both sentences *mortuum* is a predicate, but the object of *scio* is *eum mortuum* or *eum esse mortuum*, the object of *relinquo* is *eum* only; the sense of *relinquo eum* is complete, though the information is incomplete. (Comp. an analogous matter noticed in the note to § 1349, p. 141.)

2. Finally the use of the gerundive as a mere attributive, e.g. *Dividit ut bona diversis, fugienda petendis* (Hor. S. I. 3. 114); *Definiunt animi agrotationem opinionem vehementem de re non expetenda, tamquam valde expetenda sit* (C. T. D. 4. 11); *Juvenis memorande* (Verg. A. 10. 793); *Huic timendo hosti obvius fui* (L. 21. 41), &c., has arisen from its use as a secondary predicate. The form itself has become able to convey the notion of obligation without, at least, any plain and manifest mark of predication.

The occasional use of this form to express, not so much *obligation*, as *possibility*<sup>1</sup> (§ 1406), is not surprising after the evidence of the connexion of the two ideas which has been given above (pp. lxxi, lxxii). It was not till post-classical times, that the gerundive came to be used as a mere future participle passive; e.g. *cum omnibus se prospiceret undique periculis opprimeundum* (Ammian. 18. 5. 2).

The use of the gerundive in this sense of obligation &c. is limited, like its use as a substitute for the oblique gerund, to transitive verbs. The exceptions appear to be but few, and admit of easy explanation<sup>2</sup>. *Fruendus, fungendus, potiundus, utendus*, all used in good writers, are justified by the verbs to which they belong having originally had their object in the accusative (§ 1223). So also *carendus* (Ov. H. 1. 50), *vescendus* (Plin. 20 § 41), *dolendus* (C. T. D. 5. 17 &c.), *erubescendus* (Hor. Od. 1. 27. 15, &c.), *medendus* (L. 8. 36), may all find a justification in the fact of a direct object being found with the finite verb; e.g. *parentes careo* (Turpil.

<sup>1</sup> The gerundive in Plin. 18, § 265, *quamquam his et in villa petendis*, is curious.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Neue II. 188, 192, 262.

ap. Non. p. 466); *laurus vescor* (Tib. 2. 5. 64, &c.); *meum casum luctumque doluerunt* (C. Sest. 69); *jura erubuit* (Verg. *A.* 2. 541); *quas mederi possis* (Ter. *Pborm.* 822). *Pudendus* (= *cujus aliquem pudet*) found in Augustan poets and other writers, *pœnitendus* (L. 1. 3. 5), *supersedendus* (Corn. 2. 17), *gloriandus* (C. T. D. 5. 17), *desuescendus* (Quint. 3. 8. 70), *regnandus*<sup>1</sup> (Verg. *A.* 6. 770), are irregularities of the same sort as our English 'reliable.' *Nox dormienda* (Catul. 5. 6), *nox vigilanda* (Tib. 1. 2. 76), have arisen from a confusion of the accusative expressing the duration of time with an accusative of the direct object. But it must be added that it is chiefly by reference to the theory of the gerundive's being properly passive, that there arises a necessity for any justification. The instances from Plautus are probably mere comic formations purposely irregular: *Si illa tibi placet, placenda dos quoque est quam dat tibi*, 'The dower must please' (*Trin.* 1159). *Puppis pereunda est probe*, 'The stern must be finely perished' (*Epid.* 1. 1. 70).

E. There is another use of stems in *-undo*, which must not be left out of sight. *Volvendus* 'rolling' occurs in several places; *Clamor ad cælum volvendus per æthera vagit* (Enn. *Ann.* 520, p. 76 Vahlen); *plumbea glans longo cursu volvenda calescit* (Lucr. 6. 177); so also in Lucr. 5. 514; 1276; Verg. *A.* 1. 269; 9. 7. *Oriundus* 'sprung' is pretty frequent; e.g. *o sanguen dis oriundum* (Enn. *Ann.* 117), *meminerint sese unde oriundi sient* (Plaut. *Aul.* 534); &c. (see Lexx.); *secundus* 'following' from *sequor*; *rotundus* probably 'wheeling,' hence 'round'; *blandus* 'blowing'; and perhaps *Kalendæ*, have a similar origin; and *crepundia* is connected with *crepare* 'to rattle' (see § 817). *Jucundus* 'pleasing' and some other stems in *-cundo* (§ 820) have the same suffix; as have also numerous stems in *-bundo* (§§ 818, 819), some of which in the historians are found used as present participles with an object accusative (§ 1405). Though some of these (e.g. *oriundus*, *secundus*, *jucundus*, &c.) have become mere adjectives without any specially verbal use, the meaning of a present participle appears clearly to be the original meaning with all. And this participle was not passive. The only

<sup>1</sup> *Regnatus*, 'ruled over,' is common; *regnari* is only in Tacitus.

words which could suggest a passive meaning are *volvendus*, *oriundus* and *rotundus*. But in the case of *volvendus* Vergil has negated the necessity of the supposition by putting *volventibus*<sup>1</sup> *annis* (*A.* 1. 234) by the side of *volvendis mensibus* (*ib.* 269); and Lucretius speaks of *volventia lustra* (5. 931), as he does of *volvenda ætas* (*ibid.* 1276): *oriundus* is from a deponent (comp. also *oriens*); and *rotundus* may be compared to *rotans* in Vergil's *saxa rotantia late impulerat torrens* (*A.* 10. 362). The precise origin of the *b* in *-bundo* and *c* in *-cundo* is not clear. The *b* is generally held to be of the root seen in *fui*<sup>2</sup>, and reminds us of the tense-endings *-bam*, *-bo*. The *c* may be the same as in the verbal suffix *-sc*. But the correspondence of the labial and guttural suffixes is seen not only in *mira-bundus*, *ira-cundus*; but in *voca-bulum*, *mira-culum*; *volutabrum*, *simula-crum*; *super-bus*, *pris-cus*; &c.

The connexion between this use of stems in *-undo*, and the ordinary gerund and gerundive, is not obvious, though an Englishman may be excused for thinking so, when he finds he can translate *volvendo lapides*, and *volvendis lapidibus*, by the same words 'by rolling pebbles,' and that too whether *volvendis* be taken to be a true gerundive or a present participle, as used by Lucretius and Vergil. And, as we shall see later on, this same form in *-ing* is sometimes used in English to imply obligation or possibility, like the gerund and gerundive. But the use of the English form itself requires explanation; and it is therefore necessary to put out of sight, so far as one can, the English idiom, and discuss the question more abstractly. I have shewn how in my view all the uses of the Latin gerund and gerundive may be explained, if we start from a neuter singular verbal substantive, denoting action. The participial use of stems in *-undo* is, as I have said, the use of a present participle of the active voice; i.e. it is the use of an adjective describing a person or thing by its action or state at the moment spoken of. The connexion between these may be any one of three. Either (a) the neuter singular of this present participle has become abstract, and denotes (as gerund) action itself instead of a thing acting

<sup>1</sup> So also *volventia plaustra* (*G.* 1. 163).

<sup>2</sup> This theory has found a new opponent in Savelsberg (*Umbr. Stud.* p. 91, sqq.), who regards the *b* as arisen from a present suffix *v*. This is not the place to discuss the matter.



or being; or (b) the adjective (i. e. participial) use has grown out of the substantive, and words denoting action have, without any further change or suffix, except those of gender and number, come to describe persons or things to which the action is attributed; or (c) both forms have a common origin, the uses being collateral to, not derived from, one another. Lest any should think that the second alternative is excluded on the ground that *regendum* presupposes *regendus*, I add that this would be true only, if language presumed all our grammatical pigeon-holes; whereas language is before grammar, and can coin *odium* without *odius* (masc.) or *odia* (fem.), and *elegantia* (fem.) without either *elegantius* (m.) or *elegantium* (n.). Words are formed for the sake not of symmetry, but of use: and their use dictates their form.

It is not difficult to shew that in point of meaning any of these three hypotheses is possible.

(a) Can a gerund rise out of a participle? A gerund is essentially a verbal noun, which has retained some verbal force in determining construction. Now there can be no doubt that a verbal noun can arise from a participle without the addition of any elaborate suffix; for we have them in numbers. Stems in *-entia* (§ 933) are formed from the stem of the present participle by the addition of the simplest suffix. *Multum effeci silendo* and *m. e. silentio*; *vitam servavi prudentia* and *v. s. providendo* are really equivalent expressions. If an abstract substantive *silentium* can be formed so simply from the present participle *silenti-*, it is not going far to assume, that an abstract substantive *silendum* could be formed from, (being in fact the neuter of,) a participle *silendo-*. Again the gerund is, practically, the infinitive in oblique cases. If *temperantia* is equivalent to *temperare*, it must be (apart from special use) equivalent to *temperandum*. And the difference between *temperantia* and *temperandum* is of a kind which seems apt to the difference between a more and a less personal conception, between a feminine and a neuter. *Temperantia* is the enduring habit, *temperandum* the passing act. A similar difference appears to lie between *mercatura* and *mercandum*; and *mercatura* is, I presume, closely connected with *mercaturus* the future participle, of which masculine form *mercator* 'a trader' appears to be an abridgment. (Cf. vol. I. Pref. p. lxxxvii, ed. i.)

(b) Can a participle rise out of a gerund? Cicero (*Mil.* 29) says *Hujus ergo interfector si esset, in confitendo ab eisne pœnam timeret, quos liberavisset?* 'If then Milo had been the man that killed Clodius, would he, if he admitted the fact, have stood in fear of punishment from those whom he had thereby set free?' *Confitens* might be substituted for *in confitendo*. In *aer effluens huc et illuc ventos efficit* (*C. N. D.* 2. 39), *effluendo* might be substituted for *effluens*. In fact a present participle might easily be formed by attaching to such oblique cases or prepositional phrases an adjectival suffix, which should denote that a person is in the attitude or condition thereby described. Such an adjectival suffix needs not itself be full of meaning in order to convey this notion. *Devius*, *obvius*, means 'a person *de via*,' 'a person *ob viam*;' *eques* (*equet-*) 'a person *in equo*;' &c. See illustrations of this from many languages in Garnett's Essay "On the formation of words by the further modification of inflected cases" (*Essays*, p. 260)<sup>1</sup>.

(c) The third hypothesis requires no argument. If two uses can spring from one another, there can hardly be any impossibility in point of meaning in their both springing from a third.

On the whole I am inclined to think that the simplest hypothesis is that the form in *-undo* existed in early times as a present participle, either before the gerundial use, or contemporaneously with it; that the gerundive was formed from the gerund simply by treating the gerund not as governing but as agreeing with the object; and that the gerundive, being in fact precisely the same in form as the participle, drove the participial use of the form out of the field, except in the special case of suffixes in *-bundo* and *-cundo*.

Before passing to the next division of the subject I will say a few words on some views of other grammarians.

Weissenborn considers the gerundive to be intermediate between participle and adjective (p. 152), and to mean 'causing action,' so that *homo lugendus* is 'a man causing others to mourn for him'

<sup>1</sup> See also M. Müller's *Lectures* II. 18 sq. ed. 6.

(p. 108); *legendum* is (in meaning) the same as *lugere* (p. 109). Corssen holds the gerundive to be a verbal adjective, having a meaning intermediate between active and passive, and expressing rather the capacity of action (*Beitr.* p. 136). Such conceptions really amount to nothing more than abstractions from two apparently opposite uses of the same form, for which a possible etymology is then sought. We are thus left in the region of the possible and conceivable only, without, so far as I see, any facts showing that this possible was probably actual, because they fit this hypothesis but will not readily fit others. On the contrary, such theories are open to the objection that they do not explain, (1) why such an ambiguous conception should be developed in two opposite directions, as active and passive, and yet the lines of the one should be precisely parallel to the other; e.g. *musa colendast = musam colendumst*; and *musa colendæ = musam colendi* &c.: (2) why it did not develop other usages, e.g. *virgo est colenda musam* instead of, or as well as *virgini est colenda musa* &c.: (3) why the gerundive was not formed and used from intransitive as well as from transitive verbs. The few instances, which are found, I have already dealt with. It is not clear to me that the explanation I have given of them is equally open to those who start with a form which they maintain to be neither active nor passive but really neutral. Such views as Kühner's, who attributes to the gerundive itself the meaning of 'must' or 'should,' but says it lays aside that meaning both in the neuter (i.e. the gerund) and whenever it is used in lieu of the gerund, are still more full of difficulty. Whatever difficulties there may be in my theory in deducing a gerund from the neuter of a present participle are not less in theories like Corssen's, Weissenborn's or Kühner's.

Besides the theory of attraction which I have defended, there is, so far as I am aware, only one, which professes to explain the precise identity in meaning of e.g. *cupido vexandi hostes* with *cupido vexandorum hostium*. According to this the expression with the gerundive is parallel to the use of a substantive with the past participle to express, not so much the person or thing acted on, but the action itself, e.g. *Lentulus et Cethegus deprehensi eum terrebant*, 'the arrest of Lentulus and Cethegus frightened them;' *Occisus dictator Cæsar pulcherrimum facinus videbatur*. See other instances

in §§ 1406—1411. Kühner (*Schulgram.* § 131. 5) illustrates the parallel thus:

*Dux urbe defensa magnam sibi peperit gloriam :*

*Dux urbe defendenda magnam sibi gloriam parere studuit.*

There are a few passages, in which the gerundive and the passive participle are put in this sense in close connexion, e.g. *Quæ ante conditam condendamve urbem traduntur*, i.e. 'before the city was built or building,' (Liv. *præf.*) and the passages quoted in § 1408.

There are four objections to the pertinency and adequacy of Kühner's theory.

(a) The parallelism fails strikingly in at least one important point. This use of the past participle is most common in those classes of ablatives, viz. the ablatives of 'manner,' 'attendant circumstances' and 'time' in which an oblique predicate is required (cf. § 1230). It is exactly these ablatives in which the gerundival expression is rare: and the significance of this fact is the greater, because not only is the gerund also rare in such expressions (for this might be expected), but the use of the gerundive in the ablative, as elsewhere, follows closely the usage of the gerund, being practically almost confined to expressing the means or instrument, or to prepositional usages. Such instances as that in *C. Phil.* 6. 6 (§ 1408), are the result, I conceive, partly of the close connexion of most ablatival usages, and partly of the natural tendency of a writer to follow specious analogies when they suggest neat modes of expression.

The instances of the nominative (e.g. *occisus Cæsar*) have no parallel in the gerundive, except, as some might say, in the one word *jusjurandum*, which is properly 'a swearing one's rights.' Here however, I suppose, either *jus* is the object of the gerund *jurandum*, or, which is more probable, the whole expression is a nominative formed to correspond with the oblique cases *jurisjurandi*, *jurejurando*; just as some modern writers have coined an imaginary *res repetundæ* 'extortion.'

(b) The theory supposes a participle which is used in a way parallel to that of the past participle passive, and yet which differs, only as an adjective with an *o* stem differs from a substantive with

an *o* stem, from an unmistakeably active verbal substantive. *Libemandarum Thebarum* (Nep. 16. 4, § 1.) may be very parallel to *liberatarum Thebarum*, but what should we say to *gloria liberati Thebas* as a parallel to *cupido liberandi Thebas*? It may be replied that analogies rarely go upon all fours. True, but that is no merit in them; and here it is of the essence of the difficulty, which a theory has to explain, that the gerundival expression is as identical with the gerundial expression, as the gerundival form is with the gerundial form.

(c) What does the theory suppose the gerundive to be? According to the analogy it ought to be a participle passive either of present or future time. But if so, why is it never used as an ordinary participle is? why does not Livy (42. 17) instead of *se daturum* (sc. *venenum*) *quod, nec in dando nec datum, ullo signo deprendi posset* say *nec dandum nec datum*? Why *melior tutiorque est certa pax quam sperata victoria* (30. 30, § 19) instead of *speranda victoria*? why is 'so-called'<sup>1</sup> not expressed in Latin by *ita dicendus*, instead of *qui dicitur, quem vocant, &c.* (Madvig *Lat. Gr.* § 431. *Anm.* 1.)?

(d) If we attribute to the gerundive itself, in its original formation, the meaning, which it has, as I conceive, gradually acquired, viz. that of destiny or obligation, there seems to be no such natural propriety in the usage as to encourage us to accept it. Reverting to Kühner's illustration, we may see an easy suggestiveness in the use of the past participle, e.g. 'He gained glory by a city defended.' But 'He strove to gain glory by a city requiring defence' or 'by a city to be defended' does not so readily appear the same as 'by defending a city.' It rather suggests, that he looked out for a city in that position, not that he defended the particular city in question.

It seems to me that this theory is exposed to more numerous and more serious objections, than is that which I have advanced.

<sup>1</sup> Our English 'to be called' is not a proper future any more than the Latin *vocandus*. It does indeed approach to the meaning of 'it shall be called,' but not to the merely future 'it will be called.'

## ii. Origin of verbal stem in -undo.

The theories of the origination of this stem are numerous. Bopp (*Vergl. Gr.* § 809) followed by others (e.g. L. Meyer, *Vergl. Gr.* II. 91) held the gerundive to be only another form of the present participle. Pott (*Et. Forsch.* II. Th. I. 489 ed. 2) and Weissenborn consider the -do to be identical with the stem of the verb *dare* (Sansk. *dhā-*) in the sense of 'causing,' 'doing' (comp. *effectum dare*, &c. § 1402). The -un Pott and Schröder (*Zeits. d. verg. Spr.* XIV. 350) hold to be -ana, the suffix used to form the German infinitive: Weissenborn (pp. 29, 104 sq.) to be the accusative case-suffix appended to a verbal noun-stem (comp. *pessum dare*). Corssen (*Beitr.* p. 121 sq.; *Nachtr.* p. 133, 153; *Ausspr.* I. 575), considering the suffix to have been originally -ondo (which is possible enough, although we have no evidence for it from early inscriptions *Ausspr.* II. p. 180), identifies the first part with the substantival suffix -ōn (see § 851), and the latter part with the adjectival suffix found in *vali-dus*, &c. (cf. § 816). This suffix he thinks is not from *dhā*, but from *dā*, possibly pronominal, possibly verbal, in origin, and possibly found in Latin in the verb *dare* 'to give,' used in the sense which it has in *ruinam dare*, *dare se in fugam*, &c. Curtius, *Gr. Etym.* (p. 590 ed. 2 = p. 649 ed. 4), derives the gerundival suffix from that which appears in Sanskr. as *anīyas* and has the same meaning. The original form would then be *anya-s*, the *d* arising from a strengthening of *y*. Schleicher (*Vergl. Gr.* p. 397 ed. 2 = p. 382, ed. 3) identifies this first part of the suffix with the *an* in the suffix *anīyas*, the second part with the suffix in *validus*, which he, like Pott<sup>1</sup> and Weissenborn, derives from *dhā*. Schröder takes *d* to be the Gothic preposition -du, Greek -δε (e.g. οἰκόνδε), Germ. zu, appended to an infinitive. Key (*Essays* pp. 212, 218) considers e.g. "scriben (in scribenti-, scribendo) to be an old substantive like *ungwen* (whence *ungvent-um*) and still more like the German so-called infinitive *schreiben*," the *t* and *d* being parasitical outgrowths from the preceding *n* (see § 48 of this Grammar). It may be noted that

<sup>1</sup> Pott holds the present participle to have the same origin as the gerundive as regards *n*, but the *t* to be the demonstrative pronoun (l. c. pp. 534, 535).

Schleicher, Curtius and L. Meyer have previously published other opinions which they have now given up for those named above. There is certainly little room for anyone to dogmatize. Corssen declares against Bopp's theory on the grounds that (medial) *t* does not change in Latin to *d* except under the influence of a following *r*; (2) that specially in Latin, when *o* is suffixed to *nt*, the *t* remains (e.g. *cruentus*, *violentus*, &c.); and (3) that in meaning and syntactical use the present participle and the gerund and gerundival forms are so essentially different, as to render it highly improbable that they could be identical. Pott (l. c. p. 522 sqq.) says the same, and discusses elaborately the analogies supposed to be afforded by the Romance, Slavonic, and other languages.

I quite agree in thinking that there is no evidence for the gerundive being formed from the present participle in *nti*, and that such a derivation is decidedly improbable, so far as the forms are concerned. It is more likely that, if one were derived from the other, the present participle would be not parent but child, nominal stems in *i* being sometimes in this relation to nominal stems in *o* (Vol. I. *Pref.* p. lxxxvii). But the relation of sister seems to me at least as likely to be true. The present participle in Sanskrit, Zend, Greek, Latin, old Irish, Slavonic and old high German has the suffix *-nt*; but in the other Teutonic languages and in Persian *-nd*. It is not extravagant to suppose that Latin had both forms, and was therefore able to give one a special use, which ultimately became the gerundive.

Further the Romance languages exhibit a similar variety. Diez (Vol. II.) gives as gerund Italian, Spanish and Portuguese *cantando*, Sardinian *cantende*, Wallachian *cüntünd*; but Provençal *chantan*, Catalan and French *chantant*. If these forms all come from the Latin gerund, then we have in some cases a sharpening of the final *d*: if, as is possible, they arise from a confusion of the Latin gerund and participle, then it is not rash to assume that a connexion between these parts of speech may have been felt or fancied in early Indo-European times also.

But, that the meaning of the two cannot be so far apart as not to be referable to a common stock, is, I think, clearly deducible from the actual use of the same form as equivalent to a gerund and as equivalent to a present participle (above, pp. lxxviii, lxxix.).

Moreover from this point of view the fact (pointed out by Bopp) is very important, that the gerundive, like the present participle, always follows the form of the present stem, whatever that may be. We have *gignendus* (not *genendus*); *sternendus*, not *strandus*; *nascendus*, *extimescendus*, *rumpendus*, *capiendus*, *fluendus*, *vivendus*, *trabendus*, *tollendus*, *dūcendus*, *lēgendus*. *Excun-dus* agrees in form with *excun-tis*, and differs from *exien-s* only as an older form differs from a younger. (When -*uns* gave place to -*ens* (as *regundus* to *regendus*), the *e* (*exe-uns*) gave place to *i* (*exi-ens*), in order to prevent the two vowels from coalescing.) No other class of verbal nouns follows the present stem, as distinguished from the verbal stem, except those which are derived from the present participle (e.g. *excandescencia*, § 933). Corssen's selection of suffixes seems very infelicitous; the suffix -*ōn*, which he appends to the verbal stem, is usually appended to noun stems; and the suffix -*do*, which he then appends to his verbal noun in -*ōn*, is a suffix usually appended to verb-stems, not to nouns. Of any tendency in either to follow the present stem, as distinguished from the verbal stem, I see no trace.

Beyond this I cannot carry the question of etymology. I think it probable that *scriben*<sup>1</sup> in *scribenti*- is identically the same form as *scriben*- in *scribendo*, but the precise origin and meaning of the -*ti* and the -*do* is for me an unsolved problem. Not that the suggestions already enumerated are all wrong, but that none is proved, or even distinctly raised from possibility to probability.

### iii. Analogies in other languages.

The analogies to which, in common with other writers, I desire to point attention (I pretend to no more) are all in Teutonic languages: but the Teutonic languages seem especially applicable, because their present participle has the suffix -*nd*.

<sup>1</sup> Compare the dialect of Henneberg in Thuringia which forms its present active participle by adding -*ing* to the infinitive in -*en*, e.g. *lachen-ing*=*lachen-d*, 'laughing'; *schlafen-ing*=*schlafen-d*, 'sleeping'. (Müller, *Lectures*, II. p. 19 note, ed. 6.)



Grimm (iv. 64 sqq.) gives instances from German of present participles used passively from transitive verbs, and of others, used in a looser relation, from intransitive verbs. Of the former class the following may serve as instances. From middle high German; *lebende Tage* 'days which are lived through,' *klagende Arbeit* 'work which is complained of:' from new high German; *essende Speise*; *von essenden und trinkenden Dingen*; *anziehende Kleider*; *meine führenden Waaren*; *eine besorgende Gefahr*; *eine melkende Kuh*; *der leidende Schade*; *verkaufendes Brot*; *wieder erlangende Gesundheit*; *bei empfindender Hilfe*; *vorbabende Reise*. Of the latter class, take the following instances. From middle high German *uf der jagenden Weide*; *iwer her komende Wart*; *wachende Arbeit*: from new high German; *sterbende Läufe*, i.e. 'times when the plague prevails,' *keine bleibende Stätte haben* (Luther); *eine schwindelnde Höhe*; *sitzende Arbeit*; *gebende Arbeit*; *wohlschlafende wohlgerubende Nacht wünschen*, similar to which is *nach einer schlechtschlafenden Nacht* (Schiller). Few of the instances quoted by Grimm appear to be later than the 16th century, and neither usage seems to have been frequent. Göthe has *blasende Instrumente*; Voss has *mit handschlagendem Lob*; Hauff has *einen tanzenden Thee, ein singendes Butterbrot besuchen*. Mätzner (*Eng. Gr.* ii. 2. 70) compares Engl. *falling sickness* with old high Germ. *fallandiu Subt*, new high Germ. *fallende Sucht*, and *fallendes Leid*.

Grimm quotes also from some Friesic dialects *tha drivanda* and *tha dreganda* meaning 'the cattle which are driven,' and 'the things which are carried.' So also Danish *blæsende Instrumenter* 'blowing-instruments,' *mit iboende Hus* 'my dwelling-house,' *den afboldende Avksion* 'the auction to be held,' *den udgivende Bog* 'the book about to be published.' (Rask's *Dan. Gr.* § 41 ed. Repp.)

The modern Icelandic (Grimm iv. 113) has its present active participle used just like a gerundive, e.g. *alt er segjanda* = *alles ist zu sagen*; *varla er truanda* 'it is scarcely to be believed.'

Modern German has a still more noticeable usage. For this I translate Schleicher (*Deutsche Sprache* p. 225 ed. 2). 'The infinitive, originally an abstract substantive and so still used often enough, in middle high German has in genitive and dative<sup>1</sup>, when the stemsyllable is long, the *n* doubled; e.g. *vindennes vindenne*;

<sup>1</sup> They are not properly cases, but further formations, according to Schleicher's latest opinion, as reported by Jo. Schmidt, the editor.

'but not so after short syllables, e.g. *sagenes*, *sagene*. As from '*nieman*, *niemannes* in new high German arose *niemand*, *niemandes*, 'so from the frequent middle high German *ze vindenne*, *ze lesene*, ' (i.e. *zu finden*, *zu lesen*) arose a new participle in *nd* with passive 'functions, which accordingly is found only in connexion with *zu*, 'e.g. *ein zu findender*, Fem. *zu findende*, Neutr. *zu findendes*, *zu lesendes* &c.' 'Perhaps,' adds Schleicher, 'the Latin forms in '*-ndus*, e.g. *legendus*, may have had an influence on the function of 'this form.'

The English is very remarkable, both in itself and because it illustrates several points of the discussion. It shows (a) the active infinitive being so used as to convey a passive meaning; (b) another verbal form being used at the same time in the character both of an active and a passive participle, an active and, what appears at first sight to be, a passive adjective, a substantive proper and a gerund; (c) a predicative use of verbal forms in a way which implies obligation and possibility. Yet with such diversity, and even contrariety, of functions these forms rarely give rise to any ambiguity.

(a) The prepositional infinitive is frequently used, in denoting a purpose, so that it suggests a passive meaning. Thus we can say not only *I am glad to see you*; *Too old to fight and much too poor to pay* (Planché); *In one sense they are our best men; they are the best to go, not the best to stay* (Sargant): but also *This is good to eat*; *That is easy to get*; *Something to drink*; *A house to let*; *This is the man to kill*; *Coy and difficult to win* (Cowper); *O sight of terror foul and ugly to behold, horrid to think, how horrible to feel* (Milton). Shakespeare says *Eleven long hours I took to write it o'er*: he might have said *Eleven long hours it took to write*. The usage is old, and the infinitive had once an oblique inflexion (compare modern German, *supra*). *Hit is sceame to tellanne ac bit ne thubte him nan sceame to donne* (Chron. of Peterborough anno 1085), i.e. *It is a shame to tell, but it seemed not to him any shame to do*<sup>1</sup>. This prepositional infinitive is really analogous to such forms as *esui*, *potui*, &c. (*supra*, p. xxxii, xxxiii, the historical speech of the Romans, and to the infinitive *bibere* in the præ-historical speech (cf. § 612).

<sup>1</sup> Earle's *Phil. of Eng. Tongue*, § 453, ed. 2; from which I have taken some other instances.

(b) The verbal form in *-ing*, which was not used for the present participle till the twelfth century, is now used in various ways<sup>1</sup>.

(1) As present participle active<sup>2</sup>: e.g. *Pleased with some happy tone of meditation slipping in between the beauty coming and the beauty gone* (W). *With budding, fading, faded flowers they stand the wonder of the bowers* (W). *Late and soon, getting and spending, we lay waste our powers* (W). *\*The people lead a quiet life, tilling the ground and tending the cattle* (G. E.). *Men's muscles move better, when their souls are making merry music* (G. E.). *Insects that will come teasing you* (G. E.). *There you go strolling along* (G. E.). *Ruth went wandering<sup>3</sup> over dale and hill* (W). *I saw her singing at her work and o'er the sickle bending* (W). *Her maidens thought her dying* (Scott). *I've heard of hearts unkind, kind deeds with coldness still returning; alas the gratitude of men has oftener left me mourning* (W). *The jerk sent the contents leaping out from the farthest corners* (G. E.). *It was impossible to imagine these things happening at Hayslope* (G. E.). *I have heard of a learned man meekly rocking the cradle* (G. E.). *She set me intriguing* (Thackeray).

(2) As present participle passive: e.g. *The kingdom was depopulating from the increase of inclosures* (Hume). *Whilst these preliminary steps were taking* (Robertson). *The illustrations preparing for this volume* (Ruskin). *The extent of ravage continually committing* (Ruskin). *The debts which are owing*. *The house is not built but building*. *I want my coat brushing<sup>4</sup>*. *The designs manifestly carrying on against his person* (Burke). *Women are angels, wooing* (Sh. Troil. i. 2). *While the verses were yet singing* (Scott).

(3) As adjective with an active (or neuter) meaning: *A wandering voice*. *Like sleeping flowers*. *O'er glittering sands*. *A*

<sup>1</sup> In the references W. is for Wordsworth; G. E. for the author of *Adam Bede*.

<sup>2</sup> Southey's *Lodore* is entirely composed of this use.

<sup>3</sup> Earle, *Phil. of Engl. T.* §§ 580—581 g, takes this as an infinitive derived from the old form in *-en*. Abbott, *Shaksp. Gr.* § 349, somewhat doubtfully takes the same view, when the forms in *-ing* are used after verbs of *seeing, hearing, &c.*

<sup>4</sup> Earle calls this a Yorkshire form (*Phil. of Engl. Tongue*, § 580 h).

*blooming girl. A spreading oak. Soothing thoughts. Torturing doubts. A distressing noise. A thoroughly misleading statement. Our life's succeeding stages (Campbell). My never-failing friends (Southey). A running commentary. A patronising disposition. Startling exceptions. He exacted the most humiliating submissions (Macaulay). A commanding voice (Id.). An uneasy questioning expression (G. E.). My heart swells with loving admiration (G. E.). The grass lay in silvered sweeping lines (G. E.). They never see any good in suffering virtue (Burke). Come, gentle yet prevailing force (Cowper). Eating cares (Milton). My fluttering voice and pausing harp (Coleridge). Ennobling thoughts (W). A waking eye, a prying mind (Lamb). Their tameness is shocking to me (Cowper). This state of things is naturally embittering (G. E.).* Hence occasionally used without a substantive but with the definite article, e.g. *The living and the dead; The poor and the suffering; I can make the sleeping see (Shelley); A rod to check the erring (W).*

(4) Apparently as adjective with passive meaning: i.e. it is grammatically an attribute of that which in meaning is its object; e.g. *eating-olives; drinking-water; wearing-apparel; a riding-horse; washing-silk; knitting-cotton.* Often the two parts of the phrase stand in looser relation to each other than that of object; e.g. *drawing instruments; brewing tub; heating apparatus; writing materials; boxing gloves; walking stick; leaping pole; reaping hook; riding habit; shooting boots; working day; milking time; resting place; stumbling block; winding sheet; looking glass; calculating machine; dying moments; dying testimony; &c.*

These phrases are usually regarded as compound words, the first word being as much a substantive as it is in *bat box, work table, door key, house porter, watch tower, railway carriage, &c.* This is probably the right view, at any rate for modern English. But a comparison of the German expressions quoted above (p. lxxxviii), suggests that the usage may have been originally in some cases participial, and the participial notion is probably still present to the feeling<sup>1</sup>. It is noticeable that in all the instances (except the last two) the form in -ing denotes the purpose or destiny like *esui olea, lintum extersui, &c.* See above p. xxxiii.

<sup>1</sup> Mätzner (*Eng. Gr.* ii. 2, p. 71) takes a similar view.

(5) As substantive proper; shewn by its use as subject, &c., by its having an attribute, by its having a plural, and by its object being in the genitive (i.e. with preposition 'of'). *A fine building. A fair warning. A second bearing. High standing. An heroic bearing. A good saying. A calling in life. Great learning. Too narrow openings. The first turning. High breeding. Their trampling sounded nearer (Campbell). A wedding or a festival, mourning or a funeral (W). Plain living and high thinking are no more (W). Thoughts that spring out of human suffering (W). But for those obstinate questionings of sense and outward things, fallings from us, vanishings, blank misgivings of a creature moving about in worlds not realized (W). O ye groves, forbode not any severing of our loves (W). Thousands at his bidding speed (Milton). All silencing of discussion is an assumption of infallibility (Mill). They remember the taking of the king's castles (Burke). The laying on of hands (Macaulay). There was no end to the making and mending of clothes (G. E.). To watch her love's returning (Scott). She heard her lover's riding (Scott).*

(6) As gerund, i.e. as a substantive, but qualified by an adverb instead of an adjective, and with its object in the case which a verb would require. It can have (differing in this from the Latin gerund) a substantive in the possessive case to qualify it. The definite article is usually, though not always, omitted.

*Meeting Hetty was a mere circumstance of his walk (G. E.). It was no use blinking the fact now (G. E.). How could he help feeling it? (G. E.) She had to encounter the pain of his feeling himself ill-used (Jane Austen). Don't tell me about her not deceiving herself (G. E.). The saying mass was forged into a crime; the teaching school, even the teaching in a private family, was subjected to punishment (Burke). Nothing must content the Captain but the taking a much finer house (Thackeray). Instead o' wearing yourself out with walking and preaching and giving away every penny you get (G. E.). I took to going nowhere but to church, and bearing nobody but Mr. Irvine (G. E.). Who could have expected meeting you here? (Goldsmith.) After considering him attentively (W. Irving). For it strikes me ther's sech a thing ez sinnin' by overloadin' children's underpinnin' (Biglow Papers). Defend me from the toil of dropping buckets into*

*empty wells, and growing old in drawing nothing up* (Cowper). *What is there to hinder the mind from gradually acquiring a habit of attending to the lighter relations of ideas?* (S. Smith.) *A vain ostentation of wit often sets a man on attacking an established name and sacrificing it to the mirth of those about him* (Addison). *I have been in training above a month* ('F. Fairleigh'). *It is worth looking over and considering* (Clarendon).

By the side of this gerundial use, as seen in such sentences as *The possibility of Frank's marrying a foreigner* (Bulwer); *They laid weight on his client's refusing to answer certain queries* (Scott); a participial use<sup>1</sup> has arisen; e.g. *Upon Nigel insisting upon his commands being obeyed* (Scott); *These circumstances may lead to your ladyship quitting the house* (Thackeray); *She felt some comfort in their whole party being immediately afterwards collected* (Jane Austen). Both Koch (*Engl. Gr.* ii. § 160) and Mätzner (*Engl. Gr.* ii. 2, p. 68) give this participial use as modern<sup>2</sup>. The usage is not uncommon in ordinary conversational language, and has probably risen from the supposed analogy of such expressions as *I saw him wondering*, *I thought of him saying this*, and may have been assisted by the want of any distinction in sound between the possessive and other cases of plurals and other words ending in -s; e.g. *The ladies thinking* is *mulieres cogitantes* and *mulierum cogitatio*.

(c) Both these verbal forms (1) the prepositional infinitive and (2) the form in -ing are sometimes used predicatively in a way

<sup>1</sup> At first sight this usage may appear to support Kühner's theory which explains the rise of the gerundival use, parallel to the gerundial use, by the occasional use of the past participle in Latin, which I have noticed above. But the difference is great. The English idiom consists in changing the *subject* of the gerund (the subject being in the possessive) into an *object* of the word governing the gerund; and then regarding the form in -ing no longer as the gerund, but as the well-known present participle, e.g. '*He envied the chief's defending the city*,' is changed into '*He envied the chief defending the city*.' This *subject* (possessive case) is never expressed in Latin with the gerund. The change is merely from *invidit ducis (defensionis urbis)* to *invidit duci (urbem defendenti)*. The Latin idiom consists in changing the *object* of the gerund into an *object* of the word governing the gerund.

<sup>2</sup> Koch however quotes one instance from the older Wicliffite translation; *He wolde resten after the sunne goyng down* (Gen. 28. 11); but if the instance be really solitary it cannot be trusted.

which implies either destiny or, as is usually the case in a negative sentence, possibility. The two notions shade into one another.

(1) Destiny. *When the Roman empire was broken up, the work of conversion was to begin again* (Southey).

*Good night then, Casca, this disturbed sky is not to walk in* (Shaksp. *Jul. Cæs.* 1. 339).

*He is to blame. You are to go. There is no time to waste. We have not an instant to lose. What's more to do?* (Shaksp., see Abbott, § 405.)

Possibility. *There was no one to rob. I have nothing to do.*

(2) Obligation. *If this which he avouches does appear, there is nor flying hence nor tarrying here* (Sh. *Macb.* 5. 5. 48).

*Fly, fly, my lord, there is no tarrying here* (Sh. *Jul. C.* 5. 5. 30). This is taken from North who translates ἐπὶ τῶντος δέ τις, ὡς δεῖ μὴ μένειν, ἀλλὰ φεύγειν (Plut. *Brut.* 52) by 'Amongst the rest one of them said, there was no tarrying for them there.' Compare *Nemini nostrum cessandum est aut expectandum, quid decernat senatus* (Poll. ap. *C. Fam.* 10. 33).

Possibility. *There is no getting rid of him. There is no resisting your luck.*

The history of these usages of the form in *-ing* is not certain: the following is a summary of the facts, mainly taken from Morris' *Engl. Accidence* §§ 290 sqq.).

In the 12th century there were four distinct forms,

- (1) An infinitive in *-en*, or *-e*, e.g. *breken* or *breke*.
- (2) A dative of this infinitive, ending in *-enne* or *-ene*, and with the preposition *to* or *for to* prefixed, e.g. *to brekenne* or *to brekene*. A form in *-ende* is also found, e.g. *The synfulle man fasteth for to clensen him, the rihtwise for to witiende his rihtwisnesse* (O. E. Hom., Sec. Ser. p. 57).
- (3) A present active participle in *-ende* (*-and* Northern), e.g. *brekende*.
- (4) A verbal substantive in *-yng* or *-ynge* (written also *-ing* or *-inge*), e.g. *brekyng* or *brekyge*. (In Anglo-Saxon the termination is usually *-ung*.)

In the 14th century, changes, some of which had already commenced in the 12th, had produced the following result.

- (1) The infinitive remained the same. Wicliffe for the most part has the suffix *-e*; Chaucer and the author of *Piers Plowman* both *-en* and *-e*.
- (2) The dative infinitive ends rarely in *-ene*, usually in *-en* or *e*, and is thus indistinguishable in form from the simple infinitive. But a form in *-inge* also occurs; e.g. *And the dragoun stood before the womman that was to beringe child....And she childe a sone male, that was to reulinge alle folkes* (Wicliffe).
- (3) The present participle ends often in *-ing* instead of, as previously, in *-ende*, which form died out in this century. *Ande* however remained in the Northern dialect. Parts of the Wicliffite translations have *-ende*, other parts *-yng*.
- (4) The verbal substantive remained as before, in *-yng* distinguished in form from the participle in *-and*; e.g. in Hampele (*Pr. of Cons.* p. 58), a Northern writer (cir. A.D. 1340).

*Than es our birthe bere bygynnyng  
Of the dede that is our endyng;  
For ay the mare that we wax alde  
The mare our lif may be ded talde.  
Tharfor whylles we er bere lyffand  
Ilk day er we thos dyband.*

In the 16th century both forms of the infinitive are alike, the suffix being either dropped, or written *e*, but not pronounced.

The form in *-and* is still retained for the present participle in the Northern dialect beside the form in *-yng*, which is also sometimes written for the past part. in *-en*; e.g. in Lyndesay A.D. 1552.

*Sum on the feild salbe lauborand;  
Sum in the templis mariand.  
Sum afore jugis makand pley;  
And sum men saland on the sey.  
Tavo salbe in the myll grindyng,  
Qubilk sal be taking but awarnyng.*

(for taken without warning.)



The form in *-ing* continues common to the participle and noun, but according to Morris ceased to be used for the dative infinitive about the beginning of the 15th century.

But "in old English writers after the conquest we find the verbal noun with *on*, *an*, *in*, *a* employed after verbs of motion as '*he went on hunting*,' '*he fell on sleeping*<sup>1</sup>:'" *I go a fishing* (John 21. 3), *to be a fishing* (Fielding).

So even now in provincial English: *She's all of a tremble wben thee't a-sittin' down by her at breakfast, and a-looking at her* (G. E.). *He's gone somewhere else a preachin' and a prayin'* (G. E.). *For awhile your million papers, wut with lyin' an' discussin', keep folk's tempers all on eend a-fumin' an' a-fussin', a-wondrin' this an' guessin' that, &c.* (Biglow Papers).

From the 14th century at least until the 17th this verbal noun is often used after the same prepositions (*in*, *a*) passively: e. g. *The churche was in byldynge* (Robt. of Brunne); *we have a windowe in werchyng* ('Piers Plowman'); *Ther the man lith an' belyng* (Id.); *There you shall see my tombe a makyng* (Berners' Froissart); *Whilst these things were a dooing* (Holingshed); *While the ark was a preparing* (Tyndall and King James transl. 1 Pet. 3. 20). See Marsh's *Engl. Lang.* p. 472, ed. Smith.

In the 17th or 18th century the *a* began to be dropped and the form in *-ing* is used, both predicatively and attributively, in a passive as well as an active sense: e. g. *The book now preparing*, *the book is now preparing*, as well as *John preparing the book* and *John is preparing the book*.

The theory of these changes is not certain.

At first sight it would appear that the verbal substantive in *-ing* began to encroach upon the present participle, at the same time as the present participle encroached upon the dative infinitive; and that the form in *-ing* at a later date completely drove out the form in *-nd* from both provinces, and itself invaded the dative infinitive: and finally, while continuing to be used freely after prepositions, dropped in certain expressions the preposition, and thus became indistinguishably used both as active and passive present participle.

<sup>1</sup> Morris, § 292. See also Koch, II. § 96.

And yet with the confusion of forms there is rarely any ambiguity of meaning, the other parts of the sentence showing the way in which this ambiguous form is used.

But this may not be the true history. The three forms *-enne* (or *-ene*), *-ende*, *-inge*, after the final vowel became mute, differed phonetically but little from one another. For *n* is a dental nasal; *d* is a dental flat mute, closely allied to *n*; *ng* is, not two sounds, but a single guttural nasal. A very common provincialism (frequent also in America) pronounces *goin* for *going*: e.g. *an' there is sutbin' wuth your bearin'* (Biglow Papers). *We ain't none riled by their frettin' an' frothin', we're used to layin' the string on our slaves* (lb.). *There's no work so tirin' as danglin' about an' starin' an' not rightly knowin' what you're goin' to do next* (G. E.) &c. And many careless or rapid speakers now say *an* for *and*<sup>1</sup>. So that the history of this confusion may be not syntactical, but phonetical. The dative infinitive may have developed at one time a parasitical out-growth, and *breken* have become *brekend*, as *gown* becomes *gownd*, and in Germ. *nieman* has become *niemand*; and at another time or by other tongues have had the *n* nasalized; and the present participle may have first lost its final *d* and then nasalized its *n*.

Probably both syntax and sound contributed to the result.

### Of the Subjunctive mood.

In dealing with the subjunctive mood, I have endeavoured to classify its meaning and usage, just as we classify the meaning and usage of an inflected case. I have seen no reason to alter the primary classification, which I put forth in my *Elementary Latin Grammar* in 1862, excepting that both the optative and concessive uses have been reduced under the same head as the jussive subjunctive, instead of being put as separate co-ordinate heads. The eight heads, so formed, combined naturally into four, so far as the

<sup>1</sup> "The elision of a final *d* in such words as *hond*, *lond*, *sheld*, *held*, is by no means uncommon in ancient poetry, and arises simply from pronunciation." (Madden.) Cf. *han'* for *hand* in Burns. (Morris and Skeat, *Early English*, II. p. 320.) So in the Biglow Papers, *fel'*, *kin'*, *hol'*, *stan'*, &c. (for *field*, *hind*, *hold*, *stand*).

meaning of the subjunctive itself is concerned. These four meanings *supposition, idea to be realized, causation, alien statement* exhibit the whole sphere of the subjunctive mood. They give rise to eight classes of usage, according to the character of the sentence in which they are, or to their use with particles. A *supposition* is either in an independent or principal clause, or, usually with *si*, in a subordinate clause; that is to say, it is either a conditioned event, or the condition of another event taking place. An *idea to be realized* is either uttered as such and forms a wish or command, or, usually with *ut*, &c. in a subordinate sentence, is an object kept in view when another action is in doing. *Causation* may be looked at either from the side of result or from that of cause. In both uses we have subordinate sentences, the resulting action being coupled by *ut*, &c., the causing action by *cum*. An *alien statement* may be a reason, a condition, a question, and thus appendent to a principal clause in the indicative; or it may be a part only of a fuller alien statement, and thus be dependent on a subjunctive or infinitive.

This is an abstract statement of the result of the classification; it is deduced from it, not invented to support it. The grouping of the various uses of the subjunctive was made purely by empirically collecting them, and then arranging them according to their natural affinities. The groups seem to me thoroughly natural, and none the less so, because sentences may be found in which the subjunctive might be referred to more than one of these groups. Thus some sentences with the relative adjective *qui* might be referred to the head of condition, or cause, or hypothesis, or consequence: the subjunctive with *ut* after *efficio*, and in some restrictive meanings, might be referred to 'purpose' or 'result;' *quin* might in some sentences be treated almost indifferently as being a relative and expressing a purpose, or as being a dependent interrogative; *dum* might be regarded as introducing a sentence of purpose or a condition; subjunctives, here considered due to their qualifying a subjunctive or infinitive clause, might be explained, as themselves possessing the same ground for the subjunctive inflexions, which the principal clause has, or as having some other independent ground. This interlacing of branches is sure to arise when the branches are from the same tree. Had the uses of the subjunctive, like those of the ablative, sprung from a union of two or three different original inflected forms, some

confusion would still have resulted. But the subjunctive inflexions had originally, and have properly, one meaning only, which has been differently fixed and developed by association with particular particles, or by use in particular classes of sentences or on particular occasions. The vague has received definiteness and precision by being drawn into specific channels, or by being caught and exhibited by several mediums.

The subordinate groups of subjunctive usages are of course mainly such as are recognised by most grammars: the systematic arrangement, by reference to the meaning of the subjunctive itself, is I believe new. Other grammars have treated this matter, at least so far as subordinate sentences are concerned, either by reference to the division of sentences into substantival, adjectival and adverbial sentences, or by the particles used to introduce the clause. The latter was the old method; e.g. in Ruddiman, and, more or less modified, is common still; the former is not unusual in Grammars by German writers, at least since Becker's time. I agree with Madvig in thinking it important to collect the uses of the subjunctive together, just as the uses of the ablative and other classes are collected. The main difference of my procedure from his is in the arrangement of these uses by reference to certain specific meanings, in a similar way to that in which I have treated (here again more systematically, I believe, than others) the uses of the cases.

The use and meaning of the subjunctive in hypothetical and conditional sentences is, I think, often misapprehended. The indicative is often said to be used only when the condition is a fact, or when it is only an apparent condition. The subjunctive present is said to be used when an event is regarded as probable or possible; the imperfect, when it is regarded as improbable or impossible. I have ventured to deny these views. The matter, I take it, stands really thus. The indicative is a simple combination of subject and predicate, and has of itself no special meaning. The subjunctive has been formed, or at least is applied, in order to warn the hearer that the event is *thought*, and only thought. The indicative by contrast with this gets a sub-implication of *fact*. The subjunctive again by a secondary contrast gets (in certain classes of sentences) the special implication of *not fact*. Now the statements used in hypothetical and conditional clauses are referable in the speaker's

mind and intention (we have nothing to do with the objective reality), either to fact, or to not fact, or to a neutral head. In other words I either put a case avowedly as a fact, or avowedly as not a fact, or I put it simply without meaning to imply either one or the other. This intermediate class is of course a thought, and might have been left to the subjunctive mood. But this is not what the Romans have done. The subjunctive with them in such sentences means distinctly *not fact*, and the class of fact and the neutral class are given to the indicative. Grammarians often speak, as if this neutral class belonged to the subjunctive, and then, getting embarrassed, introduce conceptions which have nothing to do with grammatical categories; they talk of the subjunctive implying *doubt* or *probability* or *improbability*—conceptions which may or may not be present to the speaker's or the hearer's mind, but are in no way implied by the use of the subjunctive inflexions. If the instances of the subjunctive and indicative given in §§ 1532, 1533 be attentively considered, it will be seen that the indicative may be used when the condition is not and cannot be a fact, and when it is expressly a matter of doubt; e.g. see the passage from *C. Verr.* 3. 29, where after putting *si* with indicative, Cicero declares he must alter the form of expression, because there is no doubt.

On the other hand many cases, in which the event is only thought, may be put neutrally, or as a not-fact. According as the one or the other mode of viewing it is predominant, the indicative or the subjunctive will be used. And for practical purposes it is often indifferent which is used. It is obvious that where a future event is spoken of, the notion of fact is necessarily out of the question, or at least becomes very faint. Here therefore we get a very close approximation of the indicative with the subjunctive; an approximation which is shewn, not merely by the identity of the form, e.g. *faciam, feceris*, &c., but by the use indifferently of the future indicative and present subjunctive in putting hypothetical cases (e.g. in *C. Off.* 3. 23). On the other hand past time is less open to the display of neutral conceptions. An event in past time is either fact or not-fact. And the pluperfect indicative, the most thoroughly past tense, is thus rare in hypothetical sentences, except as a wilful exaggeration (§ 1574), and rare in conditional clauses, except where it denotes facts, *si* being then equivalent to 'whenever.'

Of the expressions *dicat aliquis*, *dixerit aliquis*.

Grammarians are in the habit of giving *dicat aliquis*, *dixerit aliquis*, 'some one may say,' as instances of what is called the potential mood, and giving them apparently as ordinary and common forms<sup>1</sup>. Now in the use which I understand to be intended, that of introducing an opponent's or bystander's supposed remark, *dixerit aliquis* is not uncommon. But the form leaves it uncertain whether the mood be indicative or subjunctive. The subjunctive, as the mood of supposition, seems at first sight so suitable, that *dixerit* has naturally been referred to it. And this theory seems to require little support, when *dicat aliquis* is placed by the side of *dixerit aliquis*; for *dicat* proclaims its mood as subjunctive unmistakeably. But how stands the fact? The fact is, so far as I can find, *dicat aliquis* is distinctly rare, and the form which is common is *dicet aliquis*—the indicative.

The only tolerably clear instances of *dicat* which I have found, are Ter. *Andr.* 640; Liv. 9. 4 § 12; 37. 53; Hor. *S.* 1. 3. 19; Pers. 3. 78; and Plin. 36 § 4 (*dicat fortassis aliquis*). Probably also Ter. *Enn.* 511, *roget quis*. One passage often quoted as an instance is C. N. D. 2. 53, *hic quærat quispiam*. But all Baiter's MSS. except '*Codex regius Walkeri*' have *sin quæret* (and so have all the British Museum MSS. that I have seen, viz. Harl. 2465; 2511; 4662; 5114 and Burney 148: though doubtless this evidence is but slight, as a transposition of about forty chapters in this book shews that these MSS. all come from one source).

In Corn. 2. 21, Kayser has *inquiet quispiam* against the best MSS., which have *inquit*. Ibid. 4. 3 Kayser gives *aliquis inquiet*, from the majority of the best MSS. The rest (apparently) have *inquiet*. Priscian (10. 2) quotes the passage, and his MSS. have *inquit*, *inquit* or *inquiet*. Either *inquiet* or *inquiet* would suit his argument. (A similar variety of the MSS. is found in Corn. 4. 31, *si...inquiet*.)

<sup>1</sup> For *dicat aliquis*, see for instance Madvig, *Lat. Gr.* §§ 350, 370, 493, 494 *anm.* 5; *dicat quispiam* 493 *b*.

In Ovid *Am.* 2. 10. 37; 3. 15. 11, *atque aliquis...dicat*, clearly a wish is expressed: in Sen. *Ep.* 13 § 14 *alius dicat*, and Plin. 11 § 52 *querat nunc aliquis*, an ironical command; in Ov. *Rem. Am.* 225 *aliquis vocet*, a concession. (Compare C. T. D. 3. 20 § 49, *dicat quamlibet*.)

Probably many would take Quintilian's words: *est et incerta personæ ficta oratio: 'hic aliquis,' et 'dicat aliquis'* (9. 2 § 37), as referring to this commonly quoted use; but there is really nothing to shew that he was referring to such a use, as is seen in Liv. 9. 4 as above, and not to such uses as in Ovid or Seneca or Pliny just quoted.

Now with this paucity of instances of the subjunctive compare the instances of the future indicative:

*Dicet aliquis*, Corn. 4. 26; Cic. *Verr.* 2. 23; 4. 5; ib. 7; *Gal.* 17; *Pis.* 28; *T. D.* 3. 20; ib. 23; *Par.* 3. 2 § 24; Sall. *J.* 31 § 18; Liv. 21. 10 § 11; Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 2. 9 § 38; 7. 16 § 19; Sen. *Dial.* 9. 14 § 6; 12. 2 § 2; *Ben.* 5. 6 § 7; *Ep.* 16 § 4; 47 § 18; 86 § 12; Stat. *Silv.* 1. præf.; Plin. *Ep.* 3. 9 § 21; Fronto p. 152 Naber. *Dicet fortasse quispiam*, C. Sull. 30.

*Queret aliquis*, Corn. 4. 9; Cic. *Par.* 1. 1 § 9; *queret quispiam*, C. *Arch.* 7; *queret fortassis quispiam*, C. *Clu.* 52; *queret aliquis fortasse*, C. *Verr.* 5. 70.

*Inquiet aliquis*, C. *Verr.* 2. 18; *aliquis...inquiet*, Hor. *S.* 2. 5. 42.

Similar, except that the statement is made dependent on the verb, are C. *Verr.* 3. 46 (*iniquum me esse quispiam dicet*); ib. 4. 25 (*nimum fortasse dicet aliquis hunc diligentem*); *Agr.* 2. 8 (*queret quispiam in tanta injuria quid spectarit*); Phædr. 3. 51 (*rem me professum dicet fors aliquis gravem*); Ov. *Rem. Am.* 419 (*forsitan hæc aliquis... parva vocabit*).

I do not count here Ov. *A. A.* 3. 341; *Fast.* 2. 75 (*dicet*); for they are mere prophecies of the future, not interlocutory remarks.

Now for the purposes of comparison it is unimportant whether my enumeration is complete; for the same reading which has produced six, or say seven, instances of the present subjunctive, has produced 30, or, I may say, 35, instances of the future indicative.

The instances in Cicero and Cornificius, where the texts vary, I have not counted on either side.

I do not say that the six or seven instances of present subjunctive are not genuine: there is nothing in the tense or mood, which makes either unsuitable for such a use: rather their apparent suitability makes it at first sight odd that the instances should be so few. But, where the forms differ by one letter only, there is nothing hazardous in supposing that a copyist may have corrected what seemed to him too positive a statement<sup>1</sup>.

In corroboration of the view that the indicative is the ordinary use, may be mentioned the fact, that it is exceedingly frequent in the second person, when a definite person is meant, however hypothetical may be the prospect of his making any such statement.

e.g. *dices*, Cic. *T. D.* 2. 25; *Rosc. Am.* 33; *Att.* 4. 16 § 6; ib. § 10; ib. § 14; 5. 1 § 4; 8. 14 § 2, &c.; *Fam.* 10. 19; Plin. *Ep.* 5. 8 § 7. *fortasse dices*, Phædr. 3. 8.

*inquies*, Cic. *Or.* 29; *Acad.* 2. 36; ib. 47; *Fin.* 2. 31; *Div.* 2. 57; *Rab. Post.* 10; *Att.* 1. 13 § 6, &c.

*queres*, Asin. Poll. ap. C. *Fam.* 10. 31 § 6; Cæll. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 7; Plin. *N. H.* præf. § 10; similarly *succurret fortasse hoc loco alicui vestrum*, D. Brut. ap. C. *Fam.* 11. 1.

So also the present *inquis*, Cæll. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 3 § 3; ib. 17; D. Brut. ap. C. *Fam.* 11. 1; C. *Att.* 9. 7 § 5; Phædr. 3. præf. 4; *queris, puto*, Cæll. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 3 § 3; *queris fortasse*, Plin. *Ep.* 8. 22; *fortasse queritis*, C. *Verr.* 3. 31.

Similarly *dicet eques*, Hor. *Ep.* 1. 15. 13; *respondebit Diogenes*, C. *Off.* 3. 12 § 52; *inquiet ille*, ib. § 53, and in other places.

<sup>1</sup> Compare Madvig's argument (*Opusc.* II. 77) for *faxo scias*, occurring more than fifty times in Plautus and Terence, against *faxo scias* occurring sixteen times. The argument on which he lays due stress, viz. that where the future indic. and pres. subj. are not distinguished by one letter only, but by more (e.g. *amabit* from *amet*), the future indic. not the present subj. is found, is not applicable to my argument: for only in Ov. *Rem. Am.* 419 *vocabit* have we an *a-* verb, and that is possibly balanced by *vocet*, ib. 225.



If we endeavour to find criteria by which to judge whether *dixerit aliquis* is subjunctive or indicative, the form being in itself ambiguous, four possible helps to a decision occur: viz.

1. The general frame of the sentence, and its relation to neighbouring clauses;
2. The possibility of substituting for it some other tense of either mood;
3. The use of the first person singular (which has a distinctive form) in analogous sentences;
4. The meaning.

I put them in this order, because the first three have an objective character; the last, though apparently the decisive consideration, is liable to deceive, because we view it through an ambiguous medium, that of another language.

Some examples of this use of *dixerit* will be found in § 1545. Including those, the whole number of instances that I have found are the following:

*dixerit quis*, Cic. Off. 3. 19; ib. 28; *dixerit quispiam*, Cic. Off. 3. 27; Phil. 14. 5; *fortasse dixerit quispiam*, Cic. Sen. 3; *dixerit fortasse quispiam*, Cic. Agr. 2. 13; *id fortasse quispiam improbus dixerit*, Cic. Phil. 10. 5; *dixerit hic aliquis*, Catull. 67. 37; *dixerit e multis aliquis*, Ov. A. A. 3. 7; *aliquis vestrum subjecerit*, Sall. Or. Macr. 14; *dixerit ille*, Hor. S. 2. 7. 37; *riserit fortasse aliquis*, C. Or. 2. 24. Possibly also *hoc aliquis...ponendum dixerit*, Val. M. 6. 3. 5. I do not put here C. N. D. 3. 31, for there *dixerit quispiam* may probably be the apodosis to *si...accuset*: nor C. Off. 3. 6 § 29 *forsitan quispiam dixerit*, for *dixerit* after *forsitan* must in Cicero be subjunctive.

Now (1) the characteristic of the expression is that it is not protasis to a directly expressed apodosis, but is the simple statement of an objection or remark, to which an answer is given by the author, but the answer is not in grammatical relation to the objection. It is not therefore strictly referable (though from the frequency with which the verb *precedes* the subject, it reminds one of them) to the class exemplified by *roges me, respondeam* (§ 1552)

or *rogat quis, respondeo* (§ 1553) nor to the class exemplified by *emerit, artioribus vinculis tenebitur* (§ 1622) though instances of the form in *-erit* are found in all these classes of sentences, and are almost frequent in the two latter. Nor can we argue from their analogy to the mood of *dixerit quis*, for the first has the subjunctive in both clauses, the second has the indicative in both, the third (i.e. concessive sentences) has the subjunctive in the protasis, and usually the indicative in the apodosis.

2. A better clue is given by the possibility of substituting for *dixerit*, without harm to the sense, some other form of the verb. Here the remarks about *dicat* and *dicet aliquis* become applicable. *Dicat* is, to say the least, somewhat scarce, *dicet* is frequent. And other tenses of the indicative are also found in a similar use. See the last three sentences in § 1545.

3. The use of the first person singular would be decisive of the question, if it were found in sentences of this class. But the first person is just the one which we cannot expect to find. The circumstances repudiate it. An objection to a speaker's words, arising during the time of his speaking, is necessarily the objection not of the speaker, but of him whom he is speaking to, or of a bystander. So that any precisely parallel sentence with the verb in the first person is out of the question. It may however occur to some that the common use of the first person in such expressions as *hoc ego dixerim*, &c. is analogous: and this shews the subjunctive mood. But the form with the third person really analogous to this sentence is not our *dixerit aliquis* but *illos merito quis dixerit miseros*, i.e. 'one might (would, could) fitly call them wretched,' i.e. 'if occasion arose:' whereas this mode of translation would not be at all suitable to *dixerit quis*, which has no reference to what might be said generally, but to the probability of such an objection being raised at once.

4. In truth the meaning seems on examination to be much more suitable to the indicative than to the subjunctive. The speaker, if he wishes to speak diffidently of the possibility of the objection, can and does so readily by throwing in *fortasse*. The objection itself requires only simple statement. *Dicet quis*, 'some one will now proceed to say;' *dixerit quis*, 'some one will have said, while I have been speaking.'

No doubt the ordinary English expression on such occasions is 'Some one may say', which we are in the habit of regarding as correspondent to the present subjunctive. But if this argument does not prove, in the face of the facts, that therefore the Romans ordinarily said *dicat aliquis*, it is still less likely to prove that, when they said *dixerit aliquis*, they were using the subjunctive. For the naturally corresponding English expression for *viderit ille* is 'he may (must) look to it', and yet *viderit ille* is precisely paralleled by *sed ego video* and *tu videbis*, &c., as Madvig has pointed out in proof of *viderit* being the indicative.

In conclusion, without denying the possibility of *dixerit quis* in the expressions here treated of being subjunctive, I think the indicative is decidedly the more probable. The analogy of *riserit*, *adride*, &c. (§§ 1571 *b* and 1553) makes it possible; the meaning of the indicative is quite suitable; and the frequent use of *dicet aliquis* makes it distinctly probable. I see nothing distinctly in favour of the other hypothesis.

[I have given in § 1593 instances of all persons of *video*, but perhaps a fuller list may be useful.

*video*, Ter. *Hec.* 700; *Ad.* 538; *ib.* 845; Cic. *Cel.* 15; *Flac.* 23; *Or.* 2. 8; *ib.* 3. 10; *Fin.* 1. 10; *ib.* 2. 3; *Ac.* 2. 24; *T. D.* 2. 11; *ib.* 5. 7; *R. P.* 2. 9; *Leg.* 1. 21; *Fam.* 7. 16; *ib.* 25; *Q. Fr.* 2. 13 § 2; *Liv.* 8. 33 § 8.

*videris*, Cic. *Phil.* 2. 46; *Or.* 1. 58; *Brut.* 86; *Att.* 13. 23; *ib.* 14. 20; *Q. Fr.* 3. 1 § 7; Anton. ap. C. *Phil.* 5. 12; *Liv.* 2. 40; Sen. *Rhet. Suas.* 6 § 27; *Contr.* 9. 27 § 19; Sen. *Ep.* 96 § 4.

*viderit*, Ter. *Ad.* 437; Cic. *Or.* 2. 58; *Ac.* 2. 7 § 19; *T. D.* 1. 11; *N. D.* 1 § 17; *Fam.* 13. 29; *Att.* 4. 10; *ib.* 5. 11; *ib.* 6. 4; *ib.* 12. 5; *ib.* 12. 21 bis; *ib.* 14. 11; *ib.* 13; *Liv.* 3. 45; Verg. *A.* 10. 743; Prop. 3. 7. 22; Ov. *H.* 12. 211; *A. A.* 2. 371; *ib.* 3. 671; *Rem.* 249; *ib.* 601; *Met.* 9. 519; *ib.* 10. 624; *Trist.* 5. 2. 43; Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 9. 27 § 16; Sen. *Ben.* 2. 14; *Dial.* 11. 13.

*viderimus*, Cic. *Ac.* 2. 44; *Att.* 4. 5 fin.

*videritis*, Var. *R. R.* 2. 5 § 13; *Cæl. ap. C. Fam.* 8. 13; *Liv.* 1. 58; *ib.* 42. 13.

*viderint*, Cic. *Quint.* 17; *Phil.* 3. 6; *ib.* 12. 11; *Or.* 45; *T. D.* 2. 13; *ib.* 5. 41; *Læli.* 3; *Fam.* 9. 6; *ib.* 13. 29; *Att.* 8. 2 § 3; *ib.* 14. 21; *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 7. 17 § 5; *Sen. Dial.* 1. 3; *ib.* 12. 14; *Petron.* § 61; § 62; *Plin. Ep.* 2. 10 § 4.

*videbis*, Cic. *Fam.* 4. 13 § 4; 13. 29 § 7; *Att.* 13. 33.

*videbitis*, Cic. *Ferr.* 5. 40; *Quint.* 5; *Fin.* 5. 21; *Fam.* 3. 9; *Att.* 10. 7; *ib.* 12. 34; *Sen. Ep.* 110 § 2; *ib.* 117 § 5.]

### How to study grammar.

If I may give advice to students of grammar, I would recommend them to get into their heads a clear skeleton of this book first, and then to study more carefully the subordinate divisions. The examples under one head should be carefully thought over and compared with examples under another head of kindred or opposed meaning.

Further the student should take some portion of a good author, say a speech or even a few chapters of Cicero, or one of the longer epistles of Horace, and study the grammar carefully, noting the instances it affords illustrative of the different heads, either of this book (Book iv), or one of the others. He should read it, once looking to nothing but the verbs, their tenses and moods; another time looking to the cases, or some of the cases, of the nouns; another to the order of the words and of the sentences; another to the use of the several prepositions and conjunctions; another to the use of the different classes of words and the way in which their functions are assumed by phrases or sentences. Again he may look to the formation of the words, their derivative suffixes, and their composition; or to the laws of sound which their component letters follow or exhibit. Or again to the adherence of the several words to their primitive meaning or the course of their deviation. And then he may further by comparison with other writers examine how far in these matters prose accords with verse, the prose of an

orator, as in Cicero's speeches or the fictitious speeches inserted by Livy in his narrative, with that of a gentleman as seen in Cicero's letters, or that of the everyday world as seen in Plautus, or that of an historian as Livy or Tacitus; or note in what respects the age of Cicero differed from that of the previous century, or that of the Augustan or post-Augustan age. But the reading and noting should not be done lazily and perfunctorily. He should, at first at any rate, write out all the instances illustrative of the particular part of grammar which he is studying, or note them carefully in his book.

Besides this he ought to study more than one grammar. Whatever arrangement of the materials of a Latin grammar we may think the best, it is almost certain that other arrangements, if made on some intelligible principles, will bring into stronger light some parts of the language, and furnish a different collection of instances and views taken from a different side.

#### Acknowledgment of obligations.

My principal obligations in this book are to Madvig whose grammar supplied the basis on which I first worked, and to whose critical knowledge of the Latin language I attach far the greatest weight. There is certainly no Latin scholar who can be put nearly on a level with him, at any rate as regards the Latin prose authors. Other writers have furnished me with occasional hints and examples. Of grammars, besides Key's (2nd ed. 1858), of which I have spoken in my former volume (Pref. p. xciii), I am principally indebted to Ruddiman's (ed. Stallbaum 1823), Weissenborn's (1838), Krüger's (1842), Blume's (2nd ed. 1858), Kühner's (5th ed. 1861) and Gossrau's (1869): and of special treatises to Holtze's *Syntaxis Priscorum Script. Latin. usque ad Terentium* (1861, 1862), Kuhnast's *Hauptpunkte der Livianischen Syntax* (1871, 1872), Dräger's *Syntax und Stil des Tacitus*, and in some degree to the small portion (pp. 1—322), which has at present appeared<sup>1</sup>, of his *Historische Syntax der Lateinischen Sprache* (1872), and to the *Syntaxis Lucretianæ*

<sup>1</sup> While this preface is printing I have received the rest of Vol. I, viz. pages 323—626. I have taken one or two references from it.

*lineamenta* (1868) of Holtze. I am conscious also of assistance from the collections of instances in Hoffmann's *Die Construction der lateinischen Zeitpartikeln* (1860)<sup>1</sup>, Lübker's *Die Syntax von Quom* (1870) and E. Becker's *De Syntaxi Interrogationum obliquarum* (in Studemund's *Studien* I. 1. 1873). I have also got a considerable number of hints and examples from Munro's *Lucretius* (some indeed from the recently published 3rd edit. 1873), Brix's and Lorenz's editions of some plays of Plautus, Wagner's edition of the *Aulularia*, Fabri's *Livy* xxi. xxvi. (edited by Heerwagen) and xxiii. xxiv., Mayor's edition of the second Philippic; and some from other books. Many of the examples given form part of the common stock of grammarians and annotators: many others, possibly a fourth or a third of the whole, are from my own reading, though some of them may very likely occur in other grammars. Of course I have never taken an instance without verifying it in a recent edition, though I have sometimes referred it to a different head from that indicated by the authors from whom I took it. The editions I have used are stated in the preface to the first volume, p. xciv. For Seneca Rhetor I have of course used lately Kiessling's edition.

In the account of the *oratio obliqua* I have benefited by some hints and criticisms of the Rev. J. H. Backhouse on my Elementary Grammar, and generally by some of Rev. J. B. Mayor, who has kindly read over many of the proof-sheets, though not in their final form.

#### Miscellaneous remarks.

Most of my references will be readily understood: but it may be well to state that I have referred to Cicero (I regret to say) by the larger chapters, not by the smaller sections. By *C. Or.* 26 &c. I mean the treatise called *Orator*; by *C. Or.* 1. 26, &c. I mean the *De Oratore* Lib. 1. &c.; by *C. Verr.* 1. 24, the 1st book of the *Actio Secunda*; in references to the *Actio prima* I have always named the pleading, e.g. *C. Verr. Act.* 1. 24. *C. Man.* is for Cicero's speech

<sup>1</sup> The new edition of this treatise was not out in time for me to make any use of it.

*pro lege Manilia* (or *de imperio Cn. Pompeii*) ; *Læl.* is for the *Lælius* or *de Amicitia* ; *Sen.* for the *Cato Major* or *de Senectute*. By *Plin.* simply, I mean the elder Pliny : the references are to the sections printed in the margin of Jan and Detlefsen's editions. The younger Pliny's works are denoted by *Plin. Ep.* or *Plin. Pan.* Cicero and Livy are usually denoted simply by *C.* and *L.* *Cat.* is Cato ; *Catull.* is Catullus ; *Corn.* is for Cornificius, the supposed author of the *Libri ad Herennium*. *C. I. L.* is the *Corpus Inscript. Latin.*, usually the first volume. In quoting poets the number which I have given is that of the line, in which the pertinent expression occurs, not that with which the quotation may commence. The spelling is usually that of the edition from which I have taken the example ; and thus the spelling of the quotations from Livy (except the last five books, in which Madvig has followed the MS. pretty closely) is more conventional than the spelling of most other quotations.

In two important sections of the book (*viz.* the cases and the moods), the right-hand pages are parallel, not continuous, to the left-hand pages. In the first of these the right-hand page contains either further illustrations, or special details, or parallel or contrasted usages of other cases or of cases with prepositions. In the section on the moods the right-hand pages are almost entirely given up to the indicative and imperative. See the remarks on p. 219. By this arrangement I have obtained a thorough contrast of the indicative with the subjunctive, and at the same time have not broken the connection of the subjunctive usages. I do not think the breaches of continuity, such as they are, in the treatment of the indicative are of any moment in comparison with these advantages. All grammars have some.

In the Index I have not only referred to the places where a particular usage is made the subject of remark, but to a great many other places where a usage happened to find illustration in an example adduced for a different purpose. In references of the latter kind I have (in the Index) added an asterisk to the sectional number. By this means the Index may often serve as a summary of Latin usages arranged on different principles from those adopted in the book itself. But of course it must be borne in mind that it is an Index to this book only, and therefore, if any Latin usages do not happen to occur in the book, they will not be found in the Index. On the

other hand I have often referred to constructions by loose popular names, although such as I have in the body of this work endeavoured to avoid. Being popular they appeared most likely to answer the purpose of an Index.

Any corrections will be gladly received.

HENRY J. ROBY.

*May, 1874.*

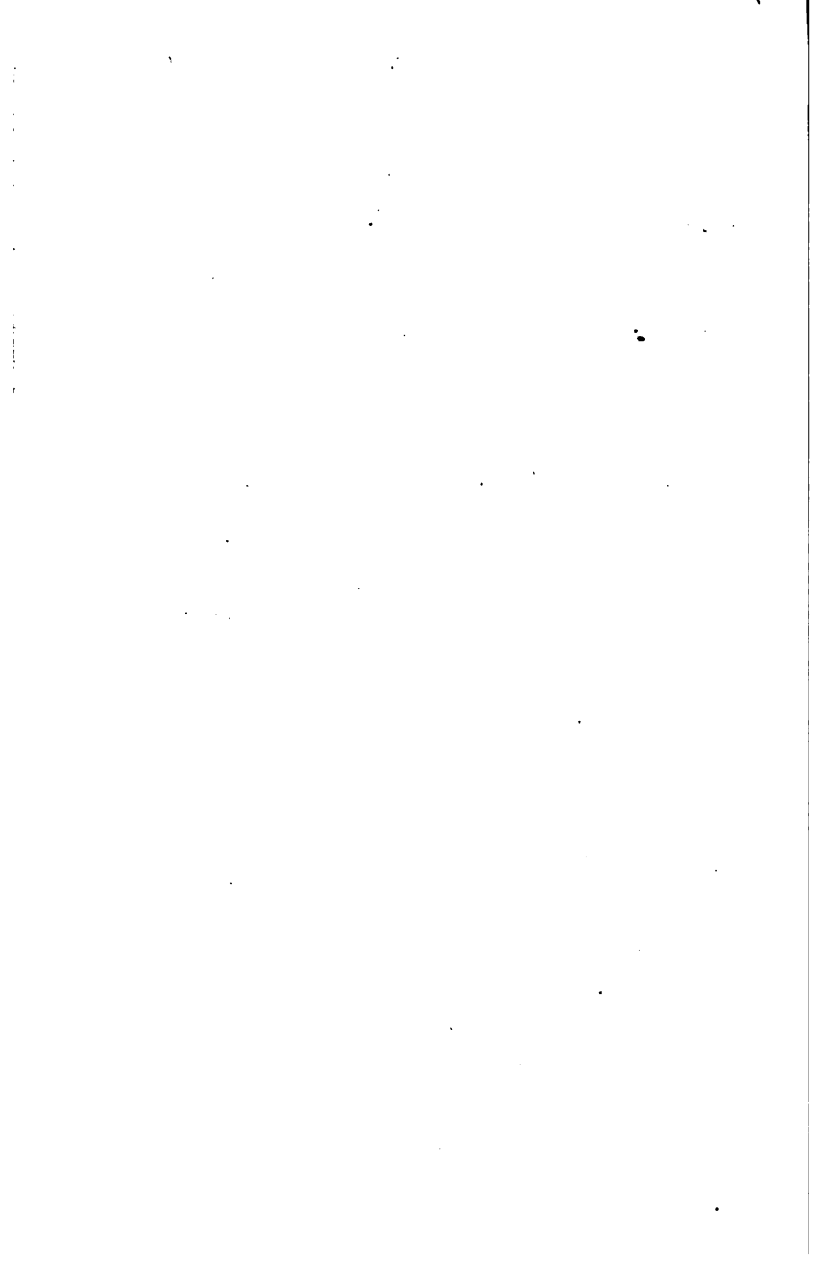
#### PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION.

Some misprints and clerical errors have been corrected. Otherwise this edition scarcely differs from the first.

H. J. R.

WOOD HILL,  
PENDLETON, MANCHESTER,  
*Feb. 1875.*





BOOK IV.

*SYNTAX*

OR

*USE OF INFLEXIONAL FORMS.*



## BOOK IV.

### SYNTAX, OR USE OF INFLEXIONAL FORMS.

SYNTAX is an account of the way in which the different parts <sup>1000</sup> of speech (*i.e.* classes of words), and their different inflexional forms are employed in the formation of sentences.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

WORDS in Latin may be divided into four classes, according as <sup>1001</sup> they denote, (i) a complete thought; (ii) a person, thing, or abstract notion; (iii) a relation or quality; (iv) a mere connexion of words or sentences. Words of the first two classes are, with some special exceptions, inflected; the last two are not inflected.

i. Words which express a complete thought (called in logic <sup>1002</sup> a judgment) are *finite verbs* (*i.e.* verbs in indicative, subjunctive and imperative moods); *e.g.* *dico*, *dicis*, *dicat*, *I say*, *thou sayest*, *he says*; *dicat*, *he should say*; *dicito*, *thou shalt speak*.

ii. Words which denote persons and things and abstract notions are called nouns (*i.e.* names), and are divided into two classes, substantives and adjectives.

1. *Substantives* are such names of things, &c. as are repre- <sup>1003</sup> sentative, not of their possessing one particular quality, but of the sum of all the qualities and relations which we conceive them to have.

(a) *Pronoun Substantives.*

*Personal Pronouns* (in Latin) are names to denote the person speaking and the person spoken to; e.g. *ego, I; tu, thou.*

(b) *Noun Substantives.*

*Proper nouns* are names of individual persons or places; e.g. *Lucius, Lucius; Roma, Rome.*

*Common nouns, or appellatives,* are names of classes of persons or things; e.g. *victor, conqueror; aurum, gold; flos, a flower.*

*Abstract nouns* are names of qualities, actions, and states, considered apart from the persons or things possessing or performing them; e.g. *magnitudo, greatness; salus, health; discessus, departure.*

(c) *Infinitive mood of verbs and gerunds* are names of actions or states conceived in connexion with the persons or things performing or possessing them; e.g. *videre, to see; videndi, of seeing.*(d) Any word or phrase which is spoken of as a word or phrase only, is the name of itself; e.g. *vidit, the word vidit.* Such words are necessarily indeclinable.

2. *Adjectives* are such names of persons or things as are expressive simply of their possessing this or that quality, or being placed in this or that relation. (See § 1060.)

(a) *Pronominal adjectives* describe by means of certain relations, chiefly those of local nearness to the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of. They are often used instead of nouns; e.g. *meus, mine; hic, this; ille, that; qui, which.*(b) *Numeral adjectives* describe by means of number or rank; e.g. *septem, seven; septimus, seventh.* Some are indeclinable.(c) *Nominal (or noun) adjectives* describe by means of qualities; e.g. *magnus, great; salutaris, healthy.*(d) *Participles* (including *gerundive* in some uses) are verbal adjectives used to describe persons or things by means of actions done by or to them; e.g. *amans, loving; amatus, loved; amandus, that should be loved.*

iii. Words (besides oblique cases of nouns), which denote relations or qualities of qualities or of actions, are called *adverbs*, and are indeclinable.

- (a) *Connective* adverbs; *i.e.* those which besides qualifying a word in their own sentence, also connect that sentence with another sentence. These are all pronominal; *e.g.* *quum, when; dum, whilst; ubi, where; ut, how, as; si, in whatever case, if; quia, whereas, because, &c.*
- (b) Other *pronominal* adverbs; *e.g.* *hic, here; tum, then*
- (c) *Numeral* adverbs; *e.g.* *septies, seven times.*
- (d) *Nominal* adverbs (of *quality, manner, &c.*); *e.g.* *bene, well; clare, brightly.*
- (e) *Prepositions* either express modes of actions or qualities, and in this usage are generally compounded with the verb or adjective, or give precision to the relations denoted by the case-suffixes of nouns; *e.g.* *in, in; ex, out; per, through.*

iv. Words which denote a mere connection (not of things, but) <sup>1006</sup> of names with names, sentences with sentences, or parts of sentences with like parts, are called *conjunctions*; *e.g.* *et, nec, sed*, in the following sentences, *Cæsar et Cicero eunt et colloquuntur, Cæsar and Cicero go and talk together; Non eros nec dominos appellat eos, sed patriæ custodes, sed patres, sed deos* (C. R. P. i. 41), *He calls them not masters nor lords but guardians of their country, fathers, aye gods.*

To these four classes may be added

<sup>1007</sup>

*Interjections*; which are either natural vocal sounds, expressive of sudden emotions, or abbreviated sentences; *e.g.* *O! heu! eham! st! medius fidius, upon my word.*

## CHAPTER II.

### PARTS OF A SIMPLE SENTENCE, AND USE OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

#### i. ELEMENTS OF A SENTENCE.

WHEN we speak we either *name* a person or thing, or we *declare* <sup>1008</sup> something of a person or thing.

The name of a person or thing is expressed by a *substantive*.

A complete thought always contains more than the name, for it declares something of the person or thing named. Every complete thought (called in Grammar a *sentence*) contains at least two ideas, viz.

1. The person or thing of which we speak, called the *Subject*.
2. Our declaration respecting it, called the *Predicate*.

A complete thought may be expressed most simply in Latin<sup>1009</sup> either (a) by a finite verb, or (b) by two nouns.

(a) A finite verb contains in its personal suffixes the subject, in its stem the predicate; e.g. *curr-it, he (she, it) runs*; *plu-it, it rains*; *ama-mus, we love*; etc.

(b) When the thought is expressed by two nouns only, the sentence will contain a substantive (or substantively used adjective), in the nominative case, for the subject, and either a substantive or an adjective for the predicate. Of two substantives it is, apart from the context, indifferent which is considered as the subject, but usually the least general name will be the subject: e.g. *Julius fortis, Julius is brave*; *Julius consul, Julius is the Consul*, or, *the Consul is Julius*.

The junction of the two ideas, i.e. the predication itself (called<sup>1010</sup> in logic the *copula*), is not expressed by any separate word, but (a) is implied in the indissoluble junction of the stem and personal suffixes in the finite verb; or (b) is inferred from the close sequence of the two names.

Both these simple forms of sentences are liable to be ambiguous: viz:

(a) The personal suffixes of a finite verb are often insufficient<sup>1011</sup> to define the subject, especially when the subject is of the third person. For the purpose of further definition, a substantive in the nominative case is often expressed with it, and the verb may then be regarded as containing only the predicate; e.g. *Equus currit, the horse runs* (properly *horse run-be*<sup>1</sup>).

(b) The relation of two nouns to each other is also ambiguous.<sup>1012</sup> The adjective or second substantive may be used, not to assert a connexion (i.e. as a *predicate*), but to denote an already known or assumed connexion (i.e. as an *attribute*), of the person or thing named by the first substantive with the quality named by the second substantive or the adjective. To remedy this ambiguity, some part of the verb *sum* is generally used (except in animated

<sup>1</sup> More strictly perhaps (if we may regard the *o* stems as properly masculine, and notice the nominative suffix) *horse-he run-he*.

language) to mark the fact of a predication, and then (usually but not necessarily) means little more than the logical copula, e.g. *Julius est consul*, *Julius (be) is consul*.

A finite verb, when its subject is expressed by a separate word, <sup>1013</sup> is put in the same person, and, as a rule, in the same number, as its subject. (See § 1433 sqq.)

(The distinctions of mood tense and voice do not concern the analysis of the simple sentence.)

Any substantive (§ 1003) may be used as a subject. The subject <sup>1014</sup> of a sentence is, if declinable, in the nominative case; but the relation of subject and predicate may exist also between words in oblique cases.

A noun, whether used as an attribute or predicate, is put in the same case, if it denote the same person or thing, as the substantive to which it is attributed, or the subject of which it is predicated.

(Pronouns and participles follow the same rule as nouns, and will therefore, unless separately mentioned, be included here under the term *noun*. Adjectives used otherwise than as attributes or predicates of a substantive will be included under the term *substantive*.)

## ii. Of Attributes.

If a substantive by itself does not express the full name or definition <sup>1015</sup> which we wish to give of a person or thing, a word or expression is added, called an *attribute*<sup>1</sup> of the substantive. The simplest forms of attributes are nouns, denoting the same person or thing, as the substantive of which they are attributes. An attribute may be

(a) A substantive (often said to be in *apposition*); e.g. *Calus Julius Cæsar*; *Julio consuli credidi*, *I believed the consul Julius*.

(b) An adjective; e.g. *hæc res* '*this thing*;' *fortem consulem vidi*, *I saw the brave consul*. This is the normal use of the adjective, the adjectival suffixes, like the personal suffixes of the finite verb, acquiring further definition by the accompaniment of a substantive.

(c) For the use of other words or expressions as attributes, see below (§ 1017 c).

<sup>1</sup> Whether in any given sentence a word or expression is an attribute and intended merely to aid in identifying the subject, or is a predicate and intended to give fresh information about it, may be sometimes doubtful. Latin has no mark to distinguish these uses. In Greek an attribute has the article prefixed, a secondary predicate has not.



## iii. Of Predicates.

A predicate<sup>1</sup> is either *primary* or *secondary*, and each of these is <sup>1016</sup> either *direct* or *oblique*. A predicate is *direct*, if its subject is in the nominative case; *oblique*, if its subject is in an oblique case. It is *primary*, if predicated immediately of the subject; *secondary*, if predicated only through, or in connexion with, a primary predicate.

A finite verb always contains a primary direct predication; and is never used otherwise (except 1003 d).

A noun or infinitive mood may be a primary or secondary, direct or oblique, predicate.

(a) As *primary* predicate some form of the verb is usual, and chiefly the finite verb; but a past participle or gerundive is not uncommon: a noun or pronoun is comparatively rare. (For the infinitive see § 1359). *e.g.* <sup>1017</sup>

**Invadunt hostes: Romani fugere: occisus Marcellus. Hæc nuntianda.**

The distinction of the use of a noun as a primary predicate from its use as a secondary predicate with the verb of *being* (see next paragraph) is practically so unimportant, that the term *secondary predicate* will often be used to cover both.

(b) A *secondary* predicate is often added to a verb of indeterminate meaning (*e.g.* a verb of *being*, *becoming*, *naming*, &c.) to complete, as it were, the predication: *e.g.*

**Dux fuit Julius. Occisus est Marcellus. Hæc sunt nuntianda.**

**Liberati videbamur. Gaius dicitur advenire. Cæsar imperator appellatur (or appellatus, or appellari).**

(c) A secondary predicate is often employed to denote the character in which, or circumstances under which, a person or thing acts, or is acted on. (Such a secondary predicate might, if it needed distinction from the preceding class, be called a *subpredicate*. It is often called an *apposition*, or *adverbial apposition*.)

**Hannibal peto pacem, It is Hannibal who now asks for peace.**

**Primus Marcum vidisti, You are the first that has seen Marcus.**

**Senex scribere institui, I was an old man when I began to write.**

**Neque loquens es, neque tacens, umquam bonus. (Pl. Rud. 1116.)**

**Cæsar legatus mittitur (or missus or mitti).**

<sup>1</sup> It is convenient sometimes to regard the whole of the sentence as divisible into two parts only: in this view the grammatical subject with all its attributes, &c. is the (logical) subject; the rest of the sentence is the (logical) predicate.

(d) Oblique predicates are usually in sentences containing a finite verb. The following contain *primary oblique* predicates.

*Mitt Romanos fugere.* *He says the Romans are fleeing (speaks of the Romans as fleeing).* *Fama est Romanos fugere.*

*Minabar me abiturum.* *Minantur puellæ se abituras.*

*Te heredem fecit.* *Quem te appellem?* *Marcum primum vidisti.*

*Advenienti sorori librum dedit.* *He gave the book to his sister as she was coming up.*

*Ante Ciceronem consulem interit.* *He died before Cicero was consul.*

*Capta urbe rediit.* *Pudor vos non latī auxilii cepit (§ 1409).*

*Testes egregios! (§ 1128).* *At te ægrotare! (§ 1358).*

(e) An infinitive, when used either as (1) predicate or (2) object, &c. is often accompanied by a noun or other predicate; e.g.

(1) *Cæsarem dico appellari (or appellatum esse) imperatorem.*

*Cæsar dicitur appellari (or appellatus esse) imperator.*

*Fertur ille consules reliquisse, invitū invitos.*

*Spero vos in urbem triumphantes ingressuros esse.*

(2) *Cæsar bonus esse (or haberi) cupit.*

*Cogito iter facere armatus.* *Licuit esse otioso Themistocli.*

*Movit me vir, cujus fugientis comes, rempublicam recuperantis socius, videor esse debere.* (C. Att. 8. 14.)

(f) Participles are (sometimes attributes, but) usually predicates to some substantive in the sentence, and are thus the means of combining into one sentence several subordinate predications: e.g.

*Venit iste cum sago, gladio succinctus, tenens jaculum; illi, nescio quid incipienti dicere, gladium in latere defixit.* (Corn. 4. 52.)

*Hæc tallaque vociferantes, adversarium haud imparē nacti sunt App. Claudium, relictum a collegis ad tribunicias seditiones comprimendas.* (L. 5. 2.)

*Consul nuntio circumventi fratris conversus ad pugnam, vulnere accepto, ægre ab circumstantibus ereptus, et suorum animos turbavit et ferociores hostes fecit.* (L. 3. 5.)

In these sentences all the participles (except *circumstantibus*), as well as *adversarium*, *haud imparē*, and *ferociores*, are predicates.

#### iv. Of the use of oblique cases and adverbs.

1. If a verb by itself, or with a secondary predicate, does not express all that we wish to declare of a person or thing by that sentence, additions may be made of various kinds; viz.

(a) If the verb express an action conceived as in immediate connexion with some person or thing upon which it is exercised, or

to which it gives rise, a substantive in the accusative case may be added to denote such person or thing. This is called the *object* (or *direct* or *immediate object*); e.g. *amicos fugiunt; Cæsar librum teneat; carmina fingo*. If the object be itself an action, it is usually expressed by an infinitive mood; e.g. *cupio discere*.

(b) If the verb express an action or fact indirectly affecting a person (or, less frequently, a thing), who is not the subject or direct object, a substantive, in the dative case, may be added to express such an *indirect* (or *remoter*) *object*. Some (i.e. intransitive) verbs admit this indirect object only: many verbs admit of both a direct and indirect object: e.g. *Placet oratio tibi, The speech is pleasing to you; hoc fratri facite, Do this for your brother; liber Cæsari datur*.

(c) Some verbs have what may be called a *secondary* object in the genitive case: if transitive, they have also usually a direct (frequently personal) object: e.g. *Accuso te furti, I accuse thee of theft; cadum vini implet, He fills the cask with (makes it full of) wine; miserescite patris, Have pity on your father*.

(d) A verb may be further qualified by adding oblique cases of substantives (with or without prepositions), or adverbs, to denote the *place, time, value, means, manner, cause, &c.* at, in, by, from, &c. which the action is done or state exists: e.g. *Fui annum Capuæ, I was a year at Capua; litteras abs te Balbus ad me attulit vesperi; magni hoc aestimo, I value this at a large sum; ardet dolore*.

The infinitive mood and the participles admit the same qualifications as finite verbs.

2. Oblique cases of substantives (with or without prepositions), and adverbs, when they qualify (a) the verb of *being* and other verbs of similarly colourless meaning, have often the same effect as a secondary predicate. They are rarely used predicatively without a verb. But they are also used to qualify (b) substantives attributively, and (c) adjectives, and sometimes (d) adverbs.

(Such words do not (like those in § 1015) denote the same person or thing as the word of which they are predicates or attributes; and the maintenance of their own special case is necessary to give them the requisite meaning.) e.g.

- (a) *Cæsaris est* (or *vocatur*) *gladius, The sword is (is called) Cæsar's*.<sup>1020</sup>  
*Scio hoc laudi esse mihi. Præstanti prudentia est. In me odium est tuum. Sic est vita hominum. Frustra es.*
- (b) *Cæsaris gladius. Cupiditate triumphī ardebam. Aliquid læti.*  
 (This use as attribute is the most common use of the genitive.)  
*Decemviri legibus scribendis. Vir præstanti prudentia. In me odium. Omnes circa civitates.*

- (c) *Maximus regum : cupidus triumphī. Arti cuilibet idoneus. Tanto major, (by) so much greater; splendidior vitro, brighter than glass. Ex composito hilaris. Valde utilis. Aliquando lætus.*  
 (d) *Maximē omnium. Convenienter naturæ. Tanto magis. In dies magis. Pæne pedetemptim.*

v. *Of coordination by conjunctions and otherwise.*

(a) Conjunctions and connective adverbs of manner (*e.g.* <sup>1021</sup> *quam, ut*), when used to unite words or phrases, unite those only which are *coordinate* to one another, *i.e.* which fulfil the same function in the sentence; *e.g.* two objects, two attributes, two adverbial qualifications; &c. *e.g.*

*Romani ac socii veniunt. Nec regem nec reginam vidi.*  
*Illicne credam an tibi? Bella fortius quam felicitus geris.*  
*Tibi cum meam salutem, tum omnium horum debeo.*  
*Cum omnibus potius quam soli perire voluerunt. (C. Cat. 4. 7.)*  
*Tu mihi videris Epicharmi, acuti nec insulsi hominis, ut Siculi, sententiam sequi. (C. T. D. 1. 18.)*

(b) Coordinate words are often put simply side by side, without any conjunction: sometimes another word is repeated with each: (cf. § 1439—1441); *e.g.*

*Veios, Fidenas, Collatiam, Ariciam, Tusculum cum Calibus, Teano, Neapoli, Puteolis, Nuceria comparabunt. (C. Agr. 2. 35.)*  
*Nihil vos civibus, nihil sociis, nihil regibus respondistis; nihil iudices sententia, nihil populus suffragiis, nihil hic ordo auctoritate declaravit; mutum forum, elinguem curiam, tactam et fractam civitatem videbatis. (C. Or. p. red. in Sen. 3.)*

(c) An answer, when not framed as an independent sentence, is often made in words coordinate to the pertinent part of the question: *e.g.* *Quis librum dedit? Cicero. Cui? Bruto. Quem? Tusculanas Disputationes. Ubi? In Tusculano.*

vi. *Of fragmentary or interjectional expressions.*

A noun or infinitive mood is sometimes used (a) as subject without a predicate expressed, or (b) as predicate without a subject expressed; or (c) as a mere address. Similarly (d) adverbs and interjections.

- (a) *Quid, si adeo? Agendum; eundem. (§ 1399.) Malum (§ 1081). Tantum laborem capere ob talem filium! (Ter. Andr. 870.)*  
 (b) *Mirum ni hic miles est. (§ 1757.) Factum (in answers § 2254).*  
 (c) *Audi, Cæsar. Tibi, Marce, loquor. (§ 1082.)*  
 (d) *Bene mihi, bene amicis meæ. (Pl. Pers. 775.) Hei mihi.*

## CHAPTER III.

## OF THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF SENTENCES.

A sentence may be affirmative or negative or interro-<sup>1023</sup>  
gative.

An affirmative sentence asserts the connexion of two ideas;  
e.g. *Julius moritur, Julius dies; Julius est consul, Julius is consul.*

A negative sentence denies the connexion of two ideas; e.g.  
*Julius non moritur, Julius dies not; Julius non est consul, Julius is not consul.*

An interrogative sentence suggests the connexion and calls for an affirmation or denial of it; e.g. *Num Julius moritur? Dies Julius? Juliusne est consul? Is Julius consul?*

Commands and wishes are special forms of affirmative or negative sentences.

A simple sentence contains only one direct assertion, and there-<sup>1024</sup>  
fore one primary predicate.

A compound<sup>1</sup> sentence contains two or more single sentences. If these sentences though connected together yet remain quite independent of each other in sense, they are said to be coordinate to one another. If they are not independent of each other, one will be principal and the others subordinate.

A subordinate (relative, temporal, causal, concessive, or con-<sup>1025</sup>  
ditional) sentence is often called the protasis, the principal (i.e. demonstrative, conditioned, &c.) sentence is often called the apodosis.

## Coordinate sentences.

## 1. Coordinate sentences are connected by

(a) *certain conjunctions and adverbs; e.g. et, ac; aut, vel, nec; 1026*  
*sed, autem; an; tum...tum, qua...qua; &c.*

<sup>1</sup> Some grammarians confine the term *compound* sentence to one which is composed (primarily at least) of coordinate sentences; and call a sentence which is divided (primarily at least) into a principal and subordinate sentence (or sentences) *complex*.

Tullius non convenerat me, nec erat jam quisquam mecum tuorum. (C. Fam. 3. 11.)

Vale et matrem meosque tibi commendatos habe.

(Treb. ap. C. Fam. 12. 16.)

Quid ais? an venit Pamphilus? (Ter. Hec. III. 2. 11.)

Stellæ tum occultantur, tum rursus aperiuntur. (C. N. D. 2. 20.)

(b) or by the relative *qui*, when it is merely equivalent to *et is*, *nam is*; i.e. when it continues a statement instead of introducing a definition or limitation of it.

Res loquitur ipsa; quæ semper valet plurimum. (C. Mil. 20.)

Nam quod ad populum pertinet, semper dignitatis iniquus iudex est, qui aut invidet aut favet. (C. Planc. 3.)

2. A similar effect is produced, especially in (a) animated language, or (b) sharp contrast, by mere juxtaposition, without any expressed grammatical connective.

(a) Volt hoc multitudo, patitur consuetudo, fert etiam humanitas. (C. Off. 2. 14.)

Pompeius fremit, queritur, Scauro studet, sed utrum fronte an mente, dubitatur. (C. Att. 4. 15.)

(b) Ergo hæc veteranus miles facere poterit, doctus vir sapiensque non poterit? (C. Tusc. 2. 17.)

Neminem oportet esse tam stulte adrogantem, ut in se rationem et mentem putet inesse, in cælo mundoque non putet.

(C. Legg. 2. 7.)

3. Occasionally two sentences, in form coordinate, are in meaning, the one principal, the other subordinate.

Attendite, jam intelligetis.

Dares hoc Crasso, in foro saltaret.

(See Chap. xx.)

### Subordinate sentences.

Subordinate sentences fulfil the same functions as a Substantive, an Adjective, or an Adverb, and occupy a corresponding position in the principal sentence. They are called respectively, Substantival, Adjectival, or Adverbial sentences.

1. Substantival sentences occupy the place which a substantive in the nominative or accusative case would occupy, i.e. Subject, Object, Apposition.

*They are in Latin of four kinds:*

(a) *Infinitive sentence, i. e. an infinitive mood with its subject in the accusative.* (§§ 1351, 1356.)

(N.B. *Expressions in the infinitive are not strictly sentences but merely fragments of sentences. They are here classed with sentences, because in indirect narration they represent what would be proper sentences in direct narration.*)

Scio te hæc dixisse.

Fama est Gallos adventare.

Ducuntur homines spe, sibi id utile futurum. (C. Off. 2. 6.)

(b) *Sentences introduced by the connective adverb quod.*

Bene mihi evenit, quod mittor ad mortem. (C. T. D. 1. 41.)

Prætereo, quod hanc sibi domum sedemque delegit. (C. Clu. 66.)

(c) *Dependent questions.*

Quid futurum sit, non video. (C. Att. 7. 13.)

Di utrum sint necne sint, quæritur. (C. N. D. 3. 7.)

(d) *Some sentences introduced by ut or ne; especially as objects after verbs of entreating, commanding, effecting, &c. and as subjects to the verbs est, accidit, &c. These are originally and strictly adverbial sentences expressing purpose or consequence.*

Peto non ut decernatur aliquid novi, sed ut ne quid novi decernatur. (C. Fam. 2. 7.)

Faciendum mihi putavi, ut tuis litteris brevi responderem.

(C. Fam. 3. 8.)

Thrasybulo contigit ut patriam in libertatem vindicaret.

(Nep. Thras. 1.)

Quando fuit ut, quod licet, non liceret? (C. Cæl. 20.)

2. *Adjectival sentences stand as attributes to a substantive, <sup>1030</sup> to specify or define some particular class or individual; and are always introduced by a relative (adjective or adverb), as, qui, qualis, quantus, &c. ubi, quando, &c.*

*A demonstrative pronoun (adjective or adverb) is often found in the principal sentence to give additional distinctness to the substantive specified.*

Locus, quem delegi, ubi constitui, hic est.

Duabus iis personis, quas supra dixi, tertia adjungitur. (C. Off. 1. 13.)

3. *Adverbial sentences are used to qualify verbs or adjectives, and are introduced by a connective adverb. They fulfil the same functions as adverbs, oblique cases (except genitive), with or without prepositions (§ 1018 d, 1019), and participial clauses (§ 1073). The different significations of adverbial sentences, with the conjunctions introducing them, are as follows:*

(a) *Place where, whence, whither. Ubi, qua, quo, unde, &c. (Local sentences.)*

(b) *Time when, during which, until, after, before, as often as. Quam, ut (when), ubi, dum, donec, postquam, priusquam, quoties, &c. (Temporal sentences.)*

(c) *Manner in which; ut (as), oeu, quasi, quam, tanquam, velut, &c. Ac has sometimes the same effect as quam. (Modal or Comparative sentences.)*

(d) *Purpose; 'that', 'in order that'. Ut, ut ne, ne, &c. (Final sentences.)*

(e) *Result; 'so that'. Ut, ut non. (Consecutive sentences.)*

(f) *Condition; 'if'. Si, &c. (Conditional sentences.)*

(g) *Cause; 'because', 'since'. Quod, quum, quia, aliquidem, &c. (Causal sentences.)*

(b) *Concession or Assumption; 'alibough', 'supposing that'. Etia, quanquam, ut, dum. (Concessive sentences.)*

*Examples of these different kinds of adverbial sentences will be given in treating of the moods. Chapp. XIX—XXIII.*

4. (a) *A subordinate sentence may itself be principal to a third sentence.*

Ut iis bonis erigimur, quæ expectamus, ita lætamur iis, quæ recordamur.

*The principal sentence here is sic lætamur iis: to this there are two subordinate sentences, viz. (1) quæ recordamur, a simple adjectival sentence qualifying bonis; (2) ut bonis iis erigimur, quæ expectamus, a complex adverbial sentence of manner. Thus, ut erigimur bonis is subordinate to ita lætamur, but principal to quæ expectamus.*

(b) *Sentences which are coordinate to one another, (a) may both be subordinate to a third sentence; or (b) may each contain one or more subordinate sentences.*



Qui cum Sicyonem advenisset, adhibuit sibi in consilium quindecim principes, perfecitque æstumandis possessionibus, ut persuaderet exulibus ut pecuniam accipere mallent, possessionibus cederent. (Cf. C. Off. 2. 23.)

*The compound sentences, of which adhibuit and perfecit are the predicates, are coordinate to one another. Cum advenisset is subordinate to adhibuit (temporal). Ut persuaderet is subordinate to perfecit (substantival, § 1029). Ut mallent and cederent are coordinate to one another, and subordinate to persuaderet.*

It will be seen, that subordinate sentences correspond in their <sup>1034</sup> functions to the several cases of substantives.

The nominative (as subject) and accusative (as object) are represented by substantival sentences.

The genitive (as indeclinable adjective) is represented by adjectival sentences.

The ablative, the locative, the adverbial accusative (*place whither, measure*), and the quasi-adjectival dative (§§ 1156, 1158), may be represented by adverbial and adjectival sentences.

All sentences are expressions denoting facts, and consequently the dative as ordinary indirect object, and the nominative of address (or vocative), which are, strictly speaking, always regarded as names of persons, can rarely be represented by any sentence.

## CHAPTER IV.

### ORDER OF WORDS AND SENTENCES.

#### i. Order of words in a prose sentence.

*The order in which the words stand in a Latin sentence, is not <sup>1035</sup> fixed by any invariable rule, but depends chiefly on the requirements of facility of comprehension, emphasis, and rhythm.*

(A) *Facility of comprehension suggests the following rules, which however are frequently superseded, if emphasis or rhythm requires a different order.*

1. *The subject is put first, the predicate last, and the object and other qualifications of the predicate interposed, in order that the precise extent and purport of the predicate may be known, before the bearer or reader can suppose the sense to be complete.*

Cur ego tuas partes suscipio? Cur M. Tullius P. Africani monumenta requirit, P. Scipio eum, qui illa sustulit, defendit? (C. Verr. 4. 36.)

Et Fabius cum equitatu impetum dederat et consul eruptionem e castris in trepidos jam hostes fecerat. (L. 4. 28.)

Dictator præcones edicere jubet ut ab inermi abstinence. (L. 5. 21.)

*In poetry the order depends greatly on the requirements of the metre:*

Ponitur ad patrios barbara præda deos. (Ov. Her. 1. 26.)

2. *Qualificatory expressions (except attributes) are for a similar reason placed immediately before the word they qualify. Consequently,*

(a) *The preposition precedes its substantive, either immediately, or with qualificatory expressions only interposed.*

Consul de bello ad populum tulit. (L. 4. 31.)

Sine ullo metu et summa cum honestate vivemus. (C. Clu. 58.)

Hæc officia pertinent ad earum rerum, quibus utuntur homines, facultatem, ad opes, ad copias. (C. Off. 2. 1.)

*Some prepositions, chiefly disyllabic, occasionally stand after a relative pronoun without a substantive. So especially contra, inter, propter, and de in the phrase (borrowed from law), quo de agitur.*

*Cum is always suffixed to personal and usually to relative pronouns.*

Quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. (Cæs. G. 6. 36.)

Homo disertus non intellegit eum, quem contra dicit, laudari a se, eos, apud quos dicit, vituperari. (C. Phil. 2. 8.)

Senatus, quos ad soleret, referendum censuit. (C. N. D. 2. 4.)

*In poetry the order is often destroyed:*

Solus avem cælo dejecit ab alto. (Verg. A. 5. 542.)

Fœdera regum vel Gabiis vel cum rigidis æquata Sabinis.

(Hor. Epist. 2. 1. 25.)

(b) *Adverbs and oblique cases precede the verb or adjective to which they belong.*

Bellum civile opinione plerumque et fama gubernatur. (C. Phil. 5. 10.)

Multi autem, Gnathonum similes, sunt loco, fortuna, fama superiores. (C. Læl. 25.)

Cuniculus delectis militibus eo tempore plenus in æde Junonis, quæ in Veientana arce erat, armatos repente edidit. (L. 5. 21.)

Cicero per omnes superiores dies, præceptis Cæsaris, summa diligentia, milites in castris continuerat. (Cæs. G. 6. 36.)

In itinere de prælio facto Brutoque et Mutina obsidione liberatis audivi. (Plancus, ap. C. Fam. 10. 11.)

Legati proficiscantur : bellum nihilo minus paretur. (C. Phil. 5. 9.)

(c) *Negatives precede the word they qualify.*

1040

Nec animo nec benevolentia nec patientia cujusquam pro vobis cedam. (Plancus, ap. C. Fam. 10. 11.)

Haud segnius, quam fide populi Romani dignum fuit, exercitus Tusculum ductus. (L. 6. 33.)

Nihil ne ab iis quidem tribunis ad Velitras memorabile factum. (L. 6. 36.)

Aratoribus nihil non modo de fructu sed ne de bonis quidem suis reliqui fuit. (C. Verr. 3. 48.)

Cur non ita magno vendidisti? (C. Verr. 3. 53.)

3. *Attributes, whether adjectives, substantives in apposition, or oblique cases, usually follow their substantive, but the reverse order is frequent, and with demonstrative pronouns, and adjectives of number and quantity, is the rule.*

Principio male reprehendunt præmeditationem rerum futurarum. (C. T. D. 3. 16.)

Peripatetici, familiares nostri, mediocritates vel perturbationum vel morborum animi mihi non sane probant. (C. T. D. 3. 10.)

Balbus quæstor, magna numerata pecunia, magno pondere auri, majore argenti coacto de publicis exactionibus, Kal. Juniis traiecit se in regnum Bogudis, plane bene peculiat. (Asin. Pollio apud C. Fam. 10. 32.)

Bellienus verna Demetrii Domitium quendam, nobilem illic, Cæsaris hospitem, a contraria factione nummis acceptis comprehendit et strangulavit. (Cæl. ap. C. Fam. 8. 13.)

Lex ipsa de pecuniis repetundis sociorum atque amicorum populi Romani patrona est. (C. Cæcil. 20.)

*Adjectives and (not so frequently) a genitive case are sometimes put before, instead of between or after, a preposition and its substantive: e.g. Magna ex parte, tribus de rebus, ea de causa; deorum in mente.*

*In many expressions the order of the words is fixed by custom:*

1041

e.g. Populus Romanus, Civis Romanus, res familiaris, res gestæ, æs alienum, jus civile, senatus consultum, via Appia, magister equitum, tribunus plebi, pontifex maximus, Bona Dea, Carthago nova, &c.

4. *When a substantive is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, or by a genitive and a prepositional expression, the adjective or genitive is usually put first, and the other attribute interposed between that and the substantive, e.g.*

Amicitia nullam ætatis degendæ rationem patitur esse expertem sui.  
(C. Læl. 23.)

Cujus rationis vim ex illo cælesti Epicuri de regula et judicio volumine accepimus. (C. N. D. I. 17.)

5. *Relative pronouns regularly stand at the commencement of their clause, never after their verb.*

Ad L. Vibium, equitem Romanum, virum primarium, quem reperiēbam magistrum fuisse eo ipso anno, qui mihi maxime quærendus erat, primum veni. (C. Verr. 2. 74.)

*But sometimes an emphatic word (or words) is prefixed to the relative, especially when the demonstrative sentence is put after the relative sentence.*

Romam quæ apportata sunt, ad ædem Honoris et Virtutis videmus.  
(C. Verr. 4. 54.)

Cohortem autem Metelli, quam vocat, quid erat quod corrumpere, ex qua recuperatores in aratorem nulli dabantur. (C. Verr. 3. 68.)

6. *Connective adverbs and interrogative pronouns usually (except for emphasis' sake) stand at the head of their clause or only after words (e.g. relative or demonstrative pronouns) referring to the preceding sentence; never after their verb.*

Quæ cujusmodi sint, facilius jam intelligemus, cum ad ipsa ridiculorum genera veniemus. (C. Or. 2. 59.)

Hæc tu, Eruci, tot et tanta si nactus esses in reo, quam diu diceres?  
(C. Rosc. Am. 32.)

Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri in castra irruperunt. (Cæs. G. 4. 14.)

*But in poetry we have, e.g.:*

Tu numina ponti victa domas ipsumque, regit qui numina ponti.  
(Ov. M. 5. 32.)

7. *Words belonging to two or more co-ordinate words or expressions should strictly be put either before them all or after them all. But it is very usual, partly for rhythm's sake, for the common word to be put after the first of the co-ordinated words.*

Jam viris vires, jam ferro sua vis, jam consilia ducibus deerant.  
(L. 8. 38.)

O condicionem miseram non modo administrandæ verum etiam conservandæ reipublicæ. (C. Cat. 2. 7.)

An tu existimas cum esset Hippocrates ille Cous, fuisse tum alios medicos, qui morbis, alios qui vulneribus, alios qui oculis mederentur? (C. Or. 3. 33.)

Una est enim eloquentia, nam sive de cæli natura loquitur, sive de terra, sive de divina vi sive de humana, sive ex inferiore loco sive ex æquo sive ex superiore, sive ut impellat homines, sive ut doceat, sive ut deterreat, rivis est diducta arctis, non fontibus. (C. Orat. 3. 6.)

*But in poetry irregularities occur: e.g.*

Pacis eras mediusque belli. (Hor. Od. 2. 19. 28.)

(B) *Emphasis suggests the following rules:*

1043

1. *Any word which is to be made prominent is placed at or near the beginning of the sentence, or sometimes, if not the primary predicate, at the end (as an unusual position).*

A malis mors abducit, non a bonis. (C. T. D. 1. 34.)

Dedi veniam homini impudenter petenti. (C. Att. 5. 21. § 12.)

Sequemur igitur hoc tempore et in hac quæstione, potissimum Stoicos. (C. Off. 1. 2.)

2. *An unemphatic word is sometimes inserted between words connected with one another, partly to throw the words before it into greater relief, partly to prevent itself occupying a more important position in the sentence. So especially est, sunt, &c.*

Quadridui sermonem superioribus ad te perscriptum libris misimus. (C. T. D. 5. 4.)

Desperatio est ægritudo sine ulla rerum expectatione meliorum. (Ib. 4. 8.)

Qui in fortunæ periculis sunt ac varietate versati. (C. Verr. 5. 50.)

Primum Marcelli ad Nolam prælio populus se Romanus erexit. (C. Brut. 2.)

3. *Contrasted words are put next to one another.*

10

Ego Q. Fabium, senem adulescens, ita dilexi ut æqualem. (C. Sen. 4.)

Quid quod tu te ipse in custodiam dedisti? (C. Cat. 1. 8.)

Compare Mihi ad pedes misera jacuit, quasi ego ejus excitare ab inferis filium possem. (C. Verr. 5. 49.)

4. *Contrasted pairs of words are often put with the words in one pair in a reverse order to that of the other pair, (two of the con-*

trasted words still often being together as by last rule). This figure is called '*chiasmus*' (i.e. *crossing*).

Ratio enim nostra consentit; repugnat oratio. (C. Fin. 3. 3.)

Cum spe vincendi simul abjecisti certandi etiam cupiditatem. (C. Fam. 4. 7.)

Clariorem inter Romanos deditio Postumium, quam Pontum incruenta victoria inter Samnites fecit. (L. 9. 12.)

Quæ hic reipublicæ volnera imponebat, eadem ille sanabat. (C. Fin. 4. 24.)

5. Where cumulative effect or a sense of similarity rather than contrast is desired, the same order of words is preserved in the component clauses. This figure is called '*anaphora*' (i.e. *repetition*).<sup>1052</sup>

His similes sunt omnes qui virtuti student: levantur vitiis, levantur erroribus. (C. Fin. 4. 24.)

Ut non nequiquam tantæ virtutis homines judicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas rupes, subire iniquissimum locum. (Cæs. G. 2. 27.)

Id totum evertitur eo delectu rerum, quem modo dixi, constituto, ut aut voluptates omittantur majorum voluptatum adipiscendarum causa, aut dolores suscipiantur majorum dolorum effugiendorum gratia. (C. Fin. 1. 10.)

(C) Rhythm admits of no definite rules being given, but suggests<sup>1053</sup>

1. short words or expressions occupying a distinct position as subject, predicate, &c. being put first.

Erant ei veteres inimicitiae cum duobus Rosciis Amerinis. (C. Rosc. Am. 6.)

Terrebat et proximus annus lugubris duorum consulum funeribus. (L. 27. 40.)

Movet ferocem animum juvenis seu ira seu detrectandi certaminis pudor seu inexsuperabilis vis fati. (L. 8. 7.)

2. variety in the arrangement of neighbouring sentences as regards prosody and syntax. (Thus B. 4, and B. 5, are often found together).<sup>1054</sup>

Vos autem, quum perspicuis dubia debeatis inlustrare, dubiis perspicua conanimi reddere. (C. Fin. 4. 24.)

Vide quid intersit inter tuam libidinem majorumque auctoritatem, inter amorem furemque tuum et illorum consilium atque prudentiam. (C. Verr. 5. 32.)

Adde huc fontium gelidas perennitates, liquores perlucidos amnium, riparum vestitus viridissimos, speluncarum concavas ampli-

tudines, saxorum asperitates, impendentium montium altitudines immensitatesque camporum: adde etiam reconditas auri argenticque venas infinitamque vim marmoris. (C. N. D. 2. 39.)

(D) *The position of the following adverbs may be specially noticed:* 105f

(a) *Nam* always, *namque* almost always, at the beginning; *enim* after one or (rarely) two words.

(b) *Itaque* almost always at beginning; *igitur* usually after one or two words.

(c) *Etiam* immediately precedes the word it qualifies; *quoque*, *quidem*, *demum*, immediately succeed such a word.

(d) *Tamen* first except for emphasis; *autem*, *vero*, after one or two (closely connected) words.

## ii. Position of subordinate sentences. 105f

1. *Subordinate sentences (except those which express a result) follow the rule of qualificatory words or phrases, i. e. they are put before the principal sentence to which they belong; either before the whole of it or before all but a few words.*

Cum hostium copiae non longe absunt, etiamsi inruptio nulla facta est, tamen pecunia relinquitur, agricultura deseritur. (C. Man. 6.)

Qui autem ita faciet, ut oportet, primum vigilet in deligendo (quem imitetur), deinde, quem probavit, in eo, quæ maxime excellent, ea diligentissime persequatur. (C. Or. 2. 22.)

Quid autem agatur cum aperuero, facile erit statuere quam sententiam dicatis. (C. Phil. 5. 2.)

Ibi quum Herculem, cibo vinoque gravatum, sopor oppressisset, pastor accola ejus loci, nomine Cacus, ferox viribus, captus pulchritudine boum, quum avertere eam prædam vellet, quia, si agendo armentum in speluncam compulisset, ipsa vestigia quærentem dominum eo deductura erant, aversos boves, eximium quemque pulchritudine, caudis in speluncam traxit. (L. 1. 7.)

2. *A short principal sentence is often prefixed to the whole or part of the subordinate sentence, especially if this be a dependent interrogative.* 105f

Stoicorum autem non ignoras quam sit subtile vel spinosum potius disserendi genus. (C. Fin. 3. 1.)

Existimo gratum te his, Crasse, facturum, si ista exposueris, quæ putas ad dicendum plus quam ipsam artem posse prodesse. (C. Or. 1. 24.)

## CHAPTER V.

USE OF NOUN INFLEXIONS; ESPECIALLY THOSE  
OF GENDER AND NUMBER.

## (A) General usage.

1. *A substantive when used as attribute or secondary predicate* 1058  
*is put in the same case as the substantive which it qualifies. Usually*  
*also the sense will require that it be put in the same number, and, if it*  
*have more than one form, in the appropriate gender.*

(a) *As attribute, i.e. in apposition.*

Caius Julius Cæsar; Cai Juli Cæsaris; &c.

Urbs Roma; Urbem Romam; &c.

Duas filias juvenibus regiis, Lucio atque Arrunti Tarquiniis, jungit.  
(L. 1. 42.)

P. et Ser. Sullæ. (Sall. C. 17.) Rarely Ti. et C. Gracchus. (Ib. J. 42.)

Tulliola, deliciolæ nostræ, tuum munusculum flagitat. (C. Att. 1. 8.)

O vitæ philosophia dux, O virtutis indagatrix expultrixque vitiorum.  
(C. T. D. 5. 2.)

Omitto Græciam atque illas omnium doctrinarum inventrices  
Athenas. (C. Or. 1. 4.)

Sustinuisset hoc crimen ipse ille latronum occultator et receptor  
locus. (C. Mil. 19.)

Encolpius quidem lector, ille seria nostra, ille deliciæ, sanguinem  
rejecit. (Plin. Ep. 8. 1.)

In aliquo numero fuerunt M. Fulvius Flaccus et C. Cato, Africani  
sororis filius, mediocres oratores. (C. Brut. 28.)

Hoc tibi, Porsinna, juvenus Romana indicimus bellum. (L. 2. 12.)

Ei morbo nomen est avaritia. (C. T. D. 4. 11.)

(b) *As secondary predicate, either direct or oblique.*

1059

Hæc urbs est Roma. Cæsar creatus est consul.

Licet Cæsari esse, (creari, legem ferre,) consuli.

C. Junius ædem Salutis, quam consul voverat, censor locaverat,  
dictator dedicavit. (L. 10. 1.)

Dolabella hesterno die hoste decreto, bellum gerendum est.

(C. Phil. 11. 7.)

Lælium Decimum cognovimus virum bonum et non illiteratum,  
sed nihil ad Persium. (C. Or. 2. 6.)



Clitomachus usque ad senectutem cum Carneade fuit, homo et acutus, ut Pœnus, et valde studiosus et diligens. (C. *Ac.* 2. 31.)

Tuum<sup>1</sup>, hominis simplicis, pectus vidimus. (C. *Ph.* 2. 43.)

Num potui Ciliciam Ætoliā aut Macedoniā reddere?

(C. *Att.* 5. 20.)

Nequam et cessator Davus: at ipse subtilis veterum iudex et callidus audis. (Hor. *S.* 2. 7. 101.)

Bonis utimur tribunis pl., Cornuto vero Pseudocatonē.

(C. *Att.* 1. 14, § 6.)

Adventus Philotimi—at cuius hominis, quam insulsi et quam sæpe pro Pompeio mentientis—exanimavit omnes. (C. *Att.* 10. 9.)

Quam hesternus dies nobis, consularibus dico, turpis inluxit.

(C. *Ph.* 8. 7.)

Huic item Menæchmo nomen est. (Pl. *Men.* 1096.) *So usually in Plautus.*

Puero ab inopia Egerio inditum nomen. (L. 1. 34.)

*The above rules for substantives apply equally to adjectives; that is to say, adjectives, whether used as attributes or secondary predicates, are put in the case in which a substantive similarly used would be put. The gender and number will vary with the meaning. For adjectives should be regarded as substantives of wide general application (e.g. bonus, 'a good he', bona, 'a good she', bonum, 'a good thing'; cf. §§ 308—311; 1003, 1004). Sometimes they are used in this general application without a substantive (§ 1061); sometimes (and this is their ordinary use as attributes) they are specialised by use with a substantive (§ 1062); sometimes this special meaning is inferred (though the substantive is not found adjacent) from the substantive being expressed elsewhere in the sentence, or from the known associations of the word and from the context (§§ 1063—1065).*

2. *An adjective is sufficient by its inflexions of gender and number to denote, if in the masculine, males (or persons generally); if in the feminine, females; if in the neuter, things in general.*

(a) *Hence many adjectives of special meaning are constantly used in the appropriate gender as substantives. See e.g. §§ 880, 942, 944, and Book III. passim. So e.g.*

Adolescens, agnatus, amicus, animans, infans, juvenis, maritus, necessarius, rusticus, serpens, socius, &c.

Commodum, decretum, dictum, factum, fatum, ostensum, pactum, peccatum, responsum, secretum, verum, votum, &c.

<sup>1</sup> **Tuum** may be considered as a genitive case (of tu) with adjectival inflexions (§ 388).

(b) *An ordinary adjective is not commonly so used in the masculine singular nominative as subject. But demonstrative and relative pronouns are frequently so used in all cases*

Docti censent. Suavia delectant. Quid est hoc?

Cui pretium dedit? unde aut quantum dedit? (C. Rosc. Am. 27.)

Sum timidus. Sum timida. Sunt timida.

Est miserum igitur mors, quoniam malum. (C. T. D. 1. 5.)

Ex pacto jus est, si qui quid inter se pepigerunt, si quid inter quos convenit. (Corn. 2. 13.)

Ita prorsus existimo, bonos beatos, improbos miseros. (C. T. D. 5. 12.)

Adsentatio non modo amico, sed ne libero quidem, digna est.  
(C. Læl. 24.)

Tempori cedere semper sapientis est habitum. (C. Fam. 4. 9.)

Labor voluptasque, dissimillima natura, societate quadam inter se naturali juncta sunt. (L. 5. 4.)

Olim mulieres aurum et purpuram data et oblata ultro non accipiebant. (L. 34. 4.)

Otium atque divitiæ, quæ prima mortales putant. (Sall. C. 36.)

Capita conjurationis ejus virgis cæsi ac securibus percussi sunt.  
(L. 10. 1.)

Tum vero omnis ætas currere obvii. (L. 27. 51.)

Archias est ex eo numero, qui semper apud omnis sancti sunt habitus.  
(C. Arch. 12.)

Ad extremum. In præsens. In majus. Præter hæc.

Sine dubio. De improvviso. Ex adverso. Ab imo.

Quod fuimus lauda, si jam damnas, quod sumus. (Phædr. 5. 10. 9.)

Triste lupus stabulis. (Verg. B. 3. 80.)

Varium et mutabile semper femina. (Verg. A. 4. 569.)

3. *An adjective when used as attribute to a substantive is put in the same case, gender, and number as that substantive.*

Vana illa res veræ mox cladis causa fuit. (L. 37. 41.)

Diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant. Is dies erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr. (Cæs. G. 1. 6.)

Ego tibi illam Aciliam legem restituo, qua lege multi, semel dicta causa, condemnati sunt. (C. Verr. 1. 9.)

Litteras abs te M. Calenius ad me adtulit a. d. XIII. Kal. Mart. in quibus litteris scribis, &c. (Cn. Pompeius ap. C. Att. 8. 12 c.)

Hoc crimen nullum est, nisi honos ignominia putanda est. (C. Balb. 5.)

4. *An adjective intended as attribute to more than one substantive is, unless for emphasis' sake, expressed only once, and is put in the case and number of the substantive nearest to itself in the sentence.*

Omnes agri et maria. Agri et maria omnia.

Homini utilitati agros omnis et maria parentia videmus.

(C. T. D. I. 28.)

Mens et animus et consilium et sententia civitatis posita est in legibus. (C. Cluent. 53.)

[Semproniae multae facetiae, multusque lepos inerat. (Sall. C. 25.)]

5. *The substantive to which the adjective is an attribute, is frequently, in certain constructions almost always, omitted: viz.*

(a) *Many adjectives being specially applicable, or frequently applied, to particular substantives are used without them, and pass as ordinary substantives.* (Comp. § 429.)

e.g. Africus (ventus); cani (capilli); circenses (ludi); natalis (dies); novalis (ager); occidens (sol); September (mensis); sestertius (nummus);

Africa (terra); agnina (caro); annonae (copia); Appia (via); arenaria (fodina); arithmetica (ars); calda (aqua); decuma (pars); dextra (manus); fera (bestia); Latinae (feriae); laurea (corona); patria (terra); praerogativa (tribus); praetexta (toga); prosa (oratio); quartana (febris); summa (res); triremis (navis); Cumanum (praedium); Falernum, merum (vinum); hiberna, stativa (castra); mulsum (vinum).

*Some are only so used in particular phrases.*

primas (partes) agere, frigidam (aquam) potare.

(b) *When the same substantive is used both as subject and predicate, it is expressed once only, the adjective thus often appearing by itself as secondary predicate.*

Veræ amicitiae sempiternae sunt. (C. Lael. 9.)

Cæsar Gomphos pervenit, quod est oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Epiro. (Cæs. C. 3. 80.)

Eadem nunc mea adversum te oratio est. (C. Fin. 5. 27.)

Dixit Campanum Calenumque et Falernum agrum pervastatos esse. (L. 22. 25.)

Verres deorum templis bellum semper habuit indictum.

(C. Verr. 5. 72.)

Equidem ego vobis regnum trado firmum, si boni eritis, sin mali, inbecillum. (Sall. J. 10.)

*Similarly where the substantive is not expressed at all* (cf. § 1050):

*Illi tardo cognomen pingui damus.* (Hor. S. 1. 3. 58.)

*In iudiciis ii sumus, qui fuimus.* (C. Q. F. 2. 4. 6.)

(c) *A substantive is often omitted in one sentence, if it is expressed in the neighbouring clause or sentence. So usually (1) where two attributes referring to different things of the same class require the same substantive.*

(1) *Ipsorum lingua Keltæ, nostra Galli appellantur.* (Cæs. G. 1. 1.)

*Postero die terrestrem navalemque exercitum, non instructos modo sed hos decurrentes, classem in portu simulacrum et ipsam edentem navalis pugnæ, ostendit.* (L. 29. 22.)

*Duæ fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, altera Norica: utræque in ea fuga perierunt. Duæ filiæ harum, altera occisa, altera capta est.* (Cæs. G. 1. 53.)

*Diversa cornua, dextrum ad castra Samnitium, lævum ad urbem tendit.* (L. 10. 41.)

*Hæ quondam arationes, Campana et Leontina, grandiferæ et fructuosæ ferebantur.* (C. Phil. 2. 39.)

*[Rarely two singular adjectives with a plural substantive following. (For substantives so followed, see § 1058.)]*

*Putabam quartam et Martiam legiones mecum futuras.* (D. Brut. ap. C. Fam. 11. 19.)

(2) *With relative and demonstrative pronouns, the substantive (often called the antecedent) is usually expressed in the former of the two clauses only. (Sometimes the relative is, or appears to be, attracted into the case of the antecedent.)*

*Caritate ea præstat patria, pro qua mori et cui nos totos dedere et in qua nostra omnia ponere debemus.* (C. Leg. 2. 2.)

*Me tuæ litteræ nunquam in tantam spem induxerunt, quantam aliorum.* (C. Att. 3. 19.)

*Severitatem in senectute probo, sed eam, sicut alia, modicam.*

(C. Sen. 18.)

*Vostra consilia accusantur, qui mihi summum honorem imposuistis.*

*Compare tuum, p. 24, and note.*

(Sall. J. 85.)

*Scire hoc vis? CH. Hac quidem causa, qua dixi tibi.* (Ter. Ha. 87.)

*In quem primum Eneti Trojanique egressi sunt locum, Troja vocatur.* (L. 1. 1.)

*Scipio cum quibus ante dictum est copiis (sc. Scipionem profectum esse) substitit.* (L. 25. 32.)

*Notante iudice, quo nosti, populo.* (Hor. S. 1. 6. 15.)

*Compare Raptim quibus quisque poterat elatis, exibant.* (L. 1. 29.)

*In Plautus and Terence the subject is sometimes attracted into the case of a following relative.* 1067

*Illum quem ementitu's, is ego sum ipse Charmides.* (Pl. *Trin.* 985.)

*Eunuchum quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit!* (Ter. *Eun.* 653.)

6. *A demonstrative or relative pronoun, used substantively as the subject of a definition, is usually attracted into the gender and number of the defining substantive.* 1068

*Eas divitias, eam bonam famam magnamque nobilitatem, putabant.*  
(Sall. *Cat.* 7.)

*Quæ apud alios iracundia dicitur, ea in imperio superbia atque crudelitas appellatur.* (Sall. *Cat.* 51.)

*Haud erat dubium quin Lucerinis opem Romanus ferret: ea modo, qua irent, consultatio fuit.* (L. 9. 2.)

*Hannibal ad Druentiam flumen pervenit. Is et ipse Alpinus amnis difficillimus omnium transitu est.* (L. 21. 31.)

*Patres C. Mucio agrum dono dedere, quæ postea sunt Mucia prata appellata.* (L. 2. 13.)

*Pompeio patre, quod imperio populi Romani lumen fuit, extincto, interfectus est patris simillimus filius.* (C. *Ph.* 5. 14.)

*Sed jam forma ipsa restat et χαράκηρ ille qui dicitur.* (C. *Or.* 39.)

*But Sabini spem in discordia Romana ponunt: eam impedimentum delectui fore.* (L. 3. 38.)

*Maturavimus proficisci, si hoc profectio et non fuga est.* (L. 2. 38.)

7. *An adjective is frequently found as secondary predicate, where in English we use an adverb or prepositional phrase. (For a like use of an adjective as an attribute see § 1295.) See also § 1073.* 1069

*Soli hoc contingit sapienti, ut nihil faciat invitus, nihil dolens, nihil coactus.* (C. *Par.* 5. 1.)

*Natura ipsa de immortalitate animorum tacita judicat.* (C. *T.D.* 1. 14.)

*Marius antea jam infestus nobilitati, tum vero multus atque ferox instare.* (Sall. *J.* 84.)

*Senex si quæret me, modo isse dicito ad portum: si non quæret, nullus dixeris.* (Ter. *Hec.* 79.)

*Philotimus non modo nullus venit, sed ne per litteras quidem certiores me facit.* (C. *Att.* 11. 24.)

*Gnavus mane forum et vespertinus pete tectum.* (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 6. 20.)

*Appius jam inde antiquitus insitam familiæ pertinaciam, gerendo solus censuram, obtinuit.* (L. 9. 29.) 1070

Quibus dum locum ad evadendas angustias cogendo ipse agmen præbet, sustinens impetus hostium, prolapso equo, et suo ipse casu et onere equi super eum ruentis haud multum afuit quin exanimaretur. (L. 39. 49.) *See also p. 30.*

Tum vero omnes velut diis auctoribus in spem suam quisque acceptis prælium uno animo poscunt. (L. 21. 45.)

## (B) Use of the Participles.

*The participles either predicate some action or state of a person (or thing), or describe a person (or thing) by some action or state. They are of three different times, past, present, and future, in reference to the time of the principal action.*

*The present and future, and, in deponent, and a few other verbs usually, the perfect (cf. § 734), have an active meaning; the perfect participle in other verbs has a passive meaning.*

### 1. Use to predicate action or state.

1072

(a) *As primary predicate, or, more commonly, as secondary predicate with verb of being, &c. (§ 1017 b), they supply the place of deficient tenses in active and passive voice. (See §§ 1449, 1494.) The present participle is hardly ever so used. (As mere adjective it falls under § 1076.)*

Amatus est, amaturus est, &c.

Accepta itaque res, sæpiusque usurpando excitata. (L. 7. 2.)

Senectus est operosa, et semper agens aliquid et moliens. (C. Sen. 8.)

Verum ego seditiosus, qui præmia turbarum queror, et bellum cupiens, qui jura pacis repeto! (Sall. Or. Lep. § 16.)

(b) *As secondary predicate (§ 1017 c, f) they denote the circumstances, in which some person or thing is placed when the principal action occurs. In præ-Augustan prose the future participle is rarely found in this case.*

*(The passive participle when not predicated of the subject of the sentence generally denotes an action done by the subject; unless another agent is named.)*

*A participle thus stands in place of an adverbial expression or sentence, by which it is often best translated; or sometimes by a finite verb coordinate with the principal verb.*

Hæc locutus sublimis abiit. (L. 1. 16.)

Plato uno et octogesimo anno scribens est mortuus. (C. Sen. 5.)

Supplex te ad pedes abiciebas: quid petens? (C. Phil. 2. 34.)

Tribunos, ubi primum summoventes præbuere causam, adorti sunt. (L. 3. 14.)

Omne malum nascens facile opprimitur; inveteratum fit plerumque robustius. (C. Phil. 5. 11.)

Miserum est nihil proficientem angere. (C. N. D. 3. 6.)

Servientes servitutem ego servos instruxi mihi. (Pl. Mil. 745.)

Sæpe illum audivi furtiva voce loquentem. (Catull. 67. 41.)

Ego, ut sæpe tu me currentem hortatus es, cotidie meditor.

(C. Att. 5. 9.)

C. Servilius Ahala Sp. Mælium regnum adpetentem, occupatum interemit. (C. Sen. 16.)

Contione adveniens de Manlio et Junio habita, non ultra triduum moratus Romæ, paludatis lictoribus votisque in Capitolio nuncupatis in provinciam abit. (L. 41. 10.)

C. Sempronius nihilo demissiore animo, quum dies venit, causa ipse pro se dicta, nequicquam omnia expertis patribus, ut mitigarent plebem, quindecim millibus æris damnatur. (L. 4. 44.)

Jugurtha, fratre meo interfecto, regnum ejus sceleris sui prædam fecit. (Sall. Jug. 14.)

Valet apud nos clarorum hominum memoria etiam mortuorum.

(C. Sest. 9.)

Non hercule mihi, nisi admonito, venisset in mentem. (C. Or. 2. 42.)

Nec vixit male, qui natus moriensque fefellit. (Hor. Ep. 1. 17. 13.)

Lucretium, dum in Hernicis sedet, prædonum agmen fefellit supra montes Prænestinos ductum, inde demissum in campos.

(L. 3. 8.)

Cogitate quantis laboribus fundatum imperium, quanta virtute stabilitam libertatem una nox pæne deleat. (C. Cat. 4. 9.)

T. Manlius Torquatus Gallum, cum quo provocatus manum conservuit, in conspectu duorum exercituum cæsum torque spoliavit. (L. 6. 42.)

Horatius Cocles ausus est rem plus famæ habituram ad posteros quam fidei. (L. 2. 10.)

Inde Græciæ præsidebis, et speciem Romanis trajecturum te præbens, et si res poposcerit, trajecturus. (L. 36. 7.)

Hostes carpere multifariam vires Romanas, ut non suffecturas ad omnia, aggressi sunt. (L. 3. 5.)

See also §§ 1402, 1405—1411.

## 2. Use as an ordinary noun adjective.

1074

Minime male cogitantes sunt, qui in agricultura occupati sunt.

(Cato, R. R. 1.)

Tibi sum obediens. (Pl. Mil. 806.)

Qui privatus intolerabili superbia fuerit, eum commodum et cognoscentem sui fore in potestate qui speres? (Corn. 4. 18.)

Acrem enim oratorem incensum et agentem et canorum concursus hominum forique strepitus desiderat. (C. Brut. 92.)

Medicus plane confirmat propediem te valentem fore. (C. Fam. 16.9.)

Animalia alia rationis expertia sunt, alia ratione utentia. (C. Off. 2.3.)

Immoderata lætitia est voluptas animi elata et gestiens.

(C. T. D. 3. 10.)

Num igitur fortem virum, num magno animo, num patientem, num gravem, num humana contemnentem potes dicere Philoctetem illum? (C. T. D. 2. 14.)

Super eminentem carnem exedentia medicamenta conjicienda sunt; super concavam, implentia. (Cels. 5. 26 fin.)

*Many participles become so completely adjectives, that they are inflected for the comparative and superlative degrees, and take an object in the genitive instead of the accusative, e.g. prudens, diligens, peritus, &c. (Cf. § 1314.)*

### 3. Use as substantive. (See also § 1061.)

1075

*This is rare in nominative, infrequent in other cases, singular masculine and feminine; except in certain words, e.g. amans, sapiens, adolescens, candidatus, præfectus, natus, &c.; and is never found in the neuter singular of the present participle. (Nor could such an expression as faciens id laudatur be used for is qui id facit laudatur.)*

*If used completely as a substantive, it would be qualified, if necessary, by an adjective: otherwise by an adverb. Thus præclarum factum, or præclare factum, 'a glorious deed.'*

Movemur enim sæpe aliquo acute concluso. (C. T. D. 1. 39.)

Multa Catonis et in senatu et in foro vel provisæ prudenter vel acta constanter, vel responsa acute ferebantur. (C. Læl. 2.)

Senatus consultum. Plebiscitum. Edictum Prætoris.

Primus omnium instituit, ut tam senatus quam populi diurna acta confierent et publicarentur. (Sall. Jul. 20.)

Sunt maximorum ordinum homines, sunt municipales rustici Romani, sunt negotii gerentes, sunt etiam libertini optimates.

(C. Sest. 45.)

Jacet corpus dormientis ut mortui. (C. Div. 1. 50.)

Nihil difficile amanti puto. (C. Or. 10.)

Quoja hic vox prope me sonat? ME. Tui benevolentis.

(Pl. Trm. 45.)

Solus omnium post memoriam humani generis supplicia in post futuros composuit. (Sall. Or. Lep. § 6.)



## CHAPTER VI.

## USE OF CASES.

OF the six cases in Latin five have each more than one use: the <sup>1076</sup> locative has one only.

The *nominative* is quite distinct from the others, which have all some points of resemblance among themselves.

The *nominative* is used both of the subject of the sentence and of the person addressed.

Of the *oblique* cases the accusative, dative, locative, and ablative are mainly used in connexion with verbs; the genitive with nouns.

The accusative and ablative have a great variety of applications, <sup>1077</sup> which, however, may be ultimately reduced to three main uses each; and there is considerable analogy between them.

(1) The accusative denotes the area over which an action prevails; the ablative (as also the locative) denotes the point at which it is done.

(2) The accusative denotes the goal; the ablative the place of departure.

(3) The accusative denotes the object of a verbal action; the ablative denotes the attendant influences and circumstances.

The dative and the genitive resemble one another in so far that <sup>1078</sup> they both have an adjectival use, and both have also a use with verbs: but the adjectival use is the principal use of the genitive and the less important use of the dative; the use with verbs is much the commonest with the dative, and is occasional and isolated with the genitive.

In their relation to verbs the accusative, dative, and genitive may <sup>1079</sup> all denote objects of action; the accusative the direct object, the dative the indirect object; the genitive a secondary object; the usual combinations being that the accusative denotes a thing and the dative a person; or the accusative a person and the genitive a thing.

Outside this sphere of immediate action the accusative (in its other uses) and the ablative denote the numberless qualifications of place, time, extent, degree, manner, cause, and circumstances generally.

In their relation to nouns, whether as attributes or predicates, the genitive has the largest use, but the predicative dative, and the ablative of description, also play some part.

## CHAPTER VII.

## USE OF NOMINATIVE CASE.

THE NOMINATIVE Case expresses

(A) Name of the person or thing spoken of, i.e. *the* <sup>1080</sup>  
*subject of a sentence.*

Milo adfuit. Dixit Pompeius, sive voluit. Qui ut peroravit, surrexit Clodius. (C. Q. Fr. 2. 3.)

Omnes illo die, Scauri, Metelli, Claudii, Catuli, Scævola, Crassi, arma sumpserunt. (C. Phil. 8. 5.)

Qui latrones, igitur, siquidem vos consules, qui prædones, qui hostes, qui proditores, qui tyranni nominabuntur? magnum nomen est, magna species, magna dignitas, magna majestas consulis. (C. Pis. 11.)

Venit ad Chelidonem C. Mustius, eques Romanus, publicanus, homo cum primis honestus. (C. Verr. 1. 52.)

*The nominative is used with en, ecce, as subject to an unexpressed* <sup>1081</sup>  
*predication of existence. So perhaps malum.*

En crimen, en causa cur regem fugitivus accuset. (C. Dejot. 6.)

Ecce multo major etiam dissensio. (C. Ac. 2. 43.)

Quæ te, malum, ratio in istam spem induxit. (C. Off. 2. 13.)

(B) Name of the person (or thing) spoken to. <sup>1082</sup>

*(This is often called the Vocative case. It is distinct in form from the nominative only in some stems in -o. See §§ 332, 344, 352.)*

Rem haud sane, Scipio et Læli, difficilem admirari videmini.  
(C. Sen. 2.)

Ego sum M. Valerius Corvus, milites. (L. 7. 40.)

Audi Juppiter, et tu, Jane Quirine, dique omnes cælestes, vosque terrestres vosque inferni, audite. (L. 1. 32.)

Agedum pontifex publicus populi Romani, præi verba quibus me pro legionibus devoveam. (L. 8. 9.)

Ave, mi Gai, meus æellus jucundissimus. (August. ap. Gell. 15. 7.)

O periture, tuaque aliis documenta dature morte, ait, ede tuum nomen. (Ov. Met. 3. 379.)

Pro sancte Juppiter! (C. Phil. 2. 13.) Di boni! Pro pudor!

## CHAPTER VIII.

## USE OF ACCUSATIVE CASE.

1084

The ACCUSATIVE is used in three senses<sup>1</sup>. It expresses

- (A) The *compass* of an action or quality ;
- (B) The *goal* to which motion is directed ;
- (C) The *direct object* of an action.

---

(A) Compass or measure of action, state, or quality; <sup>1086</sup>  
used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and nominal adverbs.

1. Space<sup>2</sup> over, along, about, which; *i.e.* distance, length<sup>3</sup>, &c. Usually with adjective or attributive genitive.

Cæsar tridui iter processit. (Cæs. G. 1. 38.)

Reliquas munitiones ab ea fossa pedes quadringentos reduxit.

(Cæs. G. 7. 72.)

Teanum abest a Larino octodecim milia passuum. (C. Clu. 9.)

Zama quinque dierum iter a Carthagine abest. (L. 30. 29.)

Duas fossas xv pedes latas eadem altitudine perduxit. (Cæs. G. 7. 72.)

Materia perpetuis trabibus pedes quadragenos plerumque introrsus revincta. (Cæs. G. 7. 23.)

Turres toto opere circumdedit, quæ pedes LXXX inter se distarent.

(Cæs. G. 7. 72.)

A recta conscientia transversum unguem non oportet discedere.

(C. Att. 13. 30.)

Nego tibi hoc annis viginti fuisse primis copiæ, digitum longe a pædagogo pedem ut efferres ædibus. (Pl. Bac. 423.)

Negavit Marcellus e republica esse vestigium abscedi ab Hannibale.

(L. 27. 4.)

Triginta dies obsidio fuit, per quos raro unquam nix minus<sup>4</sup> quatuor pedes alta jacuit. (L. 21. 61.)

*Continued on p. 36.*

<sup>1</sup> These senses are subdivided as follows :

- A. 1. Space over which. §§ 1086, 1088.
2. Time throughout which. §§ 1090, 1092.
3. Extent of action of verb. §§ 1094—1100.
4. Part concerned (poetic). § 1102.
5. Description (rare). § 1104.
6. Use with prepositions, &c. § 1106.
- B. 1. Place towards which. §§ 1108—1112.
2. An action as the goal of motion. § 1114.
3. Use with prepositions, &c. § 1118.
- C. 1. Direct object of transitive verb. § 1120.
2. Certain special usages ;
  - (a) Accusative with infinitive. (See § 1351.)
  - (b) Two direct objects. § 1122.
  - (c) Accusative after passive or reflexive verbs. § 1126.
  - (d) In exclamations. § 1128.

---

<sup>2</sup> A thing 'over which,' 'along which,' &c., motion takes place <sup>1083</sup> requires a preposition; e. g. *Turris per aggerem parum densati soli agebatur.* (L. 82. 18.): Or it is put in the ablative with *totus*; e. g. *Nuntios tota civitate Æduorum dimittit* (Cæs. G. 7. 38), the whole over which being conceived as one place at which (cf. § 1170).

---

<sup>3</sup> An ablative is not unfrequently found in expressions of size, &c. <sup>1085</sup> Thus there is

(1) the abl. of description (the abstract substantive instead of the adjective. For this abstract subst. in the genitive, see § 1304).

*Huc teretes stipites feminis crassitudine demittebantur.*

(Cæs. G. 7. 73.)

*Lingua purpuræ longitudine digitali.* (Plin. 9. 36. 129.)

(2) Abl. of measure, with *abesse*, *distare*; see § 1206.

(3) Abl. of circumstance; see §§ 1087 and 1248.

(4) Abl. of comparison (§ 1273) after comparatives.

(5) Only in inferior writers is the abl. used for the accus.; e. g.

*Quidam dupondio et dodrante altum sulcum, latum pedum quinque faciunt.* (Col. 3. 13. 5.)

---

<sup>4</sup> For expressions of size with *plus*, *minus*, &c. see § 1273.

Continued on p. 37.

*By a looseness of expression the accusative<sup>1</sup> is used in other cognate<sup>1088</sup> expressions, space traversed being put instead of point reached.*

Cæsar milia passuum tria ab Helvetiorum castris castra ponit.

(Cæs. G. 1. 22.)

Quadringentos inde ferme passus constituit signa. (L. 34. 20.)

Huic ab Rhegio profectæ classi Democrates quindecim millia ferme ab urbe ad Sapiportem obuius fuit. (L. 26. 39.)

## 2. Time throughout which<sup>2</sup>.

1090

Annum jam audis Cratippum. (C. Off. 1. 1.)

Urbs decem æstates hiemesque continuas circumsessa est. (L. 5. 22.)

Neque ille hoc animo erit ætatem. (Ter. Hec. 747.)

Frustra ibi totum desedi diem. (Ib. 800.)

Cogitationem sobrii hominis punctum temporis suscipe.

(C. Phil. 2. 3.)

Dies noctesque omnia nos fata circumstant. (C. Phil. 10. 10.)

Ab illo tempore annum jam tertium et vicesimum regnat. (C. Man. 3.)

Duo de quadraginta annos tyrannus Syracusanorum fuit Dionysius, cum quinque et viginti natus annos dominatum occupavisset.

(C. T. D. 5. 20.)

Sex. Roscius annos natus major<sup>3</sup> quadraginta. (C. Rosc. Am. 14.)

*Some loose expressions are found similar to those in § 1088. So<sup>1092</sup> always with abhinc, 'ago<sup>4</sup>.'*

Quæstor Cn. Papirio consule fuisti abhinc annos quattuordecim.

(C. Verr. 1. 12.)

Id temporis eos venturos esse prædixeram. (C. Cat. 1. 4.)

Quis hic est homo quem ante ædis video hoc noctis<sup>5</sup>? (Pl. Amp. 292.)

Ego istuc ætatis non amoris operam dabam. (Ter. Haut. 110.)

Id nobis, hominibus id ætatis, oneris imponitur. (C. Or. 1. 47.)

3. *The extent<sup>6</sup> of action of the verb, &c. expressed, either<sup>109</sup> (a) by a neuter adjective, or (b) by a substantive of same meaning as the verb.*

*(a) The extent of action may be expressed by a neuter adjective of definition (i.e. a pronoun) or of quantity. (Compare the adverbs in § 528.)*

Quid prodest? Quid me ista lædunt? (C. Agr. 2. 13.)

Vellem idem possem gloriari<sup>7</sup> quod Cyrus. (C. Sen. 10.)

*Continued on p. 88.*

<sup>1</sup> *The accusative is the case most usually found. It is frequent in Livy with ponere (locare) castra. But the distance at which an event takes place is also expressed by*

(a) *simple ablative (see § 1206):*

Eodem die castra promovit, et milibus passuum sex a Cæsaris castris sub monte consedit. (Cæs. G. 1. 48.)

(b) *Abl. with ab, but only when the place, from which the distance is measured, is not expressed:*

Ad castra Cæsaris contenderunt, et ab millibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 7.)

(c) *Abl. of circumstance, spatio, intervallo, with a gen. § 1248:*

Juba sex millium passuum intervallo a Saburra consederat.  
(Cæs. C. 2. 38.)

<sup>2</sup> *The ablative is rarely used in this sense, except in post-Augustan writers; e. g.*

Caligula vixit annis viginti novem, imperavit triennio et decem mensibus diebusque octo. (Suet. Cal. 59.) *But see § 1184.*

*Sometimes per is used:*

Ludi per decem dies facti sunt ('for ten days,' C. Cat. 8).

Imber continens per noctem totam usque ad horam tertiam insequentis diei tenuit. (L. 23. 44.)

*Inter, de, 'whilst,' 'in the course of:'*

Hæc inter cenam Tironi dictavi. (C. Q. Fr. 3. 1. 6.)

De quarta vigilia profectus est. (Cæs. G. 1. 41.)

<sup>3</sup> *For other expressions of comparative age, see § 1273.*

<sup>4</sup> *Abhinc is used with the abl. in two passages only (Pl. Most. 1091 494; C. Verr. 2. 52), and in these it means 'from that time' (Madvig, Bemerk. p. 65). When the time is thus not measured from the present moment, the more usual expressions are ante sex annos, sex annis ante, &c. (§§ 1206, 1207).*

<sup>5</sup> *Hoc noctis also in Pl. Amph. 154, 163, 310; Curc. 1. Hoc ætatis Trin. 717. Possibly hoc is the ablative.*

<sup>6</sup> *The matter in which the action of the verb is displayed is put in a different case, with or without a preposition, as the circumstances may require: e. g.*

<sup>7</sup> *Quibus rebus gloriâmini in vobis, easdem in aliis reprehenditis.*  
(C. Lig. 7.)

*Non pudet philosophum in eo gloriari, quod hæc non timeat?*

(C. T. D. 1. 21.)

*Continued on p. 39.*

Metellus pauca pro tempore milites hortatus<sup>1</sup> est. (Sall. J. 49.)

Non audimus ea quæ ab natura monemur<sup>2</sup>. (C. Læl. 24.)

A me consilium petis, quid sim tibi auctor<sup>3</sup>. (C. Fam. 6. 8.)

Ego illud adsentior<sup>4</sup> Theophrasto. (C. Or. 3. 48.)

Numquid, Geta, aliud me vis? (Ter. Pb. 151.)

Hoc te vehementer rogo<sup>5</sup>. (C. Fam. 13. 43.)

Vos id cogendi estis, ut prædas vestras in medium proferatis.

(L. 6. 15.)

Id eos ut prohiberet, quod ejus sine bello posset, prætori mandatum est. (L. 39. 45.)

Omnes mulieres eadem æque student noluntque omnia.

(Ter. Hec. 199.)

Omnia unus Gabiis poterat. (L. 1. 54.)

Unum sentitis omnes, unum studetis, M. Antonii conatus avertere a republica. (C. Phil. 6. 7.)

Multum te opinio ista fefellit. (C. Verr. 1. 35.)

Nos aliquid Rutulos juvimus. (Verg. A. 10. 84.)

Quicquid auræ fluminis appropinquabant, afflabat acrior frigoris vis.

(L. 21. 54.)

Nescio quid conturbatus esse videris. (C. Phil. 2. 14.)

C. Sempronium nihil moror. (L. 4. 42.)

Nihil aliud ad eum nuntium a proposito aversus, quam ut cadaver efferri juberet. (L. 2. 8.)

Quid id refert tua? (Pl. Rud. 178.)

Nihil opust<sup>6</sup> nobis ancilla, nisi quæ texat, quæ molat, &c.

(Pl. Merc. 394.)

Quid opust anulo? (Pl. Bacch. 328.)

*Other adjectives, chiefly in Augustan poetry, are so used<sup>7</sup>, qualify- 1096*  
*ing usually verbs of bodily action.*

Atque ille exclamat derepente maximum. (Pl. Most. 488.)

Cotta...sonabat contrarium Catulo, subagreste quiddam planeque subrusticum. (C. Brut. 74.)

Cur in amicorum vitiis tam cernis acutum? (Hor. Sat. 1. 3. 26.)

Dulce ridentem Lalagen amabo, dulce loquentem. (Hor. Od. 1. 22.)

Asper, acerba tuens, retro redit. (Verg. A. 9. 794.)

Mutua<sup>8</sup> inter se rami stirpesque teruntur. (Lucr. 5. 1100.)

Tiberius torvus aut falsum renidens vultu. (Tac. A. 4. 60.)

Compare Iidem bellicum<sup>9</sup> me cecinisse dicunt. (C. Phil. 7. 1.)

1098

*Continued on p. 40.*

<sup>1</sup> De Aufidiano nomine nihil te hortor; scio tibi curæ esse.  
(C. Fam. 16. 19.)

<sup>2</sup> Proelium, de quo vos paulo ante invitatus admonui. (C. Man. 15.)  
(For a genitive after monere, &c. see § 1332.)

<sup>3</sup> Auctores Bibulo fuere tantundem pollicendi. (Suet. Jul. 19.)

<sup>4</sup> Cum iidem huic orationi, qui litteris regis adsensi erant, adsentirentur, decretum differtur. (L. 41. 24.)

<sup>5</sup> For other constructions of rogo, &c. see §§ 1122, 1125.

To this general head (accusative of extent) belong many so-called <sup>1095</sup> adverbs, which qualify both adjectives and verbs: e.g. tantum (so much), quantum, aliquantum, multum, nimium, parum, plerumque, paullum, immensum (Ov., Tac.), &c.; amplius, plus, minus, melius, rectius, ocius, citius, libentius, facilius, potius, prius, &c.; plurimum, potissimum, minimum. And the ordinals, primum, iterum, tertium, &c.; millesimum, extremum, postremum, ultimum, supremum, summum; recens, æternum (Verg., Tac.), commodum 'just.' Non (necnum § 86. 2) is of like origin. In Pl. Ps. 761 insanum appears to be so used; insanum magnum molior negotium.

Similar to this use of the ordinals is Cicero's use of nunc ipsum (e.g. Att. 7. 3 § 2) and tum ipsum...cum (Fin. 2. 20, where see Madvig). Some other words referable here are given in § 528.

<sup>6</sup> For quid opust facto; see § 1257.

<sup>7</sup> Other instances are transversa tuens (Verg. B. 3. 8); equus <sup>1097</sup> terram crebra ferit (G. 3. 590 and comp. Lucr. 2. 359, where however crebra is probably nom.); sera comantem narcisum (G. 4. 122); belua horrendum stridens (A. 6. 288); torvum clamat (A. 7. 899); spirans inmane (A. 7. 510); Cacum insueta rudentem (A. 8. 248); infanda furentem (A. 8. 489); corneta lugubre rubent (A. 10. 273); hians inmane (A. 10. 726); vana tumentem (A. 11. 854); mens turbidum lætatur (Hor. Od. 2. 19. 6); perfidum ridens Venus (Ib. 8. 27. 67); illa sonat raucum quiddam atque inamabile ridet (Ov. A. A. 3. 289, cf. 286 and C. Arch. 10; and vox hominem sonat, Verg. A. 1. 328).

<sup>8</sup> Mutua several times in Lucret. Vergil has pedibus per mutua nexis examen subitum ramo frondente pendit. (A. 7. 66.)

<sup>9</sup> Also classicum canere; both frequent. Also consul classico ad contionem evocat (L. 7. 86); classicum (nom.) apud eos cecinit (L. 28. 27), &c. The word, whether originally so or not, came to be regarded as a substantive 'war tune,' and eventually classica (Tib. l. 1. 4, Verg. G. 2. 539) was used for 'war trumpets.'

Continued on p. 41.



(b) *The extent<sup>1</sup> of action of the verb may be expressed by a substantive of the same meaning as the verb, accompanied (usually) by an oblique adjectival predicate. (Cognate accusative.)* 1100

Cur non eosdem cursus hoc tempore cucurrerunt. (C. Agr. 2. 17.)

Tamne tibi diu videor vitam vivere? (Pl. Mil. 628.)

Hunc, oro, sine me furere ante furorem. (Verg. A. 12. 680.)

Priusquam istam pugnam pugnabo, ego etiam prius dabo aliam pugnam. (Pl. Ps. 524.)

In theatrum Hortensius introiit, puto ut suum gaudium gauderemus. (Cælius ap. C. Fam. 82.)

Zenonis sententia est, solos sapientis, si servitutem serviant, reges esse. (C. Mur. 29.)

Itque reditque viam. Mille fugit refugitque vias.  
(Verg. A. 6. 122; 12. 753.)

Vincit sponsonem<sup>2</sup>, si planum facit ab se illum aut vi aut clam aut precario possedisse. (C. Quint. 32.)

#### 4. Part concerned.

1101

*In Tacitus frequent, but in other prose, (a) only in a few expressions with partem, vicem<sup>3</sup>, cetera; in poetry (b) chiefly of parts of the body<sup>4</sup>; cf. § 1126.*

(a) Vos respondetote istinc istarum vicem. (Pl. Rud. 814.)

Romanas legiones nondum cura deseruerat, exanimis vicem unius.  
(L. 1. 25.)

Suebi non multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt. (Cæs. G. 4. 1.)

Inde bonam partem in lectum mærore dabantur. (Lucr. 6. 1249.)

Telum hastili abiegno et cetera tereti præterquam ad extremum, unde ferrum exstabat. (L. 21. 8.)

(b) Concidit et spumas agit, ingemit et tremit artus. (Lucr. 3. 489.)

Os humerosque deo similis. (Verg. A. 1. 589.)

Statque latus præfixa veru, stat saucia pectus<sup>5</sup>. (Tib. 1. 6. 49.)

Cressa genus Pholoe. (Verg. A. 5. 285.)

Cædit totidem nigrantis terga juvencos. (Verg. A. 5. 97.)

Feminæ lineis amictibus velantur, nudæ brachia et lacertos.

(Tac. G. 17.)

*Continued on p. 42.*

<sup>1</sup> Occasionally an ablative (of the means or manner) is found with similar effect:

Patiamur illum ire nostris itineribus. (C. Q. F. 3. 3.)

Hoc deo complacitumst, med hoc ornatu ornatam in regiones incertas esse ejectam. (Pl. Rud. 187.)

Scis solere illanc ætatem tali ludo ludere. (Pl. Most. 1158.)

Divi deæque vos precor quæsoque uti, quæ in meo imperio gesta sunt geruntur, ea vos omnia bene juvetis, bonis auctibus auxitis.

(L. 29. 27.)

Dicito me hic valere et servitutem servire huic homini optumo, qui me honore honestiorem semper fecit et facit. (Pl. Capt. 387.)

Cognovi magnum eorum equitatum qui in Ciliciam transisset ab equitum meorum turmis occidione occisum. (C. Fam. 15. 4, § 7.)  
(This phrase often in Livy.)

Appius odisse plebem plus quam paterno odio. (L. 2. 58.)

Crispinus ad consules est deductus laudatusque ibi magnifice et donis donatus. (L. 25. 18.)

<sup>2</sup> So vincere judicium (C. Verr. 1. 53); but vincere sponsione (C. Quint. 27); judicio (Rosc. Com. 18.)

<sup>3</sup> Vicem is 'in behalf,' 'instead,' rarely 'like,' e.g. Forte me Sardapali vicem in suo lectulo mori malle censueris quam exitu Themistoclis. (C. Att. 10. 8, § 7.) In this sense (= 'like') the post-Augustan writers use vice; e.g.

Præcipua cænationum rotunda quæ perpetuo diebus ac noctibus vice mundi circumageretur. (Suet. Ner. 31.)

<sup>4</sup> This poetic use is probably a development from the use of an accusative after passive (reflexive) verbs (see § 1126), aided by the other usages of the accusative of extent. Additional instances are lacerum ora manusque ambas (Verg. A. 6. 495); laurus sacra comam (Ib. 7. 60); ære caput fulgens (Ib. 10. 869); animum mitior (Hor. Od. 3. 10. 18); hirsuta capillos (Ov. M. 2. 30); miles præriguit manus (Tac. A. 13. 35); manum æger (Ib. H. 4. 81).

In ordinary prose the ablative is the case used. Cf. § 1210.

Exalbesco in principiis dicendi et tota mente atque artubus omnibus contremisco. (C. Or. 1. 26.)

Facie vel patris, vita omnium perditorum similis. (C. T. D. 1. 33.)

<sup>5</sup> Quintilian says (9. 3. 17), Jam vulgatum actis quoque 'saucius pectus.'

Continued on p. 43.

5. Description<sup>1</sup>; *only hoc (quod, id, omne), genus; virile* 1104  
(*mullebre*), *secus; qualifying substantives.*

Quod genus<sup>2</sup> Idæis fama est e montibus altis dispersos ignis orienti  
lumine cerni. (Lucr. 5. 663.)

Pascuntur omne genus objecto frumento, maxime ordeo.

(Varr. R. R. 3. 6.)

Scis me antea orationes aut aliquid id genus solitum scribere.

(C. Att. 13. 12.)

Liberorum capitum virile secus ad decem millia capta. (L. 26. 47.)

6. Use with prepositions, and verbs compounded 1106  
with prepositions.

(a) *The accusative of compass or extent is often used with prepositions, viz. ad (adversus), ante, apud, circum, cis, clam, in, ob, penes, per, pone, post, prope, secundum, sub, super, trans, versus, and all disyllabic prepositions ending in -a and -ter, viz. circa, circiter, citra, contra, erga, extra, inter, infra, juxta, præter, propter, subter, supra, ultra.*

*Examples are given in the Appendix.*

(b) *Prepositions compounded<sup>3</sup> with verbs sometimes retain their proper meaning and even their ordinary use with particular cases. (Rare except with trans.)*

Hannibal Hiberum<sup>4</sup> copias trajecit. (L. 21. 23.)

Cæsar milites his navibus flumen transportat. (Cæs. G. 1. 54.)

Hos viros Pompeius omnia sua præsidia circumduxit atque ostentavit. (Cæs. G. 3. 61.)

Fretum Naupactum et Patras interfluit. (L. 27. 29.)

(c) *Analogous to the use with prepositions is the accusative after the adverbs propius, proxime<sup>5</sup>, the adjectives propior, proximus; and pridie, postridie.*

Esse officium meum putavi exercitum habere quam proxime hostem.  
(C. Att. 6. 5.)

Adeo varia fortuna belli fuit, ut propius periculum fuerint qui vice-  
runt. (L. 21. 1.)

Ipse propior montem suos conlocat. (Sall. J. 49.)

P. Crassus cum legione septima proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat. (Cæs. G. 3. 7.)

Tu pridie Compitalia<sup>6</sup> memento: balineum calferi jubebo.

(C. Att. 2. 3.)

Venatio postridie ludos Apollinares futura est. (C. Att. 16. 4.)

*Continued on p. 44.*

<sup>1</sup> *The normal usage has the ablative or genitive (§§ 1232, 1233, 1103 1308, 1311); e. g.*

Alterum (ornithonis genus) est fructus causa, quo genere macellarii in urbe quidem habent loca clausa. (Varr. R. R. 3. 4.)

Epaminondam atque Hannibalem atque ejus generis homines nominabam. (C. Or. 1. 48.)

Generis ejus præda abstinuit Fabius. (L. 27. 16.)

Mancia præter puberes virilis sexus restituenda censuerunt dominis. (L. 26. 34.)

<sup>2</sup> *Quod genus, 'as for instance' is frequently used in Lucretius and in Cornificius, e. g. Corn. ii. 13 (four times), &c.*

<sup>3</sup> *The preposition is often repeated:*

1105

Postulavit ne quam hominum multitudinem amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret. (Cæs. G. 1. 35.)

<sup>4</sup> *So when the verb is in the passive voice;*

Belgæ Rhenum antiquitus traducti sunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 4.)

<sup>5</sup> *Cicero never, and Livy very rarely, have the dative with the adverbs propius, proxime; Cicero has not the accusative with the adjectives.*

<sup>6</sup> *See also App. D. xv. (Vol. 1. p. 454).*

(B) Place towards which motion takes place<sup>1</sup>.

1108

1. *Without a preposition*<sup>2</sup>. Confined in prose to proper names of towns, and of islands small enough to be considered as one place; domum (*home, not house*), rus, foras.

Leucadem venimus a. d. VIII. Id. Nov.; a. d. VII. Actium; inde a. d. v. Id. Corcyram bellissime navigavimus. (C. Fam. 16. 9.)

Appellitur navis Syracusas. (C. Ferr. 5. 25.)

Usque Hennam profecti sunt. (C. Ferr. 4. 49.)

Illo<sup>3</sup> cum pervenire non liceret, statim iter Brundisium versus contuli. (C. Att. 3. 4.)

Galli domos abierant et rex in hiberna concesserat Pergamum.

(L. 45. 34.)

Multitudinem omnem Romam traduxit. (L. 1. 33.)

Jam ex hoc loco proficiscatur Puteolos stadia triginta. (C. Ac. 2. 31.)

Exercitus omnis Aquiloniam est indictus. (L. 10. 38.)

Carthaginiensem matronam domum accepit. (L. 30. 13.)

Filiam Romam nuptum M. Livio dederat. (L. 23. 2.)

Quibus rebus Romam nuntiatis magnus repente terror invasit.

(Cæs. C. 1. 4.)

Ego rus ibo atque ibi manebo. (Ter. Eun. 216.)

Inermes cum infulis se porta foras<sup>4</sup> universi proripiunt.

(Cæs. C. 2. 11.)

Agelli est hic sub urbe paulum, quod locitas foras. (Ter. Ad. 949.)

Quid si doceo te non minus domum tuam avertisse quam Romam misisse decumarum nomine? (C. Verr. 3. 19.)

Ministerium restituendorum domos obsidum mihimet deposco ipse.

(L. 22. 22.)

Nocturnus introitus Zmyrnam quasi in hostium urbem.

(C. Phil. 11. 2.)

Concursatio regis magni ab Demetriade nunc Lamiam in concilium Ætolorum, nunc Chalcidem. (L. 35. 49.)

Tua me imago hæc limina tendere adegit. (Verg. A. 6. 696.)

Italiam fato profugus Lavinaque venit littora. (Ib. 1. 2.)

Verba refers aures non pervenientia nostras. (Ov. Met. 3. 462.)

*A similar use is found in the expressions:*

Venum ire, venum dare; pessum ire, pessum dare, premere.

1112

*Continued on p. 46.*

<sup>1</sup> The accusative in its first adverbial use (A) denotes the line along which (or surface over which) we move: in the second use (B), the point to which we move. The ablative on the other hand expresses the point or place, at which we are, or from which we start.

<sup>2</sup> A preposition is (in prose) required when the place to which

(1) is expressed by common noun, or name of person, or house, &c., e.g. litteram illam ad caput adfigent. (C. Rosc. Am. 20.) Domum ad Ciceronem ivit.

(2) is interior of country, or town, or house, &c.: in, e.g. in Siciliam venit. In Formianum volumus venire Parilibus. (C. Att. 2. 8.)

is direction or neighbourhood of town: ad, e.g. ad Brundisium flexit iter. (L. 25. 24.) Adolescentulus miles ad Capuam profectus sum. (C. Sen. 4.) See also note to § 482.

(3) has urbem, oppidum prefixed in apposition, e.g. Victor per- venit in oppidum Cirtam quo initio profectus intenderat. (Sall. J. 102.) Usually also when the apposition follows; e.g. Demaratus contulit se Tarquinius in urbem Etruriæ florentissimam (C. R. P. 2. 10); but L. 88, 24; 81, 25.

(4) is a Greek name which might be taken for a different case, e.g. a. d. viii. Idus ad Ceo jucunde venimus, inde Gyarum sævo vento. (C. Att. 5. 12.)

<sup>3</sup> The notion of 'whither' is contained in numerous adverbial forms, chiefly pronominal, in -o, which are frequently combined with vorsum, vorsum; and three of them with ad; viz. adeo, adhuc, quoad. See §§ 511, 4. 512.

Do fidem isto me intro ituram quo jubes. (Pl. Mil. 455.)

Occasionally these forms are used of persons and things; e.g.

Eo sumpti opus est. (Cato, R. R. 22. Eo=ad id.)

Aventinum novæ multitudini datum. Additi eodem haud ita multo post Tellenis Ficanaque captis novi cives. (L. 1. 33.)

Sophoclidisca hæc est peculiaris ejus, quo ego sum missus (quo=ad quam). (Pl. Pers. 201.)

Quo illæ nubent divites dotatæ, si istud ius pauperibus ponitur?

(Pl. Aul. 485.)

Homo nobilis et apud eos quo se contulit gratosus. (C. Verr. 4. 18.)

Dicunt haruspicum jussu ex illa olea arcam esse factam, eoque con- ditas sortes. (C. Div. 2. 41.)

Dixit profecto quo vellet aurum. (C. Cæl. 21.)

Hæc volo multo ante meditare, huc te pares, hæc cogites, ad hæc te exerceas. (C. Fam. 1. 7, § 9.)

<sup>4</sup> On foras see § 1169.

## 2. An action as the goal of motion or the like.

1114

*This is almost confined to the use of the so-called supine in -um<sup>1</sup>: really the accusative of a verbal substantive with stem ending in u. Additional examples in Chap. XIV. Cf. also § 711.*

(a) Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.

(Ov. *A. A.* 1. 99.)

Simul ad purganda crimina et questum de se Romam eos ituros comperit. (L. 34. 62.)

Exclusi eos, quos tu ad me salutatum miserat. (C. *Cat.* 1. 4.)

Ex suis unum sciscitatum Romam ad patrem mittit. (L. 1. 54.)

Consurrexisse omnes illi dicuntur et senem sessum recepisse.

(C. *Sen.* 18.)

Daturne illa Pamphilo hodie nuptum? (Ter. *And.* 301.)

Longius eam rem ductum iri existimabant. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 11.)

Coctum ego, non vapulatum, dudum conductus fui. (Pl. *Aul.* 454.)

Multi te ex jure manum consertum vocarent. (C. *Or.* 1. 10.)

Nec qui, quibus verbis herctum cieri oporteat, nesciat, idem herciscundæ familiæ causam agere non possit. (C. *Or.* 1. 56.)

(b) Exequias Chremeti quibus est commodum ire, em tempus est.

(Ter. *Pb.* 1026.)

Horum alterum neque nego neque infitias eo. (L. 6. 40.)

Edepol, ere, ne tibi suppetias<sup>2</sup> temperi advēni modo. (Pl. *Men.* 1020.)

3. (a) *The accusative of place towards which is used with the following prepositions:*

**Ad** (adversus), **in**, **ob**, **pone**, **prope**, **secundum**, **sub**, **super**, **trans**, **versus**; **ante**, **extra**, **infra**, **inter**, **intra**, **ultra**.

*Examples are given in the Supplement to Syntax.*

(b) *Occasionally an accusative (of this class) is found apparently dependent on a preposition in composition<sup>3</sup>. (See also § 1121.)*

Ne tu, quod istic fabuletur, auris immittas tuas. (Pl. *Capt.* 545.)

Ego autem, cum omnia conlustrarem oculis, animum adverti columellam. (C. *T. D.* 5. 23.)

Arbitrum illum adegit. (C. *Off.* 3. 16.)

Provinciam omnem in sua et Pompei verba jusjurandum<sup>4</sup> adigebat.

(Cæs. *C.* 2. 18.)

Hic tibi rostra Cato advolat. (Cic. *Att.* 1. 14, § 5.)

*Continued on p. 48.*

<sup>1</sup> Besides the supine other modes of expressing by verbal nouns the purpose of motion are:

(1) *ad* with gerund or gerundive:

Hannibalem in Syriam miserat ad Phœnicum accersendas naves.

(L. 37. 8.)

Tuis libris nosmet ipsi ad veterem rerum nostrarum memoriam comprehendendam impulsī atque incensi sumus. (C. Brut. 5.)

(2) *Genitive gerund or gerundive dependent on, but followed by, causa or gratia.* (See also § 1288).

Duxit me uxorem liberorum sibi quæsumundum gratia. (Enn. Frag. 161.)

Legatos ad Cæsarem sui purgandi gratia mittunt. (Cæs. G. 7. 43.)

Illi discendi aut visendi causa maria tramittunt. (C. R. P. 3.)

(3) *Future participle (often in Livy, Curtius, Tacitus, Plin. min.):*

Ipse per agrum Campanum mare inferum petit, oppugnaturus Neapolim, ut urbem maritimam haberet. (L. 23. 1.)

Græci excesserant vallo deliberaturi, quid potissimum a rege peterent. (Curt. 5. 5, § 9.)

Deducit quadriremes, ascendit ipse, non Rectinæ modo sed multis laturus auxilium. (Plin. Ep. 6. 16, § 9.)

(4) *Present infinitive.* (In Plaut., Ter., Lucr., and rarely in Augustan poets; see § 1362):

Voltisne eamus visere? (Ter. Ph. 102.)

Reddere hoc, non perdere, erus me misit. (Pl. Ps. 642.)

Nec dulces occurrent oscula nati præripere. (Lucr. 3. 895.)

(5) *The dative of certain verbal nouns (auxilio, præsidio, subsidio) with mittere, &c.* (See § 1162):

Marius fugatis equitibus adcurrit auxilio suis. (Sall. J. 101.)

Orchomeniis missus subsidio, occisus est a Thebanis. (Nep. Lys. 3.)

<sup>2</sup> This use of suppetias is found in Plautus, in this passage only. (Suppetias ferre, Men. 1003; &c.) But the Auct. bell. Afric. has it frequently.

<sup>3</sup> But the preposition is sometimes repeated even in these phrases:

Multi in rebus acerbis acrius advertunt animos ad religionem.

(Lucr. 3. 54.)

Dicebant Catilinam ad iusjurandum popularis sceleris sui adegisse.

(Cf. Sall. C. 22.)

<sup>4</sup> Instead of iusjurandum, jurejurando (dat.? or abl.? cf. sacramento, § 1238) is often found, e.g.

Populum jurejurando adegit, neminem Romæ passuros regnare.

(L. 2. 1.)

Continued on p. 49.



## (C) 1. Direct object of a transitive verb or participle. 1120

*Many verbs not originally transitive become such either (b) by composition with a preposition (§ 1121), e.g. venio, 'I come;' convenio, 'I visit:' or (c) by a stretch of the conception (§ 1123), especially in poetry or animated language, e.g. horreo, 'I shudder,' hence, 'I fear.'*

(a) Græcia capta ferum victorem cepit. (Hor. *Ep.* 2. 1. 156.)

Ut tu fortunam, sic nos te, Celse, feremus. (Ib. 5. 8. 17.)

Dat mihi verba. Vir virum legit. Te citharæ decent.

Habeo gratiam Trebatio. Egi gratias diligenter.

Habere dicimur febrem, cum illa nos habeat. (Sen. *Ep.* 119, § 12.)

Hem, quisquis es, sine me. (Ter. *Ad.* 321.) Certe dextras.

Equitem cursu æquat. Virtutes majorum æmulemur.

Pudet regem facti. Non me fugit. Missum te facimus.

Signum excubanti tribuno dedit, 'optimam matrem.' (Suet. *Ner.* 9.)

Di ludos faciunt hominibus. (Pl. *Merc.* 225.) Cave canem.

Ludos me facit. (Pl. *Rud.* 1. 70.) Cornicum oculos confixit.

Alte extollens Brutus pugionem, Ciceronem exclamavit, et ei recuperatam libertatem est gratulatus. (C. *Phil.* 2. 11.)

Optas congressum pacemque non desperas. (C. *Att.* 8. 15.)

Primum me tibi excuso in eo ipso, in quo te accuso. (C. *Or.* 2. 2. 1.)

Lucem perosi projecere animas. (Verg. *A.* 6. 435.)

Parios ego primus iambos ostendi Latio, numeros animosque secutus Archilochi, non res et agentia verba Lycamben.

(Hor. *Ep.* 1. 19. 23.)

Nil relinquo in ædibus, nec vas nec vestimentum; conrasi omnia; ancillas, servos omnis produxi ac vendidi; inscripsi ilico ædis; mercedem quasi talenta ad quindecim coegi; agrum hunc mercatus sum: hic me exerceo. (Ter. *Haut.* 140—146.)

(b) Vires me deficiunt. Adeo hereditatem.

Extremum fato, quod te adloquor, hoc est. (Verg. *A.* 6. 466.)

Cælum suspeximus cælestiaque contemplati sumus. (C. *N.D.* 2. 2.)

Vallo atque fossa mœnia circumdedit. (Sall. *J.* 23.)

Atilium sua manu spargentem semen convenerunt. (C. *Rosc. A.* 18.)

Is periculum iudicii præstare debet, qui se nexu obligavit.

(C. *Mur.* 29.)

Filia miseram sed honestam mortem occubuerat. (L. 3. 50.)

Uvus velut morbus invaserat omnes Italiæ civitates. (L. 24. 2.)

*Continued on p. 50.*

The following verbs have become transitive in certain senses by being compounded with a preposition. (Those printed wide have a personal passive voice.) The first (or principal prose) authority is added. Those without author's name are so used in Cicero. Many of them have other constructions also, esp. in Cicero. Compare also § 1106 b; 1118.

accedere (Sall.), accumbere (Plaut.), adire, *metaph.*, adoriri, ag-gredi, adjacere (Liv.), adlatrare (Liv.), adloqui (Verg.), adsidere (Verg.), advehi (Tac.), advolvi (Tac.);

antecedere, antecellere (Plin.), anteire, antegredi, antevenire (Sall.);

aversari (Liv.), averti (Verg.).

circumdare, 'surround' (as well as 'throw around') -fluere (Varr.), -frangere (Sen.), -fundere, *surround*, -ire, -latrare (Sen.), -sistere (Cæs.), -sonare (Liv.), -stare, strepere (Sen.), -tonare (Hor.), -vadere (Liv.), -vehi (Liv.), -venire, -volare (Hor.);

coire, *metaph.*, convenire;

excedere (Liv.), egredi (Cæs.), exire (Ter.), ejurare, elabi (Tac.), eluctari (Liv.), eniti, 'climb' (Tac.), emungere (Plaut.), expugnare, erumpere (Verg.), evadere (Liv.), evagari (Hor.).

incedere (Liv.), incessere (Liv.), incidere (Tac.), increpare, in-currere (Liv.), inire, *metaph.*, ingredi, inlucescere (Plaut.), innare (Verg.), innatare (Verg.), inpendere (Ter.), inpugnare, inquirere (Liv.; with in, Cic.), inrumpere (Cæs.), inservire (Plaut.), insidere (Liv.), insilire (Ov.), insistere (Cæs.), inputare (Plaut.), insultare (Ter.), invadere (Liv.), inundare, involare (Plin.);

interfluere (Liv.);

obambulare (Ov.), occumbere (mortem), oberrare (Pers.), obire, objurgare, oppugnare, obsidere, obsidere (Sall.);

percurrere, perequitate (Liv.), pererrare (Hor.), permanere (Lucr.), permeare (Plin.), personare (Verg.), persultare (Lucr.), pervadere (Liv.), pervagari;

præcellere (Tac.), præcurrere, præfluere (Hor.), prægredi (Liv.), præire, *dictate* (Liv.), præminere (Tac.), præsidere (Sall.), præstare, excel (Liv. but usually intrans.), *guaranty, perform* (Cic. &c.), prævehi (Tac.), prævenire (Liv.), prævertere, *outstrip, prevent* (Liv.), præverti, *attend first to* (Liv.).

præterfluere (Liv.), -gredi, -ire, -navigare (Suet.), -vehi, -volare (Cic. poet.);

transgredi, transire, tranare, transilire, transvehi;

subgredi (Sall.), subire;

subterlabi (Verg.);

supergredi (Sen.), -jacere, *overtop* (Verg.), -stare (Ov.), -vadere (Sall.), -venire (Hor.).

Continued on p. 51.

(c) Queritur salebras et acerbum frigus et imbres, aut cistam effractam et subducta viatica plorat. (Hor. Ep. 1. 17. 53.)

Tribunatum etiam nunc spirans, locum seditionis quærit. (L. 3. 46.)

Catilinam, scelus anhelantem, pestem patriæ nefarie molientem, eiecimus. (C. Cat. 2. 1.)

Et verba omnia et vox hujus alumnum urbis oleant, ut oratio Romana plene videatur. (Quint. 8. 1. 3.)

Cives meum casum luctumque doluerunt. (C. Sest. 69.)

Jura fidemque supplicis erubuit. (Verg. A. 2. 541.)

Legitimum sonum digitis callemus et aure. (Hor. A. P. 274.)

Vela damus, vastumque cava trabe currimus æquor. (Verg. A. 3. 191.)

Formosam resonant Amaryllida silvæ. (Id. 1. 5.)

Pastorem saltaret uti Cyclopa rogabat. (Hor. Sat. 1. 5. 63.)

2. *Certain special usages of the objective accusative may here be distinctly mentioned:*

(a) *For the accusative with the infinitive see § 1351.*

(b) *Some verbs have, in consequence of their own double meaning, two direct objects, one being a person, the other a thing<sup>1</sup>. These are doceo (and compounds), celo; some verbs of demanding, viz. posco, flagito, oro; and some verbs of questioning, viz. rogo, interrogo (chiefly with sententiam, testimonium), percontor (once). (These like other verbs may have an accusative of the class named in § 1094.)*

Consules causam Sthenii totum senatum docent. (C. Ferr. 2. 39.)

Non te celavi sermonem T. Ampii. (C. Fam. 2. 16.)

Interim cotidie Cæsar Hæduos frumentum flagitare.

(Cæs. G. 1. 16.)

Tribunus me primum sententiam rogavit. (C. Q. Fr. 2. 1.)

Nullus est tibi quem roges mutuom argentum? (Pl. Pseud. 294.)

Factum senatus consultum, ut duo viros<sup>2</sup> ædiles ex patribus dictator populum rogaret. (L. 6. fin.)

Forte meum siquis te percontabitur ævum. (Hor. Ep. 1. 20. 26.)

*The accusative of the thing remains even when the verb is in the passive voice.*

Latinæ legiones longa societate militiam Romanam edoctæ.

(L. 6. 32.)

Scito primum me non esse rogatum sententiam. (C. Att. 1. 13.)

Negabis libellum ullius pretii esse, cuius pretium reposceris.

(Plin. Ep. 7. 12.)

*Continued on p. 52.*

*The following (mainly intransitive) verbs are used, chiefly in poetry, transitively by a stretch of the conception, the accusative often resembling the class in §§ 1094—1100. (Those used in passive are spaced.)*

ambulare (maria, Cic. *But cf.* Quint. i. 5, § 39); anhelare (scelus, Cic.); ardere (Alexin, Verg.); crepare (vineta, Hor.); currere (æquor, Verg.); deperire (illam, Plaut.); dolere (casum, Cic.); erubescere (fratres, Prop.); festinare (pœnas, Hor.); flare (flammam, Lucr.); flere (fidem, Hor.); fremere (arma, Verg.); gemere (ignominiam, Verg.); horrere (dolorem, Cic.); indulgere, *concede* (sanguinem, Liv.); instare (currum, Verg.); lacrimare (id, Ter.); lamentari (cæcitatem, Cic.); ludere (Appium, Cic.); lugere (mortem, Cic.); mærare (mortem, Cic.); manare (mella, Hor.); manere (patruum, Ter.); navigare (terram, Cic.); olere (malitiam, Cic.); pallere (pontum, Hor.); pavere (Parthum, Hor.); plorare (commisum, Hor.); properare (obsonia, Plaut.); queri (injuriam, Cic.); redolere (antiquitatem, Cic.); resonare (alcyonen, Lucos, Verg.); ridere (me, Cic.); saltare (puellam, Ov.); sapere (mare, Sen.); silere (rem, Cic.); sitire (sanguinem, Cic.); sonare (atavos, Verg.); spirare (flammas, Liv.); stillare (rorem, Hor.); stupere (donum, Verg.); sudare (mella, Verg.); suspirare (Chloen, Hor.); tacere (clades, Liv.); tonare (deos, Verg.); triumphatæ gentes (Verg.); vigilatæ (noctis, Ov.); vivere (Bacchanalia, Juv.).

<sup>1</sup> *The thing (subject-matter) may be put in the abl. with de, after doceo, celo, rogo, interrogo, and (without an acc. of the person) sciscitari;*

*The person may be put in the abl. with ab after posco, flagito, and always after peto, precor, postulo; with ab or ex after quæro, sciscitor.*

L. Roscius de his rebus Cæsarem docet. (Cæs. C. 1. 3.)

De armis, de ferro, de insidiis celare te noluit. (C. Deiot. 6.)

Memoriter respondeto ad ea quæ (§ 1094) de te ipso rogaro.

(C. Vat. 4.)

Pusionem quendam Socrates interrogat quædam geometrica (§ 1094) de dimensione quadrati. (C. T. D. 1. 24.)

Non debebam ego abs te has litteras poscere. (C. Verr. 2. 16.)

Precor deos *is used as well as* precor salutem, *but not* precor deos salutem.

Multa (§ 1094) deos venerati sunt. (Cæcin. ap. C. Fam. 6. 7.)

Consulo *with two accus. once* in Plaut. (Men. 700). Cf. C. Att. 7. 20.

Condo *is used (rarely) in Plaut. and Ter. with two accus. (Compare the double use of donare aliquem re and rem alicui.)*

Argentum, quod habes, condonamus te. (Ter. Ph. 947.)

Habeo alia multa quæ nunc condonabitur. (Ter. Eun. 17.)

*But the regular construction is* condonare aliquid alicui.

<sup>2</sup> *Compare* comitia consulibus rogandis, post legem rogatam, &c.

(c) *In the poets and Tacitus many passive verbs, especially in the past participle, retain the direct object, expressing, either (1) a part of the body, &c., or (2) a thing worn, &c., in the accusative<sup>1</sup>. The passive verb may usually be regarded as reflexive.*

(1) Succincti corda machæris. (Ennius, *Poen.* 15, fr. 2.)

Volucres percussæ corda tua vi. (Lucr. 1. 13.)

Consurgit senior tunicaque inducitur artus. (Verg. *A.* 3. 545.)

Unum exuta pedem vinclis, testatur moritura deos. (Ib. 4. 518.)

Inficitur teneras ore rubente genas. (Tib. 3. 4. 32.)

Virides manu siccata capillos. (Ov. *M.* 5. 575.)

(2) Census es mancipia Amyntæ. (C. *Flac.* 32.)

Arma circumdat humeris et inutile ferrum cingitur.

(Verg. *A.* 2. 511.)

Inscripti nomina regum, nascuntur flores. (Verg. *B.* 3. 106.)

Pueri lævo suspensi loculos tabulamque lacerto. (Hor. *S.* 1. 6. 74.)

Protinus induitur faciem cultumque Dianæ. (Ov. *M.* 2. 425.)

Inductaque cornibus aurum victima vota cadit. (Ib. 7. 161.)

(d) *The accusative is also used in exclamations<sup>2</sup>: really object to some verb understood. (The particular verb is often quite unimportant, and probably not distinctly conceived.) The substantive has usually an oblique predicate.*

Me miserum! Pro deorum atque hominum fidem<sup>3</sup>! (C. *T. D.* 5. 16.)

O excubias tuas, Cn. Planci, miseras! o flebilis vigilias! o noctis acerbas! o custodiam etiam mei capitis infelicem! (C. *Planc.* 49.)

O te ferreum, qui illius periculis non moveris. (C. *Att.* 13. 30.)

Hocine sæclum! o scelera, o genera sacrilega, o hominem impium.

(Ter. *Ad.* 304.)

Huncine hominem! hancine impudentiam, judices! hanc audaciam!

(C. *Verr.* 5. 29.)

In balneis delituerunt: testis egregios! dein temere prosiluerunt; homines temperantis! (C. *Cæ.* 26.)

Di magni, horribilem ac sacrum libellum! (Catull. 14. 12.)

Edepol mortalem graphicum, si servat fidem. (Pl. *Pseud.* 519.)

Sed eccum<sup>4</sup> qui nos conduxit senex. (Pl. *Merc.* 747.) See § 999. 2.

Æschinus ubist? Sy. Ellum te expectat domi. (Ter. *Ad.* 260.)

En quattuor aras: Ecce duas tibi, Daphni, duas altaria Phœbo.

(Verg. *B.* 5. 65.)

*Continued on p. 54.*

<sup>1</sup> *This usage (for which normal Latin has ablative) is doubtless of Greek suggestion, though it closely borders on and, in fact, runs into the use of the accusative of extent, § 1102. (The use of censor is only found in C. Flac. 32 (q.v.), and Hor. A. P. 383.) Besides the instances quoted in § 1126,*

(1) *Ennius* has *perculsi pectora Poeni*; *Lucretius*, *perculus*, 1. 261; *percussus*, 5. 1123. *The Augustan poets* (esp. Verg. *Æn.*, Ov. *Met.*) have *cremari* (*ornatum*), *expleri* (*mentem*), *tegi*, *velari*, *necti*, *succingi*, *erui* (*oculos*, Ov. *M.* 12. 269), *reflecti* (*ungues*), *molliri* (*ingenium*); *amicus*, *redimitus*, *protectus*, *circumdatus*, *coronatus*, *in-*, *præ-*, *cinctus*, *collectus*; *exsertus*; *in-*, *per-*, *suf-*, *fusus* (*oculos*); *suffectus*, *oblitus*, *pictus*, *distinctus*, *odoratus*; *cæsus*, *percussus*, *pressus* (*mentem*), *pulsus*, *fractus* (*membra*); *fixus* (*oculos*), *de-*, *præ-*, *fixus*; *accensus* (Verg. *A.* 7. 75), *adsuetus*, *saturatus* (*dolorem*), *mutatus*. Also *incomptus*.

*Ictus* in *L.* 21. 7; *Bell. Afr.* 78; *Suet. Aug.* 20; *vulneratus*, *Plin.* 7, § 103; *percussus*, *Bell. Afr.* 85. (*Comp. saucius*, § 1102.) *Tacitus* has *munitus*, *tutus* (*frontem*, *terga*, *latera*, &c.); *contectus*, *oblitus*, *conversus*; *adlevatur* (*animum*).

(2) *The Augustan poets* have *accingi* (Verg. *A.* 4. 493), *succinctus*, *circumdatus*, *trajectus* (*per pedes lora*, Verg. *A.* 2. 273). *Tacitus* has *expressus* (*H.* 3. 74). *Indutus* frequent in poets, once in *Livy* (27. 37), then occasionally in *Curtius*, *Velleius*, *Suetonius*.

*The English*, 'has (having) his temples crowned,' 'his satchel suspended' (whence comes the English active, 'has crowned his temples,' &c.), would suit all these expressions both in (1) and (2).

*The reflexive inflexions here represent mihi, not me, e.g.*

(1) *velo mihi caput amictu, exuo mihi pedem vinculis, inficio mihi genas, præcingo mihi cornua auro*; &c.

(2) *induo mihi tunicam, induco mihi aurum cornibus, inscribo mihi nomen sepulcro, censeo mihi mancipia*, 'enter in my return to the censors.' *The use of cingor presumes a (not found) cingo mihi gladium. Comp. the double use of circumdare.*

<sup>2</sup> *The nominative is also used in exclamations: see § 1082.*

1129

<sup>3</sup> *Similarly* *Di vostram fidem* (*Pl. Capt.* 591, &c.). *The verb omitted is imploro: (e.g. C. Verr. 1. 9, deum atque hominum fidem implorabis). But these expressions are purely colloquial exclamations, = 'Good heavens!' 'Oh Lord!', not real invocations. In Ter. Ph. 351, pro deum immortalium! the ellipse is still greater.*

*Di melius (e.g. Ov. H. 3. 125), di meliora (e.g. C. Phil. 8. 3), are found with the verb expressed; e.g. duint (Ter. Ph. 1005), faxint (Pl. Ps. 315), ferant (Tib. 3. 4. 1), velint (Ov. M. 7. 37).*

*Me hercules, me dius fidius sc. juvet (see § 999) are simply asseverations = 'Upon my word,' the former being worn down to hercle in speech, and a colloquial 'indeed' in meaning.*

*A different kind of elliptical exclamation is seen in Morte Tiberii its lætatus est populus, ut ad primum nuntium discurrentes, 'Tiberium in Tiberim' clamitarent (Suet. Tib. 75).*

<sup>4</sup> *Except in the Plautine eocum, eocillam, &c., en and ecce are found most frequently with the nominative (cf. § 1081).*

*Continued on p. 55.*

## CHAPTER IX.

## USE OF DATIVE CASE.

THE DATIVE case is used in two senses<sup>1</sup> only:

1130

(A) It expresses the *indirect object*, which is usually a person;

(B) It is used *predicatively* in a quasi-adjectival sense. (*Dative of the thing.*)

(A) 1. *The indirect object is the person (or thing) affected by the occurrence of an action or by the exercise of a quality, although not directly or primarily acted on. (Person for or to whom.)*

*The word put in the dative belongs properly to the whole predicate (whether principal or subordinate), and not (as the genitive) to some particular word, though there is often some word in the sentence (e.g. verb, adjective, preposition in composition, substantive) whose meaning is naturally supplemented<sup>2</sup> by such an indirect object. The Augustan and later writers, especially poets and historians, often employed the dative to express loosely, but vividly, what as a mere matter of fact would be more precisely expressed by a preposition with its case.*

*Transitive verbs can have the indirect object in addition to a direct object; Intransitive verbs have this indirect object only (with or without an accusative of the extent). In English the preposition for<sup>3</sup> or to is usually required, though not unfrequently the notion is differently conceived, and the indirect object in Latin corresponds to the direct object in English.*

Sex. Roscius prædia aliis coluit, non sibi. (C. Rosc. Am. 17.)

1134

Scriptitavit orationes multis Ælius. (C. Brut. 46.)

Vobis arabitur ager Campanus: vobis Capua urbs frequentabitur.

(L. 7. 30.)

Esset humanitatis tuæ consulæ eorum commodis et utilitati salutique servire. (C. Q. F. 1. 1. 9.)

Illam mimam suas res sibi habere<sup>4</sup> jussit. (C. Phil. 2. 28.)

Nihil aut patri gratius<sup>5</sup>, aut sibi jucundius facere potuit.

(C. Rosc. Am. 18.)

Minus Dolabella Verri acceptum rettulit, quam Verres illi expensum tulit. (C. Verr. 1. 39.)

Debemur morti nos nostraque. (Hor. A. P. 63.)

T. Menenio diem dicunt. Cum capitis anquisissent, duo milia æris damnato dixerunt. (L. 2. 52.)

Nec nostris præbere vacat<sup>6</sup> tibi cantibus aures. (Ov. M. 5. 334.)

*Continued on p. 56.*

<sup>1</sup> These senses are subdivided as follows:

A. Indirect object. 1. General usage. §§ 1182—1142.

2. Certain special usages:

- (a) Where a local relation is implied. § 1144.
  - (b) Agent. § 1146.
  - (c) Person judging. § 1148.
  - (d) Person interested in a statement. § 1150.
  - (e) Person possessing. § 1152.
  - (f) Where a genitive might have been expected. § 1154.
  - (g) Work contemplated. § 1156.
- (Double indirect object. § 1161.)

B. Predicative dative. §§ 1158—1162.

- (a) with the verb 'esse.' § 1160.
- (b) with other verbs. § 1162.

<sup>2</sup> As specimens of the numerous words, whose meaning is naturally supplemented by a dative (besides or without an accusative), may be named: 1131

cedere, dare, esse, favere, ferre, fidere, indulgere, irasci, jungere, licere, moderi, minari, narrare, nocere, nubere, parcere, placere, servire, suadere, &c.

adjacere, arridere, auferre, comparare, consentire, contingere, incumbere, innasci, insidere, obedire, obrepere, obtrektare, repugnare, succurrere, sufficere, superstare, &c.

affinis, amicus, aptus, idoneus, infensus, obnoxius, obvius, par, sacer, similis, dissimilis, &c.

adjutor, auctor, comes, hostis, testis, finis, locus, tempus, materia, pretium, subsidium, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Pro with abl. properly 'in front of,' 'in place of,' sometimes approaches very nearly to the meaning of the dative: 1133

In aliis causis intellexerant omnia me semper pro amicorum periculis, nihil umquam pro me ipso deprecatum. (C. Or. 2. 49.)

Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori. (Hor. Od. 3. 2. 13.)

<sup>4</sup> This is a formula used in divorces. But Habere tecum 'to keep to one self,' e.g. Secreto hoc audi; tecum habeto. (C. Fam. 7. 25.) 1135

<sup>5</sup> Credidi gratum fore beneficium meum apud te. (Pl. Pers. 718.)

Gratæ in vulgus leges fuere. (L. 2. 8.)

<sup>6</sup> Exponam, si vacas animo, neque habes aliquid quod huic sermoni prævertendum putes. 'Ego vero' inquam 'philosophiæ semper vaco.' (C. Div. 1. 6.) Continued on p. 57.



Non Herculi nocere Deianira voluit, cum ei tunicam sanguine Centauri tinctam dedit. (C. N. D. 3. 28.)

Increpabant, consules magis non confidere<sup>1</sup> quam non credere suis militibus. (L. 2. 45.)

Dicit Cleomeni: 'Tibi uni parcam.' (C. Verr. 5. 40.)

Reliqua oratio fuit ut suæ fortunæ moderarentur<sup>2</sup>. (L. 37. 35.) 1136

Navis, quibus legatus præfuerat<sup>3</sup>, Cleomeni tradit. (C. Verr. 5. 31.)

Ad eam diem omnes magistratus sibi esse præsto Cordubæ voluit. (Cæs. C. 2. 19.)

Interroganti senatori si reticeam, superbus videar. Respondeam Himilconi, &c. (L. 23. 12.)

Cæpius olim, 'non omnibus dormio:' sic ego non omnibus, mi Galle, servio. (C. Fam. 7. 24.)

Nam et mundus deo paret, et huic obediunt maria terræque, et hominum vita jussis supremæ legis obtemperat. (C. Legg. 3. 1.)

Scire volam quantum simplex hilarisque nepoti discrepet<sup>4</sup> et quantum discordet<sup>5</sup> parcus avaro. (Hor. E. 2. 2. 192.)

Chremem conveniam; orabo gnato filiam. (Ter. And. 528.) 1138

Bona omnia populo Romano Gracchoque ipsi precabantur<sup>6</sup>. (L. 24. 16.)

Bovem eximium Marti immolavit. (L. 7. 37.)

Propino hoc pulchro Critiæ. (C. T. D. 1. 40.)

Epulari Gracchus permisit<sup>7</sup> militibus. (L. 24. 16.)

Nunquam conlegæ tuo gratiam referes. (C. Brut. 60.)

Socratis morti inlacrimari soleo, Platonem legens. (C. N. D. 3. 33.)

Interdictum mari Antiati populo est. (L. 8. 14.)

Ea quoque res in pugna terrorem attulit<sup>8</sup> Sabinis. (L. 1. 37.) 1140

Provinciæ toti, quam maximum potest, militum numerum imperat. (Cæs. G. 1. 7.)

Victoriam hosti extorqueamus<sup>9</sup>, confessionem erroris civibus. (L. 22. 29.)

Vitam adolescentibus vis aufert<sup>10</sup>, senibus maturitas. (C. Sen. 19.)

Stultitia est, quod bene esse liceat, eum prævorti litibus. (Pl. Pers. 799.)

Non solum illa gloria militaris vestris formulis atque actionibus anteponenda est, verum etiam dicendi consuetudo longe et multum isti vestræ exercitationi ad honorem antecellit. (C. Mur. 13.)

Corpora feris objiciuntur<sup>11</sup>: hoc luctuosum est parentibus. (C. Verr. 5. 45.)

Continued on p. 58.

<sup>1</sup> Multum natura loci confidebant. (Cæs. G. 8. 9.) Cf. § 1229.

<sup>2</sup> Res rusticas venti tempestatesque moderantur. (C. Verr. 3. 98.)

<sup>3</sup> Præsum is often absolute, e.g. Hasdrubal ea parte præerat. (L. 22. 48.) Mago in Brutiis præerat. (L. 25. 16.)

<sup>4</sup> Similarly Ut matrona meretrici dispar erit atque discolor, infido<sup>1137</sup> scurræ distabit amicus. Est huic diversum vitio vitium prope majus. (Hor. Ep. 1. 18. 8.)

In prose discrepare, discordare, distare, &c. are found in the same sense with ab, the two former also with cum: the dative is rare.

Hæc in re discrepavit ab Antonii divisione nostra partitio.

(C. Or. 8. 30.)

Quid attinuit cum eis, quibuscum re concinebat, verbis discrepare.

(C. Fin. 22.)

<sup>5</sup> Conformanda vox est ne ab oratione discordet. (Quint. 11. 3. 45.)

<sup>6</sup> Quodni ita sit, quid veneramur, quid precamur deos? (C.N.D. 1. 44.)

<sup>7</sup> Similarly Ipsi iudicibus sine mea argumentatione conjecturam<sup>1139</sup> facere permittam. (C. Verr. 5. 9.)

But with sino an accusative of the person receiving the permission is used, e.g. Nos Transalpinas gentis oleam et vitem serere non sinimus. (C. R. P. 3. 9.)

(Such an accus. as in Otho concedi corpora sepulturæ cremarique permisit (Tac. H. 1. 47), is part of the thing permitted. See note to § 1348.)

<sup>8</sup> So also afferre vim or manus alicui, use force or one's hands to a<sup>1147</sup> person; afferre periculum reipublicæ, &c.; but nihil novi ad nos adferrebat. (C. Fam. 2. 14.)

Cn. Octavius primus in eam familiam attulit consulatum.

(C. Phil. 9. 2.)

Hoc est vim adferre sensibus, extorquere ex animis cognitiones verborum. (C. Fin. 2. 5.)

<sup>9</sup> Nihil exprimere ab egentibus, nihil ulla vi a miseris extorquere potuit. (C. Prov. 3.)

<sup>10</sup> Te hæc phaleras a Phylarcho abstulisse dicebant. (C. Verr. 4. 12.)

<sup>11</sup> Objecit sese ad currum. (Verg. A. 12. 372.)

Tam conjuncta<sup>1</sup> populo Romano civitas ad vim descendit. 1142  
(Cæs. G. 7. 33.)

Hannibali imperatori parem consulem nomino. (L. 24. 8.)

Fiunt omnia castris quam urbi similia<sup>2</sup>. (L. 4. 31.)

Ego tamen tuis rebus sic adero ut difficillimis, neque Cæsari solum sed etiam amicis ejus omnibus, quos mihi amicissimos<sup>3</sup> esse cognovi, pro te libentissime supplicabo. (C. Fam. 6. 14.)

Romana acies distinctior ex pluribus partibus constans, facilis partienti quacunque opus esset, facilis jungenti. (L. 9. 19.)

Summum bonum a Stoicis dicitur convenienter<sup>4</sup> naturæ vivere.  
(C. Off. 3. 3.)

Suo sibi<sup>5</sup> gladio hunc jugulo. (Ter. Ad. 958.)

Invitum qui servat, idem<sup>6</sup> facit occidenti. (Hor. A. P. 467.)

Scipionem, Uticæ oppugnandæ intentum<sup>7</sup>, jamque machinas admoventem muris, avertit fama redintegrati belli. (L. 30. 8.)

Facilis<sup>8</sup> impetrandæ veniæ Claudius erat. (L. 26. 15.)

Relicua tempora demetendis fructibus et percipiendis<sup>9</sup> accommodata<sup>10</sup> sunt. (C. Sen. 19.)

Dixit se et Campanos paratos eruptioni fore. (L. 26. 13.)

Vides urbem sine legibus, sine judiciis, relictam direptioni<sup>11</sup> et incendiis. (C. Fam. 4. 1.)

2. *The indirect object is especially noticeable in the following classes of instances or in the following special meanings, which however cannot be separated by any clear line from the general usage or from each other.*

(a) *Often a local relation<sup>12</sup> (literal or figurative) is implied, and a preposition with its case might have been expected. Chiefly in Livy, Tacitus, poets, &c.* 1144

Eo ferocius adequitabant Samnites vallo. (L. 9. 22.)

Nos onera quibusdam bestiis, nos juga inponimus. (C. N. D. 2. 60.)

Sane homini præter opinionem improvise incidi. (C. Verr. 2. 74.)

Itineris finem sperent campum interjacentem Tiberi ac moenibus Romanis. (L. 21. 30.)

Tecto adsuetus coluber succedere et umbræ fovit humum.  
(Verg. G. 3. 48.)

Rex se munitæ urbi cum magna manu popularium incluserat.  
(Curt. 9. 8, § 11.)

*Continued on p. 60.*

<sup>1</sup> Segestani cognatione se cum populo Romano conjunctos esse arbitrantur. (C. Verr. 4. 38.) 1143

<sup>2</sup> Similis is frequent with the genitive. See below, §§ 1314, 1317.

<sup>3</sup> Amicus, inimicus, &c. often with genitive as substantives (§ 1280).

<sup>4</sup> Stoici finem bonorum esse senserunt congruere naturæ cumque ea convenienter vivere. (C. T. D. 5. 28.)

<sup>5</sup> This use of sibi is only in Plautus (e.g. Trin. 156; Capt. 5. 79, &c.), Columella, and this passage of Terence, with an echo in C. Phil. 2. 37, and perhaps in Læl. 3. Its origin is seen in such passages as, In omni voce est quiddam medium sed suum cuique voci. (C. Or. 3. 61.)

<sup>6</sup> Idem with dat. 'same as' only (?) in Hor. l. c., Ov. Met. 13. 50, Lucr. 2. 919; 3. 1038; 4. 1174, and Just. 2. 4. 10. (Usually idem ac.) Esse idem alicui, 'behave the same to,' Ter. Hec. 7.

<sup>7</sup> Obliquis itineribus agmen sequebantur in omnem occasionem intenti. (L. 41. 2.)

<sup>8</sup> Patenti campo et ad fugam capessendam facili pugnatum est. (L. 28. 34.)

<sup>9</sup> For other instances of gerundival datives, see § 1156 and ch. xiv.

<sup>10</sup> Oratoria vis dicendi, explicatrix orationis perpetuæ ad persuadendum accommodatæ. (C. Ac. 1. 8.)

<sup>11</sup> A few out of numberless instances of abstract substantives as indirect objects are relinquere consultationi (L. 26. 2); dare, accipere, servos quæstioni (Pl. Most. 1087, 1091, 1095); ista omnia jam addicta vastationi videntur (C. Att. 9. 9); ille aditus Gallorum immanitati multitudinique patuisset (C. Prov. Cons. 14); dandæ cervices erant crudelitati nefariæ (C. Phil. 5. 16); mandari, credi fide ac fiduciæ (Pl. Trin. 117, 141); fidei commissum; timere receptui (Cæs. C. 3. 69); inventioni, dispositioni, elocutioni, ordini rerum verborumque animum sufficere (Quint. 10. 7. 9); quæstui atque sumptui deditus erat (Sall. C. 13); &c., &c. See also § 1163.

<sup>12</sup> Where a local relation is clearly, even though figuratively intended, a preposition (usually ad, de, ex, in, sub) with its case is generally used, especially by Cicero, Cæsar, &c. Sometimes a simple accusative or ablative without a repetition of the preposition. 1145

Equites propius tumultum accedere et ad nostros adequitare. (Cæs. G. 1. 46.)

Torquem sanguinolentam sibi in collum imponit. (Claud. Quad. ap. Gell. 9. 3.)

Habebas, quid diceres, si quando in vituperatores meos incidisses. (C. Fam. 7. 3, § 6.)

Castra Punica et Romana interjacebat campus. (L. 27. 41, where inter may be taken as not compounded.)

Omnes sententiæ verbaque omnia sub acumen styli subeant et succedant necessesit. (C. Or. 1. 35.)

Habuerat turmas equitum, quibus inclusum in curia senatum Salamine obsederat. (C. Att. 6. 1, § 6.)

Continued on p. 61.

Extractum<sup>1</sup> custodiæ juvenem ducem populo imposuit<sup>2</sup>.

(Tac. *A.* 6. 23.)

Equites Hannoni Afrisque pugnando ac sequendo fessis se circumfudere. (L. 29. 34.)

Quæ nota domesticæ turpitudinis non inusta vitæ tuæ est?

(C. *Cat.* 1. 6.)

It cælo clamorque virum clangorque tubarum; hinc alii spolia occisis derepta Latinis coniciunt igni. (Verg. *A.* 11. 192.)

(b) *Agent. Regularly with gerundive<sup>3</sup>, and sometimes with passive participle, or adjective in -bilis. Otherwise rare.* <sup>1146</sup>

Hæc Epicuro confitenda sunt, aut ea, quæ modo dixi, tollenda de libro. (C. *T. D.* 3. 19.)

Aliorum judicio permulta nobis et facienda et non facienda et mutanda et corrigenda sunt. (C. *Off.* 1. 41.)

Video huic, si insidiaretur, noctem prope urbem expectandam, illi accessum ad urbem nocturnum fuisse metuendum. (C. *Mil.* 19.)

Consulem invenerunt, quam poterat maxime, miserabilem bonis sociis, superbis atque infidelibus, ut erant Campani, spernendum.

(L. 23. 5.)

Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit, nulli flebilior quam tibi.

(Hor. *Od.* 1. 24. 9.)

Cui non sunt auditæ Demosthenis vigilæ? (Ib. 4. 19.)

Qui autem alia malunt scribi a nobis, æqui esse debent, quod scripta multa sunt, sic ut plura nemini e nostris. (C. *Fin.* 1. 4.)

Nihil intemptatum inexpertumque priscis illis fuit. (Plin. 25. § 1.)

Carmina quæ scribuntur aquæ potioribus. (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 19. 3.)

Dixit sibi apud horridas gentes e contuberniis hostem aspic.

(Tac. *A.* 1. 17.)

(c) *Person judging<sup>4</sup>:*

Fortunatus sibi Damocles videbatur. (C. *T. D.* 5. 21.)

Animo cupienti nihil satis festinatur. (Sall. *J.* 64.)

Nequaquam visu ac specie æstimantibus pares. (L. 7. 10.)

Quintia formosast multis, mihi candida, longa, rectast. (Catull. 86. 1.)

Vere reputantibus Gallias suismet viribus concidisse admonebat.

(Tac. *H.* 4. 17.)

Verum confitentibus latifundia perdere Italiam. (Plin. 18. § 35.)

Gomphos pervenit, quod est oppidum primum Thessaliæ venientibus<sup>5</sup> ab Epiro. (Cæs. *Civ.* 3. 80.)

Tantus anulorum acervus fuit, ut metientibus supra tres modios explese sint quidam auctores. (L. 23. 12.)

*Continued on p. 62.*

<sup>1</sup> Orabant (Fabium) ut ex cæno plebeio consulatum extraheret.  
(L. 10. 15.)

<sup>2</sup> Hæc in eculeum coiciuntur. Iste chorus virtutum in eculeum impositus. (C. T. D. 5. 5.)

*Even in non-local meaning the preposition is generally repeated with addere, adicere, adjungere, applicare se, adhibere, conferre, comparare, componere, inesse, and often with subicere, subjungere. So always with communicare (aliquid cum aliquo). It is never repeated with adjacere, assidere. Cf. § 1121. (Madvig, Lat. Gr. §§ 243, 245.)*

<sup>3</sup> *The ablative with ab is sometimes (chiefly in Cicero) found to express the agent with the gerundive. This is in many cases due either (a) to a fear lest ambiguity should arise, if the dative were used, or (b) to a desire to balance neighbouring clauses; in other cases (c) the reason is not apparent. (With the passive participle ab is the ordinary usage.)*

(a) Aguntur bona multorum civium, quibus est a vobis et ipsorum et reipublicæ causa consulendum. (C. Man. 2. Quibus vobis would have left it uncertain which was agent, which ordinary indirect object.)

Cum res ejusmodi sit ut in primis a magistratibus animadvertenda videatur. (C. Cæc. 12.)

(b) Nunc mihi tertius ille locus est reliquus orationis de ambitus criminibus, perpurgatus ab eis qui ante me dixerunt; a me, quoniam ita Murena voluit, retractandus. (C. Mur. 26.)

Nec, si a populo præteritus est quem non oportuit, a iudicibus condemnandus est qui præteritus non est. (C. Planc. 3.)

Cui senatus pro me gratias agendas putavit, ei ego a me referendam gratiam non putem? (Ib. 32.)

(c) Id etsi talibus de rebus gravissimos homines et rogare solere et rogari scio, tamen admonendum potius te a me quam rogandum puto. (C. Fam. 15. 4, § 11.)

Quid expectatis? quid a me amplius dicendum putatis?  
(C. Verr. 3. 24.)

<sup>4</sup> *With some verbs the ordinary indirect object naturally expresses the person judging; e.g.*

Nihil cuiquam probari volo me dicente, quod non ante mihimet ipsi probatum sit. (C. Verr. 3. 70.)

Id huc reverti, uti me purgarem tibi. (Pl. Amph. 909.)

His omnibus, qui istius injurias noscent, me vehementer excusatum volo. (C. Verr. 1. 40.)

<sup>5</sup> *So Hercyniæ silvæ latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet.*  
(Cæs. G. 6. 24.)

*Continued on p. 63.*

(d) *Person interested in a statement*<sup>1</sup>: only personal pronouns in lively, often in ironical, expressions. (Dativus ethicus.) 1150

Hæc vobis illorum per biduum militia fuit. (L. 22. 60, § 25.)

Ecce tibi qui rex populi Romani esse concupiverit. (C. Off. 3. 21.)

At tibi repente venit ad me Caninius mane. (C. Fam. 9. 2.)

Pulset tum mihi lictorem, qui sciet jus de tergo vitæque sua penes unum illum esse, cujus majestatem violarit. (L. 2. 29.)

Quid mihi Celsus agit? (Hor. E. 1. 3. 15.)

Nil moror mi istiusmodi clientes. (Plaut. Most. 746.)

(e) *Person possessing*<sup>2</sup>: with verb of being.

1152

(The dative is used when the gist of the question relates to the thing possessed: the genitive (§ 1282) when it relates to the possessor.)

Semper in civitate, quibus opes nullæ sunt, bonis invident.

(Sall. C. 37.)

Non quæro unde hæc habueris, sed quo tantum tibi opus fuerit.

(C. Verr. 2. 74.)

Quid est jam non modo pudori, probitati, virtuti, rectis studiis, bonis artibus, sed omnino libertati ac saluti loci? (C. Fam. 5. 16.)

Res est omnis in hac causa nobis cum Clodia. (C. Cæl. 13.)

Quid huic abest nisi res et virtus? (C. Or. 2. 70.)

Dide ac dissice: per me licebit: si egebis, tibi dolebit: mihi sat est, qui ætatis quod reliquum est oblectem meæ. (C. Cæl. 3.)

Sed quis cenantibus una, Fundani, pulchre<sup>3</sup> fuerit tibi, nosse laboro.

(Hor. S. 2. 8. 19.)

Quibus bellum volentibus<sup>4</sup> erat, probabant exemplum. (Tac. Agr. 18.)

Martis vero signum quo mihi pacis auctori? (C. Fam. 7. 24.)

Væ victis. Hei mihi.

(f) *The dative is often so closely connected in meaning with a noun in the sentence, that a genitive*<sup>5</sup> *might have been expected. Common in poets, Livy, and Tacitus.* 1154

L. Mescinius heres est M. Mindio fratri suo. (C. Fam. 13. 26.)

Homini ego isti talos suffringi volo. (Pl. Rud. 1059.)

Olli dura quies oculos et ferreus urguet somnus. (Verg. A. 10. 745.)

Puero dormienti, cui Servio Tullio fuit nomen, caput arsisse ferunt.

(L. 1. 39.)

Militanti in Hispania pater ei moritur. (L. 29. 29.)

Sese omnes flentes Cæsari ad pedes projecerunt. (Cæs. G. 1. 31.)

Continued on p. 64.

<sup>1</sup> *As other examples may be regarded;*

1151

Nam ego hanc machæram mihi consolari volo, ne lamentetur, quia se jam pridem feriatam gestitem. (Pl. Mil. 5.)

Hic mihi quisquam mansuetudinem et misericordiam nominat?

(Sall. C. 52.)

Hic mihi etiam Q. Fufius pacis commoda commemorat. (C. Phil. 8. 4.)

*And similar instances where a recommendation or description of a model is given; e.g.*

Depresso incipiat jam tum mihi taurus aratro ingemere.

(Verg. G. 1. 48.)

Quare ego tibi oratorem sic jam institutam; Sit enim mihi tinctus literis. (C. Or. 2. 20.)

Sed nobis jam paulatim adlescere puer et exire de gremio, et discere serio incipiat. (Quint. 1. 2. § 1; and cf. 1. 11. § 14; 2. 4. § 9; &c.)

Ad illa mihi pro se quisque acriter intendat animum. (L. præf. § 9.)

<sup>2</sup> *The possession of mental qualities is usually denoted by inesse with in repeated (Cic.), or with dative.* 1153

Insit in sermone lepos....In primis provideat ne sermo vitium aliquod indicet inesse in moribus. (C. Off. 1. 37.)

Huic homini non minor vanitas inerat quam audacia. (Sall. C. 23.)

*The use of pronominal adverbs is noticeable here, especially if they were originally datives. (See also § 1171.)*

Dixit se dictatorem L. Quinctium dicturum, ibi animum parem tantæ potestati esse. (L. 4. 18.)

Eo nunc pejus mutata res est, quod istis cum ignavia est scelus.

(L. 1. 47.)

<sup>3</sup> *Similarly melius anno hoc mihi non fuit domi (Pl. Most. 690); non est mi male sed bene ac beate, quod non dispereunt mihi labores (Catull. 14. 10: cf. 23. 15); Perii; animo male fit: contine, quæso, caput (Pl. Rud. 510); male mihi esse malo quam molliter (Sen. Ep. 82. 2); hoc omne quod mihi ægrest evomam (Ter. Hec. 515), &c. Compare also bene habent tibi principia (Ter. Ph. 429).*

<sup>4</sup> *This use of volentibus is a Græcism, and is only found in Sall. J. 84; 100; Liv. 21. 50; Tac. H. 3. 43, Agr. 18. (But also invitis, &c. in Tac. A. 1. 59.) It has however some support in such expressions as patuit quibusdam volentibus fuga, "some who chose had the opportunity of flight." (L. 1. 54.)*

<sup>5</sup> *The difference between the genitive and dative in such expressions is analogous to that between an attributive and predicative adjective.* 1155

*For the genitive compare:*

Heredes Staberi summam incidere sepulcro. (Hor. S. 2. 3. 84, but with heres the genitive of the thing is more common.)

Manlii cuspis super galeam hostis, Mæcii trans cervicem equi elapsa est. (L. 8. 7.)

Continued on p. 65.



Dixit finem<sup>1</sup> venisse Romano imperio. (L. 2. 46.)

Quid modi fiendo quæso, hodie facies? (Pl. Mil. 1311.)

Tribuniciam potestatem munimentum libertati reparabant. (L. 3. 37.)

Solent et subterraneos specus aperire, suffugium hiemi et receptaculum frugibus. (Tac. G. 16.)

Ætolos fortuna sua hortabatur ut confitendo seu culpæ seu errori veniam supplices peterent. (L. 37. 49.)

*The sentences in the following section (§ 1156) also fall under this head.*

(g) *Work contemplated*<sup>2</sup>: chiefly verbal substantives, especially gerundival expressions, dependent mainly on substantives, or cases.

Q. Fabius comitia<sup>3</sup> censoribus creandis habuit. (L. 24. 11.)

Decemviri legibus scribendis. Lex<sup>4</sup> operi faciundo.

His avertendis terroribus in triduum feriæ indictæ. (L. 3. 5.)

Dies composita gerendæ rei est. (L. 25. 16.)

Judicium communi dividundo, familiæ erciscundæ, finium regundorum tale est. (Julian. ap. Dig. 10. 1. 10.)

Receptui<sup>5</sup> signum aut revocationem a bello audire non possumus.

(C. Phil. 13. 7.)

Oleas esui<sup>6</sup> optime condi scribit Cato virides in muria.

(Varr. R. R. 1. 60.)

Ad Sullam nuntiatum mittit, conloquio diem<sup>7</sup> locum<sup>8</sup> tempus<sup>8</sup> ipse deligeret. (Sall. J. 108.)

Munitioni castrorum tempus relinquere volebat. (Cæs. G. 5. 9.)

Hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 29.)

Nolo ego nos hoc prorsum ebibere; nulli rei erimus postea.

(Pl. Stich. 718.)

Solvendo<sup>9</sup> non erat Magius. (C. Att. 13. 10.)

Dedit huic ætas vires onerique ferendo est. (Ov. Am. 3. 6. 21.)

(B) Predicative dative: that which a thing (or person) serves as, or occasions. (See the Preface.)

Usually a semi-abstract substantive<sup>10</sup>, always in the singular number and without any attribute, except sometimes magnus, major, minor, maximus, summus, nullus, tantus, quantus, and (chiefly in Plaut.), bonus. 'In this use the dative approximates to an adjective, the superlative of which is formed by the addition of magnus' &c. (Kühner).

*A personal dative is generally added (as indirect object).*

Continued on p. 66.

<sup>1</sup> Et audaciæ perditorum et nostræ sollicitudinis hic finem reperiemus.  
(C. Fam. 10. 15.)

Quæ mulier non aliquando lugendi modum fecit? (C. Fam. 5. 16.)  
(But also modum aliquem et finem orationi nostræ et criminibus faciamus. C. Verr. 2. 48.)

In urbem compulsi veniam erroris petebant. (L. 38. 18.)

<sup>2</sup> The difference of these datives from those of the Class B, § 1158 1157  
sqq., is shown by the fact that these (in theory at least) are convertible  
with genitives, those with predicative nominatives or accusatives; the  
former express a sphere of operation, the latter express the light in which  
a thing is viewed, or the character which is ascribed to it. Both are  
connected, more or less, with substantives in the sentence; but in the  
former this substantive is rather governing than governed (e.g. dies  
colloquio, a day for a conference, a conference-day); in the latter rather  
governed than governing (e.g. nautis exitio, ruin, or ruinous, to  
sailors).

<sup>3</sup> Extremo prioris anni comitia auguris creandi habita erant.  
(L. 39. 45.)

<sup>4</sup> Legibus prædiorum vendendorum cavetur ut ad sepulchra aditus sit.  
(Pompon. Dig. 47. 12. 5.)

<sup>5</sup> Often without signum, e.g. Quid enim (exercitus), revocante et re-  
ceptui canente senatu, properet dimicare? (C. Phil. 12. 3.)

<sup>6</sup> So Satui semen, cibaria, oleum mutuum dederit nemini. (Cato,  
R. R. 5.)

<sup>7</sup> His certum diem conveniendi dicit. (Cæs. G. 5. 57.)

<sup>8</sup> Nactus locum resecandæ libidinis. (C. Att. 1. 18.)

Datum secreto cum iis colloquendi tempus. (L. 26. 22.)

<sup>9</sup> For genitives see § 1286, and Chap. XIV. Such gerundival gen-  
itives are best translated by 'as a means of,' 'has a tendency to,' the  
datives by 'with a view to,' 'is capable of.'

<sup>10</sup> A personal name or adjective, used predicatively, is put in the 1159  
case of its subject (§§ 1059, 1062), e. g. servus habetur Tiro.

If the character is metaphorical or fictitious, the noun is put in the  
ablative with pro :

e.g. Tu ausus es pro nihilo præ tua præda tot res sanctissimas ducere.  
(C. Verr. 2. 16.)

His sunt arbores pro cubilibus. (Cæs. G. 6. 27.)

Qui sibi me pro deridiculo ac delectamento putat. (Ter. Haut. 952.)

Or in the genitive with loco, numero, with or without in ;

e.g. Ne id quod petat in mercedis potius quam beneficii loco numerare  
videatur. (C. Fam. 2. 6.)

Is tibi parentis numero fuit. (C. Cæcil. 19, and just before, parentis  
loco esse.)

Continued on p. 67.

(a) *With the verb esse.*

1160

Ne quis usurpet illud Cassianum, Cui bono fuerit? Fuit omnibus bono, qui servire nolebant. (C. Phil. 2. 14.)

Nec tamen impedimento<sup>1</sup> id rebus gerendis fuit. (L. 26. 24.)

Cibus illis advorsus famem atque sitim, non lubidini neque luxuriæ erat. (Sall. J. 89 fin.)

Desinant amici ejus ea dictitare quæ detrimento, maculæ, invidiæ, infamiæ nobis omnibus esse possint. (C. Verr. 3. 62.)

Incumbite in studium eloquentiæ, ut et vobis honori<sup>2</sup> et amicis utilitati et reipublicæ emolumento esse possitis. (C. Or. 1. 8.)

Exitio<sup>3</sup> est avidis mare nautis (Hor. Od. 1. 28. 18.)

Singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint relicuis documento<sup>4</sup>.

(Cæs. G. 7. 4.)

Multarum semina rerum esse supra docui quæ sint vitalia nobis, et contra, quæ sint morbo mortique. (Lucr. 6. 1095.)

Genus est lenonium inter homines ut muscæ, culices, cimices, pedesque pulicesque, odio<sup>5</sup> et malo et molestiæ: bono usui<sup>6</sup> estis nulli.

(Pl. Curc. 499.)

Fabia risui fuit sorori miranti ignorare id sororem. (L. 6. 34.)

Eo natus sum ut Jugurthæ scelerum ostentui essem. (Sall. J. 24.)

Ea res nemini unquam fraudi fuit. (C. Clu. 33.)

Fennis mira feritas, foeda paupertas: victui<sup>7</sup> herba, vestitui pelles, cubile humus. (Tac. G. 46.)

Cupis me esse nequam; tamen ero frugi bonæ. (Plaut. Ps. 468.)

Evenit facile, quod dis cordi est. (L. 1. 39.)

(b) *With habere, ducere, dare, &c.; and (but auxilio, præsidio, subsidio only) with verbs of motion, &c.*

1161

Paupertas probro haberi, innocentia pro malivolentia duci cœpit.

(Sall. C. 12.)

Si quis despicatui ducitur, Mysorum ultimus esse dicitur.

(C. Flac. 27.)

Assa caro danda, potui vero pluvialis aqua decocta. (Cels. 4. 19.)

Habere quæstui rempublicam nefarium est. (C. Off. 2. 22.)

Nec habendum est religioni<sup>8</sup> nocentem aliquando defendere. (Ib. 14.)

Quis erit, vitio<sup>9</sup> qui id vortat tibi? (Pl. Epid. 1. 2. 5.)

Virtus sola neque datur dono<sup>10</sup> neque accipitur. (Sall. J. 85, § 38.)

Ita dictu opus est, me mea omnia bona doti<sup>11</sup> dixisse illi.

(Ter. Haut. 942.)

Nuculeum amisi, retinui pigneri putamina. (Pl. Capt. 651.)

Equitatum auxilio Cæsari miserant. (Cæs. G. 1. 18.)

Quinque cohortes castris præsidio relinquit. (Ib. 7. 60.)

C. Cæsar Galliæ provinciæ cum exercitu subsidio profectus est.

(C. Phil. 5. 17.)

Continued on p. 68.

<sup>1</sup> Ne id ipsum impedimentum incepto foret, imperavit, &c. (L. 26. 15.) 116

<sup>2</sup> Idem non adsequi dedecus est nostrum. (C. Att. 7. 2, § 36.)

<sup>3</sup> Idem amor exitium est pecori pecorisque magistro. (Verg. B. 3. 101.)

<sup>4</sup> Turnus sui cuique periculi, si adversatus esset, recens erat documentum. (L. 1. 52.)

<sup>5</sup> Si es odium publicum populi. (C. Vat. 16.)

<sup>6</sup> An quoiquamst usus homini, se ut cruciet? (Ter. Haut. 81.)

<sup>7</sup> Mihi amictui est Scythicum tegimen, calciamentum solorum callum, cubile terra, pulpamentum fames. (C. T. D. 5. 32.)

<sup>8</sup> Collegam suffici censori religio erat. (L. 6. 27.)

Quæ religio C. Mario non fuerat quominus C. Glauciam prætorem occideret, ea nos religione in privato P. Lentulo puniendo liberati sumus. (C. Cat. 3. 6.)

<sup>9</sup> Huc si perveneris, meum vitium fuerit. (C. Ac. 1. 16.)

<sup>10</sup> Cujus rei ergo hanc tabulam donum Jovi dedit. (Inscr. ap. Liv. 41. 28.)

<sup>11</sup> Ille aurum mihi tulit aps te quod darem tuæ gnatæ dotem. (Plaut. Trin. 1143.)

(dotis (cf. § 1304), also in dotem, are often used; e.g.)

Spondeo (meam gnatam uxorem tibi) et mille auri Philippum dotis. (Ib. 1168.)

*A double dative is sometimes found where both are indirect objects, one being a person, the other usually an action or quality.* 1163

Prohibe, si habes qui te audiat, si potest tibi dicto audiens esse ququam. (C. Verr. 1. 44.)

(Audiens is an adjective. Dicto audire is never used, nor is dicto audiens without the verb sum.)

Non est peccato mi ignosci æquom. (Ter. Hec. 737.)

Multum et consules se abstinebant, ne cui in colluvione rerum majestatem suam contumeliæ offerrent. (L. 3. 11.)

Neutiquam officium liberi esse hominis puto, quam is nil mereat, postulare id gratiæ adponi sibi. (Ter. Andr. 331.)

Hoc nostra laus erit inlustrior, quod illi tribuebatur ignaviæ.

(C. Fam. 2. 16. Compare ib. 3. 11. 2. 2.)

Pecunias eis, qui a Verre aliquid mercabantur, fœnori dabat.

(C. Verr. 2. 70.)

(Fœnori or in fœnus dare occurs several times in the Digest. In C. Verr. 3. 72, pecunia fœnore accepta occurs. See also Pl. Most. 532, 602, 917, 1140. Possibly fœnori is a locative. Cf. § 1186.)

Affirmabant mergi freto satius Siciliæ esse quam velut dedi noxæ inimico. (L. 26. 29.)

(Noxa &c. (in Plaut. and Ter. always noxia) is 'a hurt,' 'an injury done;' and this same act regarded from the side of the injured party constitutes a claim for compensation. Hence noxæ dedere 'to give up to the wrong,' i.e. to give up to the injured party in compensation.)

Continued on p. 67.

## CHAPTER X.

## USE OF LOCATIVE AND ABLATIVE CASES.

THE LOCATIVE and ABLATIVE cases express adverbial qualifications referable to the general types of (A) *Place where*, (B) *Instrument*, and (C) *Place whence*<sup>1</sup>.

The locative expressed *place where*, and was applied also by analogy to *time* and *amount*. The uses of the ablative appear to arise from three sources; (1) a case expressing the general notion of an *instrument*; (2) a confusion of the form of this case with that of the locative; (3) a case expressing *place whence*. The result is that the ablative coincides with the locative in some of its uses, but mainly where the notion of instrument could be conceived as present. Any sharp division of the heads of *place where* and *instrument* is therefore impracticable: and some of the usages here referred to *place whence* have points of connexion with those classed under the former heads. See the Preface.

A preposition (*at, in, by, with, from*) is generally required in English translation.

(A) PLACE WHERE. (Locative and Ablative.)

1166

(B) INSTRUMENT. (Ablative.)

N.B. *The locative<sup>2</sup> is distinguishable with certainty from the ablative only in the singular number of -o and -a stems. The use of these stems has therefore been taken as the guide in classing instances as locatives or ablatives.*

1. Place at which<sup>3</sup>. *LOCATIVE*: almost confined to names of towns, or of islands small enough to be considered as one place. Also *humi, domi*, and (in connection with *domi*) *belli, militiæ*; and apparently *animi*, in certain phrases expressing doubt or anxiety. For *ruri, Karthagini, Tiberi* see § 434.

Here also belong the so-called adverbs, *hic, illic, istic* (more rarely *illi, isti*): also *ubi, ibi, &c.* (see Book II. Chap. xv.).

*Arbitrabantur Corinthi et Karthagini non defore qui senatum restituerent.* (C. Agr. 2. 33.)

*Verum esto: negotiari libet: cur non Pergami? Smyrnæ? Trallibus?* (C. Flacc. 29.)

*Cogitandum tibi erat Romæne et domi tuæ, cuicuiusmodi res esset, an Mytilenis aut Rhodi malles vivere.* (C. Fam. 4. 7.)

*Cæsar paucos dies in Asia moratus audiit Pompeium Cypri visum.*

(Cæs. C. 3. 106.)

*Data (sc. epistola) xvi. Kal. Sextilis Thessaloniciæ.* (C. Att. 3. 12.)

*Continued on p. 70.*

<sup>1</sup> These groups are subdivided as follows :

A. PLACE WHERE. B. INSTRUMENT.

1. Place at which.

*Locative*, § 1168. *Ablative*, §§ 1170—1176.

2. (a) Time when.

*Locative*, § 1178. *Ablative*, § 1180.

(b) Time within which. *Ablative*, § 1182.

(c) Time throughout which. *Ablative* (rare), § 1184.

2. Amount at which.

*Locative*, §§ 1186—1194. *Ablative*, (a) Price, penalty.  
(b) Amount of difference.

The remainder have *ablative* only ; viz.

4. (a) Part concerned, §§ 1210—1212.

(b) Means. §§ 1214—1226.

(c) Efficient cause. § 1228.

5. (a) Description. § 1232.

(b) Manner.

(1) With attribute. § 1234.

(2) Without attribute. § 1236.

(c) Attendant circumstances. §§ 1240—1254.

6. Use with prepositions. § 1258.

C. PLACE WHENCE. (*Ablative*.)

1. Place from which movement is made. §§ 1258, 1260.

2. Thing from which separation takes place. § 1262.

3. Origin. § 1264.

4. Standard of comparison. §§ 1266—1272.

5. Use with prepositions. § 1274.

<sup>2</sup> The *locative* was spoken of by old grammarians (cf. Charis. p. 188, <sup>1165</sup> Diom. p. 404, ed. Keil, &c.) as an *adverb*. The *relative* following the *locative* is the *adverb* (*ubi*, *quo*, &c.), not the *adjective*; e. g. *Mortuus Cumis quo se post fractas opes Latinorum contulerat* (L. 2. 21); *never in quas* (but in *quam urbem* is right). Krüger, *Lat. Gr.* § 579.

<sup>3</sup> A *preposition* (with the *ablative*) is required, at least in *prose*, <sup>1167</sup> when the place at which is (1) expressed by a common noun, or name of person, or of house, &c.; e. g.

*Quor sedebas in foro?* (Pl. *Pseud.* 800.)

*Ut in Arcano Quintus maneret dies fecit, ego Aquini; sed prandimus in Arcano.* (C. *Att.* 5. 1.)

*Ego triduum cum Pompeio et apud Pompeium fui.* (C. *Att.* 5. 7.)

*In Lucanis Bruttisque civium Romanorum delectus habebat.*

(Cæs. C. 1. 30.)

(2) *Interior of country, or neighbourhood of town:*

*Hic status rerum in Hispania erat. In Italia Consul Marcellus.*

(L. 27. 1.)

*Ecce litteræ Cæsarem ad Corfinium, Domitium Corfinii cum firmo exercitu.* (C. *Att.* 8. 3, § 7.)

*Lavinus circa Luceriam castra habebat.* (L. 23. 33.)

*Continued on p. 71.*

Ei plerique inermes ex acie fugientes, non prius quam Venusiæ aut Canusii constiterunt. (L. 22. 59, § 10.)

Sunt ista quidem, quæ disputas, difficillima, iter ad superum, navigatio infero, discessus Arpinum, ne hunc fugisse, mansio Formis, ne obtulisse nos gratulationi videamur. (C. Att. 9. 5.)

Debemus patrem familias domi suæ occidere nolle, neque tamen id ipsum abunde. (C. Att. 4. 15.)

Semper ego plebem Romanam militiæ domique colui. (L. 7. 32.)

Atrox discordia domi forisque<sup>1</sup>. (L. 2. 60.)

Quid illam miseram animi<sup>2</sup> excrucias? (Pl. Mil. 1068.)

Qua tu cura sis nescio: ego quidem vehementer animi pendeo.  
(Cæsar. ap. C. Fam. 8. 5.)

Abigam hunc rus: jam dudum aliquid ruri agere arbitror.  
(Ter. Ad. 401.)

Prosternite humi juvenem. (Ov. Met. 5. 197.)

Procubuit terræ<sup>3</sup> mactati more juveni. (Ov. Met. 5. 122.)

**ABLATIVE.** (a) In ordinary prose almost confined to *rure*<sup>1170</sup> (rare except with adjective), *parte*, *regione* (both with adjective or genitive), *loco*, *locis*, *dextra*, *læva*, *medio*, *terra*<sup>4</sup> *marique*; and expressions with *totus*<sup>5</sup> or *medius* as attribute. Names of towns with consonant or *-i* stems are sometimes in the locative, usually in the ablative. (Most words in the plural number are given in the preceding section.)

Bellum terra et mari comparat. (C. Att. 10. 4.)

Natura sic ab iis investigata est, ut nulla pars cælo, mari, terra (ut poetice loquar) prætermisisset. (C. Fin. 5. 4.)

L. Marcio Tarracone, M. Silano Carthagine Nova, quo pedibus ab Tarracone itineribus magnis ierat, relictis, ipse ab Carthagine profectus in Africam trajecit. (L. 28. 17.)

Totis<sup>6</sup> trepidatur castris. (Cæs. G. 6. 37.)

Hoc tu, Q. Fabi, quum victor tota volitaret Italia Hannibal, potuisti præstare. (L. 28. 44.)

Flumen, quod medio oppido fluxerat, extra frequentia tectis loca præterfluebat. (L. 24. 3.)

Seniores medio ædium eburneis sellis sedere. (L. 5. 41.)

Cicatrices advorso corpore possum ostentare. (Sall. J. 85, § 29.)

Tamesis uno omnino loco pedibus transiri potest. (Cæs. G. 5. 18.)

Ad mœnia ipsa Romæ populabundi regione<sup>8</sup> portæ Esquilinæ excessere. (L. 3. 66.)

Continued on p. 72.

(3) *Urbe, oppido, &c. prefixed in apposition. Usually also when it follows:*

Cassius in oppido Antiochiæ cum omni exercitu. (C. Att. 5. 18.)

In oppido Citio est mortuus. (Nep. Cim. 3.)

Athenis, in civitate fracta Macedonum armis, contionari libere ausi sunt homines. (L. 9. 18.)

Milites Albæ constiterunt in urbe opportuna, munita, propinqua.

(C. Phil. 4. 2, and cf. 3. 15.)

Censuit senatus edici in urbe Roma et per totam Italiam edicta mitti.

(L. 89. 14.)

<sup>1</sup> *Foræ (originally openings) was used to denote the world outside: hence (besides foris here) foras, § 1108; foris, § 1260; in opposition to domi, intus, &c. Comp. θύραζε, θύρασι. Thus foras exire, ejici, 'go out of doors,' 'be turned into the road,' scripta foras dare (C. Att. 13. 22), 'to give writings to the world,' justitia foras spectat (C. R. P. 3. 7), 'looks abroad outside of one's self,' foris esse, cenare, 'to be, dine, out,' foris valde plauditur (C. Q. Fr. 2. 6 (8). 1), 'great applause in the world without,' foris sapere (Ter. Haut. 923), 'be wise about other people's concerns,' foris venire (Lucr. 5. 543), 'come from without, from outside.'*

<sup>2</sup> *On animi see § 1321, and comp. Key, Lat. Gr. § 935 n.; Wesenberg, Cic. T. D. 1. 40; Wagner, Pl. Aul. 105.*

<sup>3</sup> *In some places the reading is doubtful between terræ and terra. Vergil in Æn. 11. 87, Sternitur et toto projectus corpore terræ, and Ovid in the passage quoted may have been willing that terræ should be taken for a dative.*

*The locative adverbs are occasionally used of persons and things; 1171 (see also § 1153).*

Subsensi id quoque, illos ibi esse, id agere inter se clanculum.

(Ter. Haut. 471.)

'Ubi fides?' si roges, nil pudet hic, ubi opust: illic, ubi nil opust, ibi verentur. (Ter. Andr. 637.)

'Attende, quæso.' 'Istic sum,' inquit, 'exspectoque quid ad id quod quærebam respondeas.' (C. Fin. 5. 26.)

<sup>4</sup> *On terra see notes to § 1176.*

<sup>5</sup> *But a preposition (in, per) is not uncommon with totus:*

1173

Magni terræ motus in Liguribus Gallia conpluribusque insulis totaque in Italia facti sunt. (C. Div. 1. 35.)

Hic primo sensim tentantium animos sermo per totam civitatem est datus. (L. 2. 2.)

<sup>6</sup> *'In the line' or 'direction of.' Non recta regione ita instituit sed ad lævam flexit (L. 21. 31); declinamus item motus, nec tempore certo nec regione loci certa, sed ubi ipsa tulit mens (Lucr. 2. 260); Hercynia silva recta fluminis Danuvii regione pertinet ad fines Danorum, 'straight along the Danube' (Cæs. G. 6. 25). Cf. Liv. 10. 43; 37. 17; &c. (Verg. A. 7, 215; 9, 885 belong to § 1210.)*

*Continued on p. 78.*



Dextro ipse cornu consistit; sinistro præfecit magistrum equitum.  
(L. 9. 40.)

Pluribus partibus vineæ cœptæ agi. (L. 21. 8.)

Locis impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat. (Cæs. 5. 19.)

Uxorem ferunt partum Romæ edidisse Prisci Tarquinii domo.  
(L. 1. 39.)

Rure meo possum quidvis perferre patique. (Hor. Ep. 1. 15. 17.)

Pectore<sup>1</sup> nil sistere consili quit. (Ter. Ad. 613.)

Ibi ei carpento<sup>2</sup> sedenti cum uxore aquila pilleum aufert. (L. 1. 34.)

Cernis custodia qualis vestibulo sedeat. (Verg. A. 6. 575.)

Octaviæ imagines gestant humeris, spargunt floribus, foroque ac  
templis statuunt. (Tac. A. 14. 61.)

(b) *In metaphorical expressions<sup>3</sup>, esp. loco (locis), numero, principio, initio.*

Veteribus<sup>4</sup> stari malunt. (L. 34. 54.)

De hac re vos consulo, staturus eo, quod plures censueritis.  
(L. 34. 22.)

Illi se iudicum numero<sup>5</sup> haberi volunt. (C. T. D. 1. 41.)

Senatori iussa tria sunt: ut adsit: ut loco<sup>6</sup> dicat, id est rogatus; ut  
modo, ne sit infinitus. (C. Leg. 3. 18.)

Principio<sup>7</sup> nobis in cunctas undique partis nulla est finis.  
(Lucr. 2. 1048.)

Respondit se, quod in nummis haberet, nescire quo loci esset: alios  
non solvere, aliorum diem nondum esse. (C. Att. 8. 10.)

(c) *So also where the place is also the means<sup>8</sup>.*

Conjurant, qui victus acie excessisset, eum ne quis urbe, tecto, mensa,  
lare reciperet<sup>9</sup>. (L. 26. 25.)

De amicitia alio libro<sup>10</sup> dictum est. (C. Off. 2. 9.)

Sublimem medium arripiam et capite in terram statuam.  
(Ter. Ad. 316.)

Equo<sup>11</sup> advectus, delapsus est in flumen: tum repente eodem equo  
adversam ascendit ripam. (C. Div. 1. 28.)

Vix arma humeris<sup>12</sup> gestabant. (L. 27. 48.)

Loquimur de Alexandro nondum merso<sup>13</sup> secundis rebus. (L. 9. 18.)

Quadam epistola me subinvitaras, si memoria<sup>14</sup> tenes, ut ad te scriberem. (C. Fam. 7. 1.)

Ææ artes, quæ conjectura continentur<sup>15</sup> et sunt opinabiles.  
(C. Div. 1. 14.)

*Continued on p. 74.*

<sup>1</sup> *Eum nemo umquam in equo sedentem viderit...Coronam habebat unam in capite, alteram in collo.* (C. Verr. 5. 11.)

<sup>2</sup> *The poets (e.g. Vergil) and Tacitus frequently use such ablatives; e.g. sedet culmine tecti* (Verg. A. 4. 186); *fulva moribundum extendit arena* (A. 5. 374); *tumulum, quo occubat Hector* (Ib. 371); *nebulae campo recumbunt* (G. 1. 401); *luna virgineum suffuderit ore ruborem* (Ib. 430); &c. *Ibi campo aut litore jacentes* (Tac. A. 4. 74); *lateribus aut fronte circumveniebantur* (A. 15. 38); *turrem vicino sitam* (H. 3. 38); *coloniam plano sitam* (Ib. 19); &c. *In some sentences it may be doubtful whether the ablative belongs here or to § 1260; e.g. aridus altis montibus audiri fragor* (Verg. G. 1. 357); *stellas precipites cœlo labi* (Ib. 366); *imbrem surgentem vallibus imis* (Ib. 375); &c.

<sup>3</sup> *A preposition is not uncommon in these metaphorical expressions:* 1175  
e.g.

<sup>4</sup> *Titinius in eo quod ostenderat non stat.* (C. Att. 2. 4.)

<sup>5</sup> *Reductos in hostium numero habuit.* (Cæs. G. 1. 28.)

*Q. Ælius Tubero fuit illo tempore nullo in oratorum numero.*

(C. Brut. 31.)

<sup>6</sup> *Pecuniam in loco neglegere maxumum interdumst lucrum.*

(Ter. Ad. 216.)

<sup>7</sup> *Id faciam quod in principio fieri in omnibus disputationibus oportere censeo.* (C. Or. 1. 48.)

*Dixeram a principio de re publica ut sileremus.* (C. Brut. 42 fin.)

<sup>8</sup> *When the notion of 'means' is not present, the preposition in* 1177  
*is usually found.*

<sup>9</sup> *Recipere, 'receive,' often has in with the accusative, but rarely of purely local relations.*

*Recipe me in tectum.* (Pl. Rud. 574.)

*Ex Latio gentes universæ in civitatem receptæ sunt.* (C. Balb. 13.)

<sup>10</sup> *Where the whole contents of a book are not meant, in is used;*

*e.g. De utilitate stercorandi dixi in eo libro quem de rebus rusticis scripsi.* (C. Sen. 15.)

<sup>11</sup> *With equo in such expressions in is rarely found: (but in equo sedere, ex equo pugnare).*

<sup>12</sup> *Quem ego modo puerum tantillum in manibus gestavi meis.*

(Ter. Ad. 563.)

<sup>13</sup> *Avidius ex insolentia in voluptates se merseant.* (L. 23. 18.)

*Advolabat ad eas aves quæ se in mari mergerent.* (C. N. D. 2. 49.)

<sup>14</sup> *In memoria habeo.* (Ter. And. 40.)

<sup>15</sup> *Common in the legal phrase for 'real property,' quæ solo continentur* (e.g. L. 26. 34; Ulp. Dig. 6. 1. 1). *For the abl. with contentus, constare see § 1216.*

*Continued on p. 75.*

*With verbs of motion, the ablative (often) expresses the road by which.*

Omnibus viis<sup>1</sup> semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat.

(Cæs. G. 5. 19.)

Convocatos milites monuit via omnes irent nec deverti quemquam paterentur. (L. 25. 9.)

Lupus Esquilina porta ingressus, frequentissima parte urbis, quum in forum decurrisset, Tusco vico atque inde Cermalò per portam Capenam prope intactus evaserat. (L. 33. 26.)

Prima luce duabus simul portis eruptionem fecit. (L. 36. 38.)

Frumentum flumine Arare navibus subvexerat. (Cæs. G. 1. 16.)

Tum se ad Caietæ recto fert litore portum. (Verg. A. 6. 900.)

Batonius e navi recta ad me venit domum Ephesi. (C. Att. 6. 8.)

Lælium advenientem salutavit et eos qui una<sup>2</sup> venerant.

(C.R. P. 1. 12.)

Ibi omnibus solemniter peractis, eadem<sup>2</sup> revertens, ad suos rediit.

(L. 5. 46.)

Sí via sit immunita, lex jubet, qua velit, agere jumentum.

(C. Cæcin. 19.)

Ad hæc in novitatem generis originisque, qua falsa, qua<sup>3</sup> vera jacere.

(L. 2. 45.)

## 2. (a) Time when.

*LOCATIVE. This is distinguishable from the ablative only in a few expressions, occurring chiefly in early writers. In other writers also we have pridie, postridie, quotidie, and (though these are perhaps ablatives) vesperi, heri, temperi, luci. (Cf. § 524.)*

Igitur dictatorem Karthaginensium magister equitum monuit: mitte mecum Romam equitatum; die quinti in Capitolio tibi cena cocta erit. (Cato, Orig. ap. Gell. 10. 24<sup>4</sup>.)

Hoc die crastini quom erus resciverit, male castigabit eos exuviis bubulis. (Plaut. Most. 881.)

Cum Caninius ad me pervesperì venisset, et se postridie mane ad te iturum esse dixisset, conscripsi epistolam noctu. (C. Fam. 9. 2.)

Nosti materteræ meæ fundum in Sabinis? Quidni? inquit, ubi æstate diem meridiè<sup>5</sup> dividere soleam, cum eo Reate ex urbe, aut, cum inde venio hieme, noctu ponere castra.

(Varr. R. R. 3. 2. 15.)

*Continued on p. 76.*

<sup>1</sup> *Where the road denotes place merely, the preposition in is used: e.g.* Cornicines in via paribus intervallis dispositos canere jubent.  
(L. 24. 46.)

Jussum templum in Nova via Aio Locutio fieri. (L. 5. 50.)

(*But also without in; e.g.* Romæ signum Martis Appia via sudavit.  
(L. 22. 1. &c.)

So in terra, 'on land;' e.g. et in terra prosperum æque in palatos prædatores prælium fuerat. (L. 10. 2). Compare naves prope terram, exercitum in litore ducebat; audivit classem Punicam stare in ostio fluminis, castraque in ripa posita: tumultus prius in terra et castris quam ad mare et ad naves est ortus. (L. 22. 19, §§ 3, 5, 7).

But terra (cf. § 1170), 'by land,' is common of journeying or of waring with land forces, e.g. breve terra iter eo, brevis navigatio ab Nau-pacto est (L. 26. 26); pedestres inde copias per Bœotiam terra duci jussit, ipse præter terram Atticam navigans, &c. (L. 28. 28). Gnæus Scipio terra, Publius navibus rem gerebat (L. 23. 26).

Here probably belongs vestigiis, e.g. Pergunt hostem vestigiis sequi (L. 9. 45, § 16); In spatio sumus Q. Hortensium ipsius vestigiis per-secuti (C. Brut. 90).

<sup>2</sup> For una opera, eadem opera, see § 1237. So recta perge in exilium (C. Cat. 9) literally refers to place, practically to time ('go straightway'). Compare lex legi non miscetur: utraque sua via it (Sen. Ben. 6. 6).

<sup>3</sup> qua, 'by which way,' 'on which side,' is used as equivalent to et...et in Plautus (Mil. 1113, Trin. 1044), Cicero several times (cf. § 1180), Livy often, and Pliny Ep. 6. 28; ib. 83.

<sup>4</sup> See the whole chapter in Gellius, who also mentions die noni used 1179 by the prætor in announcing the Compitalia; die proximi used by Cato; die pristini used generally; die quinti and die quinte used in Cicero's age and previously, also several times by Augustus in letters. He adds that the final syllable in die in this phrase was short. (Macrobius i. 4. 20 &c. simply copies Gellius.) In Plautus besides Most. l. c. we have Men. 1156 die septimi; mane sane septimi, and Pers. 260.

<sup>5</sup> Meridie is for mediū die (cf. C. Or. 47). Probably meridiēs as a subst. is derived from it. (But see § 988.)

Advorsum veniri mihi ad Philolachem volo temperi<sup>1</sup>.

(Pl. *Most.* 313.)

Cotidie vel potius in dies singulos breviores litteras ad te scribo.

(C. *Att.* 5. 7.)

Tibi vota quot annis<sup>2</sup> agricolæ facient. (Verg. *B.* 5. 79.)

*ABLATIVE. Generally with adjective.*

1180

Castoris ædes eodem anno idibus Quintilibus<sup>3</sup> dedicata est. Vota erat Latino bello a Postumio dictatore. (L. 2. 42.)

Pyrrhi temporibus jam Apollo versus facere desierat. (C. *Div.* 2. 56.)

Mancipia venibant Saturnalibus tertiis. (C. *Att.* 5. 20.)

Anno trecentesimo altero<sup>4</sup> quam condita Roma est, ab consulibus ad decemviros translatum imperium. (L. 3. 33.)

Confecto negotio bonus augur 'alio die' inquit. (C. *Phil.* 2. 33.)

Eorum adventu equos Germanis distribuit. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 65.)

Afraniæ diu nostrorum impetum sustinuerant, et initio tumultum tenuerant. (Cæs. *C.* 1. 47.)

Arabes campos et montes hieme et æstate<sup>5</sup> peragrant.

(C. *Div.* 1. 42.)

Edoctus interdum tantum obsideri saltum, nocte<sup>6</sup> in sua quemque dilabi tecta, luce prima subiit tumulos. (L. 21. 32.)

Populi sensus maxime theatro et spectaculis perspectus est. Nam gladiatoribus<sup>7</sup> qua dominus qua advocati sibilis conscissi.

(C. *Att.* 2. 19.)

Primo pugnatum est ad Spei æquo Marte. (L. 2. 51.)

Tantum bellum Cn. Pompeius extrema hieme apparavit, ineunte vere suscepit, media æstate confecit. (C. *Man.* 12.)

Hic ille, senecta ætate qui factus puer. (Pl. *Trin.* 43.)

Pythagoras Superbo regnante in Italiam venit. (C. *T. D.* 1. 16.)

Annis fere cccccx post Romam conditam Livius fabulam dedit, C. Claudio, Cæci filio, M. Tuditano consulibus<sup>8</sup>, anno antenatum Ennium. (*Ib.* 1. 1.)

(b) Time in the course of which<sup>9</sup>.

1182

Tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis. (Cæs. *G.* 6. 35.)

Ergo his annis quadringentis Romæ rex erat? (C. *R. P.* 1. 37.)

Respondit illud argentum se paucis illis diebus misisse Lilybæum.

(C. *Verr.* 4. 18.)

*Continued on p. 78.*

<sup>1</sup> In tempore ad eam veni. (Ter. Haut. 364. cf. L. 25. 31). So in ipso tempore, 'at the nick of time.'

Satis erat dierum, ut Puteolos excurrere possem et ad tempus redire. (C. Att. 13. 45.)

<sup>2</sup> Quot mensibus also is found in Cato, R.R. 43; quotquot mensibus, quotquot annis, Varr. R. R. 3. 7. 5; L. L. 5, §§ 37, 39, 47; quot Kalendis in Pl. Stich. 60. And see Ulpian, Dig. 36. 2. 12. (For the use of the relative comp. quam primum, cum maxime.)

<sup>3</sup> See App. D. xv. (Vol. I. p. 454).

<sup>4</sup> Also post (ante) trecentessimum alterum annum.

1181

Dixit Clodius periturum Milonem triduo: post diem tertium gesta res est, quam dixerat. (C. Mil. 16.)

A preposition is used in the expression for 'at present.'

Cæsar satis habebat in præsentia hostem rapinis prohibere.

(Cæs. G. 1. 15.)

<sup>5</sup> So vere et autumno (Plin. 2, § 136). Also verno arare incipito (Cato, R.R. 50; cf. ib. 54; Plin. 19, § 95); æstivo, diem si non diffinderem meo insititio somno meridie, vivere non possem. (Varr. R. R. 1. 2, § 5.)

<sup>6</sup> Nocte dieque, 'by night and day' (Ov. Met. 4. 260; Cels. 4. 6. (3), &c.); with no practical difference, dies noctesque, noctes ac dies, &c., 'whole nights and days.' So the abl. in later writers, e.g. Quint. 6. proem. § 2, id agentem diebus ac noctibus. Diem ac noctem (singular) is 'for one day and night,' e.g. L. 35. 40, § 8; and though sometimes found in the MSS. for die ac nocte, should, as Madvig (ad Liv. xxxiii. 17, § 7) thinks, be corrected.

<sup>7</sup> So has orationes ego scripsi ludis et feriis, ne omnino umquam essem otiosus (C. Planc. 27). Cf. C. Phil. 9. 7, § 16.

<sup>8</sup> For the consuls as a mere note of the year, comp. C. Verr. 2. 76: Intelligetis illa tempora cum societatis tabulis, non solum consulibus verum etiam mensibus convenire. (For these ablatives, cf. § 1210.) Ea quæ secuta est hieme, qui fuit annus Gneo Pompeio Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Rhenum transierunt. (Cæs. G. 4. 1.)

<sup>9</sup> A similar meaning is expressed by prepositions:

1183

Lucilius in hora sæpe ducentos versus dictabat. (Hor. S. 1. 49.)

Decrevire uti in diebus proxumis decem Italia decederent.

(Sall. J. 28.)

Ferme in diebus paucis quibus hæc acta sunt Chrysis moritur.

(Ter. And. 104.)

Continued on p. 79.

Item reliquis itineribus nonnullæ cohortes in agmen Cæsaris incidunt. (Cæs. C. 1. 24.)

Quatriduo, quo hæc gesta sunt, res ad Chrysogonum in castra L. Sullæ Volaterras defertur. (C. Rosc. Am. 7.)

Si debuisset, Sexte, petisses statim; si non statim, paulo quidem post; si non paulo, at aliquanto: sex quidem illis mensibus profecto; anno vertente sine controversia. (C. Quint. 12.)

Ita nocte ac die bina castra hostium expugnata, ductu L. Marcii. (L. 25. 39.)

Ita multorum mensium labor hostium perfidia et vi tempestatis puncto temporis interiit. (Cæs. C. 2. 14.)

Nihil me existimaris usu didicisse, nisi brevi tempore desiderari nostra illa tempora videris. (C. Att. 2. 9.)

Fretum ipsum Euripi non septies die, sicut fama fert, temporibus statis reciprocatur. (L. 28. 6.)

S. Roscius Romam multis annis<sup>1</sup> non venit. (C. Rosc. Am. 27.)

(c) Time throughout which<sup>2</sup>: rare except in post-Augustan writers<sup>3</sup>.

Nostri quinque horis prælium sustinuerunt. (Cæs. C. 1. 47.)

Octoginta annis vixit...Quid quæris quamdiu vixerit?  
(Sen. Ep. 93, § 3, 5.)

Piso biduo duabusque noctibus perpotationem continuavit apud Tiberium. (Plin. 14, § 145.)

### 3. Amount at which.

1186

**LOCATIVE<sup>4</sup>.** *In expressions of value, qualifying verbs.*

(The genitives pluris, minoris (rarely others), are used in the same sense, apparently by a false analogy.)

Tanti, quanti (and compounds), pluris, minoris, are used also to express price with verbs of selling, &c.

Sume hoc ptisanarium oryzzæ. Quanti emptæ? Parvo. Quanti ergo? Octussibus. (Hor. S. 2. 3. 156.)

Quis vestrum igitur nescit quanti hæc æstimentur? In auctione signum æneum non maximum HS XL milibus venire non vidimus? Quid? si velim nominare homines, qui aut non minoris aut etiam pluris emerint, nonne possum? (C. Ferr. 4. 7.)

Me a te plurimi fieri sentio. (C. Fin. 13. 4.)

Pauci sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi. (C. Off. 1. 22.)

Continued on p. 80.

Nos hic te ad mensem Januarium expectamus. (C. Att. 1. 8.) 'By January.'

Nuper intra decem annos C. Mænius dictator dictatura se abdicavit. (L. 9. 34.)

Nulla abs te per hos dies epistola inanis aliqua re utili et suavi venit. (C. Att. 2. 8.)

<sup>1</sup> Nævius inter tot annos ne appellavit quidem Quinctium. (C. Quint. 14.)

<sup>2</sup> The accusative is regularly used of time throughout which; 1185  
cf. § 1090.

<sup>3</sup> Some instances of the ablative are however found in Cicero :  
Negari non potest multis sæclis verax fuisse id oraculum. (C. Div. 1. 19.)

Scriptum a discipulo ejus Posidonio est, triginta annis vixisse Panætium postea quam illos libros edidisset. (C. Off. 3. 2.)

So Verr. 2. 25, § 62. And comp. Quintilian's story of Cicero's jest (6. 3, § 73).

Cicero, Fabia Dolabellæ dicente triginta se annos habere, 'verum est,' inquit, 'nam hoc illam jam viginti annis audio.'

<sup>4</sup> The words so used are tanti, tantidem, quanti, quantivis, quanti- 1187  
cumque, quantiquanti, magni, permagni, maximi, multi (Cato, Frag.), plurimi, parvi, minumi, nihili; also, with negative, flocci (twice also without negative), nauci, pili, terunci; and the genitives pluris, minoris, majoris (Phædr.), hujus (Ter. once), assis, unius assis (Catull.), decussis (Stat.), centussis (Varr.).

Æqui boni facere, boni consulere, facere, are also apparently referable here. See § 1191. Possibly also fœnori argentum dare, § 1163.

Charisius says: Plure aut minore emptum antiqui dicebant: Cicero 'plure venit;' et Lucilius, 'plure foras vendunt.' Sed consuetudo pluris et minoris dicit, p. 109, ed. Keil. Similarly where Festus wrote centusibus, decusibus (cf. Hor. l.c.), Paulus wrote centussis, decussis (pp. 2, 37, 24, ed. Müll.).

Occasionally pretii is added, but only when dependent on a substantive, or the verb esse, and thus referable to § 1308. Comp. Neque histriorem ullum neque pluris preti cocom quam vilicium habes. (Sall. J. 85, § 39.) Pluris pretii also in Varr. R. R. 1. 7. 4; Marcell. ap. Dig. 12. 6. 26 § 5; and (in MSS.) in Pl. Bac. 630.

Continued on p. 81.



Judices rempublicam flocci non faciunt. (C. Fam. 4. 5.)

Tempta Chrysogonus quanti doceat. (Juv. 7. 176.)

Pater id nili<sup>1</sup> pendit. (Ter. Ad. 452.)

Neque ridiculos jam terunci faciunt. (Pl. Capt. 477.)

Rumores senum severiorum omnes unius æstimemus assis.

(Catul. 5. 3.)

Quid tua, malum, id refert<sup>2</sup>? CH. Magni. (Ter. Phorm. 723.) <sup>1188</sup>

Magni sua putabant interesse, publice potius quamvis magno emi decumas, quam in aliquem istius emissarium inciderent.

(C. Verr. 3. 42.)

Ambulatiuncula dimidio minoris constabit. (C. Att. 13. 29.)

Nulla pestis humano generi pluris stetit ira. (Sen. Ir. 1. 2.)

Tranquillissimus animus meus, qui totum istuc æqui boni facit<sup>3</sup>.

(C. Att. 7. 7.)

Tu quoque non melius, quam sunt mea tempora, carmen consule, Roma, boni<sup>4</sup>. (Ov. Tr. 4. 1. 106.)

Qui servum servamve alienum alienamve quadrupedem vel pecudem injuria occiderit, quanti id in eo anno plurimi fuit, tantum æs dare domino damnas esto. (Lex Aquilia ap. Dig. 9. 2. 2.) <sup>1190</sup>

Majores nostri in legibus posiverunt furem dupli condemnari<sup>5</sup>, fæneratorem quadrupli. (Cato, R. R. pr.)

Clientes responderunt se collaturos quanti damnatus esset... Absens quindecim millibus gravis æris damnatur. (L. 5. 32.)

Cedo mihi unum ex triennio præturæ tuæ, qui octupli damnatus sit. (C. Verr. 3. 12.)

Non putavit esse tanti<sup>6</sup> hereditatem, ut de civitate in dubium veniret. <sup>1192</sup>

(C. Cæc. 7.)

Tanti non fuit Arsacem capere, ut earum rerum, quæ hic gestæ sunt, spectaculo careres. (Cæc. ap. C. Fam. 8. 14.)

Est mihi tanti, Quirites, hujus invidiæ tempestatem subire, dum modo a vobis hujus horribilis belli periculum depellatur.

(C. Cat. 2. 7.)

Nihili<sup>7</sup> and (in Plautus) trioboli are found qualifying a substantive: <sup>1194</sup>

Ego me curo, equum Staius, nihili servus. (ap. Gell. 4. 20.)

Continued on p. 82.

<sup>1</sup> Pro nihilo is not uncommon:

Tu ausus es pro nihilo præ tua præda tot res sanctissimas ducere.  
(C. Verr. 2. 16.)

<sup>2</sup> With re fert, interest are found tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, 1185 parvi, pluris. But the adverbial accusative is more common with both; e.g. quid, quidquam, nihil, tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, minus, minimum, &c. So also are used magis, maxime, magnopere, quanto opere, vehementer.

(For meā, ejus see § 1285.)

<sup>3</sup> Æqui boni facere, 'to take in good part,' found also in Ter. 1191 Haut. 787; Liv. 34. 22, appears to be strictly 'to value at a fair and reasonable price.' Æqui istuc faciam (Pl. Mil. 784) 'It is all the same to me.'

<sup>4</sup> Boni consulere, 'to view favourably,' 'be contented with,' is found as early as in Cato (ap. Gell. 10. 3, § 17); Varr. L. L. 7. 4; also in Ov. Pont. 3. 8. 24; Trist. 1. 1; Sen. Ben. 1. 8; Dial. 1. 2; 11. 10 § 6; Ep. 75. 6; 88. 17; 107. 10; Plin. 8 § 44; 83 § 4; Plin. Ep. 7. 12; Quint. 6, proem. § 16. It is explained by Quintilian (1. 6, § 32), as equivalent to bonum judicare. Its origin is obscure. If it belongs here, it must have meant originally, 'to consider (to be) at a fair price.' Compare however lucri facere &c. § 1306.

<sup>5</sup> On other cases and expressions with damnare, &c. see § 1200 and notes; and § 1324 and notes.

<sup>6</sup> The subject to est tanti is properly (as in Cæc. l. c.) the prize to 1193 be won; then (as in Cal. l. c.) the action of winning; lastly (as in C. Cat. l. c.), the risk to be undergone. (Madvig, Opusc. II. 188.)

<sup>7</sup> Homo, &c. nihili was a common expression. See Varr. L. L. 9. 1195 § 54. Pl. Truc. 2. 3. 12; Bacch. 1188; Stich. 189 (nihili verbum). In Cis. (T. D. 3. 8) it is contrasted with homo frugi.

Continued on p. 83.

*ABLATIVE*<sup>1</sup>. (a) Price<sup>2</sup>, cost, penalty: *also after dignus*. 1196  
(Compare also § 1218, and for penalty, §§ 1324, 1325.)

In Sicilia summum ternis HS tritici modius erat. (C. *Verr.* 3. 81.)

Omnia vœnibunt, quiqui licebunt, præsenti pecunia.

(Plaut. *Men.* 1159.)

Indica minumo daturus qui sis (hanc servam), qui duci queat.

(Pl. *Pers.* 590.)

Quid agas? nisi ut te redimas captum quam queas minumo: si nequeas paululo, at quanti queas. (Ter. *Andr.* 74.)

Arcem jam scelere emptam Sabini habent. (L. 1. 12.)

Vendidit hic auro patriam; fixit leges pretio atque refixit.

(Verg. *A.* 6. 621.)

Cum privatis non poterat transigi minore pecunia.

(C. *Att.* 4. 16, § 14.)

Quod non opus est, asse carum est. (Cato ap. Sen. *Ep.* 94.)

Conduxit in Palatio non magno domum. (C. *Cœl.* 7.)

1198

Triginta milibus dixistis Cœlium habitare. (C. *Cœl.* 7.)

Athenagoram ducem mercede<sup>3</sup> militantium mittit. (L. 33. 7.)

Vitiis medendi una ratio, si non nummo sed partibus (prædia) locem. (Plin. *Ep.* 9. 37.)

Ecquid me adjuvas, ne gratis reipublicæ serviamus? (C. *Clu.* 26.)

Cum posita esset pecunia apud eas societates unde erat attributa, binis centesimis fœneratus est. (C. *Verr.* 3. 70.)

Pecoris et mancipiorum prædas mutabant cum mercatoribus vino advecticio et aliis talibus. (Sall. *Jug.* 44.)

Multi leve compendium fraude maxima commutarunt. (Corn. 2. 19.)

Nimium risus pretium est, si probitatis impendio constat.

(Quint. 6. 3. 35.)

Edocet quanto detrimento et quot virorum fortium morte necesse sit constare victoriam. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 19.)

Magno illi ea cunctatio stetit. (L. 2. 36.)

Plurimi animos quasi capite<sup>4</sup> damnatos morte multant.

1200

(C. *T. D.* 1. 22.)

Omne humanum genus morte damnatum est. (Sen. *Ep.* 71. 15.)

Frusinates tertia parte agri damnati. (L. 10. 1.)

Idem fecit L. Philippus, vir patre, avo, majoribusque dignissimus<sup>5</sup>. 1202

(C. *Phil.* 3. 10.)

Vox populi Romani majestate indigna. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 17.)

Haud equidem tali me dignor honore. (Verg. *A.* 1. 335.)

*Continued on p. 84.*

<sup>1</sup> *The adjectival words so used substantively are magno, permagno, plurimo, parvo, minimo, paululo, nimio, istoc, vili. Similarly floceo (Plaut. fragm.), nauco (Næv.), asse, talentis, argento, &c. We have also bene emere, 'to make a good purchase,' male, melius, care emere, vendere, &c. Of verbs of valuing aestimare is found with the ablative as well as with the locative.*

<sup>2</sup> *So far as price denotes the amount at which a thing is valued, it belongs to this section (§ 1196); so far as it denotes the means by which a thing is obtained, it may strictly belong to § 1218.*

<sup>3</sup> *So mercede conducere (L. 34. 17); arcessi (Cæs. G. 1. 31); docere (C. Or. 1. 28).*

<sup>4</sup> *The penalty is in old formulæ often expressed in the accusative; e.g. Quanti ea res erit, tantam pecuniam iudex Numerium Negidium Aulo Agerio condemnato. (Gai. 4. 47.) Possibly this may have sprung from an older form, dare damnas esto. For quanti damnatus see § 1190.*

*On the use of capitis, &c. e.g. Capitis absolutus, morte multatus est (Nep. Mil. 7), see § 1325.*

*The creditor in whose favour judgment was pronounced on another is in set legal forms put in the dative; e.g. Iudex Numerium Negidium Aulo Agerio sestertium x millia condemna. (Comp. Gai. 4. 43; Lex Rubr. § 27.) Hence such expressions in the poets as*

*Se quisque videbat implicitum morbo, morti damnatus ut esset.*  
(Lucr. 6. 1232.)

*Ilion mihi castæque damnatam Minervæ.* (Hor. Od. 3. 3. 23.)

*Stygioque caput damnaverat Orco.* (Verg. A. 4. 699.)

*Nec mea vos uni damnat censura puellæ.* (Ov. A.A. 2. 387.)

*In prose ad with the accusative is used of the penalty (strictly, the place of punishment):*

*Multos honesti ordinis ad metalla et munitiones viarum aut ad bestias condemnavit.* (Suet. Cal. 27.)

<sup>5</sup> *In the early language a neut. acc. adj. (cf. § 1094) is occasionally found qualifying dignus; e.g.*

*Di tibi omnes id quod es dignus dunt.* (Ter. Ph. 519.)

*So also a genitive in the poets; very rarely in prose:*

*Descendam magnorum haud umquam indignus avorum.*  
(Verg. A. 12. 649.)

*Suscipe curam et cogitationem dignissimam tuæ virtutis.*  
(Balb. ap. C. Att. 8. 15 A.)

*In Plautus, Mil. 619, decorus, and in Rud. 47, Bacch. 488, æquom, are used like dignus with an ablative.*

*Continued on p. 85.*

(b) Amount of difference<sup>1</sup>: *with adjectives in comparative or superlative degree; ante, post, &c. Also with distare, abesse.*

Nonnumquam uno die longiorem mensem faciunt aut biduo.

(C. Verr. 2. 52.)

Altitudo muri l. cubitorum eminet spatio: turres denis pedibus quam murus altiores sunt. (Curt. 5. 1. 26.)

Legem una plures tribus antiquarunt, quam jusserunt. (L. 5. 30.)

Perii hercle; uno Gelasimo minus est quam dudum fuit.

(Pl. Stich. 498.)

Ille uno vitio minus vitiosus, quod iners, quod somni plenus.

(C. Att. 1. 14. § 6.)

Dente si nigro fieres vel uno turpior ungui, crederem.

(Hor. Od. 2. 8. 3.)

Sapientium vita omnibus partibus plus habet boni quam mali.

(C. Fin. 5. 31.)

Multis partibus sol major est quam terra. (C. Acad. 2. 36.)

Mihi semper frequens conspectus vester multo jucundissimus.

(C. Man. 1. 1.)

Ego sum in usu factus nimio nequior. (Pl. Most. 145.)

Quo plures erant Veientes, eo major<sup>2</sup> cædes fuit. (L. 2. 51.)

Impendio<sup>3</sup> magis animus gaudebat mihi. (Ter. Eun. 587.)

Reperietis quinquens tanto amplius (frumenti), quam quantum in cellam sumere ei licitum sit, istum civitatibus imperasse.

(C. Verr. 3. 97.)

Ei rei operam dare te fuerat aliquanto æquius. (Pl. Trin. 119.)

Minus dolendum fuit re non perfecta, puniendum certe nihil minus. (C. Mil. 7.)

Tanto ille superiores vicerat, quanto tu omnibus præstitisti.

(C. Deiot. 4.)

Paulo supra hanc memoriam. (Cæs. G. 6. 19.)

Voverat ædem decem annis ante Punicum bellum. (L. 34. 53.)

Interim paucis post diebus<sup>4</sup> fit ab Ubiis certior. (Cæs. G. 6. 10.)

Milibus passuum duobus ultra Cæsarem castra fecit. (Ib. 1. 48.)

Æsculapi templum quinque milibus passuum ab urbe distat<sup>5</sup>.

(L. 45. 28.)

Septimo die certior factus est Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et XX. abesse. (Cæs. G. 1. 41.)

Xenophon a litore Scytharum tridui navigatione insulam esse immensæ magnitudinis tradit. (Plin. 4. § 95.)

*Continued on p. 86.*

<sup>1</sup> *This ablative may be regarded as of an instrumental character.*

*Occasionally the adverbial accusative is used; e. g.*

1203

Habitu formamque viri aliquantum ampliorem augustioremque humana intuetur. (L. 1. 7.)

Quantum juniores patrum plebi se magis insinuabant, eo acrius contra tribuni tendebant. (L. 3. 15.)

Perhibetur et corporis viribus et animi ferocitate tantum ceteris prestitisse. ut, &c. (C. R. P. 2. 2.)

*So also longe;*

Pedibus longe melior Lycus muros tenet. (Verg. A. 9. 556.)

Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit Orgetorix. (Cæs. G. 1. 2.)

Longe absum, audio sero. (C. Fam. 2. 7.)

Unam longe ante alias insignem specie ac pulchritudine raptam ferunt. (L. 1. 9.)

Q. Hortensius M. Crassum longe prestitit. (C. Brut. 64.)

<sup>2</sup> *Tacitus often has a positive in the relative clause with quanto,* 1205  
*e. g. Præcepit clementiam ac justitiam quanto ignara barbaris tanto lætiora capesseret. (A. 12. 11.) If the apodosis is expressed absolutely, tanto, &c. is omitted: e. g. quanto incautius efferverat, pœnitentia patiens tulit absolvi reum. (A. 1. 74.) See Nipperdey, ad A. 1. 68.*

<sup>3</sup> *A colloquial expression, found also in Pl. Aul. 18; Afran. 352; C. Att. 10. 4. § 9. 'A cost more.'*

<sup>4</sup> *Paucas post horas Philippus, appropinquans urbi, sustinuit signa.* 1207  
(L. 31. 24.)

*(For the ordinals, e. g. decimo die ante, &c. see § 1180.)*

*The accusative before ante, post is used in its ordinary sense; e. g. Aliquot annos continuos ante legem Gabiniam populus Romanus magna parte imperii caruit. (C. Man. 18.) So Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Cæsar pro castris suis copias produxit. (Cæs. G. 1. 48.)*

<sup>5</sup> *See also § 1087. For the accusative with abesse, &c. see § 1086. For spatium, intervallo see § 1248.*

*Continued on p. 87.*

4. Part concerned, means, cause<sup>1</sup>; *without requiring* <sup>1208</sup>  
*oblique predicate.* (Comp. § 1230.)

(a) Part concerned<sup>2</sup>, or thing in point of which<sup>3</sup> a term <sup>1210</sup>  
is applied, or an assertion made: *qualifying (chiefly) intransitive verbs*  
*and nouns.*

Qui uri appellantur, sunt magnitudine<sup>4</sup> paulo infra elephantos, specie  
et colore et figura tauri. (Cæs. G. 6. 27.)

Servati consulis decus Cælius ad servum natione Ligurem delegat.  
(L. 21. 46.)

Totidem annis tum mihi ætate præstabat Crassus. (C. Brut. 43.)

Athenis ludis quidam in theatrum grandis natu venit.  
(C. Sen. 18.)

Non tu quidem tota re, sed, quod maximum est, temporibus errasti.  
(C. Phil. 2. 9.)

Quærendum est utrum ista classis cursu et remis an sumptu tantum  
et literis navigarit. (C. Flacc. 14.)

Capti auribus et oculis metu omnes torpere. (L. 21. 58.)

Romani non mentibus solum consipere, sed ne auribus quidem  
atque oculis satis constare poterant. (L. 5. 42.)

Quasi natura et genere dijuncti sint, ita dissident a nobis animo et  
voluntate. (C. Verr. 5. 71.)

Adversus Latinos bellandum erat, lingua moribus armorum genere  
institutis ante omnia militaribus congruentes. (L. 8. 6.)

Alcibiades et Critias grandes erant verbis, crebri sententiis, com-  
pressione rerum breves. (C. Brut. 7.)

Quantus erat Calchas extis, Telamonius armis, Automedon curru,  
tantus amator ego. (Ov. A. A. 2. 737.)

Sero nunc desideratis patriam, deminuti capite, abalienato jure  
civium. (L. 22. 60.)

Coronam auream dictatori, libram pondo<sup>5</sup>, decrevit. (L. 3. 29.)

Servi igitur omnes improbi: nec hoc tam re est quam dictu inopinatum  
ac mirabile. (C. Par. 5. 1.)

Quid est tam jucundum cognitu atque auditu quam sapientibus  
sententiis gravibusque verbis ornata oratio? (C. Or. 1. 8.)

*So also after expressions of plenty and want and verbs of* <sup>1212</sup>  
*deprivation<sup>6</sup>.*

Crassus cum cognomine dives<sup>7</sup>, tum copiis. (C. Off. 2. 16.)

Villa abundat<sup>8</sup> porco, hædo, agno, gallina, lacte, caseo, melle.  
(C. Sen. 16.)

*Continued on p. 88.*

<sup>1</sup> These notions in many instances approach closely to one another, in <sup>1209</sup> other instances are clearly distinguishable. The use of English prepositions has been taken as the chief clue; sentences being referred to (a) where 'in,' 'in point of,' 'as regards;' to (b) where 'by,' 'by means of,' 'with;' to (c) where 'for,' 'from,' 'in consequence of,' are most suitable.

<sup>2</sup> For the occasional use of the simple accusative to denote the part concerned see §§ 1102, 1126; for the locative animi see §§ 1168, 1321; for the poetic and Tacitean use of the genitive to qualify adjectives, see §§ 1320, 1321.

<sup>3</sup> The use of *ad* with *accus.* and *ab* with *ablat.* approaches sometimes to this use of the ablative. But *ad* is used rather of something external regarded as an effect; *ab* of the source; e.g.

(*Ad.*) Nihil mihi *ad* existimationem turpius, nihil *ad* dolorem acerbius, accidere potuit. (*C. Or.* 2. 49.)

Vidi forum comitiumque adornatum *ad* speciem magnifico ornatu, *ad* sensum cogitationemque acerbo et lugubri. (*C. Verr.* 1. 22.)

(*Ab.*) Sumus flagitiose imparati cum a militibus, tum a pecunia. (*O. Att.* 7. 15.)

Proximum regnum, cetera egregium, *ab* una parte haud satis prosperum fuerat, neglectis religionibus. (*L.* 1. 32.)

<sup>4</sup> Similar ablatives are very frequent, esp. in Pliny; e.g. *Creta latitudine nusquam l̄ excedens et circa mediam sui partem maxime patens, longitudine implet oclxx, circuitu dlxxxviii.* (4, § 58.)

<sup>5</sup> *Pondo*, properly as here, 'in weight,' was frequently used without *libra*, e.g. *Quot (sc. librarum) pondo ted esse censes nudum?* (*Pl. Asin.* 299); *auri quinque (sc. libras) pondo abstulit* (*C. Clu.* 64); *sex-tarium aquæ cum dodrante (sc. libræ) pondo diluunt* (*Col.* 12. 12); *in ea fuisse clypeum argenteum pondo centum triginta septem* (*L.* 25. 39); *pateram ex quinque pondo auri factam* (*L.* 27. 4). And observe the strange construction of *auri pondo duo millia septuaginta fuit* (*L.* 26. 14, &c.), where *pondo* = a quantity weighing...pounds.

<sup>6</sup> Some verbs of deprivation, &c. are used both with simple ablative <sup>1211</sup> and with the ablative attended by *ab* or *ex*. Instances of such are referred to § 1262.

The genitive is also found after these expressions (cf. §§ 1334, 1336), especially in the Augustan poets:

<sup>7</sup> *Hospes opum dives rex ibi Battus erat.* (*Ov. Fast.* 3. 570.)

<sup>8</sup> *Ille via altero tanto longiorem habebat anfractum, sed erat copiosa omniumque rerum abundans.* (*Nep. Eum.* 8.)

Continued on p. 89.



Metallis plumbi, ferri, æris, argenti, auri, tota ferme Hispania scatet.  
(Plin. 3. § 30.)

Illi honoribus et rerum gestarum gloria florebant. (C. Or. 1. 1.)

In monte Albano lapidibus<sup>1</sup> pluit. (L. 1. 31.)

Herculis simulacrum multo sudore manavit. (C. Div. 1. 33.)

Orba<sup>2</sup> fide pectora carcer habet. (Ov. Am. 2. 2. 42.)

Huic tradita urbs est, nuda<sup>3</sup> præsidio, referta copiis. (C. Att. 7. 13.)

Magnum opus est, eoque<sup>4</sup> exercitatione non parva. (C. Lel. 5.)

Quam Dionysio erat miserum carere consuetudine amicorum, societate victus, sermone omnino familiari. (C. T. D. 5. 22.)

Equidem mihi videor pro nostra necessitate non labore, non opera, non industria defuisse. (Cæs. ap. Gell. 13. 3.)

Censeo facias, ut supersedeas hoc labore itineris. (C. Fam. 4. 2.)

Med illo auro tanto circumduxit. (Pl. Bac. 311.)

Ariovistus omni Gallia interdixit Romanos. (Cæs. G. 1. 46.)

Leva me hoc onere. (C. Fam. 3. 12.)

P. Lentulum prætura se abdicare<sup>5</sup> coegistis. (C. Cat. 4. 3.)

Hos continuo in itinere adorti omnibus impedimentis exuunt.

(Cæs. G. 7. 42.)

Extorres patria sacrum montem cepistis. (L. 9. 34.)

(b) Means, i.e. instrument<sup>6</sup> or stuff with, or by, which, <sup>1214</sup>  
Chiefly with transitive verbs. (See also §§ 1174, 1176, 1196, 1236.)

Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones, aliæ bestiæ fuga se, aliæ occultatione tutantur. (C. N. D. 2. 50.)

Bello subegit Æquorum gentem. (C. R. P. 2. 20.)

Mirifice capior facetiis, maxime nostratibus. (C. Fam. 9. 15.)

His ego rebus pascor, his delector, his perfruor. (C. Pis. 20.)

Britanni lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestiti.

(Cæs. G. 5. 14.)

Arcem ab ipsa urbe muro et fossa ingenti sæptam videbat, eoque nec vi nec operibus expugnabilem esse. (L. 25. 11.)

Hunc nimis liberum populum libertas ipsa servitute afficit.

(C. R. P. 1. 44.)

Non solum scribam tuum anulo, sed etiam virum fortissimum Q.

Rubrium, excellentem virtute auctoritate copiis, corona et phaleris et torque donasti. (C. Verr. 3. 80.)

Continued on p. 90.

- <sup>1</sup> *The accusative (after pluerē) is more rarely found; e. g.*  
*Lapides pluerē et fulmina jaci de cælo vos portenta putatis.*  
 (L. 28. 27.)
- <sup>2</sup> *The genitive (after orbus) is not frequent; Tellus portenta creavit, orba pedum partim, manuum viduata vicissim. (Lucr. 5. 840.)*
- <sup>3</sup> *Per loca æqualia et nuda gignentium ventus coortus harenam humo excitavit. (Sall. J. 79.)*
- <sup>4</sup> *Oppidum magis opere quam natura munitum erat, nullius idoneæ rei egens, armis virisque opulentum. (Sall. J. 57.)*

<sup>5</sup> *The ablatives after abdicare, exuere, extorris may seem referable to § 1262, but the use of a preposition (ab or ex) with them is quite exceptional, and this makes a marked contrast with the words in that section. The notion is rather that of 'dispossession' than 'motion from.' Abdicare is also used with an acc. of the thing relinquished, and thus means 'resign.'*

<sup>6</sup> *When the instrument is a person, and regarded as such (in which <sup>1213</sup> case the agent ought to be evident), per with accus. is generally used.*

*(Some instances of names of persons, used as instruments, being put in the ablative will be found in § 1220.) Per is also used with things; e. g.*

*Lituo Romulus regiones direxit tum cum urbem condidit. Quis veterum scriptorum non loquitur quæ sit ab Atto Navio per lituum regionum facta descriptio? (C. Div. 1. 17.)*

*Nobilitatem istam vestram plerique oriundi ex Albanis et Sabinis non genere nec sanguine sed per cooptationem in patres habetis.*  
 (L. 4. 4.)

*Torserat senatores per omnia quæ in rerum natura tristissima sunt, fidiculis, talaribus, eculeo, igne, voltu suo. (Sen. Ir. 3. 19.)*

*Occasionally the poets, chiefly Ovid, use ab, where the simple ablative is the proper expression. (Comp. § 1221):*

*Hi jaculo pisces, illi capiuntur ab hamis. (Ov. A. A. 1. 763.)*

*Aderat nulla factus ab arte decor. (Ov. F. 2. 764.)*

*Turben quem celer adueta versat ab arte puer. (Tib. 1. 5. 4.)*

*Continued on p. 91.*

- In virgines deinde respersas matris cruore impetum faciunt, quæ, si <sup>1216</sup>  
effugissent, impleturæ<sup>1</sup> urbem tumultu fuerunt. (Cf. L. 24. 26.)
- Devinctus erat fasciis, et multis medicamentis propter dolorem  
artuum delibutus. (C. Brut. 60.)
- Curionis fuit puro sermone adsuefacta<sup>2</sup> domus. (Ib. 59.)
- Repente est exorta mulieris nefaria libido non solum dedecore  
verum etiam scelere conjuncta<sup>3</sup>. (C. Clu. 5.)
- Alio incredibili scelere hoc scelus cumulasti. (C. Cat. 1. 6.)
- Surrentina vafer miscet<sup>4</sup> fæce Falerna vina. (Hor. S. 2. 4. 55.)
- Sortes Fortunæ monitu pueri manu miscentur atque ducuntur.  
(C. Div. 2. 41.)
- Tempus tribus partibus constat<sup>5</sup>, præterito, præsentī, venturo.  
(Sen. Ep. 124. 7.)
- Facilius phalaras et torques, quicquid auro argentoque constaret,  
quam vallares ac murales coronas dabat. (Suet. Aug. 25.)
- Sorte caret; usura nec ea solida contentus est. (C. Att. 6. 1.)
- Fretus<sup>6</sup> intelligentia vestra brevius dissero. (C. N. D. 1. 19.)
- Tabernacula carbaseis intenta velis collocabat. (C. Verr. 5. 12.)
- Pænula inretitus, ræda impeditus, uxore pæne constrictus erat.  
(C. Mil. 20.)
- Dedistine hoc facto ei gladium, qui se occideret? (Pl. Trin. 129.) <sup>1218</sup>
- Amicos neque armis cogere neque auro parare queas: officio et fide  
pariuntur. (Sall. Jug. 10.)
- Lege Julia civitas est sociis et Latinis data. (C. Balb. 8.)
- Verres pretio, non æquitate, jura discribebat. (C. Verr. 5. 11.)
- Discriptus populus censu ordinibus ætatibus plus adhibet ad suffra-  
gium consilii, quam fuse in tribus convocatus. (C. Leg. 3. 19.)
- Prædibus et prædiis populo cautum est. (C. Verr. 1. 55.)
- Hecato utilitate officium dirigit magis quam humanitate.  
(C. Off. 3. 23.)
- Brevitate epistolæ scire poteris eum valde esse distentum.  
(Balbus apud C. Att. 9. 13 A.)
- Hortatur ne Sidicinorum Campanorumque cladibus Samnitium  
æstimarent virtutem. (L. 7. 32.)
- Non dubitavit vel in foro alea<sup>7</sup> ludere. (C. Phil. 2. 23.)
- Epaminondas fidibus præclare cecinisse dicitur. (C. T. D. 1. 2.)
- Discebant fidibus<sup>8</sup> antiqui. (C. Sen. 8.)

<sup>1</sup> implere, complere, replere, are also used occasionally with genitive of the thing supplied (§ 1334), e.g.

Tu mihi omnes angulos furum implevisti in ædibus misero mihi.

(Pl. Aul. 543.)

Estimationes tuas vendere non potes, neque ollam denariorum implere. (C. Fam. 9. 18.)

<sup>2</sup> i.e. 'Trained in' or 'by.' Adsuefacere, adsuetus, &c. are also used (Liv. Verg.) with dative (i.e. 'used to') without practical difference of meaning: e.g.

Operi aliisque justis militaribus juvenes assuefecit. (L. 24. 48.)

Ex more cui adsueverunt nihil in foro putant esse mutandum.

(Quint. 4. 2. 29.)

<sup>3</sup> Junctus, conjunctus, are also used with dative in like meaning: see § 1142. Compare

Nec insignis improbitas et scelere juncta ridetur. (C. Or. 2. 58.)

Oratorem dico sapientiam junctam habere eloquentiæ. (Ib. 3. 35.)

<sup>4</sup> Miscere is occasionally used with dative in like sense: e.g.

Vulnera supplevit lacrimis fletumque cruori miscet. (Ov. M. 4. 140.)

<sup>5</sup> With constare 'be composed of' Cicero always uses ex; e.g. <sup>1217</sup>

Homo ex animo constat et corpore caduco et infirmo. (N. D. 1. 35.)

With consistere, 'consist in' he uses in. Lucretius has frequently constare re, ex re; consistere re, ex re, once in re: Quintilian has constare re frequently, consistere in re frequently, also consistere re. With contineri 'be contained in,' 'lie in,' the simple ablative is the constant construction. It appears referable to § 1174.

<sup>6</sup> Fretus (lit. 'borne,' from fero? cf. § 692), once or twice in Livy has dative (on analogy of fisus), Multitudo hostium, nulli rei præterquam numero freta, temere prælium iniit. (L. 6. 13.)

<sup>7</sup> Claudius aleam studiosissime ludit. (Suet. Claud. 33.) So usually in Sueton.

<sup>8</sup> For a similar ellipse, compare poscunt majoribus poculis (sc. bibere, C. Verr. 1. 26). In vicarium docendum cures equo armisque (L. 29. 1), docere is probably 'train;' comp. erudire, § 1222; adsuefacta, § 1216.

The instrument as well as the agent after a passive verb is often made the subject to the active;

e.g. A deo mundus regitur, or

Dei providentia mundus regitur,

becomes

Deus mundum regit, or

Dei providentia mundum regit, or

Deus providentia sua mundum regit.

Continued on p. 93.

Agros ereptos reipublicæ turpissimis possessoribus<sup>1</sup> inquinavit. 1220  
(C. Phil. 2. 17.)

Odio premitur omnium generum, maxime testibus cæditur.  
(C. Q. Fr. 3. 3.)

Jacent suis testibus. (C. Mil. 18.)

Ipse uno graditur comitatus Achate. (Verg. A. 1. 312.)

Marcello, quibus consul rem gesserat, legiones decretæ. (L. 27. 7.)

Coactus sum in eadem illa lectica, qua ipse delatus eram, meisque  
lecticariis in urbem eum referre. (Serv. ap. C. Fam. 4. 12.)

Hostem tormentis sagittariisque et funditoribus eminus terrebat.  
(Sall. J. 94.)

Fontei miseriis ac periculis commovetur colonia. (C. Font. 20.) 1222

Quinque omnino Oppianicum, sive imprudentia sive misericordia  
sive aliqua suspitione adducti, absolverunt. (C. Clu. 28.)

Incensa odio pristino, servum in quæstionem postulavit. (Ib. 64.)

Lycurgi leges laboribus erudiunt juventutem, venando currendo  
esuriendo sitiendo alendo æstuando. (C. Tusc. 2. 14.)

Omnis loquendi elegantia augetur legendis oratoribus et poetis.  
(C. Or. 3. 10.)

Quid hoc homine<sup>2</sup> faciatis? (C. Verr. 1. 16.) 1224

Quæsit, si quid Cn. Pompeio factum esset, in quo spem esset  
habitori. (C. Man. 20.)

Majoribus hostiis sacrificarunt. (L. 22. 1.)

Cum faciam vitula pro frugibus, ipse venito. (Verg. B. 3. 77.)

*The ablatives<sup>3</sup> after fungor, 'I busy myself (with),' utor, 'I employ myself (with),' fruor, 'I enjoy myself (with),' potior, 'I make myself powerful (with),' vescor, 'I feed myself (with),' nitior, 'I support myself (with),' usus, opus est, 'there is need of,' 'a work to be done (with),' &c. are originally of this class.*

L. Crassus magnificentissima ædilitate functus est<sup>4</sup>. (C. Off. 2. 16.)

Commoda quibus utimur<sup>5</sup>, lucemque qua fruimur<sup>6</sup>, spiritumque  
quem ducimus, a Jove nobis dari videmus. (C. Rosc. A. 45.)

Utor Pompeio familiarissime. (C. Att. 1. 17.)

Tutius esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, intercluso commeatu, sine ullo  
vulnere victoria potiri<sup>7</sup>. (Cæs. G. 3. 24.)

Lacte, caseo, carne vescor<sup>8</sup>. (C. T. D. 5. 32.)

Stetit soleatus prætor muliercula nixus in litore. (C. Verr. 5. 33.)

Filiam quis habet, pecunia est opus<sup>9</sup>; duas, majore; pluris, majore  
etiam. (C. Par. 6. 1.)

Ad eam rem usus est tua mi opera. (Plaut. Pers. 328.)

Continued on p. 94.

<sup>1</sup> *The person who is the real agent or doer is put in the ablative, 1221 but with ab. So also sometimes a personified thing or quality:*

Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis. (Hor. S. 1. 2. 11.)

Torqueor infesto ne vir ab hoste cadat. (Ov. H. 9. 36.)

Non est autem consentaneum qui metu non frangatur eum frangi cupiditate, nec qui invictum se a labore præstiterit, vinci a voluptate. (C. Off. 1. 20.)

Piget dicere ut vobis animus ab ignavia atque socordia corruptus sit. (Sall. J. 31.)

Visus gemitus est ille dedisse stipes, ut invitis correptus ab ignibus arsit. Inscius atque absens flamma Meleagros ab illa uritur. (Ov. Met. 8. 513.)

<sup>2</sup> *This use with facere is common in Plautus, Terence, and Cicero. 1223 The dative is also used in like meaning: e.g.*

Quom sciverit nos aurum abusos, quid mihi fiet postea? (Pl. Bacc. 360.)

Quid huic tu homini facias? (C. Cæcin. 11.)

<sup>3</sup> *Of these verbs fungor, fruor, utor, potior in the præ-Ciceronian writers, vescor later also, have sometimes a direct object in the accusative. (For genitive after potior, see § 1334):*

<sup>4</sup> Sequere hac me, gnata, ut munus fungaris tuom. (Plaut. Trin. 1.)

Omnia perfunctus vitai præmia marces. (Lucr. 3. 956.)

So Quo religiosius senatoria munera fungerentur, sanxit ut, &c. (Suet. Aug. 35.)

<sup>5</sup> Tantam abusus sum rem patriam. (Pl. Trin. 682.)

Cætera, quæ volumus uti, Græca mercamur fide. (Pl. Asin. 199.)

Ea, quæ fructus cunque es, periire profusa. (Ib. 940.)

Hinc tu nisi malum frunisci nil potes. (Pl. Rud. 1012.)

<sup>7</sup> Ille alter sine labore patria potitur commoda. (Ter. Ad. 871.)

<sup>8</sup> Regnum adeptus cœpit vesci singulas (columbas). (Phædr. 3. 11.)

<sup>9</sup> *Opus is also used as secondary predicate, the thing needed 1225 being the subject: see also §§ 1256, 1257.*

Maritumi omnes milites opus sunt tibi. (Pl. Capt. 160.)

Dux nobis et auctor opus est. (C. Fam. 2. 6.)

*In Livy and later writers the thing needed is occasionally put in the genitive, both with opus and usus:*

Ad consilium pensandum temporis opus esse. (L. 22. 51.)

Si nosse, quid quisque senserit, volet, lectionis opus est.

(Quint. 12. 3. 8.)

Alii offerunt se, si quo usus operæ sit. (L. 26. 9.)

(c) <sup>1</sup>Efficient cause, ground, influence.

1228

Nostri majores Conlatinum innocentem suspicione cognationis expulerunt. (C. R. P. 2. 31.)

Animi vitio id evenit. (C. Fin. 5. 12.)

Multi homines officia deserunt mollitia animi. (Ib. 1. 10.)

Quod benevolentia fit, id odio factum criminarius. (C. Rosc. Am. 15.)

Pæne ille timore ego risu conrui. (C. Q. Fr. 2. 8.)

Levitare armorum et cotidiana exercitatione nihil iis noceri potest.

(Cæs. G. 5. 34.)

Exercitus nostri interitus ferro, fame, frigore, pestilentia.

(C. Pis. 17.)

Sunt autem privata nulla natura, sed aut vetere occupatione, aut victoria, aut lege, pactione, condicione, sorte. (C. Off. 1. 7.)

Civi Romano licet esse Gaditanum sive exilio, sive postliminio sive rejectione hujus civitatis. (C. Balb. 12.)

Tam longo spatio multa hereditatibus, multa emptionibus, multa dotibus tenebantur sine injuria. (C. Off. 2. 23.)

Gubernatoris ars utilitate, non arte, laudatur. (C. Fin. 1. 13.)

Censetur<sup>2</sup> Apona Livio suo tellus. (Mart. 1. 61. 3.)

(Quid) si fructibus et emolumentis et utilitatibus amicitias colemus?

(C. Fin. 2. 26.)

Non possum ei non amicus esse, neque solum tua commendatione sed etiam voluntate ac judicio meo. (C. Fam. 9. 24.)

Si armis aut condicione positis aut defatigatione abjectis aut victoria detractis civitas respiraverit, et dignitate tua frui tibi et fortunis licebit. (C. Fam. 6. 2.)

Ita Marius cupidine atque ira, pessumis consultoribus, grassari.

(Sall. J. 64.)

Mærore et lacrimis consenescebat. (C. Clu. 5.)

Fusi inde Romani, quæ imperio consulis noluerant, suo pavore ac terrore castra repetunt. (L. 34. 47.)

Decius torpidos somno insuper pavore exanimat. (L. 7. 36.)

Timidos insolentia itineris levabat manu. (Sall. J. 94.)

Jungimus hospitio<sup>3</sup> dextras. (Verg. A. 3. 83.)

Scipio affinitate Pompei confidebat<sup>4</sup>. (Cæs. G. 3. 83.)

Cn. Pompeius gratulans meo beneficio patriam se visurum esse dixit. (C. Phil. 2. 5.)

Qui fit, ut omnes sciant? (C. Fin. 2. 4.)

Neque eo nunc dico, quo quicquam illum senserim. (Ter. Haut. 554.)

Macte virtute, milites Romani, este. (L. 7. 36.)

*Continued on p. 96.*

<sup>1</sup> A cause is often expressed by the accusative with ob or propter; a cause of hindrance is often expressed by ablative with præ; e.g.

Ob hoc omnia neglecta apud hostes erant. (L. 25. 37, § 17.)

Proficiscor magno equidem cum dolore, nec tam id propter me aut propter fratrem meum, quorum est jam acta ætas, quam propter pueros. (C. Att. 10. 4, § 5.)

Nec divini humanique juris quicquam præ impotenti ira est servatum. (L. 81. 24.)

*In Livy the ablative is used with (as well as without) ab to denote the cause:*

Ea tum cura maxime intentos habebat Romanos, non ab ira tantum... quam quod, &c. (L. 26. 1.)

[Comp. Miserabantur quod vir talis etiam præcipuum apud hostes supplicium passurus esset ob iram diremptæ pacis. (L. 9. 8.)]

*For such expressions as adductus ira, &c. see § 1222.*

*For mea causa (gratia), Ciceronis causa, &c. see § 1244.*

<sup>2</sup> The ablative with censeri is an old usage. Cf. Gell. 16. 10. Qui nullo aut perquam parvo ære censebantur 'capite censi' vocabantur. The ablative indicated the amount of property at which each citizen was assessed in the censors' books, and may belong to § 1196 or to § 1210. But the metaphorical use seems best referred to this head of cause or ground.

Something similar appears to be the occasional use of scelere and repetundis with damnari, &c. e.g. quo scelere damnatus (C. Phil. 13. 27); scelere convictos (Suet. Ner. 3). Cf. also Lucr. 4. 1183 and Munro's note.

<sup>3</sup> So quam petitis, juncta est mihi fœdere dextra. (Verg. A. 8. 169.)

<sup>4</sup> Fidere, confidere are used alike with abl. ('have confidence on account of,' i.e. 'trust in'), except of personal pronoun; and dat. 'trust to:' diffidere almost always with dative.

Non existimant oportere nimium nos causæ confidere. (C. Fin. 1. 9.)

Dolabella nulla alia confisus urbe, Laodiceam se contulit.

(C. Fam. 12. 14.)

Qui sibi fidit dux regit examen. (Hor. Ep. 1, 19. 22.)

*Continued on p. 97.*



5. Description, manner, circumstances: *usually with* <sup>1230</sup> *noun, participle, or genitive case*<sup>1</sup>, *as oblique predicate.* (Comp. § 1208.)

(a) Description<sup>2</sup>, or characteristic quality; *qualifying* <sup>1232</sup> *the verb esse or substantives.* (Comp. § 1151.)

Qua facie fuit? Rufus quidam, ventriosus, crassis suris, subniger, magno capite, acutis oculis, ore rubicundo, admodum magnis pedibus<sup>3</sup>. (Pl. *Ps.* 1218.)

Ibes sunt aves excelsæ, cruribus rigidis, corneo proceroque rostro. (C. *N. D.* 1. 36.)

Agesilaus statura<sup>4</sup> fuit humili et corpore exiguo et claudus altero pede. (Nep. *Ages.* 8.)

Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque præruptis. (Cæs. *G.* 6. 7.)

Apollonius adfirmabat se omnino nomine<sup>5</sup> illo servum habere neminem. (C. *Verr.* 5. 7.)

Capua litteræ sunt allatæ hoc exemplo. (C. *Att.* 9. 6, § 3.)

Quo genere in primis sensus et membra videmus. (Lucr. 4. 855.)

Accepi tuam epistolam vacillantibus litterulis, nec mirum tam gravi morbo. (C. *Fam.* 16. 15.)

Jubebat secum ipsos cogitare pictam in tabula Voluptatem, pulcherrimo vestitu et ornatu regali, in solio sedentem. (C. *Fin.* 2. 21.)

X. viri maxima potestate<sup>6</sup> sine provocatione creati sunt. (C. *R. P.* 2. 36.)

Sunt solida primordia simplicitate. (Lucr. 2. 157.)

Quamobrem fac animo<sup>7</sup> magno fortique sis. (C. *Fam.* 6. 14.)

Velut ignorantem monet eum, quo statu sit res. (L. 22. 22.)

L. Catilina nobili genere natus, fuit magna vi et animi et corporis sed ingenio malo pravoque. (Sall. *C.* 5.)

Sulpicius fortissimo quodam animi impetu, plenissima et maxima voce, summa contentione corporis et dignitate motus, verborum quoque ea gravitate et copia est, ut unus ad dicendum instructissimus a natura esse videatur. (C. *Or.* 3. 8.)

Iccius Remus summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos. (Cæs. *G.* 2. 6.)

*Continued on p. 98.*

<sup>1</sup> *The genitive is usually a subjective genitive § 1278, never probably an objective genitive.*

<sup>2</sup> *This ablative is closely related to the ablatives of 'circumstance' <sup>1231</sup> and 'manner,' but it has also a connexion with that of 'part concerned' (§ 1210). Compare for 'part concerned.'*

Cupressus satu morosa, fructu supervacua, bacis torva, folio amara, odore violenta, et ne umbra quidem gratioſa, materie rara, ut pæne fruticosi generis, Diti sacra et ideo funebri signo ad domus posita. (Plin. 16, § 139.)

*On the difference between this ablative and the genitive of quality <sup>1233</sup> see § 1309.*

<sup>3</sup> *Compare* Belua multorum es capitem. (Hor. Ep. 1. 1. 76.)

Ingenui vultus puer ingenuique pudoris. (Juv. 11. 154.)

<sup>4</sup> (Bogabant) quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus, præsertim homines tantulæ staturæ, tanti oneris turrim moturos sese confiderent. (Cæs. G. 2. 30.)

<sup>5</sup> Occulte per homines nominis Latini et socios Italicos impedimenta parabant. (Sall. J. 40, where nom. Lat. is a class; cf. § 1309.)

<sup>6</sup> Erit tum consul Hortensius cum summo imperio et potestate, ego autem ædilis. (C. Verr. Act. 1. 13.)

<sup>7</sup> Di bene fecerunt inopis me quodque pusilli finxerunt animi. (Hor. S. 1. 4. 17.)

*Both ablative and genitive are found in the following:*

P. Murena mediocri ingenio sed magno studio rerum veterum, litterarum et studiosus et non imperitus, multæ industriæ et magni laboris fuit. (C. Brut. 67.)

Neque monere te audeo præstanti prudentia virum, nec confirmare maximi animi hominem unumque fortissimum. (C. Fam. 4. 8.)

(b) *Way or manner*<sup>1</sup>: usually with adjectival predicate, except in certain words and occasional expressions.

(1) *With adjectival predicate*<sup>2</sup>.

Deos pura, integra, incorrupta, et mente et voce venerari debemus.

(C. N. D. 2. 28.)

Primo, si placet, Stoicorum more agamus, deinde nostro instituto vagabimur. (C. T. D. 3. 6.)

X viri x tabulas summa æquitate prudentiaque conscripserunt.

(C. R. P. 2. 36.)

Hæc duo Græculi uno nomine appellant. (C. T. D. 2. 15.)

Marius quadrato agmine incedit. (Sall. J. 100.)

Ingenti classe, egregio terrestri exercitu, in Europam Antiochus trajecit. (L. 33. 44.)

His viginti cohortibus, nullo equitatu Hirtius cum tribus Antonii legionibus equitatuque confixit. (C. Phil. 14. 10.)

Hanc igitur partem relictam explebimus nullis adminiculis, sed, ut dicitur, marte nostro. (C. Off. 3. 7.)

Polliceor hoc vobis Quirites, bona fide. (C. Agr. 2. 37.)

Omnibus me ludificatur hic modis. (Pl. Merc. 919.)

Optumis verbis causam explicat. (C. Div. 2. 26.)

(2) *Without adjectival predicate*<sup>3</sup>: mostly either words which may be regarded loosely as instruments or causes, or in certain old phrases. Frequently several such ablatives are used together.

Quod domi te inclusisti, ratione fecisti. (C. Att. 12. 44.)

Ait Aristoteles antea neminem solitum via nec arte, sed adcurate tamen et de scripto plerosque dicere. (C. Brut. 12.)

Cæsar ad opus consuetudine excubabat. (Cæs. G. 7. 24.)

Quid si fraude, si casu Veiis incendium ortum sit? (L. 5. 54.)

Prætor quemadmodum more et exemplo opitulari possit, non habebit? (C. Cæs. 13.)

Tu isti narra omne ordine ut factum siet. (Ter. Eun. 970.)

Si quis testamento se heredem esse arbitraretur, quod tum non exstaret, lege ageret in hereditatem. (C. Verr. 1. 45.)

Agebat auctoritate, agebat consilio, agebat per summum ordinem, agebat exemplo bonorum et fortium civium. (C. Sest. 40.)

Ambiorix copias suas judicione non conduxerit, an tempore exclusus, dubium est. (Cæs. G. 6. 31.)

Nox apud barbaros cantu aut clamore, nostris per iram et minas acta. (Tac. H. 5. 15.)

*Continued on p. 100.*

<sup>1</sup> The preposition *cum* is often used in expressions which come under <sup>1235</sup> the general notion of manner or accompaniment:

1. It must be used to denote (a) the presence of a weapon, &c., e.g. *cum gladio* or *cum magno comprehensus est*;

(b) The presence of a disease or mental quality or armed force, &c. unless an attribute be added, e.g. *cum febris redire domum*, *cum virtute vivere*, *cum cura exponere*, *cum legione venire* (but *dimicare equitatu*, &c. as an instrument);

2. And it may be used even if an attribute is added, e.g. *cum magno studio aliquem adjuvare*, *cum omni equitatu aggredi*.

3. It is not used (a) with substantives which of themselves denote a way or manner, e.g. *more*, *modo*;

Or (b) with expressions of temper or purpose, e.g. *haec mente feci*, *aequo animo fero*;

Or (c) to denote a condition, e.g. *ea lege*, *his conditionibus*;

Or (d) of parts of the body, e.g. *nudo capite*, *promisso capillo incedere*. (Madvig *Lat. Gr.* § 258, *Anm.* 1—5.)

<sup>2</sup> So in the following phrases (besides those in § 1234); *aequo* <sup>1237</sup> *animi* (often); *dolo malo* (*Ter. Eun.* 515; &c.) opposed to *bona fide*; *conceptis verbis* 'in set terms' (*Pl. Ps.* 1056); *dedita opera* (*L.* 2. 9; &c.) 'of set purpose'; *eādem operā* or *eādem only* (*Plaut. Most.* 1039, *Mil.* 303; &c.) 'at the same time' cf. § 1076; *una opera*, 'just as well' (*Pl. Most.* 249; &c.); *magno, summo, tanto, quanto opere*; *summo jure* (*C. Verr.* 5. 2), 'claiming one's full rights'; *meo jure*, 'of my own right'; and others. Compare also *paucis te volo* (*Ter. Andr.* 29); *sed nolo pluribus* (*L.* 34. 32); *rogando alternis suadendoque* (*L.* 2. 2).

<sup>3</sup> Besides the words of which instances are quoted may be mentioned: <sup>1239</sup> *acie* (*L.* 5. 28; &c.), *agmine* (*L.* 23. 26; &c.), *artificio* (*C. Inv.* 1. 14), *astu* (*T. And.* 208), *clamore* (*Liv.*), *consensu* (*L.* 3. 38; &c.), *condicionibus* (*L.* 9. 15; &c.), *contumacia* (*L.* 9. 46), *convivio* (*Tac. A.* 13. 20), *cura et cogitatione* (*C. Inv.* 1. 14), *discursu* (*L.* 23. 16), *dolo* (*Sall. J.* 113; &c.), *equis virisque* (*C. Off.* 3. 33), *fando* (*audire*, &c. 'hear tell' *Pl. Amph.* 588; *C. N. D.* 1. 29; &c.), *forte* (often), *gratiis* (cf. § 546), *injuria* (*C. Lig.* 9; &c.), *interdicto* (*C. Or.* 1. 10), *joco seriove* (*L.* 7. 41; &c.), *joculo* (*Pl. Amph.* 964; &c.), *judicio pati*, 'be defendant in a suit' (*C. Verr.* 2. 24; 3. 28), *jure* (*C. Verr.* 1. 42, and often), *libidine* (*C. Quint.* 4), *modo* (see in § 1172), *moribus* ('by custom, in customary fashion,' *Ter. Haut.* 839, *C. Sest.* 41), *nexu* (*C. Top.* 5; &c.), *numero versuque* (*C. Div.* 2. 57), *occidione* (*occidere*, *Liv.* cf. § 1097), *rivis* (*Verg. A.* 5. 200), *sponte* (*Qv.*, *Tac.*), *statu liber* (probably 'free by appointment,' cf. *Ulp. Fragm.* 2, § 1, 4), *strepitu* (*Sall. J.* 53), *voluntate* (*C. Off.* 1. 9; *L.* 29, 38; &c.). Here also belong the adverbs *rite*, *vulgo*; *qui*, 'how,' *nequiquam*, *ingratis*, *incultu* (*Tac. A.* 4. 46), *injussu* (also *injussu meo*, &c.).

In many such expressions per with the accusative is used:

*Multa dolo, pleraque per vim, audebantur.* (*L.* 39. 8.)

*Ea ex fano per scelus et latrocinium abstulisti.* (*C. Verr.* 1. 21.)

*Auferetur, quod promisi per jocum, a me præmium?* (*Pl. Ps.* 1224.)

Continued on. p. 101.

Summa ope niti decet, ne vitam silentio<sup>1</sup> transeamus veluti pecora.

(Sall. C. 1.)

Curriculo jube in urbem veniat jam semul tecum. (Pl. *Most.* 930.)

Omnem equitatum et cum eis velocissimos pedites cursu tendere ad Capsam jubet. (Sall. J. 91.)

Majore cum fiducia ad alteram turrim aggeremque eruptione pugnaverunt. (Cæs. C. 2. 14.)

Civilis haud porrecto agmine sed cuneis adstitit. (Tac. H. 5. 16.)

Ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus<sup>2</sup> præliantur. (Cæs. G. 4. 33.)

Cæsar hæc de Vercingetorige usu<sup>3</sup> ventura opinione præceperat. 1238

(Cæs. G. 7. 9.)

Docet ita se possedis, ut nec vi nec clam nec precario possederit.

(C. *Cæc.* 32.)

Vitaque mancipio<sup>4</sup> nulli datur, omnibus usu. (Lucr. 3. 971.)

Metu ceteri sacramento<sup>5</sup> dixere. (L. 4. 53.)

Scripsi etiam versibus tris libros de temporibus meis.

(C. *Fam.* 1. 9, § 23.)

Recordatus est vitio sibi tabernaculum captum fuisse, itaque vitio creatos consules esse. (C. *N. D.* 2. 4.)

Ibi miscendo consilium precesque, nunc orabant, nunc monebant, &c. (L. 2. 9.)

(c) Attendant circumstances under which an action takes place, or an assertion is made: (commonly called, at least in some of these uses, 'ablative absolute').

*This ablative may often be translated into English by when, if, although, &c. with finite verb. It is indeed, especially when the oblique predicate is a participle, equivalent to an adverbial sentence.*

(1) With noun (adjective or genitive case) as predicate<sup>6</sup>.

1242

Æstu magno ducebat agmen. (C. *T. D.* 2. 15.)

Inde, austro lenissimo, cælo sereno, nocte illa ac die postero in Italiam ad Hydruntem ludibundi pervenimus. (C. *Fam.* 16. 9.)

Quid hoc populo optineri potest? (C. *Leg.* 3. 16.)

Neque ad mare admovit urbem, quod ei fuit illa manu copiisque facillimum. (C. *R. P.* 2. 3.)

Nulla est altercatio clamoribus umquam habita majoribus.

(C. *Brut.* 44.)

Tabulas in foro summa hominum frequentia exscribo.

(C. *Verr.* 2. 77.)

Hoc videmur esse consecuti, ut ne quid agi cum populo aut salvis auspiciis aut salvis legibus aut denique sine vi posset.

(C. *Fam.* 1. 2.)

*Continued on p. 102.*

<sup>1</sup> Frequent in Livy, &c.; but also cum silentio, Ter. Eun. 44; L. 7. 1247 35, § 1; &c.: auditus est magno silentio (C. Q. F. 2. 1).

<sup>2</sup> So iter pedibus conficitur (C. Vat. 5), metiri pedibus 'by stepping,' (C. Q. F. 3. 1, 2), and other expressions; esp. the phrase for voting on a division in the senate, pedibus ire in eam or ejus sententiam, e.g. L. 5. 9. Similarly manibus ingredi (C. Fin. 5. 12); quadrigis urbem inire (L. 28. 9) and duo nuntii adlati sunt: unus, classe fratrem Epheso Athenas, alter, pedibus per Macedoniam venire (C. Att. 3. 8).

<sup>3</sup> usu venire (lit. 'come in practice,') 'happen,' turn out; a common phrase; e.g. Corn. 2. 5; C. Verr. 5. 39; Or. 1. 40; Off. 3. 3; &c.

<sup>4</sup> Mancipium is, (1) literally, taking by hand, and hence formal acquisition of a physical object, which is equivalent on the side of the purchaser to formal delivery on the side of the vendor. The 'deed of feoffment' (lex mancipii) accompanying this 'livery of seisin,' contained a covenant for quiet enjoyment, and others. (Cf. C. Mur. 2.) It is (2) the thing so transferred; (3) the right over a thing resulting from the transference. Böcking (Pandekten, § 46, Vol. i. p. 178) takes mancipio dare (accipere) as an indirect object in this last sense, 'gives (receives) to ownership.' With this may be compared senori dare, and probably noxæ dedere (§ 1163). Mancipio might be taken in the second sense, as a predicative dative 'give as a piece of property,' comp. dono dare, &c. (§ 1162). But this sense of mancipium is rare, except as another name for a slave (mancipium = a chattel). It seems best to take it in the first sense, 'to give by way of formal seizure,' and compare it with testamento dare, usu capere, and nexu in Cic. Top. 5, abalienatio ejus rei quæ mancipi est aut traditio alteri nexu aut ex jure cessio. This is the oldest sense of mancipium, as in the XII Tables: Cum nexum faciet mancipiumque, uti lingua nuncupasset ita jus esto. (Fest. p. 178, ed. Müller.) And it is so used in the common phrases lex mancipii (see above), res mancipi, 'a thing of handtake,' i.e. a thing which requires solemn delivery to pass the property; the later law used mancipatio in this sense. The third meaning, viz. the right thus acquired, = the freehold, is probably the meaning in C. Fam. 7. 29, where Curius writes to Cicero, sum enim χρήσει μὲν tuus, κτήσεται δὲ Attici nostri; ergo fructus est tuus, mancipium illius. To which Cicero replies (ib. 30) Attici quoniam proprium te esse scribis mancipio et nexu, meum autem usu et fructu, contentus isto sum, where the ablatives appear referable to § 1210 part concerned.

Usu in Lucr. l.c. is probably like mancipio, but it may be dative.

<sup>5</sup> 'To declare by way of pledge,' hence 'to take the military oath;' frequent in Livy; (sacramentum dicere, Cæs. G. 1. 23. 86); also sacramento rogare, of the general putting the oath (L. 49. 26; &c., Cæs. G. 6. 1); adigere (L. 4. 5; &c.), cf. § 1119.

<sup>6</sup> Other phrases besides those in §§ 1244, 1246, are e.g. bono publico, 'to the public weal,' bono reipublicæ suoque (L. 28. 41; 29. 27; &c.); pessimo publico (Varr. R. R. 1. 13, § 7; L. 2. 1); bona venia, 'by good leave' (Ter. Ph. 378; C. Or. 1. 57; &c., also bona cum venia); fide tua, 'on your credit,' or 'responsibility;' (hence fide jubere, jussor, promittere, promissor, 'a surety,' cf. Gal. 3, §§ 92, 116); fide publica dicere, 'to speak on the state's guarantying his safety,' (Sall. C. 46; &c.); &c.

Continued on p. 103.

Helico nequissimus HS c10 dabat, nullo aprico horto, nullo emissario, nulla maceria, nulla casa. (C. Fam. 16. 18.)

Bellum vobis indictum est, magno illorum malo, qui indixere, si viri estis. (L. 2. 38.)

Tuo periculo jubeo libros dari Varroni. (C. Att. 13. 25.)

Plane illuc te ire, nisi tuo magno commodo, nolo. (Ib. 13. 27.)

Quod maxime est utile, id nescio quo pacto etiam decet maxime. (C. Or. 3. 60.)

Hæc nostra vestraque causa dixi. (L. 1. 37.)

Quin ea ego huc præcucurri gratia, ne te opprimeret imprudentem. (Pl. Merc. 223.)

Rescripsit se coronam habuisse honoris Cæsaris causa, posuisse luctus gratia. (C. Att. 14. 19.)

Me nomine negligentiae suspectum tibi esse doleo. (C. Fam. 2. 1.)

Nicias a Dolabella magno opere arcessitus, etsi invito me, tamen eodem me auctore profectus est. (Ib. 13. 28.)

Nunc mittendum est, ut meo jussu cernat. (Ib. 13. 46.)

Vetat Pythagoras injussu imperatoris, id est dei, de præsidio et statione vitæ decedere. (C. Sen. 20.)

Sequanis voluntate Ariovisti reddere obsides licebat. (Cæs. G. 1. 35.)

Supplicatio fuit ob res prospere gestas in Hispania ductu auspicioque Ap. Claudii proconsulis. (L. 41. 28.)

Nil desperandum Teucro duce et auspice Teucro. (Hor. Od. 1. 7. 27.)

Nec vester æqualis Curio, patre mea sententia vel eloquentissimo temporibus illis, quemquam mihi magnopere videtur imitari. (C. Or. 2. 23.)

Judice te non sordidus auctor naturæ verique. (Hor. Od. 1. 28. 14.)

Di te deæque ament vel hujus arbitrato vel meo. (Pl. Pseud. 271.)

Is mille nummum se aureum, meo datu, tibi ferre aibat. (Pl. Trin. 1140.)

P. Clodium meo consilio interfectum esse dixisti. (C. Phil. 2. 9.)

Bruti judicium, pace tua dixerim, longe antepono tuo. (C. T. D. 5. 5.)

Oratorum aut interitu aut discessu aut fuga, primas in causis agebat Hortensius. (C. Brut. 90.)

Hannibal xv ferme milium spatio<sup>1</sup> castra ab Tarento posuit. (L. 25. 9.)

Crasso L. Philippus proximus accedebat sed longo intervallo tamen proximus. (C. Brut. 47.)

Continued on p. 104.

*The subject or object (direct or indirect) of the finite verb is rarely also put in the ablative as subject to an oblique predicate.* 1247

Manlius cæsum Gallum torque spoliavit; not Manlius cæso Gallo torque eum spoliavit; still less Manlius Gallum, cæso eo, torque spol.

*Occasionally however such an ablative clause is made, in order to give it greater distinctness or preserve more clearly the historical order; e.g.*

Vercingetorix, convocatis suis clientibus, facile incendit (*sc. eos*).

(Cæs. G. 7. 4.)

Nemo erit qui credat te invito provinciam tibi esse decretam (*for invito tibi prov. esse deer.*) (C. Phil. 11. 10.)

*Such an ablative is oftener found when the person who is the subject is also expressed in the genitive case:*

Jugurtha fratre meo atque eodem propinquo suo interfecto, primum regnum ejus sceleris sui prædam fecit, post me...extorrem patria efficit. (Sall. J. 14, § 11.)

M. Porcius Cato vivo quoque eo (Africano) allatrare magnitudinem ejus solitus erat. (L. 38. 54.)

*In such sentences as the following the sense requires, or at least is assisted by, the distinctness of the ablative clause:*

Non potes effugere hujus culpæ pœnam te patrono: Marcus est adhibendus. (C. Fam. 16. 26.)

Me duce, ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni. (Ov. Am. 2. 12. 13.)

Acerbum est uri: quanto acerbius, si id te faciente patiaris!

(Sen. Ep. 24. 5.)

Dictatore habente comitia Cæsare, consules creantur Julius Cæsar et P. Servilius. (Cæs. C. 3. 1.)

Profecto in ædis meas me absente neminem volo intromitti.

(Pl. Aul. 98.)

Hic castas duce se jubet esse maritas. (Ov. F. 2. 139.)

Seque arma tenenti ac nondum strato Magnum vicisse negavit.

(Luc. 6. 142.)

Antiphonte neminem unquam melius tullam oravisse capitis causam, cum se ipse defenderet se audiente, locuples auctor scripsit Thucydides. (C. Brut. 12.)

Is se præsentē de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat. (Cæs. G. 1. 58.)

Laudator temporis acti se puero. (Hor. A. P. 173.)

---

<sup>1</sup> Similarly *diverticulo with genitive*, 'so many paces to the side of the road,' e.g. *Tepula concipitur, via Latina, ad x miliarium, diverticulo euntibus ab Roma dextrorsus milium passuum duum.* (Frontin. Aquæd. 8, and often.) *Se cursu diei totius ablatus*, 'a day's journey off.' (Mel. 2. 104.)



(2) *With participle as predicate:*

Senatus haberi mense Februario toto non potest, nisi perfectis aut rejectis legationibus<sup>1</sup>. (C. Fam. 1. 4.)

Testis productus, qui, septem et viginti enumeratis stipendiis, scissa veste, tergum laceratum virgis ostendit<sup>2</sup>. (L. 3. 38.)

Hæc dicente consule<sup>3</sup>, equites circumfunduntur. (L. 10. 36.)

Germani post tergum clamore audito<sup>4</sup>, cum suos interfici viderent, armis abjectis signisque militaribus relictis, se ex castris ejece-  
runt, et cum ad confluentem Mosæ et Rheni pervenissent,  
relicua fuga desperata, magno numero interfecto, relicui se in  
flumen præcipitaverunt. (Cæs. G. 4. 15.)

Verres, quasi præda sibi advecta<sup>5</sup>, non prædonibus captis, siqui  
senes ac deformes erant, eos in hostium numero ducit; qui  
aliquid formæ, ætatis, artificiique habebant, abducit omnes.  
(C. Ferr. 5. 25.)

Antiochus Ephesi securus admodum de bello Romano erat, tanquam  
non transituris in Asiam Romanis<sup>6</sup>. (L. 36. 41.)

Quis est enim, qui nullis officii præceptis tradendis<sup>7</sup> philosophum  
se audeat dicere? (C. Off. 1. 2.)

Accusandis Camillus dis hominibusque senescebat, indignando mi-  
randoque<sup>8</sup>, ubi illi viri essent, qui, &c. (L. 5. 43.)

*So also with opus and usus:*

Opus fuit Hirtio convento<sup>9</sup>. (C. Att. 10. 4.)

Ibo domum ut parentur, quibus paratis opus est<sup>10</sup>. (Pl. Men. 953.)

Obsecro, quid istis (litteris) ad istunc usust conscriptis modum<sup>11</sup>.  
(Pl. Bacc. 749.)

*The perfect participle sometimes and occasionally other adjectives  
have a sentence for subject<sup>12</sup>.*

Consul, statione equitum ad portam posita, edicto que ut, quicun-  
que ad vallum tenderet, pro hoste haberetur, fugientibus ob-  
stitit. (L. 10. 36.)

Hæc tibi dictabam, excepto quod non simul esses, cetera lætus.  
(Hor. Ep. 1. 10. 50.)

Perfecto enim et concluso neque virtutibus neque amicitiiis usquam  
locum esse, si ad voluptatem omnia referantur, nihil præterea  
est magno opere dicendum. (C. Fin. 2. 27.)

Inde ad Pluinnam est progressus, nondum comperto quam regionem  
hostes petissent. (L. 31. 39.)

*Continued on p. 106.*

*These ablative clauses may easily be turned into subordinate, or sometimes into coordinate sentences:*

<sup>1</sup> Nisi perfectæ sint aut rejectæ legationes.

<sup>2</sup> Cum septem et viginti enumerasset stipendia = (se, qui septem et viginti meruisset stipendia, tamen verberatum esse dixit).

<sup>3</sup> Dum hæc dicit consul.

<sup>4</sup> Cum clamor post tergum auditus esset, suos interfici viderent, arma abjecerunt, signa militaria reliquerunt, se ex castris eiecerunt, et cum ad confl. M. et R. pervenissent, reliquam fugam desperaverunt et cum magnus numerus interfectus esset, relicui se in flumen præcipitaverunt.

<sup>5</sup> Quasi præda sibi advecta esset, non prædones capti.

<sup>6</sup> Tanquam si Romani in Asiam non transituri essent.

<sup>7</sup> Tametsi nulla officii præcepta tradat.

<sup>8</sup> Dum indignabatur, mirabaturque.

<sup>9</sup> Oportuit Hirtius conveniretur (Hirtium conveniri).

<sup>10</sup> Quæ parari oportet.

<sup>11</sup> Quid prodest istas ad istunc modum scribere,

Or quid prosunt istæ...scriptæ.

*See also* §§ 1225, 1226, 1253—1256.

*An old idiom had the singular* absente, præsentē, *with a plural* <sup>1251</sup> substantive. *It is mentioned by Nonius* (pp. 76, 154), *but of extant writers only Terence uses it (once).*

Quidem apud forum præsentē testibus mihi vendidit.

(Pompon. ap. Non. p. 154.)

Nescio quid profecto absente nobis turbatumst domi. (Ter. Eun. 649.)

<sup>12</sup> *This usage is found frequently in Livy, Tacitus, and Curtius; twice in Cicero* (Off. 2. 12, Fin. l. c., but cf. also Inv. 2. 10 fin.); *never in Cæsar, Sallust, or Nepos.* (Gossrau, Lat. Gr. § 451.)

Nuntiatum Claudio epulanti perisse Messalinam, non distincto sua an aliena manu. (Tac. *A.* 11. 38.)

Senatus majorum beneficia introspectit, libero, ut quondam, quid firmaret mutaretve. (Tac. *A.* 3. 60.)

*Sometimes the perfect participle stands alone<sup>1</sup>; and this adverbial use is frequent in many adjectives:*

Tribuni militum non loco castris ante capto, non præmunito vallo, nec auspicato nec litato, instruunt aciem. (L. 5. 38.)

Eos sortito in provincias mitti placet. (S. C. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 8. 8.)

Alter alterum nec opinato videbamus. (C. *Fin.* 3. 2.)

Vix tandem magnis Ithaci clamoribus actus composito rumpit vocem. (Verg. *A.* 12. 129.)

Sederunt in tribunali P. Scipionis; lictor apparuit; summoto inceserunt; fasces cum securibus prælati sunt. (L. 28. 27.)

Nec diu certato Tungrorum cohors signa ad civilem transtulit.

(Tac. *H.* 4. 16.)

Multum in vicem disceptato, Monobazus testis iis quæ pepigissent adhibetur. (Tac. *A.* 15. 14.)

Quam nihil festinato nihil præparato fecisse videtur Milo.

(Quint. 4. 2, § 85.)

Tranquillo, ut aiunt, quilibet gubernator est. (Sen. *Ep.* 95, § 34.)

*So also with opus, and (rarely) usus.*

1256

Erat nihil cur properato opus esset. (C. *Mil.* 19.)

Nam priusquam incipias, consulto, et ubi consulueris, mature facto opus est. (Sall. *C.* 1.)

Dubitabat quid facto<sup>2</sup> opus esset. (Ib. 46.)

Citius quod non factost usus fit, quam quod factost opus.

(Pl. *Amph.* 505.)

In arcem transcurso opus est. (Ter. *Hec.* 431.)

6. *With the following prepositions the ablative is used in senses which fall under the general type of place where.*

Coram, cum, in, palam, præ, pro, sub, subter, super; also simul, tenus.

*See the Appendix.*

*Continued on p. 108.*

<sup>1</sup> *This usage passes imperceptibly into a purely adverbial use (cf. § 1253 1299). Thus we have besides the words in the passages quoted: auguratio, inauguratio, consulto (Sall. J. 64), inconsulto, exploratio, (ante exploratio, L. 23, 42), inexploratio, feneratio (Plaut.), intestatio, improviso, optatio, peroptatio, palamfactio (L. 22. 55), permissio (L. 45, 5), tripartitio, &c. Also the less distinctively participial words: certo, cito, haud dubio (L. 28, 7), falso, merito, immerito, manifesto, secreto, subito, tuto; and the adjectival, continuo, assiduo, fortuito, gratuito, necessario, liquido, vero, &c. (§ 511). (Satisfactio, C. Att. 16. 6. 8, belongs to § 1250.)*

<sup>2</sup> *The ordinary usage with opus is either e.g. (I. a) opus est gladius; 1255 or (II. a) opus est gladio (instances in §§ 1225, 1226). If the thing needed is an action, either the infinitive or past participle is used. The infinitive corresponds to usage I. a, the participle to usage II. a; both may be either with a subject (b), or without a subject (c). The supine in -u is also very rarely found (II. cc).*

I. b. Si quid erit, quod te scire opus sit, scribam. (C. Q. F. 2. 9(11).

Themistocles dixit id sciri non opus esse. (C. Off. 3. 11.)

I. c. Quid opus erat de Dionysio tam valde affirmare? (C. Att. 7. 8.)

Quid opus est in hoc philosophari? (C. T. D. 1. 37.)

II. b. Opusne est hac tibi emptā? Dor. Si tibi vñisset opus (I. c), mihi quoque emptāst. (Pl. Pers. 584.) Cf. § 1250.

c. Visost opus, cautost opus. (Pl. Capt. 222.) See also § 1256.

cc. Sed ita dictu opus est. (Ter. Haut. 941.) So Pl. Cist. 1. 1. 113. In C. Inv. 1. 20 the latest editors omit scitu. Any other example?

*Quid opus factu? is frequently found with I.; and with II. a (e.g. Quid opus factu?) being accusative of extent (§ 1094). It is also found with II. c, the two phrases quid opus and opus factu being combined on the analogy of quid opus gladio into quid opus factu, equivalent in meaning to quid opus fieri. Possibly there may have been a desire to avoid the ambiguity of quo (masc.? neut.? adverb?). It is hardly likely that the phrase is a relic of the time when quid was a form of the ablative.*

*Quid opus factu? is common in Plautus and Terence: it is also in Cato ap. Gell. 6 (7), § 14; Lucr. 5. 1053; Sall. C. 46; L. 3. 38; 4. 27; 44. 33; Nep. Eum. 9. So quid tibi quæsitost opus? (Pl. Men. 915). Also quod opus factu, facito ut cogites, Merc. 565; si quid opus factu esset (Cæs. G. 1. 42). Similarly Pl. Amph. 505, Stich. 61, Casin. 3. 3. 24, and quod parato opus est para (Ter. Andr. 523); plus minus, quam opus fuerat dicto, dixeram (Pl. Men. 592). In Cato, R. R. 2, quæ opus sient locato locentur is strange. In Ter. Ad. 740, si illud quod maxime opus est jactu non cadit, the abl. jactu may belong to cadit.*

*With usus we have (besides Pl. Amph. 505; Stich. 57) quod factu usus est, Ter. Ad. 429, Hec. 878, and quod tacito usus est (Pl. Cist. 1. 2. 10); and an anomalous combination in Ter. Hec. 327, Non usus factost mihi nunc hunc intro sequi.*

*Continued on p. 109.*

(C) PLACE WHENCE. (*ABLATIVE.*) See § 1164.

1253

## 1. Place from which movement is made.

*Without a preposition*<sup>1</sup>. In prose this is chiefly confined to the names of towns; smaller islands; domo, rure, humo.

Damaratus fugit Tarquinius Corintho. (C. T. D. 5. 37.)

Omnis hæc classis Alexandria<sup>2</sup>, Colchis, Tyro, Sidone, Arado, Cypri, Pamphylia, Lycia, Rhodo, Chio, Byzantio, Lesbo, Zmyrna, Mileto, Coö ad intercludendos commeatus Italiæ comparatur.  
(C. Att. 9. 9.)

Populus Numam ad regnandum Romam Curibus accivit.  
(C. R. P. 2. 13.)

Ecquam tu advexti tuæ matri ancillam Rhodo. (Pl. Merc. 390.)

Simulacrum Cereris unum e sacrario Catina convellendum auferendumque curavit, alterum autem Henna ex sua sede ac domo sustulit. (C. Verr. 5. 72.)

Qui vero Narbone reditus! (C. Phil. 2. 30.)

Senex heri ea causa rure huc advenit. (Ter. Hec. 190.)

Canusio XIII. Kal. profectus erat Gnæus; hæc autem scribebam pridie Nonas, XIII. die post quam ille Canusio moverat.  
(C. Att. 9. 1.)

Triennio post Ægypto<sup>3</sup> advenio domum. (Pl. Most. 440.)

1260

Interim Drusus rediens Illyrico urbem intravit. (Tac. A. 3. 11.)

Quo tenditis? inquit, Qui genus? unde domo? (Verg. A. 8. 114.)

Hi igitur his majoribus ab alienis potius consilium peterent quam a suis, et foris<sup>4</sup> potius quam domo? (C. Phil. 2. 11.)

Quæcumque foris veniunt inpostaque nobis pondera sunt, lædunt.  
(Lucr. 5. 543.)

Crebri cecidere cælo<sup>5</sup> lapides. (L. 1. 31.)

Eas litteras scribis Lentuli pueris et Equotutico et Brundisio datas<sup>6</sup>.  
(C. Att. 6. 1.)

Nos adhuc Brundisio nihil. Roma scripsit Balbus. (C. Att. 9. 6.)

d. (sc. data epistola) pr. Non. Nov. Brundisio. (C. Fam. 14. 12.)  
Continued on p. 110.

<sup>1</sup> *The bare ablative usually stands in the older prose writers, but 1257 Livy's general habit is to prefix the prep. a.*

<sup>2</sup> *Cæsar uses ex in describing the same fact (but the ex may be caused by Asia Cycladibusque insulis):*

Pompeius annum spatium ad comparandas copias nactus magnum ex Asia Cycladibusque insulis, Corcyra, Athenis, Ponto, Bithynia, Syria, Cilicia, Phœnice, Ægypto classem coegerat. (Cæs. C. 3. 3.)

*A preposition is required (at least in prose) when the place from 1259 which is*

(1) *Expressed by a common noun, or name of person, e.g. a loco deicere, de tribunali citare, ex equis desilire; a Pollione venire.*

(2) *Interior of country or town; e.g. Ex Cypro discedere; or neighbourhood of a town; e.g. Cæsar a Gergovia discessit. (Cæs. G. 7. 59.)*

(3) *Urbe, oppido prefixed in apposition; e.g. Expellitur ex oppido Gergovia. (Cæs. G. 7. 4.) Usually also when the apposition follows; e.g. Genus Tusculo ex clarissimo municipio profectum. (C. Font. 18.) Comp. Fabris undique ex Etruria accitis. (L. 1. 56.)*

(4) *In expressions of mere distance; e.g. tria millia passuum a Roma abesse; or situation; e.g. municipia quæ sunt a Vibone Brundisium. (C. Planc. 41.)*

(5) *Dependent on a substantive (but cf. C. Phil. 2. 80, quoted in § 1258; Att. 7. 24):*

Pestiferum a Brundisio tum M. Antonii reditum timebamus.

(C. Phil. 4. 1.)

Recentissimas a Cybistris te meas litteras habere ais. (C. Att. 6. 1.)

<sup>3</sup> *Quintilian appears to consider the use of a name of a country without a preposition to be barbarous (1. 5. 39).*

<sup>4</sup> *See § 1169.*

<sup>5</sup> *Comp. § 1173 (p. 73).*

<sup>6</sup> *The locative is very commonly used for the date of letters; e.g. a.d. pr. Kal. Mai. Brundisii. (C. Att. 3. 7.)*

*But, when the place is a common noun, ab is used:*

Ab Appii foro, hora quarta. Dederam aliam paulo ante a Tribus Tabernis. (C. Att. 2. 10.)

*Continued on p. 111.*

2. Thing from which separation takes place or exists; <sup>1262</sup> *with verbs<sup>1</sup> of motion, abstinence, &c., especially compounds of ab, de, ex; also with a few adjectives.*

P. Varium pellere possessionibus armis castrisque conatus est.  
(C. Mil. 27.)

Cæsar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in præsentia  
hostem rapinis pabulationibus populationibusque prohibere.  
(Cæs. G. 1. 15.)

Barbari, signa procul conspicati, oppugnatione desistunt.  
(Cæs. G. 6. 39.)

Cæsar re frumentaria adversarios intercluserat. (Cæs. C. 1. 72.)

Eundem vidi postea Velîæ, cedentem Italia, ne qua oreretur belli  
civilis causa propter se. (C. Phil. 10. 4.)

Ostreis et murænis me facile abstinebam. (C. Fam. 7. 26.)

Censores motis senatu adscribebant notam. (L. 39. 42.)

Turpe existimas illum ipsum, quem contra veneris, causa cadere.  
(C. Mur. 4.)

Servi illi de cognatorum sententia manu missi sunt. (C. Cæl. 29.)

Vilicus primus cubitu surgat, postremus cubitum eat.  
(Cato, R. R. 5.)

Exple animum mulieribus teque hoc crimine expedi.  
(Ter. Hec. 755.)

Respublica et milite illic et pecunia vacet. (L. 2. 48.)

L. Brutus civitatem dominatu regio liberavit. (C. Planc. 25.)

Quoi corpore sejunctus dolor absit, mente fruatur jucundo sensu,  
cura semotus metuque. (Lucr. 2. 18.)

Quemadmodum volucris videmus passim ac libere, solutas opere,  
volitare, sic nostri animi gestiunt ac volitare cupiunt, vacui cura  
ac labore. (C. Or. 2. 6.)

Utrumque (sc. vis et fraus) homine alienissimum. (C. Off. 1. 13.)

### 3. Origin<sup>2</sup>.

Datames patre Camisare, natione Care, matre Scythissa natus.  
(Nep. Dat. 1.)

Apollo Jove natus est et Latona. (C. N. D. 3. 23.)

Matre satus terra taurus. (Ov. F. 3. 799.)

Latino Alba ortus, Alba Atys, Atye Capys, Capye Capetus, Capeto  
Tiberinus. (L. 1. 3.)

*Continued on p. 112.*

<sup>1</sup> *The principal simple verbs so used are alienare, arcere, cadere, 1261*  
cedere, cessare, liberare, movere, pellere, temperare,olvere, surgere,  
vacare. *The principal prepositional compounds are* ab, de, ex, -cedere;  
de, e, -gredi; ab, de, -sistere; abesse, abire, abstinere; deicere, de-  
movere, depellere; excludere, evadere; *also* prohibere, intercludere.  
*The adjectives are* alienus, liber, immunis, purus, vacuus. *All these*  
*words are also used with the preposition ab (or ex), which is not the*  
*case (except very rarely) with those whose usage is referred to, § 1212.*

*Verbs compounded with these ablative prepositions frequently have*  
*ab, de, ex with the noun. With compounds of ab (according to Gossrau)*  
*the preposition ab is usual; all are usual with compounds of de; de is*  
*unusual with compounds of ex.*

*Compounds of dis have ab (differre, discrepare, dissentire, have also*  
*cum aliquo, inter se); rarely a simple ablative (for the thing or purpose*  
*differed from); e. g. Neco distare putant humana carne suillam, qua*  
*pater abstinuit. (Juv. 14. 98.)*

*According to Wesenberg (C. T. D. 5. 26) verbs compounded with*  
*inseparable prepositions (se, re, dis), e. g. refugio, reporto, discedo,*  
*dimoveo, &c., are probably never used of motion by Cicero, Cæsar,*  
*Sallust, Nepos, without a preposition added to the ablative.*

*The adverbial forms denoting 'whence' are occasionally used of 1263*  
*persons and things, e. g.*

*Scripsit causam dicere prius unde petitur, aurum qua re sit suom,*  
*quam ille qui petit, unde is sit thesaurus sibi. (Ter. Eun. 11.)*

*Divinavi illo extincto fore unde discerem neminem. (C. Sen. 4.)*

*Cadus erat vini: inde implevi hirneam. (Pl. Amph. 429.)*

*Numquam auferes hinc aurum. (Pl. Bacc. 824.)*

*Hoc illud est: hinc illæ lacrimæ. (Ter. Andr. 126.)*

*Aliunde stat semper, aliunde sentit, infidus sociis, vanus hostis*  
*(L. 24. 45, comp. a me stare, 'on my side').*

*Unde tu me ex jure manum consertum vocasti, inde ibi ego te revoco.*  
*(Legal formula ap. C. Mur. 12; unde, inde=qua (ea) de re.)*

<sup>2</sup> *Of the parents ex is sometimes found:*

*Ex me hic natus non est sed ex fratre meo. (Ter. Ad. 40.)*

1265

*Of more distant ancestors ab is used:*

*Mamilius ab Ulixi deaque Circa oriundus. (L. 1. 49.)*

*Divesne prisco natus ab Inacho nil interest an pauper et infima de*  
*gente sub divo moreris. (Hor. Od. 2. 3. 21.)*

*Continued on p. 113.*



Regem habendum duxit qualiscumque is foret, qui modo esset Her-  
culis stirpe generatus. (C. R. P. 2. 12.)

Si per alios fecisse dicis, quæro quos homines? indidemne Ameria an  
hosce ex urbe sicarios? (C. Rosc. Am. 27.)

Duobus his proeliis Cæsar desideravit notos equites Romanos C.  
Fleginatem Placentia, A. Granium Puteolis, M. Sacrativirum  
Capua. (Cæs. C. 3. 71.)

Nunc perveni Chalcidem: video ibi hospitem Zacyntho.

(Pl. Merc. 940.)

Scrib. adfuit L. Domitius Cn. F. Fabia Ahenobarbus.

(Sen. Cons. apud C. Fam. 8. 8.)

4. Standard of comparison<sup>1</sup>: *qualifying adjectives, or ad-* 1266  
*verbs, in the comparative degree.* (The case means 'starting from.')

(a) *Qualifying adjectives.*

*The adjective must be attribute (or predicate) of the noun com-*  
*pared with the standard.*

Nihil est magno et præclaro viro dignius placabilitate et æquitate.

(C. Off. 1. 25.)

Quid magis est saxo durum, quid mollius unda? (Ov. A. A. 1. 475.)

Phidiæ simulacris, quibus nihil in illo genere perfectius videmus,  
cogitare tamen possumus pulciora. (C. Or. 2.)

Non tulit ullos hæc civitas aut gloria clariores, aut auctoritate gra-  
viores, aut humanitate politiores P. Africano, C. Lælio, L. Furio.

(C. Or. 2. 37.)

Me pedibus delectat claudere verba Lucili ritu, nostrum melioris  
utroque. (Hor. S. 2. 1. 29.)

Pane egeo, jam mellitis potiore placentis. (Hor. Ep. 1. 10. 11.)

Brutum in orationibus minorem esse fama sua etiam admiratores  
ejus fatentur. (Tac. Or. 21.)

Ex hoc exercitu qui minores quinque et triginta annis erant, in naves  
impositi. (L. 22. 11.)

Humida terra majores herbas alit, ipsaque justo lætior.

(Verg. G. 2. 251.)

Opinione omnium majorem animo cepi dolorem. (C. Brut. 11.)

Hasdrubali et sua et aliorum spe omnia celeriora atque expeditiora  
fuere. (L. 27. 39.)

Propius quædam subibant naves, quo interiores ictibus tormentorum  
essent. (L. 24. 34.)

*So also rarely after alius:*

Vereor ne putes alium sapiente bonoque beatum. (Hor. Ep. 1. 16. 20.)

*Continued on p. 114.*

*Of the country ex is common; also ab:*

Dixi cupere te ex Æthiopia ancillulam. (Ter. Eun. 165.)

Mittitur Q. Junius ex Hispania quidam. (Cæs. G. 5. 27.)

Turnus Herdonius ab Aricia. (L. 1. 50.)

*So also of the material; e.g.*

Multum argentum, non pauca etiam pocula ex auro. (C. Verr. 4. 27.)

*But adjectives, e.g. Syracusanus, Larinas, aureus, &c. are more usual, at least as attributes to a name.*

<sup>1</sup> *The second member of a comparison is often introduced by quam. It may be any word or combination of words having the same functions in the sentence as the first member.* 1267

(1) *The comparison may qualify adjectives in comparative degree, and some others. (The adjective is not necessarily attribute, &c. of the first member.)*

*The compared member may be (a) Subject, or attribute of subject:*

Certe ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior est quam scientia.

(C. Div. 2. 9.)

Meliora sunt ea quæ natura, quam illa quæ arte perfecta sunt.

(C. N. D. 2. 34.)

Pauli contio fuit verior quam gratior populo. (L. 22. 38.) *So frequently the comparative in the second member also.*

(b) *Oblique case:*

Ex quo judicari potest virtutis esse quam ætatis cursum celeriores.

(C. Phil. 5. 17.)

Occidit nulli flebilior quam tibi. (Hor. Od. 1. 24. 10.)

Cetera visu quam dictu foediora. (L. 21. 32.)

*Rarely quam is found after alius in affirmative sentences, multiplex, dimidius, &c. (Nihil aliud, quam, &c. is common):*

Brutus juvenis longe alius ingenii quam ejus simulationem induerat.

(L. 1. 56.)

Prætor vix dimidium militum, quam quod acceperat, successori tradidit.

(L. 35. 1.)

*Where the second member is in meaning unsuited to the grammatical position of the first, a new sentence is sometimes formed with quam:* 1269

Si vicinus tuus equum meliorem habeat quam tuus est, tuumne equum malis an illius? (C. Inv. 1. 31.)

Me quoque jube occidi, ut gloriari possis multo meliorem, quam ipse es, virum abs te occisum esse. (L. 26. 15.)

But Ego hominem callidiorem vidi neminem quam Phormionem.

(Ter. Ph. 591.)

Hominem nonnullis rebus inferiorem quam te, superiorem aliis, ædilem factum esse miraris. (C. Planc. 12.)

*So also C. Vat. 17. See both forms in same sentence in C. Fam. 5. 7.*

*Continued on p. 115.*

(b) *Qualifying adverbs, or adverbial cases of adjectives.*

1270

The standard is properly (1) a word expressive of measure though often loosely; so e.g. *spe*, *expectatione*, *expectato*, *dicto*, *justo*, *æquo*, *solito*, *necessario*, *vero*; but sometimes (2) is a word which in meaning might be subject or object, &c. of the principal verb.

(1) *Cæsar opinione celerius venturus esse dicitur.* (C. Fam. 14. 23.)  
*Serius spe omnium Romam venit.* (L. 26. 26.)

*Multi injurias suas gravius æquo habuere.* (Sall. C. 51, § 11.)

*Dicto prope citius equum in viam Claudius dejecit.* (L. 23. 47.)

*Fluvius Arnus per eos dies solito magis inundaverat.* (L. 22. 2.)

*Longius assueto lumina nostra vident.* (Ov. H. 6. 72.)

*Quos irrupta tenet copula, nec malis divulsus querimoniis suprema citius solvet amor die.* (Hor. Od. 1. 13. 20.)

*Operarium mercenarium politorem diutius eundem ne habeat die.*

(Cat. R. R. 5.)

*Annos sexaginta natus es aut plus eo, ut conjicio.* (Ter. Haut. 62.)

*Me nemo potest minoris quisquam nummo ut surgam subigere.*

(Pl. Pseud. 809.)

(2) *Hanc (urbem) Juno fertur terris magis omnibus unam posthabita coluisse Samo.* (Verg. A. 1. 15.) 1271

*Fortuna plus humanis consiliis pollet.* (L. 44. 40.)

*Antea declamitabam causas, quod nemo me diutius fecit.*

(C. T. D. 1. 4.)

*Recte auguraris de me nihil a me abesse longius crudelitate.*

(Cæs. ap. C. Att. 9. 16.)

*Nullam, Vare, sacra vite prius severis arborem.* (Hor. Od. 1. 18. 1.)

*Ora fuere mihi plus ave docta loqui.* (Ov. Am. 2. 6. 62.)

*So also (rarely) in Plautus qualifying æque.*

*Nullust hoc meticulosus æque<sup>1</sup>.* (Pl. Amph. 293.)

5. *With the following prepositions the ablative is used in senses which fall under the general type of place whence.* 1274

*ab* (a), *de*, *ex* (e): *absque*, *sine*; *procul*.

*See the Supplement to Syntax.*

*Continued on p. 116.*

(2) *The comparison may qualify adverbs in comparative degree*: 1271

Celer tuus disertus magis est quam sapiens. (C. Att. 10. 1.)

Non nascitur ex malo bonum non magis quam ficus ex olea.

(Sen. Ep. 87. 25.)

Scutum, gladium, galeam in onere nostri milites non plus numerant quamumeros, lacertos, manus. (C. T. D. 2. 16.)

Brutum non minus amo quam tu, pæne dixi, quam te.

(C. Att. 5. 20, § 6.)

Tumultuarius exercitus acrius primo impetu quam perseverantius pugnavit. (L. 41. 10.)

Ad exprimendam festinatæ rei velocitatem (ait Augustus), 'celerius quam asparagi cocuntur.' (Suet. Aug. 87.)

*In descriptions of size, age, &c. plus, amplius, more, minus, less, are used without change of case (as adverbs), and the noun of size, &c. if not put in the ablative, is subjoined in the proper case with or without quam.*

Zeuxis et Polygnotus non sunt usi plus quam quattuor coloribus.

(C. Brut. 18.)

Reliquum spatium est non amplius pedum sexcentorum.

(Cæs. G. 1. 38.)

Catilina initio non amplius duobus milibus militum habuit.

(Sall. C. 56.)

*Instead of plus sometimes the comparative of the adjective is used.*

*Hence we may have all the following forms:*

Fossa (1) plus quam tres pedes lata (where?); (2) plus tres pedes lata; (3) plus tribus pedibus lata (rare); (4) tres pedes latior (rare); (5) tribus pedibus latior; (6) trium pedum latior (rare).

*So in expressions of age; (1) no instance at hand; (2) me non amplius novem annos nato (Nep. 23. 2); (3) plus triginta natus annis ego sum (Pl. Men. 446); (4) annos natus major quadraginta (C. Rosc. A. 14); (5) qui non major annis quinquaginta esset (L. 42. 33, and very commonly in Digest), and rarely ne qui major triginta annis natus legeretur (C. Verr. 2. 49); (6) ne minores octonum denum annorum neu majores quinquaginta quadragenum (ap. L. 38. 38). Besides these we find (7) the more strictly grammatical major quam quindecim annos natus, 'older than one born,' &c. (L. 45. 32); (8) a strange form, major natu quam viginti annis (Ulp. Dig. 38. 2. 14, apparently taken from the Edict; cf. 4. 4. 1, § 1); (9) major quinquenni (L. 45. 15); and (10) boves minoris trimos (Varr. R.R. 1. 20).*

*See §§ 1086, 1085 and Madvig, Bemerkungen, pp. 81—86.*

<sup>1</sup> *So Curc. 141; adæque, Most. 30. (In Plin. 35, § 17, Picturæ quibus equidem nullas æque miror, we have probably the dative.) The usual construction is with ac (so Cic.) or quam: e.g.*

Pumex non æquest aridus atque hic est senex. (Pl. Aul. 295.)

Nullum esse agrum æque feracem quam hic est. (Pl. Epid. 2. 3. 1.)

*Continued on p. 117.*

## CHAPTER XI.

## USE OF GENITIVE CASE.

THE GENITIVE is for the most part analogous to an adjective; <sup>1276</sup> *i.e.* the substantive put in the genitive (A) qualifies or limits another substantive, either immediately as attribute, or (generally with the verb of *being*), as a secondary predicate. It is also used to express the object after an adjective; and (B) a secondary object after a few verbs<sup>1</sup>.

## (A) DEPENDENT ON NOUNS, OR AS SECONDARY PREDICATE.

1. Person (or thing), possessing, or causing, to whom <sup>1278</sup> (or which) something belongs, or whose acting or condition is named. (Subjective genitive.)

N.B. Of the personal pronouns, the adjectives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, are used (as adjectives) in this sense. But, in conjunction with *omnium, nostrum* and *vestrum* (*gen. plur.*) are used.

(a) Dependent on nouns<sup>2</sup>.

1280

Horti Cæsaris. Cupido Praxitelis. Hectoris Andromache.

Scriptores Græciæ. Majorum gentium di. (C. T. D. I. 13.)

Ad Demetrium Phthiotidis. (L. 28. 6.)

Trasumenni quam Trebiæ, Cannarum quam Trasumenni pugna nobilior fuit. (L. 23. 43.)

Fuga Pompeji. Pugnatum est ad Spei. Pater familias.

Laus recte factorum. Magnitudo potestatis.

Qui illud animi causa fecerit, hunc prædæ causa quid facturum putatis? (C. Phil. 7. 6.)

Docendi gratiâ. Signum erumpendi. Labor discendi<sup>3</sup>.

Imploraret hominum fidem. Res Mancipi. Mancipi lex.

Mea unius opera respublica salva est. (C. Pis. 3.)

Patria est communis omnium nostrum parens. (C. Cat. I. 7.)

Alia fori vis est, alia triclinii; alia subselliorum ratio, alia lectorum. (C. Cæl. 28.)

Quidam ex his, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 17.)

Continued on p. 118.

<sup>1</sup> These uses are subdivided as follows ;

- A. Adjectival use, as attribute or predicate.
  1. Person (or thing) possessing or causing. §§ 1280—1288.
  2. Divided whole. §§ 1290—1300.
  3. Particular kind or contents. §§ 1302—1306.
  4. Quality or description. §§ 1308—1310.
  5. Object of action implied in substantives and adjectives.
    - (a) Direct object. §§ 1312—1316.
    - (b) Remoter object. § 1318.
  6. Thing in point of which a term is applied (poetic). § 1320.
- B. 1. Secondary object to verbs. § 1322.
  - (a) Matter charged. §§ 1324—1326.
  - (b) Object of mental emotion. §§ 1328—1330.
  - (c) Thing remembered. § 1332.
  - (d) Thing lacking or supplied. §§ 1334—1338.
2. Usages properly referable to locative. § 1340.

---

<sup>2</sup> *Adjectives are not unfrequently used, especially in Livy and the poets, instead of genitives; e.g.*

Hector ille Nævianus. (C. Fam. 5. 12.)

Caput Evandrius abstulit ensis. (Verg. A. 10. 394.)

Sicci cædes decemviris et Appiana libido objiciebantur. (L. 3. 51.)

Clamor oppidanorum mixtus muliebri puerilique ploratu. (L. 2. 33.)

Inter jocos militares. (L. 5. 49.)

Pugna Romana stabilis et suo et armorum pondere incumbentium in hostem. (L. 30. 34.)

Equestris tumultus a tergo, simul a castris clamor hostilis auditus. (L. 27. 1.)

*Similarly the demonstrative and relative pronouns are used:* 1273

Hic terror omnes in Q. Fabium convertit. (L. 10. 13, i.e. hujus rei terror.)

Quæ pars major erit, eo stabitur consilio. (L. 7. 35.)

<sup>3</sup> *Varro (cf. L. L. 10. §§ 21, 31, 32, &c.) frequently has the gerund in such expressions as casus dandi ('the case which giving requires,' i.e.) the dative case; casus nominandi, nominative; declinatus or species rogandi (e.g. scribo-ne); respondendi (e.g. fingo); optandi (e.g. vivatur); imperandi (e.g. paretur): so Quintilian (1. 6. 7), fatendi modo, 'in the indicative mood.'*

*Continued on p. 119.*

Non censent nos illarum adfines<sup>1</sup> esse rerum quas fert adolescentia.  
(Ter. *Haut.* 215.)

Q. Metellus, cujus paucos paris<sup>2</sup> hæc civitas tulit. (C. *Pis.* 4.)

Reus Milonis lege Plotia fuit Clodius. (C. *Mil.* 13.)

Id quidem non proprium<sup>3</sup> senectutis vitium est, sed commune<sup>4</sup> valedudinis. (C. *Sen.* 11.)

Illius amicissimi<sup>5</sup>. Accusator meus. Imago tua.

Persuaserat nonnullis invidis meis. (C. *Fam.* 7. 2.)

Vadit in eundem carcerem Socrates, eodem iudicum scelere, quo tyrannorum Theramenes. (C. *T. D.* 1. 40 fin.)

Germanis neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatium<sup>6</sup> datum est. (Cæs. *G.* 4. 14.)

Est operæ<sup>7</sup> pretium diligentiam majorum recordari. (C. *Agr.* 2. 29.)

Nec conspectum multitudinis fugerat. (Ib. 7. 30.)

Quæ tum frequentia senatus, quæ expectatio populi, qui concursus legatorum, quæ virtus, actio, gravitas P. Lentuli consulis fuit.  
(C. *Sext.* 33.)

Illa navis urbis instar habere inter illos piraticos myoparones videbatur. (C. *Verr.* 5. 34.)

Prætori ad obtinendam Siciliam Cannenses milites dati, duarum instar legionum. (L. 26. 28.)

Tacita suspitionum. (Tac. *A.* 4. 41.) Subita belli. (Id. *Agr.* 37.)

(b) *As an invariable secondary predicate.*

128a

Omnia, quæ mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt, dotis nomine. (C. *Top.* 4.)

Est prudentis<sup>8</sup> sustinere impetum benevolentiae. (C. *Lael.* 17.)

Cujusvis hominis est errare; nullius, nisi insipientis, in errore perseverare. (C. *Phil.* 12. 2.)

Nihil est tam angusti animi tamque parvi, quam amare divitias.

(C. *Off.* 1. 20.)

Jam me Pompeji totum esse scio. (C. *Fam.* 2. 13.)

Cesserant in agros suarumque rerum erant, amissa publica. (L. 3. 38.)

Hoc sentire prudentiæ<sup>9</sup> est, facere fortitudinis; et sentire vero et facere perfectæ cumulataeque virtutis. (C. *Sest.* 40.)

Olim arbitrabar esse meum libere loqui. (C. *Fam.* 9. 16. 3.)

Neque gloriam meam, laborem illorum, faciam. (Sall. *Jug.* 85.)

Carthaginenses tutelæ nostræ duximus. (L. 21. 41.)

Marcellus id nec juris nec potestatis suæ esse dixit. (L. 25. 7.)

Imperio alteri aucti, alteri dicionis alienæ facti. (L. 1. 25.)

*Continued on p. 120.*

<sup>1</sup> *The dative is not uncommon with some of these adjectives; e.g.* 1287  
 Duos solos video auctoritate censorum adfinis ei turpitudini judicari.  
 (C. Clu. 45.)

<sup>2</sup> Cratippus familiaris noster, quem ego parem summis Peripateticis  
 judico. (C. Div. 1. 3.) Also par cum aliquo; e. g.

Eum tu parem cum liberis tuis regnique participem fecisti.  
 (Sall. J. 14. 9.)

<sup>3</sup> Quod ut Cn. Pompeio proprium ac perpetuum sit, velle et optare  
 debetis. (C. Man. 16.)

<sup>4</sup> Quid est tam commune quam spiritus vivis, terra mortuis, mare  
 fluctuantibus, litus ejectis? (C. Rosc. A. 26.)

*Always dative in such sentences as mihi commune est cum aliquo.*

<sup>5</sup> *Also with dative: see § 1142.*

<sup>6</sup> Spatium quidem tandem adparandis nuptiis, vocandi sacrificandi  
 dabitur paululum. (Ter. Ph. 701.)

Albutio spatium ad sese colligendum dederunt. (C. Cæcin. 2.)

<sup>7</sup> *So also facere operæ pretium (Liv. præf.) &c. A phrase, operæ* 1283  
*est, usually with negative (non or nec), occurs in Enn. ap. Pers. 6. 9,*  
*and frequently in Plautus (Amph. 151; Mil. 252; 817; Ps. 377; Merc.*  
*10; 917; Truc. 4. 4. 30), and Livy (1. 24; 4. 8; 5. 15; 9. 23; 21. 9;*  
*29. 17; 33. 20; 41. 26; 44. 36), and is generally taken to be referable*  
*to the class noticed in § 1282 or to 1296—1300. As instances may be*  
*quoted; Trecentæ possunt causæ conligi; "Non domist; abiit ambu-*  
*latum; dormit;" ornatur; lavat; prandet; potat; occupat; operæ*  
*non est; non potest; quantum vis prolationumst. (Mil. l.c.) Postquam*  
*audivit haruspiciem esse, causatus de privati potenti procuratione,*  
*si operæ illi esset, consulere velle, ad colloquium vatem elicit. (L. 5.*  
*15.) But the absence of any epithet, the absence of any substantive*  
*like aliquid, nihil, multum, &c., the (frequent) coexistence of a personal*  
*dative (mihi, &c. not meæ, &c.), the use of esse not facere, the parallelism*  
*with the nominative and (subject) accusative (in Cic. Q. F. 3. 4, § 4; Pl.*  
*Merc. 286, and comp. Pl. Mil. 1086), these taken all together make it*  
*more probable that operæ is a predicative dative (like curæ). 'It is*  
*(not) a matter of attention,' hence, colloquially = (non) commodum est.*

<sup>8</sup> *Rarely est prudens: but with adjectives of the first class (e.g.*  
*stultus), we may have, e.g. 'stulti est, stultum est, stultitia est, stul-*  
*titia est, nolle sumere quæ di porrigant.'*

<sup>9</sup> *Such a sentence as Jam illud cuius est, non dico audaciæ, cupit*  
*enim se audacem, sed, quod minime volt, stultitiæ, qua vincit omnis,*  
*clivi Capitolini mentionem facere (C. Phil. 2. 8), might equally well*  
*be referred to this section, or to §§ 1308—1310.*



Magis nullius interest<sup>1</sup>, quam tua, non imponi cervicibus tuis onus <sup>1284</sup>  
sub quo concidas. (L. 24. 8.)

Magni interest Ciceronis vel mea potius vel mehercule utriusque  
me intervenire discenti. (C. Att. 14. 16.)

Faciendum aliquid quod illorum magis quam sua retulisse videre-  
tur. (Sall. J. 111.)

Regium imperium initio conservandæ libertatis atque augendæ rei <sup>1286</sup>  
publicæ fuerat. (Sall. Cat. 6.)

Dixit, quæ temere agitassent, ea prodendi imperii Romani, tradendæ  
Hannibali victoriæ esse. (L. 27. 9.)

(c) Tacitus uses such genitives (with the gerundive) to qualify, <sup>1288</sup>  
not a single word, but a sentence.

Germanicus Ægyptum proficiscitur cognoscendæ antiquitatis.

(Ann. 2. 59.)

Tum e seditiosis unum vinciri jubet, magis usurpandi juris, quam  
quia unius culpa foret. (Hist. 4. 25.)

Compare Arma cepit, non pro sua aut quorum simulat injuria, sed  
legum ac libertatis subvortundæ. (Sall. Or. Phil. 11.)

## 2. Divided whole<sup>2</sup>.

1290

### (a) *Definite whole.*

Of the personal pronouns, *mei*, &c. *nostrum* and *vestrum* are  
used in this sense.

Magna pars militum. Solus omnium. Multi vestrum.

Tertius regum Romanorum. Fortissimus Græcorum.

Indus qui est omnium fluminum maximus. (C. N.D. 2. 52.)

Parte tamen meliore mei super alta perennis astra ferar.

(Ov. Met. 15. 875.)

Ad ipsas venio provincias; quarum Macedonia, quæ erat antea mu-  
nita et pacata, graviter a barbaris vexatur. (C. Prov. Cons. 2.)

Consulum anni prioris M. Atilium Romam miserunt, Geminum  
Servilium legioni Romanæ et socium peditum equitumque  
duobus millibus præficiunt. (L. 22. 40.)

Cum expeditis peditum equitumque<sup>3</sup> pugnam conserebant cum hoste. <sup>1292</sup>

(L. 28. 14.)

Circum murum situm in prærupti montis extremo palus erat.

(Sall. J. 37.)

Quicquid hujus feci, causa virginis feci. (Ter. Haut. 202.)

Continued on p. 122.

<sup>1</sup> *With interest, or refert, used impersonally, instead of the genitive of a personal pronoun, the abl. sing. fem. of the possessive is used. So mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, and in a fragment of Cicero (ap. Prisc. XII. 29), cuja. (But cujus usually)* 1285

*With refert the ablative construction is common as early as Plautus and Terence, the genitive is not found till Livy (34. 27; 40. 34, ipsorum referre), except in Sall. l. c. With interest neither construction seems to be found before Cicero. [Possibly mea re fert was originally meæ rei fert, 'it contributes to my interest;'] then rei being shortened to re, the pronoun was accommodated to the supposed ablative. Mea interest may be for meæ (rei) interest, but more likely was imitated from refert, when that had become almost a single word of much the same meaning ('it is of importance') as interest. The frequency of the genitive with interest may be due to its containing est; e. g. Ciceronis interest = 'there is a difference belonging to Cicero.']*

*Sometimes ad with acc. is found instead of these constructions, e. g.* 1287  
*Quid id ad me aut ad meam rem refert, Persæ quid rerum gerant?*

(Pl. Pers. 513.)

*Magni ad honorem meum interest quam primum ad urbem me venire.*  
(C. Fam. 16. 1.)

*On magni, &c., referre, interesse, see § 1188.*

<sup>2</sup> *Where the whole, though divided in fact, is all concerned in the predication, the whole and the parts are often in apposition; e. g.* 1289

*Interfectores, pars in forum, pars Syracusas, pergunt.* (L. 24. 7.)

*Other instances in §§ 1434, 1440.*

*Compare Quod senatus juratus, maxima pars, censeat qui adsient, id volumus jubemusque.* (ap. L. 26. 33.)

*A divided whole is also expressed by a prepositional phrase, chiefly after numerals or pronouns. Ex is most frequently used.* 1291

*Quid ergo? audacissimus ego ex omnibus?* (C. Rosc. A. 1.)

*De præmiis quæritur, ex duobus uter dignior, ex pluribus quis dignissimus.* (Quint. 7. 4, § 21.)

*C. Marium vidimus, qui mihi secundis rebus unus ex fortunatis hominibus, adversis unus ex summis viris videbatur.* (C. Par. 2, § 16.)

*Noctu de servis suis quem habuit fidelissimum ad regem misit.*

(Nep. Them. 4.)

*Nostri in primo congressu circiter LXX ceciderunt, in his Q. Fulginius... Ex Afranianis interficiuntur T. Cæcilius et centuriones IIII.*

(Cæs. C. 1. 46.)

*Innumerique alii, quos inter maximus omnes cedere Danubius se tibi, Nile, negat.* (Ov. Pont. 4. 10. 57.)

<sup>3</sup> *Misit expeditos pedites equitesque.* (L. 34. 25.)

*Continued on p. 123.*

Uterque<sup>1</sup> eorum. Uterque nostrum.

Medium<sup>2</sup> viæ. Mediterranea Acarnaniæ. (L. 28. 14.)

Plana urbis. Extremum ætatis. Dimidium pecuniæ.

Speculatoriæ naves sub constratis pontium per intervalla excurrebant. (L. 30. 10.)

Nec Apollinis opertis credendum existimo, quorum partim ficta<sup>1294</sup> aperte, partim effutita temere sunt. (C. Div. 2. 55.)

Sulpicius Gallus maxime omnium nobilium Græcis litteris studuit. (C. Brut. 20.)

Ubicunque terrarum et gentium violatum jus civium Romanorum est, id ad communem libertatis causam pertinet. (C. Verr. 5. 55.)

Decreverunt patres ut prætor urbanus decemviros agro Samniti Apuloque, quod ejus<sup>3</sup> publicum populi Romani esset, metiendo dividendoque crearet. (L. 31. 4.)

(b) *Indefinite whole. Dependent on neuter adjective nominative or accusative<sup>4</sup>; also nihil, and some adverbs, quo, eo, &c.*<sup>1296</sup>

Hoc præmii. Parum prudentiæ. Aliquid pulchri<sup>5</sup>.

Idem damni. (L. 35. 42.) Id ætatis. (Cf. § 1092.)

Hoc tantum exacta ætate laboris itinerisque suscepit. (C. F. 5. 49.)

Eo miseriarum venturus eram. (Sall. J. 14.)

Res eodem est loci, quo reliquisti. (C. Att. 1. 13.)

Neque post id locorum<sup>6</sup> Jugurthæ dies aut nox ulla quieta fuit. (Sall. J. 72.)

Navium quod ubique fuerat in unum locum coegerant. (Cæs. G. 3. 16.)

Eruditio in Lucilio mira et libertas atque inde acerbitas et abunde salis. (Quint. 10. 1. 94.)

Adfatimst hominum quibus negoti nihil est. (Pl. Men. 454.)

Obsidio continua oppidanos ad ultimum inopiæ adduxerat. (L. 23. 19.)

Undique ad inferos tantundem viæ est. (C. T. D. 1. 43.)

Mittit homini munera satis large hæc ad usum domesticum, olei, vini quod visum est, etiam tritici quod satis esset, de suis decumis. (C. Verr. 4. 27.)

Quid mulieris<sup>7</sup> uxorem habes? (Ter. Hec. 643.)

Ibi nec divini quidquam nec humani sanctum erat. (L. 27. 17.)

*Continued on p. 124.*

<sup>1</sup> *Uterque with a noun (not pronoun) substantive is used as attribute, e.g. uterque frater, not uterque fratrum.* 1293

<sup>2</sup> *The Romans often (esp. Cicero) used an adjective and substantive agreeing, where in English we use 'of.' So always, when the whole is not divided. Adjectives thus used are adversus, aversus, ceterum, extremus, imus, medius, multus, nullus, omnis, plerique, reliquus, summus, supremus, totus, ultimus, and other superlatives.* 1295

Nos omnes. In media urbe. Extremo anno.

Reliqua turba. Adversa basis. Aversa charta. Tota Asia.

Ad summam aquam appropinquare. Ex intima philosophia.

Trecenti conjuravimus. Amici, quos multos habebat, aderant.

Veniamus ad vivos, qui duo de consularium numero relicui sunt.

(C. Phil. 2. 6.)

Homini bus opus est eruditis, qui adhuc in hoc quidem genere nostri nulli fuerunt. (C. Or. 3. 24.)

<sup>3</sup> *Quod ejus (sc. agri) = 'so far as it,' 'so much of it as,' is a common phrase in laws. Cf. L. 5. 25; 38. 23; ib. 54; 39. 7; 39. 45 (quoted in § 1094); 42. 8. (Comp. quæ eorum, L. 26. 34, § 12.) Cicero uses it loosely; e.g. Tu tamen velim ne intermittas, quod ejus facere possis, scribere ad me. (Att. 11. 12.) Also Fam. 3. 2; 5. 8.* 1297

<sup>4</sup> *See also § 1304, which is closely related to this section.* 1299

<sup>5</sup> *Also aliquid pulchrum. But both forms of expression are not always allowable. Thus (Madvig, Lat. Gr. § 285)—*

(a) *Adjectives of quantity are used only with the genitive; e.g. multum novi; or, in the plural, e.g. multa nova.*

(b) *Adjectives dependent on a preposition are rarely (at least in the præ-Augustan writers) used with this genitive; e.g. ad tantum studium, not ad tantum studii.*

(c) *Adjectives of the second class are not put in the genitive; e.g. aliquid memorabile, not aliquid memorabilis, (nor [by the first rule] multum memorabile). In the following passage the genitive eminentis is due to the parallelism. Illud video pugnare te, species ut quædam sit deorum, quæ nihil concreti habeat, nihil solidi, nihil expressi, nihil eminentis. (C. N. D. 2. 27.)*

<sup>6</sup> *So ut adhuc locorum feci, faciam sedulo. (Pl. Capt. 382), &c.: similarly, without reference to place, merito hoc meo videtur factum? De. Minume gentium. (Ter. Ph. 1033), &c.*

<sup>7</sup> *So quid hoc est hominis? (Pl. Amph. 769); aveo scire quid hominis sit (C. Att. 7. 3, § 9); &c. Comp. monstrum hominis non dictura's? (Ter. Eun. 696); scelus viri, Palæstrius. (Pl. Mil. 1434); Pægnium, deliciæ pueri. (Pl. Pers. 204); which belong to § 1304.*

Continued on p. 125.

Nihil pacati respondebatur. (L. 38. 28.)

1298

Solebat extra portam aliquid habere conducti. (C. Clu. 62.)

Præter arma et animos armorum memores nihil vobis fortuna reliqui<sup>1</sup> fecit. (L. 7. 35.)

Neque id quibus modis adsequeretur, dum sibi regnum pararet, quicquam pensi<sup>2</sup> habebat. (Sall. Cat. 5. 2.)

(c) *So also dependent on certain adjectives derived from substantives.* 1300

Socium et consortem gloriosi laboris amiseram. (C. Brut. 1.)

M. Antonium omnis eruditionis expertem<sup>3</sup> atque ignarum fuisse magna fuit opinio. (C. Or. 2. 1.)

Consiliorum omnium particeps et socius pæne regni putabatur.  
(C. R. P. 2. 20.)

3. Particular kind or contents: that, in, or of which a thing consists. 1302

(a) *Definite<sup>4</sup>. (Genitive of definition.)*

Honos consulatus. Familia Scipionum. Numerus trecentorum.

Epicurus non intelligit quid sonet hæc vox<sup>5</sup> voluptatis, id est, quæ res huic voci subiciatur. (C. Fin. 2. 2.)

Celsa Buthroti<sup>6</sup> urbs. Ausoniæ tellus. (Verg. A. 3. 293, 476.)

Parvulæ causæ vel falsæ suspicionis vel terroris repentini vel objectæ religionis magna detrimenta intulerunt. (Cæs. C. 3. 72.)

Nec erit justior in senatum non veniendi causa morbi quam mortis.  
(C. Phil. 1. 11.)

Nymphæ lactis alimenta dedere. (Ov. M. 3. 315.)

Aliis virtutibus, continentiae, gravitatis, justitiae, fidei, te consulatu dignum putavi. (C. Mur. 10.)

Nullam virtus aliam mercedem laborum periculorumque desiderat præter hanc laudis et gloriæ. (C. Arch. 11.)

Duo sunt genera liberalitatis; unum dandi beneficii, alterum reddendi. (C. Off. 1. 15.)

Mos traditus ab antiquis inter cetera sollemnia manet bona Porsinnæ regis vendendi. (L. 2. 14.)

Servati consulis decus Cælius ad servum delegat. (L. 21. 47.)

Colluvio mixtorum omnis generis animantium. (L. 3. 6.)

Ala<sup>7</sup> trecentorum equitum. Classis centum navium.

Captivorum numerus fuit septem milium octingentorum. (L. 10. 36.)

*Continued on p. 126.*

<sup>1</sup> Quod reliquum vitæ viriumque fames fecerat, id ferro potissimum reddere volebant (C. Verr. 5. 34), *where the genitive vitæ makes another genitive (reliqui) awkward. In a different sense we have Prorsus ab utrisque nihil relicum fieri, 'left undone' (S. Jug. 76), but in this sense also reliqui is often found.* 1301

<sup>2</sup> In Sallust, Cat. 12, nihil pensi neque moderati habere; 23, neque dicere neque facere, quicquam pensi habebat; 52; Jug. 41; Liv. 26. 15; 34. 31; ib. 49, Dixit, illis nec quid dicerent, nec quid facerent quicquam unquam pensi fuisse; 42. 23; 43. 7; Sen. *Ædip.* 298; Quint. 11. 1, § 29; Sueton. Nero 34; Dom. 12; and apparently Plant. *Truc.* 52; always dependent on nihil, quicquam. Tacitus perhaps misunderstood the construction of the phrase when he wrote Ut proximus quisque Britannico neque fas neque fidem pensi haberet olim provisum erat. (A. 13. 15.) So also Or. 29; H. 1. 46; and Val. M. 2. 9. 3. Cf. Madvig, *Bemerk.* p. 64, n. *Comp. the use of compendi facere,* § 1306.

<sup>3</sup> The ablative also is used with *expers* in Plaut. and Sall.; e.g. 1303  
Plerique patriæ sed omnes fama atque fortunis expertes sumus.  
(Sall. C. 33.)

<sup>4</sup> The genitives arranged under this head are in the main convertible with an apposition in English; e.g. 'the office called the consulate,' 'the number three hundred,' 'the word pleasure,' 'the virtue temperance.' See § 1305.

<sup>5</sup> Compare *Faxo ne juvet vox ista 'veto' (L. 6. 35); Audita intolleranda Romanis vox, 'væ victis' (L. 5. 48).*

<sup>6</sup> The use of the genitive in these geographical expressions is rare. Usually *urbs Buthrotum, &c.*

<sup>7</sup> Campanorum alam, quingentos fere equites excedere acie jubet.  
(L. 10. 29.)

*Continued on p. 127.*

(b) *Indefinite*<sup>1</sup>. (*Genitive of sort, material, bead.*)

1304

Acervus frumenti. Præmia pecuniæ. Magnus numerus equorum.  
Tria milia pondo argenti. Mille<sup>2</sup> nummum Philippum.

An si quis Hispanorum aut Gallorum aut Thracum mille aut duo  
milia occidisset, eum imperatorem appellaret senatus?

(C. Phil. 14. 5.)

Lucus proceris abietis arboribus sæptus. (L. 24. 3.)

Perusti late agri, prædæ hominum pecudumque actæ. (L. 24. 20.)

Sæpe lapidum, sanguinis non nunquam, terræ interdum, quondam  
etiam lactis imber defluxit. (C. Div. 1. 43.)

Duco mecum Ciceronem meum in ludum discendi, non lusionis.

(C. Q. Fr. 3. 4, § 6.)

Magna vis-seminum. Sex dies spatii<sup>3</sup>. (Cæs. C. 1. 3.)

Paribus alternis spatiis omissis senum pedum latitudinis<sup>4</sup> sulcos  
dirigunt. (Col. 3. 13. 4.)

Orationis operam compendi<sup>5</sup> face. (Pl. Most. 60.)

1306

Ecquis homost, qui facere argenti cupiat aliquantum lucri<sup>6</sup>?

(Ib. 354.)

Populus publice coactus est Apronio conferre lucri tritici modium

xxi et accessionis<sup>7</sup> HS CIQCIQ. (C. Verr. 3. 32.)

4. *Quality or description*<sup>8</sup>; *always with adjective.*

1308

Fossa centum pedum<sup>9</sup>. Puer sedecim annorum.

Pyramides stant quinque, imæ latæ pedum quinum septuagenum,  
altæ centenum quinquagenum<sup>10</sup>. (Varr. ap. Plin. 36, § 92.)

Scrobes trium in altitudinem pedum. (Cæs. G. 7. 73.)

Non multi cibi hospitem accipies sed multi joci. (C. Fam. 9. 26.)

Superiorum dierum Sabini cunctatio. (Cæs. G. 3. 18.)

Omnia erant Metelli ejusmodi<sup>11</sup>. (C. Verr. 2. 26.)

Res magni laboris. Vestis magni pretii.

Complures senatorii ordinis. Homo infimi generis.

Tun' trium litterarum homo me vituperas? CONG. Fur?

(Pl. Aul. 324.)

Plurimarum palmarum vetus ac nobilis gladiator. (C. Rosc. A. 6.)

Est fons aquæ dulcis, cui nomen Arethusa est, incredibili magnitu-  
dine, plenissimus piscium. (C. Verr. 4. 53.)

Tuæ litteræ maximi sunt apud me ponderis<sup>12</sup>. (C. Fam. 2. 19.)

Tu aliquem patronum invenies, hominem antiqui officii.

(C. Quint. 22.)

Continued on p. 128.

<sup>1</sup> The genitives in this section (closely related to § 1296), are not to be regarded (like those in § 1302) as appositions, but as corresponding to an adjective or prepositional phrase, or part of a compound; e.g. 'a corn-heap,' 'a money-reward,' 'a thousand such as Gauls,' 'two additional sesterces,' 'three thousand pounds in silver.'

<sup>2</sup> Mille (sing.) with genitive, is found sometimes in Cicero, not unfrequently in Plautus and Livy, but is rare otherwise.

<sup>3</sup> Erat spatium dierum fere triginta ante Kal. Dec. (C. Verr. 2. 39.)

<sup>4</sup> Hoc intermisso spatio duas fossas xv pedes latas eadem altitudine perduxit. (Cæs. G. 7. 72.)

Fossas pedum xxx in latitudinem complures facere instituit.

(Cæs. Civ. 1. 61.)

<sup>5</sup> Compendi facere, 'to make of saving,' 'a saving of,' i.e. 'to save,' also in Pl. Asin. 307, Bacch. 183, Pers. 471; Pseud. 1141. Quisquis es, adulescens, operam fac compendi quærere. Compare ib. 605, Quisquis es, compendium ego te facere pultandi volo, and Rud. 180. (In Truc. 2. 4. 26, Si quid tibi compendi facere possim, &c.; compendi depends on quid; cf. § 1296.) Compare Tacitus' use of pensi habere (§ 1301).

<sup>6</sup> Facere lucri (in this order) also in Pl. Pers. 668, 713; Pæn. 3. 5. 26; Truc. 3. 2. 22. (Facere damni, Pl. Merc. 419.) So lucri facere in other writers; e.g. Varr. R. R. 3. 4; Nep. Thras. 1; Plin. 33, § 44; Mart. 8. 10; Gai. ap. Dig. 11. 7. 29; &c. Lucri (as well as lucrum, lucra, plus lucri, plus lucelli, &c.) dare, facere, &c. is very frequently used in C. Verr. 3. 30—49; 75. 'Of profit,' 'a profit of' (so much) 'over' or 'gain.' Possibly it is a bookkeeping term; and it may have originally stood for lucri nomine, which is found ib. 45 §§ 106, 107; and compare below, § 1327. Compare also æqui boni facere, § 1191; juris sui facere, § 1291. De lucro is used in similar sense in Ter. Ad. 823; C. Fam. 9. 17. 1; Liv. 40. 8.

<sup>7</sup> Nec nummorum accessionem cogebatur arator dare nec ternas quinquagesimas frumenti (§ 1304) addere. (C. Verr. 3. 49.)

<sup>8</sup> For the ablative of quality see § 1282. The genitive (nearly related to the genitive of possessor, &c. § 1278) is used rather of the sort and quality; the ablative of the special characteristics and condition. Thus the genitive (and not the ablative) is used of specific measurements of what a thing or person requires, and of the class to which it belongs. The ablative, and not the genitive, is used of the characteristic parts of a thing or person (especially of the bodily parts), and of its temporary state. Both, though in Cicero chiefly the ablative, are used of mental qualities.

The genitive is rare in Plautus, Terence, and Lucretius.

<sup>9</sup> Fossa centum pedes longa. Puer tres annos natus. (§§ 1086, 1090.)

<sup>10</sup> Babylon lx p. amplexa muris ducenos pedes altis, quinquagenos latis. (Plin. 6. § 121.)

<sup>11</sup> Cuicunmodi, alii modi, &c. (§§ 373, 382) are perhaps *locatives*.

<sup>12</sup> Simillimus ejus filius eodem est apud me pondere, quo fuit ille.

(C. Att. 10. 1.)

Continued on p. 129.



Miserunt Romam oratores pacis petendæ amicitiaque. (L. 9. 45.) <sup>1310</sup>

Num quem ex illo globo nobilitatis ad hoc negotium mittetis, hominem veteris prosapiæ ac multarum imaginum et nullius stipendi?  
(Sall. J. 25.)

Tum T. Manlius Torquatus, priscæ ac nimis duræ severitatis, ita locutus fertur. (L. 22. 60.)

Novem annorum<sup>1</sup> a vobis profectus, post sextum et tricesimum annum rediit. (L. 30. 37.)

Eodem anno Q. Fabius moritur exactæ ætatis<sup>2</sup>. (L. 30. 26.)

5. Object of action implied in substantives and adjectives<sup>3</sup>. (*Objective genitive.*) *Many of the genitives under this head appear in meaning to belong to § 1280 or § 1302.*

(a) *Direct object, corresponding to an accusative or infinitive after the corresponding verb.*

*For the personal pronouns in this sense are used the genitive singular neuter of the adjective, viz.: mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri<sup>4</sup>.*

Timor hostium. Accusatio sceleratorum. Fuga periculi.

Precatio deum. Testis veneni deprehensi.

Cura rerum alienarum. Jactura suorum. (Cæs. G. 7. 26.)

Dicendi doctrina. (C. Or. 2. 1 fin.) Finis oppugnandi.

Scientia juris. Actor partium optimarum.

Retinete istam possessionem gratiæ, libertatis, suffragiorum, urbis, fori, ludorum, festorum dierum. (C. Agr. 2. 27.)

Omnino omnium horum vitiorum atque incommodorum una cautio est atque una provisio. (C. Læl. 21.)

Atheniensium populi potestas omnium rerum. (C. R. P. 1. 28.)

Pigritia singulos sepeliendi. Cunctatio invadendi. (L. 5. 48; 41.)

Cæsar honoris Divitiaci atque Hæduorum causa sese eos in fidem recepturum dixit. (Cæs. G. 1. 15.)

Quintus misit filium ad Cæsarem, non solum sui deprecatorem, sed etiam accusatorem mei. (C. Att. 11. 8.)

Patiens laboris atque frigoris. Capacissimus cibi vinique. <sup>1314</sup>

Nemo unquam tam sui despiciens fuit, ut, &c. (C. Or. 2. 89.)

Neuter sui protegendi corporis memor erat. (L. 2. 6.)

Semper appetentes gloriæ atque avidi laudis fuistis. (C. Man. 3.)

Tenax propositi vir. Tempus edax rerum. (Ov. M. 15. 234.)

C. Memmius perfectus litteris sed Græcis, fastidiosus sane Latinarum. (C. Brut. 70.)

Peritus earum regionum. Achæi locorum prudentes.

*Continued on p. 130.*

<sup>1</sup> So Hoc ipsum vere gloriantem audivi in funere matris suæ quam extulit annorum nonaginta, cum ipse esset septem et sexaginta.

(Nep. Att. 17.)

<sup>2</sup> P. Valerius anno post moritur, gloria ingenti, copiis familiaribus adeo exiguis, ut funeri sumptus deesset. (L. 2. 16.) *Here the ablative is probably one of circumstance.*

<sup>3</sup> The genitive often alternates with the accus. with ad; e. g.

1313

Ardor pugnandi (L. 2. 45, § 8), ad dimicandum (L. 4. 47); conatus exercitus comparandi (C. Phil. 10. 11), ad erumpendum (L. 9. 4); mora dimicandi (L. 24. 15), ad dimicandum (L. 34. 12.).

(Similarly with locus, spatium, tempus, signum, the genitive after which probably belongs to § 1280. For the dative, see § 1156.)

<sup>4</sup> Sometimes by a difference in the conception the object (whether direct or remoter) is regarded as a possession, &c., and then, instead of sui, nostri, &c., the adjective is used as an attribute, as in § 1278.

Neque negligentia tua neque odio id fecit tuo. (Ter. Ph. 1016.)

Me Cn. Pompeius semper sua conjunctione dignissimum judicavit.

(C. Pis. 31.)

Ea quæ faciebat, tua se fiducia facere dicebat. (C. Verr. 5. 68.)

Patres conscripti, vos in mea injuria despecti estis. (Sall. J. 14. 8.)

L. Catilinam non modo invidiæ meæ, verum etiam vitæ periculo sustulissem. (C. Cat. 2. 2.)

*Similarly other adjectives are rarely used, the specific reference denoted by the objective genitive being merged in the general notion of a quality.*

Oblatam sibi facultatem putavit, ut ex invidia senatoria posset crescere. (C. Clu. 28.)

Continued on p. 131.

Eum, etiamsi natura a parentis similitudine abriperet, consuetudo tamen ac disciplina patris similem<sup>1</sup> esse cogeret. (C. *Verr.* 5. 12.)

Itaque plectri similem linguam nostri solent dicere, chordarum dentis, naris cornibus iis qui ad nervos resonant in cantibus. (C. *N. D.* 2. 59.)

Alius alii tanti facinoris conscii. (Sall. *C.* 22.)

Ignarus rerum omnium. Sui negotii bene gerens. (C. *Quint.* 19.)

Compos voti. Impotens regendi equi. (L. 35. 11.)

Jurisdictio. Juris consultus<sup>2</sup>. Juris prudentia.

Indoctusque pilæ discive trochive quiescit. (Hor. *A. P.* 380.)

(b) *Remoter object, corresponding to a dative (rare), or ablative or prepositional phrases after the corresponding verb. (The adjectives meus, &c. are rarely used in this sense as attributes.)* 1316

Vacatio<sup>3</sup> muneris. Contentio<sup>4</sup> honorum. (C. *Off.* 1. 25.)

Di quibus imperium est animarum. (Verg. *A.* 6. 264.)

Hæc res omnem dubitationem adventus legionis expulit.

(Cæs. *G.* 5. 48.)

Inimicitia ex reipublicæ dissensione<sup>5</sup> susceptæ. (C. *Sest.* 33.)

Hæc civitas in Gallia maximam habet opinionem virtutis.

(Cæs. *G.* 7. 59.)

Maxima inlecebra est peccandi impunitatis spes. (C. *Mil.* 16.)

Pompeium a Cæsaris conjunctione avocabam. (C. *Phil.* 2. 10.)

Studiosus literarum. Mens interrita leti. (Ov. *M.* 10. 616.)

Incertus sententiæ. Trepidi rerum suarum. (L. 5. 11.)

Anxia furti. (Ov. *M.* 1. 623.) Dubius salutis (Ib. 15. 438.)

Ambiguus futuri. (Tac. *H.* 3. 43.) Profugus regni. (Id. *A.* 15. 1.)

(6) Thing in point of which<sup>6</sup> a term is applied to a 1320  
person: after adjectives in poets and later writers, especially Tacitus.

Leporum disertus puer et facetiarum. (Catull. 12. 9.)

Ingens ipse virium atque animi. (Sall. ap. Arus. p. 236.)

Aevi maturus. (Verg. *A.* 5. 73.) Seri studiorum. (Hor. *S. I.* 10. 21.)

Mamurius morum fabræne exactior artis? (Ov. *F.* 3. 383.)

Capitis minor. (Hor. *Od.* 3. 5. 42.) Judicii rectus. (Sen. *Dial.* 7. 6.)

Modicus virium. (Vell. 1. 12.) Irritus legationis. (Tac. *H.* 4. 32.)

Occultus odii. (Tac. *A.* 4. 7.) Spernendus morum. (Ib. 14. 40.)

Ambiguus pudoris ac metus. (Ib. 2. 40.)

Manifesta vitæ<sup>7</sup>. (Ib. 12. 51.) Linguae ferox. (H. 1. 35.)

Continued on p. 132.

<sup>1</sup> With *similis* is found the genitive always in Plautus and Terence; <sup>1317</sup> the dative almost always in Vergil, Horace, Ovid. When the object is a god, man, or beast, Cicero and his age, with comparatively few exceptions, use the genitive; when the object is a thing, the genitive and dative indiscriminately. Livy and later writers use the dative quite as often of both classes. The personal pronoun is always in the genitive.

<sup>2</sup> The *pass. part. consultus* is justified by the frequent use of a <sup>1319</sup> personal *accus.* after *consulere*, and by Cicero's paraphrase, *qui de jure civili consuli solent.* (C. Verr. 1. 46.)

The genitive as a direct object after *consultus* is justified by such expressions as

*Rem nulli obscuram consulis.* (Verg. A. 11. 344.)

*Idem in pace, si jus consuleres, peritissimus.* (L. 39. 40.)

<sup>3</sup> *Vacatio a belli administratione.* (L. 23. 32.)

<sup>4</sup> *Est inter eos non de terminis sed de tota possessione contentio.*  
(C. Ac. 2. 43.)

<sup>5</sup> *Fuit inter peritissimos homines summa de jure dissensio.*  
(C. Or. 1. 56.)

<sup>6</sup> This usage has arisen probably from three or four sources combined, viz. the locative use of *animi* (§ 1168), the objective genitive (§§ 1312—1318), the genitive of the secondary object (esp. §§ 1323, 1334—1336), and perhaps the Greek usages. <sup>1321</sup>

*Animi*, 'at heart,' 'in spirit,' is used with *angere*, Plaut. *Epid.* 3. 1. 6; C. Verr. 2. 34; (but *Fam.* 16. 14; *Brut.* 2 *animo*); *dis-*, *ex-*, *cruciare*, Plaut. *Aul.* 105; *Mil.* 1062, 1280; *Epid.* 3. 3. 8; *Rud.* 399; Ter. *Ad.* 610; *Ph.* 187; *fallere*, Ter. *Eun.* 274 (*falsus animist*), and *ne* *me animi fallit* thrice in Lucr. 1. 136; 922; 5. 97; *pendere*, Plaut. *Merc.* 127; 161; Ter. *Haut.* 727; C. T. D. 1. 40 (MSS. *animis*); 4. 16; *Leg.* 1. 3; *Atc.* 8, 5; 11, 12; 16, 12; Cæl. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 5; perhaps also in L. 7. 80 (MSS. *animis*); *suspensos*, L. 8. 13, § 17.

More or less similarly with *aeger* (L. 1. 58; 2. 36, &c.); *anxius* Sall. *J.* 55; *cæcus*, Quint. 1. 10, § 29; *confusus atque incertus* (L. 1. 7); *dubius* (Verg. *G.* 3. 289); *egregius* (Verg. *A.* 11. 417); *felix* (Juv. 14. 119); *fidens* (Verg. *A.* 5. 202); *furens* (*ib.* 5. 202); *infelix* (*ib.* 4. 529); *integer* (Hor. *S.* 2. 3. 220); *lassus* (Plaut. *Cist.* 2. 1. 8); *maturus* (Verg. *A.* 9. 246); *nimius* (L. 6. 11; Sen. *Ben.* 5. 6); *præceps* (Verg. *A.* 9. 685); *præstans* (Verg. *A.* 12. 19); *territus* (L. 7. 34); *victus* (Verg. *G.* 4. 491).

Probably *desipiebam mentis* (Plaut. *Epid.* 1. 2. 35) and *Satin tu sanus mentis aut animi tui* (Trin. 454) are due to false analogy.

<sup>7</sup> The genitive after *manifestus* belongs originally to § 1326.

Continued on p. 133.

(b) *The object exciting mental emotion*<sup>1</sup>: after **miseretor**, and the impersonals **miseret**, **pœnitet**, **piget**, **pudet**, **tædet**. In early writers, rarely, after a few other verbs. 1328

Aliquando miseremini sociorum. (C. Verr. 1. 28.)

Dicebatur, sordidati rei non miseritos, candidam togam invito offerre. (L. 27. 34.)

Me quidem miseret parietum ipsorum atque tectorum.

(C. Phil. 2. 28.)

Num te fortunæ tuæ, num amplitudinis, num claritatis pœnitebat?

(C. Phil. 1. 13.)

Ipsius pœnitere homines apparuit, quem autem in ejus locum substituerent locum deesse. (L. 23. 3.)

Sunt homines, quos libidinis infamiæque suæ neque pudeat neque tædeat. (C. Verr. Act. 1. 12.)

Pudet me deorum hominumque. (L. 3. 19.)

Pudet optimi exercitus, qui si pacis, id est, timoris nostri nomen audierit, ut non referat pedem, sistet certe. (C. Phil. 12. 3.)

Me civitatis morum piget tædetque. (Sall. J. 4.)

Decemvirorum vos pertæsum est. (L. 3. 67.)

Neque hujus sis veritus<sup>2</sup> feminæ primariæ. (Ter. Pb. 971.)

Fastidit mei. (Plaut. Aul. 243.) Studet tui. (ap. C. N. D. 3. 29.)

*The following appear to be mere Gracisms*<sup>3</sup>:

1330

Justitiæne prius mirer, belline laborum? (Verg. A. 11. 126.)

Neque ille sepositi ciceris nec longæ invidit avenæ. (Hor. S. 2. 6. 84.)

(c) *The thing remembered, &c. after memini, reminiscor, obliviscor, admonéo*<sup>4</sup>, &c. 1332

Veteris proverbii admonitu vivorum memini, nec tamen Epicuri licet oblivisci, si cupiam. (C. Fin. 5. 1.)

Alii reminiscentes veteris famæ, ætatis miserebantur. (Nep. 19. 4.)

Catilina admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suæ.

(Sall. Cat. 21.)

Nemo est in Sicilia quin tui sceleris et crudelitatis ex illa oratione commonefiat. (C. Verr. 5. 43.)

Certio rem me sui consilii fecit. (C. Att. 9. 2.)

Venit mihi Platonis in mentem. (C. Fin. 5. 1.)

*Continued on p. 136.*

<sup>1</sup> *An indefinite object of emotion is often expressed with pœnitet, pudet, piget, by a neuter pronoun in the nominative singular.*

Sapientis est enim proprium, nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facere.

(C. T. D. 5. 28.)

Nil, Charine, te quidem quicquam pudet. (Pl. Merc. 912.)

Nimio id quod pudet facilius fertur, quam illud quod piget.

(Pl. Ps. 281.)

Nequid plus minusve faxit, quod nos post pigeat. (Ter. Ph. 554.)

*Terence has once the plural: Non te hæc pudent? (Ad. 754.) So also Lucan 8. 494. (The passage of Plaut. Stich. 51, hæc conditio pœnitet is not in the Ambros. MSS.)*

*(An infinitive or substantive clause is not uncommonly subject to these impersonals, and expresses the object of emotion.)*

<sup>2</sup> *The usual construction of vereor (genitive once also in Cic. Att. 8. 4), fastidio, studeo, is seen in*

Intellexerat vereri vos se et metuere ita, ut æquomst Jovem.

(Pl. Amph. 23.)

Fastidire lacus et rivos ausus apertos. (Hor. Ep. 2. 3. 11.)

Our quemquam ut studeat tibi roges? (C. Mur. 36.)

<sup>3</sup> *The regular Latin construction has with miror the accusative; with invideo the dative of the person or thing envied; or, combined with a dative of the person, either an accusative or ablative of the thing grudged, or, of the subject matter of envy, the ablative with in. See C. T. D. 3. 9, Quint. 9. 3. 1 (ed. Halm.), who both speak of the construction.*

Mirari satis hominis neglegentiam non queo. (C. Att. 10. 5.)

Honori inviderunt meo. (C. Agr. 2. fin.)

Forsit honorem jure mihi invidet quivis. (Hor. S. 1. 6. 49.)

Non inviderunt laude sua mulieribus viri Romani. (L. 2. 40.)

Ego vero ita fecissem, nisi interdum in hoc Crasso paulum inviderem.

(C. Or. 2. 56.)

<sup>4</sup> *Memini, reminiscor, obliviscor often, and recordor always (unless C. Pis. 6 be an exception) have the object in the accusative. A neut. accus. (under § 1092) or abl. with de is common after recordor, moneo, &c.*

Qui sunt boni cives, nisi qui patriæ beneficia meminerunt?

(C. Planc. 33.)

Cinnam memini; vidi Sullam. (C. Phil. 5. 6.)

Dulcis moriens reminiscitur Argos. (Verg. A. 10. 782.)

Tu oblivisci nihil soles nisi injurias. (C. Lig. 12.)

Oro ut Terentiam moneatis de testamento. (C. Att. 11. 16.)

In utramque partem in mentem multa veniebant. (C. Fam. 11. 29.)

*Continued on p. 137.*

(d) *Thing lacking or supplied after impleo, compleo, repleo*<sup>1</sup>, *1334*  
*egeo, indigeo*<sup>2</sup>; *potio* (old), *potior*<sup>3</sup> and in early writers (rarely) some  
*few others*<sup>4</sup>.

Tullia celeriter adolescentem temeritatis suæ implet. (L. 1. 46.)

Lamentari ait illam miseram quia tis egeat, quia te careat.

(Pl. Mil. 1033.)

Virtus plurimæ commentationis et exercitationis indiget.

(C. Fin. 3. 15.)

Eam nunc potivit pater servitutis<sup>5</sup>. (Pl. Amph. 178.)

Nec efficere potest ut Adherbalis potiretur<sup>6</sup>. (Sall. J. 25.)

Nec satis audiebam nec sermonis fallebat tamen.

(Plaut. Epid. 2. 2. 55.)

Me omnium jam laborum levas. (Plaut. Rud. 247.)

Qui huic omnium rerum ipse semper credit. (Plaut. As. 459.)

*So also after adjectives*<sup>7</sup>:

1336

Domus erat aleatoribus referta, plena<sup>8</sup> ebriorum. (C. Phil. 2. 27.)

Referta quondam Italia Pythagoreorum fuit. (C. Or. 2. 37.)

Intus sum omnium rerum satur<sup>9</sup>. (Ter. Ad. 765.)

Circa viam haud procul Capua omnium egena<sup>10</sup> corpora humi  
 prostraverunt. (L. 9. 6.)

Sine me vocivum<sup>11</sup> tempus nequod dem mihi laboris. (Ter. Haut. 90.)

Inops<sup>12</sup> senatus auxilii humani ad deos populum ac vota vertit.

(L. 3. 7.)

Portoria quæ vellent, caperent, dum eorum immunes<sup>13</sup> Romani essent.

(L. 38. 44.)

*The following appear to be mere Grecisms*<sup>14</sup>:

1338

Abstinet irarum calidæque rixæ. (Hor. Od. 3. 27. 69.)

Desine mollium tandem querelarum. (Ib. 2. 9. 18.)

Dulci laborum decipitur sono. (Ib. 2. 13. 38.)

2. *For the so-called genitive expressing place where,*  
*see § 1168.*

1340

*For pluris, minoris, assis, and other expressions of value,*  
*see § 1186.*

*Continued on p. 138.*

<sup>1</sup> impleo, compleo *usually*, repleo *nearly always* (but Liv. 6. 25), <sup>1335</sup> have the ablative. (In Livy the gen. with impleo is the more usual.) See § 1216.

<sup>2</sup> egeo (in Cicero always?) and indigeo often, have ablative, see § 1212. (Egeo with genitive often in Sallust, rarely in Livy.)

<sup>3</sup> potior often has the ablative and in old writers (besides genitive and ablative) the accusative. See §§ 1226, 1223.

<sup>4</sup> In Lucr. 2. 838—845 we have genitives after secreta, among a number of similar ablatives: Scire licet quædam tam constare orba colore, quam sine odore ullo quædam sonituque remota; nec minus hæc animum cognoscere posse sagacem, quam quæ sunt aliis rebus privata notare. Sed ne forte putes solo spoliata colore corpora prima manere, etiam secreta teporis sunt ac frigoris omnino calidique vaporis, et sonitu sterila et suco jejuna feruntur. In l. 194 secreta cibo.

<sup>5</sup> Horia in mari fluctuoso piscatu novo me uberi compotivit.  
(Pl. Rud. 911.)

<sup>6</sup> In different meaning ('fall into power of') sometimes in Plautus: e.g. Gnatus tuus potitust hostium (Pl. Capt. 140, cf. 90, 758; Epid. 4. 1. 35).

<sup>7</sup> Some of these genitives may be referred to other heads; e.g. after <sup>1337</sup> inops, immunis to § 1306; after plenus, vacuus, satur to § 1318, &c.

The analogy of these words is followed in fessi rerum (Verg. A. 1. 178); lasso maris et viarum et militiæque (Hor. Od. 2. 6. 7); magna vis camelorum onusta frumenti (Tac. A. 15. 12). The ablative is the regular case.

The ablative is also found after these adjectives; see §§ 1212, 1263. <sup>1339</sup>

<sup>8</sup> Plenus annis abiit, plenus honoribus. (Plin. Ep. 2. 1.) See Quint. 9. 3. 1.

<sup>9</sup> Tuus iste nepos satur anseris extis. (Pers. 6. 71.)

<sup>10</sup> Nec aliud subsidii quam castellum commeatu egenum. (Tac. A. 12. 46; cf. 15. 12. Elsewhere always genitive.)

<sup>11</sup> Consilium nostrum spero vacuum periculo fore. (C. Att. 10. 16.)

<sup>12</sup> Cn. Lentulus non tardus sentiis, non inops verbis. (C. Brut. 70.)

<sup>13</sup> Una centuria facta est, immunis militia. (L. 1. 43.)

<sup>14</sup> The regular Latin construction with these verbs is seen in <sup>1341</sup>

Quotus enim quisque qui, impunitate et ignorance omnium proposita, abstinere possit injuria. (C. Off. 3. 17.) But also accus. Ter. Haut. 373.

Libenter mehercule artem desinerem. (C. Fam. 7. 1.)

Continued on p. 139.



## CHAPTER XII.

## USE OF INFINITIVE.

THE infinitive, or, as it is generally called, the *infinitive mood* of <sup>1342</sup> a verb, is an indeclinable verbal substantive, distinguished from ordinary verbal substantives by being primarily and usually not abstract, but concrete, and representing an action or fact or event in connection with the person or thing of which it is predicated.

Its substantival character is shewn in its own construction. It is used as object, as predicate both oblique and direct, and as subject, so far as a substantive in the accusative or nominative case would be so used. It is used as direct primary predicate, only as a noun may be predicated without the intervention of a finite verb (§ 1009). But it is not properly used as a genitive, dative, or ablative case, or as an accusative after a preposition. The gerund is used instead. (See however §§ 1360—1363.)

On the other hand its verbal character is shewn partly by its <sup>1343</sup> containing the notion of time, partly by the construction and nature of words dependent on it. Its object is in the accusative or dative, not genitive case; it is qualified by adverbs, not adjectives; and it readily admits of the same enlargements and qualifications by means of phrases or subordinate sentences that a finite verb does. But it does not, either by itself, or with its subject, except when used as primary predicate, form an independent sentence, and it consequently has its subject, when expressed separately from that of the verb on which it depends, not in the nominative, but in the accusative case.

Compare 'Tullus bene fidit rebus suis' with 'Tullus discit bene fidere rebus suis,' and 'Discimus Tullum bene fidere rebus suis,' 'Discit bene fidere rebus suis' with 'Discit bonam fiduciam rerum suarum.'

The ordinary usages of the infinitive will be given first (A); then its use as a primary predicate (B); lastly, its poetic and rare use instead of a gerund or prepositional expression (C).

## (A) The Infinitive is used as

1344

1. Direct object to a verb, or (*sometimes*) to an equivalent phrase.

(a) *The verbs which have an infinitive for object are chiefly such as involve a reference to another action of the same subject, e.g. verbs expressing will, power, duty, purpose, custom, commencement, continuance, &c.*

(Some of these verbs, e.g. *possum, soleo, desisto, insuesco, &c.*, are not used with a noun put as an object in the accusative.)

Avi senectutem tueri et tegere debebat. (C. *Deiot.* 1. 1.)

Nemo tam improbus inveniri poterit. (C. *Cat.* 1. 2.)

Solebat narrare Pompeius se, cum Rhodum venisset, audire voluisse Posidonium. (C. *T. D.* 2. 25.)

Bona pars non unguis ponere curat. (Hor. *A. P.* 297.)

Vincere scis, Hannibal; victoria uti nescis. (L. 22. 51.)

Jugurtha apud Numantiam Latine loqui didicerat. (Sall. *J.* 101.)

Ibi primum insuevit exercitus populi Romani delubra spoliare.  
(Sall. *G.* 11.)

Pompeius quoque statuerat prælio decertare. (Cæs. *G.* 1. 86.)

Antium me ex Formiano recipere cogito. (C. *Att.* 2. 9.)

Nemo alteri concedere in animum inducebat. (L. 1. 17.)

Obstinaverant animis vincere aut mori. (L. 23. 29.)

Ea non aggrediar narrare. (L. 22. 54.)

Jugurtha omni Numidiæ imperare parat. (Sall. *J.* 13.)

Cæsar maturat ab urbe proficisci. (Cæs. *G.* 1. 7.)

Occupavit Scipio Padum traicere. (L. 21. 39.)

Nocte prope tota P. Sempronius non destitit monere. (L. 22. 60.)

Marcellus vestigiis institit sequi. (L. 27. 2.)

Solum quod de se movetur, quia numquam deseritur a se, numquam ne moveri quidem desinit. (C. *R. P.* 6. 25.)

Hancine ego vitam parsi perdere? (Ter. *Hec.* 282.)

Veretur quicquam aut facere aut eloqui, quod parum virile videatur. (C. *Fin.* 2. 14.)

Noli erubescere collegam in sacerdotio habere. (L. 10. 8.)

Tu lucem aspicere audes? tu hos intueri. (C. *Or.* 2. 55.)

Desperatis Hippocrates vetat adhibere medicinam. (C. *Att.* 1. 6. 15.) 1345

Cæsar receptui cani (*or* canere) jussit. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 47; L. 29. 7.)

Imperavi egomet mihi omnia adsentari. (Ter. *Eun.* 252.)

Res autem monet cavere ab illis magis, quam quid in illos statueremus consultare. (Sall. C. 52.)

Nemo suaserit studiosis dicendi adolescentibus in gestu discendo histrionum more elaborare. (C. Or. 1. 59.)

Pars eorum occidisse tribunos plebis, plerique cædem in vos fecisse pro munimento habent. (Sall. J. 31, § 13.)

Magni mihi muneris instar germanam vidisse dabis. (Ov. M. 6. 443.)

Hæc fere dicere habui de natura deorum. (C. N. D. 3. 39.)

Juppiter, da flammam evadere classi. (Verg. A. 5. 689.)

Ganymedes Jovi bibere ministrabat. (C. T. D. 1. 26.)

Galli consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere. (Cæs. G. 7. 26.)

Dissimulare nos magis humanumst, quam dare operam id scire.

(Ter. Hec. 553.)

*So in verse, after a verbal substantive.* (Cf. § 1360.)

Si tantus amor casus cognoscere nostros. (Verg. A. 2. 10.)

(b) *As object to a verb of saying or thinking. This is rare, <sup>1346</sup> except where the subject of the infinitive is the same as the subject of the principal verb (i.e. as in English, 'he speaks of doing' instead of 'his doing').*

Cum id nescire Mago diceret, nihil facilius scitu est, inquit Hanno. (L. 23. 13.)

Nihil habent tuæ litteræ, quod definitum sit, nisi me vultu et taciturnitate significasse tibi non esse amicum. (C. Fam. 3. 8.)

Dividere argenti nummos dixit in viros. (Pl. Aul. 108.)

Quæ convenere in Andriam ex Perinthia fatetur transtulisse atque usum pro suis. (Ter. And. 14.)

Re nuntiata ad suos, quæ imperarentur, facere dixerunt.

(Cæs. G. 2. 32.)

Dicit unus et alter testis breviter: nihil interrogatur: præco dixisse pronuntiat. (C. Verr. 1. 30.)

Hi fratres in suspicionem venerant suis civibus fanum expilasse Apollinis. (C. Verr. 4. 13.)

*Without (rarely with) esse the future and (of deponents also) the past participle are so used in the accusative.* <sup>1347</sup>

Nec ille ad me rediit: oblitum credidi. (C. Fam. 9. 2. 1.)

Illi, quo vellem, descensuros pollicebantur. (C. Verr. 1. 38.)

De hoc Stratone quæsituram esse dixit. (C. Clu. 63.)

Ita enim pepigerant, quotannis juraturos in verba Philippi.

(L. 32. 5.)

Alco, insciis Saguntinis, precibus aliquid moturum ratus, ad Hannibalem transiit. (L. 21. 12.)

(c) *As object of the thing, to a verb which has also a direct personal object.* 1348

*These verbs are doceo, assuefacio, jubeo, veto, sino, arguo, instulo, and sometimes cogo, moneo, hortor, impedio, prohibeo, &c.*

Docebo Rullum posthac tacere. (C. Agr. 3. 2.)

Cæsar Helvetios suum adventum expectare jussit. (Cæs. G. 1. 27.)

Inprobitas, cujus in animo versatur, numquam sinit eum respirare, numquam acquiescere. (C. Fin. 1. 16.)

Insimulant hominem fraudandi causa discessisse. (C. Verr. 2. 24.)

Plura de Jugurtha scribere dehortatur me fortuna mea. (Sall. J. 24.)

Equos eodem remanere vestigio assuefecerunt. (Cæs. G. 4. 2.)

*This infinitive object is still retained when the verb is put in the passive voice, or gerundive.* 1349

Num sum etiam nunc vel Græce loqui vel Latine docendus?

(C. Fin. 2. 5.)

Nolani muros portasque adire<sup>1</sup> vetiti sunt. (L. 23. 16.)

Prohibiti estis in provincia vestra pedem ponere. (C. Lig. 8.)

Nec videre advenam in sua terra assueti erant. (L. 27. 39.)

*A secondary predicate of the subject of the principal verb, though in sense following the objective infinitive, conforms to its subject, i.e. is in the nominative<sup>2</sup>. Such a nominative is, however, rare after an active verb of saying or thinking. Cf. § 1347.* 1350

Fieri studebam ejus doctrina doctior. (C. Læl. 1. 1.)

Ne concupieris perversissimam gloriam infelicissima videri.

(Sen. Dial. 6. 5.)

Jubetur rura suburbana indictis comes ire Latinis.

(Hor. Ep. 1. 7. 76.)

Homerus solus appellari poeta meruit. (Vell. 1. 5.)

Phælus ille, quem videtis, hospites, ait fuisse navium celerrimus.

(Catull. 4. 2.)

Uxor invicti Jovis esse nescis. (Hor. Od. 3. 27. 73.)

<sup>1</sup> This infinitive must be distinguished from that in § 1353. When the subject of the finite passive verb is the *person receiving* the command or prohibition, the infinitive belongs here: when it is the person who, or thing which, is *part of the object of* the command, the infinitive belongs to § 1351 or 1353. In the latter case the infinitive is always in the passive voice.

<sup>2</sup> Comp. Greek, e.g. διὰ τὸ σοφὸς εἶναι, &c.

2. As oblique predicate, with its subject in the accusative case, the whole expression forming the object after a verb. 1351

*The verbs upon which such expressions depend are such as naturally have a fact or event for their object, e.g. verbs expressing declaration, opinion, knowledge, order, wish, permission, satisfaction, sorrow, surprise, &c. Sometimes expressions equivalent to a verb, e.g. testis sum, certior factus sum, &c. or verbal substantives, e.g. opinio, spes, &c., have a similar object.*

*A neuter pronoun (id, illud, Engl. that) is sometimes found in apposition to the clause, and corresponding to the Article (originally, demonstrative pronoun) in Greek. Occasionally such pronoun is not the object, but dependent on a preposition.*

Sentiri hæc putat, ut calere ignem, nivem esse album, mel dulce.

(C. Fin. 1. 9.)

Fore me quidem in discrimine video. (C. Att. 14. 13.)

Illud a Milonis inimicis dicitur, cædem, in qua P. Clodius occisus est, senatum judicasse contra rempublicam esse factam.

(C. Mil. 5.)

Suspicio te eisdem rebus, quibus me ipsum, interdum gravius commoveri. (C. Sen. 1.)

Ex nostris ducibus Q. Maximum accepimus facile celare, tacere, dissimulare, insidiari, præripere hostium consilia.

(C. Off. 1. 30.)

Id ei justum exsilium esse scivit plebs. (L. 26. 3.)

Admonemus cives nos eorum esse, et, si non easdem opes habere, eandem tamen patriam incolere. (L. 4. 3.)

Memini Catonem anno ante, quam est mortuus, mecum et cum Scipione disserere. (C. Læl. 3.)

Vocari Crispinum jussit. (L. 25. 18.)

Non hunc in vincula duci, non ad mortem rapi imperabis?

(C. Cat. 1. 11.)

In his libris vult efficere animos esse mortales. (C. T. D. 1. 31.)

Sapientem civem me et esse et numerari volo. (C. Fam. 1. 9, § 18.)

Tibi favemus, te tua virtute frui cupimus. (C. Brut. 97.)

Nullos honores mihi nisi verborum decerni sino. (C. Att. 5. 21.)

Ipsæ conficior venisse tempus, cum jam nec fortiter nec prudenter quicquam facere possim. (C. Att. 10. 15.)

Incredibili sum dolore adfectus, tale ingenium in tam misera fortuna versari. (C. Att. 11. 17.)

Auctores sumus, tutam ibi majestatem Romani nominis fore.

(L. 2. 48.)

Opinio sublata est Crassum non doctissimum, Antonium plane indoctum fuisse. (C. Or. 2. 2.)

Magna me spes tenet hunc locum portum ac perfugium futurum.  
(C. Clu. 3.)

Narrabat Posidonium graviter et copiose de hoc ipso, nihil esse bonum, nisi quod esset honestum, cubantem disputavisse.

(C. T. D. 2. 25.)  
Quid censes hunc ipsum S. Roscium, quo studio et qua intelligentia esse in rusticis rebus? (C. Rosc. Am. 17.)

*This use of the infinitive is extensively applied in reporting speeches or thoughts, frequently without dicebat, existimabat, &c. being expressed. (See Chap. XXIV.)*

### 3. As direct (secondary) predicate.

1353

(a) *When the finite verb, which has an oblique sentence for object, is put in its passive voice and the subject of the infinitive becomes the subject of this passive verb, the infinitive and other oblique predicates become direct (secondary) predicates.*

(The personal (e.g. *dicor esse*) instead of the impersonal passive (e.g. *dicitur me esse*, cf. § 1356) is usual with *videor* and verbs of saying, thinking, commanding, especially in the uncompound tenses, and occasionally used with verbs like *audior*, *intelligor*, *scribor*, &c.)

Videntur enim esse hæc paulo faciliora. (C. Att. 10. 17.)

Luna solis lumine conlustrari putatur. (C. Div. 2. 43.)

Ex hoc di beati esse intelliguntur. (C. N. D. 1. 38.)

Lectitavisse Platonem studiose, audivisse etiam, Demosthenes dicitur. (C. Brut. 31.)

Tarquinius, cum restitui in regnum armis non potuisset, Cumas contulisse se dicitur. (C. T. D. 3. 12.)

Quartum jam annum regnante Tarquinio Superbo, in Italiam Pythagoras venisse reperitur. (C. R. P. 2. 15.)

In lautumias Syracusanas, si qui publice custodiendi sunt, etiam ex ceteris oppidis Siciliæ deduci imperantur. (C. Verr. 5. 27.)

Jussus es renuntiari consul. (C. Phil. 2. 32.)

L. Papirius Crassus primum Papisius est vocari desitus.  
(C. Fam. 9. 21.)

Neque cogi pugnare poterat rex. (L. 45. 41.)

(b) *With another infinitive or pronoun for subject.*

1354

Quid est agrum bene colere? bene arare. (Cato, R. R. 61.)

Ostentare hoc est, Romani, non gerere bellum. (L. 3. 2.)

Loquor enim de docto homine et erudito, cui vivere est cogitare.  
(C. T. D. 5. 38.)

4. As subject of a sentence or in apposition to the subject; either (a) absolutely, or (b) with its own subject in the accusative case. 1355

*The predicate of such a sentence is usually either est with a secondary predicate, or a verb denoting a quality; often an impersonal verb.*

(a) *Absolutely.*

Carere igitur hoc significat, egere eo quod habere velis; inest enim velle in carento. (C. T. D. 1. 36.)

Facinus est vincere civem Romanum, scelus verberare, prope parricidium necare: quid dicam in crucem tollere? (C. Verr. 5. 66.)

Cadit igitur in sapientem et misereri et invidere. (C. T. D. 3. 10.)

Certum est deliberatumque omnia audacter libereque dicere.

(C. Rosc. Am. 11.)

Habet respublica tantum, quantum numquam mihi in mentem venit optare. (C. Fam. 12. 1.)

Quid est aliud quam relegationem pati. (L. 4. 4.)

Licet enim lascivire, dum nihil metuas. (C. R. P. 1. 40.)

Mos erat civitatis prædam dividere. (L. 5. 28.)

Nec vobis operæ est audire singula quæ passi sumus. (L. 29. 17.)

Hæc enim ipsa sunt honorabilia, salutari, adpeti, decedi, adsurgere, deduci, reduci, consuli. (C. Sen. 18.)

Quibusdam totum hoc displicet philosophari. (C. Fin. 1. 1.)

Armis disceptari cœptum est de jure publico. (C. Fam. 4. 4.)

Quod tibi cognosse in multis erit utile rebus nec sinet errantem dubitare. (Lucr. 1. 331.)

Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores. (Ov. Pont. 2. 9. 47.)

(b) *With its own subject in accusative case.*

1356

Ipsam consulem Romæ manere optimum visum est. (L. 3. 4.)

Decet cariorem nobis esse patriam quam nosmet ipsos.

(C. Fin. 3. 19.)

Te hilari animo esse et prompto ad jocandum valde me juvat.

(C. Q. Fr. 2. 11.)

Est inusitatum regem reum capitis esse. (C. Dejot. 1. 1.)

Necesse est igitur legem haberi in rebus optimis. (C. Leg. 2. 5.)

Jugurthæ omnia Romæ venum ire in animo hæserat. (Sall. J. 28.)

Quos ferro trucidari oportebat, eos nondum voce vulnero.

(C. Cat. 1. 4.)

Vereor ne aut celatum me illis ipsis non honestum, aut invitatum fugisse mihi sit turpissimum. (C. Phil. 2. 13.)

Volo Chrysippi uti similitudine de pilæ lusu, quam cadere non est dubium aut mittendis vitio aut excipientis. (Sen. Ben. 2. 17.)

Hoc fieri et oportet et opus est. (C. Att. 13. 25.)

Hæc benignitas etiam reipublicæ utilis est, redimi e servitute captos, locupletari tenviores. (C. Off. 2. 18.)

Eam gentem traditur fama agros ab Etruscis ante cultos possedisse.

(L. 5. 33.)

Mihi nuntiabatur Parthos transisse Euphratem. (C. Fam. 15. 1.)

Quid hoc tota Sicilia est clarius, quam omnis Segestæ matronas et virgines convenisse? (C. Ferr. 4. 35.)

(c) *With its own subject omitted, but with secondary oblique predicate expressed.* 1357

*The secondary predicate is usually in the accusative; but if the person (or thing) which is the subject of the infinitive is expressed in the dative with the principal verb, the predicate conforms<sup>1</sup>.*

Non esse cupidum pecunia est: non esse emacem vectigal est.

(C. Par. 6. 3.)

Licet opera prodesse multis, beneficia petentem, commendantem iudicibus, magistratibus, vigilantem pro re alterius.

(C. Off. 2. 19.)

Frugi hominem dici non multum habet laudis in rege: fortem, iustum, severum, gravem, magnanimum, largum, beneficum, liberalem—hæ sunt regiæ laudes, illa privata est. (C. Deiot. 9.)

Hoc doctoris intelligentis est, natura duce utentem, sic instituere ut Isocrates fecisse dicitur. (C. Brut. 56.)

In republica mihi neglegenti esse non licet. (C. Att. 1. 17.)

Vobis necesse est fortibus viris esse. (L. 21. 44.)

Quo tibi, Tulli, sumere depositum clavum fierique tribuno?

(Hor. S. 1. 6. 25.)

In mediocribus esse poetis non homines, non di, non concessere columnæ, (Hor. A. P. 572,) esse is object.

5. In exclamations; *object or subject of verb understood.* 1358  
Cf. § 1128. *Used both with and without subject. Rare except in comic poets and Cicero.*

Tibi recte facere, quando quod facias perit! (Pl. Aul. 336.)

Adeon homines inmutarier ex amore, ut non cognoscas eundem esse? (Ter. Eun. 225.)

Ergo me potius in Hispania fuisse tum quam Formiis, quum tu profectus es ad Pompeium! (Cælius ap. Cic. Fam. 8. 17.)

At te Romæ non fore! (Cic. Att. 5. 20, § 7.)

<sup>1</sup> Exceptions are rare. Ter. Haut. 388. Cic. Balb. 12. Cæs. Civ. 3. 1. Ov. Her. 14. 4. Cf. Quint. IV. 4. 6; VII. 1. 19, ed. Halm.



Hoc non videre, cujus generis onus navis vehat, id ad gubernatoris artem nihil pertinere! (C. Fin. 4. 27.)

Huncine hominem delectatum esse nugis? (Cic. Div. 2. 13.)

Mene incepto desistere victam, nec posse Italia Teucrorum avertere regem? (Verg. A. 1. 37.)

Hæc ludibria religionum non pudere in lucem proferre, et vix pueris dignas ambages senes ac consulares fallendæ fidei exquirere! (L. 9. 11.)

(B) As primary predicate to a subject in the nominative case; to express the occurrence of actions without marking the order of time. Sometimes, where no limitation to particular persons is intended, no subject is expressed. This infinitive is frequent in animated language describing a scene. (Historic infinitive.)

This usage is exactly analogous to the predication of one noun of another without expressing *est*, &c. (see § 1009 b).

The present infinitive only (also *odisse*, *meminisse*) is so used.

Clamare omnes ex conventu neminem unquam in Sicilia fuisse Verrucium; ego instare, ut mihi responderet quis esset.

(C. Verr. 2. 77.)

Circumspectare tum patriciorum vultus plebei et inde libertatis captare auram, unde servitutem timuerant. Primores patrum *odisse* decemviros, *odisse* plebem; nec probare, quæ fierent, et credere, haud indignis accidere. (L. 3. 37.)

Tum spectaculum horribile in campis patentibus: sequi, fugere, occidi, capi; equi atque viri afflicti ac multi vulneribus acceptis neque fugere posse neque quietem pati, niti modo ac statim concidere. (Sall. J. 101.)

Jamque dies consumptus erat, cum tamen barbari nihil remittere, atque, uti reges præceperant, acrius instare. (Ib. 98.)

Quia non potuerat eripere argentum ipse, a Diodoro erepta sibi vasa optime facta dicebat; minitari absenti; vociferari palam; lacrimas interdum vix tenere. (C. Verr. 4. 18.)

Jubet illos discedere et candelabrum relinquere. Rex primo nihil metuere, nihil suspicari; dies unus, alter, plures: non referri.

(C. Verr. 4. 28.)

Risu omnes qui aderant emoriri; denique metuebant omnes jam me.

(Ter. Eun. 432.)

Largitiones inde prædæque; et dulcedine privati commodi sensus malorum publicorum adimi. (L. 1. 54.)

(C) As genitive, or ablative, or adverbial accusative <sup>1360</sup>  
(*epexegetic infinitive*). The gerund (or gerundive) or supine is used  
in ordinary prose.

(1) *Dependent on substantives.*

This is found only in a few expressions, except after verbal sub-  
stantives, or phrases equivalent to a verb (§ 1345).

Numquid modi futurumst eum quærere? (Pl. Men. 233.)

Velut numine aliquo defensa castra oppugnare iterum religio fuit.

(L. 2. 62.)

Suadebant amici Cæsenniae nullam esse rationem amittere ejusmodi  
occasionem. (C. Cæc. 5.)

Nullumst periculum, quod sciam, stipularier. (Pl. Ps. 1076.)

Tempus est jam majora conari. (L. 6. 18.)

Tempus est, nos de illa perpetua jam, non de hac exigua vita, cogi-  
tare. (C. Att. 10. 8.)

(2) *Dependent on adjectives.*

1361

Only in poetry and post-Augustan prose, in imitation of the Greek.

Blandus auritas fidibus canoris ducere quercus. (Hor. Od. 1. 12. 11.)

Piger scribendi ferre laborem. (Hor. S. 1. 4. 12.)

Soli cantare periti Arcades. (Verg. B. 10. 32.)

Dignus erat, alter eligi, alter eligere. (Plin. Pan. 7.)

Omnibus amicis morbum tu incuties gravem, ut te videre audireque  
ægroti sient. (Pl. Trin. 75.)

(3) *Dependent on verbs.*

1362

In early Latin and in Augustan poets an infinitive is sometimes  
used to express the purpose after a verb of motion (rarely other than  
ire, currere, venire, mittere). See also § 1115. 4.

Ecquis currit pollictorem arcessere? (Pl. Asin. 910.)

Filius tum introiit videre quid agat. (Ter. Hec. 345.)

Non nos aut ferro Libycos populare Penates venimus aut raptas ad  
litora visere prædas. (Verg. A. 1. 527.)

Occasionally other expressions, in imitation of Greek, occur:

1363

Loricam donat habere viro. (Verg. A. 5. 262.)

Nos numerus sumus et fruges consumere nati. (Hor. Ep. 1. 2. 27.)

Fingit equum tenera docilem cervice magister ire viam, qua monstrat  
eques. (Ib. 64.)

(4) *Dependent on prepositions (very rare).*

Inter optime valere et gravissime ægrotare nihil prorsus dicunt in-  
teresse. (C. Fin. 2. 13.)

## CHAPTER XIII.

## TENSES OF INFINITIVE.

THE Infinitive is put in the present, past, or future, tense, according as the action denoted by it is contemporaneous with, or antecedent, or subsequent to that of the verb on which it depends.

(A) Infinitive as object, secondary predicate or subject.

Cupio	} <i>videre, videri,</i>	<i>I long</i>	} <i>to see, be seen.</i>
Cupiam		<i>I shall long</i>	
Cupiero	} <i>vidisse, visus esse,</i>	<i>I shall have longed</i>	} <i>to have seen, have been seen.</i>
Cupiebam		<i>I was longing</i>	
Cupivi	} <i>visurus esse,</i>	<i>I longed</i>	} <i>to be about to see.</i>
Cupieram		<i>I had longed</i>	

*Dicor fugere, fugisse, fugiturus esse, I am said to be flying, to have fled, to be on the point of flying.*

*So possum dicere, I can say; potero dicere, I shall be able to say; licet mihi videri, I may seem; licebit mihi videri, I shall be allowed to seem; &c.*

But when the past tenses of some verbs, corresponding to the English auxiliaries, are followed by the present infinitive, the English idiom uses the past tense of the infinitive: e.g. *potui dicere, I might have said (=I was able to say); debbat sentire, He ought then to have felt (=It was his duty to be feeling); oportuit te mori, You should have died. Compare potuit optare, She may have wished it; non potest non optasse (Ov. M. 3. 298), She cannot revoke the wish.*

The perfect infinitive in Latin is, however, sometimes used with little if any difference in meaning from the present. See § 1371.

(B) Infinitive as oblique predicate.

(a) In sentences dependent on principal tenses.

Dico	} <i>te scribere,</i>	<i>I say</i>	} <i>that you are writing.</i>
Dicam		<i>I shall say</i>	
Dixero		<i>I shall have said</i>	
Dixi (perf.)		<i>I have said</i>	
.....	<i>te scripsisse</i>	.....	<i>that you have written (or wrote).</i>

..... <b>te scripturum esse,</b> .....	<i>that you will write, or are going to write.</i>
..... <b>te scripturum fuisse,</b> .....	<i>that you were going to write, or would have written.</i>
..... <b>illud scribi,</b> .....	<i>that that is being written.</i>
..... <b>illud scriptum esse,</b> .....	<i>that that was written.</i>
..... <b>illud scriptum fuisse,</b> .....	<i>that that was (for some time) written, or had been written.</i>
..... <b>illud scriptum iri,</b> .....	<i>that that will be writ- ten, or is going to be written.</i>

(b) In sentences dependent on secondary tenses.

1368

Dicebam Dixi (aor.) Dixeram	} <b>te scribere,</b>	I was saying I said I had said	} <i>that you were writing.</i>
-----------------------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------

..... <b>te scripsisse,</b> .....	<i>that you had written.</i>
..... <b>te scripturum esse,</b> .....	<i>that you would write, or were going to write.</i>
..... <b>te scripturum fuisse,</b> .....	<i>that you had been go- ing to write, or would have written.</i>
..... <b>illud scribi,</b> .....	<i>that that was being written.</i>
..... <b>illud scriptum esse,</b> .....	<i>that that was (already) written.</i>
..... <b>illud scriptum fuisse,</b> .....	<i>that that was (for some time) written, or had been written.</i>
..... <b>illud scriptum iri,</b> .....	<i>that would be written, or was going to be written.</i>

The infinitives *esse, fuisse*, as used with participles, are often omitted. See §§ 1347, 1371 d.

## (C) Special usages.

1. *For the future infinitive both active and passive, a periphrasis with fore or futurum esse is often made use of.* 1369

Dico fore ut amem, amer, *I say that I shall love, shall be loved.*

Dixi fore ut amarem, amarer, *I said that I should love, should be loved.*

*Fore with the past participle both in deponent and passive verbs, corresponds to the completed future: Dico (dixi) me adeptum fore, 'that I shall have gained,' missum fore, 'shall have been sent.'*

2. *The perfect infinitive is used to represent the imperfect indicative of an action frequently done; e.g.* 1370

Dixisse eum narrant cum vidisset. (Dicebat cum viderat.)

3. *It is also used to describe an action completed and ready, in certain expressions corresponding to the perfect, or the completed future, of the indicative, where often in English the present is used. Thus* 1371

(a) *after volo in prohibitions: and this was imitated and extended by the poets and Livy.*

Ne quid vilicus emisse velit insciente domino, ne quid dominum celavisse velit. (Cato R. R. 5.)

Caleni edixerunt ne quis in balneis lavisse vellet, quom magistratus Romanus ibi esset. (C. Grac. ap. Gell. 10. 3.)

Consules edixerunt, ne quis quid fugæ causa vendidisse neve emisse vellet. (L. 39. 17.)

Haud equidem ullius civis fortunæ invideo, nec premendo alium me extulisse velim. (L. 22. 59, § 10.)

Commisisse cavet, quod mox mutare laboret. (Hor. A. P. 168.)

Fratres tendentes opaco Pelion imposuisse Olympha.

(Hor. Od. 3. 4. 52.)

(b) *After possum:*

Bacchatur vates, magnum si pectore possit excussisse deum.

(Verg. A. 6. 78.)

Bellum possumus, si ex hoc impetu rerum nihil prolatando remittitur, ante hiemem diis volentibus perfecisse. (L. 37. 19.)

Tunicarum vincla relaxat, ut posset vastas exeruisse manus.

(Ov. F. 2. 322.)

(c) *Of an action made the subject of a judgment:*

Proinde quiesce erit melius. (L. 3. 48.)

Illud non pænitebit curasse. (Quint. 1. 1. 34.)

Hic locus est, quem, si verbis audacia detur, haud timeam magni dixisse Palatia cæli. (Ov. *M.* i. 176.)

Quid tibi nunc molles prodest coluisse capillos, sæpeque mutatas disposuisse comas? quid fuco splendente genas ornare, quid ungues artificis docta subsecuisse manu? (Tib. i. 8. 9.)

Pueri pudor ora notavit: sed et erubuisse decebat. (Ov. *M.* 4. 330.)

Tunc decuit flesse quum adempta sunt nobis arma. (L. 30. 44.)

Atque id bono viro satis est, docuisse quod scierit.

(Quint. 12. 11. 8.)

Esto: causam proferre non potes: statim vicisse debeo.

(C. *Rosc. Am.* 27.)

Neque ego vos Quirites hortor, ut malitis civis vestros perperam quam recte fecisse, sed ne ignoscundo malis bonos perditum eatis. (Sall. *J.* 31, § 27.)

(d) *So especially the past participle, sometimes without esse:*

Adulescenti morem gestum oportuit. (Ter. *Ad.* 214.)

Quo ex senatus consulto confestim te interfectum esse, Catilina, convenit...Hoc jam pridem factum esse oportuit. (C. *Cat.* 1. 2.)

Tamen eos defendes qui se ab omnibus desertos potius quam abs te defensos esse mallent? (C. *Cæcil.* 5.)

Statim milites cenatos esse in castris, ignis quam creberrumos fieri, dein prima vigilia silentio egredi jubet. (Sall. *J.* 106. Compare L. 28. 14, § 7.)

Corinthum patres vestri, totius Græciæ lumen, exstinctum esse voluerunt. (C. *Man.* 5.)

*Similarly*

Quis est ex illa provincia, qui te nolit perisse? (C. *Verr.* 3. 77.)

4. *Memini is used with the present (and sometimes the perfect) infinitive of events, of which the subject himself was witness, with the perfect infinitive of events of which the subject was not witness.* 1372

Ego L. Metellum memini puer ita bonis esse viribus extremo tempore ætatis, ut adulescentiam non requireret. (C. *Sen.* 9.)

But also *Meministi* me ita distribuisse initio causam.

(C. *Rosc. Am.* 42.)

Memineram C. Marium cum vi prope justorum armorum profugisset, senile corpus paludibus occultasse. (C. *Sest.* 22.)

## CHAPTER XIV.

## USE OF VERBAL NOUNS, especially the GERUND and GERUNDIVE.

BESIDES the infinitive other verbal nouns are found with the <sup>1373</sup> verbal characteristic (when formed from transitive verbs) of having a direct object in the accusative case. These are some adjectives, and some substantives.

The adjectives are the present and future participles of all transitive verbs, and the past participle also of deponent verbs. *Examples will be found in § 1073 and passim.*

A few instances are found of gerundival forms with stems in *-undo*, being used similarly to present participles active.

The substantives are the gerund, the accusative of substantives with stems in *-tu* (active supine), and the nominative of substantives with stems in *-io*.

The gerundive in all cases, the stems in *-tu* in the dative and ablative (passive supine), and sometimes the past participle, are found in certain usages parallel and complementary to those of the infinitive and gerund.

The gerund and gerundive are nouns with *-o* stems, the gerund <sup>1374</sup> being in form a neuter substantive, the gerundive an adjective. They are used in all cases.

The gerund, like the infinitive, shews its verbal nature in having its object in the accusative or dative (not the genitive) cases, and in being qualified by adverbs, not adjectives; it shews its substantival nature in its own construction. As compared with the gerundive, it is chiefly found when the verb from which it is formed is intransitive, or, though transitive, used without a specified object.

The gerundive is confined to transitive verbs, and is usually substituted for the gerund of such verbs, when the object is expressed. The object is attracted into the case of the gerund, and the gerund, receiving adjectival inflexions, is made to agree with it in number and gender. But the gerundive is not used where indistinctness would arise from the change of the object's case.

(The gerundive is used from *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior* (§ 1223), all of these verbs being transitive in early Latin. In the nominative the gerund of these verbs is more frequent than the gerundive.)

The use of the gerund is limited by (1) the fact that it is <sup>1375</sup> a verbal substantive denoting *action*, and, as such, is not suited to express *place, time, measure, &c.*; (2) by the existence of the infinitive, which freely and adequately expresses the object after a verb, the subject in a certain class of sentences, and a secondary predicate (*e.g. cupit ille mori, mori turpe est, not moriendum cupit or moriendum turpe est*); (3) by the existence of ordinary verbal substantives, which expressing an action apart from the agent, an action imagined as an independent being, are better capable of becoming the subject or object, &c. of verbs of concrete meaning (*e.g. mors terret, mortem videt, not moriendum terret or moriendum videt*); (4) by the existence of the gerundive, which has rendered it often unnecessary for the gerund to be used with a direct object dependent on it. The gerund is, however, so used in the ablative (without a preposition) and in the genitive; rarely in any other case. In the older writers it is used so in the nominative also.

A comparison of the usages spoken of in this chapter with the <sup>1376</sup> general classification of case-meanings gives the following result:

**Accusative.** Of the three chief classes of accusative, the first (*compass or extent*) is not represented by any of these forms, except with prepositions: the second (*place towards which*) is filled by the so-called supine in *-um*; the third (*direct object*) is represented by the infinitive. With prepositions, chiefly *ad*, the gerund and gerundive are common.

**Dative.** The indirect object is represented by the gerund and gerundive, as well as by the stems in *-tu*, especially in the meaning of *work contemplated*. The predicative dative is represented by the stems in *-tu*, but scarcely in any different way from other stems.

**Ablative.** The instrumental ablative is represented by the gerund and gerundive in the meaning of *means, manner, circumstances*, and by the so-called supine in *-u* in the meaning of *part concerned*. The locative meanings are only found in the gerund and gerundive with the prepositions *in* and (rarely) *pro*.

The second class of ablatives (*place whence*) is represented principally by the gerund and gerundive, sometimes by the supine in *-u*, with prepositions (*ab, de, ex*); rarely by either without prepositions.

**Genitive.** The gerund and gerundive only are found in this case, and in the first only of the two classes, viz. as *dependent on nouns*.

**Nominative.** The nominative of the gerund and of the stem in *-ion* (with the verbal power) is used only as subject to *est*: the gerundive only as secondary predicate. They thus acquire a peculiar



meaning of *obligation*, whereas in the oblique cases both gerund and gerundive have the same simple meaning of action, which the infinitive has; and, in fact, are used where the infinitive, if it had had case-inflexions, would have been used.

In oblique language the accusative can be used in the same sense as the nominative in direct language.

The oblique cases (A) will be treated first: then (B) the nominative and (in oblique language) the accusative: lastly (C) the further uses of the gerundive, and some parallel uses of the past participles.

### (A) Verbal nouns in oblique cases.

#### Accusative.

1. *The accusative gerund (except as the substitute for the nominative in infinitive sentences, for which see § 1397) is used only after prepositions, usually ad, sometimes inter, 'abilst,' ob; rarely any others. Instead of the gerund with a direct object dependent on it, the gerundival construction is always used.*

Dies hic mihi ut satis sit vereor ad agendum: ne vacuum esse me nunc ad narrandum credas. (Ter. Andr. 706.)

Breve tempus ætatis satis longum est ad bene honesteque vivendum. (C. Sen. 19.)

Qui cibus et suavissimus est et idem facillimus ad concoquendum. (C. Fin. 2. 10.)

In aliquo insigni ad inridendum vitio reperiuntur. (C. Or. 2. 60.)

Alii omne officium referent aut ad voluptatem aut ad non dolendum. (C. Fin. 5. 7.)

Ad pingendum, ad fingendum, ad scalpendum, ad nervorum eliciendos sonos ac tiliarum apta manus est admotiōe digitorum. (C. N. D. 2. 60.)

Videmus multitudinem pecudum, partim ad vescendum, partim ad cultus agrorum, partim ad vehendum, partim ad corpora vestienda. (C. T. D. 1. 28.)

Missus est a senatu ad animos regum perspicandos, maximeque ut nepotem regis Antiochi classis habere, elephantos alere prohiberet. (C. Phil. 9. 2.)

Non bellum sed vanam imaginem belli ad avertendos ab legis cura plebis animos Capitolium insedisce contendebant. (L. 3. 16.)

Profecta deinde cohors ad sepeliendos qui ceciderant. (L. 3. 43.)

Consul, qua ferocia animi usus erat in Liguribus, eandem ad non parendum senatui habuit. (L. 42. 9.)

Nec fossa valloque ab ignavissimo ad opera ac muniendum hoste clausi erant. (L. 9. 4.)

Plebs ad alia, ut specie minora, sic laboris aliquanto majoris, traducebantur, foros in circo faciendos cloacamque maximam, receptaculum omnium purgamentorum urbis, sub terra agendam. (L. 1. 56.)

T. Herminius, inter spoliandum corpus hostis veruto percussus, inter primam curationem exspiravit. (L. 2. 20.)

Cæsar comitiali morbo bis inter res agendas correptus est.

(Suet. *Jul.* 45.)

Si illud est jam flagitiosum ob rem judicandam pecuniam accipere, quanto illud flagitiosius eum, a quo pecuniam ob absolvendum acceperis, condemnare! (C. *Verr.* 2. 32.)

Dubitatis quin hoc tantum boni in rempublicam conservandam atque amplificandam conferatis? (C. *Man.* 16.)

Non solum oratoris est docere, sed plus eloquentia circa movendum valet. (Quint. 4. 5, § 6.)

Corpus crescere jam domitis sinito: namque ante domandum ingentis tollunt animos. (Verg. *G.* 3. 206.)

Quæ ante conditam condendamve urbem traduntur, ea nec affirmare nec refellere in animo est. (L. 1. præf.)

2. *The accusative of the verbal substantive with stem in -tu (i.e. supine in -um, § 1114) often has a direct, more rarely an indirect object.*

In mea vita tu tibi laudem is quæsitum, scelus? (Ter. *Haut.* 315.)

Deos atque amicos it salutatum ad forum. (Pl. *Bac.* 347.)

Non tu me argento dedisti, opinor, nuptum, set viro. (Pl. *Stich.* 136.)

Sicine oportet ire amicos homini amanti operam datum?

(Pl. *Pæn.* 3. 1. 9.)

Quamprimum hæc risum veni. (Cæ. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 14.)

Proficiscitur in loca sola obsessum turrim regiam. (Sall. *J.* 103.)

Marius cum Ligure promissa ejus cognitum ex præsentibus misit.

(Ib. 93.)

Sub lucem pabulatum fignatumque et prædatum quidam dilapsi fuerant. (L. 25. 39.)

Legati in castra Æquorum venerunt questum injurias et ex fœdere res repetitum. (L. 3. 25.)

Non ego Graiis servitum matribus ibo. (Verg. *A.* 2. 786.)

Hic sponsum vocat, hic auditum scripta, relictis omnibus officiis.

(Hor. *Ep.* 2. 2. 67.)

*This supine, with iri used impersonally, supplies a form for the 1380 passive future infinitive.*

Audierat non datum iri filio uxorem suo. (Ter. Andr. 177.)

Pompeius adfirmat se prius occisum iri ab eo, quam me violatum iri. (C. Att. 2. 20.)

Docendum est, si ipsa separatim ex se verba considerentur, omnia aut pleraque ambigua visum iri. (C. Inv. 2. 40.)

In eam spem erecta civitas erat in Africa, eo anno bellatum iri finemque bello Punico adesse. (L. 29. 14.)

Arbitrantur se beneficos in suos amicos visum iri. (C. Off. 1. 14.)

*The origin of the phrase appears to have been sometimes (very 1381 rarely) forgotten; e.g.*

Reus patricidii, quod fratrem occidisset, damnatum iri videbatur. (Quint. 9. 2. 88.)

*(A preposition is not prefixed to the verbal in -um used in this sense; e.g.*

In Pl. Merc. 7: Pater ad mercatum hinc me meus misit Rhodum, Mercatum is 'fair' or 'market,' not 'trading.'

In Varr. R.R. 3. 16, § 28, non omnis tempestas ad pastum prodire longius patitur, and C. N.D. 2. 47, serpendo ad pastum accedunt, pastum is 'food,' not 'feeding.')

### Dative.

1. The gerund expresses the indirect object, especially 'work contemplated' (§ 1156). It is dependent on (a) verbs, adjectives, and adverbs: (b) on substantives and predicatively on esse. In this last usage it may be translated 'suited to,' 'capable of.' The gerundive is substituted for the gerund<sup>1</sup>, where otherwise a direct object would be dependent on it.

(a) Armamentis complicandis componendis studuimus.

(Pl. Merc. 192.)

Neque jam mihi licet neque est integrum, ut meum laborem hominum periculis sublevaridis non impertiam. (C. Mur. 4.)

Credebant Voleronem vexandis prioris anni consulibus permissurum tribunatum. (L. 2. 56.)

<sup>1</sup> Except perhaps in L. 21. 54, equites tegendo. Madvig on this passage remarks, 'Nullum novi prosæ orationis certum exemplum, ubi dativus gerundii accusativum regat.'

Consul placandis Romæ dis habendoque dilectu dat operam.

(L. 22. 2.)

Hi scribendo affuerunt. (Sen. Cos. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 8.)

Hæc (*i. e.* perfidia, ambitio, &c.) ubi aderunt, rebus servandis centuplex murus parumst. (Pl. *Pers.* 560.)

His audiendis credendisque opportuna multitudo major in dies Syracusas confluebat. (L. 24. 24.)

Sunt etiam nonnulli acuendis puerorum ingeniis non inutiles lusus.

(Quint. 1. 3. 8.)

Camillo comitiis jurare parato in verba excusandæ valetudini solita consensus populi restiterat. (L. 6. 22.)

Rubens ferrum non est habile tundendo. (Plin. 34, § 149.)

(b) Tres viri agris dandis assignandis.

A. Atilius consul comitia consulibus rogandis edixit. (L. 43. 11.)

Galli locum oppido condendo ceperunt. (L. 39. 22.)

Jusjurandum rei servandæ, non perdundæ conditumst.

(Pl. *Rud.* 1374.)

Placuit averruncandæ deum iræ victimas cædi. (L. 8. 6.)

Ea modo quæ restinguendo igni forent portantes. (L. 30. 6.)

Aliud emplastrum quod puri quoque movendo est. (Cels. 5. 19. 13.)

Multæ civitates non sunt solvendo. (C. *Fam.* 3. 8, § 2.)

Experiunda res in uno aut altero est, sitne aliqui plebeius ferendo magno honori. (L. 4. 35.)

2. *The verbal with stem in -tu is used (a) rarely with adjectives; (b) also with substantives in certain expressions and with the verb esse. These are referable partly to 'work contemplated,' partly to predicative dative.* (Cf. §§ 1156—1162.) 1383

(a) Istæc lepida sunt memoratui. (Plaut. *Bacc.* 62.)

Ipse quæ dubia nisui videbantur potissimum temptabat. (Sall. *J.* 94.)

Alter collis usui opportunus, quia præceps pauca munimenta quærebat. (Ib. 98.)

Ex arboribus aqua exprimitur, e nigris amara, ex candidioribus potui jucunda. (Plin. 6, § 203.)

*Compare* Arbutus fructum fert difficilem concoctioni (Plin. 23, § 151) *and* sunt recentes nuces difficiles concoctu (Ib. § 147).

(b) Penu est, inquit Q. Scævola, quod esculentum aut potulentum est. Servius Sulpicius in reprehensis Scævolæ capitibus scripsit, Cato Ælio placuisse non quæ esui et potui forent, sed tus quoque et cereos in penu esse. (Gell. 4. 1, §§ 17, 20.)

Indutui alterum quod subtus, alterum quod supra. Amictui dictum, quod ambiectum est, id est circumjectum. A quo etiam, quo vestitas se involvunt, circumjectui appellant. (Varr. *L. L.* 5. 131.)

At ita meæ volsellæ pecten speculum calamistrum meum bene me amassint meaue axicia linteumque extersui, ut, &c.  
(Plaut. *Curc.* 578.)

Absentium bona juxta atque interemptorum divisui fuere.  
(*L.* 1. 54.)

Ea quæ sunt usui ad armandas naves ex Hispania apportari jubet.  
(Cæs. *G.* 5. 1.)

Eadem in vino decocta dysintericis potui dantur. (Plin. 23, § 162.)

### Ablative. i. Locative and Instrumental.

1. *The gerund without a preposition is used chiefly in the sense of* <sup>1384</sup> *'means,' rarely in that of 'the thing in point of which a term is predicated.' In Livy, and occasionally in other writers, it denotes the 'manner' or 'circumstances.' Where the gerund would have had a direct object, the gerundive is substituted for the gerund, unless some obscurity (e.g. such as arises from the neuter and masculine being alike in the ablative case) would result from the change.*

#### (a) *Without prepositions.*

*'Thing in point of which,' &c.* Mendicum malim mendicando vincere. (Plaut. *Bac.* 514.)

Et latine loquendo cuius erat par et omnis sale facetiisque superabat. (*C. Brut.* 34.)

*'Means.'* Homines ad deos nulla re propius accedunt quam salutem hominibus dando. (*C. Lig.* 12.)

Herdonius, si nihil aliud, hostem se fatendo prope denunciavit, ut arma caperetis: hic, negando bella esse, arma vobis ademit.  
(*L.* 3. 19.)

Alitur vitium vivitque tegendo. (*Verg. G.* 4. 454.)

Cæsar dando sublevando ignoscendo, Cato nihil largiundo, gloriam adeptus est. (*Sall. G.* 54.)

Etiam opera, consilio, domum veniendo, conveniendis meis, nullum onus officii cuiquam reliquum fecisti. (*C. Fam.* 3. 13.)

Ego vapulando, ille verberando usque, ambo defessi sumus.  
(*Ter. Ad.* 213.)

Reliquum diei expediendis armis et curatione corporum consumptum. (*L.* 25. 38.)

Tertium genus studiorum voluntarium agendis gratiis, significanda erga illos pari voluntate, adducenda amicitia in spem familiaritatis et consuetudinis confirmari oportebit.

(Q. Cic. *de pet. Cons.* 6.)

Hodie stat Asia Luculli institutis servandis et quasi vestigiis persequendis. (C. *Ac.* 2. 1.)

'Cause.' Harumce rerum ergo fundi terræ agrique mei lustrandi lustrique faciendi ergo, sicuti dixi, macte hisce suovitautilibus lactentibus immolandis esto. (Cato, *R. R.* 141.)

'Manner, circumstances, &c.' Equidem pro patria qui letum oppetis-<sup>1385</sup> sent, sæpe fando audiui. (L. 45. 26.)

Satis superque humili est qui jure æquo in civitate vivit, nec inferendo injuriam nec patiando. (L. 3. 53.)

L. Cornelius complexus Appium, non cui simulabat consulendo, diremit certamen. (L. 3. 41.)

Gladiatores videmus nihil nec vitando facere caute nec petendo vehementer, in quo non motus hic habeat palæstram quandam. (C. *Or.* 68.)

Incendium plana primum, deinde in edita assurgens, et rursus inferiora populando, anteit remedia velocitate mali. (Tac. *A.* 15. 38.)

Tarde inde ad Maleam, trahendis plerumque remulco navibus, quæ cum commeatu sequebantur, pervenit. (L. 32. 16.)

Per omne hibernorum tempus exercitum in Æolide continuit, partim sociis ferendo opem, partim quos in societatem pellicere non poterat depopulandis. (L. 37. 18.)

Partibus dividendis ipsi regio evenit ab Arethusa fonte usque ad ostium magni portus. (L. 25. 30.)

Drusus reus est factus a Lucretio iudicibus rejiciendis a. d. v. Non. Quinct. (C. *Att.* 4. 16, § 5.)

(b) *With prepositions; in, rarely pro; very rarely super.*

<sup>1386</sup>

*The gerund is never used with a direct object, unless it be a neuter pronoun.*

Contrivi in quærendo vitam atque ætatem meam. (Ter. *Ad.* 869.)

Altero (facetiarum genere) utitur in narrando aliquid venuste, altero in jaciendo mittendoque ridiculo. (C. *Or.* 26.)

Si te mecum dicendo ac diluendis criminibus in hac causa contendere putarem, ego quoque in accusando atque in explicandis criminibus operam consumerem. (C. *Verr. Act.* 1. 11.)

Conveniet autem cum in dando munificum esse, tum in exigendo non acerbum, in omnique re contrahenda, vendundo emendo, conducendo locando, vicinitatibus et confiniis, æquum ac facilem. (C. Off. 2. 18.)

Pro vapulando hercle ego abs te mercedem petam. (Plaut. Aul. 453.)

Pro ope ferenda socii pergit ire ipse ad urbem, deditam nuper in fidem Romanorum, oppugnandam. (L. 23. 28.)

Diva, patrum prosperes decreta super jugandis feminis prolisque novæ feraci lege marita. (Hor. C. Sæc. 19.)

2. *The verbal stem ending in -tu is used in the ablative (called <sup>1387</sup>supine in -u<sup>1</sup>) frequently to qualify adjectives in a way which is referable to the head of 'part concerned.'* In other senses its use is similar to that of other verbal substantives,

(a) *Without prepositions.*

*With dignus.* Nihil usquam dictu dignum ausi. (L. 9. 43.)

Adnotatu dignum illud quoque omen. (Val. M. 1. 5. 9.)

*Compare* Quis contra studia naturæ tam vehementer obduruit, ut a rebus cognitione dignis abhorreat. (C. Fin. 3. 11.)

*'Thing in point of which,' &c. with fas, nefas or adjectives.*

<sup>1388</sup>

(It is possible that the case is really the dative in some instances, compare § 1383.)

Herbas edunt formidulosas dictu, non essu modo. (Plaut. Ps. 824.)

Horum opera hæc mihi facilia factu facta sunt, quæ volui effici.

(Pl. Pers. 761.)

Terribiles visu formæ letumque labosque. (Verg. A. 6. 277.)

Id dictu quam re, ut pleraque, facilius erat. (L. 31. 38. Cf. 40. 35.)

Palpebræ mollissimæ tactu, ne læderent aciem. (C. N. D. 2. 57.)

Aliæ vites forenses vocantur, celeres proventu, vendibiles aspectu, portatu faciles. (Plin. 14, § 42.)

Pudet dictu. (Tac. Agr. 32.)

<sup>1</sup> Of supines in -u only *auditu*, *dictu*, *factu*, *inventu*, *memoratu*, *natu*, *visu* occur frequently; in Cicero also *adspectu*, *cognitu*, *motu*, *intellectu*, *inventu*, *responsu*, *scitu*, *tactu*. On the whole Cicero has about 24 of these supines, the occurrences being at least 80; Livy uses supines in -u about 50 times: Cæsar has only two, *factu*, *natu*; Sallust has six; Nepos three, Suetonius one (*natu*), Quintilian five, Tacitus at least 16; Pliny the elder and Seneca have a great many. Lucretius has only *motu*, *tactu*, *visu*; Vergil *dictu*, *factu*, *relatu*, *victu*, *visu*; Horace *adspectu*, *factu*, *petitu*, *tactu*, *visu*, *vitatu*; Ovid *cultu*, *dictu*, *natu*, *relatu*, *visu*. GOSSRAU, § 443.

'Means.' Efficimus etiam domitu nostro quadrupedum vectiones. 1389  
(C. N. D. 2. 60.)

Quæretur, num quid aliquo sensu perceptum sit, aspectu, auditu, tactu, odore, gustatu. (Corn. 2. 6.)

Possunt in parentis animam inscii incurrere et ferro morsuve violare.  
(Sen. Ep. 108, § 19.)

Satis commode mihi videor eorum consuetudinem usu tractandoque cognosse. (C. Verr. 2. 73.)

Sed ita dictu opus est, si me vis salvom esse. (Ter. Haut. 941.)

'Manner,' *without attribute.* Strictis gladiis cursu in hostem feruntur. (L. 9. 13.)

Non venit idem usu mihi, quod tu tibi scribis. (C. Att. 7. 26.)

'Circumstances,' &c. Omnium consensu ad eum deferitur imperium.  
(Cæs. G. 7. 4.)

Negavit id iudicio aut voluntate sua fecisse sed coactu civitatis.  
(Ib. 5. 27.)

Balbus ad me venit missu Cæsaris. (C. Att. 8. 9.)

Factione respectuque rerum privatarum, quæ semper offecere officientque publicis consiliis, Appius vicit. (L. 2. 30.)

(b) *With prepositions.*

1390

Sed pertinet ad omnem officii quæstionem in promptu habere, quantum natura hominis pecudibus antecedit. (C. Off. 1. 30.)

Dixit Sulla id in promptu esse, quoniam copiam Jugurthæ haberet.  
(Sall. J. 111.)

Res ipsa non recipiebatur a nobis nec in usu erat. (Sen. Ep. 111.1.)

Omnia volvuntur semper et in transitu sunt. (Sen. Dial. 12. 6.)

Similarly Cave fuas mi in quæstione. (Pl. Pers. 51.)

Quod iudicium nunc in expectatione est, etiam in bona spe.  
(Cæ. ap. C. Fam. 8. 14.)

ii. Ablative expressing place whence.

1351

1. *Gerund and gerundive.*

(a) *Without prepositions. Both gerund and gerundive are rare.*

'Thing from which separation takes place.' Nec ante continuando abstinit magistratu, quam obruerent eum male gesta. (L. 9. 34.)

Tædio et desperatione tandem fessum absistere sequendo coegit.  
(L. 29. 33.)

'Standard of comparison.' Nullum officium referenda gratia magis necessarium est. (C. Off. 1. 15.)



(b) *With prepositions, ab, de, ex; (never sine).*

1392

*The gerund is rarely used with a direct object dependent on it. The gerundive is used instead.*

Jam et consul ab revocando ad incitandos hortandosque versus milites. (L. 25. 14.)

Pisoni nullum tempus unquam vacabat aut a forensi dictione aut a commentatione domestica aut a scribendo aut a cogitando.

(C. Brut. 78.)

Aristotelem in philosophia non deterruit a scribendo amplitudo Platonis. (C. Or. 11.)

Legem illi Græco putant nomine a suum cuique tribuendo appellatam, ego nostro a legendo. (C. Leg. 1. 6.)

Nomen invidiæ ductum est a nimis intuendo fortunam alterius.

(C. T. D. 3. 9.)

Cincinnati et Capitolini sententiæ abhorrebant a cæde violandisque quos fœdere icto cum plebe sacrosanctos accepissent. (L. 4. 6.)

Videmusne ut pueri ne verberibus quidem a contemplandis rebus perquirendisque deterreantur? (C. Fin. 5. 18.)

Levissime quidem Curio quia de intercalando non obtinuerat transfugit ad populum. (Cæl. ap. C. Fam. 8. 6.)

Primus liber Tusculanarum disputationum est de contemnenda morte. (C. Div. 2. 1.)

Hæc virtus ex providendo est appellata prudentia. (C. Leg. 2. 23.)

Cum maximis curis et laboribus compensant eam quam ex discendo capiunt voluptatem. (C. Fin. 5. 18.)

## 2. *Verbal substantive in -tu.*

1393

(a) *Without prepositions. Rarely, if ever, found in any specially verbal use.*

Nunc obsonatu redeo. (Pl. Men. 288.) See also Cato R.R. in § 1261.

Nimis ægre risu me continui. (Pl. Asin. 583.)

(b) *With prepositions.*

Consul est impositus is nobis, quem nemo præter nos philosophos aspicere sine suspiritu posset. (C. Att. 1. 18, § 3.)

Quid enim pedibus opus est sine ingressu? quid manibus, si nihil comprehendendum est? (C. N. D. 1. 33.)

Compare Cave sis tibi, ne bubuli in te cottabi crebri crepent, si aberis ab eri quæstione. (Pl. Trin. 1012.)

## Genitive.

1. *The gerund is always dependent on a noun, never on a verb* <sup>1394</sup>  
(except as secondary predicate). Its usages are referable to class A  
(§ 1278), and especially to the 'thing possessing,' the 'kind or contents,'  
and the 'object.'

*The gerund and gerundive are used indifferently, except where the  
one form or the other affords less ambiguity.*

(a) 'Thing possessing.' Mens hominis semper aliquid aut anquirit aut  
agit, videndique et audiendi delectatione ducitur. (C. Off. 1. 30.)

Ita nati factique sumus, ut et agendi aliquid et diligendi aliquos  
et referendæ gratiæ principia in nobis contineremus.

(C. Fin. 5. 15.)

Hæc frequentia totius Italiæ convenit comitiorum, ludorum censen-  
dique causa. (C. Ferr. Act. 1. 18.)

Per speciem alienæ fungendæ vicis suas opes firmavit. (L. 1. 41.)

Hæc, quum fines suprascanit, hæc, forum ingressus, paucis verbis  
carminis concipiendique jurisjurandi mutatis peragit. (L. 1. 32.)

Deliberandi sibi unum diem postulavit. (C. N. D. 1. 22.)

Omnia retinendæ dominationis honesta æstimat. (Sall. Or. Lep. § 8.)

Dixit decemviros vicissitudinem imperitandi, quod unum exæquandæ  
sit libertatis, sustulisse. (L. 3. 39. Comp. Ib. 4. 5, § 5.)

Spectatus et Sacrovir intecto capite pugnam pro Romanis ciens,  
ostentandæ, ut ferebat, virtutis. (Tac. A. 3. 41.) See § 1288.

(b) 'Definition.' Meæ totius orationis tres sunt rationes, una conci-  
liandorum hominum, altera docendorum, tertia concitandorum.

(C. Or. 2. 29.)

Ipsium bonum crescendi accessionem nullam habet. (C. Fin. 3. 14.)

(c) 'Sort.' Commorandi natura deversorium nobis, non habitandi,  
dedit. (C. Sen. 23.)

Suppeditant et campus noster et studia venandi honesta exempla  
ludendi. (C. Off. 1. 29 fin.)

(d) 'Object.' Equidem sum cupidus te in illa longiore ac perpetua <sup>1395</sup>  
disputatione audiendi. (C. Or. 2. 4.)

Me auctorem fuisse Cæsaris interficiendi criminatur. (C. Fam. 12. 2.)

Neque cognoscendi quid fieret neque sui colligendi hostibus faculta-  
tem relinquunt. (Cæs. G. 3. 6.)

Neque immemor ejus quod initio consulatus imbiberat, reconciliandi  
animos plebis, saucios milites curandos dividit patribus.

(L. 2. 47.)

Tanta universæ Galliæ consensio fuit libertatis vindicandæ et pristinæ belli laudis recuperandæ. (Cæs. G. 7. 76.)

Inita sunt in hac civitate consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani exstinguendi. (C. Mur. 37.)

Date di, quæso, conveniundi mi ejus celerem copiam. (Pl. Merc. 850.)

Non hercle otiumst mi auscultandi. (Ter. Ad. 420.)

Ludendi etiam est quidam modus retinendus. (C. Off. 1. 29.)

*Rarely the object is attracted into the genitive though the gerund remains unchanged, perhaps partly from a desire to avoid the long inflexion of the genitive plural.*

Nominandi istorum tibi erit magis quam edundi copia. (Pl. Capt. 852.)

Ex majore copia nobis quam illi fuit exemplorum eligendi potestas. (C. Inv. 2. 2.)

Agitur utrum M. Antonio facultas detur opprimendæ reipublicæ, cædis faciendæ bonorum, urbis dividundæ, agrorum suis latronibus condonandi, populum Romanum servitute opprimendi, an horum ei facere nihil liceat. (C. Phil. 5. 3.)

2. *The use of the verbal in -tu does not differ in the genitive from that of ordinary substantives.*

## (B) Verbal nouns in Nominative, and, in oblique language, the Accusative.

1. *The gerund is used in the nominative as subject to the verb est, erat, &c. predicating existence, with a dative of the agent, the whole expression thus conveying the idea of obligation.*

*In oblique language the accusative with esse, &c. is used.*

*The gerund is very rarely used in this way with a direct object dependent upon it, except in Lucretius and Varro. Cicero has it twice: Plautus, Catullus, Vergil, Quintilian once each.*

*Instead of this, what would have been the direct object after the gerund becomes the subject, and the gerundive is used as a secondary predicate. Hence it may often be translated by the passive voice.*

Apud illas ædis sistendæ mihi sunt sycophantiæ. Fores pultabo. 1398

CH. Ad nostras ædis hic quidem habet rectam viam. Hercle, opinor, mi advenienti hac noctu agitandumst vigilas.

(Pl. Trin. 869.)

*Æternas quoniam pœnas in morte timendumst.* (Lucr. i. 112.)

*Quare monendum te est mihi, bone Egnati.* (Catul. 39. 9.)

*Boves arandi causa rudis neque minoris trimos neque majoris quadrimos parandum.* (Varr. R. R. i. 20.)

*Si transferendæ sunt alvi in alium locum, id facere diligenter oportet, et tempora, quibus id potissimum facias, animadvertendum, et loca, quo transferas, idonea providendum.* (Varr. R. R. 3. 16.)

*Volumus sane, nisi molestum est, Cato, tamquam longam aliquam viam confeceris, quam nobis quoque ingrediendum sit, istuc, quo pervenisti, videre quale sit.* (C. Sen. 2.)

*Adeundus mi illic est homo.* (Plaut. Rud. 1298.)

1390

*Meditata mihi sunt omnia mea incommoda, erus si resciverit: monendumst in pistrino, vapulandum, habendæ compedes, opus ruri faciendum.* (Ter. Ph. 249.)

*Discessi ab eo bello in quo aut in acie cadendum fuit, aut in aliquas insidias incidendum, aut deveniendum in victoris manus, aut ad Jubam confugiendum, aut capiendus tamquam exsilio locus, aut consciscenda mors voluntaria.* (C. Fam. 7. 3, § 3.)

*Sed vale; nam, ut tibi ambulandum, ungendum, sic mihi dormiendum.* (C. Att. 9. 7 fin.)

*Hac tempestate serviundum aut imperitandum, habendus metus est aut faciendus, Quirites.* (Sall. Or. Lep. § 10.)

*Quid ergo est, inquis, tui consilii? Dandus est locus fortunæ, cedendum ex Italia, migrandum Rhodum aut aliquo terrarum, arbitror.* (D. Brut. ap. C. Fam. 11. 1.)

*Suo cuique iudicio utendum est.* (C. N. D. 3. 1.)

*Gerendus est tibi mos adolescentibus, Crasse.* (C. Or. 1. 23.)

*Hoc decretum Athenienses quum retulissent, eundum in Ætoliæ Quinctio visum est.* (L. 35. 33.)

*Credo ego istoc exemplo tibi esse pereundum extra portam.*

(Pl. Mil. 359.)

*Aliquando isti principes et sibi et ceteris populi Romani universi auctoritati parendum esse fateantur.* (C. Man. 22.)

*Audendum atque agendum, non consultandum, ait in tanto malo esse.* (L. 22. 53.)

*Ego amplius deliberandum censeo.* (Ter. Ph. 457.)

*Etiam futuri temporis imagine iudices movet quæ maneat eos, qui de vi et injuria questi sunt, nisi vindicentur: fugiendum de civitate, cedendum bonis, aut omnia, quæcunque inimicus fecerit, preferenda.* (Quint. 6. 1, § 19.)

2. *Verbal substantives with stems in -ān are used, similarly to the gerund, but sometimes with tua for tibi, &c. Only Plautus uses them with a direct object.*

I puere prae: cruminam ne quisquam pertundat, cautiost.

(Pl. *Pseud.* 170.)

Quid huc tibi reditiost? quid vestis mutatiost? (Ter. *Eun.* 671.)

Quid mihi scelesto tibi erat auscultatio? quidve hinc abitio? quidve in navem inscensio? (Pl. *Rud.* 502.)

Quid tibi hunc receptio ad test meum virum? (Pl. *Asin.* 919.)

Quid tibi huc ventios? quid tibi hanc aditiost? quid tibi hanc notios, inquam, amicam meam? (Pl. *Truc.* 61.)

Nulla tibi, Pamphile, hic jam consultatiost. (Ter. *Hec.* 650.)

Indica, fac pretium. DOR. Tua merx est: tua indicatiost.

(Pl. *Pers.* 586.)

Utrum e republica sit necne id quod ad vos fertur, vestra existimatio est. (L. 34. 2.)

*Compare also the use of opus and usus (§ 1226).*

### (C) Further uses of gerundive and passive participle.

*The gerundive is used (similarly to its nominative case) as oblique predicate to the direct object of certain transitive verbs to express an action purposed to be done on such object. If the verb is put in the passive the gerundive becomes a direct predicate. (This usage has also an analogy to the ordinary use of the gerundive in oblique cases.)*

Ego quidem meos oculos habeo, nec rogo utendos foris.

(Pl. *Mil.* 347.)

Ibi agrum de nostro patre colendum habebat. (Ter. *Pb.* 364.)

Non habet sapiens mittendos trans maria legatos, nec metanda in ripis hostilibus castra, non opportunis castellis disponenda praesidia. (Sen. *Ben.* 7. 3.) *Comp.* dicere habui, § 1345.

Sapienter fecit filius, quom diviti homini id aurum servandum dedit.

(Pl. *Bac.* 338.)

Demus nos philosophiæ excolendos, patiamurque nos sanari.

(C. *T. D.* 4. 38.)

Vellem suscepisses juvenem regendum. (C. *Att.* 10. 6.)

Cæsar pontem in Arare faciendum curat. (Cæs. *G.* 1. 13.)

Eos omnes Venusini per familias benigne accipiendos curandosque diviserunt. (L. 22. 54.)

Opera deinde facienda ex decreta in eam rem pecunia, lacus sternendos lapide, detergendasque, qua opus esset, cloacas in Aventino et in aliis partibus, qua nondum erant, faciendas locaverunt. (L. 39. 44.)

Nec cælestes modo ceremonias, sed justa quoque funebria, placandosque manes idem pontifex edocebat. (L. 1. 20.)

Simulacrum Dianæ tollendum locatur. (C. Verr. 4. 34.)

Equorum ad quattuor milia domanda equitibus divisa. (L. 24. 20.)

Omnis cetera præda diripienda data est. (L. 22. 52.)

*Similarly* Dixerunt nudatum tectum patere imbris putrefaciendum. (L. 42. 3.)

*With this usage may be compared the use of the passive participle as oblique predicate with habeo, do, reddo, curo, facio, volo, cupio.*

Quæ nos nostramque adulescentiam habent despiciatam. (Ter. Eun. 93.)

Illud exploratum habeto, nihil fieri potuisse sine causa. (C. Div. 2. 28.)

Multis jam rebus perfidiam Hæduorum perspectam habebat. (Cæs. G. 7. 54.)

Inde, ubi prima fides pelago, placataque venti dant maria, deducunt socii navis. (Verg. A. 3. 69.)

Sic stratas legiones Latinorum dabo, quemadmodum legatum jacentem vidistis. (L. 8. 6.)

Tam excoctam (eam) reddam atque atram, quam carbost. (Ter. Ad. 849.)

Jam, ubi ubi erit, inventum tibi curabo et mecum adductum tuom Pamphilum. (Ter. Andr. 684.)

Missos facio mathematicos, grammaticos, musicos. (C. Or. 1. 10.)

Quis vocat? quis nominat me? PH. Qui te conventum cupit. (Pl. Curc. 304.)

Qua re domestica cura te levatum volo. (C. Q. F. 3. 9.)

*Compare* Liberis consultum volumus. (C. Fin. 3. 17.)

Totam rem Lucullo integram servatam oportuit. (C. Ac. 2. 4.)

*Also* § 1371 d; and the expressions with opus, §§ 1250, 1256.

*The gerundive came to be used as a mere attribute with the meaning of (a) obligation or destiny or desert; and this (b) (in negative and quasi-negative sentences) approaches the meaning of possibility.* 1403

*In some passages it is contrasted with the past participle, so as to assume the appearance of a passive participle, either present (see in § 1408) or future (e.g. L. 21. 21; 9. 5, below).*

(a) Adduxit forma expetenda liberalem mulierem. (Pl. Pers. 521.)

O facinus animadvortendum. (Ter. Andr. 767.)

Cognoscite aliud genus imperatoris sane diligenter retinendum et conservandum. (C. Verr. 5. 10.)

Legimus omnes Crantoris de luctu: est enim non magnus, verum aureolus et, ut Tuberoni Panætius præcipit, ad verbum ediscendus libellus. (C. Ac. 2. 44.)

Eis otium divitiæ, optanda alias, oneri miseræque fuere.

(Sall. C. 10.)

Illud in his rebus miserandum magnopere unum ærumnabile erat.

(Lucr. 6. 1230.)

Visere dicet sacra bonis maribus non adeunda deæ. (Tib. 1. 6. 22.)

Manis adiit regemque tremendum. (Verg. G. 4. 469.)

Roma horrenda late nomen in ultimas extendat oras.

(Hor. Od. 3. 3. 45.)

Quies inter labores aut jam exhaustos aut mox exhauriendos renovavit corpora animosque ad omnia de integro patienda.

(L. 21. 21.)

Alii alios intueri, contemplari arma mox tradenda, et inermes futuras dextras. (L. 9. 5.)

Ubi ad ima perventum est, rursum specus alter aperitur ob alia dicendus. (Mela 1. 73.)

Equidem beatos puto, quibus deorum munere datum est aut facere scribenda aut scribere legenda. (Plin. Ep. 6. 16.)

(b) Sic enim majores nostri labores non fugiendos, tristissimo tamen verbo, aerumnas etiam in deo nominaverunt. (C. Fin. 2. 35.) 1404

Metuit fata puellæ, vota que pro domina vix numeranda facit.

(Tib. 4. 4. 12.)

Infandum regina jubes renovare dolorem. (Verg. A. 2. 3.)

Hannibali, vix per se ipsi tolerando Italiæ hosti, (verebantur ne) Hasdrubal jungeretur. (L. 23. 28.)

Dixit domi militiæque sub haud pænitando magistro, ipso Anco rege, Romana se jura, Romanos ritus, didicisse. (L. 1. 35.)

*The gerundive in -bundo- is used as a present participle: in the nominative case it has in the historians (rarely) a direct object.* 1405

Populabundus agros ad oppidum pervenit. (Sisenna ap. Gell. 11. 15.)

Alii corpora huc et illuc, quasi vitabundi aut jacentes tela, agitant.  
(Sall. J. 60.)

Hæc prope contionabundus circumibat homines. (L. 3. 47.)

Hanno ex Brutiis profectus cum exercitu, vitabundus castra hostium consulesque, loco edito castra posuit. (L. 25. 13.)

*The passive participle is, chiefly in Livy and other historians, used, similarly to the gerundive, with a substantive, so as to express, not so much a thing or person acted on, as the action itself. But the action is regarded as completed. Both nominative and oblique cases are so used.* 1406

*In the neuter singular the participle is so used without a substantive, but rarely in oblique cases (except ablative, §§ 1254, 1256).*

*Accusative: with prepositions.*

Regnum Romæ ab condita urbe ad liberatam annos ducentos quadraginta quattuor. (L. 1. 60.) 1407

Hoc nemo ibit infitias, Thebas et ante Epaminondam natum et post ejusdem interitum perpetuo alieno paruisse imperio.

(Nep. 15. 10.)

Militem prætorianum ob subreptum e viridiario pavonem capite puniit. (Suet. Tib. 60.)

Decemviri libros inspicere jussi propter territos vulgo homines novis prodigiis. (L. 22. 36.)

Consul post fusos circa Litanam silvam Boios quietam provinciam habuit. (L. 34. 42.)

Acer Romanus hosti ante expectatum positus stat in agmine castris.  
(Verg. G. 3. 348.)

Inventum est carmen in libris Sibyllinis propter crebrius eo anno de cælo lapidatum. (L. 29. 10.)

*Ablative: (a) without prepositions. (Other instances in § 1250 sqq.)* 1408

Partis honoribus eosdem in foro gessi labores, quos petendis.

(C. Phil. 6. 6.)

Fessos milites, quippe qui capienda urbe tantum laboris periculique adissent, et capta cum iis, qui in arcem confugerant, iniquo etiam loco pugnassent, curare corpora jussit. (L. 26. 48.)

*(b) With prepositions.*

Narrabant queri eum de Milone per vim expulso. (C. Att. 9. 14.)

Major itaque ex civibus amissis dolor, quam lætitia fuis hostibus, fuit. (L. 4. 17.)



*Genitive.*

1409

Barbarus eum quidam palam ob iram interfecti ab eo domini obtruncat. (L. 21. 2.)

Tantus simul mæror patres, misericordiaque sociorum peremptorum indigne, et pudor non lati auxilii, cepit. (L. 21. 16.)

Tum Danai gemitu atque ereptæ virginis ira undique collecti invadunt. (Verg. *A.* 2. 413.)

Sibi quisque cæsi regis expetebat decus. (Curt. 4. 15, § 25.)

Fama dediti benigneque excepti Segestis vulgata, ut quibusque bellum invitis aut cupientibus erat, spe vel dolore excipitur.

(Tac. *A.* 1. 59.)*Nominative.*

1410

Tua scelera di immortales in nostros milites expiaverunt: dubitabat nemo quin violati hospites, legati necati, fana vexata, hanc tantam efficerent vastitatem. (C. *Pis.* 35.)

Catilinæ nuntiavit, ne eum Lentulus et Cethegus aliique ex conjuratione deprehensi terrerent. (Sall. *C.* 48.)

M. Valerius domestica etiam gloria accensus, ut, cujus familiæ decus ejecti reges erant, ejusdem interfecti forent. (L. 2. 20.)

Non dictatorem humerus vulneratus, non Fabium prope affixum equo femur, non brachium abscisum consulem, ex tam ancipiti prælio summovit. (L. 4. 28.)

Prusiam suspectum Romanis et receptus post fugam Antiochi Hannibal et bellum adversus Eumenem motum faciebat. (L. 39. 51.)

Consulatus Ciceronis non mediocre adjecit decus natus eo anno divus Augustus. (Vell. 2. 36.)

Ipsi viderant diem illum, cum occisus dictator Cæsar, aliis pessimum, aliis pulcherrimum facinus videretur. (Tac. *A.* 1. 8.)

Hæc proprie attingunt eos ipsos qui arguuntur, ut telum, ut vestigium, ut cruor, ut deprehensum aliquid quod ablatum ereptumve videatur, ut responsum inconstanter, ut hæsitatum, ut titubatum, ut cum aliquo visus ex quo suspitio oriatur.

(C. *Part. Or.* 33.)

Duri magno sed amore dolores polluto, notumque, furens quid femina possit, triste per augurium Teucrorum pectora ducunt.

(Verg. *A.* 5. 6.)

Arte belli æquasset superiores reges, ni degeneratum in aliis huic quoque decori officisset. (L. 1. 53.)

Diu non perlitatum tenuerat dictatorem. (L. 7. 8.)

Equidem, sicubi loco cessum, si terga data hosti, si signa foede amissa obici nobis possent, tamen, &c. (Ib. 13.)

Tentatum domi per dictatorem, ut ambo patricii consules crearentur, rem ad interregnum perduxit. (Ib. 21.)

## CHAPTER XV.

### USE OF VERB INFLEXIONS. INFLEXIONS OF VOICE.

VERBS with active inflexions are of two classes, transitive <sup>1412</sup> and intransitive. Some verbs belong to both.

Transitive verbs express an action conceived in connection <sup>1413</sup> with an object upon which it is exercised; e.g. *amo*, *I love*; *moneo*, *I warn*; *audio*, *I hear*; *edo*, *I eat*; *pello*, *I push*; *rego*, *I guide*; *tolero*, *I bear*; *uro*, *I burn*; *lædo*, *I wound*.

But it is not necessary that the object should be actually expressed: e.g. *edo*, *I eat*, does not cease to be a transitive verb because no food is specified.

Some verbs being specially applicable to, or frequently used with, a particular object are not unfrequently found in this special sense without the object being expressed (cf. § 1065); e.g.

*appellere* (Hor. S. 1. 5. 12), sc. *navem*, *put in to shore*; *conturbare* (C. Att. 4. 7), sc. *rationes*, *become bankrupt*; *facere*, sc. *sacra*, *sacrifice*; *facere mecum* (C. Cæcin. fin.), sc. *rem*, *make with me, on my side*; *habere* (Pl. Men. 69), sc. *domum*, *dwell* (hence *habitare*); *inhibere* (C. Att. 13. 21), sc. *navem*, *back water*; *mittere* (C. Att. 13. 11), sc. *nuntium*, *send a message*; *obire*, sc. *mortem*, *die*; *tendere* (Cæs. G. 6. 37), sc. *pelles*, *pitch tents*.

Intransitive (or neuter) verbs express a state of being, or an <sup>1414</sup> action not conceived in connection with any object, as thereby affected; e.g. *curro*, *I run*; *horreo*, *I shiver*; *gaudeo*, *I rejoice*; *præsum*, *I am at the head*; *ardeo*, *I am on fire*; *noceo*, *I am hurtful*.

Such a state or action may affect other persons or things indirectly, and this indirect object may be expressed in an oblique case, just as a similarly indirect object may be expressed with a transitive verb.

Verbs with passive inflexions are of two classes; viz. verbs <sup>1475</sup> which have also an active voice, and verbs which have no (corresponding) active voice. The latter are called deponents. (See list in § 734).

In verbs which have also an active voice, passive inflexions are <sup>1476</sup> used principally to bring into prominence either the object of the action by making it the subject of the sentence, or the occurrence of the action, without specifying the agent.

If the object of the action be a person or thing, i.e. if the verb be transitive, the passive may be used in both numbers and all three persons. Thus, *lædo*, *I wound*, may have for object *mē*, *tē*, *eum* (*eam*, *id*), *nos*, *vos*, *eos* (*eas*, *ea*). Consequently in the passive we may have (*ego*) *lædor*, (*tu*) *læderis*, (*is*, *ea*, *id*) *læditur*, (*nos*) *lædimur*, (*vos*) *lædimini*, (*il*, *eae*, *ea*) *læduntur*, *I am (being) wounded*, *thou art wounded*, &c.

If the verb be intransitive, and therefore express merely the existence or occurrence of an action, the passive is used in the third person singular only (as if the action itself were the real object of such a verb). Thus *noceo*, *I am hurtful*, *I do hurt*; *nocetur*, *hurtfulness exists*, *hurt is (being) done*; *eo*, *I go*; *itur*, *going takes place*, *is (being) done*; *suadeo*, *I give advice*; *suadetur*, *advice is given*.

Beside the more usual case, in which the subject is acted on by <sup>1477</sup> others, passive inflexions are sometimes used in speaking: (1) of an action done by the subject to himself; and more frequently (2) of an action experienced without any specified external agency; e.g.

(1) *adducor* (Ov. M. 3. 598), *bring myself to*; *cingor*, *accingor*, *gird myself*; *commendor* (C. Fin. 3. 5), *set myself off*; *concillior* (ib.), *unite myself*; *condor* (Verg. A. 2. 401), *put myself away*; *dedor* (L. 26. 7), *give myself up*; *erigor* (Hor. S. 2. 8. 58), *raise myself*; *exerceor*, *exercise myself*; *exuor*, *take off myself*; *feror*, *bear myself*; *figor* (Hor. Od. 3. 6. 22), *train myself*; *fricor*, *rub myself*; *induor*, *put on myself*; *jactor*, *boast myself*; *jungor* (Ov. M. 14. 762), *join myself*; *liberor* (C. Att. 3. 20), *free myself*; *perluor* (Ov. M. 3. 173), *quash myself over*; *ponor* (C. Fam. 9. 15), *place myself*; *præcipitor*, *throw myself headlong*; *purgor* (Hor. A. P. 302), *purge myself*; *recreor*, *refresh myself*; *reprimor* (Pl. Mil. 1368), *restrain myself*; *retineor* (Pl. Trin. 641), *hold myself back*; *sinuor* (Ov.), *bend myself*; *sternor*, *throw myself on the ground*; *tegor* (L. 4. 37), *cover myself*; *tergor*, *wipe myself*; *vector* (and compounds), *turn myself*; *ungor*, *anoint myself*; *volvor* (and compounds), *roll myself*; and others. So Lucilius 7. 12, ed. Müller, *rador*, *subvellor*, *desquamor*, *pumicor*, *ornor*, *expolior*, *pingor*.

(2) Corresponding in English to verbs used intransitively: *alor*, feed; *circumagor*, move round; *congregor*, herd with, *congregamur*, we collect; *contineor* (Cæs. G. 7. 80), keep; *contrahor*, contract; *corrumpor*, spoil; *delector*, delight; *exstinguor* (of a light), go out; *findor*, split; *fundor*, pour; *diffundor*, spread; *lavor*, bathe; *mergor*, plunge; *moveor*, move; *mutor*, change; *ornor* (Pl. Mil. 251), dress; *pascor*, feed; *rumpor*, burst; *tondeor* (L. 27. 34), shave; *devortor*, turn aside to lodge; and many others, where it is difficult to say that there is any precise notion of action either by oneself or by others.

Sometimes also (3) the action is one which the subject gets done or lets be done to him: e.g. *cogor*, I find myself compelled; *non defatigabor* (C. Or. 3. 36), I will not permit myself to be tired out, &c.

The simple import of the passive inflexions is the same in all these cases, viz. that the subject is also the object of the action.

Deponents have passive inflexions, but the meaning and construction of verbs with active inflexions. Some deponents are transitive, e.g. *fateor*, I confess; some intransitive, e.g. *epulor*, I banquet.

In a few verbs this deponent use of the passive inflexions coexists with a properly passive one. The past participle is not unfrequently subject to vacillation. (See Book II. chap. XXIX.)

The precise import of the passive inflexions in the case of each deponent is not easy to tell, because we do not know the precise conception attached originally to the verbal stem. The ordinary meaning which we attach to the verb in its deponent form is that original meaning as modified by the effect of the passive inflexions.

The following appear to be some of the shades of meaning which suggested the use of the passive (originally reflexive) inflexions.

1. Action upon oneself, e.g. *fungor*, I free myself; *proficiscor*, I set myself forward (i.e. travel); *potior*, I make myself master; *apiscor*, I fasten to myself; *amplector*, I fold myself round (i.e. embrace); *nitor*, I make myself kneel (§ 129).

2. Action within oneself, e.g. *morior*, I die; *patior*, I suffer; *irascor*, I get angry; *reor*, I think; *spatior*, I walk about.

3. Action for oneself: e.g. *obliviscor*, *I blot out for myself*; *mereor*, *I earn for myself* (*mereo*, simply *I earn*); *epulor*, *I make a feast for myself*; *plascor*, *I provide myself with fish*. So *metior*, *partior*, *sortior*, all convey the idea of the subject's share in the result.

4. Becoming (e.g. playing a part): e.g. *blandior*, *I play the coxer*; *furor*, *I play the thief*, hence *steal*; *dominor*, *I act the lord*; *interpretor*, *I act interpreter*.

5. Engagement in a mutual action. The effect is seen chiefly in plural number; e.g. *osculamur*, *we kiss*; *prællor*, *I wage war*; *comitor*, *I accompany* (or *make myself an attendant?*); *rixor*, *I wrangle*.

In the construction of passive verbs several points require notice. 1420

1. *If a transitive verb be changed from the active to the passive voice, the following additional changes are required, if the sentence is to express the same fact, as it did.*

- (a) *The object of the active verb becomes subject to the passive verb.*
- (b) *A secondary predicate of the object changes from the accusative to the nominative.*
- (c) *The agent (subject of the active verb) is put in the ablative with the prep. ab. (See §§ 1146, 1147.)*

e.g. Lucius Marcum	{	laedit Druso adiutorem dedit <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 10px;">Lucius</div> consulem esse dicit	{	wounds Marcus. gave Marcus to Drusus as a helper. says Marcus is consul.
--------------------	---	---	---	---

Marcus a Lucio	{	laeditur Druso adiutor datus est <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 10px;">Marcus</div> consul esse dicitur	{	is being wounded by Lucius. was given to Drusus as a helper. is being said by Lucius to be consul.
----------------	---	---	---	---

2. *Verbs, properly intransitive, sometimes, by a stretch of the conception, receive passive inflexions, as if they were transitive (cf. § 1123).* <sup>1421</sup>

Citharædus ridetur, chorda qui semper oberrat eadem.

(Hor. A. P. 356.)

Neque enim hic, ut gentibus quæ regnantur, certa dominorum domus et ceteri servi. (Tac. G. 23.)

At certe credemur ait, si verba sequetur exitus. (Ov. F. 3. 351.)

Animus auditoris persuasus esse videtur. (Corn. I. 6.)

Tota mihi dormitur hiems. (Mart. 13. 59.)

3. *An intransitive verb is not used in the passive except impersonally, and no further change is required, except usually the omission of the agent. (If expressed, it will be usually in the ablative with ad as above.)* <sup>1422</sup>

(An indirect object to an intransitive (passive) verb in Latin will sometimes appear in English translation as the subject of a transitive (passive) verb).

Persuasumst homini; factumst; ventumst; vincimur; duxit.

(Ter. Ph. 135.)

Ne illam ecastor fænerato mi abstulisti. Sic datur. PE. Sic datur.

Properato absente me comesse prandium. (Pl. Men. 626.)

Itur ad te, Pseudole. SI. Salve. Quid agitur? PS. Statur hic ad hunc modum. (Pl. Ps. 457.)

Sed jam, si placet, de provinciis decedatur, in urbemque redeatur.

(C. Leg. 3. 8.)

Invidetur commodis hominum ipsorum, studiis autem eorum ceteris commodandi favetur. (C. Or. 2. 51.)

Sed tamen satis fiet a nobis, neque parcetur labori. (C. Att. 2. 14.)

Ait nullam umquam gentem promptiorem veniæ dandæ fuisse; quoties rebellionem etiam majorum suorum ignotum!

(L. 25. 16, § 12.)

Vult sibi quisque credi. (L. 22. 22.)

Quid ergo? ista condicio est testium, ut, quibus creditum non sit negantibus, isdem credatur aientibus? (C. Rab. P. 12.)

Tandem quum iræ resedissent, ordine consuli cœpit. (L. 2. 29.)

Nunc vero nactus occasionem, postea quam navigari cœptum est, cupidissime et quam creberrime potero scribam ad te.

(Pollio ap. C. Fam. 10. 31.)

Conclamatum 'ad arma,' concursumque in muros atque portas est.  
(L. 6. 28.)

A Gotta primisque ordinibus acriter resistebatur. (Caes. G. 5. 30.)

Mihi quidem persuaderi numquam potuit animos emori.  
(C. Sen. 22.)

Dixit totam plebem ære alieno demersam esse, nec sisti posse, ni  
omnibus consulatur. (L. 2. 29.)

In eam spem erecta civitas erat, in Africa eo anno bellatum iri,  
finemque bello Punico adesse. (L. 29. 14.)

4. *A neuter pronoun in the singular number (which is in the <sup>1423</sup>accusative as denoting the extent of an action after an active verb) is found with the passive construction.*

(It may be considered as an accusative still, or perhaps as a nominative qualifying the impersonal subject.)

Hoc a Lucio { Marcus læditur, Marcus receives this wound from Lucius.  
Marco nocetur, This hurt is being done Marcus by Lucius.

Mihi quidem ipsi nihil ab istis jam noceri potest. (C. Cat. 3. 12.)

Hoc solum pugnatur. (C. Rosc. Am. 3.)

*So the cognate accusative is occasionally found converted into the <sup>1424</sup>subject of an (intransitive) verb in the passive.*

Hac pugna pugnata Romam profectus est. (Nep. 23. 5.)

Tertia jam vivitur aetas. (Ov. Met. 12. 188.)

## CHAPTER XVI.

### USE OF VERBAL INFLEXIONS OF PERSON AND NUMBER.

#### i. Subject and predicate contained in the verb. 1425

*The finite verb contains both subject and predicate in itself, the personal inflexions expressing the subject, and the stem the predicate.*

*Hence, whenever in English an unemphatic pronoun is sufficient to denote the subject without risk of mistake, the finite verb in Latin requires no addition for this purpose. This is so with the verb*

##### 1. in the first or second person. 1426

*Thus curro, currimus, refer to the person or persons speaking; curris, curritis, curre, currite, to the person or persons spoken to.*

*But the pronouns may be added for the sake of emphasis or contrast.*

Quod ego fui ad Trasumenum, ad Cannas, id tu hodie es.

(L. 30. 30.)

Dominus est: vincit hic te: vince tu nunc animum. (Corn. 4. 52.)

Negat cuncta Italia, negat senatus, negatis vos. (C. Phil. 4. 4.)

Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducitis; ego libertatem, quæ non erat, peperit, vos partam servare non voltis. (Corn. 4. 53.)

##### 2. in the third person, when it is the same as the subject of the last preceding verb of the same number and person, and which is suited to the sense. (Very frequent.) 1427

Venit Verres in ædem Castoris: considerat templum: versat se, quærit, quid agat. (C. Verr. 1. 51.)

##### 3. sometimes (a) in the third person plural, when the subject is 'persons in general.' 1428

Deorum immortalium judicia solent in scholis proferre de morte.

(C. T. D. 1. 47.)

Si, ut aiunt Danao, quinquaginta sint filiæ, tot dotes magnam quærunť pecuniam. (C. Par. 6. 1.)

Casino salutatum veniebant, Aquino, Interamna: admissus est nemo.

(C. Phil. 2. 41.)

Vulgo ex oppidis publice gratulabantur Pompejo. (C. T. D. 1. 35.)



Hujus atrocitas facinoris novam velut flammam regis invidiæ adjecit, ut vulgo ipsum liberosque exsecrarentur. (L. 40. 5.)

Conjugibus liberisque et senioribus super sexaginta annos in propinquam Epirum missis, ab quindecim ad sexaginta annos conjurant, nisi victores se non redituros. (L. 26. 25.)

Adice, quod genus ultionis est eripere ei, qui fecit, factæ contumeliæ voluptatem. Solent dicere, 'o miserum me: puto, non intellexit.' (Sen. *Dial.* 2. 17.)

Hence we find sentences in which *partim*, 'partly,' appears to perform the functions of a subject, as if it were *pars* or *alii*. (Comp. *vulgo* above.)

Partim e nobis ita timidi sunt, ut omnem populi Romani beneficiorum memoriam abjecerint, partim ita a republica aversi ut se hosti favere præ se ferant. (C. *Phil.* 8. 11.)

More correctly *Amici* partim deseruerunt me, partim etiam prodiderunt. (C. *Q. F.* 1. 3. 5.)

(b) in the third person singular, when an indefinite subject has been implied in a preceding clause.

Neque mihi præstabilius quicquam videtur, quam posse dicendo voluntates impellere quo velit, unde autem velit, deducere. (C. *Or.* 1. 8.)

Idem, si puer parvus occidit, æquo animo ferendum putant, si vero in cunis, ne querendum quidem. Atqui ab hoc acerbius exegit natura quod dederat. Nondum gustaverat, inquit, vitæ suavitatem. (C. *T. D.* 1. 39.)

Negabat ullam vocem inimiciorem amicitiae potuisse reperiri quam ejus, qui dixisset ita amare oportere, ut si aliquando esset osurus. (C. *Lael.* 16.)

4. in certain verbs in the 3rd person singular, where the fact of the action, state, or feeling is the prominent point and the doer is left indefinite. Such verbs are called *impersonals*, and may be classified as follows:

(a) The verbs *miseret*, *piget*, *pudet*, *paenitet*, *taedet*.

*Ipsius facti pudet*. (Ter. *Haut.* 576.) *Miseret me aliorum*.

(Other examples in § 1328. Many other verbs, e.g. *decet*, *oportet*, *accidit*, &c. are called *impersonals*: but these have always a neuter pronoun, or infinitive, or sentence for subject.)

(b) Expressions concerning the weather or sky.

*Fulminat*; *tonat*; *pluit*; *gelat* (Plin. 14, § 39); *advesperascit*.

*Instat superstitio*, si *fulserit*, si *tonuerit*, si *tactum aliquid erit* de cælo. (C. *Div.* 2. 72.)

Cum æstate vehementius tonuit quam fulsit, ventos ex ea parte denuntiat, contra si minus tonuit, imbrem. Cum sereno cælo fulgetræ erunt et tonitrua, hiemabit, atrocissime autem, cum ex omnibus quattuor partibus cæli fulgurabit; cum ab aquilone tantum, in posterum diem aquam portendet. (Plin. 18, § 354.)

Reate imbri lapidavit. (L. 43. 13.)

Quom caletur, cocleæ in occulto latent. (Pl. Capt. 78.)

Hoc quidem edepol hau multo post luce lucebit. (Pl. Curc. 182.)

Luciscit hoc jam. (Ter. Haut. 410.) *For hoc, comp. § 1423.*

Nondum legere poteramus; nam et lumina dimiseramus, nec satis lucebat. (C. Att. 16. 13 a.)

(c) *Intransitive verbs are sometimes so used, generally in the passive voice (see § 1422).*

Dicto paretur. (L. 9. 32.) Cui parci potuit? (L. 21. 14.)

Uter igitur est divitior—cui deest an cui superat? (C. Par. 6. 3.)

Mihi benest et tibi malest: dignissimumst. (Pl. Most. 52.)

Lites severe æstimatæ: cui placet, obliviscitur: cui dolet, meminit. (C. Mur. 20.)

5. *If two relative clauses refer to the same antecedent but require the relatives to be in different cases, the relative is sometimes omitted in the second clause, if it be the subject<sup>1</sup>, and if no ambiguity is likely to arise. (Sometimes the demonstrative is used for the second relative.)*

Qui pauperes sunt homines, miseri vivont, præsertim quibus nec quæstus est nec artem didicere ullam. (Pl. Rud. 291.)

Quid ille fecerit (rogo), quem neque pudet quicquam, nec metuit quemquam. (Ter. Ad. 84.)

Sunt quibus ne hæc quidem certamina exponere satis fuerit, adjecterint et Appii criminationes de Fabio absente ad populum et pertinaciam adversus præsentem consulem prætoris. (L. 9. 26.)

*See also Sall. J. 101 in § 1437.*

6. *Sometimes the subject is to be supplied from an oblique case in a subsequent relative clause. Not uncommon in Lucretius.*

Ita capta lepore te sequitur cupide, quo quamque inducere pergis.  
(Lucr. 1. 15, where see Munro, ed. 3.)

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes also if it be the object, and the preceding relative is in some case other than the masc. or fem. nominative, e.g. 'quæ non inerunt et quæres.' (Varr. R. R. 1. 7.) 'Quod magis ad nos pertinet et nescire malumst, agitamus.' (Hor. S. 2. 6. 72.) See Madvig on Cic. Fin. 5, § 26.

## ii. Subject expressed by a separate word or words.

*As the finite verb always contains its own subject in its personal inflexions, the separate word, usually called its subject, is, strictly speaking, in apposition to these inflexions for the purpose of closer definition.* 143

1. *When the subject is expressed by a separate word, the finite verb is in the same number and person as its subject.*

Quid enim ego laboravi, aut in quo evigilarunt curæ et cogitationes meae? (C. Par. 2.)

Te ærumnæ premunt omnes, qui te florentem putas; te lubidines torquent; tu dies noctesque cruciaris, cui non sat est, quod est. (Ib.)

Sunt hic etiam sua præmia laudi: sunt lacrimæ rerum et mentem mortalia tangunt. (Verg. A. 1. 461.)

Eum tu hominem terreto, si quem eris nactus. (C. Par. 2.)

Nos igitur divitiores, qui plura habemus? (C. Par. 6. 3.)

Omnes enim patres familiæ falce et aratro relictis intra murum correpsimus. (Col. 1. præf. § 15.)

*Exceptions:*

(a) *If the subject be a substantive in the singular number, but denotes more than one person, the verb is sometimes in the plural.* 143

(Rare in Caesar and Sallust, hardly at all in Cicero.)

Juventus delecta, ubi plurimum periculi ac timoris ostendebatur, ibi vi majore obsistebant. (L. 21. 7.)

Cetera classis, prætoria nave amissa, quantum quæque remis valuit, fugerunt. (L. 25. 26.)

Diffugiunt alii ad naves; pars scandunt rursus equum.

(Verg. A. 2. 400.)

Uterque eorum ex castris stativis a flumine Apso exercitum educunt.

(Cæs. G. 3. 30.)

Aperite aliquis actutum ostium. (Ter. Ad. 634.)

Multitudo pars procurrit in vias, pars in vestibulis stat, pars ex tectis fenestrisque prospectant et quid rei sit rogitant. (L. 24. 21.)

*So in loose language, Uter eratis, tun' an ille, major?*

(Pl. Men. 1119.)

(b) *The verb, if it closely follow a secondary predicate, sometimes conforms to it in number. (This is rare, except where it is indifferent which substantive be considered the subject.)* <sup>1435</sup>

Amantium iræ amoris integratio est. (Ter. Andr. 555.)

Contentum rebus suis esse maximæ sunt certissimæque divitiæ.

(C. Par. 6. 3.)

Quas geritis vestes sordida lana fuit. (Ov. A. A. 3. 222.)

2. *When the subject is composed of two or more substantives, denoting different persons or things, but regarded as in connection with each other, the verb is put in the plural: in the first person plural, if the subject contain the first person; and in the second person plural, if the subject contain the second person and not the first.* <sup>1436</sup>

Paulus et Marcellus privato consilio prætereuntur. (Cæs. C. 1. 6.)

Si tu et Tullia, lux nostra, valetis, ego et suavissimus Cicero valeamus. (C. Fam. 14. 5.)

Errastis, Rulle, vehementer et tu et nonnulli collegæ tui, qui sperastis vos populares existimari. (C. Agr. 1. 7.)

Primus Tarentinus dicitur sinus, in eoque sunt Tarentus, Metapontum, Heraclea, Croto, Thurium: secundus Scyllaceus... in quo est Petelia, Carcinus, Scyllaceum, Mystiæ. (Mela 2, § 68.)

Ego et vos scimus inurbanum lepido seponere dicto.

(Hor. A. P. 272.)

*Occasionally the plural is found when a singular substantive has another joined to it by the preposition cum; rarely when the connexion is by a disjunctive.* <sup>1437</sup>

Bocchus cum peditibus, quos Volux filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna, in itinere morati, adfuerant, postremam Romanorum aciem invadunt. (Sall. J. 101.)

Ipse dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur. (L. 21. 60.)

Hæc neque ego neque tu fecimus. (Ter. Ad. 103.)

*If the two or more substantives composing the subject really form but one notion, the verb is frequently put in the singular.* <sup>1438</sup>

Senatus populusque Romanus intellegit. (C. Fam. 5. 8.)

Religio et fides anteponatur amicitiae. (C. Off. 3. 10.)

Cum tempus necessitasque postulat, decertandum manu est.

(Ib. 1. 23.)

Hora momentumque temporis evertendis imperiis sufficit.

(Sen. Ep. 91, § 6.)

## iii. Omission of the verbal predicate.

1. *When two or more subjects require the same predicate, but <sup>1439</sup> joint action &c. is not to be expressed, the predicate is usually expressed only once (unless emphasis be sought), and is put in the number and person required by the subject nearest to it in the sentence.*

Hoc mihi et Peripatetici et vetus Academia concedit. (C. Ac. 2. 35.)

In hominibus juvandis aut mores spectari aut fortuna solet.

(C. Off. 2. 20.)

Dux nobis et auctor opus est. (C. Fam. 2. 6.)

Vir bonus et sapiens dici delector ego ac tu. (Hor. Ep. 1. 16. 32.)

Dionysium abs te et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit. (C. Att. 4. 17.)

Et tu et omnes homines sciunt. (C. Fam. 13. 8.)

Tenet ima lacunæ lenta salix ulvæque leves juncique palustres.

(Ov. M. 8. 335.)

In qua sententia Democritus, Heraclitus, Empedocles, Aristoteles fuit. (C. Fat. 17.)

Legiones ipse dictator, magister equitum suos equites ducit.

(L. 3. 27.)

Quæsturam nos, consulatum Cotta, ædilitatem petebat Hortensius.

(C. Brut. 92.)

Nunc mihi nihil libri, nihil litteræ, nihil doctrina prodest.

(C. Att. 9. 10.)

Me non tantum litteræ, quantum longinquitas temporis mitigavit.

(C. Fam. 6. 4.)

Quis illum consulem, nisi latrones putant? (C. Phil. 4. 4.)

Hoc si minus verbis, re cogitur confiteri. (C. Fat. 10.)

Nec, si nullius alterius nos, ne civium quidem horum pudet?

(L. 22. 14.)

Sed ei cariora semper omnia, quam decus atque pudicitia fuit.

(Sall. C. 25.)

But Dixit juratus P. Titius tutor pupilli Junii; dixit M. Junius tutor et patruus: Mustius dixisset si viveret: dixit L. Domitius.

(C. Verr. 1. 53.)

2. *When a plural subject is distributed by an apposition of <sup>1440</sup> allus, quisque, pars, &c., either the general plural predicate is omitted, or more usually the special singular predicate.*

Ambo exercitus, Vejens Tarquiniensisque, suas quisque abeunt domos. (L. 2. 7.)

Quisque suos patimur manis. (Verg. A. 6. 743.)

Decemviri perturbati, alius in aliam partem castrorum, discurrunt.  
(L. 3. 50.)

Inertia et mollitia animi, alius alium expectantes, cunctamini.  
(Sall. C. 52, § 28.)

Pictores et poetæ, suum quisque opus a vulgo considerari vult.  
(C. Off. 1. 41.)

Palatium Romulus, Remus Aventinum ad inaugurandum templa capiunt. (L. 1. 6.)

His oratoribus duæ res maximæ, altera alteri defuit. (C. Brut. 55.)  
Consules ejus anni, alter morbo, alter ferro perierat. (L. 41. 18.)

3. *The verb is sometimes omitted when it can be readily supplied by consideration of the context. So especially dico and facio; and in answers, the verb used in the question &c.*

Quid tu, inquit, tam mane, Tubero? Tum ille. (C. R. P. 1. 9.)  
Crassus verbum nullum contra gratiam. (C. Att. 1. 18.)

Heus tu, manum de tabula. (C. Fam. 5. 23.) Cicero Attico salutem.

Sed 'bene Messallam' sua quisque ad pocula dicat. (Tib. 2. 1. 31.)

Sapienter hæc reliquisti, si consilio; feliciter, si casu. (C. Fam. 7. 28.)

Restat ut in castra Sexti, aut, si forte, Bruti nos conferamus.  
(C. Att. 14. 13.)

Venter in medio quietus nihil aliud, quam datis voluptatibus fruitur.  
(L. 2. 32.)

Galli per biduum nihil aliud, quam steterunt parati. (L. 34. 46.)

Nam quod aiunt, 'minima de malis' id est, ut turpiter potius quam calamitose. (C. Off. 3. 29.)

Equem tu hominem infeliciorem? (C. Att. 10. 18.)

A me C. Cæsar pecuniam? Cur potius, quam ego ab illo? ·  
(C. Phil. 2. 29.)

Ne tum quidem sequeris. Tam bonus gladiator rudem tam cito?  
(Ib.)

Magis ac magis anxia Agrippina, quod nemo a filio. (Tac. A. 14. 8.)

Ibi usque ad necem operiere loris. SA. Loris liber? (Ter. Ad. 1. 82.)

Obsecro, num ludis tu me? MI. Ego te? quamobrem? (Ib. 697.)

Num igitur peccamus? minime vos quidem. (C. Att. 8. 9.)

Quo mihi fortunam, si non conceditur uti? (Hor. Epist. 1. 5. 12.)

Quid, si hoc muto? (Cæcin. ap. C. Fam. 6. 7.)

Quid, quod sic loqui vetant? (C. Or. 47.) Quid multa?

Sed hoc nihil ad me. (C. Or. 2. 32.) Quorsum hæc?

4. *A predication is rarely made by two nouns only, or a noun and attributive (§ 1009), except where the finite verb, if expressed, would be some tense of the indicative mood of sum. (In good prose, rarely in relative or dependent interrogative sentences.) In Plautus, a finite verb is even in this case almost always expressed, except in a few phrases.*

Sed hæc vetera: illud vero recens, Cæsarem meo consilio interfectum. (C. *Pbil.* 2. 11.)

Omnes ergo in culpa. (Ib. 12.) Quietum inde iter. (Tac. *A.* 1. 51.)

Suave, mari magno turbantibus æquora ventis, e terra magnum alterius spectare laborem. (Lucr. 2. 1.)

Quid hoc? Bene hercle factum. Num quid aliud? Itane? (Plaut.)

Mirum ni hic me quasi murænam exossare cogitat. (Pl. *Ampb.* 319.)

Si quidem hercle possis, nil prius neque fortius. (Ter. *Eun.* 50.)

Potest incidere sæpe contentio et comparatio de duobus honestis, utrum honestius. (C. *Off.* 1. 43.)

Cadit statim similtas ab altera parte deserta: Nisi paria, non pugnant. (Sen. *Ir.* 2. 34.)

Sequar te, ut, si qua ex hoc invidia, non tantum tua.

(Plin. *Ep.* 7. 33, § 6.)

*This predication without est, &c. (besides its occurrence where the est is expressed in an adjoining clause) is common (a) in descriptions of a scene or the like (comp. § 1359); and (b) with past participle.*

(a) Redeunti interea ex ipsa re mi incidit suspitio, 'hem paululum obsoni: ipse tristis: de improviso nuptiæ: non cohærent...Ego me continuo ad Chremem: quom illo advenio, solitudo ante ostium. (Ter. *And.* 359 seqq.)

Age nunc iter expediti latronis cum Milonis impedimentis compare. Semper ille antea cum uxore, tum sine ea: numquam nisi in ræda, tum in equo; comites Græculi, quocunque ibat, tum nugarum in comitatu nihil. (C. *Mil.* 21.)

Ante diem tertium Idus Novembris, cum sacra via descenderem, insecutus est me cum suis: clamor, lapides, fustes, gladii, hæc improvisa omnia. (C. *Att.* 4. 3, § 3; cf. seqq.)

Videamus nunc de beato: sine virtute certe nullo modo: virtus autem actiosa; et deus vester nihil agens, expers virtutis igitur; ita ne beatus quidem. Quæ ergo vita? (C. *N.D.* 1. 40.)

Mare sævom, inportuosum, ager frugum fertilis, bonus pecori, arbori infecundus; cælo terraque penuria aquarum. (Sall. *J.* 17.)

(b) Interea cum meis omnibus copiis vexavi Amaniensis, hostis sempiternos: multi occisi, capti; reliqui dissipati; castella munita inproviso adventu capta et incensa. (C. Fam. 2. 10.)

Et Eumeni absenti et præsenti Attalo gratiæ actæ, et ædes liberæ locus lautia decreta, et munera data. (L. 35. 23.)

*Rarely as* Arma, quibus lætatus, habe tua. (Verg. A. 10. 827.)

*Similarly the infinitive esse is usually omitted with the future participle, and frequently with the past participle, esp. after volo, oportet, &c.); sometimes in other cases. Occasionally fulsse is omitted.*

Respondit se id neminem facturum putasse. (C. Rosc. A. 25.)

(Dixit) neminem se plebeium contempturum, ubi contemni desissent. (L. 4. 35.)

Senatus censuit frequens coloniam Lavicos deducendam. (L. 4. 47.)

Quid dubitatis? jam sublimem raptum oportuit. (Pl. Men. 995.)

Quid refert utrum voluerim fieri an gaudeam factum?

(C. Phil. 2. 12.)

Præfatus est sibi defectionis ab Romanis consilium placitum nullo modo (sc. fuisse), nisi necessarium fuisset. (L. 23. 2.)

## CHAPTER XVII.

### Of the INDICATIVE and IMPERATIVE MOODS and THEIR TENSES.

#### (A) TENSES OF INDICATIVE MOOD.

1445

The Indicative mood is the primary and ordinary form of the finite verb, and is therefore used wherever there is no special reason for employing the imperative or subjunctive. Not only facts but suppositions and commands can be put in the indicative mood, but only when the writer or speaker relies on the tenor of the context, or turn of the rhetoric, to guard against misapprehension, and does not care to mark the supposition or command by the form of the expression.

The tenses of the Latin verb in the indicative mood may be divided either (i) according to the time to which they relate, or (ii) according to the completeness or incompleteness of the action spoken of.

1446



i. *Time to which the tenses relate.*

According to the time to which they relate, the tenses are either <sup>1447</sup> primary or secondary.

The *primary* tenses denote time contemporaneous with, antecedent, or subsequent to the time *at* which we are speaking, or to some time at which we feign ourselves to be present and watching events.

The *secondary* tenses denote time contemporaneous with, antecedent, or subsequent to some other time *of* which we are speaking, and which we affirm to be past.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

1448

	PRIMARY.	SECONDARY.
Contemporary.	Present; <i>dicō</i> , <i>I am saying.</i>	Imperfect; <i>dicebam</i> , <i>I was saying.</i>
Subsequent.	Future; <i>dicam</i> , <i>I shall (you, be will) say.</i>	Aorist; <i>dixi</i> , <i>I said</i> (i.e. after something had happened <sup>1</sup> ).
Subsequent to present time but antecedent to some future event.	Completed Future; <i>dixero</i> , <i>I shall (you, be will) have said.</i>	
Antecedent.	Perfect; <i>dixi</i> , <i>I have said.</i>	Pluperfect; <i>dixeram</i> , <i>I had said.</i>

## PASSIVE VOICE.

1449

	PRIMARY.	SECONDARY.
Contemporary.	Pres. { <i>amor</i> , <i>I am being loved.</i>	Impf. { <i>amabar</i> , <i>I was being loved.</i>
Subsequent.	Fut. { <i>amabor</i> , <i>I shall (you, be will) be loved.</i>	Aor. { <i>amatus sum</i> , <i>I was loved.</i>
Subsequent to present time but antecedent to some future event.	Completed Future; <i>amatus ero</i> (or <i>fuero</i> ), <i>I shall (you, be will) have been loved.</i>	
Antecedent.	Perf. { <i>amatus sum</i> , <i>I am (or have been) loved.</i>	Plup. { <i>amatus eram</i> (or <i>fueram</i> ), <i>I had been loved.</i>

<sup>1</sup> This arrangement is suggested by Burnouf (quoted by Donaldson, *New Crat.* § 372).

ii. *Completeness or incompleteness of the action.*

1450

The present, future, and imperfect tenses express incomplete action, and hence are sometimes called respectively present imperfect, future imperfect, past imperfect.

e.g. *lædo, lædor, I am wounding, am being wounded; lædam, lædar, I shall wound, shall be wounded; lædebam, lædebar, I was wounding, was being wounded.*

The perfect, completed future, and pluperfect express completed action, and hence are sometimes called respectively present perfect, future perfect, past perfect.

e.g. *læsi, læsus sum, I have wounded, have been wounded; læsero, læsus ero, I shall have wounded, shall have been wounded; læseram, læsus eram, I had wounded, had been wounded.*

The shade of meaning, which the incomplete or complete tenses imply, varies somewhat with the meaning of the verb itself (as denoting an act, or as denoting a state), and is more clearly seen in some tenses or uses than in others. A periphrasis is often the only mode of expressing in English the meaning implied, but, it must be remembered, such a periphrasis often errs on the other side by giving too hard and precise an expression.

Especially noticeable is the correspondence of a single tense, the perfect, in Latin to two tenses (aorist and perfect) in Greek, and two so-called tenses in English: e.g. *factus sum, I was made, ἐποίησα, and I have made, πέποικα; factus sum, I was made, ἐποίηθην, and I have been made, πέποιμαι.* In the active voice the Latin form primarily denotes the past act, *I made*, and secondarily the result of that act, *I have made*. In the passive voice it denotes primarily the resulting state, *I am a made person*, and secondarily the act which produced it, *I was made or I became*.

In the passive voice, since all the tenses in English, but only the completed tenses in Latin, are compounded of a past participle and the verb of *being*, there is a want of exact correspondence between the two languages.

Thus *amatus sum* is (1) *I am loved* (present of the state); (2) *I have been loved* (perfect of the state); (3) *I was loved* (aorist of the act). *Amor* is *I am loved*, i.e. *I am being loved* (present of the act). *Amatus ero, I shall be loved* (future of the state). *Amatus fuero, I shall have been loved* (completed future of the state). But both are used without much or any distinction for futures of the state, or completed futures of the act. *Amabor, I shall be loved*, is the future of the act.

*Amatus eram, (1) I was (at the time) loved, i.e. a loved person (a contemporary state in past time); (2) I had been loved (an*

antecedent act in past time). *Amabar, I was loved, i.e. I was being loved* (a contemporary act in past time).

*Amatus fui, I was (at one time, or for some time) loved; i.e. a loved person* (aorist of the state). It is not used of the perfect of the state (*I have been loved, amatus sum*), nor of a contemporaneous state in past time (*amatus eram*)<sup>1</sup>.

*Amatus fueram, (1) I had been loved, i.e. at one time, or for some time, (an antecedent state in past time); (2) I had been loved (an antecedent act in past time), synonymous with amatus eram.*

The principal contrasts which may be implied by the use of a <sup>1454</sup> tense of incomplete action rather than of complete action, or *vice versa*, are as follows:

1. Continuance of an action contrasted with its conclusion: e.g. *Troja est, Troy still exists; Troja fuit, Troy is no more; dico, I am speaking, dixi, I have done my speech; pereo, I am going to ruin, periit, it is all over with me; habeo, I have, habui, I had once.*

2. Continuance of an action contrasted with a single act. So especially the imperfect compared with the perfect (i.e. aorist); e.g. *videbam, I was looking at, vidi, I caught sight of; putabam, I was of opinion, putavi, I formed the opinion, or, the thought once occurred to me, non putaram, it had never occurred to me; sciebam, I knew, scivi, I learnt; disciebam, I used to learn, didici, I (once) learnt; si volet, if he shall be willing, si voluerit, if he shall choose; poteram, I had it in my power, potui, I proved able, succeeded in doing it.*

3. Purpose or attempt contrasted with actual performance, or the actual fact: e.g. *servabam, I tried to save, servavi, I actually saved, servaveram, I had actually saved; capiam, I shall proceed to take, cepero, I shall succeed in taking; illucescit, the day is breaking, illuxit, it is day; dormiebat, he tried to sleep, dormivit, he fell asleep; dabat, he offered, dedit, he gave.*

4. The action itself contrasted with the resulting condition: e.g. *venio, I am on my road, veni, I am here; deficiebant, they were deserting, defecerant, they were deserters; nosco, I am getting knowledge of, novi, I know; vincam, I shall win, viceram, I shall be the winner; peribo, I shall die; periero, I shall be dead; occalesco, I grow callous; occalui, I have become callous; reminiscor, I call to mind, memini, I remember, bear in mind.*

<sup>1</sup> In Plautus it appears to be occasionally used of the aorist of the act; e.g. *'Achillem orabo, ut aurum mihi det, Hector qui expensus fuit'* (*Merc.* 488). Cf. *ib.* 481; *Most.* 694; *Aul.* 454; *Amph.* 186; 457.

The principal usages of the tenses of the indicative mood are as follows. More examples will be given in the chapters which treat of the moods.

### Present.

The present time is strictly the transitory moment between <sup>1455</sup> past and future. Hence the senses numbered below (1) and (2). As actions are often spread over a longer period, the present is used (3) of actions not wholly past, and (4) of actions not wholly future, the former ending, so far as the account is given, with the present, the latter commencing with the present. Lastly (5) the present is used of what holds good now, although it may hold good also of the past and future.

Thus the Present tense expresses

1. *An action at the time of speaking.*

<sup>1456</sup>

Hic ego Servium exspecto. (C. Att. 10. 10.)

Mitto cetera intolerabilia: etenim fletu impediior. (C. Att. 3. 10.)

Nunc quum vos intueor, Romanos esse video. (L. 34. 31.)

Bellum tam integrum habemus, quam habuimus qua die Hannibal in Italiam est transgressus. (L. 23. 13.)

2. *An action in past time, but rhetorically assumed to be present.* <sup>1457</sup>  
*This is frequent in vivid narrations. (Historic present.)*

Disputatur in consilio: plerique censebant, ut noctu iter facerent: alii, quod pridie noctu conclamatum esset in Cæsaris castris, argumenti sumebant loco, non posse clam exiri. Horum sententia vincit in consilio. (Cæs. G. 1. 67.)

Archagatho negotium dedit, ut argentum ad mare deportaretur. Ascendit in oppidum Archagathus: jubet omnis proferre quod haberent. Metus erat summus. (C. Verr. 4. 23.)

Perfugæ, postquam murum arietibus feriri vident, aurum atque argentum domum regiam comportant. (Sall. J. 76.)

Quot eras annos natus, quom pater a patria te avehit?

(Pl. Men. 1115.)

Consul faucibus, quas fuga hostium aperuerat, in regionem Epiri transgressus, etsi probe scit cui parti Epirotæ favissent, tamen ex præsentī eos potius quam ex præterito æstimat habitū.

(L. 32. 14.)

*So regularly with dum, 'whilst,' occasionally with quom, of actions taking place at the same time as other actions whether in past, present, or future time.*

Dum obsequor adolescentibus, me senem esse oblitus sum.

(C. Or. 2. 4.)

Ergo, dum nullum fastiditur genus, in quo eniteret virtus, crevit imperium Romanum. (L. 4. 3.)

Dum ea Romani parant consultantque, jam Saguntum summa vi oppugnabatur. (L. 21. 2.)

Dum elephantum trajiciuntur, interim Hannibal quingentos equites ad castra Romana miserat speculatum. (L. 21. 29.)

Dum hæc dicit, abiit hora. Rogo, numquid velit. 'Recte,' inquit: abeo. Quom huc respicio ad virginem, illa sese interea commodum huc advorterat in hanc nostram plateam.

(Ter. Eun. 341. Cf. also 345.)

Jam infici debet puer iis artibus, quas si, dum est tener, combiberit, ad majora veniet paratior. (C. Fin. 3. 2.)

Cum occiditur Sex. Roscius, ibidem fuerunt. (C. Rosc. A. 41.)

*Hence the adverbial use of dumtaxat, e. g.*

1459

Nos animo dum taxat vigemus etiam magis quam quum floreamus; re familiari comminuti sumus. (C. Att. 4. 3, § 6.)

Quattuor milia peditum et sexcentos equites dumtaxat scribere in animo est. (L. 10. 25.)

3. *An action extending over some time, including the time of speaking.*

Cupio equidem et jampridem cupio Alexandream visere.

(C. Att. 2. 5.)

Ceterum mihi in dies magis animus accenditur, cum considero, quae condicio vitæ futura sit, nisi nosmet ipsi vindicamus in libertatem. (Sall. C. 20.)

Inter tot veterrimos populos tam diu bella geritis, quum interea, ne singulas loquar urbes, non conjuncti cum Æquis Volsci, non universa Etruria, bello vobis par est. (L. 5. 54.)

Quid? tibi? unquam quicquam, postquam tuus sum, verborum dedi? (Pl. Most. 925.)

Olim ipse me damno, qui illos imitor, dum accuso, et verba apertæ rei inpendo. (Sen. Ep. 117, § 18.)

4. *An action about to be commenced.*

1461

Quid est? Crasse, imusne sessum? (C. Or. 3. 5.)

Eon? voco huc hominem? (Pl. Most. 774.)

Carnifex dicat: agon? quod fieri solet victumis.

(Sen. Rhet. Contr. 2. 11. 19.)

Tuemini castra et defendite diligenter, si quid durius acciderit: ego reliquas portas circumeo et castrorum præsidia confirmo.

(Cæs. C. 3. 94.)

Nunc ad inceptum redeo. (Sall. J. 4.)

Itaque, ni propere fit quod impero, vinciri vos jam jubebo.

(L. 36. 28.)

*So especially with antequam, priusquam, and, where waiting is spoken of, with dum.*

Ante quam de accusatione ipsa dico, de accusatorum spe pauca dicam. (C. Deiot. 2.)

Sine, prius quam amplexum accipio, sciam ad hostem an ad filium venerim. (L. 2. 40.)

Tu hic nos, dum eximus, interea opperibere. (Ter. Haut. 833.)

5. *An action, without reference to any particular time; (especially in stating abstract truths).*

1463

Quod semper movetur æternum est. (C. T. D. 1. 23.)

Vinum ægrotis, quia prodest raro, nocet sæpissime, melius est non adhibere omnino. (C. N. D. 3. 27.)

In illo libro, qui inscribitur Menon, pusionem quendam Socrates interrogat quædam geometrica. (C. T. D. 1. 24.)

Tua res agitur, paries cum proximus ardet. (Hor. Ep. 1. 18. 84.)

## Future.

The Future denotes an action taking place, or (in verbs signifying a state) a state existing, in future time. The following usages claim notice:

(a) *Subordinate sentences, qualifying a principal future sentence (whether such future sentence was expressed in indicative or imperative, or subjunctive of command, &c.), and referring to the same time, have regularly and usually the future. (In English the present is generally found.)*

Naturam si sequemur ducem, nunquam aberrabimus. (C. Off. 1. 28.)

Hoc, dum erimus in terris, erit illi cælesti vitæ simile.

(C. T. D. 1. 31.)

Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiæ fungatur officiis.

(C. Off. 2. 12.)

Ea velim, cum poteris, invisas. (C. Att. 4. 10.)

Qui ager frigidior et macrior erit, ibi oleam Licinianam seri oportet  
...Qui locus crassus erit aut nebulosior, ibi Apicium serito.

(Cato R. R. 6.)

Prima quæque, ut absolveris, mittito, immo etiam antequam absolvas, sicut erunt, recentia et media et adhuc similia nascentibus.

(Plin. Ep. 8. 4.)

(b) *It is used to express a logical consequence; or an event, the knowledge or declaration of which, though not the fact itself, is future.* 1465

Sin autem caderet in sapientem ægritudo, caderet etiam iracundia: qua quoniam vacat, ægritudine etiam vacabit.

(C. T. D. 3. 9.)

Si ista lex ideo lata esset, ut finiret libidinem muliebrem, verendum foret, ne abrogata incitaret; cur sit autem lata, ipsum indicabit tempus. Hannibal in Italia erat. (L. 34. 6.)

Hæc erit bono genere nata: nil scit nisi verum loqui.

(Pl. Pers. 645.)

Cognatam comperi esse nobis. DE. Quid? deliras. CH. Sic erit: non temere dico. (Ter. Ph. 801.)

Gloria umbra virtutis est: etiam invitam comitabitur.

(Sen. Ep. 79, § 13.)

(c) *As a kind of imperative.* 1466

De aqua si curæ est, si quid Philippus aget, animadverte.

(C. Att. 5. 13.)

(Other examples in Chap. XXI.)

### Imperfect.

The Imperfect tense expresses (see § 1454)

1467

1. *A continuous action contemporaneous with past action or time referred to.*

Postremam Romanorum aciem invadunt. Tum Marius apud primos agebat, quod ibi Jugurtha cum plurimis erat. (Sall. J. 101.)

Jam consules erant C. Plautius iterum, L. Æmilius Mamercinus, quum Setini Romam venerunt. (L. 8. 1.)

Archias erat temporibus illis jucundus Metello illi Numidico, audiebatur a M. Æmilio, vivebat cum Q. Catulo et patre et filio, a L. Crasso colebatur. (C. Arch. 3.)

2. *In letters, especially Cicero's, it often denotes an action at the time of writing, as being past when the correspondent receives the letter.* 1468

*This usage occurs where the writer has specially in mind the particular time of his writing, and is describing the feelings and occurrences of the moment; and so most frequently at the beginning or end of letters. But it is not always adopted where it might be, and is not uncommonly in close connexion with the present tense.*

Ante diem viii. Kal. hæc ego scribebam hora noctis nona. Milo campum jam tenebat: Marcellus candidatus ita stertebat, ut ego vicinus audirem. (C. Att. 4. 3. 25.)

Nihil habebam quod scriberem; neque enim novi quicquam audieram et ad tuas omnis rescripseram pridie; sed cum me ægritudo non solum somno privaret, &c. (C. Att. 10. 1.)

Pridie Idus Febr. hæc scripsi ante lucem; eo die apud Pomponium in ejus nuptiis eram cenaturus. (C. Q. F. 2. 3, § 7.)

Ipse ut spero diebus octo, quibus has litteras dabam, cum Lepidi copiis me conjungam. (Planc. ap. C. Fam. 10. 18.)

Vos quid ageretis in republica, cum has litteras dabam, non sciebam: audiebam quædam turbulenta, quæ scilicet cupio esse falsa, ut aliquando otiosa libertate fruamur. (Treb. ap. C. Fam. 12. 16.)

In his eram curis, cum scriberem ad te; quas si deus aliquis in gaudium verterit, de metu non querar. (Plin. Ep. 7. 19.)

*This usage is sometimes found in messages:*

Thais maxumo te orabat opere ut cras redires. (Ter. Eun. 532.)

3. *Habitual or repeated action in past time.*

1469

In Græcia musici floruerunt, discebantque id omnes. (C. T. D. 1. 2.)

Commentabar declamitans cotidie. (C. Brut. 90.)

4. *An action commenced, or attempted, or proposed in past time.* 1470

Risu omnes, qui aderant, emoriri: denique metuebant omnes jam me. (Ter. Eun. 433.)

Consistit utrumque agmen, et ad proelium sese expediebant.

(L. 21. 46.)

Consules incerti, quod malum repentinum urbem invasisset, sedabant tumultus, sedando interdum movebant. (L. 3. 15.)

Ut in re trepida, senatu extemplo vocato, P. Cornelius omnes duces exercitusque ex tota Italia ad urbis præsidium revocabat.

(L. 26. 8.)



*So with postquam, of the state having commenced:*

1471

Post quam nihil usquam hostile cernebatur, Galli, viam ingressi, ad urbem Romam perveniunt. (L. 5. 39.)

Quæ ubi Romam sunt relata, primum dictatorem dici placebat; deinde postquam quietæ res ex Volscis afferebantur, et apparuit nescire eos victoria et tempore uti, revocati inde exercitus. (L. 6. 30.)

Postquam instructi utrinque stabant, in medium duces procedunt. (L. 1. 23.)

### Perfect.

The Perfect tense expresses an action done in past time. As 1472 contrasted with the imperfect, it resembles the Greek aorist, and denotes a single act, not a continued state; a fact, not a description. As contrasted with the present, it resembles the Greek perfect, and denotes that the action is then already completed<sup>1</sup>. See § 1452.

1. *Aorist or Historical Perfect.* An action which took 1473 place in past time, either singly or in succession to other actions. So usually in a continued narrative.

(a) Postremo Catilina in senatum venit. Tum M. Tullius consul orationem habuit luculentam atque utilem reipublicæ, quam postea scriptam edidit. (Sall. C. 31.)

Veni, vidi, vici. (Cæs. ap. Suet. Jul. 37.)

L. Lucullus per multos annos Asiæ provinciæ præfuit. (C. Ac. 2. 1.)

Per quos dies ad Pellam stativa fuerunt, legationes frequentes, quæ ad gratulandum convenerant, auditæ sunt. (L. 44. 46.)

Socrates tum locutus ita est, ut non ad mortem trudi, verum in cælum videretur escendere. Ita enim censebat, itaque disseruit duas esse vias, &c. (C. T. D. 1. 29.)

Recordamini legum multitudinem, cum earum, quæ latæ sunt, tum vero quæ promulgatæ fuerunt. (C. Sest. 25.) Cf. § 1453.

Literni monumentum monumentoque statua superimposita fuit, quam tempestate dejectam nuper vidimus ipsi. (L. 38. 56.)

(b) *So with pæne, prope, where in English we use the pluperfect.* 1474  
Prope oblitus sum, quod maxime fuit scribendum.

(Cæsar. ap. C. Fam. 8. 14.)

Brutum non minus amo quam tu, pæne dixi, quam te.

(C. Att. 5. 20, § 6.)

<sup>1</sup> In the division of the Latin perfect the clue given by the English translation has been chiefly followed; e.g. *scripsi*, I wrote (aor.), I have written (perf.). But the Latin form is really but one tense, denoting past time. Compare *peri* with *habui* in § 1454, and the tense of dependent subjunctives in § 1476.

(c) *Frequently in this sense in temporal sentences, with postquam, 1475*  
antequam, priusquam, &c. (In English the pluperfect is frequent.)

Post quam Cn. Pompeius ad bellum maritimum missus est, paucorum potentia crevit. (Sall. C. 39.)

Hispala non ante adolescentem dimisit, quam fidem dedit ab his sacris se temperaturum. (L. 39. 10.)

2. (*Perfect or Present Perfect*). *An action already completed 1476*  
*before present time, so that the result, rather than the action itself, is*  
*present to the mind.*

(a) Membris utimur prius, quam didicimus, cujus ea utilitatis causa habeamus. (C. Fin. 5. 20.)

Ob debilitatem animi multi parentes, multi amicos prodiderunt.  
(C. Fin. 1. 15.)

Nemo umquam est oratorem, quod Latine loqueretur, admiratus; si est aliter, inridet, neque eum oratorem tantummodo sed hominem non putant; nemo extulit eum verbis, qui ita dixisset, ut, qui adessent, intellegerent quid diceret, sed contempsit eum, qui minus id facere potuisset. (C. Or. 3. 14.)

Tandem aliquando, Quirites, L. Catilinam ex urbe vel ejecimus vel emisimus vel ipsum egredientem verbis prosecuti sumus. Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit. Nulla jam pernicies mœnibus ipsis intra mœnia comparabitur. (C. Cat. 2. init.)

Victoria in manu vobis est, viget ætas, animus valet; contra illis annis atque divitiis omnia consenuerunt. (Sall. C. 20.)

Adventus Philotimi exanimavit omnis, qui mecum erant. Nam ipse obdurui. (C. Att. 10. 9.)

Jampridem conticuerunt tuæ litteræ. (C. Brut. 5.)

(b) *Sometimes with emphasis;*

Fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium et ingens gloria Teucrorum.  
(Verg. A. 2. 325.)

vixi, et quem dederat cursum fortuna, peregi. (Ib. 4. 653.)

Filium unicum adolescentulum habeo. a, quid dixi, habere me?  
immo habui, Chremes. Nunc habeam necne, incertumst.  
(Ter. Haut. 94.)

*So of an action quickly completed;*

Terra tremit: fugere feræ, et mortalia corda per gentis humilis stravit pavor. (Verg. G. 1. 330.)

(c) *In subordinate sentences, in speaking of repeated actions, when the principal verb is in the present tense.* 1473

Cum fortuna reffavit, affligimur. (C. Off. 2. 6.)

See other examples in Chap. XXII.

(d) *Similarly in principal sentences, but only in Augustan poets and later writers.* 1479

Rege incolumi, mens omnibus una est: amisso, rupere fidem constructaque mella diripuerunt ipsæ. (Verg. G. 4. 213.)

Cervus mille fugit refugitque vias: at vividus UMBER hæret hians, jam jamque tenet, similisque tenenti increpuit malis morsuque elusus inani est. (Verg. A. 12. 755.)

Omne tulit punctum, qui miscuit utile dulci. (Hor. A. P. 343.)

Non domus et fundus, non æris acervus et auri ægroto domini deduxit corpore febres. (Hor. Ep. 1. 2. 47.)

Massa per se nec calida nec frigida est: in fornacem coniecta concaluit: in aquam demissa refrigit. (Sen. Ep. 82. 14.)

### Completed Future<sup>1</sup>.

The Completed future denotes an action in future time completed at some point in future time. Like the other perfect tenses, sometimes it suggests, not so much the act itself, as the future resulting state. 1480

1. *An action already completed at a given future time.* 1481

(In a subordinate sentence, the present or perfect is generally used in English; e.g. Cum (si) venero, 'When (if) I come or have come.')

Cum tu hæc leges, ego illum fortasse convenero. (C. Att. 9. 15.)

Eum cum videro, Arpinum pergam. (Ib.)

Quid facient, cum dederint Apronio quod poposcerit?

(C. Verr. 3. 11.)

Nunc si hoc omitto ac tum agam, ubi illinc rediero, nihil est; refrigerit res. (Ter. Ad. 232.)

Actio recta non erit, nisi recta fuerit voluntas. (Sen. Ep. 95. 57.)

*With emphasis:*

Brevis hic est fructus hominibus: jam fuerit, neque post umquam revocare licebit. (Lucr. 3. 915.)

<sup>1</sup> See Madvig, *Opusc.* ii. 82 sqq.

2. *An action completed simultaneously to another action in future time.* 1482

Qui Antonium opprresserit, is bellum confecerit. (C. Fam. 10. 19.)

An ille non vicerit, si quacunq[ue] condicione in hanc urbem cum suis venerit? (C. Phil. 12. 6.)

3. *Of a definite act contrasted with a previous state. So especially si potuero, voluero, libuerit, placuerit.* 1483

Plato, si modo interpretari potuero, his fere verbis utitur.

(C. Leg. 2. 18.)

Malevolentia hominum in me, si poteris, occurreris; si non potueris, hoc te consolabere, quod &c. (Brut. ap. C. Fam. 11. 11.)

Lege judiciaria neque legetur, quisquis voluerit, nec, quisquis noluerit, non legetur: judices judicabunt ei, quos lex ipsa, non quos hominum libido delegerit. (C. Pis. 39.)

Quæ scribis K. Junius Antonium de provinciis relaturum, licebitne decerni libere? Si licuerit, libertatem esse recuperatam lætabor; si non licuerit, quid mihi attulerit ista domini mutatio?

(C. Att. 14. 14.)

4. *Future result of an action now past. Comp. § 1465.*

1484

Sin plane occidimus, ego omnibus meis exitio fuero. (C. Q. F. 1. 4.)

Unus homo tantas strages impune per urbem ediderit? juvenum primos tot miserit orco? (Verg. A. 9. 785.)

Impune ergo mihi recitaverit ille togatas, hic elegos? impune diem consumpserit ingens Telephus? (Juv. 1. 3.)

5. *Often in comic poets, and occasionally in later writers, it is used, in principal or simple sentences, with but little if any difference of meaning from the simple future; especially (a) of a predicted result, (b) of an action during something else; (c) of an action performed at once (the completion being as it were anticipated), (d) of an action postponed (the future element being predominant). The last is in post-Comic writers almost confined to videro.* 1485

(a) Crede, inquam, mihi: aut consolando aut consiliis aut re juvero. (Ter. Haut. 85.)

Erum in opsidione linquet, inimicum animos auxerit. (Pl. As. 280.)

Multumque ad ea quæ quærimus explicatio tua ista profecerit.

(C. Fin. 3. 4.)

Succumbam oneri, neque aggrediar narrare quæ edissertando minora vero fecero. (L. 22. 54.)

- (b) Huc concessero, dum mihi senatum consili in cor convoco.  
(Pl. *Most.* 688.)  
Tu invita mulieres: ego accivero pueros. (C. *Att.* 5. 1.)
- (c) Molestus si sum, reddite argentum: abiero. (Pl. *Most.* 590.)  
Dictum ac factum, invenerit aliquam causam, quamobrem eiciat opido. (Ter. *Andr.* 381.)  
Nusquam facilius hanc miserrimam vitam vel sustentabo vel, quod multo est melius, abiecero. (C. *Att.* 3. 19.)
- (d) Ad fratrem, quo ire dixeram, mox ivero. (Pl. *Pseud.* 193.)  
Sed videro quid efficiat: tantisper hoc ipsum magni aestimo, quod pollicetur. (C. *T. D.* 5. 7.)  
Neque recte an perperam, interpretor: fuerit ista ejus deliberatio, qui bellum suscepit: me Albano bello gerendo ducem creavere.  
(L. 1. 23.)

### Future in -so.

The future in -so (e.g. *faxo*, *levasso*, &c. § 619 sqq.) is used as <sup>148b</sup> a completed future in subordinate relative sentences, or with adverbs of time or condition. *Faxo* only<sup>1</sup>, and in the first person sing. only, is also used as a simple future (§ 1375), affording the only certain instances of this form being used in simple or principal sentences (in the indicative).

Si situlam cepero, nunquam edepol tu mihi divini creduis post hunc diem, ni ego illi puteo, si ocepso, animam omnem intraxero. (Pl. *Amph.* 672.)

Nam neque Duellona mi umquam neque Mars creduat, ni illum exanimalem faxo, si convenero, nive exheredem fecero vitæ suæ. (Pl. *Bacch.* 847.)

Paterfamilias uti super familia pecuniaque sua legassit, ita jus esto.  
(XII. Tab. apud C. *Inv.* 2. 50.)

Agedum Stiche: uter demutassit, poculo multabitur. (Pl. *St.* 723.)

Si ita faxitis, Romani, vestræ res meliores facilioresque erunt.  
(apud L. 23. 11.)

### Pluperfect.

The Pluperfect denotes an action in past time, done before <sup>148c</sup> another past action. Like the other perfect tenses sometimes it suggests the resulting state rather than the precedent act<sup>2</sup>. This indeed is the proper meaning of the ordinary passive pluperfect.

<sup>1</sup> See Madvig, *Opusc.* II. 76, who however adds *indicasso*, Pl. *Pan.* IV. 2. 66. See also Neue, II. 421—430.

<sup>2</sup> See E. Hoffmann, *Die Construction der latein. Zeitpartikeln*, p. 10 sqq.

(a) *An action before another action in past time.*

1488

Prius omnia pati decrevit quam bellum sumere, quia temptatum antea secus cesserat. (Sall. J. 20.)

Hanno cum eis, qui postremi jam profligato proelio advenerant, vivus capitur. (L. 28. 2.)

Latrociniiis magis quam justo bello in Brutiis gerebatur res. Ab Romanis egressi quidam urbem Locrenses circumventi Regium-que abstracti fuerant. (L. 29. 6.)

Quartum jam diem eodem loco quietem militi dederat, cum litteras Nabarzanis, qui Dareum cum Besso interceperat, accipit, quarum sententia hæc erat. (Curt. 6. 4, § 8.)

*The standard of time is sometimes not given till a subsequent separate sentence.* 1489

Postera die indigna res Macedonibus videbatur, Perdiccam ad mortis periculum adductum, et Meleagri temeritatem armis ultum ire decreverant: atque ille, seditione provisa, interrogat. (Curt. 10. 8, § 5.)

Comitiis habitis consules declarantur M. Tullius et C. Antonius. Quod factum primo popularis conjurationis concusserat: neque tamen Catilinæ furor minuebatur. (Sall. C. 24.)

(b) *In letters and sometimes in other writings, and in speeches, it denotes an action prior to the time of writing, &c. (cf. § 1468).* 1490

Nunc iter conficiebamus æstuosa et pulverulenta via. Dederam (sc. litteras) Epheso pridie; has dedi Trallibus. (C. Att. 5. 14.)

Tamen, quod ante de istius abstinencia dixeram, sigillis avulsis reliquum argentum reddidit. (C. Verr. 4. 48.)

Consulibus designatis (inde namque deverteram) in provincias profecti sunt. (L. 35. 40.)

(c) *A past action which produced a still continuing effect. Pluperfect of act = imperfect of resulting state.* 1491

Centum viginti lictores forum impleverant, et cum fascibus secures illigatas præferebant. (L. 3. 36.)

Arma, quæ fixa in parietibus fuerant, ea sunt humi inventa. (C. Div. 1. 34.)

Frumenta non solum a tanta multitudine jumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant. (Cæsar. G. 6. 43.)

Eodem tempore Romani scalas ad stantia mœnia inferebant, et, dum in unam partem oculos animosque hostium certamen averterat, pluribus locis scalis capitur murus, armatique in urbem transcenderunt. (L. 32. 24.)

*So with post (postea) quam, ubi, ut, &c.*

P. Africanus, posteaquam bis consul et censor fuerat, L. Cottam in iudicium vocabat. (C. Cæcil. 21.)

Deinde, postquam nuntii instabant, et jam juga montium detexerat nebula, et in conspectu erant Macedones, Athenagoram mittit.

(L. 33. 7.)

(d) *Occasionally, of an action immediately consequent upon another and therefore regarded as included in it; e.g.*

Camillus addidit minas, si pergerent, sacramento omnes juniores adacturum. Terrorem ingentem incusserat plebi: ducibus plebi accendit magis certamine animos quam minuit. (L. 6. 38.)

L. Scipio nihil accepit: quæ necessaria ad cultum erant, redempta ei a proximis cognatis sunt, verteratque Scipionum invidia in prætorem et consilium ejus et accusatores. (L. 38. fin.)

(e) *Of repeated actions, with principal verbs in imperfect.*

1493

Hostes, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, impeditos adoriebantur. (Cæsar. G. 4. 26.)

(See other examples in Chap. XXII.).

### Future participle active with the verb *sum*.

In order to denote what a person purposes, or is destined to do in future time, especially if regarded from a point in the past or future, the future participle active is used with the different tenses of the verb *sum*: thus,

#### PRIMARY.

#### SECONDARY.

Contemporary.	<i>dicturus sum, I am about to (or mean to or am to) say.</i>	<i>dicturus eram</i> (or, in the poets, <i>fueram</i> ), <i>I was at the time about to (or I meant or was to) say.</i>
Subsequent.	<i>dicturus ero, I shall be about to say.</i>	<i>dicturus fui, I was (once) about to say.</i>
Antecedent.		<i>dicturus fueram, I had meant to say.</i>

Facite quod vobis libet; daturus non sum amplius. (C. Verr. 2. 29.)  
Hoc anno nec diem dici cuiquam nec in vincula duci quemquam  
sum passurus. (L. 3. 59.)

Me ipsum ames oportet, non mea, si veri amici futuri sumus.  
(C. Fin. 2. 26.)

Hac, qua me prægressum videritis, agite, qui visuri domos, parentes, conjuges, liberos, estis, ite mecum. (L. 4. 28.)

Vos cum Mandonio et Indibili consilia communicastis et arma consociaturi fuistis. (L. 28. 28.)

Quod crediturus tibi fui, omne credidi. (Pl. Most. 437.)

Orator eorum, apud quos aliquid aget aut acturus erit, mentes sensusque degustet oportet. (C. Or. 1. 52.)

Taleas oleaginas, quas in scrobe saturus eris, tripedaneas decidito.  
(Cato R. R. 45.)

Conclave illud, ubi rex mansurus erat si ire perrexisset, proxima nocte conruit. (C. Div. 1. 15.)

Æmilius Paulus Delphis inchoatas in vestibulo columnas, quibus inposituri statuas regis Persei fuerant, suis statuvis victor destinavit. (L. 45. 27.)

*The same form is resorted to for the subjunctive future; e.g. ditorum sim, &c. (Cf. §§ 1507, 1523.)*

## (B) TENSES OF IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The imperative mood is used to express a command or request. <sup>1495</sup>  
On its form see §§ 581, 584, and its difference from the subjunctive, § 1498.

*The present is used of the present time, or without any implied reference to a defined future time.*

*The future is used with express reference to the time following, or to some particular case that may occur, and therefore is frequent in legal forms.*

Cura ut valeas. (C. Fam. 16. 7.)

Cum hæc confessus eris, negato tum sane, si voles, te pecuniam accepisse. (C. Verr. 2. 32.)

*(See other examples in §§ 1557, 1571, 1597—1603, and the treaty with Antiochus in L. 38. 38 throughout.)*



## CHAPTER XVIII.

## Of the SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD and ITS TENSES.

## I. Of the Mood.

THE Subjunctive mood, as distinguished from the indicative, <sup>1496</sup> expresses an action or event, as thought or supposed, rather than as done or narrated. This general distinction is somewhat variously modified in different kinds of sentences.

These different kinds appear reducible to eight main classes, which may again be conveniently combined into four.

1. Hypothetical (A) and conditional (B) sentences (Chap. <sup>1497</sup> xx.), the former term being given to the apodosis only, the latter to the protasis only of what are often called, as a whole, conditional sentences. As here used therefore the hypothesis is the action treated as contingent on another, the condition is that other action, on which the first is contingent.

In these sentences, which readily admit of either the indicative or subjunctive mood, the subjunctive implies that the action spoken of is *not a fact*. Nothing is implied as to knowledge or want of knowledge, doubt or assurance, probability or improbability, possibility or impossibility, so far as the mood is concerned; but a non-real *past* action is of course impossible, a non-real *future* action is (apart from intrinsic impossibilities) possible.

2. Sentences expressing a *wish*, or *command* (C), or *purpose* <sup>1498</sup> (D) (Chap. xxi.). In these the subjective character of the subjunctive is unmistakeable. The imperative mood, which is really an abrupt form of the indicative, speaks of an action commanded, as if it were an assertion of fact. In theory and origin the imperative is the language of an absolute master, the subjunctive is a suggestion to an equal or superior.

A peculiar use of a command is found in *concessive* sentences, where a person rhetorically commands, or supposes, a change of what he knows or believes to be the fact.

These sentences (C, D) are almost all characterised by the use, if a negative is required, of *ne* instead of *non*. Exceptions are comparatively few (see however § 1610), and are chiefly due to the negation being intimately connected with some one word, not with the whole predicate.

3. Sentences expressing the *consequence* or *natural result* (E), or <sup>1499</sup> *attendant circumstances* (F) of an action (Chap. XXII.). In these sentences the subjunctive does not in any way imply the non-reality of the action or event: indeed, the action is, or is assumed to be, a fact. But the subjunctive is still due to the accompanying thought as distinguished from the bare fact; viz. to the *causal connexion* which the sentence is intended to express, but which the particles (*ut*, *cum*) used in such sentences do not contain. They properly mean *in which way*, *at what time*, respectively, and gain the notion of result (*so that*), or modifying circumstances (*since*, *whereas*, *notwithstanding*), only by union with the subjunctive mood.

4. The next division (Chap. XXIV.) contains sentences expres- <sup>1500</sup> sive of definitions, reasons, questions (G), which are *given not as the speaker's own* but as some one's else.

With these may be classed (H) all sentences which are dependent on infinitive or subjunctive moods, and are regarded only as part of the action expressed substantivally by the infinitive, or as a thought by the subjunctive. In all these the subjunctive simply prevents the speaker being supposed to be responsible for the statements, &c. reported, or to be giving them as independent assertions.

In only two (A, C) of these eight classes is the subjunctive <sup>1501</sup> found in simple or principal sentences. In all the rest it is in subordinate sentences. And these subordinate sentences are mainly such as are introduced by the relative adjective *qui*, or the relative adverbs *si*, *ut*, *cum*, or by  *dum*. As all of these relatives are also repeatedly found introducing subordinate clauses, which have the indicative mood, it is clear that the use of the subjunctive mood is not due to those relatives.

There are some cautions which should be borne in mind in discussing why the subjunctive mood has or has not been used in any particular sentence.

1. A writer may frequently (especially in relative sentences), <sup>1502</sup> if he chooses, express what is really a thought or supposition, as if it were a fact, and therefore use the indicative mood; or, on the other hand, express a fact, as if it were only a thought or supposition, and therefore use the subjunctive mood. If however he *means* to imply *by the form of expression* that it is for him at the moment a supposition or conception (though it may be also a fact), he uses the subjunctive; if he wishes to imply that it is a fact, or to state it simply without any implication, he uses the indicative. Whether the same introductory particle or same turn of sentence can be used, must be determined according to the particular circumstances.

2. As a subjunctive may be used on several different grounds, <sup>1503</sup> it is necessary to consider how far any particular occurrence of the subjunctive may be due to the general frame of the sentence or to some collateral motive. The following classes of subjunctives are frequently occurring where the general frame of the sentence is suitable to an indicative: commands (§ 1575), modest assertions expressed as an hypothesis (§ 1575), actions of an indefinite subject in the 2nd person singular (§ 1546). On the other hand, in one whole class (H) of subjunctives, viz. those which are dependent on infinitives and subjunctives, the mood is due rather to the frame of the sentence than to the particular meaning.

3. The nature of the verb itself is often an important element. <sup>1504</sup> Auxiliary verbs, e.g. *possum*, *volo*, &c. or *sum* with the future participle or gerundive, are often put in the indicative where other verbs would be in the subjunctive, not from any real inconsistency, but because possibilities, volitions, expectations, duties, are often much more positive than the particular actions to which they relate. It requires consideration therefore whether the writer means to speak of the act only, or of the power, &c., itself, as a supposition or thought; e.g. *potest solvere si velit*, implies that a man has the money, but does not choose to pay; *possit solvere si velit*, that he could get the money to pay with if he chose.

4. It often appears probable that the choice of the subjunctive <sup>1505</sup> mood is due rather to a desire to avoid using the indicative, and *vice versa*, than to the independent strength of its claim. This occurs chiefly where certain particles or phrases or even tenses are so frequently used with the indicative or subjunctive, that the writer fears if he use the habitual mood he should be supposed to intend the habitual meaning. Of course this consideration can come into play only where neither the indicative nor subjunctive is, independently considered, incompatible with the meaning.

## ii. Of the Tenses.

The tenses of the subjunctive mood preserve in the main the same character as the tenses called by the same names in the indicative mood, the present and imperfect denoting contemporaneous states or incomplete acts, the perfect and pluperfect denoting completed acts or states; and again, the present and perfect referring in the main to the time of speaking, the imperfect and pluperfect to some past time spoken of. 1506

But there are some special ambiguities, chiefly due to the future tenses of the indicative not having any separate correspondent forms in the subjunctive mood.

Thus (1) the present subjunctive corresponds in most cases to the present and to the simple future of the indicative, but, when it is important to distinguish the future from the present, the future participle (with *sim* or *essem*) is resorted to. 1507

(2) The perfect subjunctive corresponds both to the perfect (i.e. both aorist and perfect proper) and to the completed future of the indicative.

(3) The present and imperfect, covering together the whole course of time, may both in some sentences be used of the present moment, the one or the other being used according as the action is to be regarded as possible and therefore belonging to the future, or impossible and therefore belonging to the past.

### i. In independent sentences (A, C) 1508

The present relates to present or future time, without any distinct determination of either.

The perfect usually relates to some point in the immediate present or future, but in concessive sentences usually, and sometimes in others (cf. § 1532 *b*), it relates to the past.

The imperfect relates to any time not future, and therefore usually may include the present moment.

The pluperfect relates to some point in the past.

ii. In *dependent sentences* (B, D, E, F, G, H)

1509

i. The present and perfect are used in sentences dependent on primary tenses.

(a) The present subjunctive may represent the future as well as the present of the indicative.

(b) The perfect subjunctive may represent

in consecutive sentences (E), in reported sentences (G), and in such dependent sentences as are classed under H, the perfect (and aorist) and completed future of the indicative; and in a dependent interrogative it may also represent the imperfect; e.g. *quid dicebas* would become *quæro quid dixeris*;

in conditional and most final sentences (B, D) the completed future of the indicative; in some final sentences (e.g. *timeo ne venerit*) either the completed future or the perfect (and aorist);

in sentences with *cum* (F) the perfect (and aorist) of the indicative.

2. The imperfect and pluperfect are used in sentences dependent on secondary tenses (including frequently the perfect as well as the aorist indicative, cf. p. 194 *note*), even though the statement is applicable to the present as well as to the past time, or generally to all times alike.

(a) The imperfect subjunctive represents both the imperfect and perfect of the indicative.

(b) The pluperfect subjunctive represents the pluperfect of the indicative.

3. But in some cases the particular sense or context requires or allows a different tense from what these rules should give. Thus

(a) *The historical present is, in its effect on the verbs directly or indirectly dependent on it, sometimes regarded as a primary, sometimes as a secondary tense.*

Rogat Rubrium ut quos ei commodum sit invitet: locum sibi soli, si videatur, relinquat. (C. Verr. i. 26.)

Simul servis suis Rubrius ut januam clauderent et ipsi ad foris assisterent imperat. (Ib.)

*When the dependent sentence precedes the principal sentence, which has an historical present, the verb of the dependent sentence is usually secondary.* 1518

Navarchos ad se vocari jubet: qui nihil metuerent, nihil suspicarentur, statim adcurrunt. (C. Verr. 5. 41.)

Cum fraus hostilis apparuisset, præsidium etiam in summo saltu conspicitur...Ad consules mæstos, ne advocantes quidem in consilium, quando nec consilio nec auxilio locus esset, sua sponte legati ac tribuni conveniunt. (L. 9. 2.)

*But the primary tenses are also used; e.g.*

1519

Educit ex urna tris: eis ut absentem Heraclium condemnent imperat. (C. Verr. 2. 17.)

Jam magna Tarquinii auctoritas inter Latinorum procures erat, cum in diem certam ut ad lucum Ferentinæ conveniant indicit: esse quæ agere de rebus communibus velit. (L. 1. 50.)

*Similarly when the dependent sentence has another dependent on it, the former is frequently in the present tense; e.g.* 1514

Adversarii postulant ut in eam rem iudices dentur ex eis civitatibus, quæ in id forum convenirent: electi, qui Verri viderentur.

(C. Verr. 2. 15.)

Mago nuntios Carthaginem ad senatum mittit, qui, defectionem sociorum in majus verbis extollentes, hortentur, ut auxilia mitterent, quibus traditum a patribus imperium Hispaniæ repeti posset. (L. 28. 31.)

*(b) In consecutive sentences, though dependent on a secondary tense, the present is used of such actions as belong to the present time only.* 1515

Siciliam per triennium ita vexavit ac perdidit, ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo possit, vix autem per multos annos aliqua ex parte aliquando recreari posse videatur.

(C. Verr. Act. 1. 4.)

*And the perfect is used of a result completed at the present time only (corresponding to perfect indic.); and also of an event in past time simply regarded as such, without reference to its being contemporaneous or prior to other past events.* 1516

Æmilius Paullus tantum in ærarium pecuniæ invexit, ut unius imperatoris præda finem attulerit tributorum. (C. Off. 2. 22.)

Tantum opes creverant, ut ne morte quidem Æneæ movere arma Etrusci aut ulli alii accollæ ausi sint. (L. 1. 3.)

(c) *The secondary tenses are rarely found in sentences dependent on a present tense, and when so found admit of a special explanation from the writer's having more than the present time in mind.* 1517

Video igitur causas esse permultas, quæ istum impellerent.

(C. R. Am. 33.)

Laudantur oratores veteres, quod copiose reorum causas defendere solerent. (C. Verr. 2. 78.)

Chrysippus disputat æthera esse eum quem homines Jovem appellarent, quique aer per maria manaret eum esse Neptunum, terramque eam esse quæ Ceres diceretur. (C. N. D. i. 15.)

'Ut me omnes,' inquit, 'pater tuo sanguine ortum vere ferrent, provocatus equestria hæc spolia capta ex hoste cæso porto.'

(L. 8. 7.)

## CHAPTER XIX.

### TYPICAL EXAMPLES OF SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD AND ITS TENSES.

THE following examples show the typical uses of the subjunctive mood and its tenses, with their proper English translations. 1518

(A) Hypothetical sentences, *i.e.* apodosis to a conditional sentence. (For translation of protasis see next section.)

1. <i>Faciam,</i>	( <i>si jubeas, or jusseris,</i> )	<i>I should do, or be doing.</i>
<i>Fecerim,</i>	( <i>si jubeas, or jusseris,</i> )	<i>I should be found to have, or I should have done (the fact, or the knowledge of the fact, being in future time).</i>
<i>Facerem,</i>	( <i>si juberet, or jussisset,</i> )	<i>I should have been doing, or should have done, or I had been doing, or I had done.</i>
<i>Fecissem,</i>	( <i>si juberet, or jussisset,</i> )	<i>I should have done, or I had done (in past time).</i>

For the second and third persons *would* must be substituted for *should*; e.g.

Facias, (si jubeas, or You }  
Faciat, (jusseris,) He } *would do or be doing.*

## 2. With condition suppressed.

*Velim, I could wish. Vellem, I could have wished.*

Quis dicat? }  
Quis dixerit? } *Who can or could say?*

*Ego censuerim, I am inclined to think.*

*Ubi invenias? Where does or can one find?*

*Crederes, One would have believed.*

(B) Conditional sentences, i.e. protasis to a conditional sentence. (For translation of apodosis see the preceding section.)

1. Si jubeas,	} (faciam, or fecerim,)	<i>If you should bid, or be bidding.</i>
Si jusseris,		<i>If you should have bidden, or should bid.</i>
Si juberet,	} (facerem, or fecissem,)	<i>If you had been bidding, or had bidden.</i>
Si jussisses,		<i>If you had bidden.</i>

Sometimes the conditional particle is not expressed. (In the following sentences the ordinary translation of the apodosis as well as of the protasis is given):

Roges,	} dicam,	<i>Should you ask, or were you to ask,</i>	} <i>I should say.</i>
Rogaveris,		<i>Should you have asked, or were you to have asked,</i>	
.....	dixerim,	.....	<i>I should have, or be found to have, said.</i>
Rogares,	} dicerem,	<i>Should you, or were you to, have been asking, or had you been asking,</i>	} <i>I should have, or I had, been saying.</i>
Rogasses,		<i>Had you asked,</i>	
.....	dixissem,	.....	<i>I should have, or I had, said.</i>



2. Conditional sentences in the subjunctive often have for an apodosis either a future participle or gerundive with the indicative mood of *sum*, or an infinitive with the indicative mood of *possum*, &c.

Si adsis,	facturus sum,	<i>I mean to do</i>	if you should be there,
	facturus ero,	<i>I shall intend to do</i>	
	faciendum mihi est,	<i>I have to do</i>	
	faciendum mihi erit,	<i>I shall have to do</i>	
Si jusseris,	facere possum,	<i>I can do</i>	if you bid.
	facere licet,	<i>I may do</i>	
	facere debeo,	<i>I ought to do</i>	
	facere potero,	<i>I shall be able to do</i>	
	facere licebit,	<i>I shall be allowed to do</i>	
	facere debebo,	<i>It will be my duty to do</i>	
Si adesses,	facturus fui,	<i>I meant to do</i>	if you were, or had been, there.
	facturus eram,	<i>I was intending (bad (sometimes fueram) intended) to do</i>	
	faciendum mihi fuit,	<i>I had to do, or ought to have done</i>	
	faciendum mihi erat,	<i>I had to do, or ought to have done at the time</i>	
Si jussisses,	facere poteram,	<i>I could have been doing (now or formerly)</i>	if you bade, or had bidden.
	facere licebat,	<i>I might have been doing (now or formerly)</i>	
	facere debebam,	<i>I ought to have been doing (now or formerly)</i>	
	facere potui,	<i>I could have done</i>	
	facere licuit,	<i>I might have done</i>	
	facere debui,	<i>I ought to have done</i>	

The difference in meaning is scarcely perceptible, whether the apodosis to *si jussisses* be constituted by *fecissem* or *facturus fui*. And practically *faciendum mihi fuit*, or *facere potui*, might come to much the same. Hence the usages mentioned in the next section (1521).

If the apodosis to a conditional sentence of past time is in a dependent interrogative or consecutive sentence, or dependent on *cum*, so that the subjunctive mood would be required on account of the dependency, a periphrasis by means of the future participle with *fuero* is usually resorted to, instead of the simple pluperfect<sup>1</sup> active.

Ostendis, (ostendes,) quomodo, Non dubium est, (erit,) quin, Eo fit, (fiat,) ut, Talis es, (eris,) qui,	}	hoc si jussissem, facturum fueris, juberem,
--	---	--

You show, (wilt show,) how, There is, (will be,) no doubt that, So it results, (will result,) that,	}	if I had commanded (been commanding), you would have done it.
---	---	---

You are, (were,) the sort of person to have done it, if I had commanded (been commanding).

If the hypothetical sentence depends on a secondary tense, *fueris* is still used generally, but in interrogative sentences (except such as *non fuit dubium quin*) *fuisses* is used instead; e.g.

Ostendisti, quomodo	hoc, si jussissem, facturum fuisses, juberem,	
Non dubium fuit quin	}	..... fueris.
Eo factum est ut		
Talis fuisti qui		

For the pluperfect passive a periphrasis (esp. with the gerundive or *possum*) is resorted to; e.g.

Non dubium est, quin	}	hoc si jussissem, { oppidum capi potuerit. ciades accipienda fuerit.
Eo fit ut		
Non dubium fuit quin	}	..... potuerit or potuisset.
Nihil jussi, cum		

If not dependent, *poterat* or *potuit* would have been used in each.

See examples in §§ 1568, 1572.

<sup>1</sup> An hypothetical imperfect (e.g. *facerem*) is also occasionally found (*C. Prov. Cons.* 4 *haberent*; *Fin.* 2. 15 *esset*; &c.); a pluperfect very rarely (*L.* 2. 33 *cessisset*). The subjunctive in *facturus fuero*, &c. is due to the dependency of the sentence: the corresponding independent expression would be in the indicative, the hypothesis being expressed by the future participle. (See *Madv. Opusc.* II. 227.)

## (C) 1. Optative sentences.

**Moriar, may I die! Morerer, were I but dying!**

Utinam	{	moriar, morerer,  mortuus sim, mortuus essem,	O that	{	I may die! I were (now) dying! or had been dying! I may be dead, or may have died! I were (now) dead, or had died!

## 2. Jussive sentences.

(a) **Faciat,** *Let him do, be shall do, be must do.*  
**Ne faciat,** *Let him not do, be shall not do, be must not do.*

(b) **Ne feceris,** *Do not do, you shall not do, you must not do.*  
**Faceres,** *You were*  
**Faceret,** *He was* } *to do, you (be) should have been doing, or*  
*have done.*  
**Fecisses,** *You were*  
**Fecisset,** *He was* } *to have done, you (be) should have done,*  
*or ought to have done.*

3. **Dic faciat,** *Tell him to do, bid him do.*  
**Censeo (Volo) facias,** *I recommend you to do.*  
**Postulat,** } *ducant,* *He requires them to, says they are to* } *lead.*  
**Permittit,** } *He permits them to, says they may*  
**Postulavit,** } *ducerent,* *He required, said they were to* } *lead.*  
**Permisit,** } *He permitted them to, said they might*  
**Cave facias;** *Beware of doing, don't do.*  
**Nolo facias,** *I don't wish you to do.*

4. **Quid agam?** *What am I to do? What must I do?*  
**Quid agerem?** *What was I to do? What should I have done?*

## 5. Concessive sentences.

**Dicat,** *suppose him to say, let him say.*  
**Dixerit,** *suppose him to have said, let him have said (in past*  
*or future time).*

**Dixisset,** *suppose that he had said.*

**Quam vis** { *sit malus,* *be he as bad as you please, however bad he be.*  
*fuertit malus,* *however bad he was, or may have been.*  
*esset malus,* *were he as bad as you please, however*  
*bad he were.*  
*fulsisset malus,* *had he been as bad as you please, how-*  
*ever bad he had been.*

(D) 1. Final sentences (i.e. expressing purpose).

1523

(1) Mitto Mittam Misero Misi (perf.)	} qui dicat,	<i>I am sending, or send I shall send I shall have sent I have sent</i>	} one to say, or one who is to say.
(2) .....	eum ut dicat,	.....	} him to say, or that he may say.
(1) Mittebam Misi (cf. § 1510) Miseram	} qui diceret,	<i>I was sending, or sent I sent (have sent) I had sent</i>	} one to say, or one who was to say.
(2) .....	eum ut diceret,	.....	} him to say, or that he might say.

2. Prohibeo, &c.	ne quominus	dicat,	<i>I prevent his saying.</i>
Prohibebam, &c.	.....	diceret,	<i>I was preventing his saying.</i>
Non recuso, &c.	quominus quin	dicat,	<i>I do not object to his saying.</i>
Non recusabam, &c.	.....	diceret,	<i>I did not object to his saying.</i>

Timeo, &c.	ne	veniat,	<i>I fear his coming.</i>
.....	...	venerit,	<i>I fear his having come, or I fear he came.</i>
Timebam, &c.	...	veniret,	<i>I was in fear of his coming.</i>
.....	...	venisset,	<i>I was in fear he had come.</i>
Timeo, &c.	ut	veniat, &c.	<i>I fear his not coming.</i>
Non timeo, &c.	ne non	veniat, &c.	<i>I do not fear his not coming.</i>

3. Exspecto, &c.	dum dicat,	<i>I am waiting,</i>	} for him to say, or until he can say.
		<i>or wait</i>	
Exspectabam, &c.	dum diceret,	<i>I was waiting,</i>	} for him to say, or until he could have said.
		<i>or waited.</i>	

Abeo, &c. priusquam dicat, *I am off, before he can say.*

Abibam, &c. priusquam diceret, *I was going off, before he could say.*



(F) Sentences expressing attendant circumstances. 2525

1. (a) *Marcus, cui res placeat, abit, &c.* *Marcus, liking (since he likes) the matter, goes away.*  
 ..... *placuerit,.....* ... *since he has liked...*  
 ..... *placeret, abibat, &c.* ... *since he liked (at the time) ...*  
 ..... *placuisse, .....* ... *since he had liked...*

(b) In Livy and later historians:

- Quod cum faceret, dicebat,* *Whenever he was doing this, he used to say.*  
 ..... *fecisset,.....* *Whenever he had done this, he used to say.*

[In Cicero and Cæsar the indicative is used; e.g.

- Quod cum fecerat, dicebat,* *Whenever he had done this, he used to say.*

So also

- Quod cum fecit, dicit,* *Whenever he has done this, he says.*  
 ..... *fecerit, dicet,* ..... *be will say.]*

2. (1) *Cum navis adveniret,* *When, or as, the ship was approaching,*  
 ..... *advenisset, .....* *bad approached, or on the ship having approached.*

- (2) *Cum hæc sint,* *Whereas, since, although, these things are so,*  
 ..... *essent,* ..... *were so, or These things being so, or Under these circumstances.*

- (3) *Simulat se audire, cum interea aliud agat, &c.* *He pretends to hear, while all the time he is at something else.*

- Simulabat .....* *ageret, He pretended to hear, while all the time he was at something else.*  
 &c.

- (4) *Audi cum diceret,* *I heard him saying.*  
*Vidi cum veniret,* *I saw him coming.*

(G) Sentences containing reported definition, reason, condition, question.

1. 2. Laudat	} te, qui hoc	facias	He praises	} you for doing this.
Laudabit			He will praise	
Laudaverit			He will have praised	
Laudavit (perf.)			He has praised	
.....		feceris	.....	you for having done this.
.....		facturus sis	.....	for purposing to do this.
Laudabat	} te, qui hoc	faceres	He was praising	} you for doing this.
Laudavit			He praised (has praised)	
Laudaverat			He had praised	
.....			fecisses	..... for having done this.
.....		facturus esses	.....	for purposing to do this.

These are often translated like the indicative (e.g. *I praise you because you do this*), but a distinction may be made by inserting *as* *be said, as is thought, &c.*

3. Minatur, &c. ni eant,	He threatens them, if they do not go.
Minabatur, &c. ni irent,	He threatened them, if they did not go.
Minatur, &c. ni iverint,	He threatens them, if they should not have gone.
Minabatur, &c. ni issent,	He threatened them, if they should not have gone.

#### 4. Reported (often called Dependent) question.

Video, &c.	} quid facias,	I see, &c.	} what you are doing.
.....			
.....	} quid feceris,	.....	what you did or have done.
.....			
.....	} quid facturus sis,	.....	what you will do.
.....			
Videbam, &c.	} quid faceres,	I was seeing, &c.	} what you were doing.
.....			
.....	} quid fecisses,	.....	what you had done.
.....			
.....	} quid facturus esses,	.....	what you were about to do.
.....			

Non est dubium, quin id fiat,	There is no doubt it is being done.
..... quin futurum sit, ut id fiat,	..... it will be done.
Non erat dubium, quin id fieret,	There was no doubt it was being done.
..... quin futurum esset, ut id fieret,	..... it would be done.

(H) Sentences with verb in subjunctive because dependent 1527 on infinitive or subjunctive.

1. Dependent on infinitive.

Dicit	} se ire (iturum), cum	He says	} that he goes
Dicet		He will say	
Dixerit		He will have said	
Dixit (perf.)		He has said	

..... postulaverit, ..... when the time requires or shall have required.

..... postulaturum sit, ..... when the time shall be about to require.

Dicebat	} se ire (iturum), cum	He was saying	} that he was going
Dixit		He said, (has said)	
Dixerat		He had said	

..... postulasset, ..... when the time required or should have required.

..... postulaturum esset, ..... when the time should be about to require.

So videor, videbor, visus ero, &c. ire (iturus esse), cum tempus postulet, postulaverit, postulaturum sit;

videbar, visus sum, visus eram, ire (iturus esse), cum tempus postulare, postulasset, postulaturum esset.

After the past infinitive the tenses are secondary, e.g.

dicat, &c. dicebat, &c. se ivisse, } cum tempus postulare, &c.  
videor, &c. videbar, &c. ivisse, }

2. Dependent on subjunctive.

The other tenses and translations given under (1) will hold good, if we substitute as follows:

Si eat, if he were to go, for dicat or dicet se ire.  
eat, he would go,

Si lerit, if he should (or shall) have gone, for dixit (perf.) or dix-  
lerit, he would (or will) have gone, erit se ire.

Si iret, if he had been going, for dicebat se ire.  
iret, he would have been going,

Si isset, if he had gone, for dixit (aor.) or dix-  
isset, he would have gone, erat se ire.



*From here to end of Chap. XXIII. the right-hand pages are not continuous with the left-hand pages, but form a parallel exposition. All the sections on the left-hand pages have even numbers, all those on the right-hand have odd numbers.*

## CHAPTER XX.

### USE OF THE MOODS IN HYPOTHETICAL (A) AND CONDITIONAL (B) CLAUSES.

#### (A) Hypothetical subjunctive.

2528

SUCH a subjunctive as appears in the principal clause (*i.e.* the apodosis) of a conditional sentence may be called a *hypothetical subjunctive*.

The hypothetical subjunctive is sometimes (i) accompanied by a formal clause stating the condition, on the assumption of which the hypothetical statement is made. But (ii) the same kind of subjunctive is also found without any separate and regular conditional clause. In this case there may be (1) a phrase or word implying the condition. Often also (2) it is used without any condition precisely conceived, and expresses either an opinion about an abstract or merely imaginary case, or gives a hesitating or polite tone to the assertion. A special use of this is found (3) with the verb in the second person singular, the subjunctive implying that the person thus addressed is a creation of the imagination. The following are typical instances:

- i. With condition expressed in separate sentence.

*Faciam, si sciam*, in all tenses.

- ii. With condition not expressed in separate sentence.

1. *Faciam, hac re cognita.*
2. (a) *Velim, vellem.*  
(b) *Quis dubitet? Nihil dixerit.*  
(c) *Citius dixerim.*  
(d) *Dicat aliquis* (rare).
3. *Orederes victos.*

*Continued on p. 220.*

The following instances (Chapp. xx.—xxiii.) of the indicative and imperative moods are selected, partly for introducing certain idiomatic usages, but chiefly to illustrate, by contrast with these, the effect due to the subjunctive mood. Compared with the sentences on the left-hand pages they all belong to one of two classes; they either express a different meaning in similar sentences (or in sentences introduced by like conjunctions), or express a similar meaning in differently turned sentences. The arrangement of the matter in these chapters is mainly such, as is necessary to show the connexion with one another of the uses of the subjunctive; and the uses of the indicative are grouped as connectedly as the primary object of contrast or comparison with the subjunctive allows.

---

The use of the indicative (1) in a principal sentence, with a subordinate conditional sentence, is very common in all tenses except the pluperfect.

With the so-called potential use of the subjunctive may be contrasted (2) the use of the auxiliaries, *possum*, *licet*, &c. These are used in the indicative because they express, not hypothetically but absolutely, the existence of power, or will, or duty, or the convenience or lawfulness of an action. Of course if this very lawfulness or power, &c. is itself only conditional, then *possum*, *licet*, &c. must be put in the subjunctive like any other verb.

Many instances of the indicative (3), especially in the future tenses, occur which are similar to those containing loose hypothetical subjunctives. The following are typical instances:

1. With condition expressed in separate sentence:  
*Facto, si scio*, in all tenses.
2. Unconditional statement of power, duty, &c.:  
*Possum facere; licet facere; longum est facere.*
3. Uses of indicative contrasting with those of subjunctive on opposite page:
  - (a) *Volo facere.*
  - (b) *Quis negat?*
  - (c) *Libenter concessero.*
  - (d) *Dicet, dixerit aliquis.*  
*Fortasse, Cæcili, dices.*

*Continued on p. 221.*

An hypothetical subjunctive expresses an action<sup>1</sup> which, while its non-occurrence is implied, is yet supposed to occur, if some other action occur.

The following rules for the tense apply to the subjunctive in both clauses.

(a) The present tense is used of an imaginary action in the immediate present or the future, and therefore still possible, but marked (by the use of the subjunctive) as merely imaginary.

(b) The perfect, of an action similarly marked as merely imaginary, but assumed to be already completed, or to be completed before an action still possible in the present or future.

(c) The imperfect, of an action supposed, contrary to the fact, to be already occurring in the present time, or of a continuous state supposed, contrary to the fact, to have existed in past time.

(d) The pluperfect, of an action supposed, contrary to the fact, to have occurred in past time; or at least to be already completed at the present time.

i. *Hypothetical subjunctive, with condition expressed in a separate clause.*

*Si* is used of a positive, *si* non of a negative condition, *nisi*, *ni*, *nisi si* of an exception, (which often has the same effect as a negative condition).

(a) *Present.* Ego si Scipionis desiderio me moveri negem, mentiar. (C. *Lael.* 3.)

Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias. (Ter. *And.* 310.)

Sed deos non curare opinor, quid agat humanum genus; nam si curent, bene bonis sit, male malis; quod nunc abest.

(Enn. ap. C. *Div.* 2. 50; N. D. 3. 32.)

Nisi ames, non habeam tibi fidem tantam. (Pl. *Bacc.* 636.)

Thucydidis orationes laudare soleo: imitari neque possim, si velim, nec velim fortasse, si possim. (C. *Brut.* 83.)

Quid, si pater fana expilet, cuniculos agat ad ærarium? indicetne id magistratibus filius? Nefas id quidem est: quin etiam defendat patrem, si arguatur. (C. *Off.* 3. 23<sup>2</sup>.)

<sup>1</sup> *Action* is used throughout as the general term for what a verb denotes.

<sup>2</sup> In this chapter of Cicero several points of casuistry are put, and the present subj. and future indic. appear to be used indiscriminately: not that they carry the same meaning, but that either is applicable to such matters. One instance of the future indicative is given on the opposite page.

Continued on p. 222.

The INDICATIVE makes a statement without implying <sup>1531</sup> that the action does not occur, or (necessarily) that it does occur.

(N.B. *The verb of being with the future participle is always in the indicative as the apodosis of a conditional sentence, except for some collateral reason. See instances in §§ 1494, 1570.*

*So also usually verbs expressing power. See instances in § 1566, and compare § 1535.)*

1. *Regular conditional sentences with si, si non, nisi, ni; si modo,* <sup>1533</sup> *si quidem.*

(a) *Present.* Si id facis, hodie postremum me vides. (Ter. And. 322.)

Quis ego sum igitur, si quidem is non sum, qui sum? (Pl. Trin. 978.)

Sic agam: si quid venale habuit Heius, si id, quanti aestimabat, tanti vendidit, desino querere cur emeris. (C. Verr. 4. 5.)

Et si jam nostro sentit de corpore postquam distractast animi natura animæque potestas, nil tamen est ad nos qui computo conjugioque corporis atque animæ consistimus uniter apti. (Lucr. 3. 845.)

Hoc mortuo, aut si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit, aut si sunt plures pares, suffragio Druidum de principatu contendunt.

(Cæs. G. 6. 12.)

Tute scis, si modo meministi, me tibi tum dixisse. (C. Att. 12. 18.)

Nos vero, si quidem in voluptate sunt omnia, longe multumque superamur a bestiis. (C. Fin. 2. 34.)

Proinde si quid ad ea, in quæ tum pax conventura videbatur, adicitur, est quod referam ad consilium: sin illa quoque gravia videntur, bellum parate, quoniam pacem pati non potuistis. (L. 30. 31.)

Denique si deus es, tribuere mortalibus beneficia debes, non sua eripere; sin autem homo es, id, quod es, semper esse te cogita.

(Curt. 7. 8, § 26.)

(aa) *Future.* Si damnatus eris, atque adeo cum damnatus eris, (nani dubitatio damnationis, illis recuperatoribus, quæ poterat esse?) virgis te ad necem cædi necesse erit. (C. Verr. 3. 29.)

Facilius autem quod est propositum consequar, si nostram rem publicam vobis nascentem ostendero, quam si mihi aliquam ipse finxero. (C. R. P. 2. 1.)

Quid? si tyrannidem occupare, si patriam prodere conabitur pater, silebitne filius? Immo vero obsecrabit patrem, ne id faciat: si nihil proficiet, accusabit. (C. Off. 3. 23.)

Si ulli rei sapiens adsentietur unquam, aliquando etiam opinabitur; nunquam autem opinabitur: nulli igitur rei adsentietur.

(C. Ac. 2. 21.)

Aut futurum est aut non: si futurum est, fiet, etiamsi vota non suscipis: si non est futurum, etiamsi non susceperis vota, non fiet.

(Sen. N. Q. 2. 37.)

*Continued on p. 223.*

Si exstat hodie ab inferis Lycurgus, gaudeat murorum Spartæ ruinis, et nunc se patriam et Spartam antiquam agnoscere dicat. (L. 39. 37.)

Si gladium quis apud te sana mente deposuerit, repetat insaniens, reddere peccatum sit, officium non reddere. (C. Off. 3. 25.)

Quid ita vero? debeam, credo, isti quicquam furcifero, si id fecerim, præsertim cum se servom fateatur tuom. (Ter. Eun. 861.)

(b) *Perfect (rare).* Tum vero ego nequiquam hac dextra Capitolium arcemque servaverim, si civem in vincula duci videam.

(L. 6. 14.)

Injussu tuo, imperator, extra ordinem nunquam pugnaverim, non si certam victoriam videam. (L. 7. 10.)

Nonne igitur sapiens, si fame ipse conficiatur, abstulerit cibum alteri, homini ad nullam rem utili?

(C. Off. 3. 6, *where are other instances.*)

Remora si sit, qui malam rem mihi det, merito fecerit.

(Pl. Pæn. 4. 2. 106.)

Denique hercle aufugerim potius quam redeam, si eo mihi redeundum sciam. (Ter. Hec. 425.)

Quos, ni mea cura resistat, jam flammæ tulerint, inimicus et hauserit ensis. (Verg. A. 2. 600.)

Si pudica mulier dapes inemptas apparet, ... non me Lucrina juverint conchylia magisve rhombus, quam lecta de pinguissimis oliva ramis arborum. (Hor. Epod. 2. 49.)

Non tantum ad id, quod data pace jam habere potes, si prælio vincas, gloriæ adjeceris, quantum ademeris, si quid adversi eveniat.

(L. 30. 30, § 21.)

(c) *Imperfect.* Hæc tibi ridicula videntur, non enim ades: quæ si videres, lacrimas non teneres. (C. Fam. 7. 30.)

Si aut collegam, id quod mallet, tui similem, L. Aemili, haberes, aut tu collegæ tui esses similis, supervacanea esset oratio mea. Nunc &c. (L. 22. 39.)

Hannibal peto pacem, qui non peterem, nisi utilem crederem.

(L. 30. 30.)

Quod si jam esset, ut esse non potest, tamen de nostra majestate, nihil de illorum, caveretur. (C. Balb. 16.)

Moriar, si magis gauderem, si id mihi accidisset. (C. Att. 8. 6.)

Num igitur Opimum, si tum esses, temerarium civem aut crudellem putares? (C. Phil. 8. 4.)

Cur igitur et Camillus doleret, si hæc (*sc.* civile bellum) post trecentos et quinquaginta fere annos eventura putaret et, ego doleam, si ad decem milia annorum gentem aliquam urbe nostra potituram putem? (C. T. D. 1. 37.)

*Continued on p. 224.*

Non si Opimum defendisti, Carbo, ideo te isti bonum civem putabunt. (C. Or. 2. 40.)

Perficietur bellum, si urgemus obsessos, si non ante abscedimus, quam spei nostræ finem captis Veis imposuerimus. (L. 5. 4.)

Si tot exempla virtutis non movent, nihil unquam movebit; si tanta clades vilem vitam non fecit, nulla faciet. (L. 22. 60.)

Ego si bonam famam mihi servasso, sat ero dives. (Pl. Most. 228.)

(b) *Perfect*. Nisi res manifesta erit ita adlata, ut responderi nihil possit, vicimus. (C. Verr. 3. 62.)

Periisti, si intrassis intra limen. (Pl. Men. 416.)

Si veneno te inter cenam tollere volui, quid minus aptum fuit quam iratum te efficere? (L. 40. 13.)

Si enim rationem hominibus di dederunt, malitiam dederunt: est enim malitia versuta et fallax ratio nocendi. (C. N. D. 3. 30.)

Dixi me pigrum proficiscenti tibi; quid tum profeci, mecum facientia jura si tamen attemptas? (Hor. Ep. 2. 2. 20.)

Epicurus quamvis comis in amicis tuendis fuerit, tamen si hæc vera sunt, nihil enim adfirmo, non satis acutus fuit. (C. Fin. 2. 25.)

Dicite, di, si vos impune fefellerat illa, alterius meriti cur ego damna tuli? (Ov. Am. 3. 3. 16.)

(bb) *Completed Future*. Si tu argentum attuleris, cum illo perdidero fidem. (Pl. Ps. 376.)

Pergratum mihi feceris, spero etiam Scævola, si de amicitia disputaris. (C. Læl. 4.)

(c) *Imperfect*. Si nullum jam ante consilium de morte Sex. Roscii inieras, hic nuntius ad te minime omnium pertinebat. (C. Rosc.-Am. 34.)

Metellum si parum pudor ipsius defendebat, debebat familiæ nostræ dignitas satis sublevare. (Metell. ap. C. Fam. 5. 1.)

Qui igitur P. Servilium Geminum videbat, si Quintum se videre putabat, incidebat in ejusmodi visum, quod percipi non posset. (C. Ac. 2. 26.)

Si Athenienses quibusdam temporibus sublato Areopago nihil nisi populi scitis ac decretis agebant, quoniam distinctos dignitatis gradus non habebat, non tenebat ornatum suum civitas. (C. R. P. 1. 27.)

Ac mihi, seu longum post tempus venerat hospes, sive operum vacuo gratus conviva per imbrem vicinus, bene erat pullo atque hædo. (Hor. S. 2. 2. 118.)

Ad Hellespontum obsistendum erat, ne in Asiam trajiceremus, si pacem tanquam ab sollicitis de belli eventu petituri eratis. (L. 37. 36.)

*Continued on p. 225.*

Nunc quemadmodum audiar sentio, at tum si dicerem non audirer.  
(C. Clu. 29.)

Hæc si non essent, vererer, credo, ne turpiter facerem, si hoc splendore et hac dignitate hominem defenderem. (C. Planc. 30.)

Cantus et e curru Lunam deducere temptat, et faceret, si non æra repulsa sonent. (Tib. 1. 8. 22.)

(d) *Pluperfect.* Si Metelli fidei diffusus essem, iudicem eum non retinuisssem. (C. Verr. Act 1. 10.)

A te infelicem, inquit vilico Archytas, quem necassem jam verberibus, nisi iratus essem. (Cic. R. P. 1. 38.)

Res neque nunc difficili loco mihi videtur esse, et fuisset facillimo, si culpa a quibusdam afuisset. (C. Fam. 12. 28.)

Causam inaugurari coacti flaminis libens reticuissem, ni ex mala fama in bonam vertisset. (L. 27. 8.)

Nihil est tam fallax quam vita humana, nihil tam insidiosum: non mehercules quisquam illam accepisset, nisi daretur inscientibus.  
(Sen. Dial. 6. 22. 3.)

Ergo ego nisi peperissem, Roma non oppugnaretur; nisi filium haberem, libera in libera patria mortua essem. (L. 2. 40.)

ii. *With the condition not formally expressed.* (This is sometimes called the potential mood.) 1534

1. *The condition is sometimes contained in a phrase in the sentence, or implied by the context.*

Uno prælio victus Alexander bello victus esset; Romanum, quem Caudium, quem Cannæ non fregerunt, quæ fregisset acies?  
(L. 9. 19.)

An ego in hac urbe esse possim, his pulsus, qui me hujus urbis compotem fecerunt? (C. Sest. 69.)

Numquam naturam mos vinceret, est enim ea semper invicta; sed nos opinionibus maloque more delentum animum mollivimus.  
(C. T. D. 5. 27.)

Quæ legentem fefellissent, transferentem fugere non possent.  
(Plin. Ep. 7. 9.)

Quod ad vos attinet, tribuni plebis, minasque vestras, ne ego libenter experirer, quam non plus in iis juris quam in vobis animi esset; sed nefas est tendere adversus auctoritatem senatus. (L. 5. 9.)

Illius impulsu cum turribus ardua celsis moenia mota forent: serpens sine vulnere mansit. (Ov. M. 3. 61.)

*Continued on p. 226.*

Ut quicquid ego apprehenderam, statim accusator extorquebat ex manibus: si quæssiveram, quæ inimicitiae Scamandro cum Havito, fatabatur nullas fuisse; sin autem illud egeram, nullum ad Scamandrum morte Haviti venturum emolumentum fuisse, concedebat. (C. *Chu.* 19.)

Tum enim magistratum non gerebat is qui ceperat, si patres auctores non erant facti. (C. *Planc.* 8.)

(d) *Pluperfect.* Cesseram, si alienam a me plebem fuisse voltis, quæ non fuit, invidiæ; si vis suberat, armis; si periculum civium, rei publicæ. (C. *Sest.* 30.)

Si illud jure rogatum dicere ausi sunt, quod nullo exemplo fieri potuit, nulla lege licuit, quia nemo de cælo servarat, oblitine erant tum, cum ille qui id egerat plebeius est lege curiata factus, dici de cælo esse servatum? (C. *Prov. Cons.* 19.)

*The pluperfect (in the apodosis to a conditional sentence) is usual only in rhetorical expressions, such as those in § 1574, (4).*

2. The indicative (of certain verbs) is used to express positively the existence of power, possibility, duty, convenience, &c. in contrast to particular acts.

(a) *The Present and Future are used (though the future is not frequent), when the possible, obligatory, &c. action is spoken of as still possible.*

(b) *The Perfect, of past time generally.*

(c) *The Imperfect, of present time, or of a continuous state in past time, the action being regarded as no longer possible.*

(d) *The Pluperfect, of an action no longer possible in past time.*

(a) *Present.* Possum persequi multa oblectamenta rerum rusticarum, sed ea ipsa, quæ dixi, sentio fuisse longiora. (C. *Sen.* 16.)

M. Quid? si te rogavero aliquid, nonne respondebis? A. Superbum id quidem est: sed, nisi quid necesse erit, malo non roges. (C. *T. D.* 1. 8.)

Longum est ea dicere: sed hoc breve dicam. (C. *Sest.* 5.)

(Dicet) 'emi, pecuniam solvi.' Credo, etiam tabulæ proferentur: est tanti: cedo tabulas. (C. *Verr.* 4. 20.)

*Future.* Nihil est quod verearis, ne sit hoc illi molestum, cui orbem terrarum circumire non erit longum mea causa. (Plin. *Ep.* 7. 16.)

*Continued on p. 227.*



Melius sequerere volentem: dignus eras ultro, poteras certeque, rogari. (Ib. 14. 29.)

O vitæ philosophia dux, quid non modo nos, sed omnino vita hominum sine te esse potuisset? (C. T. D. 5. 2.)

‘Vellem quidem liceret: hoc dixissem.’ Dicas licet. ‘Hoc fecissem.’ Facias licet: nemo prohibet. ‘Hoc decrevissem.’ De- cerne, modo recte: omnes approbabant. (C. Rosc. Am. 48.)

Nulla profecto alia gens tanta mole cladis non obruta esset.

(L. 22. 54.)

Hoc spatio plura facinora in se victi ediderunt quam infesti edidis- sent victores. (L. 31. 18.)

Omnia nostra, dum nascuntur, placent: alioqui nec scriberentur.

(Quint. 10. 3. 7.)

Tacuissem hodie, patres conscripti, ne quid in communi omnium gaudio, minus lætum quod esset vobis, loquerer: nunc interro- ganti senatori si reticeam, aut superbus aut obnoxius videar.

(L. 23. 12.)

Meæ populique Romani disciplinæ causa facerem, ne quid, quod sanctum usquam esset, apud nos violaretur: nunc, ut id curem impensius, vestra quoque virtus dignitasque facit. (L. 26. 49.)

Vir antiquus et gravis Pompei partes laudaret magis, prudens sequeretur Cæsaris, et illa gloriosa, hæc terribiliora duceret.

(Vell. 2. 49.)

2. Often the suppressed condition is ‘if occasion arose,’ ‘if a trial were made,’ and the like. This is most common with the present and imperfect of *velo* and its compounds; or the perfect (with sense of present) tense of some verbs of mental action (*thinking, saying, &c.*). In English we use the auxiliaries ‘can,’ ‘could,’ ‘should,’ ‘would,’ ‘may,’ ‘might.’

(a) *So velim, vellem, &c.*

Id velim mihi ignoscas, quod invita socru tua fecerim.

(C. Fam. 12. 7.)

Nolim enim, ne si Latine quidem possit dici, ‘specierum’ et ‘speciebus’ dicere: et sæpe eis casibus utendum est; at ‘formis’ et ‘formarum’ velim. (C. Top. 7.)

Rogatus in hæc verba populus: ‘Velitis jubeatisne hæc sic fieri?’

(L. 22. 10.)

Majores nostri Karthaginem et Numantiam funditus sustulerant: nollem Corinthum. (C. Off. 1. 11.)

Jam mallem Cerberum metueres, quam ista tam inconsiderate diceres. (C. T. D. 1. 6.)

*Continued on p. 228.*

(b) *Perfect.* Aut non suscipi bellum oportuit, aut geri pro dignitate populi Romani oportet. (L. 5. 4.)

Prohiberi melius fuit impediri ne Cinna tot summos viros interficeret, quam ipsum aliquando poenas dare. (C. N. D. 3. 38.)

Fuit tanti, mihi crede: haberes quod defenderes. (C. Verr. 4. 12.)

(c) *Imperfect.* Perturbationes animorum poteram morbos appellare; sed non conveniret ad omnia. (C. Fin. 3. 10.)

Itaque Plato eos ne ad rempublicam quidem accessuros putat nisi coactos: equius autem erat id voluntate fieri. (C. Off. 1. 9.)

Præpotens est hodie noster Pompeius; cui recte facienti gratia est habenda: esse enim quam vellet iniquus poterat. (C. Fin. 2. 18.)

Omnino mallet (et magis erat tuum, si jam te crassi agri delectabant) hic alicubi in Crustumino aut in Capenati prædia paravisses. (C. Flac. 29.)

(d) *Pluperfect.* Quanto melius fuerat, in hoc promissum patris non esse servatum. (C. Off. 3. 25.)

Catilina erupit e senatu, triumphans gaudio, quem omnino vivum illinc exire non oportuerat. (C. Mur. 25.)

'Quid mihi' clamabat 'prodest rapuisse Sabinas, si mea non vires sed bellum injuria fecit?' Utilius fuerat non habuisse nurus. (Ov. F. 2. 431.)

Philopœmen, evocatis principibus et oratione habita, qualis habenda Alexameno fuerat, societati Achæorum Lacedæmonios adjunxit. (L. 35. 37.)

### Similarly

Hos dies æstivos sic vixit Verres ut...vir ætumberet nemo præter ipsum et prætextatum filium: etsi recte sine exceptione dixeram virum, cum isti essent, neminem fuisse. (C. Verr. 5. 31.)

3. The indicative is found in some sentences similarly framed to those (on opposite page) with subjunctive.

(a) Ducas volo hodie uxorem. (Ter. Andr. 388.)

At taceas malo multo, quam tacere dicas. (Pl. Ps. 209.)

Nolo ores. Ca. Nequiquam nevis. (Pl. Most. 1177.)

Volo interdum aliquem ex historia locum adprehendas, volo epistulam diligentius scribas. (Plin. Ep. 7. 8.)

Malo maherucle id quod tu defendis his judiciis populoque Romano, quam id quod ego insimulo, probari. (C. Verr. 5. 59.)

For other instances see § 1587.

Continued on p. 229.

Camillus quanquam exercitum assuetum imperio, qui in Volscis erat, mallet, nihil recusavit. (L. 6. 9.)

Cuperem voltum videre tuum cum hæc legeres.

(C. Att. 14. 17, § 4 = 16, § 7.)

Cupissem itaque primis temporibus ad istam curationem accedere.

(Sen. Dial. 6. 1.)

(b) *With a simple negative, or with interrogatives, especially quis, implying a negative. (The imperfect is used of past time only.)*

Quis hunc non putet confiteri sibi quæsito opus esse? cui quæsito autem opus sit, quis umquam hunc vere dixerit divitem?

(C. Par. 6. 2.)

Ductus vero aquarum, quos isti Nilos et Euripos vocant, quis non, cum hæc videat, inriserit? (C. Legg. 2. 1.)

Quis dubitet, quin in virtute divitiæ sint? (C. Par. 6. 2.)

Poterat Sextilius impune negare: quis enim redargueret?

(C. Fin. 2. 17.)

Hoc tantum bellum quis umquam arbitraretur uno anno confici posse? (C. Man. 11.)

Quis enim hunc hominem dixerit, qui, cum certos cæli motus viderit, neget in his ullam inesse rationem? (C. N. D. 2. 38.)

Cur Syracusas prætorem quotannis cum imperio mittitis? Nihil aliud profecto dicatis, quam armis superatis vos iis has leges imposuisse. (L. 35. 16.)

Ipsæ, quod minime quis crederet, cum hostis propius esset, tertiam partem militum frumentatum dimisit. (L. 22. 24.)

Nec vero reprehenderim 'scripsere alii rem:' 'scripserunt' esse verius sentio. (C. Or. 17.)

Themistocles nihil dixerit, in quo Areopagum adjuverit.

(C. Off. 1. 22.)

Ubi (Sarmatæ) per turmas advenere, vix ulla acies obstiterit.

(Tac. H. 1. 79.)

(c) *With the adverbs merito, facile, lubenter, citius, and the like, with or without a negative. The perfect is also sometimes found, especially in first pers. sing., without such adverb or negative.*

Sed neque verbis aptiorem cito alium dixerim neque sententiis crebriorem. (C. Brut. 76.)

L. Torquatum tu non tam cito rhetorem dixisses, etsi non deerat oratio, quam, ut Græci dicunt, πολιτικόν. (Ib.)

Libenter omnibus omnis opes concesserim, ut mihi liceat vi nulla interpellante isto modo vivere. (C. Fam. 9. 6.)

Continued on p. 230.

(b) Nam quis hoc non intellegit, istum, absolutum dis hominibusque 1539  
 invitis, tamen ex manibus populi Romani eripi nullo modo posse?  
 Quis hoc non perspicit? &c. (Ib. 1. 4.)

Sunt ea quidem magna: quis negat? sed magnis excitantur præmiis,  
 ac memoria hominum sempiterna. (C. Rab. Post. 15.)

Quis hoc physicus dixit umquam? haruspices dicunt: his igitur quam  
 physicis credendum potius existimas? (C. Div. 2. 16.)

Quid enim aliud esse causam credemus, cur compressis, quod aiunt,  
 manibus sedeas? (L. 7. 13.)

Pro di immortales! Oppianicum quisquam his rebus cognitis circum-  
 ventum esse dicit? (C. Clu. 16.)

Quis non studiose reipublicæ subvenerit<sup>1</sup>, hac tam præclara legis voce  
 laudatus? (C. Legg. 3. 19.)

Quod hinc officium, quæ laus, quod decus erit tanti, quod adipisci cum  
 dolore corporis velit, qui dolorem summum malum sibi esse per-  
 suaserit? Quam porro quis ignominiam, quam turpitudinem non  
 pertulerit<sup>1</sup> ut effugiat dolorem, si id summum malum esse decre-  
 verit? (C. T. D. 2. 6.)

Me nulla dies tam fortibus ausis dissimilem arguerit<sup>1</sup>. (Verg. A. 9. 282.)

Satis superque me benignitas tua ditavit: haud paravero quod aut  
 avarus ut Chremes terra premam, discinctus aut perdam nepos.  
 (Hor. Epod. 1. 32.)

(c) De triumpho tibi assentior, quem quidem totum facile et libenter 1541  
 abjecero. (C. Att. 9. 7, § 5.)

Quid est quod expetas amplius? Lucisne hanc usuram eripere vis, in  
 qua cum maximo cruciatu ac dolore retinetur? libenter reddi-  
 derit<sup>1</sup>, adempta ignominia fedissimi criminis. (C. Sull. 32.)

Libenter tibi, Læli, ut de eo disseras, equidem concessero.  
 (C. R. P. 1. 13.)

<sup>1</sup> Classed by Madvig also as indicative (*Opusc.* II. pp. 95, 96).

Ciceronem cuicumque Græcorum fortiter opposuerim.

(Quint. 10. 1, § 105.)

In quo, quantum ceteris profuturi simus, non facile dixerim.

(C. T. D. 5. fin.)

Tu vero Platonem nec nimis valde umquam nec nimis sæpe laudaveris. (C. Legg. 3. 1.)

Calamitas virtutis occasio est. Illos merito quis dixerit miseros, qui nimia felicitate torpescunt, (Sen. Dial. 1. 4, § 6.)

Publicatæ enim pudicitæ nulla venia. Non forma, non ætate, non opibus maritum invenerit. (Tac. G. 19.)

Citius hercule is, qui duorum scalmorum naviculam in portu everterit, in Euxino ponto Argonautarum navem gubernarit.

(C. Or. 1. 38.)

Macte virtute! Ego enim ipse cum eodem isto non invitus erraverim. (C. T. D. 1. 17.)

Ne illi quidem se nobis merito prætulerint gloriatique sint.

(L. 22. 59.)

Sic ego istis censuerim novam istam orationem fugiendam.

(C. Brut. 78.)

Non illi se quisquam impune tulisset obviis armato, seu cum pedes iret in hostem seu spumantis equi foderet calcaribus armos.

(Verg. A. 6. 879.)

Hoc quidem adscensu vel tres armati quamlibet multitudinem arcuerint. (L. 9. 24.)

Neque pol servandum tibi quicquam dare ausim neque te servare.

(Ter. Eun. 904.)

PH. Cedo cerussam, malas qui oblinam. SC. Una opera ebur atramento candefacere postules. (Pl. Most. 249.)

(d) *Rarely with indefinite pronoun in statement of objections.* 1542

‘Quid ergo postulas?’ dicat aliquis. (L. 37. 53.)

(See the preface.)

3. *The subjunctive is used where the subject is impliedly indefinite, the verb being in the 2nd pers. singular (i.e. you=one).* 1544

(The condition understood is the reality of the subject). N.B. The subject tu is rarely expressed.

Inepta hæc esse nos quæ facimus sentio. Verum quid facias? ut homost, ita morem geras. (Ter. Ad. 430.)

*Continued on p. 232.*

Omnia ego istæc, quæ tu dixti, scio, vel exsignavero. (Pl. Trin. 655.)  
 Desilite, milites, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum  
 reipublicæ atque imperatori officium præstitero. (Cæs. G. 4. 25.)

Mediocribus et quis ignoscas vitiis teneor; fortassis et istinc largiter  
 abstulerit longa ætas. (Hor. S. 1. 4. 130.)

Nos citius caruerimus patriciis magistratibus, quam illi plebeiis.  
 (L. 3. 52.)

Nunc quid dicis? 'Cave ignoscas.' Hæc nec hominis nec ad hominem  
 vox est: qua qui apud te, C. Cæsar, utitur, suam citius abiciet  
 humanitatem quam extorquebit tuam. (C. Lig. 5.)

Narrandum ego istuc militi censebo. (Pl. Mil. 395.)

Quam scit uterque, libens censebo, exerceat artem.  
 (Hor. Ep. 1. 14. 44.)

(See some other examples of completed future in §§ 1485, 1545.)

(d) *The indicative is (except for some collateral reason) used with a definite, or expressedly indefinite subject; especially the future and completed future of dico, quæro, &c. in introducing possible objections.* 1543

1. *With an expressedly indefinite subject:*

1545

Dicet aliquis: 'noli isto modo cum Verre agere.' Sic agam: si quid,  
 &c. (C. Verr. 4. 5.)

'Ergo,' inquiet aliquis, 'donavit populo Syracusano illam hereditatem.'  
 Primum, si id confiteri velim, tamen istum condemnetis necesse  
 est. (C. Verr. 2. 18.)

Quæret fortassis quispiam, displiceatne mihi legum præsidio capitis  
 periculum propulsare. Mihi vero, iudices, non displicet.  
 (C. Clu. 52.)

Dicet aliquis, 'quid igitur censes? vindicandum in eos qui hosti pro-  
 didere rempublicam?' Non manu, non vi, &c. (Sall. J. 31. 18.)

*Continued on p. 232.*

Quem neque gloria neque pericula excitant, nequiquam hortere.  
(Sall. *C.* 58.)

Mirari magis adeo discrepare apud auctores, quam quid veri sit discernere, queas. (L. 22. 61.)

Demptum tenet arbore pomum: Hesperidas donasse putes.  
(Ov. *Met.* II. 114.)

Posteaquam in Siciliam venerunt, mirandum in modum—canis venaticos dices—ita odorabantur omnia et pervestigabant, ut ubi quidque esset aliqua ratione invenirent. (C. *Verr.* 4. 13.)

Injussu signa referunt, mæstique, (crederes victos,) redeunt in castra. (L. 2. 43.)

Neminem totis mox castris quietum videres. (L. 44. 34.)

Putasses ejus luctus aliquem finem esse debere. (Sen. *Dial.* 6. 13.)

Vicinum citius adjuveris in fructibus percipiendis quam aut fratrem aut familiarem. (C. *Off.* 1. 18.)

Postquam vero nationes in familiis habemus, quibus diversi ritus, externa sacra aut nulla sunt, colluviem istam non nisi metu coercueris. (Tac. *A.* 14. 44.)

*Such a subjunctive may occur in a conditional or other subordinate clause; e.g.*

Mens quoque et animus, nisi tanquam lumini oleum instilles, extinguuntur senectute. (C. *Sen.* 11.)

Per silentium noctis sonus ferri, et, si attenderes acrius, strepitus vinculorum longius primo, deinde e proximo, reddebatur.  
(Plin. *Ep.* 7. 27.)

Nec calidæ citius decedunt corpore febres, textilibus si in picturis ostroque rubenti jacteris, quam si in plebeia veste cubandumst.  
(Lucr. 2. 36.)

Amici ejus virtutis ac venerationis erant, ut singulos reges putares.  
(Just. 13. 1.)

Proinde ubi se videas hominem indignarier ipsum,...scire licet non sincerum sonere. (Lucr. 3. 869.)

Bonus tantummodo segnior fit, ubi negligas, at malus improbius.  
(Sall. *J.* 51.)

Erat autem amentis, cum aciem videres, pacem cogitare.  
(C. *Lig.* 9.)

Tu igitur ipse de te? dixerit<sup>1</sup> quispiam. Equidem invitus, sed injuriæ dolor facit me præter consuetudinem gloriosum. (C. Phil. 14. 5.)

'Quid censes igitur?' aliquis vostrum subjecerit. Primum omnium omittendum morem hunc, quem agitis, inipigræ linguæ, animi ignavi. (Sall. Or. Macr. § 14.)

Insignia videtis potestatis, nondum ipsam potestatem. Dixerit enim fortasse quispiam, 'quid me ista lædunt?' (C. Agr. 2. 13.)

Verum ut aliquando ad causas deducamus illum quem instituimus, (riserit fortasse aliquis hoc præceptum,) hoc ei primum præcipimus, quasumque causas erit tractaturus, ut eas diligenter cognoscat. (C. Or. 2. 24.)

Putat aliquis esse voluptatem bonum, alius autem pecuniam; tamen et ille ab intemperantia, et hic ab avaritia avocari potest. (C. T. D. 4. 8.)

Hoc aliquis inter illa numerat, quæ videmur inopinata omnibus dicere, et ait, 'Nemo ergo scit præter sapientem referre gratiam?' (Sen. Ep. 81, § 11.)

Quid referam Baias?...Hinc aliquis vulnus referens in pectore dixit, 'Non hæc, ut fama est, unda salubris erat.' (Ov. A. A. 1. 257.)

## 2. *With a definite subject:*

1547

Quæres, quanti id æstimem. Si unquam licuerit vivere in otio, experieris. (Pollio ap. C. Fam. 10. 31., § 6.)

Rursus jam me, Q. Fufi, irasci fortasse dices. (C. Phil. 8. 6.)

'Rides' inquis, 'in talibus rebus?' Quid faciam? plorando fessus sum. (C. Att. 15. 9.)

Respondebit fortasse Diogenes sic: 'aliud est celare, aliud tacere.' (C. Off. 3. 12.)

Dices oportere me tuis rebus ut meis uti: etiam: sed perinde illis ut meis parco. (Plin. Ep. 6. 28.)

'Qui tibi istuc,' inquis, 'in mentem venit, homini non inepto?' (Cæli. ap. C. Fam. 8. 3.)

Nympho condemnatur. 'Quanti' fortasse quæritis. (C. Verr. 3. 21.)

Ubi eos inveniemus, qui honores amicitiae non anteponant? (*A few lines after comes* Ubi enim istum invenias, qui honorem amici anteponat suo?) (C. Læl. 17.)

Bonus segnior fit, ubi negligitur.

<sup>1</sup> *Subjunctive* according to grammarians generally. See the preface.



## (B) Conditional subjunctive.

Conditional subjunctives are used in subordinate sentences which qualify not positive or absolute assertions, but thoughts, actions in the abstract, qualities; *i.e.* they are used in sentences qualifying subjunctives, infinitives, gerundives, and future participles.

A conditional clause, qualifying a principal clause (1) which has the subjunctive, is sometimes, (a) without any particle, the verb, however, being put first in the clause; sometimes (b) has a relative pronoun; sometimes (c) has *si*, *ni*, *ni*, which may be further strengthened; *e.g.* *etsi*, *tametsi*, *etiamsi*. (For ordinary conditional sentences with *si*, *ni*, *ni*, see the former part of this chapter (§ 1532).)

A conditional clause with *si* frequently qualifies or appears to qualify a principal sentence which has the indicative. These cases are referable to two classes. The first of these is (2) when the indicative verb in the principal clause is an auxiliary verb; *e.g.* *possum*, *liet*, *est*, *fuit*; and the conditional clause really qualifies not the auxiliary but the infinitive or gerundive, which is connected with it. The other class is (3) when the principal sentence does not state the proper hypothetical assertion to which the conditional clause properly corresponds, but substitutes for it a statement of similar content but of a positive character. Sometimes the verb of the apodosis (principal clause) is omitted altogether.

The following are typical instances:

## 1. With apodosis in subjunctive.

(a. 1) *Roges me, respondeam.*

(2) *Absque te easet, viverem.*

(b) *Qui roget, miretur.*

(c. 1) *Si roges, respondeam.* (Ordinary conditional sentences.)

(2) *Etiam si roges, taceam.*

(3) *Si roges, respondeam, si non roges, taceam* (rare).

## 2. With apodosis in some part of infinite verb.

(a) *Poteras respondere, si rogassem.*

(b) *Respondendum fuit,* } *si rogassem.*

(c) *Responsurus fuit,* }

## 3. With proper apodosis exchanged or omitted.

(a) *Si roges, respondebo. Si rogasses, responderam.*

(b) *Suaves numeros, si audissem.*

(c) *Quid si rogem?*

(d) *Ita respondit, quasi accusaret.*

(e) *O si rogaret!*

*Continued on p. 236.*

## Indicative in Conditional clauses.

Conditional clauses with the verb in the indicative usually qualify principal clauses which contain an indicative or imperative. This rule, plainly observable in tenses which proclaim their indicative character by their form, furnishes a rule for the allotment of those words (*e. g.* 1st pers. sing. fut. of some verbs, and all but the 1st pers. sing. of the completed future) which are ambiguous.

The instances are here arranged according as the condition qualifies an (1) indicative, or (2) imperative, or (3) apparently qualifies a subjunctive.

Verbs in the indicative are used without, as well as with, conditional particles to convey a condition; and so also are verbs in the imperative; the mind being left to supply the relation between the two neighbouring clauses with this help only, (apart from the meaning,) that the conditional clause is put before that which contains the consequent assertion.

Especially noticeable among conditional clauses, introduced by a conditional particle, are the use of *etsi* ('*although*') when the condition is a fact, the use of *si*, *sin*, and *sive*, *sive*, in which the indicative is the prevalent form, and of *nisi* introducing afterthoughts.

The instances of an indicative in the conditional clause, when the principal clause has the subjunctive, are either where the principal clause, properly correspondent, has been suppressed; or where the subjunctive form is due not to its conditional function, but to a wholly independent reason, *e. g.* to its denoting a wish or command, &c.

The following are typical instances:

## 1. With apodosis in indicative.

- (a) *Rogo, respondet.*
- (aa) *Roga, respondebo.*
- (b) *Qui rogat, audit.*
- (c. 1) *Si rogas, respondeo.* (Ordinary conditional sentences.)
- (2) *Etsi rogas, or si maxime rogas, taceo.*
- (3) *Si rogas, respondeo, sin nihil rogas, taceo;*  
*Seu rogas, seu nihil rogas, taceo.*
- (4) *Nihil dico; nisi forte rogas.*

## 2. With apodosis in imperative.

*Responde, si rogo.*

## 3. With apparent apodosis in subjunctive.

- (a) *Vellem Romæ esses, si forte non es.*
- (b) *Si placet, hoc agamus.*
- (c) *Si unquam visus sum, certe tum viderer.*

---

*Aliud, ac rogatus est, respondit.*

*Continued on p. 237.*

A conditional subjunctive expresses an action, whose non-occurrence is implied, but which is supposed to occur as the condition of another supposed action.

1. *Conditional clause with apodosis in subjunctive.*

(a. 1) *The protasis may be without relative or connective adverb (the verb being generally put first in the clause). Compare the sentences in § 1622.*

Roges me, qualem naturam deorum esse ducam, nihil fortasse respondeam; quæras, putemne talem esse, qualis modo a te sit exposita, nihil dicam mihi videri minus.

(C. N. D. 1. 21: see also 22.)

Clamet amica, pater, uxor, 'hic fossa est ingens, hic rupes maxima; serva;' non magis audierit, quam Fufius ebrius olim, cum Ilionam edormit. (Hor. S. 2. 3. 57.)

At dares hanc vim M. Crasso, ut digitorum percussione heres posset scriptus esse, cui re vera non esset heres, in foro, mihi crede, saltaret. (C. Off. 3. 19.)

Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes. (Verg. A. 6. 31.)

Negaret hac æstimatione se usum, vos id credidissetis.  
(C. Verr. 3. 97.)

Dixerit hoc idem Epicurus, semper beatum esse sapientem, non pugnem cum homine, illud urgeam, non intelligere eum, quid sibi dicendum sit, cum dolorem summum malum esse dixerit.  
(C. Fin. 5. 27.)

Dedisses huic animo par corpus, fecisset quod optabat.  
(Plin. Ep. 1. 12.)

[So with indicative apodosis, as in § 1574.

1554

Decies centena dedisses huic parco, paucis contento: quinque diebus, nil erat in loculis. (Hor. S. 1. 3. 15.)

Huic aliquis juvenum dixisset amantia verba; reddebat tales protinus illa sonos. (Ov. F. 6. 113.)]

(a. 2) *In the comic poets such a protasis has sometimes the preposition absque with its case, and esset or foret.*

Nam absque te esset, hodie numquam ad solem occasum viverem.  
(Plaut. Merc. 1021.)

So with indicative apodosis, as in § 1574.

Quam fortunatus ceteris sum rebus, absque una hac foret.  
(Ter. He. 601.)

Continued on p. 238.

In the indicative or imperative mood, a condition is <sup>1551</sup> put simply without its being implied that it does, or does not, occur.

1. *Conditional clause with apodosis in indicative.*

(a) *Protasis, without relative or connective adverb, in indicative; 1553 especially the present and completed future. (Cf. § 1571, b.)*

Quicquid dicunt laudo: id rursum si negant, laudo id quoque. Negat quis; nego: ait, aio. (Ter. Eun. 251.)

Intravimus mundum, in quo his legibus vivitur. Placet, pare: non placet; quacunque vis, exi. (Sen. Ep. 91, § 15.)

An ille mihi liber, cui mulier imperat, qui nihil imperanti negare audet? Poscit, dandum est; vocat, veniendum; eicit, abeundum: minatur, extimescendum. (C. Par. 5. 2.)

Clarissimo viro decrevit imperium, privato tamen: in quo maximum nobis onus imposuit. Adsensus ero; ambitionem induxero in curiam: negaro; videbor suffragio meo honorem homini amicissimo denegavisse. (C. Phil. 11. 8.)

Age, restitero Peripateticis: sustinuero Epicureos: Diodoto quid faciam? (C. Ac. 2. 36.)

Sic vester sapiens, magno aliquo emolumento commotus, cum amico, si opus erit, dimicabit. Occultum facinus esse potuerit; gaudebit; deprehensus, omnem penam contemnet. (C. Fin. 2. 17. Madvig.)

Milia frumenti tua triverit area centum: non tuus hoc capiet venter plus ac meus. (Hor. S. 1. 1. 45.)

Tu rem perire et ipsum (filium) non poteris pati. Dare denegarīs: ibit ad illud illico, quo maxime apud te se valere sentiet. (Ter. Haut. 487.)

Rides; majore cachinno concutitur: flet, si lacrymas conspexit amici. (Juv. 3. 100.)

*The protasis may also be taken interrogatively.*

1555

Excogitavit aliquid? eadem dicit quæ Stoici. Pænituīt illa sensisse? cur non se transtulit ad alios? (C. Ac. 2. 22.)

(aa) *Protasis in imperative.*

1557

Attendite: jam intellegetis. (C. Verr. 2. 23.)

Recordare igitur illum, M. Antoni, diem, quo dictaturum sustulisti: pone ante oculos lætitiā senatus populique Romani: confer cum hac immani mutatione tua tuorumque: tum intelleges quantum inter lucrum et laudem intersit. (C. Phil. 2. 45.)

Quem voles e conventu Syracusano virum bonum nominato: producā. (C. Verr. 4. 25.)

Dic quibus in terris, et eris mihi magnus Apollo, tris pateat cæli spatium non amplius ulnas. (Verg. B. 3. 104.)

*Continued on p. 239.*

(b) *Protasis introduced by relative adjective (qui = si quis).*

1558

Hæc et innumerabilia ex eodem genere qui videat, nonne cogatur confiteri deos esse? (C. N. D. 2. 4.)

Qui videret equum Trojanum introductum, urbem captam diceret. (C. Verr. 4. 23.)

Qui vinum fugiens vendat sciens, debeatne dicere? (C. Off. 3. 23.)

Miraretur, qui tum Massilienses cerneret, quæ res eos tutaretur. (L. 34. 9.)

Denique levissime qui suspicaretur, putaret me idcirco discedere, quod, &c. (C. Fam. 9. 2.)

Qua opera credam tibi, una opera adligem canem fugitivam agnitis lactibus. (Pl. Ps. 319.)

Equidem, quæcunque vos causa huc attulisset, lætarer, cum apud me viderem homines mihi carissimos et amicissimos.

(C. Or. 2. 4.)

Qui ipsi sibi bellum indixissent, cruciari dies, noctes torqueri velent, nec vero se ipsi accusarent ob eam causam, quod se male suis rebus consuluisse dicerent; eorum enim est hæc querela, qui sibi cari sunt seseque diligunt. (C. Fin. 5. 10.)

(c. 1) *For ordinary conditional sentences with si see §§ 1530, 1532.*

(c. 2) *With si, si maxime (followed by tamen), tametsi, etiamsi (quamvis, § 1624), of a supposition contrary to the fact. (Concessive sentences.)* 1560

Si hæc non gesta audiretis, sed picta videretis, tamen appareret uter esset insidiator. (C. Mil. 20.)

Eadem opinor omnia convenire, neque enim, si maxime statuae dejectæ essent, eas ego vobis possem jacentis ostendere.

(C. Verr. 2. 68.)

Cæsar mihi, quascunque res gereret, tuendus esset; nunc in tanta felicitate tantisque victoriis, etiamsi in nos non is esset, qui est, tamen ornandus videretur. (C. Fam. 1. 9, § 18.)

Etiamsi mors oppetenda esset, domi atque in patria mallem quam in externis atque alienis locis. (C. Fam. 4. 7.)

Sed tametsi jam ita constituisses, ut abesse perpetuo malles quam ea, quæ nolles, videre, tamen id cogitare deberes, ubicunque esses, te fore in ejus ipsius quem fugeres potestate. (Ib.)

*Continued on p. 240.*

Quod male fers, adsuesce, feras bene. (Ov. *A. A.* 2. 647.)

Quod petis est nusquam: quod amas, avertere, perdes.

(Ov. *Met.* 3. 433.)

Ostendite modo bellum, pacem habebitis: videant vos paratos ad vim;  
jus ipsi remittent. (L. 6. 18.)

Crede huic tutelam: suam rem melius gesserit. (Pl. *Trin.* 139.)

Tolle hanc opinionem: luctum sustuleris. (C. *T. D.* 1. 13.)

Imperti etiam populo potestatis aliquid: non satiaris eum libertate,  
sed incenderis cupiditate libertatis, cum tantummodo potestatem  
gustandi feceris. (C. *R. P.* 2. 28.)

(b) *Protasis introduced by relative adjective.*

1559

Nihil est enim virtute amabilius, quam qui adeptus erit, ubicunque  
erit gentium, a nobis diligetur. (C. *N. D.* 1. 44.)

Hæc et quæ sunt ejus generis facile videbit, qui volet laudare.

(C. *Or.* 2. 11.)

For other examples see § 1681.

(c. 1) *For ordinary conditional sentences with si see §§ 1531, 1533.*

(c. 2) *With si, si maxime (followed by tamen, at), etsi, tametsi, 1561  
etiamsi (quamquam, § 1697), of a simple supposition, especially where  
the supposition is known to be the fact.*

In Decii Magis si moderatio illa, quæ in nostris solet-esse consulibus,  
non fuit, at fuit pompa, fuit species. (C. *Pis.* 11.)

Verum si cognatast maxime, non fuit necesse habere: sed id quod lex  
jubet, dotem daretis; quæreret alium virum. (Ter. *Ph.* 295.)

Missa hæc faciamus. Non te dignum, Chærea, fecisti; nam si ego  
digna hæc contumelia sum maxime, at tu indignus, qui faceres  
tamen. (Ter. *Eun.* 864.)

Cæsar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen ex eo, quod ob-  
sides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur.

(Cæs. *G.* 4. 31.)

Viri boni multa ob eam causam faciunt, quia honestum est, etsi nul-  
lum consecuturum emolumentum vident. (C. *Fin.* 2. 14.)

Tametsi statim vicisse debeo, tamen de meo jure decedam.

(C. *Rosc. Am.* 27.)

Quod crebro quis videt, non miratur, etiamsi cur fiat nescit.

(C. *Div.* 2. 22.)

Continued on p. 241.

(c. 3) *The subjunctive appears to be rarely used with siue or sin, 1562 except in reported narrative or dependent sentence; probably because the writer declines to mark as imaginary any of the possibilities among which he declines to decide.*

Et tamen ego a philosopho, si adferat eloquentiam, non asperner, si non habeat, non admodum flagitem. (C. Fin. I. 5.)

Mihi crede, si pro patris hujus hospitiiis et gratia vellent omnes hujus hospites adesse et auderent libere defendere, satis copiose defenderetur: sin autem pro magnitudine injuriæ hæc omnes vindicarent, consistere mehercule vobis isto in loco non liceret.

(C. Rost. Am. 51.)

Spectatores vos quoque ad cenam vocem, ni daturus nil sim neque sit quicquam pollucti domi, nive adeo vocatos credam vos esse ad cenam foras. (Pl. Rud. 1420.)

2. With apodosis in some part of infinite verb, i.e. 1564 *infinitive, future participle, or gerundive.*

*The verb on which the infinitive depends, or the auxiliary verb with the gerundive or participle, is usually put in the indicative (except for some collateral reason), and conveys a positive expression of duty, possibility, right, &c.*

(a) *A condition qualifying an infinitive.*

1566

Omnibus eum contumeliis onerasti, quem patris loco, si ulla in te pietas esset, colere debebas<sup>1</sup>. (C. Phil. 2. 38.)

Debuisti, Vatini, etiamsi falso venisses in suspicionem P. Sestio, tamen mihi ignoscere. (C. Vat. 1.)

Deleri totus exercitus potuit<sup>1</sup>, si fugientes persecuti victores essent. (L. 32. 12.)

Si mihi nec stipendia omnia emerita essent, necdum ætas vacationem daret, tamen æcum erat me dimitti. (L. 42. 34.)

Pompeius munitiones Cæsaris prohibere non poterat, nisi prælio decertare vellet. (Cæs. C. 3. 44.)

Si ita Milo putasset, optabilius ei fuit dare jugulum P. Clodio, quam jugulari a vobis. (C. Mil. 11.)

Neque tu hoc dicere audebis, nec, si cupias, licebit. (C. Ferr. 2. 69.)

Nec vero ipsam amicitiam tueri possumus, nisi æque amicos et nosmet ipsos diligamus. (C. Fin. I. 20.)

<sup>1</sup> This corresponds to the origin of the English idiom, *should, could, might, &c.*

(c. 3) When several conflicting possibilities are stated, either the <sup>1563</sup> first is expressed by *si*, and the second by *si*, *sin*, *si vero*, &c. positively, by *si non*, *sin* minus negatively; or the first by *si non*, the second by *si etiam*; or each is expressed by *sive*. In the comic poets *si...sive* (not *sive...sive*) are used. (*Sin* is also used occasionally where no express statement of condition has preceded.)

*Si feceris id quod ostendis, magnam habebō gratiam; si non feceris,* <sup>1565</sup>  
*ignoscām.* (C. Fam. 5. 19.)

*Si mihi veniam, quam peto, dederit, utar illius condicione; si minus,*  
*impetrabo aliquid a me ipso.* (C. Att. 9. 15.)

*Inde utrum consistere uspiam velit, an mare transire, nescitur; si*  
*manet, vereor ne exercitum firmum habere non possit; sin disce-*  
*dit, quo aut qua aut quid nobis agendum sit, nescio.*  
(C. Att. 7. 12.)

*Luxuria cum omni ætati turpis, tum senectuti fœdissima est: sin*  
*autem etiam libidinum intemperantia accessit, duplex malum est.*  
(C. Off. 1. 84.)

*Utrum cetera nomina in codicem accepti et expensi digesta habes an*  
*non? si non, quomodo tabulas conficis? si etiam, quamobrem hoc*  
*nomen triennio amplius in adversariis relinquebas?*  
(C. Rosc. Com. 3.)

*Tun' capite cano amas, homo nequissime? De. Si canum, sei istuc* <sup>1567</sup>  
*rutilum, sive atrumst, amo.* (Pl. Merc. 304.)

*Si ex æternitate verum hoc fuit 'Ex isto morbo convalesces,' sive ad-*  
*hibueris medicum sive non adhibueris, convalesces; itemque si ex*  
*æternitate falsum hoc fuit, 'Ex isto morbo convalesces,' sive ad-*  
*hibueris medicum sive non adhibueris, non convalesces.*  
(C. Fat. 13.)

*Sive enim ad sapientiam perveniri potest, non paranda nobis solum ea,*  
*sed fruenda etiam est: sive hoc difficile est, tamen nullus est*  
*modus investigandi veri, nisi inveneris.* (C. Fin. 1. 1.)

*Itaque sive Sulla, sive Marius, sive uterque, sive qui alius bellum civile*  
*optavit, eum detestabilem civem reipublicæ natum judico.*  
(C. Phil. 13. 1.)

*Pacem cum Scipione Sulla sive faciebat sive simulabat, non erat*  
*desperandum, si convenisset, fore aliquem tolerabilem statum*  
*civitatis.* (Ib.)

*Platonis illud, seu quis dixit alius, perelegans esse videtur.*  
(C. R. P. 1. 18.)



*But the apodosis has (1) sometimes an hypothetical subjunctive;* 1568

Hæc si diceret, tamen ignosci non oporteret. (C. Verr. 1. 27.)

Cluentio ignoscere debebitis, quod hæc a me dici patiat; mihi ignoscere non deberetis, si facerem. (C. Clu. 6.)

(2) *sometimes a subjunctive for collateral reason, esp. potuerit, rarely potuisset (comp. § 1521).*

Ventum quidem erat eo, ut, si hostem similem antiquis Macedonum regibus habuisset consul, magna clades accipi potuerit.

(L. 44. 4.)

Tantum in tempore fuit momenti, ut, cum precantibus opem militibus succurri, si maturatum esset, potuisset, ad id venerit exercitus subsidio missus, ut, &c. (L. 4. 58.) Cf. C. Sull. 15.

Philippus, si satis diei superesset, non dubius quin Athamanes quoque exui castris potuissent, sub tumultu consedit. (L. 31. 42.)

(b) *A condition qualifying the future participle, or the gerundive*<sup>1</sup>. 1570

Si tribuni me triumphare prohiberent, Furium et Aemilium testes citaturus fui rerum a me gestarum. (L. 38. 47.)

Illi ipsi aratores, qui remanserant, relicturi agros omnis erant, nisi ad eos Metellus Roma litteras misisset. (C. Verr. 3. 52.)

Peditum acies videbatur, si justa ac directa pugna esset, haudquam impar futura. (L. 22. 28.)

Quid, si hostes ad urbem veniant, facturi estis? (L. 3. 52.)

Hoc Turrinus sequitur, ad summa evasurus juvenis, nisi modicis contentus esset. (Sen. Rhet. Contr. 10. præf. § 16.)

Dedit mihi quantum maximum potuit, daturus amplius, si potuisset. (Plin. Ep. 3. 21.)

Si Romæ Cn. Pompeius privatus esset hoc tempore, tamen ad tantum bellum is erat deligendus. (C. Man. 17.)

Hos nisi manumisisset, tormentis etiam dedendi fuerunt.

(C. Mil. 22.)

Sic fiendus Peleus, si moreretur, erat. (Ov. F. 408.)

Hoc, etiamsi senex non essem, fuerat sentiendum, nunc vero multo magis. (Sen. Ep. 77. 3.)

Si unum diem morati essetis, moriendum omnibus fuit. (L. 2. 38.)

Quid faceret? si vivere vellet, Sejanus rogandus erat.

(Sen. Dial. 6. 22, § 6.)

<sup>1</sup> A sentence with a condition not marked as imaginary, and therefore in the indicative, is given in § 1533 c.

(c. 4) *An exception (in the indicative) is often appended by way of* <sup>1569</sup>  
*afterthought: nisi, nisi forte, nisi vero ironical, nisi tamen. Sometimes*  
*nisi = 'only that,' 'only,' 'but.'*

Nemo fere saltat sobrius, nisi forte insanit. (C. Mur. 6.)

Quid miramur L. Sullam, cum solus rempublicam regeret orbemque  
terrarum gubernaret, aliqua animadvertere non potuisse? nisi hoc  
mirum est, quod vis divina adsequi non possit, si id mens humana  
adepta non sit. (C. Rosc. Am. 45.)

An est quisquam qui hoc ignoret, cum de homine occiso quærat, aut  
negari solere omnino esse factum, aut recte et jure factum esse  
defendi? nisi vero existimatis dementem P. Africanum fuisse,  
qui, &c. (C. Mil. 3.)

Ridiculum caput, quasi necesse sit, si huic non dat, te illam uxorem  
ducere: nisi vides, nisi senis amicos oras, ambis.  
(Ter. Andr. 373.)

De re non possum judicare, nisi illud mihi persuadeo, te talem virum  
nihil temere fecisse. (C. Fam. 13. 73.)

Plura de Jugurtha scribere dehortatur me fortuna mea. Etiam antea  
expertus sum parum fidei miseris esse. Nisi tamen intellego illum  
supra, quam ego sum, petere. (Sall. J. 24.)

Quid egerint inter se, nondum etiam scio: nisi sane curæst, quorsum  
eventurum hoc siet. (Ter. Hec. 192.)

Sperabam jam defervisse adolescentiam: gaudebam: ecce autem de  
integro: nisi, quicquid est, volo scire. (Ter. Ad. 152.)

## 2. Indicative conditional clause with apodosis in im- <sup>1571</sup> perative.

*The conditional clause may (a) have, or (b) not have si.*

(a) Bibe, tibicen, bibe, si bibis: bibendum hercle hoc est, ne nega.  
Age, si quid agis. (Pl. Stich. 713.)

Si id capso, geritote amicis vestris aurum corbibus. (Pl. Bac. 712.)

Quamobrem si me amas tantum, quantum profecto amas, si dormis,  
expergiscere; si stas, ingredi; si ingrederis, curre; si curris,  
advola. (C. Att. 2. 23.)

*Continued on p. 245.*

*The auxiliary verb in the apodosis may be in the subjunctive for a collateral reason; e.g. if the apodosis is a dependent question, &c.*

Ostendis qualis tu, si ita forte accidisset, fueris illo tempore consul futurus: stipendio, mehercule, et frumento Catilinam esse putasses juvandum. (C. Pis. 7.)

Tumulus erat inter castra, quem qui occupasset haud dubie iniquiorum erat hosti locum factururus. (L. 22. 28.)

Subibat cogitatio animum, quonam modo tolerabilis futura Etruria fuisset, si quid in Samnio adversi evenisset. (L. 10. 45.)

Neque ambigitur quin Brutus idem, qui tantum gloriæ Superbo exacto rege meruit, pessimo publico id factururus fuerit, si libertatis immaturæ cupidine priorum regum alicui regnum extorssisset. (L. 2. 1.)

Nec dubium erat, quin, si tam pauci simul obire omnia (loca) posset, terga daturi hostes fuerint. (L. 4. 38.)

Virgines eo cursu se ex sacrario proripuerunt, ut, si effugium parvisset in publicum, impleturæ urbem tumultu fuerint. (L. 24. 26.)

Adeo æquis viribus gesta res est, ut, si affuissent Etrusci aut in acie aut in castris, quocunque se inclinassent accipienda clades fuerit. (L. 10. 27.)

Quæ res sua sponte tam scelerata et nefaria est, ut, etiamsi lex non esset, magnopere vitanda fuerit. (C. Verr. 1. 42.)

3. With suppression or contraction of the proper hypothetical apodosis.

(a) *An allied fact is sometimes substituted for the proper hypothetical statement. This allied fact is usually either (1. Present) a general truth (instead of a particular occurrence); or (2. Future) an unconditional prophecy; or (3. Perfect with pæne, prope, or Imperfect) an incomplete action or tendency (instead of the completed result); or (4. Pluperfect) a wilful exaggeration. Comp. § 1535, d.*

(1) Multa me dehortantur a vobis, Quirites, ni studium reipublicæ superet. (Sall. J. 31.)

Cur Siculi te defensorem habere nolint, etiamsi taceant, satis dicunt; verum non tacent. (C. Caecil. 6.)

Memini numeros, si verba tenerem. (Verg. B. 9. 45.)

Quæ audivistis modo, nunc si eadem hic iterem, inscitiast.

(Pl. Pan. 4. 2. 99.)

Par mulieribus, mihi crede, vigor; par ad honesta, libeat, facultas est. (Sen. Dial. 6. 16.)

*Continued on p. 246.*

Ubi nos laverimus, si voles, lavato. (Ter. Eun. 596.)

Verum parcite dignitati Lentuli, si ipse famæ suæ pepercit: ignoscite Cethegi adolescentiæ, nisi iterum patriæ bellum fecit. (Sall. C. 52.)

Sic ignovisse putato me tibi, si cenas hodie mecum. (Hor. Ep. 1. 7. 69.)

Verum tamen, Crito, si me adsequi potueris aut sicubi nactus eris, ut tibi videbitur, sepelito. (C. T. D. 1. 43.)

Si paret Aulam apud Negidium mensam argenteam deposuisse, eamque dolo malo Negidii Aulo redditam non esse, quanti ea res erit, tantam pecuniam, iudex, Nigidium Aulo condemnato: si non paret, absolvito. (Formula apud Gai. Inst. 4. 47.)

(b) Arguet, arguito: quicquid probat illa, probato; quod dicet, dicas; quod negat illa, neges. Riserit, adride; si flebit, flere memento. (Ov. A.A. 2. 101.)

Occurras aliquo, tibi dixerit; omnia differ, curre, nec inceptum turba moretur iter. Rure erit et dicet venias—amor odit inertes—si rota defuerit, tu pede carpe viam. (Ov. A.A. 2. 225—230.)

### 3. With apparent apodosis in subjunctive.

1573

(a) Sometimes it is not the particular action expressed—this may be in indicative or subjunctive according to circumstances—but the mention of the action, which is qualified by the conditional clause expressed.

Quam vellem Romæ esses, si forte non es. (C. Att. 5. 18.)

Tua nos virtus ita conciliavit tibi, ut, te salvo atque incolumi amico, ne deos quidem iratos, si fas est dici, timeremus. (L. 23. 42.)

Tu tamen velim orationem legas, nisi forte jam legisti. (C. Att. 15. 16.)

'At sunt morosi et anxii et iracundi et difficiles senes:' si quærimus, etiam avari: sed hæc morum vitia sunt, non senectutis. (C. Sen. 18.)

Cum Philippo hoste nostro non societatem solum, sed, si diis placet, affinitatem etiam pepigisti. (L. 34. 32.)

Quod ni ita sit, quid veneramur deos? (C. N. D. 1. 44.)

Quamquam si quædam etiam suaviora nasturcio natura desideret, quam multa ex terra arboribusque gignuntur cum copia facili, tum suavitate præstanti. (C. T. D. 5. 34.)

(2) At si me jubeas domitos Jovis igne Gigantas dicere, conantem debilitabit onus. (Ov. *Trist.* 2. 333.)

Si fractus illabatur orbis, inpavidum ferient ruinæ. (Hor. *Od.* 3. 3. 7.)

Si quis omnia alia habeat, valitudinem, divitias, imagines multas, frequens atrium, sed malus ex confesso sit; inprobabis illum.

(Sen. *Ep.* 76. 12.)

Si, quantum de quaque re dici potest, persequamur, finis operis non reperietur. (Quint. 1. proem. 25.)

(3) Pons sublicius iter pæne hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisset.

(L. 2. 10.)

Inde certamine orto nisi in tribunal legatorum perfugisset, haud multum auit, quin ab exulibus fautoribusque eorum interficeretur. (L. 42. 44.)

Si, me dius fidiis, ad hoc bellum nihil pertineret, ad disciplinam certe militiæ plurimum intererat, insuescere militem nostrum pati tædium. (L. 5. 6.)

Vincebat auxilio loci paucitas, ni jugo circummissus Veiens in verticem collis evasisset. (L. 2. 50.)

Quin labebar longius, nisi me retinuissem. (C. *Leg.* 1. 19.)

Si per L. Metellum licitum esset, matres illorum miserorum sororesque veniebant. (C. *Ferr.* 5. 49.)

Omnino supervacua erat doctrina, si natura sufficeret.

(Quint. 2. 8. 8.)

(4) Præclare viceramus, nisi spoliatum, inermem, fugientem Lepidus recepisset Antonium. (C. *Fam.* 12. 10.)

Si gladium in Asia non strinxissem, si hostem non vidissem, tamen proconsul triumphum in Thracia duobus proeliis merueram.

(L. 38. 49.)

Nisi Latini sua sponte arma sumpsissent, capti et deleti eramus.

(L. 3. 19.)

Me truncus illapsus cerebro sustulerat, nisi Faunus ictum dextra levasset. (Hor. *Od.* 2. 17.)

Perierat alter filius, si carnifici conviva non placuisset.

(Sen. *Ir.* 2. 33.)

Si nihil aliud quæreremus, nisi ut deos pie coleremus, satis erat dictum. (C. N. D. 1. 17.)

*Continued on p. 248.*

(b) Or the apodosis may express a wish or command or consequence, or modest assertion, &c. and on that account have its verb in the subjunctive, without the mood of the protasis being affected.

Etenim si nox non adimit vitam beatam, cur dies nocti similis adimat? (C. T.D. 5. 38.)

Di me faciant quod volunt, ni ob istam orationem te liberasso et ni Scapham enicasso. (Pl. Most. 222.)

Peream, ni piscem putavi esse. (ap. Varr. R. R. 3. 3.)

Peream male, si non optimum erat. (Hor. S. 2. 1. 6.)

Si stare non possunt, conruant. (C. Cat. 2. 10.)

Quod si meis incommodis lætabantur, urbis tamen periculo commoverentur. (C. Sest. 24.)

Si amabas, invenires mutuom: ad danistam devenires, adderes fenusculum, subruperes patri. (Pl. Ps. 286.)

Si volebas tibi omnia licere, ne convertisses in te ora omnia.  
(Sen. Dial. 11. 6, § 3.)

Fratrem mecum et te si habebo, per me isti pedibus trahantur.  
(C. Att. 4. 18 [16]).

Primo, si placet, Stoicorum more agamus. (C. T.D. 3. 6.)

Ne tamen territus fueris, si duæ legiones in hoc concussi orbis motu nondum quiescunt. (Tac. H. 1. 16.)

Non intellego, quam ob rem, si vivere honeste non possunt, perire turpiter velint. (C. Cat. 2. 10.)

Sin erit ille gemitus elamentabilis, si inbecillus, si abjectus, si flebilis, ei qui se dederit, vix eum virum dixerim. (C. T. D. 2. 24.)

Nec vitium duxerim, si Cicero a Demosthene paulum in hac parte descivit. (Quint. 9. 4, § 14.)

(b) *An epitbet, &c. forms the apodosis, instead of a statement of the epitbet's being applicable.* <sup>1576</sup>

Carmen in Junonem reginam canentes ibant; illa tempestate forsitan laudabile rudibus ingeniis, nunc abhorrens, si referatur.

(L. 27. 37.)

Hunc exitum habuit vir, nisi in libera civitate natus esset, memorabilis. (L. 6. 20, § 14.)

Huic igitur legi paruit Cassius, cum est Syriam profectus, alienam provinciam, si homines legibus scriptis uterentur, eis vero oppressis, suam lege naturæ. (C. Phil. 11. 12.)

Itaque præclarum a majoribus accepimus morem rogandi judicis, si eum teneremus, 'quæ salva fide facere possit.' (C. Off. 3. 10.)

Vidimus et merulas poni, suavis res, si non causas narraret earum et naturas dominus. (Hor. S. 2. 8. 92.)

Amisit uxorem singularis exempli, etiam si olim fuisset.

(Plin. Ep. 8. 5.)

(c) *In conversational questions the verb of the apodosis is omitted, perhaps not even distinctly conceived.* <sup>1578</sup>

Quid ais? quid, si adeam nunc insanum? TY. Nugas; ludificabitur. (Plaut. Capt. 602.)

Quid, si hunc comprehendi jusserim? TY. Sapias magis.

(Plaut. Capt. 596.)

Nemo naturæ sanus irascitur. Quid enim, si mirari velit non in silvestribus dumis poma pendere? Quid, si miretur spineta sentesque non utili aliqua fruge compleri? (Sen. Ir. 2. 10.)

(d) *In sentences of comparison; with quasi, velut si, ac si, tamquam si, sicuti, cœu, &c., the verb of the apodosis (being an hypothetical repetition of the verb of the principal sentence) is often omitted.* <sup>1580</sup>

*With tamquam and velut the si also is sometimes omitted.*

Verum homines corrupti superbia ita ætatem agunt, quasi vestros honores contemnant; ita hos petunt, quasi honeste vixerint.

(Sall. J. 85, § 19.)

Ita præcipito mulieri ut simulet se tuam esse uxorem; quasque hunc anulum suæ favæ dederit, ea porro mihi, militi ut darem; quasque ei ego rei sim interpretes. (Pl. Mil. 797.)

Tamquam si claudus sim, cum fusti st ambulandum. (Pl. Asin. 427.)

Parvi primo ortu sic jacent, tamquam omnino sine animo sint.

(C. Fin. 5. 15.)

At accusat C. Corneli filius, et id æque valere debet, ac si pater indicaret. (C. Sull. 18.)

*Continued on p. 250.*

(c) Or the apodosis may contain an hypothetical statement contingent, not on the condition expressed, but on another which is not formally expressed. 1577

Si unquam tibi visus sum in republica fortis, certe me in illa causa admiratus esses (sc. si affuisses). (C. Att. 1. 16.)

Quod si in hoc mundo fieri sine deo non potest, ne in sphæra quidem eosdem motus Archimedes sine divino ingenio (=nisi divinum ingenium haberet) potuisset imitari. (C. T. D. 1. 25.)

Deiotarum ex itinere aquila revocavit: qui nisi revertisset, in eo conclavi ei cubandum fuisset, quod proxima nocte conruit; ruina igitur oppressus esset. At id neque si fatum fuerat, effugisset (sc. si revertisset), nec, si non fuerat, in eum casum incidisset (sc. si non revertisset). (C. Div. 2. 8.)

Quod si Cæsaris causa in provinciam veniebatis, ad eum profecto, exclusi provincia, venissetis: venistis ad Pompeium (=si Cæsaris causæ faveretis, cum in prov. veniebatis). (C. Lig. 8.)

4. In conversational questions the verb of the apodosis is sometimes omitted. 1579

Quid, si hic manebo potius ad meridiem? (Plaut. Most. 582.)

'Quid, si' inquit alius 'C. Cæsar et consul esse et exercitum habere vult?' At ille (Pompeius) quam elementer: 'quid si filius meus fustem mi inpingere vult?' (Cæl. ap. C. Fam. 8. 8, § 9.)

Tr. Agedum, tange utramvis digitulo minumo modo. La. Quid, si attigero? Tr. Extemplo herele ego te follem pugilatorium faciam. (Plaut. Rud. 720.)

The indicative is used in sentences of comparison (cf. § 1635 sqq.) 1581 where the occurrence adduced in comparison is a fact; chiefly with ac, tamquam.

Aliter atque ostenderam facio. (C. Fam. 2. 3.)

Longe alia nobis ac tu scripseras narrantur. (C. Att. 11. 10.)

Philosophia quidem, tantum abest, ut proinde, ac de hominum vita merita est, laudetur, ut a plerisque neglecta, a multis etiam vituperetur. (C. T. D. 5. 2.)

Tibi sum oblitus hodie ac volui dicere. (Ter. And. 841.)

Date operam ne simili utamur fortuna, atque usi sumus, quom per tumultum noster grex loco motust. (Ter. Phorm. 32.)

Nam et vitast eadem et animus te erga idem ac fuit. (Ter. Haut. 265.)

Jusserunt simulacrum Jovis facere majus et in excelso conlocare et contra, atque antea fuerat, ad orientem convertere. (C. Cat. 3. 8.)

Continued on p. 251.



Samnitium exercitus, velut haud ulla mora pugnae futura esset, aciem instruit. (L. 7. 37.)

Illi qui moenia defensabant, sicuti audiri a suis aut cerni possent, monere alii, alii hortari, aut manu significare, aut niti corporibus. (Sall. J. 60.)

Hic vero ingentem pugnam, ceu cetera nusquam bella forent, nulli tota morerentur in urbe, cernimus. (Verg. A. 2. 438.)

Neque moris causa tantum aut legis, sed quanta, si hostis ad portas esset, et servabant vigilias et circumbant cura. (L. 34. 9.)

Qua de re, quoniam tu nihil ad me scribis, proinde habebō, ac si scripsisses nihil esse. (C. Att. 3. 13.)

Nulla major res mihi occurrebat cogitanti, quam si optimarum artium vias traderem meis civibus. (C. Div. 2. 1.)

Ita digreditur Demetrius cum infestioribus, quam si solus iret, praesidiis. (L. 40. 21.)

Epicurus dixerit sane idem in Phalaridis tauro, quod, si esset in lectulo: ego tantam vim non tribuo sapientiae contra dolorem.

(C. T. D. 2. 7.)

Quasi vero mihi difficile sit quam vis multos nominatim proferre.

(C. Rosc. Am. 16.)

Profers triumphos T. Didii et C. Marii, et quæris quid sit simile in Plancio: quasi vero isti, quos commemoras, propterea magistratus ceperint, quod triumpharant, et non, &c. (C. Planc. 25.)

(c) *In wishes,*

1582

O si angulus ille proximus accedat, qui nunc deformat agellum.

(Hor. S. 2. 6. 8.)

Si nunc se nobis ille aureus arbore ramus ostendat nemore in tanto.

(Verg. A. 2. 438.)

Quanquam o si solitae quicquam virtutis adesset! (Ib. 11. 415.)

Illud te hortor, ut, tamquam poetæ boni solent, sic tu in extrema parte muneris tui diligentissimus sis. (C. Q. F. 1. 1. sub fin.)

Sunt naturæ corporum, tamquam hic homo est, hic equus.  
(Sen. Ep. 117, § 18.)

Di miris exemplis somnia in somnis danunt: velut ego nocte hac in somnis egi satis et fui homo exercitus. (Pl. Merc. 227.)

Fuit olim, quasi nunc ego sum, senex: ei filiæ duæ erant, quasi nunc meæ sunt: eæ erant duobus nuptæ fratribus, quasi nunc meæ sunt vobis, &c. (Pl. Stich. 539 et seqq.)

*If the verb of the subordinate sentence is the same (whether requiring the same or a different mood) as that of the principal sentence, it is usually omitted, and the adverb thus appears to qualify a word only. (Cf. § 1022, and examples in §§ 1626, 1641.)*

Negat Epicurus esse corpus deorum, sed tamquam corpus, nec sanguinem, sed tamquam sanguinem...Corpus quid sit, sanguis quid sit, intellego: quasi corpus et quasi sanguis quid sit, nullo prorsus modo intellego. (C. N. D. 1. 26.)

Mirari soleo, cum video aliquos tempus petentes et eos, qui rogantur, facillimos: quasi nihil, petitur, quasi nihil, datur res omnium pretiosissima: luditur. (Sen. Dial. x. 8.)

De Fabiano Severus Cassius, antequam ab illo reus ageretur, dixerat: 'quasi dissertus es, quasi formonsus es, quasi dives es; unum tantum es non quasi, vappa.' (Sen. Rhet. Cont. 2. 12, § 11.)

Apud eum sic Ephesi fui, quotiescumque fui, tamquam domi meæ.  
(C. Fam. 13. 69.)

M. Porcium, sicut omni vita, tum prensantem premebat nobilitas.  
(L. 39. 41.)

Cn. Plancii salutem non secus ac meam tueri debeo. (C. Plana. 1.)

## CHAPTER XXI.

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD TO EXPRESS  
DESIRE, with contrasted use of indicative and imperative.

## (C) Optative and jussive subjunctive.

This use, with the hypothetical subjunctive, exhausts the cases <sup>1584</sup> in which the subjunctive stands in a simple sentence, or in an independent principal clause of a compound sentence.

There are five principal subdivisions of this use. The first (1) contains wishes, either without or with an introductory particle; e.g. *ut, utinam*. The second (2) contains commands and prohibitions. The third (3) contains wishes, commands, &c., which are supported by a verb expressive of the wish or command. The fourth (4) contains questions not (ordinarily) about facts, but whether this or that conceivable action was advisable or not. The fifth (5) contains what are often called concessive sentences, in which an action is directed to be taken for granted, in order that discussion may be concentrated on the consequences.

In all these cases, except (4), if the subjunctive verb requires a negative, *ne* is used instead of *non*. *Cave* and *nolim, nollem* are also used in (3) as equivalent to *ne*.

The following are typical instances:

1. (a) *Valeant cives. Moriar, ni hoc puto.*  
       (b) *Venia sit dicto. Pace horum dixerim.*  
       (c) *Utinam valeas.*
2. (a) *Dicat Claudius. Ne dixeris.*  
       (b) *Dixisses. Ne dixisses.*
3. (a) *Censeo venias. Sine veniam. Cave venias.*  
       (b) *Volo scribas. Vellem (nollem) scripsisset.*
4. (a) *Quid faciam? Quid facerem?*  
       (b) *Non constat, quid faciam.*  
       (c) *Quidni faciam?*  
       (d) *Tace. Ego taceam?*
5. (a) *Fecerit: nunc non facit.*  
       (b) *Quamvis ille fecerit, nunc non facit.*  
       (c) *Nihil dico, modo faciat.*

*Continued on p. 254.*

## Indicative and Imperative.

The uses of the indicative mood in this chapter have not all a close connexion with one another. They have been selected as contrasting, or at least being in some way comparable, with the quoted usages of the subjunctive.

A wish or command may of course be expressed directly by a verb of wishing or command. A command is sometimes expressed by the future indicative, and regularly by the imperative. Certain uses of *videro* and *fazo* are specially noticeable.

Several classes of questions referring to future action, or expressing surprise, or exhortation, are found in the indicative. Hence several uses of *quin*.

Concessions like wishes may be expressed directly and positively, especially with *quamvis* or *licet*, and the imperative is so used with *modo*.

The following are typical instances :

1. (a) *Cupio te valere.*  
    (b) *Valebis, mi Tiro, meaue negotia videbis.*  
    (c) *Sed de hoc mox videro. Viderit ille.*
2. (a) *Dic, Claudī. Ne lacruma (in poetry).*  
    (b) *Dicito. Ne dicito.*
3. (a) *Fazo, venies. Quæso, veni.*
4. (a) *Quid ago? Advolo-ne an maneo?*  
    (b) *Satin' abiit? Etiam rides?*  
    (c) *Imusne sessum? Quin abis?*  
        *Quin hoc attendite. Quin evolare cupio.*  
    (d) *Times. Egon' timeo?*
5. (a) *Esto, jampridem fecit.*  
    (b) *At enim hoc dicit. Et quidem errat.*  
    (c) *Fecerit licebit: nunc non facit.*  
    (d) *Quamvis fecit olim, nunc non facit (post-Ciceronian).*  
    (e) *Fac modo: nihil dicam.*

*Continued on p. 255.*

The optative or jussive subjunctive expresses an action <sup>1586</sup> supposed and either wished, or deprecated, or commanded, or forbidden.

1. Wish. (*See also* § 1608.)

(a) *Without connective adverb; (in negative sentences with* ~~no~~<sup>1588</sup>*).*

Valeant cives mei, sint incolumes, sint florentes, sint beati.  
(C. Mil. 34.)

Id quidem, inquis, di approbent. Ita velim. (C. Att. 6. 6.)

Legati pro contione: Quod bonum felix faustumque sit vobis reique publicae, redite in patriam. (L. 3. 54.)

Excessurum se ex Italia dixit, si, quod di omen averterint, rem publicam oppressisset Antonius. (C. Phil. 12. 6.)

Si sciens fallo, tum me, Juppiter optime maxime, pessimo leto afficias. (L. 22. 53.)

Di facerent sine patre forem. (Ov. Met. 8. 72.)

Ac venerata Ceres, ita culmo surgeret alto, explicuit vino contractæ seria frontis. (Hor. S. 2. 2. 124.)

Rex secunda vigilia, quod bene verteret, ingredi jubet.

(Curt. 7. 11, § 14.)

Omnes per mortes animam sontem ipse dedissem. (Verg. A. 10. 854.)

Phœbe, gravis Trojæ semper miserate labores, hac Trojana tenus fuerit Fortuna secuta. (Verg. A. 6. 62.)

Moriar, mi, quæ tua gloria est, puto te malle a Cæsare consuli quam inaurari. (C. Fam. 7. 13.)

Di te perduint, fugitive! ita fatuus et amens es. (C. Deiot. 7.)

Seu tu Culendru's seu Caliendrus, perieris. (Pl. Men. 295.)

Sollicitat, ita vivam, me tua, mi Tiro, valetudo. (C. Fam. 16. 20.)

Ne sim salvus, si aliter scribo ac sentio. (C. Att. 16. 13.)

Ita di deæque faxint, si in rem est Bacchidis. (Ter. Hec. 102.)

Ne istuc Juppiter optimus maximus sirit. (L. 28. 28.)

*So in certain apologetic phrases; (present and perfect).*

Obsecro vos, putate me ex media contione unum civem succlamare: <sup>1590</sup>

"Bona venia vestra liceat ex his rogationibus legere, quas salubres nobis censemus esse, antiquare alias." (L. 6. 40.)

Usque adhuc certe neminem ex iis quos eduxeram mecum (venia sit dicto) ibi amisi. (Plin. Ep. 5. 6. fin.)

Hoc ego adjuncto (absit verbo invidia), qui dubitare de eventu possim? (L. 36. 7.)

*Continued on p. 256.*

1. A similar meaning to that of this class of subjunctive may be expressed by the indicative.

(a) *A direct expression of a wish is made by the use of the verbs volo, cupio, &c. (Other instances in § 1537.)*

Amicus sum: eveniant volo tibi quæ optas. (Pl. Pers. 296.)

Cupio non obtundere te, si non delectare nostro studio; cupio deterere, ne permaneas in incepto. (Luce. ap. C. Fam. 5. 14.)

Neque ficto in pejus vultu proponi cereus usquam, nec prave factis decorari versibus opto. (Hor. Ep. 2. 1. 264.)

Te ipsum, Nævi, volo audire; volo inauditum facinus ipsius, qui id commisit, voce convinci. Dic, Nævi, diem. (C. Quint. 25.)

Spero enim, quæ tua prudentia et temperantia est, et hercule, ut me jubet Acastus, confido te jam, ut volumus, valere. (C. Att. 6. 9.)

(b) *The second person of the future indicative, by telling a person what he will do, may imply that he shall do it.*

Interea dedite profanos nos: dedetis deinde et istos sacrosanctos, quum primum magistratu abierint. (L. 9. 9.)

Rationes alias reposito: nunc auctoritate veteris imperatoris contentus eris. (L. 44. 36.)

Si quid acciderit novi, facies ut sciam. (C. Fam. 14. 8.)

Antequam aliquo loco consedero, neque longas a me, neque semper mea manu, litteras expectabis. (C. Att. 5. 14.)

Sed valebis, meaque negotia videbis, meque dis juvantibus ante brumam expectabis. (C. Fam. 7. 20.)

Valebis, mea Agrippina, et dabis operam ut valens pervenias ad Germanicum tuum. (Aug. ap. Suet. Cal. 8.)

Cum surgit, surges, donec sedet illa, sedebis; arbitrio dominæ tempora perde tuæ. (Ov. A. A. 1. 503.)

Tu nihil invita dices faciesve Minerva. (Hor. A. P. 385.)

Cum te audirem, accidebat, ut moleste ferrem tantum ingenium—bona venia me audies—in tam ineptas sententias incidisse.  
(C. N. D. 1. 21.)

### Compare

Sic me di amabunt, ut me tuarum miseritumst fortunarum.

(Ter. Haut. 463.)

At qui legitimum cupiet fecisse poema, luxuriantia compescet, nimis aspera sano levabit cultu, &c. (Hor. Ep. 2. 2. 109 sqq.)

Continued on p. 257.

Tu, et meo judicio et omnium, vix ullam ceteris oratoribus, pace horum dixerim, laudem reliquisti. (C. Or. 1. 17.)

Auspicia nunc a Romanis auguribus ignorantur, bona hoc tua venia dixerim. (C. Div. 1. 15.)

(b) *With utinam, sometimes with modo; or (in poetry) ut.* <sup>1592</sup>  
In negative sentences usually with *ne*. In execrations *qui* is used by the comic poets.

Aspecta, rideo. DE. Utinam, male qui mihi volunt, sic rideant.  
(Pl. Asin. 841.)

Utinam ipse Varro incumbat in causam. (C. Att. 3. 15.)

Utinam ego tertius vobis amicus adscriberer. (C. T. D. 5. 22.)

Illud utinam ne vere scriberem. (C. Fam. 5. 17.)

Utinam populus Romanus unam cervicem haberet.  
(Calig. ap. Suet. Cal. 30.)

Quis in hanc rem fuit arbiter? Utinam is quidem Romæ esset! Romæ est. Utinam adesset in judicio! Adest. Utinam sedeat in consilio C. Pisonis! Ipse C. Piso est. (C. Rosc. Com. 4.)

Juppiter omnipotens, utinam ne tempore primo Gnosia Cecropiæ tetigissent litora puppes. (Catull. 64. 171.)

Modo valeres! Scripseras enim te quodam valetudinis genere temp- <sup>1594</sup>  
tari. (C. Att. 11. 23.)

GE. Hæc fient. AN. Ut modo fiant! GE. Fient: me vide.  
(Ter. Ph. 711.)

O pater et rex Juppiter, ut pereat positum robigine telum neu quisquam noceat cupido mihi pacis! (Hor. S. 2. 1. 42.)

Quod ut o potius formidine falsa ludar, et in melius tua, qui potes, orsa reflectas. (Verg. A. 10. 631.)

Qui illum di omnes perduint, qui primus commentust contionem habere. (Pl. Men. 451.)

*A wish is sometimes expressed by a conditional sentence, with the apodosis omitted; see § 1582.*

2. Simple command. (In prohibitions *ne, nemo, nihil,* <sup>1596</sup>  
rarely *non*: sometimes (for et *ne, vel ne*) *neve, neu; nec*.)

(a) *In present and, in prohibitions, perfect tenses.*

*The use of the subjunctive of the second person, present tense, is rare, excepting when the subject is indefinite (§ 1600; cf. 1544).*

Mihi quidem in vita servanda videtur illa lex, quæ in Græcorum <sup>1598</sup>  
conviviis obtinetur: 'aut bibat,' inquit, 'aut abeat.'

(C. T. D. 5. 41.)

*Continued on p. 258.*

(c) *The use of all persons of videro (see § 1485 c.) to put off the consideration of a question, is noticeable.*

Quæ fuerit causa, mox *videro*; interea hoc tenebo. (C. Fin. 1. 10.)

Provoco ad populum...*Videro*, cessurusne provocationi sis, cui rex Romanus Tullus Hostilius cessit. (L. 8. 33, § 8.)

Sed de te tu *videris*: ego de me ipso profitebor. (C. Phil. 2. 46.)

Legi Bruti epistolam, sane non prudenter rescriptam ad ea quæ requisieras. Sed ipse *viderit*. (C. Att. 12. 21.)

Nunc morere: at de me divom pater atque hominum rex *viderit*.

(Verg. A. 10. 743.)

Ipsam iracundiam fortitudinis quasi eotam esse dicebant: recte secusne, alias *viderimus*. (C. Ac. 2. 44.)

'Vos,' inquit (Lucretia), '*videritis* quid illi debeatur: ego me, etsi peccato absolvo, supplicio non libero.' (L. 1. 58.)

Quæ quam sit facilis, illi *viderint*, qui ejus artis arrogantia, quasi difficillima sit, ita subnixa ambulant, deinde etiam tu ipse *videris*. (C. Or. 1. 58.)

*In the first pers. plur. the simple future appears to be more usual.* 1595

Quorum omnium quæ cujusque vis et natura sit, mox *videbimus*; hoc autem loco tantum explicemus, &c. (C. Fin. 5. 21.)

Sed de hoc *videbimus*: exeamus modo. (C. Att. 10. 7.)

*So also*

Quid sit forti et sapiente homine dignum...tu *videbis*.

(C. Fam. 4. 13. 4.)

De nomine tu *videbis* cum Cispio. (C. Att. 13. 33.)

2. The imperative mood is used in commands and entreaties, generally from the nature of its meaning in the second person.

*The third person is only found in the future tense, and its use almost confined to legal or quasi-legal phraseology.*

*In prohibitions, with ne, the present is used only in the poets (once also in Livy, 3. 3): the future only in legal phraseology. A periphrasis by means of noli or cave is more common.*

(a) *Present*. Patres conscripti, subvenite mihi misero, ite obviam injuriæ, nolite pati regnum Numidiæ tabescere. (Sall. J. 14.) 1599

*Continued on p. 259.*



Ergo detur aliquid ætati: sit adulescentia liberior: non omnia voluptatibus denegentur: non semper superet vera illa et directa ratio. (C. *Cael.* 18.) *Here non belongs to omnia, semper.*

Quamobrem hic nobis sit exceptus. (C. *Or.* 1. 38.)

Amemus patriam, pareamus senatui, consulamus bonis, præsentis fructus neglegamus, posteritatis gloriæ særviamus; speremus quæ volumus, sed quod acciderit feramus. (C. *Sest.* 68.)

Reliqua magna sunt ac multa, sed posita omnia in vobis: quamquam primum quidque explicemus. (C. *Fam.* 12. 1.)

Meminerimus etiam adversus infimos justitiam esse servandam.

(C. *Off.* 1. 13.)

Injurias fortunæ, quas ferre nequeas, defugiendo relinquas.

(C. *T. D.* 5. 41.)

Isto bono utare, dum adsit: quam absit, ne requiras<sup>1</sup>. (C. *Sen.* 10.)

Quid bellicosus Cantaber, Hirpine Quinti, cogitet, remittas querere nec trepides in usum poscentis ævi pauca. (Hor. *Od.* 2. 11. 1.)

Molestus ne sis: hæc sunt sicut prædico. (Pl. *Most.* 771.)

Ne attigas puerum istac causa. (Pl. *Bac.* 415.)

Ne transieris Iberum; ne quid rei tibi sit cum Saguntinis; nusquam te vestigio moveris. (L. 21. 44.)

Nihil ignoveris; nihil omnino gratiæ concesseris; misericordia commotus ne sis; in sententia permaneto. (C. *Mur.* 31.)

Ne vos quidem, iudices ii, qui me absolvistis, mortem timueritis.

(C. *T. D.* 1. 41.)

Neve tibi ad solem vergant vineta cadentem, neve inter vitis corylum sere, neve flagella summa pete, &c. (Verg. *G.* 2. 298.)

Quare neque tu me peregrinum posthac dixeris, ne gravius refutere, neque regem, ne derideare. (C. *Sull.* 8.)

Tam moveor quam tu, Luculle, nec me minus hominem quam te putaveris. (C. *Ac.* 2. 46.)

Clausos omnes in Curia accipite, solos, inermes. Nec quicquam raptim aut forte temere egeritis. (L. 23. 3.)

Numquam istuc dixis neque animum induxis tuum. (Pl. *Capt.* 149.)

Non splendeat toga, ne sordeat quidem: non habeamus argentum, sed non putemus frugalitatis indicium argento caruisse.

(Sen. *Ep.* 5, § 3.)

<sup>1</sup> In prohibitions to a definite person the present subjunctive active is found occasionally in comic poets: once in Horace (*S.* 2. 3. 88): once only in Cicero, in an old proverb (*Att.* 9. 18. 'Tu, malum, inquires, actum ne agas'). The present deponent once in Cicero (*Att.* 14. 1). (Madvig, *Opusc.* ii. 105 sqq.)

Sed nunc agite uterque ; id quod rogabo dicite. M. Ubi lubet, roga.  
(Pl. Men. 1105.)

Tibi habe sane istam laudationem Mamertinorum. (C. Verr. 4. 46.)

Dii, regum ultores, adeste. (L. 2. 6.)

Centurio in comitio exclamavit: Signifer, statue signum; hic manebimus optime. (L. 5. 55.)

Suscipe paulisper meas partis et eum te esse finge, qui sum ego; si facile inveneris, quid dicas, noli ignoscere hæsitati meæ.  
(C. Fam. 3. 12.)

Date frenos impotenti naturæ et indomito animali, et sperate ipsas modum licentiæ facturas. (L. 34. 2, § 13.)

Recordamini, agitedum, quoties sacra instaurentur, quia aliquid ex patrio ritu negligentia casuve prætermisum est. (L. 5. 52.)

Tu ne cede malis, sed contra audentior ito. (Verg. A. 6. 95.)

1601

Abi, ne jura: satis credo. (Pl. Pers. 490.)

Ne clama: petito illasce (minas) a me decem. (Ter. Ph. 664.)

Ne lacruma atque istuc, quid quid est, fac me ut sciam: ne retice, ne verere, crede, inquam, mihi. (Ter. Haut. 84.)

Lx. Vide modo. Ev. Me vide. Lx. Sat habeo; sed quæso etiam vide. (Pl. Merc. 1013.)

Salve. Vale. Have.

1603

(b) *Future.* Quum valetudini tuæ diligentissime consulueris, tum, mi Tiro, consulto navigationi. (C. Fam. 16. 4.)

Illud quidem sic habeto, nisi sanatus animus sit, finem miseriarum nullum fore. (C. T. D. 3. 6.)

Quæ si vobis non probabuntur, vestram iniquitatem accusatote, qui ex me ea quæsieritis, quæ ego nescirem; meam facilitatem laudatote, cum vobis non gravate respondero. (C. Or. 1. 48.)

Quod jubebo, scribito istic. Nam propterea te volo scribere, ut pater cognoscat litteras, quando legat. Scribe. (Pl. Bac. 729.)

Age nunc vincito me, auscultato filio. (Ib. 855.)

Si te forte meæ gravis uret sarcina chartæ, abicito potius, quam quo perferre juberis, clitellas ferus impingas. (Hor. Ep. 1. 13. 6.)

Jam vero quid opus est circumitione et anfractu, ut sit utendum interpretibus somniorum potius, quam directo deus, siquidem nobis consulebat, 'hoc facito,' 'hoc ne feceris,' diceret, idque visum vigilanti potius quam dormienti daret? (C. Div. 2. 61.)

(b) *In imperfect and pluperfect tenses, of advice applicable to circumstances no longer existing.*

Non ego illi argentum redderem? ME. Non redderes, neque de illo quicquam neque emereres neque venderes, nec qui deterior esset faceres copiam. (Pl. Trin. 134.)

Voconia lex te videlicet delectabat. Imitatus esses ipsum Voconium, qui lege sua hereditatem ademit nulli. (C. Verr. 1. 42.)

Civem Romanum in crucem egisti. Asservasses hominem, clausum habuisses, dum Panhormo Ræcius veniret: cognosceret hominem, aliquid de summo supplicio remitteres; si ignoraret, tum, &c. (Ib. 5. 65.)

Non triumphum impedire debuit, quem senatus justum esse judicaverat, sed postero die, quam triumphatum esset, nomen deferret et legibus interrogaret. (L. 45. 37.)

Quid facere debuisti? si ut plerique faciunt, frumentum ne emisses, sumpsissem id nummorum. (C. Verr. 3. 84.)

Aut ne poposcisses; ego enim tibi me non offerebam. (C. Att. 2. 1.)

### 3. In quasi-dependence on another verb.

1666

*Primary tenses are used when the principal verb is primary, and secondary, when that is secondary.*

Censeo ad nos Luceriam venias. (Pompeius ap. C. Att. 8. 11 A.)

Abi, nuntia publice patribus, urbem Romanam muniant. (L. 22. 49.)

Sine timidum pro cauto, imbellem pro perito belli vocent.

(L. 22. 39.)

In hæc verba, L. Cæcili, jures postulo. (L. 22. 53.)

Jugurtha oppidanos hortatur, moenia defendant. (Sall. J. 56.)

Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit: cum vellet, congrediretur.

(Cæs. G. 1. 36.)

Tusculanis negotium datum, adverterent animos ne quid novi tumultus Lavicis oriretur. (L. 4. 45.)

Audendum atque agendum, non consultandum, ait, in tanto malo esse. Irent secum extemplo armati, qui rempublicam salvam vellent. (L. 22. 53.)

Hesternæ tibi nocte dixeramus cenares hodie, Procille, mecum.

(Mart. 1. 27.)

Omnia fecerit oportet, quæ interdicta et denunciata sunt, priusquam aliquid postulet. (C. Phil. 7. 9.)

Huic vitæ tot tantisque gaudiis refertæ fortuna ipsa cedat necesse est. (C. T. D. 5. 25.)

Fremant omnes licet: dicam quod sentio. (C. Or. 1. 44.)

*Continued on p. 262.*

Tu quidem macte virtute diligentiaque esto. (L. 10. 40, § 11.)

Heres Titius esto cernitoque in centum diebus proxumis, quibus scies poterisque. Quod ni ita creveris, exheres esto.

(In a will. Gai. 2. 165.)

Mustum si voles totum annum habere, in amphoram mustum indito, et corticem oppicato: demittito in piscinam: post xxx diem eximito. Totum annum mustum erit. (Cato, R. R. 120.)

Borea flante ne arato, frugem ne serito, semen ne jacito.

(Plin. H. N. 18, § 384.)

Qui minor annos xxx natus est erit, nei quis eorum post k. Januar. secundas in municipio colonia præfectura ii viratum iii viratum neve quem alium magistratum petito neve capito neve gerito... Qui adversus ea fecerit, is HS 1000 populo dare damnas esto, ejusque pecuniæ quei volet petitio esto. (Lex Jul. Mun. 28.)

---

Compare the indicatives in § 1535.

3. In Plautus and Terence *faxo* (§ 1486) is frequently used with 1607  
an indicative future logically, not grammatically, dependent.

Helleborum potabis *faxo* aliquos viginti dies. (Pl. Men. 959.)

Abi machæram hic efer. Sc. Jam *faxo* hic erit. (Pl. Mil. 463.)

Ph. Nequeo mirari satis, quo illic abire ignavos possit longius, nisi si domum forte ad nos rediit. Pr. Vise, amabo, num sit. Ph. Jam *faxo* scies. (Ter. Eun. 661.)

*Faxo* hau tantillum dederis verborum mihi. (Pl. Trin. 60.)

Ego *faxo* et operam et vinum perdiderit simul. (Pl. Aul. 570.)

The indicative or imperative is used in some other similar expressions thrown in parenthetically. (Compare § 1761.)

Certumst, antiqua recolam et servibo mihi. (Pl. Merc. 546.)

Credo, impetrabo ut aliquot saltem nuptiis prodat dies: interea flet aliquid, spero. (Ter. Andr. 818.)

Quæso, æquo animo patitor. (Pl. Asin. 375.)

Cur non hunc Regem jugulas? Operum hoc, mihi crede, tuorumst.

(Hor. S. 1. 7. 35.)

'Ipse deus simul atque volam me solvet.' Opinor, hoc sentit, 'moriar.'

(Hor. Ep. 1. 16. 79.)

Di boni, quid turbæst! ædes nostræ vix capient, scio. (Ter. Haut. 254.)

Ita est: nihil perpetuum, pauca diuturna sunt. (Sen. Dial. 11. 1.)

---

Continued on p. 263.

Quin etiam Graecis verbis licebit utare, cum voles, si te Latina forte deficient. (C. *Ac.* 1. 7.)

Hæc curata sint fac sis. (Pl. *Ampb.* 981.)

Vin te faciam fortunatum? (Pl. *Capt.* 858.)

Dum ille dormit, volo tu prior occupes. (Pl. *Ps.* 921.)

De Menedemo vellem verum fuisset, de regina velim verum sit.

(C. *Att.* 15. 4.)

Nimis velim improbissumo homini malas edentaverint. (Pl. *Ru.* 662.)

Quam mallet vinctos mihi traderet. (L. 22. 49.)

Negas quod oculis video? GR. At ne videas velim. (Pl. *Ru.* 1067.)

Nolo me in tempore hoc videat senex. (Ter. *And.* 819.)

1608

Eculeos aufert. Imprudens huc incidi, iudices; emit enim, non abstulit: nollem dixissem. (C. *Verr.* 4. 20.)

Cave putes quicquam homines magis unquam esse miratos. See § 1584. (C. *Att.* 5. 21.)

Mane: cave quoquam ex istoc excessis loco. (Ter. *Andr.* 760.)

#### 4. In interrogative sentences.

1610

Usually a negative answer is expected. In a negative question *non* is used. (These are sometimes called *dubitative questions*.)

##### (a) In principal sentences.

Quid hoc homine faciatis, aut ad quam spem tam importunum animal resèrvetis? (C. *Verr.* 2. 16.)

Quid enumerem artium multitudinem? (C. *Off.* 2. 4.)

Sed quid ego vetera conquiram, cum mihi liceat uti præsentibus exemplis atque viris? (C. *Or.* 3. 8.)

Mirer, inquit, si vana vestra auctoritas ad plebem est? (L. 3. 21.)

Quid ego facerem? CH. Quid tu faceres, men' rogas? requæreres, rogitares quis esset aut unde esset, qua prosapia.

(Pl. *Merc.* 633.)

Hæc cum viderem, quid agerem, iudices? Contenderem contra tribunum plebis privatus armis? Forsitan non nemo dixerit; 'Restitisses, repugnasses, mortem pugnans oppetisses.'

(C. *Sest.* 19. 20.)

Quid tandem me facere decuit, cum Abrupolis fines mei regni usque ad Amphipolim pervastasset? Quiescerem et paterer donec in regiam meam armatus pervenisset? (L. 42. 41.)

Unus furiosus gladiator contra patriam gerit bellum. Huic cedamus? hujus condiciones audiamus? cum hoc pacem fieri posse credamus? (C. *Phil.* 13. 7.)

Continued on p. 264.

4. In the indicative mood a question relates only to a fact. The following classes of questions may be here noted:

(a) Relating to the speaker's present or prospective action; in present tense.

Sed quid ego tam vehementer invehor? Verbo uno repellar. 'Emi' inquit. (C. Verr. 4. 4.)

Sed quid ea commemoro, quæ tum, quum agebantur, in cælum laudibus efferebantur? (C. Flac. 51.)

Quid loquor de nobis qui ad laudem et ad decus natî, suscepti, instituti sumus? (C. Fin. 5. 22.)

Etsi quid mi auctor es? Advolone an maneo? Equidem et in libris hæreo, et illum hic excipere nolo. (C. Att. 13. 40.)

Mææ nutricem gnatæ video. Quid ago? Adeo, maneo, dum hæc quæ loquitur magis cognosco? (Ter. Ph. 736.)

Stantes plaudebant in re ficta; quid arbitramur in vera facturos fuisse? (C. Læl. 7.)

(b) Expressing surprise or indignation; especially, in comic poets, with *satin'* (ironical), etiam.

An, dum bestiæ loquantur, exspectamus, hominum consentiente auctoritate contenti non sumus? (C. Div. 1. 39.)

Sed ego cesso ad Thaidem hanc deducere? (Ter. Eun. 265.)

Verresne habebit domi suæ candelabrum Jovis, e gemmis auroque perfectum? (C. Verr. 4. 32.)

Dedemus ergo Hannibalem? dicet aliquis. (L. 21. 10.)

Satin' abiit, neque quod dixi flocci existumat? (Pl. Most. 76.)

Satin', quicquid est, si quam rem ego agere ocepi, proprium mihi nequit evenire id quod cupio? (Pl. Merc. 337.)

Quid nunc? etiam consulis? Le. Quid istic? quando ita vis, di bene vortant, spondeo. (Pl. Trin. 572.)

Etiam rides? Itan' lepidum tibi visumst, scelus, nos inridere?  
(Ter. Eun. 1017.)

Apud exercitum mihi fueris tot annos; forum non attigeris; afueris tam diu; et, cum longo intervallo veneris, cum his, qui in foro habitarent, de dignitate contendas? (C. Mur. 9.)

Tu non definias, quo colonias, in quæ loca, quo numero colonorum deduci velis? tu occupes locum, quem idoneum ad vim tuam judicaris? (C. Rull. 2. 27.)

An mihi cantando victus non redderet ille caprum?

(Verg. B. 3. 21.)

(b) *So also in a dependent sentence.*

1612

Quin tu, quid faciam, impera. (Ter. Phorm. 223.)

Cogito, sæviter blanditerne adloquar. (Pl. Ps. 1290.)

Non satis Bruto vel tribunis militum constabat, quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent. (Cæs. G. 3. 14.)

Vos hoc tempore eam potestatem habetis, ut statuatis, utrum nos semper miseri lugeamus, an aliquando per vestram virtutem sapientiamque recreemur. (C. Mil. 2.)

Ubi consistamus, non habemus, præter Sex. Pompeium.

(D. Brutus ap. C. Fam. 11. 1.)

Extemplo agitabatur quemadmodum ultro inferendo bello averterent ab Italia hostem. (L. 23. 38.)

De pueris quid agam, non habeo. (C. Att. 7. 19.)

(c) *The subjunctive with quidni, 'why not?' has a similar meaning, and the whole expression is tantamount to a confident affirmative. 'How can I help, &c.?' i.e. 'of course I, &c.'* 1614

Haben' hominem, amabo? PH. Quid ni habeam? (Ter. Eun. 674.)

Et me despexe ad te per impluvium tuum fateor. PE. Quidni fatearis, ego quod viderim? (Pl. Mil. 553.)

Cum Maximus Tarentum recepisset, rogavit eum Salinator, ut meminisset opera sua se Tarentum recepisse; 'quidni,' inquit, 'meminerim? numquam enim recepissem, nisi tu perdidisses.'

(C. Or. 2. 67.)

Quosdam vero etiam, quos totos imitari oporteat, et fuisse nuper et nunc esse, quidni libenter non modo concesserim, verum etiam contenderim? (Quint. 2. 5. 25.)

[So frequently with the verb omitted. 'Of course.' Also quippini. 1616]

DE. Hanc igitur mittimus? CH. Quidni? DE. Illa maneat?  
DE. Sic. (Ter. Ph. 813.)

MED. Scin' quid facias optumumst; ad me face uti deferatur.  
SE. Itane censes? MED. Quippini? Ibi meo arbitratu potero curare hominem. (Pl. Men. 948.)]

Continued on p. 266.

(c) *Implying an exhortation; especially with etiam, quin (= qui 1613* ne, 'how not?'); e.g. *etiam taces? 'will you be silent?' non taces? 'wont you be silent?' quin urges? 'why not press?' in present tense.*

Quid est, Crasse, inquit Julius, imusne sessum? etsi admonitum venimus te, non flagitatum. (C. Or. 3. 5.)

Viden' ut expalluit! datin' isti sellam, ubi assidat, cito et aequalem cum aqua? properatin' ocius? (Pl. Curc. 311.)

Quid edemus nosmet postea? Læ. Etiam tu taces? Tibi egon' rationem reddam? (Pl. Trin. 515.)

Nunc quando vis eamus intro. Eæ. Etiam parasitum manes? Mæ. Neque ego illum maneo, neque si venerit eum volo intromitti.

(Pl. Men. 422.)

Credo, non credet pater. Ac. Non taces, stultissime? Credet hercle.

(Pl. Merc. 211.)

Quin tu expedis, quid siet quod me per urbem currens quærebas 1615 modo? (Ib. 174.)

Quin prius me ad pluris penetravi? (Pl. Trin. 291.)

Quin tu urges occasionem istam et facultatem, qua melior numquam reperietur? (C. Fam. 7. 8.)

Quin, si vigor juventæ inest, conscendimus equos, invisimusque præ-sentes nostrarum ingenia? (L. 1. 57.)

Denique quid reliqui habemus præter miseram animam? Quin igitur expergiscimini? (Sall. C. 20.)

'Quidnam tu, hospes, paras?' inquit, 'inceste sacrificium Dianæ facere? Quin tu ante vivo perfunderis flumine? infima valle præfluit Tiberis.' (L. 1. 45.)

[Hence the use of quin (1) with imperative.

1617

Quin vos mihi fœnus date. Quid hic nugamini? (Pl. Most. 584.)

Sed hoc mihi molestumst. Quin tu uno verbo dic, quid est quod me velis. (Ter. Andr. 45.)

Quin sic attendite, iudices. (C. Mil. 29.)

(2) with indicative, of a startling statement; (so Engl. 'why').

Lubet audire nisi molestumst. Sx. Quin discupio dicere.

(Pl. Trin. 932.)

Ego vero jam te nec hortor nec rogo ut domum redeas; quin hinc ipse evolare cupio. (C. Fam. 7. 30.)

Nihil ea res animum militaris viri et multos experti casus imminuit; quin contra breve id tyranno gaudium se effecturum affirmabat.

(L. 35. 26.)

Legiones novum ducem, novam quærebant rempublicam: quin etiam ausi sunt minari daturos senatui, daturos principi leges.

(Vell. 2. 125.)]

Continued on p. 267.



(d) *A question of this class is used in a reply taking up indignantly a speaker's words, especially an exhortation.* (Cf. § 1770.) 1618

Tamen, Simo, audi. ST. Ego audiam? quid audiam, Chremes?

(Ter. Andr. 894.)

PH. Nausistrata, inquam. CH. Non taces? PH. Taceam?

(Ter. Ph. 987.)

Quid ais, Myrrina? heus tibi dico. MY. Mihine, mi vir? PH.

Vir ego tuos sim? (Ter. Hec. 523.)

Tum tu me sine illam vendere. SA. Tun' illam vendas?

(Pl. Pers. 134.)

*Similarly* Ego rus abituram hinc cum tuo me certo decrevi patre.

PA. Quæso quid istuc consilist? Illius stultitia victa, ex urbe tu rus habitatum migres? (Ter. Hec. 589.)

5. Rhetorical commands, i.e. *an action supposed and assumed, on, or notwithstanding, which assumption another statement is made.* (Concessive sentences. Compare § 1552.) 1620

*In negative sentences the particle is ne, not non.*

(a) *Frequently with particles, sane, fortasse.* 1622

Vendat ædis vir bonus: pestilentes sint et habeantur salubres; sed hoc præter dominum nemo sciat: quæro, si hæc emptoribus venditor non dixerit, num injuste fecerit. (C. Off. 3. 13.)

Hæc si vobis non probamus, sint falsa sane: invidiosa certe non sunt. (C. Acad. 2. 32.)

Ne sint in senectute vires: ne postulantur quidem vires a senectute. (C. Sen. 11.)

Vocate in concilium Græciæ civitates, per quas iter feci; queratur unus quilibet militis mei injuriam; non recusabo quin simulato sacrificio aliud petisse videar. (L. 42. 42.)

Sed ierit ad bellum, dissenserit non a te solum, verum etiam a fratribus: hi te orant tui. (C. Lig. 12.)

Emerserit ex peculatus etiam iudicio: ex majestatis quoque iudicio evaserit: confringat iste sane vi sua consilia senatoria, evolet ex vestra severitate: mihi credite, artioribus apud populum Romanum laqueis tenebitur. (C. Verr. 1. 5.)

'Malus civis, improbus consul, seditiosus homo Cn. Carbo fuit.' Fuerit aliis: tibi quando esse cœpit? (C. Verr. 1. 13.)

Nemo is, inquires, unquam fuit. Ne fuerit: ego enim quid desiderem, non quid viderim, disputo. (C. Or. 29.)

Esto: fecerit, si ita vis, Torquatus propter suas utilitates. Num etiam ejus collega, P. Decius, cum in Latinos irruebat, aliquid de voluptatibus suis cogitabat? (C. Fin. 2. 19.)

*Continued on p. 268.*

(d) *Taking up a speaker's words and questioning the fact.*

1619

(Compare §§ 1691, 1771.)

Non dico (nomen); quasi non nosses, temptatum advenis. D<sup>x</sup>. Ego autem tempto? (Ter. Ph. 388.)

Non pol temerest, quod tu tam times. Ch. Egon' timeo? (Ib. 999.)

Sed obsecro hercle, salta sic cum palla postea. M<sup>x</sup>. Ego saltabo? sanus hercle non es. (Pl. Men. 197.)

Faciam ut verus hodie reperiare Tyndarus. Quid mi abnutas? Ty. Tibi ego abnuto? (Pl. Capt. 606.)

'Mori' inquit 'filium vis.' Ego te mori volo? immo furor tuus.

(Sen. Rhet. Contr. 11. 1.)

5. *The indicative or imperative makes a concession positively and expressly; the statement however need not be a fact, but may be made ironically or for argument's sake (a) with particles sane, quidem, omnino, fortasse.* 1621

Est istuc quidem honestum, verum hoc expedit. (C. Off. 3. 18.)

Sed fac, ut isti volunt, animos non remanere post mortem; video nos, si ita sit, privari spe beatoris vitæ; mali vero quid adfert ista sententia? (C. T. D. 1. 34.)

Dic te, Cæsar, de facto Ligarii judicem esse: taceo, ne hæc quidem conligo, quæ fortasse valerent etiam apud judicem. (C. Lig. 10.)

Putas ita esse: pro me est. (Sen. N. Q. 2. 55.)

Finge justum te intulisse bellum: cum feminis ergo agere debueras.

(Curt. 4. 10, § 29.)

Oppressus est C. Antonius: esto; habuit quandam ille infamiam suam.

(C. Flac. 38.)

Omnino plura me scribere non ita necesse arbitrabar; sed tamen sententiam meam tibi ignotam esse nolebam. (C. Fam. 10. 25.)

Id nos fortasse non perfecimus, conati quidem sæpissime sumus.

(C. Or. 62.)

Speravit, credo, difficilis tibi Alexandria fore exitus propter regionis naturam et fluminis. At eo tempore ipso pecuniam dedit, exercitum aluit, tibi victori ad aciem præsto fuit. (C. Dejot. 9.)

(b) *In the statement of an opponent's objection: frequently introduced by at, at enim, at vero, at fortasse. (The reply, partly concessive, frequently has et quidem, quidem, 'true but,' 'aye but.')* 1623

Cæsar numquam nisi honorificentissime Pompeium appellat. 'At in ejus persona multa fecit asperius.' Armorum ista et victoriæ sunt facta, non Cæsar. (C. Fam. 6. 6.)

At enim eadem Stoici præcipua dicunt, quæ bona isti. Dicunt illi quidem, sed iis vitam beatam compleri negant. (C. T. D. 5. 16.)

At vero Cn. Pompeii voluntatem a me alienabat oratio mea. An ille quemquam plus dilexit? (C. Phil. 2. 15.)

Continued on p. 269.

Verum anceps pugnae fuerat fortuna. Fuisset: quem metui moritura? Faces in castra tulissem. (Verg. *A.* 4. 603.)

Ex hac nostra paucitate quarta pars militum praesidio impedimentis relicta erat. Sed fuerimus omnes: parvum hoc tandem esse credimus, quod, &c.? (L. 44. 38.)

Ne æquaveritis Hannibali Philippum nec Carthaginiensibus Macedonas: Pyrrho certe æquabitis. (L. 31. 7.)

Ipse cum tribunus essem, erraverim fortasse, qui me aliquid putavi, sed tamquam essem, abstinui causis agendis. (Plin. *Ep.* 1. 23.)

(b) *With relative clause<sup>1</sup> like quam vis, quam volet, &c.*

1624

Quod turpe est, id, quam vis occultetur, tamen honestum fieri nullo modo potest. (C. *Off.* 2. 19.)

Nihil agis, dolor: quam vis sis molestus, nunquam te esse confitebor malum. (C. *T. D.* 2. 25.)

Quam volent, faceti dicaces disertis sint, alia fori vis est, alia triclinii. (C. *Cael.* 28.)

Cuicumque particulæ cæli officeretur, quamvis esset procul, mutari lumina putabat. (C. *Or.* 1. 39.)

Gaius vero Gracchus multis dixit sibi in somnis quæsturam petenti Tiberium fratrem visum esse dicere, Quam vellet cunctaretur, tamen eodem sibi leto, quo ipse interesset, esse pereundum. (C. *Div.* 26.)

Quamvis scelerati illi fuissent, sicuti fuerunt pestiferi cives supplicioque digni, tamen &c. (C. *Or.* 1. 53.)

(c) *With modo.*

Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria. (C. *Sen.* 7.)

1625

Brutum apud me fuisse gaudeo, modo et libenter fuerit et sat diu. (C. *Att.* 15. 4.)

Ad vos nunc refero, quem sequar; modo ne quis illud tam ineruditum absurdumque respondeat: 'quem lubet, modo aliquem.' (C. *Ac.* 2. 43.)

Acneant ad bonas artes juventutem adolescentibus quoque, digni sint modo, tanta præmia constituta. (Plin. *Ep.* 2. 7, § 5.)

<sup>1</sup> For the use of the moods with *quamquam*, which is not of itself a relative clause, see § 1697.

At Phalaris, at Apollodorus poenas sustulit. Multis quidem ante cruciatibus et necatis. (C. N. D. 3. 33.)

Aliud esse censet gaudere, aliud non dolere. Et quidem, inquit, vehementer errat. (C. Fin. 2. 3.)

Difficili in loco versor; est enim vis tanta naturæ ut homo nemo velit nisi hominis similis esse. Et quidem formica formicæ.  
(C. N. D. 1. 28.)

(c) *The indicatives, licet, licebit, often introduce a concession (the verb dependent being in subjunctive by §§ 1606, 1608).*

Proinde isti licet faciant quos volent consules, tribunos pl.; videbis brevi tempore magnum illum ipsum qui peccavit Catonem.  
(C. Att. 2. 9.)

Hanc si qui partem putabit esse orationis, (Hermagoram) sequatur licebit: nobis non placuit. (C. Inv. 1. 51.)

Quam vis licet insectemur istos, metuo ne soli philosophi sint.  
(C. T. D. 4. 24.)

(d) *In Lucretius and post-Ciceronian writers (rarely in Livy) quamvis is found with indicative.*

At manet in vita, cui mens animusque remansit: quamvis est circum cæsis lacer undique membris truncus, vivit. (Lucr. 3. 403.)

Non tibi, quamvis infesto animo et minaci perveneras, ingredienti fines ira cecidit? (L. 2. 40.)

Erat inter eos dignitate regia, quamvis carebat nomine. (Nep. 2. 2.)

Quamvis est enim omnis hyperbole ultra fidem, non tamen esse debet ultra modum. (Quint. 8. 6. 73.)

Quamvis intercidit alter, pro se proque Remo, qui mihi restat, erit.  
(Ov. F. 2. 485.)

Pollio amat nostram, quam vis est rustica, musam. (Verg. B. 3. 84.)

[In some sentences quamvis clearly qualifies the adjective only, e.g.

Nec auctor quamvis audaci facinori deerat. (L. 2. 54.)

Quamvis ridiculus est, ubi uxor non adest. (Pl. Men. 317.)

Quod commodum est, expectate facinus, quam voltis improbum; vincam tamen expectationem omnium. (C. Verr. 5. 5.)]

(e) *The imperative is used with modo in concessions.*

1629

Modo sis veni huc: invenies infortunium. (Pl. Amph. 286.)

Patiar: sine modo adveniat senex: sine modo venire salvom quem absentem comes. (Pl. Most. 11.)

Quem quidem ego actutum, modo vos absistite, cogam fateri.

(Ov. M. 3. 557.)

Continued on p. 271.

## (D) Final subjunctive.

1628

The subjunctive of purpose is the same as the subjunctive of command, only that it is dependent on relative adjectives and adverbs. The first subdivision (1) contains adjectival sentences: the second (2) sentences introduced by *ut*, '*in order that*,' *ne*, *quo*, *quominus*, *quin*. Such sentences with *ut* or *ne* are very frequent, and sometimes stand in place of a subject or object; sometimes again introduce a special restriction of what is said, or a justification of the mode of saying it. The third subdivision (3) contains sentences of time or condition with *dum*, *dummodo*, *donec*, *priusquam*, *potius quam*, &c.

The sentences classed under this head, like those classed under (C), are distinguished by the use, if a negative is required, of *ne*, not *non*. Some sentences might almost be classed, as far as meaning goes, under the head of consequence (E). Indeed the consecutive subjunctive has arisen from the final subjunctive.

The following are typical instances.

1. **Mitto qui dicat.**  
**Nihil est quod scribam.**  
**Dignus est qui vincat.**
2. (a) **Ede ut vivas. Hoc dico, ne fallaris.**  
**Vide ut hoc statim fiat.**  
**Non impedio, quominus vivas.**  
**Nihil obstat, quin vivas.**
  - (b) **Rogo ut edas. Proximum est ut doceam.**
  - (c) **Ita rogo, ut ne properes.**
  - (d) **Timeo ne abeas; timeo ut adsis.**  
**Vide, ne hoc non sit.**
  - (e) **Hoc nunquam erit, nedum nunc sit.**
  - (f) **Ne longior sim, vale.**
3. (a) **Exspecta dum veniam.**
  - (b) **Dum recens terror sit, milites mittit.**
  - (c) **Oderint, dum metuant.**
  - (d) **Pugnatum est, donec prælium nox dirimeret.**
  - (e. 1) **Pugnatum est, priusquam ille veniret.**
  - (e. 2) **Depugna potius quam servias.**

*Continued on p. 272.*

Indicative, especially in Comparative sentences, and with *dum*.

Some adjectival sentences with the indicative are given merely to contrast with final adjectival sentences.

The most prominent use of *ut* with the indicative is in sentences of comparison (though it is also used as an interrogative, § 1759). Sentences of comparison may be introduced either by adjectives *tantus...quantus*, &c., or by adverbs *tam...quam*, *sic...ut*, *eo...quo*, &c. In many such sentences however the demonstrative correlative is omitted. This is the case in sentences with adjectives or adverbs in the comparative degree, and in some colloquial phrases; *e.g.* *mirum quam*, *satin ut*, &c.

Sentences with *ne...quidem*, *non modo...sed etiam*, *non dico*, in stating a climax are to be contrasted with certain subjunctival sentences with *ne*, *nedum*, &c.

The indicative mood with *dum*, *quandiu*, *quoad* is used when the event is regarded as merely, or at least primarily, contemporaneous to, or limiting the time of the event in the principal sentence.

The following are typical instances.

**Mitto eum: qui dicit.**

---

Comparative sentences.

1. **Tantus est, quantus potest esse.**  
**Tam est amicus, quam qui maxime.**
2. **Eo minus hoc feci, quo minus illud audiui.**  
**Plus feci quam ille (fecit).**
3. (a) **Id mirum quantum profuit.**  
(b) **Nimis quam formidabam.**  
(c) **At pol qui dixi melius.**
4. **Satin' ut oblitus fuit?**  
**Vide, ut palpatur.**

---

**Ne nunc quidem hoc est.**

**Adeo hoc non nunc est.**

**Hoc, non dico, aliquando fuit, sed nunc est.**

- 
1. (a) **Opperior, dum cognosco.**  
(b) **Dum metuit, fortunas perdidit.**
  - 2 **Dum lego, ita mihi videtur.**
  - 3 **Lego donec ille venit.**
  - 4 **Lego priusquam venit.**

*Continued on p. 273.*

The final subjunctive expresses an action stated, as <sup>1630</sup> a purpose to be carried into effect.

*Present, and (rarely) perfect, tense in sentences dependent on primary tenses. Imperfect, and (rarely) pluperfect, in sentences dependent on secondary tenses.*

*The perfect and pluperfect are used in relation to the results of past actions; i.e. as completed futures subjunctive.*

1. *With relative adjective: (qui = ut is, 'who is to,' 'was to').* <sup>1632</sup>  
*Such sentences are not commonly negative: in provisoes the negative is ne.*

Misi pro amicitia qui hoc Antonio diceret. (C. Phil. 1. 5.)

Homini natura rationem dedit, qua regerentur animi appetitus.

(C. N. D. 2. 12.)

Ea qui conficeret, Trebonium legatum relinquit. (Cæs. G. 7. 11.)

Quæritur consul, qui dicendo non numquam comprimat tribuncios furores, qui concitatum populum flectat. (C. Mur. 11.)

Non est diu cunctatus Cæsar Augustus, neque enim quærendus erat, quem legeret, sed legendus qui eminebat. (Vell. 2. 103.)

Hæc habui de amicitia quæ dicerem. (C. Læl. 27.)

Scribebat Ælius orationes, quas alii dicerent. (C. Brut. 56.)

Erat autem nihil novi, quod aut scriberem aut ex te quærerem.

(C. Att. 15. 1 b.)

Quid est igitur quod laborem? (Ib. 6. 3.)

Hei mihi, quom nihil est, qui illic homini diminuiam caput.

(Pl. Men. 304.)

Sic adeo digna res est, ubi tu nervos intendas tuos.

(Ter. Eun. 312.)

Plerique rem idoneam, de qua quærat, et homines dignos, quibus cum disseratur, putant. (C. Ac. 2. 6.)

Veniendo huc exercitum egregium populo Romano servastis; erumpendo hinc vosmet ipsos servate: digni estis, qui pauci pluribus opem tuleritis, ipsi nullius auxilio egueritis. (L. 7. 35.)

Nulla videbatur aptior persona, quæ de senectute loqueretur quam Catonis. (C. Læl. 1.)

In eo vidisti multum, quod præfinisti quo ne pluris emerem.

(C. Fam. 7. 2.)

Cautum erat, quo ne plus auri et argenti facti, quo ne plus signati argenti et æris domi haberemus. (L. 34. 6.)

*Continued on p. 274.*

*The indicative expresses a fact or simple definition, &c. without any signification of purpose.*

[*Such a signification of purpose may be conveyed by the future participle with the indicative (or any other) mood of sum. See § 1494.*]

Ille in morbum continuo incidit, ex quo non convaluit.

(*C. Fam.* 13. 29.)

Misi quendam pro amicitia: qui hoc Antonio dixit.

Homini natura rationem dedit; qua reguntur animi appetitus.

Punicum bellum, quo nullum majus Romani gessere. (*L.* 38. 53.)

Unum id bonum est, quo melior animus efficietur. (*Sen. Ep.* 76, § 17.)

Divitias quidem ubi tutius fortuna deponet, quam ibi unde sine querela reddentis receptura est? (*Sen. Dial.* 7. 21.)

Expressæ sunt ex unius cujusque damno, dolore, incommodo, calamitate, injuria publicæ a prætore formulæ, ad quas privata lis accommodatur. (*C. Rosc. C.* 8.)

Habebo, Q. Fabi, parem, quem das, Hannibalem. (*L.* 28. 44.)

Scribebat Ælius orationes, quas alii dicebant.

Quid est, quod tu me nunc optuere, furcifer? (*Pl. Most.* 69.)

Liciti sunt usque adeo, quo ad se efficere posse arbitrabantur: supra adjecit Æschrio. (*C. Verr.* 3. 33.)



2. *With a connective adverb: ut, uti, 'that,' 'in order that,' quo* <sup>166</sup>  
*(usually with a comparative); in negative sentences, ut ne, ne,*  
*and after expressions of hindrance, opposition, &c. quominus and*  
*quin<sup>1</sup>, the latter being used when the principal sentence also is nega-*  
*tive or quasi-negative.*

(a) *General usage.*

- Esse oportet, ut vivas; non vivere, ut edas. (Cornif. 4. 28.)  
 Legibus idcirco omnes servimus, ut liberi esse possimus. (C. Clu. 53.)  
 'Homines,' inquit, 'emisti, coegisti, parasti.' Quid uti faceret? sena-  
 tum obsideret? civis indemnatos expelleret? bona diriperet?  
 ædes incenderet? (C. Sest. 39.)  
 Sine ulla sede vagi dimicassetus: ut quo victores nos reciperemus?  
 (L. 44. 39.)  
 Utroque tempore ita me gessi, ne tibi pudori, ne regno tuo, ne genti  
 Macedonum essem. (L. 40. 15.)  
 Accusatores multos esse in civitate utile est, ut metu contineatur  
 audacia: verum tamen hoc ita est utile, ut ne plane inludamur  
 ab accusatoribus. (C. Rasc. Am. 20.)  
 Danda opera est, ut etiam singulis consulatur, sed ita ut ea res  
 aut prosit, aut certe ne obsit rei publicæ. (C. Off. 2. 21.)  
 Vide ut istic tibi sit acutus culter probe. (Pl. Mil. 1397.)  
 Videndum est primum, ne obsit benignitas; deinde ne major be-  
 nignitas sit quam facultates; tum ut pro dignitate cuique tri-  
 buatur. (C. Off. 1. 14.)  
 Tantum vide ne hoc tempore isti obesse aliquid possit.  
 (C. Att. 11. 7.)  
 Ego pol te pro istis factis et dictis, scelus, ulciscar, ut ne impune in <sup>162</sup>  
 nos inluseris. (Ter. Eun. 942.)  
 (Amator) ne dederit gratis quæ dedit, usque dabit. Sic ne per-  
 diderit, non cessat perdere lusor. (Ov. A. A. 1. 454, 452.)  
 Adnitar, ne frustra vos hanc spem de me conceperitis. (L. 44. 22.)

<sup>1</sup> *Quin*, like *ut*, is also used in consecutive (§§ 1680, 1688) and depen-  
 dent interrogative (§ 1768) sentences. The following is a summary  
 of the general usage of certain verbs:

Verbs of *forbidding, hindering, opposing*, with or without a nega-  
 tive or its equivalent, may be followed by *ne* or *quominus*, or an infi-  
 nitive (with or without an accus.);

verbs of *opposing, refraining, neglecting, doubting, abest*, &c. may,  
 if negative or quasi-negative, be followed by *quin*;

*non dubito*, &c. also by an acc. and infinitive;

*dubito* is followed by a dependent interrogative *an*, *an non*.

(Madvig,) *Lat. Gr.* § 375.)

*Continued on p. 276.*

*Comparative sentences may here be noticed: they are introduced by correlative adjectives or adverbs; e.g. tantus...quantus, tam...quam, sic...ut; sometimes the demonstrative is omitted; sometimes the verb of the clause. (Other comparative sentences with ut in § 1707.)* 1635

1. *With adjective or adverb in positive or superlative degree.* 1637

Tanta est apud eos, quanta maxima potest esse, morum studiorumque distantia. (C. *Lael.* 20.)

Emit hortos homo cupidus et locuples tanti quanti Pythius voluit. (C. *Off.* 8. 14.)

Locorum nuda nomina et quanta dabitur brevitate ponentur. (Plin. *H. N.* 8. init.)

Jugurtha quam maximas potest copias armat. (Sall. *J.* 13.)

Quod volebant, non, quam maturato opus erat, naviter expediebant. (L. 24. 23.)

Quam maxime huic vana hæc suspitio erit, tam facillime patris pacem in leges conficiet suas. (Ter. *Haut.* 997.)

Officium esse meum putavi exercitum habere quam proxime hostem (sc. exercitum habere potui). (C. *Att.* 6. 5.)

Dare vult uxorem filio quantum potest. (Pl. *Most.* 758.) 1639

Nemo enim orator tam multa ne in Græco quidem otio scripsit, quam multa sunt nostra. (C. *Or.* 30.)

Verba quam potes ambiguus callidus abde notis. (Ov. *A. A.* 1. 490.)

Tenuit locum tam diu quam ferre potuit laborem. (C. *Brut.* 67.)

Exibit quam sæpe, time. (Tib. 1. 6. 21.)

Satin' istuc mihi exquisitumst fuisse hunc servom in Alide? An. Tam satis est, quam numquam hoc invenies secus. (Pl. *Capt.* 639.)

Non hercle verbis, Parmeno, dici potest tantum, quam re ipsa navigare incommodumst. (Ter. *Hec.* 416.)

Tam enim sum amicus reipublicæ quam qui maxime. (C. *Fam.* 5. 2.) 1641

Præda inde majore quam quanta belli fama fuerat reventa, ludos fecit. (L. 1. 35.)

Non tam ista me sapientiæ fama delectat, quam quod amicitiae nostræ memoriam spero sempiternam fore. (C. *Lael.* 4.)

Grata ea res, ut quæ maxime senatui unquam fuit. (L. 5. 25.)

Domus celebratur ut cum maxime. (C. *Q. Fr.* 2. 4 [6].)

*Compare also*

Omnia, quæ captæ urbes patiuntur, passi sumus et cum maxime patimur (i. e. et tum patimur, quum maxime patimur.) (L. 29. 17.)

*Continued on p. 277.*

Verum est quod dicitur, multos modios salis simul edendos esse, ut amicitiae munus expletum sit. (C. *Lael.* 19.)

Quæ omnia huc tendunt, ut audias Isæum vel ideo tantum ut audieris. (Plin. *Ep.* 2. 3, fin.)

Scriptum erat, ut ad ludos omnia pararet neve committeret ut frustra ipse properasset. (C. *Att.* 13. 45.)

Neve hoc impune fuisset, Gorgoneum crinem turpes mutavit in hydros. (Ov. *M.* 4. 798.)

Hic opsistam, ne imprudenti huc ea se subrepsit mihi. (Pl. *Mil.* 333.)

Potin' ut molestus ne sis? (Pl. *Merc.* 779.)

Hoc eo sæpius testificor, ut auctoribus laudandis ineptiarum crimen effugiam. (C. *Or.* 3. 49.)

Sublata etiam erat celebritas virorum ac mulierum, quo lamentatio<sup>1644</sup> minueretur. (C. *Leg.* 2. 26.)

Obducuntur libro aut cortice trunci, quo sint a frigoribus et calibus tutiores. (C. *N. D.* 2. 47.)

Cæsar cognovit per Afranium stare, quo minus proelio dimicaretur. (Cæs. *C.* 1. 41.)

Neque impedio quominus susceptum negotium gerere possis. (C. *Fam.* 13. 5.)

Non recusabo, quominus omnes mea scripta legant. (C. *Fin.* 1. 3.)

Hanc ego causam, quominus novom consilium capiamus, in primis magnam puto. (Sall. *Cat.* 51.)

Non enim possum quin revortar, quin loquar, quin edisserterem,<sup>1645</sup> eramque ex mærore eximam. (Plaut. *Stich.* 302.)

Non videor mihi sarcire posse ædis meas, quin totæ perpetuæ ruant, cum fundamento perierint, nec quisquam esse auxilio queat. (Pl. *Most.* 146.)

Nil verbi, pereas quin fortiter, addam. (Hor. *S.* 2. 3. 42.)

Vix milites temperavere animis, quin extemplo impetum facerent. (L. 5. 45.)

Romanis non humana ulla neque divina obstant, quin socios, amicos, procul juxta sitos, inopes potentisque trahant, excendant, omniaque non serva et maxime regna hostilia ducant.

(Sall. *Mith.* § 17.)

(b) *The subordinate clause is often in place of object or subject to the principal verb.*

Verres rogat et orat Dolabellam, ut ad Neronem proficiscatur.

(C. *Verr.* 1. 29.)

*Continued on p. 278.*

2. *With adjective or adverb in comparative degree*, eo...quod, eo... 1643  
quo, 'in proportion...as;' quam, 'than.' (For priusquam, see § 1671,  
sq.)

Hæc eo facilius magnam partem æstatis faciebant, quod nostræ naves  
tempestatibus detinebantur. (Cæs. G. 3. 12.)

Quo erant suaviore litteræ, eo majorem dolorem ille casus adferebat.  
(C. Q. F. 3. 1, § 17.)

Quo quisque est sollertior et ingeniosior, hoc docet iracundius et labo-  
riosius. (C. Rosc. Com. 11.)

Quo minus ingenio possum, subsidium mihi diligentiam comparavi.  
(C. Quint. 1.)

Agricultura eas res, in quibus versatur, nominibus notavit notis: quo  
magis hoc philosopho faciendum est. (C. Fin. 3. 2.)

Nec dextris magis gladiisque gerebatur res, quam scutis corporibusque  
ipsis obnixi urgebant. (L. 34. 46.)

Quærenti tibi superbius tacuisse quam vera respondimus.  
(L. 42. 40.)

Nec nunc quidem viris desidero adolescentis; non plus quam adoles-  
cens tauri aut elephantis desiderabam. (C. Sen. 9.)

Antonio, quam est, volo pejor esse. (C. Att. 15. 3.)

Quæ nos pro salute patriæ gessimus, tanto consilio gesta esse cognosces,  
ut tibi, multo majori quam Africanus fuit, me, non multo mino-  
rem quam Lælius, facile et in re publica et in amicitia adjunctum  
esse patiari. (C. Fam. 5. 7.)

Tres fratres consortes ex agris profugerunt, quod eis plus frumenti  
imperabatur, quam quantum exarant. (C. Verr. 3. 23.)

Longum est, quod pluribus verbis aut sententiis ultra quam satis est 1645  
producit. (C. Inv. 1. 8.)

T. Livius in contionibus supra quam enarrari potest eloquens.  
(Quint. 10. 1. 101.)

*Similarly præ quam (Plaut.), 'compared with how;' pro quam, 'in  
proportion as.'*

Nihil hoc quidemst triginta minæ, præquam alios dapsilis sumptus  
facit. (Pl. Most. 982.)

Igitur parvissima corpora, pro quam et levissima sunt, ita mobilitate  
fruantur. (Lucr. 3. 199.)

(For perquam, see § 1649.)

*Continued on p. 279.*

Hoc postulatum de statu ridiculum videtur; postulant enim non uti ne cogantur statuere. Quid igitur? ut ipsis ne liceat. (Ib. 2. 60.)

Ut mihi ædis aliquas conducat volo, ubi habitet istæc mulier.  
(Pl. *Merc.* 560.)

Servis imperat, ut se ipsum neglegant, filiam defendant.  
(C. *Verr.* 1. 26.)

Decrevit senatus, ut L. Opimius videret, nequid respublica detrimendi caperet. (C. *Cat.* 1. 2.)

Ne quid ferretur ad populum patres tenuere: plebes vicit ut quintum eosdem tribunos crearent. (L. 3. 29.)

De Tirone cura, quæso, quod facis, ut sciam, quid is agat.  
(C. *Att.* 10. 4.)

Altera est res, ut res geras magnas et arduas plenasque periculorum.  
(C. *Off.* 1. 20.)

Justitiæ primum munus est, ut ne cui quis noceat, nisi lacessitus injuria. (Ib. 1. 7.)

Proximum est, ut doceam deorum providentia mundum administrari. (C. *N. D.* 2. 29.)

Magna mehercules causa absolutionis cum ceteris causis hæc est, ne qua insignis huic imperio macula atque ignominia suscipiatur.  
(C. *Font.* 16 [12].)

(c) *In sentences restrictive of a preceding statement.* 1650  
ita...ut, cum eo ut, 'with the precaution that...must,' 'provided that;' ita ne, ita ut ne. Compare § 1704.

Accepimus (Cæsar) condiciones sed ita ut removeat præsidia ex iis locis quæ occupavit. (C. *Fam.* 16. 12.)

Scio te omnia facturum, ut nobiscum quam primum sis: sed tamen ita velim ut ne quid properes. (C. *Fam.* 16. 9.)

Ita tamen æquum est me vestra meis armis tutari, ne mea interim nudentur præsidia. (L. 31. 25.)

Atque ita mentitur, sic veris falsa remiscet, primo ne medium. medio ne discrepet imum. (Hor. *A. P.* 151.)

Lanuvini civitas data sacraque sua reddita cum eo ut ædes lucusque Sospitæ Junonis communis Lanuvini municipibus cum populo Romano esset. (L. 8. 14.)

*Somewhat similarly:* Sed quoniam de extis et de fulgoribus satis est disputatum, ostenta restant, ut tota haruspicina sit pertractata. (C. *Div.* 2. 22.)

*Continued on p. 280.*

3. *Some colloquial phrases may perhaps belong to the class of comparative sentences.*

(a) *With quantum, which is either relative or perhaps interrogative; e.g. mirum quantum, § 1760.*

Huic generi orationis adspargentur etiam sales, qui in dicendo nimium quantum valent. (C. Or. 26.)

Vino et lucernis Medus acinaces immane quantum discrepat. (Hor. Od. 1. 27. 5.)

A Pyrenæi promunturio Hispania incipit, angustior non Gallia modo, verum etiam semetipsa, ut diximus, immensum quantum hinc Oceano illinc Hiberico mari comprimentibus. (Plin. 4. 20. 34.)

Id mirum quantum profuit ad concordiam civitatis. (L. 2. 1.)

Mirum quam inimicus ibat, ut ego objurgarem. (C. Att. 13. 40.)

O Phædria, incredibilest quantum erum anteeo sapientia. (Ter. Ph. 247.)

(b) *With quam qualified by an adverb prefixed. (This usage, e.g. mire quam, is probably the result of attraction for mirum quam: the whole expression being adverbial, each member is made adverbial<sup>1</sup>.) Here perhaps belongs perquam. (For præquam, proquam, see § 1645.)*

Nimis quam formido, ne manifesto hic me opprimat. (Pl. Most. 511.)

Ex amore hic admodum quam sævos est. (Pl. Amph. 541.)

Mire quam illius loci non modo usus, sed etiam cogitatio delectat. (C. Att. 1. 11.)

Nam quod de Pompeio Caninius agit, sane quam refrixit. (C. Q. Fr. 2. 4, § 5.)

Succlamatum est ei frequenter a militibus Ventidianis, nam suos valde quam paucos habet, sibi aut in Italia pereundum esse aut vincendum. (D. Brut. ap. C. Fam. 11. 13.)

Haud facile fuit ea quæ objicerentur memoria complecti, pleraque enim oppido quam parva erant. (L. 39. 47.)

Scelestus sacerdotem anum præcipes reppulit propulit perquam indignis modis. (Pl. Rud. 672.)

Sic in illa omni defensione, quod esse in arte positum videbatur, per quam breviter perstrinxi. (C. Or. 2. 49.)

(c) *So in Plautus qui (adv.) is used after pol, edepol, hercle.* 1651

Heracle qui, ut tu prædicas, cavendumst mi aps te irato. (Pl. Ps. 473.)

At pol qui dixti rectius. (Pl. Asin. 823.)

Edepol qui te de isto multi cupiunt nunc mentiri. (Pl. Mil. 779.)

<sup>1</sup> Comp. μετὰ ἰδρωτός θαυμαστοῦ ὄσου, θαυμαστῶς ὡς χαίρω, &c.

(d) *A thing, about which fear is felt, is expressed by a sentence* <sup>1652</sup> *with ut, if it is wished; with ne, if it is dreaded. (In English 'that not' corresponds to ut, 'lest' or 'that' to ne.) Ne non is also used for ut, especially when the principal sentence is negative.*

O puer, ut sis vitalis, metuo, et majorum ne quis amicus frigore te feriat. (Hor. S. 2. 1. 60.)

Rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere se dicebant. (Cæs. G. 1. 39.)

Vereor ne Romam, sic cunctantibus nobis, Hannibali ac Pœnis toties servaverint majores nostri. (L. 22. 14.)

Timeo, ne non impetrem. (C. Att. 9. 6.)

Mi frater, mi frater, tune id veritus es ne te videre noluerim? ego te videre noluerim? immo vero me a te videri nolui.

(C. Q. Fr. 3. 1. § 1.)

Id vero periculum erat ne majestatem nominis Alexandri sustinere non potuerit populus Romanus, et adversus eum nemo ex tot proceribus Romanis vocem liberam missurus fuerit. (L. 9. 18.)

Vidit periculum esse, ne exutum impedimentis exercitum nequicquam incolumem traduxisset. (L. 21. 33.)

Mihi cavitiost ne nucifrangibula excussit ex malis meis.

(Pl. Bac. 598.)

*Occasionally the expression of fear is omitted:*

<sup>1654</sup>

At enim ne quid captioni mihi sit, si dederim tibi. (Pl. Most. 922.)

Sed ne, dum huic obsequor, vobis molestus sim. (C. Fin. 5. 3.)

*Similarly vide ne non sit, vide ut sit 'Perhaps it is not,' vide ne sit,* <sup>1656</sup> *'Perhaps it is.'* (For another meaning of these expressions see § 1640.)

Vide sis ne forte ad merendam quopiam devorteris, atque ibi ne plus quam satis fuerit biberis. (Pl. Most. 966.)

Multa istius modi dicuntur in scholis, sed credere omnia vide ne non sit necesse. (C. Div. 2. 13.)

Erat, si cujusquam, certe tuum nihil præter virtutem in bonis dicere. 'Vide ne magis,' inquam, 'tuum fuerit, cum re idem tibi quod mihi videretur.' (C. Fin. 3. 3.)

Si non sunt Romæ vestri similes feminæ, videndum est ut honeste vos esse possitis. (C. Fam. 14. 14.)

Qua re videant ne hoc sit periniquum et non ferendum.

(C. Man. 21.)

*Continued on p. 282.*

4. *Similar (to the abovenamed uses of quantum, quam, ut 165, 1647—1651) is the use, in the early language, of ut in phrases which may be either relative or interrogative. (Comp. §§ 1763, 1765.)*

(a) *Satin' ut, 'tolerably.'*

*Satin', ut oblitus fui tibi me narravisse? (Pl. Merc. 480.)*

*Satin' ut meminit libertatis? (Pl. Pers. 658.)*

(b) *Vide ut is used to express surprise. It is preceded by hoc 1655 or illud.*

*Hoc sis vide, ut palpatur: nullust, quando occipit, blandior.*

*(Pl. Merc. 167.)*

*O illud vide, os ut sibi distorsit carnufex. (Ter. Eun. 670.)*

*(For ut after vide in a reported question, see § 1762.)*



(e) *With ne, nedum, 'much less.'*

1658

(This usage arises from the prevention of the occurrence of the greater event being rhetorically regarded as the purpose of the occurrence of the less event.)

Vix in ipsis tectis frigus infirma valetudine vitatur: nedum in mari sit facile abesse ab injuria temporis. (C. Fam. 16. 8.)

Optimis hercule temporibus clarissimi viri vim tribuniciam sustinere non potuerunt: nedum his temporibus sine vestra sapientia salvi esse possimus. (C. Clu. 35.)

Querebantur consules bellicosos ambo viros, qui vel in pace tranquilla bellum excitare possent, nedum in bello respirare civitatem forent passuri. (L. 26. 26.)

Novam inexpertamque tribuniciam potestatem eripuerunt patribus nostris, ne nunc dulcedine semel capti ferant desiderium. (L. 3. 52.)

Quippe secundæ res sapientium animos fatigant, ne illi corruptis moribus victoriæ temperarent. (Sall. Cat. 11.)

Erat enim multo domicilium hujus urbis, cum quidem hæc urbs fuit, aptius humanitati et suavitati tuæ, quam tota Peloponnesus, nedum Patræ. (sc. essent. C. Fam. 7. 28, Wesenberg.)

(f) *Purpose not of the principal action itself, but of the mention<sup>1660</sup> of the action; especially, with ne dicam, in suggesting, while declining to make, a stronger statement. The perfect subjunctive is rare till after the Augustan age.*

Ne longior sim, vale. (C. Fam. 15. 19.)

Quando quidem est apud te virtuti honos, ut beneficio tuleris a me, quod minis nequisti, trecenti conjuravimus principes juventutis Romanæ, ut in te hac via grassaremur. (L. 2. 12.)

'Ne nihil actum,' inquit, 'hac legatione censeatis, expiatum est quicquid ex fœdere rupto irarum in nos cœlestium fuit.'

(L. 9. 1.)

Crudelem Castorem, ne dicam sceleratum et impium. (C. Deiot. 1.)

Satis inconsiderati fuit, ne dicam audacis, rem ullam ex illis attingere. (C. Phil. 13. 5.)

Ut frontem ferias, sunt qui etiam Cæsonium putent competitorem fore. (C. Att. 1. 1.)

Ergo ut ad primum illud revertar, sit orator nobis is, qui adcommode ad persuadendum possit dicere. (C. Or. 1. 61.)

Vetera majestas quædam, et, ut sic dixerim, religio commendat.

(Quint. 1. 6. § 1.)

Continued on p. 284.

*A climax or anticlimax may be expressed directly in the indicative; especially by ne...quidem, non modo...sed etiam, &c., and in post-Augustan writers adeo (adeo non, 'so much less').* 1657

Lepido quidem numquam placuit ex Italia exire; Tullo multo minus.  
(C. Att. 8. 9.)

Si igitur non sunt, nihil possunt esse: ita ne miseri quidem sunt.  
(C. T. D. 1. 7.)

Hæc igitur optimus quisque non suscipiet rei publicæ causa: ne res publica quidem pro se suscipi volet. (C. Off. 1. 45.)

Pollio omnibus negotiis non interfuit solum, sed præfuit.  
(C. Fam. 1. 6.)

Dies autem non modo non levat luctum hunc, sed etiam auget.  
(C. Att. 3. 15, § 2.)

Recordor hæc me tum vidisse, cum secundas etiam res nostras, non modo adversas pertimescebam. (C. Fam. 4. 14.)

Apollinis oracula numquam ne mediocri quidem cuiquam, non modo prudenti probata sunt. (C. Div. 2. 55.)

Hujus totius temporis fortunam nec deflere quidem quisquam satis digne potuit, adeo nemo exprimere verbis potest. (Vell. 2. 67.)

Quælibet enim ex iis artibus, quarum habui mentionem, in paucos libros contrahi solet; adeo non est infinito spatio ad traditionem opus. (Quint. 12. 11, § 16.)

*So with non dico, non dicam, of a weaker statement, which the speaker rejects in favour of a stronger one.* 1659

Incredibile ac simile portenti est, quonam modo illa tam multa quam paucis, non dico mensibus sed diebus, effuderit. (C. Phil. 2. 27.)

Nihil est in ea urbe contra hanc rem publicam non dico factum, sed nihil omnino excogitatum. (C. Agr. 2. 33.)

An id exploratum cuiquam potest esse, quo modo se hoc habiturum sit corpus, non dico ad annum sed ad vesperum. (C. Fin. 2. 28.)

*Such a sentence with ne is not unfrequently appended to a previous statement. ' (This I say), lest.'*

Senectus est natura loquacior, ne ab omnibus eam vitiis videar vindicare. (C. Sen. 16.)

Mihi quidem eæ veræ videntur opiniones, quæ honestæ, quæ laudabiles, quæ gloriosæ, quæ in senatu, quæ apud populum, quæ in omni cœtu concilioque profitendæ sint, ne id non pudeat sentire, quod pudeat dicere. (C. Fin. 2. 24.)

Scuta si quando conquiruntur a privatis in bello ac tumultu, tamen homines inviti dant, etsi ad salutem communem dari sentiunt; ne quem putetis sine maximo dolore argentum cælatum domo, quod alter eriperet, protulisse. (C. Verr. 4. 23.)

### 3. An event expected and purposed.

1664

(a) *With dum 'until,' rarely donec, quoad; in present and imperfect tenses only. (In English the subjunctive is best expressed by using 'shall,' 'should,' 'can,' 'could;' or by a periphrasis; e.g. dum veniat, veniret, 'to allow of his coming,' 'to enable him to come.)*

Expectate, dum consul aut dictator fiat, quem privatum viribus et audacia regnantem videtis. (L. 3. 11.)

Exspecta, amabo te, dum Atticum conveniam. (C. Att. 7. 1, § 4.)

Hoc idem aput nos rectius poteris agere, atque ibi sedens, dum is veniat, opperibere. (Plaut. Bac. 47.)

Iratissimæ aut subtrahendi sunt ei, in quos impetum conantur facere, dum se ipsi conligant, aut rogandi orandique sunt, ut, si quam habent ulciscendi vim, differant in tempus aliud, dum defervescat ira.

(C. T. D. 4. 36.)

Dum reliquæ naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. (Cæs. G. 4. 23.)

Die insequenti quiescere, dum præfectus juventutem Apolloniatum, armaque et urbis vires inspiceret. (L. 24. 40.)

Verginius, dum collegam consuleret, moratus, permittente eo, nocte dictatorem dixit. (L. 4. 21.)

Itaque dum locus communis pugnandi daretur, æquo animo singulas binis navibus obiciebant et retenta utraque nave diversi pugnabant. (Cæs. Civ. 1. 58.)

Multa bello passus, dum conderet urbem inferretque deos Latio.

(Verg. A. 1. 6.)

Non medius fidius mediocri dolore adficiebar, sed usque mihi temperavi, dum perducerem eo rem, ut dignum aliquid vestra expectatione efficerem. (Plancus ap. C. Fam. 10. 7.)

*Continued on p. 286.*

*The indicative mood is used with quam diu, 'so long as,' dum, donec<sup>1</sup>, quo ad, 'until,' 'whilst,' 'so long as,' of a simple expression of fact. The pluperfect appears not to be used in these sentences (except in § 1491). For cum, see § 1717 sqq.*

1. 'While,' i.e. 'in the time that:' *dum* with present tense (though qualifying past actions), rarely with other tenses. (The indicative present is usually retained even in clauses dependent on infinitives and subjunctives.)

(a) *Of time only.* (An event expected is sometimes treated as if it occupied the period of waiting.)

*Dum* veniunt amici, solus, filio procul stante, multa secum animo volutans, inambulavit. (L. 40. 8.)

Ego hic tantisper, *dum* exis, te opperiar foris. (Pl. *Most.* 683.)

Ego in Arcano opperior, *dum* ista cognosco. (C. *Att.* 10. 3.)

Tityre, *dum* redeo, brevis est via, pasce capellas, et potum pastas age. (Verg. *B.* 9. 23.)

Scitis quomodo, *dum* ex urbe præsidia opperior, in Galliam proficisci nequiverim. (Sall. *C.* 58.)

Nullis evidentibus causis obiere, *dum* calciantur matutino, duo Cæsares, prætor et prætura perfunctus dictatoris Cæsaris pater; Q. Æmilius Lepidus jam egrediens, incusso pollice limini cubiculi; C. Aufustius egressus, cum in senatum iret, offenso pede in comitio; Cn. Bæbius Tamphilus, cum a puero quæsisset horas; C. Servilius Pansa, cum staret in foro ad tabernam hora diei secunda in P. fratrem innixus; Bæbius iudex, *dum* vadimonium differri jubet; super omnes C. Julius medicus, *dum* inunguit, specillum per oculum trahens; A. Manlius Torquatus, cum in cena placentam adpeteret; L. Tuccius medicus, *dum* mulsi potionem haurit; Appius Saufeius, e balineo reversus, cum mulsum bibisset ovumque sorberet; &c.

(Plin. *N. H.* 7, §§ 181—183, somewhat abridged.)

*Dum* hæc Veiis agebantur, interim arx Romæ Capitoliumque in ingenti periculo fuit. (L. 5. 47.)

*Other instances of present in § 1458.*

<sup>1</sup> *Donec* is said never to be used by Cæsar or Sallust, and only thrice by Cicero.

*Continued on p. 287.*

Sic deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum justa muri altitudo expleatur. (Cæs. G. 7. 23.)

Actia pugna te duce per pueros hostili more refertur, donec alterutrum velox victoria fronde coronet. (Hor. Ep. 1. 18. 61.)

Epaminondas exercebatur plurimum currendo et luctando ad eum finem, quoad stans completi posset atque contendere.

(Nep. 15. 2.)

(b) *Sometimes the subjunctive implies not strictly that an action is purposed, but that it is expected and counted on.* (dum, 'abile')

Nihil deinde moratus, rex quattuor millia armatorum, dum recens terror esset, Scotussam misit. (L. 36. 9.)

Interim Romæ principes plebis, jam diu nequicquam imminentes spei majoris honoris, dum foris otium esset, cœtus indicere in domos tribunorum plebis. (L. 4. 25, where Madvig reads est<sup>1</sup>.)

Illa quidem dum te fugeret per flumina præceps, immanem ante pedes hydrium moritura puella servantem ripas alta non vidit in herba. (Verg. G. 4. 457.)

(c) 'So long as' = 'provided that,' 'if only,' dum, dum modo (in negative sentences dum ne, dummodo ne), with present or imperfect tenses.

Dum res maneant, verba fingant arbitrato suo. (C. Fin. 5. 29.)

Vox illa dira et abominanda, 'Oderint dum metuant.' Sullano scias sæculo scriptam. Oderint? quid? dum pareant? non. dum probent? non. quid ergo? dum timeant. Sic nec amari quidem vellem. (Sen. Ir. 1. 20.)

Itaque ingeniosi vocentur, ut libet, dum tamen constet contumeliose sic laudari disertum. (Quint. 2. 12. 7.)

Dum ille ne sis, quem ego esse nolo, sis mea causa qui lubet.

(Plaut. Trin. 979.)

Multi omnia recta et honesta neglegunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur. (C. Off. 3. 21.)

Omnia postposui, dummodo præceptis patris parerem.

(Cic. fil. apud C. Fam. 16. 21.)

Hanc levitatem ac jactationem animi neque mirabantur in juvene furioso neque arguebant, dummodo averterent eum ab Romanis. (L. 24. 6.)

<sup>1</sup> The imperfect is found (in the MSS.) in the same sense in L. 1. 40, 'dum averteret;' 2. 47, 'dum...tererent;' 10. 18, 'dum...gererentur;' in all which places Madvig (after Gronovius) reads 'quum:' also in 21. 34, 'dum...cunctaretur,' where he reads 'cunctatur.'

(b) 'While' = 'in consequence of.'

1665

In has cladis incidimus, dum metui quam cari esse et diligere maluimus.  
(C. Off. 2. 8.)

Ita mulier, dum pauca mancipia retinere vult, fortunas omnes perdidit. (C. Cæcil. 17.)

Vide ne, dum pudet te parum optimatem esse, parum diligenter, quid optimum sit, eligas. (Cælar. ap. C. Fam. 8. 16.)

Verum ego liberius altiusque processi, dum me civitatis morum piget tædetque. (Sall. J. 4.)

Nec arduum videbatur excindere coloniam nullis munimentis septam; quod ducibus nostris parum provisum erat, dum amœnitati prius quam usui consulitur. (Tac. A. 14. 31.)

Arminius canitur adhuc barbaras apud gentes, Romanis haud perinde celebris, dum vetera extollimus recentium incuriosi. (Ib. 2. 88.)

Dum Aristo et Pyrrho in una virtute sic omnia esse voluerunt ut eam rerum selectione exspoliarent, virtutem ipsam sustulerunt.  
(C. Fin. 2. 13.)

L. Murena, dum ex honoribus continuis familiæ majorumque suorum unum ascendere gradum dignitatis conatus est, venit in periculum. (C. Mur. 27.)

2. 'While' = 'so long as,' 'all the time that;' dum, donec, quamdiu, quoad. *The tense in both clauses is usually the same.* 1667

Neque enim, dum eram vobiscum, animum meum videbatis.  
(C. Sen. 22.)

Neque dum vestris viribus restitistis, neque dum auxilia ab Romanis sperastis, pacis unquam apud vos mentionem feci. (L. 21. 13.)

Hoc feci, dum licuit; intermisi, quoad non licuit. (C. Phil. 3. 18.)

Dum Latinæ loquentur litteræ, quercus huic loco non deerit.  
(C. Leg. 1. 1.)

Ut ægroto, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur, sic ego, quoad Pompeius in Italia fuit, sperare non destiti. (C. Att. 9. 10.)

Tuas epistolas cum lego, minus mihi turpis videor, sed tam diu, dum lego. (Ib. 9. 6, § 5.)

Donec armati confertique abibant, peditum labor in persequendo fuit: postquam jactari arma passim fugaque per agros spargi aciem hostium animadversum est, tum equitum turmæ emissæ.  
(L. 6. 13.)

Donec gratus eram tibi, Persarum vigui rege beatior. Donec non alia magis arsisti, Romana vigui clarior Ilia. (Hor. Od. 3. 9. 1.)

Bibulus se oppido munitissimo tam diu tenuit quamdiu in provincia Parthi fuerunt. (C. Fam. 12. 19.)

Quamdiu quisquam erit, qui te defendere audeat, vives. (C. Cat. 1. 2.)  
*Continued on p. 289.*

Celeriter tibi veniendum censeo, dummodo ne quid hæc festinatio imminuat ejus gloriæ, quam consecuti sumus. (C. *Fam.* 10. 25.)  
 Imitamini, patres conscripti, turbam inconsultam, dum ego ne imiter tribunos. (L. 3. 21.)

(d) *Sometimes (chiefly in Livy and later historians) with donec, 'so long as,' 'until,' the subjunctive is used of facts; where the indicative would have been used in earlier writers. Only in present and imperfect and (rarely) pluperfect tenses.* (Comp. §§ 1674, 1716.)

Nihil sane trepidabant elephanti, donec continenti velut ponte agerentur; primus erat pavor, quum, soluta ab ceteris, in altum raperentur. Ibi urgentes inter se, cedentibus extremis ab aqua, trepidationis aliquantum edebant, donec quietem ipse timor circumspectantibus aquam fecisset. (L. 21. 28.)

Fontis aqua, media nocte fervida exæstuat, quoque nox propius vergit ad lucem, multum ex nocturno calore decrescit, donec sub ipsum diei ortum adsueto tepore languescat. (Curt. 4. 7.)

Trunci quoque et debiles quidam arma non omittebant, donec multo sanguine effuso exanimati procumberent. (Curt. 4. 16. § 17.)

Pugnatum longo agmine et incerto Marte, donec prælium nox dirimeret. (Tac. *H.* 4. 35.)

Chaucorum gens quamquam incipiat a Frisiis ac partem litoris occupet, omnium quas exposui gentium lateribus optenditur, donec in Chattos usque sinuetur. (Tac. *Germ.* 35.)

(e) *An event expected and its occurrence, or prior occurrence, prevented; with quam (quam non) after (1.) prius, ante, (2.) potius, and the like. When the principal sentence is negative, the occurrence or prior occurrence of the event is not prevented, but secured (rarely, if ever, in perfect tense).*

(1.) Hærens in tergo Romanus prius, quam fores portarum objicerentur, velut agmine uno irrumpit. (L. 1. 14.)

Qui homines nefarii antequam de meo adventu audire potuissent, quum tamen abessent aliquot dierum viam, in Macedoniam perrexi. (C. *Planc.* 41.)

Numidæ prius, quam ex castris subveniretur, sicuti jussi erant, in proximos collis discedunt. (Sall. *Jug.* 54.)

Sic omne opus prius est perfectum, quam intellexeretur ab Afranio castra muniri. (Cæs. *Civ.* 1. 41.)

Græci tragœdi cotidie, antequam pronuntient, vocem cubantes sensim excitant. (C. *Or.* 1. 59.)

Is videlicet antequam veniat in Pontum, litteras ad Cn. Pompeium mittet. (C. *Agr.* 2. 20.)

*Continued on p. 290.*

Ipsæ me, quoad quisquam, qui exercitus scribit, idoneum militem iudicabit, numquam sum excusaturus. (L. 42. 34.)

Hostes populi Romani primum fuimus per nos ipsi, quoad nostra arma nos tutari poterant. (L. 23. 42.)

3. 'Until:' donec (donicum), quoad; *and sometimes* dum. 1669

De comitiis, donec rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit. (L. 23. 31.)

PR. 'Actum,' aiunt 'ne agas.' DE. Non agam? immo haud desinam, donec perfecero hoc. (Ter. Ph. 419.)

Si respexis, donicum ego te jussero, continuo hercle ego te dedam discipulam cruci. (Plaut. Aul. 17.)

Usque eo timui, donec ad rejiciendos iudices venimus. (C. Verr. 1. 6.)

Milo in senatu fuit eo die, quoad senatus dimissus est. (C. Mil. 10.)

Tamen non faciam finem rogandi, quoad nobis nuntiatum erit te id fecisse. (C. Att. 16. 16. 16.)

Mansit in condicione atque pacto usque ad eum finem, dum iudices rejecti sunt. (C. Verr. Act. 1. 6.)

Mihi quidem usque curæ erit, quid agas, dum, quid egeris, sciero. (C. Fam. 12. 19.)

4. *With* quam *after* prius, ante, citius, &c.; (a) of a simple statement of the subsequent occurrence of one event to another, as a fact. 1671

Antequam pro L. Murena dicere instituo, pro me ipso pauca dicam. (C. Mur. 1.)

Quare, antequam discedis, Othonem, si Romæ est, convenias pervelim. (C. Att. 12. 37.)

Hæc bona, is, qui testamentum fecerat, Heraclio, ante aliquanto quam est mortuus, omnia utenda ac possidenda tradiderat. (C. Verr. 2. 18.)

Neque prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen Rhenum millia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinque pervenerunt. (Cæs. G. 1. 53.)

Petilini non ante, quam vires ad standum in muris ferendaque arma deerant, expugnati sunt. (L. 23. 30.)

Non defatigabor ante, quam illorum ancipitis vias rationesque et pro omnibus et contra omnia disputandi percepero. (C. Or. 3. 36.)

Membris utimur prius, quam didicimus, cujus ea causa utilitatis habeamus. (C. Fin. 3. 20.)

Continued on p. 291.



Non prius Vindovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum arma uti capiant. (Cæs. G. 3. 18.)

Ad fratrem amicosque ejus non prius destitit mittere, quam pacem cum iis confirmaret. (L. 45. 11.)

Inde ante discessit Antonius, quam illum venisse audisset.

(C. Att. 14. 20.)

[Sometimes (in Livy, &c.) without any accessory notion of <sup>1674</sup> purpose.

Paucis ante diebus, quam Syracusæ caperentur, Otacilius in Africam transmisit. (L. 25. 31.)

Nec ante continuando abstitit Appius magistratu, quam obruerent eum male parta, male gesta, male retenta imperia. (L. 9. 34.)

Aristides interfuit pugnae navali apud Salamina, quæ facta est prius quam poena liberaretur. (Nep. 3. 2.)

Multa mehercule fecit Antonius pridie quam tu illum relinqueres.

(Vell. 2. 83.)]

Labruscæ folia, priusquam decidant, sanguineo colore mutantur.

(Plin. 14, § 37.)

(2.) Zeno Eleates perpressus est omnia potius, quam conscios delendæ tyrannidis indicare. (C. T. D. 2. 22.)

Hannibalem ego potius traham, quam ille me retineat. (L. 28. 44.)

‘Depugna’ inquis ‘potius quam servias.’ (C. Att. 7. 7.)

Duo nobis opera pro uno relinquunt, ut alia sumamus, alia expetamus, potius quam uno fine utrumque concluderent.

(C. Fin. 4. 14.)

Et si hunc videbo non dare argentum tibi quod dixit, potius quam id non fiat, ego dabo. (Plaut. Pseud. 554.)

Eripiet quivis oculos citius mihi quam te contemptum cassa nuce pauperet. (Hor. S. 2. 5. 35.)

Libentius omnes meas, si modo sunt aliquæ meæ, laudes ad te transfuderim quam aliquam partem exhauserim ex tuis.

(C. Att. 14. 17. A.)

*So with ut also:*

Multi ex plebe, spe amissa, potius quam ut cruciarentur trahendo animam, capitibus obvolutis se in Tiberim præcipitaverunt.

(L. 4. 12.)

Tum ille nihil sibi longius fuisse, quam ut me videret.

(C. Fam. 11. 27.)

*Continued on p. 292.*

Citius vitam veniamque Cæsar promisit, quam illis, ut ea precarentur, persuasum est. (Vell. 2. 85.)

Inde ante profectus est Antonius, quam ego eum venisse cognovi.  
(O. Att. 15. 1.)

*Compare* Intra triduum, quam oppugnare coeperat, receptam (urbem) ex hostibus, colonis restituit. (L. 41. 16.)

*Compare also* § 1645. For postquam, &c. see §§ 1471, 1475, 1491.

(b) Occasionally the indicative is found, even though the occurrence denoted is a matter to be prevented.

Omnia experiri certumst, priusquam pereō. (Ter. Andr. 311.)

Sed, me dius fidius, multo citius meam salutem pro te abjecero, quam Cn. Plancii salutem tradidero contentioni tuæ. (O. Planc. 83.)

Infelicem linguam bonorum exercete convicio, hiscite, commordete: citius multo frangetis dentes quam inprimetis. (Sen. Dial. 7. 20.)

Antequam opprimit lux majoraque hostium agmina obsæpiunt iter, per hos, qui inordinati obstrepunt portis, erumpamus. (L. 22. 50.)

(c) The same simple connection of like expressions is found in the infinitive, participle, &c.

Addit Pompeius se prius occisum iri a Clodio quam me violatum iri.  
(C. Att. 2. 20.)

Doleo te sapientia præditum prope singulari non tuis bonis delectari potius quam alienis malis laborare. (C. Fam. 4. 3.)

Dicit debere eos Italiæ totius auctoritatem sequi potius quam unius hominis voluntati obtemperare. (Cæs. C. 1. 35.)

Nonne tibi adfirmavi quidvis me potius perpessurum quam ex Italia ad bellum civile exiturum. (C. Fam. 2. 16, § 3.)

Constituunt illo potius utendum consilio quam aut deditionis aut pacis subeundam condicionem. (Cæs. G. 7. 78.)

## CHAPTER XXII.

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD TO EXPRESS  
*CAUSATION*: with contrasted use of Indicative.

## (E) Consecutive subjunctive.

Sentences expressing a consequence greatly resemble those expressing a purpose. *Consecutive* sentences are introduced, as *final* sentences are, by *qui*, *ut*, *quin*. But if a negative is required *non*, not *ne*, is used. The subjunctive in these sentences in no way implies the non-existence of the action, but simply that the principal and subordinate clauses are related as cause (real or possible) and effect.

The first subdivision contains adjectival sentences, and in some of these *quin* is found, as if for *qui non*, and *cum* for *quo tempore*.

The second division contains what are properly adverbial sentences, but which sometimes supply the place of a subject or object to the principal verb; sometimes imply a special restriction of the principal sentence; sometimes are employed in making a concession.

The following are typical instances.

1. (a) *Is sum, qui illud faciam.*
- (b) *Nemo est, qui non cernat.*
- (c) *Dicit quod intellegam.*
- (d) *Unus, quod sciam, hoc dicit.*
2. (a) *Non is sum, ut me periculum deterreat.*  
     *Nunquam scripsi litteras, quin ad te scripserim.*
- (b) *Eo fit, ut litteras scripserim.*
- (c) *Ita laudo eum, ut non pertimescam.*
- (d) *Ut eum laudaverim, non pertimui.*
- (e) *Ego ut istum pertimescam?*

*Continued on p. 294.*

Indicative with relatives; also with quod, ut.

The usages of the indicative here contrasted with the *consecutive* <sup>1679</sup> subjunctive are (1 *a, b, c*) simple matter of fact relative sentences; and others (*d, e*) which are used to express a restriction upon the principal sentence. These have not unfrequently double relatives, *e.g.* *quisquis* or *quicumque*; where the indicative is especially noticeable, because in English we use the (so-called) subjunctive.

(2) A consequence is sometimes expressed in the indicative, though the fact that it is a consequence is not marked by the mood.

(3) In contrast to the sentences with *ut*, forming the subject or object of the principal verb, are placed sentences occupying a similar position but introduced by *quod*, and expressing mere facts. Sometimes also they are in apposition to oblique cases.

(4) Facts are also frequently stated in the indicative with *ut*.

The following are typical instances:

1. (a) *Ego sum qui illud feci.*  
(b) *Multi sunt qui carnunt.*  
(c) *Dicit quod intellego.*  
(d) *Quod ad me attinet, nihil non bene fecisti.*  
(e) *Quicquid id est, timeo Danaos.*
2. *Ita eum non laudo, etiam vitupero.*
3. *Quod eum nunquam vidi, mihi pergratumst.*
4. (a) *Ut dixisti, ita feci.*  
(b) *Prout res postulat, litteras expecto.*  
(c) *Ut eum laudavi, ita non pertimui.*  
(d) *Sit Ennius sane, ut est, perfectior.*  
(e) *Sicut eram, fugio sine vestibus.*  
(f) *Ita vivam, ut hominem odi.*

*Continued on p. 295.*

The consecutive subjunctive expresses an action viewed as characteristic of persons or things, or as the natural result of other actions or of qualities.

*For the distinctive use of tenses, see § 1524.*

1. *With relative adjective, e.g. qui=ut is, 'so that he,' 1680*  
'such that he,' 'the kind of person to,' 'such persons as' in negative sentences *qui non*; or, if the principal sentence is negative, or quasi-negative, *quin* (or *qui non*<sup>1</sup>). Also *cum=quo tempore*.

*Especially frequent (a) after demonstratives (is, talis, tantus, &c.) or adjectives of quality; (b) after assertions of existence or non-existence (est qui, est cum, est quod, &c.); (c) occasionally without any such introduction.*

(a) *Innocentia est adfectio talis animi, quæ noceat nemini.* 1682  
(C. T. D. 3. 8.)

*Quicquid ejusmodi est, in quo non possint plures excellere, in eo fit plerumque tanta contentio, ut difficillimum sit servare sanctam societatem.* (C. Off. 1. 8.)

*Ego is sum, qui nihil unquam mea potius quam meorum civium causa fecerim.* (C. Fam. 5. 21.)

*Campani majora in defectione deliquerant, quam quibus ignosci posset.* (L. 26. 12.)

*Hæc est una contentio, quæ adhuc permanserit.* (C. Ac. 2. 24.)

*Solus es, C. Cæsar, cujus in victoria ceciderit nemo nisi armatus.*  
(C. Dejot. 12.)

*Præceps amentia ferebare, qui te existimares avaritiæ volnera crudelitatis remediis posse sanare.* (C. Verr. 5. 46.)

*O fortunate adulescens, qui tuæ virtutis Homerum præconem inveneris.* (C. Arch. 10.)

*Me miserum, qui non adfuerim.* (C. Fam. 3. 10.)

*Erit illud profecto tempus, cum tu fortissimi viri magnitudinem 1684*  
*animi desideres.* (C. Mil. 26.)

*In id sæculum Romuli cecidit ætas, cum jam plena Græcia poetarum et musicorum esset.* (C. R. P. 2. 10.)

*Profectus est id temporis cum jam Clodius, si quidem eo die Romam venturus erat, redire potuisset.* (C. Mil. 10.)

<sup>1</sup> *Quin* is used for *qui, quæ, quod...non*, nom. case, rarely for any other case. In other cases either *quin...cum*, or *quem...non* is used.

*The indicative is used for simple definitions of existing persons or things or classes (qui, 'who,' 'whoever,' cum, 'at which time').* 1681

*After such expressions as sunt qui, the indicative is unusual (except in the earlier writers and poets), unless an adjective of number or definition be added, as multi sunt qui.*

Sp. Thorius satis valuit in populari genere dicendi, is, qui agrum publicum vitiosa et inutili lege vectigali levavit. (C. Brut. 86.) 1683

Epicurus non satis politus est iis artibus, quas qui tenent, eruditi appellantur. (C. Fin. 1. 27.)

Etenim si is qui non defendit injuriam neque propulsat, cum potest, injuste facit, ut in primo libro disserui, qualis habendus est is, qui non modo non repellit sed etiam adjuvat injuriam? (C. Off. 3. 18.)

Virtus est una altissimis defixa radicibus, quæ nunquam vi ulla labefactari potest. (Ib. 4. 5.)

Verum ego seditiosus, uti Sulla ait, qui præmia turbarum queror, et bellum cupiens, qui jura pacis repeto. (Sall. Lep. 16.)

Fortunatus illius exitus, qui ea non vidit, quum fierent, quæ prævidit futura. (C. Brut. 96.)

Nunquam, inquit Cornelia, non felicem me dicam, quæ Græchos peperit. (Sen. Dial. 6. 16, § 3.)

Longum illud tempus cum non ero, magis me movet, quam hoc exitum. (C. Att. 12. 18.) 1685

Sententiam meam tu facillime perspicere potuisti jam ab illo tempore, cum in Cumanum mihi obviam venisti. (C. Fam. 2. 16.)

Quid autem agebatur, nisi ne deleri et everti rempublicam funditus velles, cum te neque principes civitatis rogando, neque frequens senatus agendo, de vendita atque addicta sententia movere potuit. (C. Phil. 2. 21.)

*Continued on p. 297.*

(b) Inventus est scriba quidam, qui cornicum oculos confixerit. 1686  
(C. Mur. 11.)

Tu enim repertu's Philocratem qui superes veriverbio. AR. Pol,  
ego ut rem video, tu inventu's vera vanitudine qui convincas.  
(Pl. Capt. 568.)

Sunt qui discessum animi a corpore putent esse mortem.  
(C. T. D. 1. 9.)

Est quatenus amicitiae dari venia possit. (C. Lel. 17.)

Fuit antea tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent.  
(Caes. G. 6. 24.)

Quid istuc est, mi vir, negoti, quod tu tam subito domo abeas?  
AMPH. Edepol haut quod tui me neque domi distædeat.  
(Pl. Amph. 502.)

Tu si animum vicisti potius quam animus te, est quod gaudeas.  
(Pl. Trin. 310.)

Quid Hannibal fecit hostiliter, quod hic non aut fecerit, aut faciat,  
aut moliatur et cogitet? (C. Phil. 5. 9.)

Nihil est quod ceterorum res minus commode gestas proferas.  
(C. Verr. 5. 50.)

Injussu populi nego quicquam sanciri posse, quod populum teneat.  
(L. 9. 9.)

Quotus igitur est quisque qui somniis pareat, qui intellegat, qui  
meminerit? (C. Div. 2. 60.)

Nec quisquam rex Persarum potest esse, qui non ante Magorum  
disciplinam scientiamque perceperit. (C. Div. 1. 41.)

Nego in Sicilia tota ullum argenteum vas fuisse, quin \* Verres conqui- 1688  
sierit, inspexerit, quod placitum sit, abstulerit. (C. Verr. 4. 1.)

In castello nemo fuit omnium militum, quin vulneraretur.  
(Caes. G. 3. 53.)

Quis tam fuit illo tempore ferreus, qui non illorum ætate nobilitate  
miseria commoveretur? ecquis fuit quin lacrymaret?  
(C. Verr. 5. 46.)

Nemo Lilybæi fuit quin viderit, nemo in Sicilia quin audierit.  
(Ib. 5. 53.)

Nullust Ephesi, quin sciat. (Pl. Bac. 336.)

Quis est, quin cernat quanta vis sit in sensibus? (C. Ac. 2. 7.)

Continued on p. 298.

Sunt multi, qui eripiunt aliis, quod aliis largiantur. (C. Off. 1. 14.) 1687

Sunt (trans deserta Africae populi) quibus ante adventum Endoxi adeo ignotus ignis fuit, ut amplecti etiam flammās et ardentia sinu abdere, donec noceret, maxime libuerit. (Mela 3, § 92.)

Tempus erit, quo vos speculum vidisse pigebit. (Ov. Med. form. 47.)

Multi anni sunt, cum M. Attius in meo aere est, et a me diligitur propter summam suam humanitatem. (C. Fam. 15. 14.)

Sed incidunt saepe tempora, cum ea, quae maxime videntur digna esse justo homine, commutantur fiuntque contraria. (C. Off. 1. 10.)

Est cum exornatio praetermittenda est. (Corn. 2. 19.)

Fuit cum hoc dici poterat: 'Patricius enim eras et a liberatoribus patriae ortus:' nunc consulatus non generis, ut ante, sed virtutis praemium. (L. 7. 32.)

Memini, cum mihi desipere videbare, quod cum istis potius viveres quam nobiscum. (C. Fam. 7. 28.)

Nam est quod me transire ad forum jam oportet. (Ter. Hee. 273.)

Quicquam bonum est, quod non eum, qui id possidet, meliorem facit? 1689  
(C. Par. 1. 3.)

Quis est qui moram mi occupato molestam optulit? (Pl. Ps. 246.)

Mihi liber esse non videtur, qui non aliquando nihil agit. (C. Or. 2. 6.)

[\* For *quin* with *subjunctive* in *final clauses* see §§ 1636 (and note), 1646; in *dependent questions*, § 1768.

For *quin* with *indicative* in *direct questions* see § 1615, with *indicative* in *statements* and with *imperative*, § 1617.]



(c) Legati qui repente aliquo mitterentur, singula jumenta per op-<sup>1690</sup>  
pida, iter qua faciundum erat, imperabant. (L. 42. 1.)

Octo hominum millia tenebat Hannibal, non quos in acie cepisset,  
aut qui periculo mortis diffugissent, sed qui relictī in castris  
fuissent a Paulo et a Varrone consulibus. (C. Off. 3. 32.)

Iste philosophus et complectitur verbis quod volt, et dicit plane  
quod intellegam. (C. Fin. 1. 5.)

At ille nescio qui, qui in scholis nominari solet, mille et octoginta  
stadia quod abesset videbat. (C. Ac. 2. 25.)

L. Pinarius erat vir acer et qui plus in eo, ne posset decipi, quam in  
fide Siculorum reponeret. (L. 24. 37.)

Et quidem sæpe quærimus verbum Latinum, par Græco, et quod  
idem valeat: hic nihil fuit quod quæreremus. (C. Fin. 2. 4.)

In enodandis nominibus, vos Stoici, quod miserandum sit, laboratis.  
(C. N. D. 3. 24.)

(d) *In relative sentences, restricting (e.g. by way of proviso)*<sup>1692</sup>  
*a general assertion; especially with qui quidem, qui modo.*

Ex antiquissimis philosophis Xenophanes unus, qui deos esse diceret,  
divinationem funditus sustulit. (C. Div. 1. 3.)

Refertæ sunt orationes amplius centum quinquaginta, quas quidem  
adhuc invenerim et legerim, et verbis et rebus illustribus.  
(C. Brut. 17.)

Omnium quidem oratorum, quos quidem ego cognoverim, acutis-  
simum judico Q. Sertorium. (Ib. 48.)

Servus est nemo, qui modo tolerabili condicione sit servitutis, qui  
non audaciam civium perhorrescat. (C. Cat. 4. 8.)

Primi, qua modo præirent duces, per præaltas fluvii voragines,  
hausti pæne limo, tamen signa sequebantur. (L. 22. 2.)

Castris, nisi quantum usus necessarii cogerent, tenebatur miles.<sup>1694</sup>  
(L. 22. 12.)

Epicurus se unus, quod sciam, sapientem profiteri est ausus.  
(C. Fin. 2. 3.)

Peto igitur abs te, ut omnibus rebus, quod sine molestia tua facere  
possis, ei commodas. (C. Fam. 13. 35.)

Tu, quod tuo commodo fiat, quam primum velim venias. (Ib. 4. 2.)

Quod litteris exstet, Pherecydes Syrius primus hanc sententiam  
dixit. (C. T. D. 1. 16.)

Necesse est multos timeat, quem multi timent.

1691

(Laber. ap. Sen. Ir. 2. 11.)

Quem per arbitrum circumvenire non posses, cujus de ea re proprium non erat iudicium, hunc per iudicem condemnabis, cujus de ea re nullum est arbitrium? (C. Rosc. C. 9.)

Si alia sentit, alia loquitur, numquam intellegam quid sentiat, sed plane dicit, quod intellegit. (C. Fin. 2. 7. Madv.)

Quid ego deliqui? PH. Rogas? Quine arrabonem a me accepisti ob mulierem et eam hinc avexti? (Plaut. Rud. 860.)

Illud mihi argentum rursum jube rescribi, Phormio? PH. Quodne ego discipuli porro illis, quibus debui? (Ter. Ph. 922.)

Ne quo nomine quidem appellare vos debeam, scio. Cives? qui a patria vestra descistis. An milites? qui imperium auspiciumque abnuistis, sacramenti religionem rupistis. (L. 28. 27.)

Est igitur hæc, iudices, non scripta sed nata lex, quam non didicimus, accepimus, legimus, verum ex natura ipsa adripuimus, hausimus, expressimus, ad quam non docti, sed facti, non instituti, sed imbuti sumus. (C. Mil. 4.)

*In the indicative a limitation of the principal sentence by a relative clause is stated without assumption, as a description of existing persons, facts, &c.* 1693

(a) *With simple relative; sometimes with quidem, modo added.*

Catonem vero quis nostrorum oratorum, qui quidem nunc sunt, legit? (C. Brut. 17.)

Non igitur adhuc, quantum quidem in te est, Balbe, intellego deos esse; quos equidem credo esse, sed nihil docent Stoiici.

(C. N. D. 3. 7.)

Tum jam non unus manipulus, sed pro se quisque miles, qui modo assequi agmen fugientium elephantorū poterat, pila conijcere.

(L. 27. 14.)

Quis ignorat, qui modo umquam mediocriter res istas scire curavit, quin tria Græcorum genera sint. (C. Flac. 27.)

Erus, quantum audio, uxore excidit. (Ter. Andr. 423.)

1695

Alio loco, ut se tota res habeat, quod ad eam civitatem attinet, demonstrabitur. (C. Ferr. 2. 5.)

Quia me meamque rem, quod in te uno fuit, delaceravisti.

(Pl. Capt. 666.)

Quæ tibi mandavi, velim, ut scribis, cures, quod sine tua molestia facere poteris. (C. Att. 1. 5. *So also in 1. 4, but usually sub-junctive.*)

Censores causas stipendiis missorum cognoscebant, et cujus nondum justa missio visa esset, ita iusjurandum adigebant: 'Ex tui animi sententia, tu ex edicto C. Claudii, T. Semproni censorum in provinciam Macedoniam redibis, quod sine dolo malo facere poteris.'

(L. 43. 16.)

*Continued on p. 501.*

2. *With a connective adverb:* *ut* (also in *Plaut.* and *Lucr.*, <sup>1696</sup> but rarely, *ut qui adv.*); in negative sentences *ut non*, 'so that...is not,' or, if the principal sentence is negative, or quasi-negative, *quin*.

(a) Non is es, Catilina, ut te pudor umquam a turpitudine revocaret. (C. Cat. 1. 9.)

Reliquos ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. (Cæs. G. 4. 12.)

Hanc orationem habuit tanta constantia vocis atque vultus, ut non ex vita sed ex domo in domum videretur migrare. (Nep. 25. 21.)

Multis gravibusque vulneribus confectus, ut jam se sustinere non posset. (Caes. G. 2. 25.)

Tantus terror pavorque omnes occupavit, ut non modo alius quicquam arma caperet aut castris pellere hostem conaretur, sed etiam ipse rex...ad flumen navesque perfugerit. (L. 24. 40.)

Adeo turbati erant dextræ alæ pedites equitesque, ut quosdam consul manu ipse repperit et aversos in hostem verterit.

(L. 34. 14.)

Tormentis quoque quum laceraretur, eo fuit habitu oris, ut superante lætitia dolores ridentis etiam speciem præbuerit.

(L. 21. 2.)

Ea est causa, ut veteres cloacæ nunc privata passim subeant tecta.

(L. 5. 55.)

Id quidem sic susceptum est mihi, ut nihil sim habiturus antiquius.

(C. Att. 15. 2.)

Ita magnæ utrimque copiæ, ita paratæ ad depugnandum esse dicuntur, ut, utrumque vicerit, non sit mirum futurum.

(C. Fam. 6. 4.)

Ain', verbero, eum morbum mi esse, ut qui med opus sit inputarier? (Pl. Capt. 550.)

Nullast tam facilis res, quin difficilis siet, quam invitus facias.

(Ter. Haut. 805.) <sup>1698</sup>

Numquam tam male est Siculis, quin aliquid facete et commode dicant. (C. Verr. 4. 43.)

Litteras ad te numquam habui cui darem, quin dederim.

(C. Fam. 12. 19.)

Nunquam unum intermittit diem, quin semper veniat.

(Ter. Ad. 293.)

Treviri totius hiemis nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent. (Cæs. G. 5. 55.)

*Continued on p. 302.*

(b) *With doubled forms of relative, and those with cunque attached, e.g. quisquis, utut, quamquam, quicunque; also uter.* 1697

*Sed quoquo modo illud se habet, hæc querella vestra nihil valet.*

(*C. Lig.* 7.)

*Stet hæc urbs præclara mihique patria carissima, quoquo modo erit merita de me.* (*C. Mil.* 34.)

*Bello Punico, quicquid potuit Capua, potuit ipsa per se.* (*C. Agr.* 1. 7.)

*Quidquid id est, timeo Danaos et dona ferentis.* (*Verg. A.* 2. 49.)

*Hostem qui feriet, mihi erit Karthaginensis, quisquis erit.*

(*Enn. ap. C. Balb.* 22.)

*Hoc quidem præceptum, cujuscumque est, ad tollendam amicitiam valet.* (*C. Læl.* 16.)

*Deiotari copias, quantæcunque sunt, nostras esse ducō.*

(*C. Fam.* 15. 1.)

*Potest omnino hoc esse falsum, potest verum, sed, utrum est, non est mirabile.* (*C. Div.* 2. 68.)

*Utrum ostendere potest, vincat necesse est.* (*C. Tull.* 11.)

*Nam, utut erant alia, illi certe, quæ nunc tibi domist, consuleres.*

(*Ter. Ph.* 468.)

*Utcunque ferent ea facta minores, vincet amor patriæ.*

(*Verg. A.* 6. 823.)

*Romani, quamquam itinere et prælio fessi erant, tamen Metello instructi intentique obviam procedunt.* (*Sall. J.* 53.)

*Quamquam in utroque vestrum summum esse ingenium studiumque perspexi, tamen hæc, quæ sunt in specie posita, in te, Sulpici, divina sunt.* (*C. Or.* 1. 29.)

*[But quamquam in post-Ciceronian writers is often found with subjunctive: e.g.*

*Nec præteribo, quamquam nonnullis leve visum iri putem, cum in primis lautus esset eques Romanus, non amplius quam ternamilia peræque in singulos menses ex ephemeride eum expensum sumptui ferre solitum.* (*Nep.* 25. 13.)

*Quamquam fortuna vel industria plerique pecuniosam ad senectam pervenirent, mansit tamen prior animus.* (*Tac. A.* 3. 55.)]

*Instead of a consecutive sentence with ut, the consequence is sometimes stated absolutely in the indicative.* 1699

*Ita tigna umide hæc putent, non videor mihi sarcire posse ædis meas.*

(*Pl. Most.* 146.)

*Hæc in vita tantum abest ut voluptates consecantur, etiam curas sollicitudines vigilas perferunt.* (*C. Fin.* 5. 20.)

*Tantum abfuit ut inflammaret nostros animos: somnum isto loco vix tenebamus.* (*C. Brut.* 80.)

*Continued on p. 303.*

(b) *The subordinate clause is often in place of subject or object to the principal sentence.*

Tantum abest ut nostra miremur, ut usque eo difficiles ac morosissimus, ut nobis non satis faciat ipse Demosthenes. (C. Or. 29.)

Mos est hominum, ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus excellere. (C. Brut. 21.)

Sæpe fit, ut ii, qui debent, non respondeant ad tempus. (C. Att. 16. 2.)

Casu accidit, ut id, quod Romæ audierat, primus nuntiaret. (C. Rosc. Am. 34.)

Nihil est in dicendo, Catule, majus, quam ut faveat oratori is qui audiet. (C. Or. 2. 42.)

Fuit hoc in M. Crasso, ut existimari vellet nostrorum hominum in omni genere prudentiam Græcis anteferre. (C. Or. 2. 1.)

Catilinæ in magnis catervis amicorum si fuit etiam Cælius, magis est ut ipse moleste ferat errasse se, quam ut istius amicitiae crimen reformidet. (C. Cæl. 6.)

Titiones et alia ligna cocta ne fumum faciant, utrum ligno an carboni an suo generi adnumerabimus? et magis est ut proprium genus habeatur. (Ulp. Dig. 32. 55, § 7.)

Ex quo efficitur, non ut voluptas ne sit voluptas, sed ut voluptas non sit summum bonum. (C. Fin. 2. 8.)

Ne deus quidem potest facere, ut qui vixit non<sup>1</sup> vixerit, qui honores gessit non gesserit, ut bis dena viginti non sint.

(Plin. H. N. 2. 7, § 27.)

Fieri potest, ut recte quis sentiat, et id, quod sentit, polite eloqui non possit. (C. T. D. 1. 3.)

Ad Appii Claudii senectutem accedebat etiam ut cæcus esset. (C. Sen. 6.)

Huc accedit ut qui debeat ad nilum jam rerum summa reverti. (Lucr. 1. 755.)

Ubi Varus restitit, et quis esset aut quid vellet quæsit, Fabius humerum apertum gladio appetit, paulumque afuit, quin Varum interficeret. (Cæs. G. 2. 35.)

Libertatis inimicos tantum abest ut ornem, ut effici non possit, quin eos tam oderim quam rempublicam diligo.

(C. Phil. 11. 14.)

Facere non possum, quin cotidie litteras ad te mittam, ut tuas accipiam. (C. Att. 12. 27.)

<sup>1</sup> Ne...admiretur, efficit (Sen. Dial. 6. 13).

*Subordinate sentences denoting a fact, and themselves forming, or* 1701  
*placed in apposition to, the subject or object of a verb (except a verb of*  
*feeling or saying, cf. § 1351) are often put in the indicative mood*  
*with quod. (For other sentences with quod see §§ 1745, 1749.)*

Hæc res mihi curæst, quidnam hoc sit negoti, quod filia repente ex-  
petit me, ad se ut irem. (Pl. Men. 762.)

Accidit perincommode, quod eum nusquam vidisti. (C. Att. 1. 17.)

Nunc me una consolatio sustentat, quod tibi, T. Anni, nullum a me  
amoris, nullum pietatis officium defuit. (C. Mil. 36.)

Te nec quod dies exiit censuræ, nec quod collega magistratu abiit, nec  
lex, nec pudor, coerces. (L. 9. 34.)

Eumeni inter Macedonas viventi multum detraxit, quod alienæ erat  
civitatis. (Nep. 18. 1.)

Nec vero hæc solum admirabilia, sed nihil majus, quam quod ita sta-  
bilis est mundus atque ita cohæret ad permanendum, ut nihil ne  
excogitari quidem possit aptius. (C. N. D. 2. 45.)

Prætereo quod illam sibi domum sedemque delegit. (C. Clu. 66.)

Mitto quod Pallanti servo prætoria ornamenta offeruntur: quippe  
offeruntur a servis. (Plin. Ep. 8. 6, § 3.)

Fecit humaniter Licinius, quod ad me misso senatu vesperi venit.  
(C. Q. Fr. 2. 1.)

Super belli Latini metum id quoque accesserat, quod triginta jam  
jurasse populos satis constabat. (L. 2. 18.)

*Often also such sentences are in apposition to an oblique case:* 1703

Hoc uno præstamus vel maxime feris, quod exprimere dicendo sensa  
possumus. (C. Or. 1. 8.)

Ad id, quod sua sponte satis collectum animorum erat, indignitate  
etiam Romani accendebantur. (L. 3. 62.)

Sin autem, pro magnitudine injuriæ, proque eo quod summa respub-  
lica in hujus periculo temptatur, hæc omnes vindicarent, consis-  
tere mehercule vobis isto in loco non liceret. (C. Rosc. A. 51.)

Non esse autem leniores in exigendis vectigalibus Græcos quam nos-  
tros publicanos, hinc intellegi potest, quod Caunii nuper ad  
senatum confugerunt. (C. Q. Fr. 1. 1, § 33.)

Tantum quod, 'only just,' is often used elliptically (for tantum 1705  
verum est quod):

Tantum quod hominem non nominat, causam quidem totam perscri-  
bit. (C. Verr. 1. 45.)

Tantum quod ex Arpinati veneram, cum mihi a te litteræ redditæ  
sunt. (C. Fam. 7. 23, init.)

(c) *In sentences restrictive of a preceding statement: ut faciam* 1704  
 = 'whilest yet doing,' *ut non faciam*, &c. 'without doing,' &c. The  
 principal sentence often has *ita*. (Compare § 1650.)

*Cujus ego ingenium ita laudo ut non pertimescam, ita probo ut me  
 ab eo delectari facilius quam decipi putem posse.* (C. *Gecil.* 14.)

*Aristoteles et Xenocrates ita non sola virtute finem bonorum conti-  
 neri putant, ut rebus tamen omnibus virtutem anteponant.*  
 (C. *Fin.* 4. 18.)

*Non ita pridem spondeos stabiles in iura paterna recepit commodus  
 et patiens, non ut de sede secunda cederet aut quarta socialiter.*  
 (Hor. *A. P.* 257.)

*Quis est qui velit, ut neque diligat quemquam, nec ipse ab ullo  
 diligatur, in omnium rerum abundantia vivere?* (C. *Lel.* 15.)

(*Sapiens iste*) *certe malet existimari vir bonus, ut non sit, quam  
 esse, ut non putetur.* (C. *Fin.* 2. 22.)

*Quinctius dictitabat non ita civitatem ægram esse ut consuetis  
 remediis sisti posset; dictatore opus esse reipublicæ.*  
 (L. 3. 20.)

*Quomodo extorqueant, non quomodo petant honores, quærun-  
 t; et ita maxima sunt adepturi, ut nihil ne pro minimis quidem  
 debeant.* (L. 6. 41.)

*Hasta interdiu plus duas horas arsisse, ita ut nihil ejus ambureret  
 ignis, dicebatur.* (L. 43. 13.)

(d) *In concessive sentences: ut (ut non), 'supposing that,' 'even* 1706  
*if.'* The subordinate clause is put usually first. (Compare §§ 1620  
 —1626.)

*Ut fueris dignior quam Plancius, (de quo ipso tecum ita conten-  
 dam paulo post, ut conservem dignitatem tuam,) non com-  
 petitor, sed populus in culpa est.* (C. *Planc.* 4.)

*Quotus quisque juris peritus est, ut eos numeres, qui volunt esse?*  
 (C. *Planc.* 25.)

*Ut non conferam vitam tuam cum illius, (neque enim est con-  
 ferenda,) hoc ipsum conferam, quo tu te superiorem fingis.*  
 (C. *Ferr.* 4. 20.)

*Continued on p. 306.*

*Facts explaining or defining a statement are often expressed by the indicative with ut, 'as.' Thus a sentence with ut is found—*

(a) *Defining the order or degree: ut='as,' 'according as,' 'just as.'* The principal sentence often has *ita, sic, perinde, pro.*

*Omnia, ut quidque actumst, memoravit.* (Pl. Bac. 1097.)

*His, sicut erant nuntiata, expositis, consul de religione patres consulit.* (L. 22. 2.)

*Ut sementem feceris, ita metes.* (C. Or. 2. 65.)

*Hæc ut brevissime dici potuerunt, ita a me dicta sunt.* (Ib. 2. 41.)

*Tum ut quisque gradu proximus erat, ita ignominie objectus.* (L. 9. 6.)

*Deus, uti tu me hic habueris, proinde illum illic curaverit.* (Pl. Capt. 311.)

*Sed hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur. Actio, inquam, in dicendo una dominatur.* (C. Or. 3. 56.)

*Ceterum iter multo, quam in adscensu fuerat (ut pleraque Alpium ab Italia, sicut breviora, ita arrectiora sunt), difficilior fuit.* (L. 21. 35.)

*Donum Jovi optimo coronam auream in Capitolium tulere parvi ponderis, prout res haud opulentæ erant, colebanturque religiones pie magis quam magnifice.* (L. 3. 57.)

*Id. prout cujusque ingenium erat, interpretabantur.* (L. 38. 50.)

(b) *Adducing a fact to be allowed for; ut, prout, pro eo ut, 'in proportion to what,' 'allowing for what.'* In early language also *præut, 'compared with.'*

*At hi quidem, ut populi Romani ætas est, senes; ut Atheniensium sæcla numerantur, adulescentes debent videri.* (C. Brut. 10.)

*Sed mehercule, ut quidem nunc se causa habet, etsi hesterno sermone labefactata est, mihi tamen videtur esse verissima.* (C. Ac. 2. 4.)

*Compararat Sthenius argenti bene facti, prout Thermitani hominis facultates ferebant, satis.* (C. Verr. 2. 34.)

*Summa vi data est a me opera, ut aratores qui reliqui erant quam plurimum sererent; tamen pro eo ut temporis difficultas aratorumque penuria tulit.* (Edictum ap. C. Verr. 3. 53, 54.)

*Ludum jocumque dicit fuisse illum alterum (amorem), præut hujus rabies quæ dabit.* (Ter. Eun. 300.)

*So with the verb omitted: Ne tu, Cato, ista exposuisti, ut tam multa, memoriter, ut tam obscura, dilucide.* (C. Fin. 4. 1.)

*Continued on p. 307.*



In quibus ut erraverim, legentes tamen non decepi, indicata et diversa opinione. (Quint. 5. 3, § 112.)

In quo, ut jam sit in iis culpa, qui me non defenderunt, non minor est in iis qui reliquerunt. (C. Fam. 1. 9. 13.)

Verum ut hoc non sit, tamen præclarum spectaculum mihi propono, modo te consessore spectare liceat. (C. Att. 2. 15.)

Quo modo quidem res nunc se habet, modo ut hæc nobis loca tenere liceat, bellissime mecum esse poteritis. (C. Fam. 14. 14.)

Ut enim rationem Plato nullam adferret, (vide quid homini tribuam,) ipsa auctoritate me frangeret. (C. T. D. 1. 21.)

Ut enim cetera paria Tubéroni cum Varo fuissent, quæ nequaquam fuerunt, hoc certe præcipuum Tuberonis, quod justo cum imperio in provinciam suam venerat. (C. Lig. 9.)

Equidem, ut verum esset sua voluntate sapientem descendere ad rationes civitatis non solere, tamen arbitrarer hanc rerum civilium minime neglegendam scientiam sapienti. (C. R. P. 1. 6.)

*So of an impossible supposition put interrogatively.*

1708

Virgo hæc liberast. TH. Meane ancilla libera ut sit, quam ego numquam emisi manu? (Pl. Curc. 616.)

Hicine ut a nobis hoc tantum argenti auferat tam aperte irridens? emori hercle satius est. (Ter. Pb. 955.)

Judicio ut arator decumanum persequatur? (C. Verr. 3. 10.)

Egone ut te interpellem? ne hoc quidem vellem. (C. T. D. 2. 18.)

Quanquam quid loquor? te ut ulla res frangat? tu ut unquam te corrigas? tu ut ullam fugam meditare? utinam tibi istam mentem di immortales duint. (C. Cat. 1. 9.)

(c) *Making a concession: ut...ita, 'although'...'yet.'* (For *quamquam, utcunque, &c.* see § 1697: for *etsi, etiamsi*, § 1561.)

Verum ut errare, mi Planci, potuisti, (quis enim id effugerit?) sic decipi te non potuisse quis non videt? (C. Fam. 10. 20.)

Saguntini, ut a præliis quietem habuerant, ita non nocte, non die, unquam cessaverant ab opere. (L. 21. 11.)

(d) *Admitting the truth of what is put only as a concession or thought; ut, sicut, 'as, in fact.'*

Sit Ennius sane, ut est certe, perfectior; qui si Catonem, ut simulat, contemneret, non omnia bella persequens primum illud Punicum acerrimum bellum reliquisset. (C. Brut. 19.)

Terrendi magis hostes erant quam fallendi, sicut terrii sunt.

(L. 25. 24.)

Illa quamvis ridicula essent, sicut erant, mihi tamen risum non moverunt. (C. Fam. 7. 32.)

Hoc si explicavisset, non tam hæsitaret; aut enim eam voluptatem tueretur quam Aristippus, aut hoc non dolere solum voluptatis nomine appellaret, aut, si utrumque probaret, ut probat, conjungeret doloris vacuitatem cum voluptate. (C. Fin. 2. 6.)

(e) *Explaining by reference to a permanent habit, or to a state; ut, sicut. Ut is immediately followed by est, sunt, &c.*

Venetorum auctoritate finitimi adducti, ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia, eadem de causa Trebium retinent.

(Cæs. G. 3. 8.)

Permulta alia conligit Chrysippus, ut est in omni historia curiosus.

(C. T. D. 1. 45.)

Nam nunc et operam ludos facit et retia, ut est tempestas nunc atque ut noctu fuit. (Pl. Rud. 901.)

Aiunt hominem, ut erat furiosus, respondisse. (C. Rosc. A. 12.)

Spurrinæ (dicit) suppliciter, ut est, cum timet, abjectissimus.

(Plin. Ep. 1. 5, § 8.)

Sicut eram, fugio sine vestibus. (Ov. Met. 601.)

(f) *In asseverations:*

Ita mihi meam voluntatem spemque reliquæ vitæ vestra populique Romani existimatio comprobet, ut ego, quos adhuc mihi magistratus populus Romanus mandavit, sic eos accepi, ut me omnium officiorum obstringi religione arbitrarer. (C. Verr. 5. 14.)

Ita vivam, ut maximos sumptus facio. (C. Att. 5. 15.)

## (F) Subjunctive of attendant circumstances.

1710

The subjunctive with *cum* is in some of its uses very peculiar, but appears to be referable, like the preceding class, to the fact or event being presented to the mind not as a mere definition of the time of the principal action, but as a cause or a possible cause of its occurrence, at least in the form in which it actually occurred.

1. The first division contains adjectival sentences of similar import to those introduced by *cum*. 2. The second division contains the use in Livy, &c. of *quicumque*, *cum*, *ubi*, &c. in relating events of frequent occurrence. 3. The third contains sentences with *cum*, first (*a*) those in the imperfect and pluperfect tenses expressing the order of events in an historical narrative; then (*b*, *c*) those expressing more distinctly an event, in consequence, or in spite of, which another event has taken place.

The sentence with *cum* (*cum præsertim*, *cum interea*) sometimes gains additional emphasis by being appended, instead of being prefixed, to the principal sentence.

(*d*) A contrast of a general mode of action with a particular act, or of an earlier with a later action, is often expressed by *cum* with the former action.

The following are typical instances:

1. Peccasse videor, qui illud fecerim.  
Abiit consul, ut quem nemo metueret.
2. Peccabant, qui (cum, ubi) illud fecissent.
3. (*a*) Cum ibi venissem, Caium conveni.  
Cotidie me criminabatur, cum diceret.  
Audiui cum diceret.
- (*b*) Quæ cum ita sint, hoc dico.  
Cur hæc narro, cum nihil audias? (also indic.)
- (*c*) Cum aliis bene fecerit, tum Caium multum promovit.  
Quomodo me accusas, cum idem Milonem defendas?  
(also indic.)
- (*d*) Quod cum videat, tamen hoc dicit.

Continued on p. 310.

## Indicative in relative and temporal sentences.

1709

1. Relative sentences in the indicative (*a*) often express a fact, which is a cause, but is not marked as such. A peculiar class of these is formed of sentences (*b*), where we should translate *qui* by 'such.'

2. The earlier writers, *e.g.* Cicero, Cæsar, &c., use (with *quicumque*, *cum*, &c.) the indicative regularly of actions frequently occurring.

3. Adverbs of time other than *cum* are used with the indicative to denote the order of events in an historical narrative.

4. Sentences with *cum* in the indicative mood are very frequent, but (*a*, *b*) they denote the bare time when a thing occurred, without grammatically implying any sort of connexion between the principal event and that which marks the date of its occurrence. The comic poets and Cicero, in certain sentences (*c*), use *cum* for 'since,' where later writers and Cicero, as a general rule, use *quoniam*, or resort to the subjunctive. (*d*) The coincidence in time, especially when combined with an identity of person and tense, is often used to express an identity of actions.

(*e*) Sometimes the coincidence of events is marked more forcibly by making the action marking the time into the principal sentence, and appending the important event with *cum*, *cum interim*, &c.

(*f*) A contrast of actions is expressed sometimes by the indicative with *cum*, more usually by the subjunctive.

The following are typical instances :

1. (*a*) *Peccasse videor, qui illud feci.*  
(*b*) *Qua eram prudentia, nihil dixi.*
2. *Quoscunque audiui, placavi.*  
*Cum ad villam veni, delectat me nihil agere.*
3. *Quod ubi (simul ac) vidi, hoc dixi.*
4. (*a*) *Scripti ad te, cum primum audiui.*  
(*b*) *Jam diu est, cum ille hic venit.*  
(*c*) *Laudo te, cum huc venisti.*  
(*d*) *Cum tacent, probant.*  
(*e*) *Dies jam deficiebat, cum subito advenere Galli.*  
(*f*) *Cum aliis bene fecit, tum Calpurnium multum promovit.*

*Continued on p. 311.*

(F) The subjunctive expresses a real action, viewed as the attendant cause or circumstance, under, or notwithstanding, which other actions or events take place.

1. *With relative adjective:* *qui*, 'inasmuch as he,' 'although he,' <sup>1712</sup> (*qui præsertim*, 'and that though he'); often with *ut*, *ut pote*, *quippe*, prefixed. So also *ut ubi*, &c.

*Peccasse mihi videor, qui a te discesserim.* (C. *Fam.* 16. 1.)

*Me cæcum, qui hæc ante non viderim!* (C. *Att.* 10. 10.)

*At iste, qui senatu non egeret, discessu nostro lætatus est.*  
(C. *Phil.* 2. 42.)

*Egomet qui sero ac leviter Græcas litteras attigissem, tamen, quum pro consule in Ciciliam proficiscens venissem Athenas, compluris tum ibi dies sum commoratus.* (C. *Or.* 1. 18.)

*Nosmet ipsi, qui Lycurgei a principio fuisset, quotidie demitigamur.* (C. *Att.* 1. 13.)

*Religione tactus hospes, qui omnia cuperet rite facta, extemplo descendit ad Tiberim.* (L. 1. 45.)

*Hic, qui Romam pervenisset satisque feliciter anni jam adverso tempore navigasset, rem ad amicos detulit.* (C. *Ferr.* 2. 38.)

*Nec consul, ut qui id ipsum oppugnatione comminanda quæsisset, moram certamini fecit.* (L. 42. 7.)

*Nec vallum modo tutantur Pœni, sed, ut quibus locus æquior esset, deturbant nitentes per ardua hostes.* (L. 25. 13.)

*Castra repetunt pavoris et tumultus jam plena, ut ubi feminae puerique et alia imbellis turba permixta esset.* (L. 38. 21.)

*Lucius quidem frater ejus, utpote qui peregre depugnaret, familiam ducit.* (C. *Phil.* 5. 11.)

*Solis candor illustrior est quam ullius ignis, quippe qui immenso mundo tam longe lateque conluceat.* (C. *N. D.* 2. 15.)

*Istam voluptatem Epicurus interdum nimis etiam novit, quippe qui testificetur, ne intellegere quidem se posse, ubi sit aut quod ullum præter illud bonum.* (C. *Fin.* 2. 3.)

*Non florentibus se venditavit Atticus, sed adflictis semper succurrit; qui quidem Serviliam Bruti matrem non minus post mortem ejus quam florentem coluerit.* (Nep. 25. 11.)

*Tribuno plebis quæstor non paruisti, cui tuus præsertim collega pareret.* (C. *Fam.* 15. 21.)

*Continued on p. 312.*

*The indicative expresses merely the fact, without implying any connexion between this and that event, although such connexion may exist.* 1711

1. (a) *With relative adjective:* qui = 'for he,' 'and yet he.' Sometimes (in Plautus, Sallust, and Livy) quippe qui.

Quom egomet mecum cogito, stulte feci qui hunc amisi.

(Pl. Mil. 1376.)

Tu dies noctesque cruciaris, cui nec sat es, quod est, et id ipsum ne non diuturnum sit futurum, times. (C. Par. 2.)

O fidam dextram Antoni, qua ille plurimos cives trucidavit.

(C. Phil. 13. 2.)

Habeo senectuti magnam gratiam, quæ mihi sermonis aviditatem auxit, potionis et cibi sustulit. (C. Sen. 14.)

Dio Flavium cum Fannio de Panurgo decidisse, qui nihil transegit: die HS cccccc dedisse, qui assem nullum dedit. (C. Rosc. C. 16.)

At Jugurtha contra spem nuntio accepto, quippe cui Romæ omnia venum ire in animo hæserat, ad senatum legatos mittit.

(Sall. J. 28.)

Iræ vestræ magis ignoscendum quam indulgendum est, quippe qui crudelitatis odio in crudelitatem ruitis. (L. 3. 53.)

Plurimum terroris Romam celeritas hostium tulit, quippe quibus velut tumultuario exercitu raptim ducto ægre ad undecimum lapidem occursum est. (L. 5. 37.)

*Also in the comic poets quippe qui (adv.).*

1713

Horum tibi istic nihil eveniet, quippe qui, ubi quod subrupias nihil est. (Pl. Aul. 346.)

Eho quæso laudas qui eros fallunt? CH. In loco ego vero laudo. SX. Recte sane. CH. Quippe qui magnarum sæpe id remedium ægritudinumst. (Ter. Haut. 538.)

(b) *So especially where the quality displayed by the principal action, is the antecedent to the relative.* (qui = 'such.') 1715

Si mihi negotium permisisses, qui meus amor in te est, confecissem.

(C. Fam. 7. 2.)

Qua enim prudentia es, nihil te fugiet, si meas literas diligenter legeris. (Brut. ap. Cic. Fam. 11. 13.)

Consurgitur in consilium; cum sententias Oppianicus, quæ tunc erat potestas, palam fieri velle dixisset. (C. Clu. 27.)

Nam illis, quantum importunitatis habent, parum est impune male fecisse, nisi deinde faciundi licentia eripitur. (Sall. J. 31.)

*Continued on p. 318.*

2. *With relative adjectives and adverbs: of cases frequently occurring; with quicumque, cum, ubi, seu, &c. in Livy and later writers (rarely, if ever, in Cicero, Cæsar, or Sallust) and only in perfect and (sometimes) imperfect tenses. Cum = whenever.* 1716

(For other cases in which the later writers use the subjunctive contrary to the practice of the earlier writers, see §§ 1670, 1674.)

Cum in jus duci debitorem vidissent, undique convolabant.

(L. 2. 27.)

Neque hereditatem cujusquam adiit, nisi cum amicitia meruisset.

(Tac. A. 2. 48.)

Id fetialis ubi dixisset, hastam in fines eorum emittebat. (L. 1. 32.)

Philopœmen ubi iter quopiam faceret et ad difficilem transitu sal-  
tum venisset, contemplatus ab omni parte loci naturam, cum  
solus iret, secum ipse agitabat animo, quum comites haberet, ab  
iis quærebat, si hostis eo loco apparuisset quid capiendum con-  
sillii foret. (L. 35. 28.)

Tunc urbis custodiis præpositus C. Mæcenæ, vir, ubi res vigiliam  
exigeret, sane exsominis, providens, atque agendi sciens, simul  
vero aliquid ex negotio remitti posset, otio ac mollitiis pæne  
ultra feminam fluens. (Vell. 2. 88.)

Vescebatur et ante cenam, quocumque tempore et loco stomachus  
desiderasset. (Suet. Oct. 76.)

Quocumque se intulisset, victoriam secum haud dubiam trahebat.

(L. 6. 8.)

Cohortes Batavorum, ut cujusque legionis tentoria accessissent,  
superbe agebant, ablatam Neroni Italiam jactantes.

(Tac. H. 2. 27.)

Inde montani concursabant modo in primum, modo in novissimum  
agmen, utcunque aut locus opportunitatem daret, aut progressi  
morative aliquam occasionem fecissent. (L. 21. 35.)

Quotiens super tali negotio consultaret, edita domus parte ac liberti  
unius conscientia utebatur. (Tac. A. 6. 21.)

His numquam candente dies adparuit ortu, seu supra terras Phœ-  
bus seu curreret infra. (Tib. 4. 1. 66; cf. 74, 75.)

In agmine nonnunquam equo, sæpius pedibus, anteibat capite de-  
tecto seu sol seu imber esset. (Suet. Jul. 57.)

Nec consul Romanus tentandis urbibus, sicunde spes aliqua osten-  
disset, deerat. (L. 26. 38.)

2. *With relative adjectives and adverbs: of cases frequently occurring, or occurring not more at one time than at another; with* 1717  
*quicumque, cum, ubi, quoties, simul ac, si, ut quisque, &c., especially the perfect, pluperfect, and completed future tenses, in subordination respectively to the present, imperfect, and future in principal clause.*  
*Cum = 'whenever.'*

Hoc Herculi fortasse potuit contingere, nobis non item, qui imitamur quoscumque visum est. (C. Off. 1. 82.)

Cum ad villam veni, hoc ipsum nihil agere et plane cessare me delectat. (C. Or. 2. 6.)

Cum paterfamilias illustriore loco natus decessit, ejus propinqui conveniunt. (Cæs. G. 6. 19.)

Quocumque aspexisti, ut furia, sic tuæ tibi occurrunt injuriæ. (C. Par. 2.)

Ubi per socordiam vires tempus ingenium diffluxere, naturæ infirmitas accusatur. (Sall. J. 1.)

Sed vincit utilitas plerumque, cum subest ille timor, ea neglecta ne dignitatem quidem posse retineri. (C. Or. 2. 82.)

Quoscumque de te queri audiui, quacumque potui ratione, placavi. (C. Q. Fr. 1. 2.)

Ubi res prolatae sunt, quom rus nomines eunt, simul prolatae res sunt nostris dentibus. (Pl. Capt. 78.)

Quisquis erat qui aliquam partem in meo luctu sceleris Clodiani attigisset, quocumque venerat, quod judicium cumque subierat, damnabatur. (C. Sest. 81.)

Cum rosam viderat, tum incipere ver arbitrabatur. (C. Verr. 5. 10.)

Plerumque milites stativis castris habebat, nisi cum odos aut pabuli egestas locum mutare subegerat. (Sall. J. 44.)

Ego, cum a nostro Catone laudabar, vel reprehendi me a ceteris facile patiebar. (C. Or. 13.)

Si ab persequendo hostis deterrere nequiverant, disiectos ab tergo circumveniebant. (Sall. J. 50.)

Aliud est dolere, aliud laborare. Cum varices secabantur C. Mario, dolebat; cum aestu magno ducebat agmen, laborabat, (C. T. D. 2. 15.)

Ut cujusque sors exciderat, alacer arma raptim capiebat. (L. 21. 42.)

Nec hic puer, quotiescumque me viderit, ingemescet ac pestem patris sui se dicet videre. (C. Sest. 69.)

Proximo bello, nonne et cum pecunia opus fuit, viduarum pecuniæ adjuverunt ærarium, et cum dii quoque novi ad opem ferendam dubiis rebus accerserentur, matronæ universæ ad mare profectæ sunt ad matrem Idæam accipiendam? (L. 34. 5.)

*Continued on p. 315.*



3. *With (quom) cum, the subjunctive implies that the event, action, &c. exercises, or might exercise, an influence on the event, action, &c. named in the principal sentence. (This use is rare in Plautus.)* 1718

*The clause with cum usually precedes (the whole or at least the verb of) the principal sentence, but sometimes is placed after it by way of explanation or contrast, see §§ 1722, 1728, 1732.*

*The subjunctive is used as follows:*

(a) *Of actions, events, &c. recounted not as mere marks of time, but as essential parts of the historical narrative; in imperfect and pluperfect tenses<sup>1</sup>.* 1720

*Though 'when' often serves to translate cum into English, the effect in such sentences is best given thus; e.g. cum rediret, 'returning,' 'as he returned;' cum redisset, 'having returned,' 'on his return.'*

Cum portæ appropinquaret, editus ex composito ignis ab Hannibale est...Nota vox Philomeni et familiare jam signum quum excitasset vigilem, portula aperitur. (L. 25. 9.)

Phocion cum ad mortem duceretur, obuius ei fuit Euphiletus...Is cum lacrimans dixisset 'O quam indigna perpeteris, Phocion!' huic ille 'at non inopinata' inquit. (Nep. 19, fin.)

Meridie cum Cæsar pabulandi causa tres legiones misisset, repente hostes ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt.

(Cæs. G. 5. 17.)

Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit. (Ib. 2. 2.)

Zenonem, cum Athenis essem, audiebam frequenter. (C. N. D. 1. 21.)

Spartæ pueri ad aram verberibus accipiuntur, nonnunquam etiam, ut, cum ibi essem, videbam, ad necem. (C. T. D. 2. 14.)

Cum civitas in opere ac labore assiduo reficiendæ urbis teneretur, interim Q. Fabio, simul primum magistratu abiit, ab Cn. Marcio, tribuno plebis, dicta dies est. (L. 6. 1.)

Cum intempesta nox esset, mansissemque in villa P. Valerii, postridieque apud eundem ventum expectans manerem, municipes Regini plurimi ad me venerunt. (C. Phil. 1. 3.)

Ego cum Athenis decem ipsos dies fuisset, multumque mecum Gallus noster Caninius, proficiscebam inde pridie Nonas Quintilis, cum hoc ad te litterarum dedi. (C. Fam. 2. 8.)

<sup>1</sup> In Pliny, *H. N.* 7, §§ 181—183, numerous examples are found of *cum* with imperfect subjunctive and *dum* with (historical) present indicative in same meaning. (See part of the passage, *supra*, § 1663.)

3. *With conjunctions of time, other than cum, e.g. ut, ubi, posteaquam (postquam), simul ac, and, in Plautus occasionally, quoniam, the indicative is used in expressing the event on, or sometimes since, the occurrence of which something else takes place. (For dum, &c. see § 1661 sqq., for priusquam, § 1671).*

Pompeius, ut equitatum suum pulsum vidit, acie excessit.

(Cæs. C. 3. 94.)

Quæ ubi sprete sententia est, iterumque eodem remeante nuntio consulebatur, censuit ad unum omnes interficiendos. (L. 9. 3.)

Alia subinde spes, postquam hæc vana evaserat, exceperit. (L. 25. 23.)

Posteaquam victoria constituta est ab armisque recessimus, cum proscriberentur homines, erat Roscius Romæ frequens. (C. Ro. Am. 6.)

Post diem quintum quam iterum barbari male pugnaverant, legati a Boccho veniunt. (Sall. J. 102.)

Quem simul ac Juturna soror crebescere vidit sermonem, in medias dat sese acies. (Verg. A. 12. 222.)

Simul ac primum ei occasio visa est, aversa pecunia publica quæstor consulem deseruit. (C. Verr. 1. 13.)

Ubi contra aspexit me, oculis mihi signum dedit, ne se appellarem: deinde postquam occasiost, conqueritur mecum mulier fortunas suas...Ego quoniam inspexi mulieris sententiam, cepi tabellas, &c. (Pl. Mil. 123 sqq.)

Ubi portu eximus, homines remigio sequi. Quoniam sentio quæ res gereretur, navem extemplo statuimus. Quoniam vident nos stare, ceperunt ratem servare in portu. (Pl. Bac. 289 sqq.)

Nam viri nostri domo ut abierunt, hic tertius annus. (Pl. Stich. 29.)

4. *With (quom) cum, the indicative mood is used in the following meanings and uses (besides those in §§ 1685, 1687, 1717).*

(a) *Coincidence in point of time. Cum = 'when,' 'at the time when.'*

*The event put in the indicative with cum is regarded as one which would not have been mentioned at all, except for the purpose of defining the time.*

Nunc demum a me insipienter factum esse arbitror, quom rem cognosco. (Pl. Mil. 562.)

Cum hæc leges, habebimus consules. (C. Att. 5. 12.)

Excruciat me erus, domum si venerit, quom hæc facta scibit, quia ego sibi non dixerim. (Pl. Mil. 859.)

Sin cum potuero, non venero, tum erit inimicus. (C. Att. 9. 2.)

Cum vero causam justam deus ipse dederit, ne ille, me dius fidius, vir sapiens lætus ex his tenebris in lucem illam exierit.

(C. T. D. 1. 30.)

*Continued on p. 317.*

Est huic finitimum dissimulationi, cum honesto verbo vitiosa res appellatur; ut, cum Africanus censor tribu movebat eum centurionem qui in Pauli pugna non adfuerat, cum ille se custodiæ causa diceret in castris remansisse quæreretque cur ab eo notaretur, 'non amo' inquit 'nimium diligentis.'

(C. Or. 2. 67.)

Noctu demum, cum obscuritas conspectum oculorum ademisset, ad curandum corpus rex recessit. (Curt. 7. 11, § 20.)

*The following are instances of the clause with cum being subsequent:* 172

Attrahitur a Veneriis Lollius commodum, cum Apronius e palæstra redisset et in triclinio recubisset. (C. Verr. 3. 25.)

Illud scripsit disertissimus poeta pro me, egit fortissimus actor de me, cum omnis ordines demonstraret, senatum, equites Romanos, universum populum Romanum accusaret, 'Exulare sinistis, sistis pelli, pulsum patimini.' (C. Sest. 57.)

Ingressus urbem est quo comitatu vel potius agmine! cum dextra sinistra, gemente populo Romano, minaretur dominis, notaret domos, divisurum se urbem palam suis polliceretur.

(C. Phil. 13. 9.)

So especially cum diceret, 'saying, as he did' = 'on the ground that, as he said.' (Compare quod diceret, § 1746.)

Cotidie meam potentiam invidiose criminabatur, cum diceret senatum, non quod sentiret, sed quod ego vellem decernere.

(C. Mil. 5.)

Hortensius ductus odio properavit rem deducere in iudicium, cum illum plumbeo gladio jugulatum iri tamen diceret.

(C. Att. 1. 16, § 2. So also Cic. N. D. 3. 34.)

*The clause with cum is sometimes tantamount to a secondary (often 1724 oblique) predicate of a thing seen, heard, &c. (Imperfect tense.) With this use of the subjunctive comp. Fuit cum diceret, &c. § 1684.*

Equidem e Cn. Aufidio prætorio, erudito homine, oculis capto sæpe audiebam, cum se lucis magis quam utilitatis desiderio moveri diceret. (C. Fin. 5. 19.)

Sæpe e socero meo audiui, cum is diceret socerum suum Lælium semper fere cum Scipione solitum rusticari. (C. Or. 2. 6.)

Adulescentium greges Lacedæmone vidimus ipsi incredibili contentione certantis, cum exanimarentur prius quam victos se fateantur. (C. T. D. 5. 27.)

Cum cotidie gladiatores spectaret, numquam est conspectus cum veniret. Emergebat subito, cum sub tabulas subreperat.

(C. Sest. 59.)

*Continued on p. 318.*

Equidem a principio cum Etruriam conjurare, proscriptos accersi, largitionibus rempublicam lacerari videbam, maturandum putabam et Catuli consilia cum paucis secutus sum. (Sall. *Or. Phil.* 6.)

Cum hæc Romæ agebantur, Chalcide Antiochus sollicitabat civitatum animos. (L. 36. 5.)

Eum heredem fecit, quom ipse obiit diem. (Pl. *Men.* 62.)

Cum primum Romam veni, nihil prius faciendum putavi, quam ut tibi absenti de reditu nostro gratularer. (C. *Att.* 4. 1.)

Reliquum est, ut ante, quam proficiscare, scribas ad me omnia, cum profectus eris, cures ut sciam. (Ib. 5. 1. 5.)

De nomine tyranni hoc respondere possum, me, qualiscumque sum, eundem esse, qui fui cum tu ipse mecum societatem pepigisti.  
(L. 34. 31.)

Etiâ si dudum fuerat ambiguum hoc mihi, nunc non est, cum eam sequitur alienus puer. (Ter. *Hec.* 649.)

Sulla, cum Damasippum et alios ejusmodi, qui malo reipublicæ creverant, jugulari jussit, quis non factum ejus laudabat?  
(Sall. *C.* 51. 232.)

Cum Placentiam consul venit, jam ex stativis moverat Hannibal.  
(L. 21. 39.)

In isto genere fuimus ipsi, cum ambitionis nostræ tempora postulabant. (C. *Planc.* 18.)

Quæ nemora aut qui vos saltus habuere, puellæ Naidæ, indigno cum Gallus amore peribat? (Verg. *B.* 10. 9.)

Expectationem nobis non parvam attuleras, cum scripseras Varro-nem id tibi confirmasse. (C. *Att.* 3. 18.)

Tum cum in Asia res magnas permulti amiserant, scimus Romæ solutione impedita fidem concidisse. (C. *Man.* 7.)

Quattuor milia hominum erant, mixti ex omni colluvione exsules, obsæati, capitalia ausi plerique, cum in civitatibus suis ac sub legibus vixerant. (L. 26. 40.)

Eo cum venio, prætor quiescebat; fratres illi Cibyratæ inambulabant.  
(C. *Verr.* 4. 14.)

(b) *So in reckoning the length of time:* cum = 'to the time that.' 1723

Triginta dies erant ipsi, cum has dabam litteras, per quos nullas a vobis acceperam. (C. *Att.* 3. 21.)

Nondum centum et decem anni sunt, cum de pecuniis repetundis a L. Pisone lata lex est, nulla antea cum fuisset. (C. *Off.* 2. 21.)

Agite pugni: jam diust, quom ventri victum non datis.  
(Pl. *Amph.* 302.)

Jube dari vinum: jam dudum factumst, quom primum bibi.  
(Pl. *Asin.* 890.)

Compare also § 1687; (and for ut in this sense, § 1719).

Continued on p. 319.

(b) *Of the grounds or reason of an action, &c. cum = 'since,' 1726 'whereas.'*

Quæ cum ita sint, Catilina, perge quo cœpisti. (C. Cat. 1. 5.)

Atqui necesse est, cum sint di, si modo sunt, ut profecto sunt, animantis esse. (C. N. D. 2. 31.)

Dionysius, cum in communibus suggestis consistere non auderet, contionari ex turri alta solebat. (C. T. D. 5. 20.)

Ad Athenas cum tamquam ad mercaturam bonarum artium sis profectus, inanem redire turpissimum est. (C. Off. 3. 2.)

Quod bellum cum alii laudent, reprehendere ne Lacedæmonii quidem possint, dii quoque ipsi comprobaverint, qui nobis victoriam dederunt, quonam modo ea, quæ belli jure acta sunt, in disceptationem veniunt? (L. 39. 36.)

Nunc cum omnes me causæ ad misericordiam vocent, quanto tandem studio debeo naturæ meæ consuetudinique servire?

(C. Mur. 3.)

*The following are instances of the clause with cum being subsequent: 1728*

Venit ad nos Cicero tuus ad cenam, cum Pomponia foras cenaret.

(C. Q. Fr. 3. 1, § 19.)

Nam puerum injussu, credo, non tollent meo, præsertim in ea re quom sit mi adjutrix socrus. (Ter. Hec. 705.)

Hoc scribere, præsertim cum de philosophia scriberem, non aude- rem, nisi idem placeret Panætio. (C. Off. 2. 14.)

Quid facient crines, cum ferro talia cedant? (Cat. 66. 47.)

Quid faciat custos, cum sint tot in urbe theatra, quoque sui comites ire vetentur, eat? (Ov. A. A. 3. 633 sqq.)

(c) *Of events, actions, &c. notwithstanding which other 1739 events, &c. take place. Cum = 'although.'*

Ain' tu? dubium habebis etiam, sancte quom ego jurem tibi?

(Pl. Capt. 889.)

Appius noster, cum me adventare videret, profectus est Tarsum usque Laodicea: ibi forum agit, cum ego sim in provincia.

(C. Att. 5. 17.)

Druentia flumen, cum aquæ vim vehat ingentem, non tamen navium patiens est. (L. 21. 31.)

Pylades cum sis, dices te esse Oresten, ut moriari pro amico?

(C. Fin. 2. 24.)

Ipsæ Cicero, cum tenuissima valetudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat. (Cæs. G. 5. 40.)

*Continued on p. 320.*

(c) *Reason; in early writers: in Cicero only where the verb in the principal sentence is laudo, gratulor, &c. Not after Cicero. (Quoniam (i.e. quom jam) and quando exhibit this usage, see § 1747.) Quom = 'because.'*

Di tibi omnes omnia optata offerant, quom me tanto honore honestas, quomque ex vinclis eximis. (Pl. *Capt.* 353.)

Quom te di amant, voluptatist mihi. (Pl. *Rud.* 1183.)

Præsertim quom is me dignum, quoi concederet, habuit, me habere honorem ejus ingenio decet. (Pl. *As.* 81.)

Edepol te, mea Antiphila, laudo et fortunatam judico, id quom studuisti, isti formæ ut mores consimiles forent. (Ter. *Haut.* 381.)

Gratulor tibi, cum tantum vales apud Dolabellam. (C. *Fam.* 14. 17 A.)

Illum prodire pudet in conspectum tuum, propter ea quæ fecit, quom te scire scit. (Pl. *Most.* 1156.)

Scio pol te amare, quom istæc præmonstras mihi. (Pl. *Merc.* 577.)

*In the following sentences, though similar otherwise to some in § 1728, coincidence in time only is marked. (Compare also § 1731.)*

Quid domini faciant, audent cum talia fures? (Verg. *B.* 3. 16.)

Quid sapiens faciet, stultus cum munere gaudet? (Ov. *A. A.* 3. 655.)

Nam quid possit ibi flatus, manifesta docet res hic, ubi lenior est in terra, cum tamen alta arbusta evolvens radicibus haurit ab imis. (Lucr. 6. 140.)

(d) *Identity of action. (Present and perfect tenses.) Usually the tense and person of the verb in both sentences are the same. Cum = 'when,' 'in that.'*

Quæso edepol, num tu quoque etiam insanis, quom id me interrogas? (Pl. *Amph.* 753.)

Qui, cum hunc accusant, Nævium Plantum Ennium accusant. (Ter. *Andr.* 17.)

De te autem, Catilina, cum quiescunt, probant; cum patiuntur, decernunt; cum tacent, clamant. (Cic. *Cat.* 1. 8.)

Concedo tibi, ut ea prætereas, quæ, cum taces, nihil esse concedis. (C. *Rosc. Am.* 19.)

Sed cum mundo negas quicquam esse melius, quid dicis melius? Si pulchrius, adsentior. (C. *N. D.* 3. 9.)

Magnum hoc quoque signumst dominam esse extra noxiam, cum ejus tam necleguntur internuntii. (Ter. *Haut.* 298.)

De luxuria purgavit Erucius, cum dixit, hunc ne in convivio quidem ullo fere interfuisse. (C. *Rosc. Am.* 14.)

Epicurus ex animis hominum extraxit radicis religionem, cum in dis immortalibus opem et gratiam sustulit. (C. *N. D.* 1. 43.)

*Continued on p. 321.*

Cum primi ordines hostium transfixi pilis concidissent, tamen acerrime reliqui resistebant. (Cæs. G. 7. 62.)

Nunc cum ejus alienum esse animum a te sentiam, quamobrem reducam? (Ter. Hec. 659.)

Verum cum videam miserum hunc tam excruciarier ejus abitu, celem tam insperatum gaudium, cum illi pericli nihil ex indicio sit? (Ter. Haut. 413.)

Hoc ipso tempore, cum omnia gymnasia philosophi teneant, tamen eorum auditores discum audire quam philosophum malunt. (C. Or. 2. 5.)

*The following are instances of the clause with cum being subsequent: 173*

Cum = 'and yet,' 'while all the time,' (§ 1726), cum præsertim, 'and that too though.'

Quomodo igitur hoc in genere accusas Sestium, cum idem laudes Milonem? (C. Sest. 42.)

Simulat se eorum præsidio confidere, cum interea aliud quiddam jam diu machinetur. (C. Verr. 1. 6.)

Ignari veritatis Diis imputant sævitiam maris, immodicos imbres, pertinaciam hiemis, cum interim nihil horum, quæ nobis nocent prosuntque, ad nos proprie dirigatur. (Sen. Ir. 2. 27.)

Statuitur, ut dico, eques Romanus, annos prope xc natus, in Afranii convivio, cum interea Afranius caput atque os suum unguento confricaret. (C. Verr. 3. 25.)

Fadium abstractum defodit in ludo et vivum conbussit; cum quidem pransus, nudis pedibus, tunica soluta, manibus ad tergum rejectis inambularet, et illi misero quiritanti, responderet, Abi nunc, populi fidem inplora. (Asin. Poll. ap. C. Fam. 10. 32.)

Thucydides nunquam est numeratus orator; nec vero, si historiam non scripisset, nomen exstaret, cum præsertim fuisset honoratus et nobilis. (C. Or. 9.)

(d) *Of an action or event, &c. rhetorically contrasted with a 1734 later or particular action, &c. of the same sort; especially where the time of the two actions is different.*

Sisennæ historia cum facile omnis vincat superiores, tum indicat tamen, quantum absit a summo. (C. Brut. 64.)

Cum te a pueritia tua unice dilexerim, tum hoc vel tuo facto vel populi Romani de te judicio multo acrius diligo. (C. Fam. 15. 9.)

Sex. Roscius cum omni tempore nobilitatis fautor fuisset, tum hoc tumultu proximo præter ceteros in ea vicinitate eam partem causamque defendit. (C. Rosc. A. 6.)

*Continued on p. 322.*

In some sentences (from Plautus and Terence) similar to some on 1731 the opposite page, § 1730, the coincidence in time serves to set off strongly the unreasonableness of the action. (Compare § 1727.) Quom = 'although.'

Credo, si boni quid ad te nuntiem, istes acriter, qui nunc, quom malum audiundumst, flagitas me ut eloquar. (Pl. Merc. 178.)

Quid igitur faciam? non eam? ne nunc quidem, cum accersor ultro? (Ter. Eun. 46.)

Nunc cum sine magno intertrimento non potest haberi, quidvis dare cupis. (Ter. Haut. 448.)

Hei mihi, insanire me aiunt ultro quom ipsi insaniunt. (Pl. Men. 831.)

De illo jam finem faciam dicundi mihi, peccandi quom ipse de se finem non facit? (Ter. Ph. 23.)

(e) The coincidence in time is sometimes vividly expressed by an inversion; what would otherwise have been the temporal clause being put first as an independent sentence (often with jam), and what would have been the principal sentence being subjoined with cum, often cum repente, cum interim, &c. Cum = et tum.

Primo actu placeo, quom interea rumor venit datum iri gladiatores: populus convolat. (Ter. Hec. 89.)

Milites, postquam in ædis irrupere, divorsi regem quærere, strepitu et tumultu omnia miscere, cum interim Hiempsal reperitur, occultans se tugurio mulieris ancillæ. (Sall. J. 12.)

Castra in hestico incuriose posita, cum subito advenere Samnitium legiones. (L. 8. 38.)

Hannibal subibat muros, cum repente in eum, nihil minus quam tale quicquam timentem, patefacta porta erumpunt Romani. (L. 29. 7.)

Jamque hoc facere noctu apparabant, cum matres familiæ repente in publicum procurrerunt. (Cæs. G. 7. 26.)

Dies nondum decem intercesserant, cum ille alter filius infans necatur. (C. Clu. 9.)

So also the historical infinitive: e.g. Romanus promissa consulis fidemque senatus expectabat, quom Appius, quam asperrime poterat, jus de creditis pecuniis dicere. (L. 2. 27.)

(f) In comparing two actions: (subjunctive more usual, and with the imperfect, invariable). Cum = whilst, both (tum = and).

Cum ipsam cognitionem juris augurii consequi cupio, tum mehercule tuis incredibiliter studiis erga me muneribusque delector. (C. Fam. 3. 9.)

Cum te semper maxime dilexi, tum fratrum tuorum singularis pietas nullum me patitur officii erga te munus prætermittere. (Ib. 6. 14.)

Sed cum multis in rebus negligentia plectimur, tum maxime in amicis et diligendis et colendis. (C. Læl. 22.)

Continued on p. 323.



## CHAPTER XXIII.

## USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD TO EXPRESS ALIEN OR CONTINGENT ASSERTIONS, &amp;c. with contrasted use of Indicative.

## (G) Subjunctive of reported statements.

The subjunctive in all the sentences classed here serves to distinguish what is reported from what is uttered at first hand. These sentences are not like those in the next head, dependent on infinitive or subjunctive moods, but (except for some collateral reason) on the indicative. Such sentences may be (1) definitions introduced by the relative adjective *qui*, or (2) reasons, or (3) conditions, or (4) temporal clauses, or (5) questions. Such indirect questions are very common, and here properly belong sentences with *forſitan*, and some with *quin*.

The following are typical instances :

1. *Præmia proposuit, qui primus venisset.*
2. *Laudat Panætium, quod fuerit abstinens.*  
*Laudat eum, non quod futurus sit, sed quod fuit abstinens.*  
*Redit, quod oblitum se aliquid diceret.*
3. (a) *Timebat iram Cai, ni venisset.*  
(b) *Da pignus, ni hostes abeant.*  
(c) *Quæſiuit, } si hostes abirent.*  
*Tentavit, }*
4. *Dum vires suppeterent, deditiōnem censebat.*
5. (a) *Scripti, quid agatur.*  
*Doleam neque doleam, nihil interest.*  
(b) *Forſitan aliquis dicat.*  
*Non est dubium, quin ille venerit.*  
(c) *(Quid narras?) Quid ego narrem?*

*Continued on p. 324.*

**Indicative: in contrasted usages.**

The instances of the indicative here placed are, besides (1) ordinary relative sentences, principally (2) the regular use of *quod* and other adverbs of cause, when the reason alleged is given on the speaker's own authority: (3) some conditional sentences, directly expressed, especially the colloquial *ni mirum* and *mirum ni*; and (4) questions in colloquial language accompanied by expressions on which they are logically but not grammatically dependent.

(5) Relative sentences often differ little from interrogative in meaning or look, but have the indicative where the dependent interrogative would have the subjunctive.

(6) Some expressions, e.g. *foraitan* and *nescioquis*, originally introduced dependent questions, but after a time passed in popular conception, the one into a mere adverb, the other into an indefinite pronoun, and were consequently used with the indicative mood.

The following are typical instances:

1. *Et, qui primus venerat, præmia dedit.*
2. *Laudat Panætium, quod fuit abstinent.*  
*Quod M. Cicero verba fecit, ita censeo.*
3. *Si hoc dictitasti, spondesne mihi xxv nummos dare?*  
*Visam, si abiit.*  
*Mirum ni hoc est verum.*  
*Nimirum hoc est verum.*
4. *Ut valet?*  
*Dic mihi, } quid agitur?*  
*Scire volo, }*
5. *Viden' quod agitur?*
6. *Foraitan aliquis dicet (post-Ciceronian).*  
*Nescio quis hic loquitur.*
7. *(Attuli hunc.) Quid? attulisti?*

*Continued on p. 325.*

The subjunctive expresses a definition or reason or <sup>1738</sup> condition or question reported, but not as the speaker's or writer's own at the time of speaking or writing: *in a subordinate sentence.*

*For the distinctive use of tenses, see § 1526 sqq.*

1. *Reported definition or reason: with relative adjective.* <sup>1740</sup>

Recte Socrates exsecrari eum solebat, qui primus utilitatem a jure sejunxisset. (C. Legg. I. 12.)

Pætus omnes libros, quos frater suus reliquisset, mihi donavit.

(C. Att. 2. 1.)

Edit nomina eorum, quibus conventis opus esset. (L. 34. 61.)

Marti, cum prælio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quæ bello ceperint, plerumque devovent. (Cæs. G. 6. 17.)

Hanc primum ad litora classem conspexi venientem: huic me, quæcunque fuisset, addixi. (Verg. A. 3. 652.)

Eis, qui primi murum ascendissent, præmia proposuit.

(Cæs. G. 7. 27.)

Magna proponit iis, qui regem occiderint, præmia. (Cæs. G. 5. 58.)

Interim cotidie Cæsar Hæduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. (Cæs. G. 1. 16.)

Hæc omnia occurrebant, colles campique et Tiberis et hoc cælum, sub quo natus educatusque essem. (L. 5. 54.)

*A carelessness of expression occurs with the relative, as with quod, § 1746.*

At etiam litteras, quas me sibi misisse diceret, recitavit.

(C. Phil. 2. 4.)

Nominat iste servum, quem magistrum pecoris esse diceret; eum dicit conjurasse et familias concitasse. (C. Ferr. 5. 7.)

2. *Reported or assumed reason: with adverb, quod, quia; 1742 non quod, non quia, non quo, non quia.*

Laudat Panætius Africanum, quod fuerit abstinens. (C. Off. 2. 22.)

An pænitet vos quod saluum exercitum traduxerim? quod classem hostium primo impetu adveniens profligaverim? quod bis per biduum equestri prælio superaverim? &c. (Cæs. G. 2. 32.)

Obicite Platoni quod petierit pecuniam, Aristoteli quod acceperit, Democrito quod neglexerit, Epicuro quod consumpserit.

(Sen. Dial. 7. 27.)

*Continued on p. 326.*

*The indicative expresses a fact; or a direct statement of opinion of the writer or speaker.*

1. *With relative adjective.*

1741

Pætus omnes libros, quos frater ejus reliquerat, mihi donavit.

Verres mittit rogatum vasa ea, quæ pulcherrima apud eum viderat.  
(C. Verr. 4. 27.)

Hortatus sum, ut illam laudationem, quam se vi ac metu coactos paucis illis diebus decreesse dicebant, tollerent. (Ib. 63.)

Negavit se judices ex lege Rupilia sortituros: quinque judices, quos commodum ipsi fuit, dedit. (Ib. 2. 16.)

Me quidem etiam illa res consolatur, quod ego is sum, cui vel maxime concedant omnes, ut vel ea defendam, quæ Pompeius velit, vel taceam, vel etiam id quod mihi maxime lubet, ad nostra me studia referam litterarum: quod profecto faciam, si mihi per ejusdem amicitiam licebit. (C. Fam. 1. 8.)

*A compactness of expression sometimes occurs, by which the relative is used instead of quod with the demonstrative (§ 1749).*

Nam quos ab hominibus pervenisse dicis ad deos, tu reddes rationem, quem ad modum fieri potuerit aut cur fieri desierit.  
(C. N.D. 3. 16, where quos=quod aliquos.)

2. *With causal conjunctions, quod, quia, quoniam, quando, si, quidem, quatenus, 'inasmuch as.'* (For quod see also § 1701.)

Quod animadversum est in eos, qui contra omni ratione pugnaverunt, non debeo reprehendere; quod viris fortibus honos habitus est, laudo. (C. Rosc. Am. 47.)

Neque vero, quid mihi irascare, intellegere possum. Si, quod eum defendo, quem tu accusas, cur tibi ego non succenseo, quod accusas eum, quem ego defendo? (C. Sull. 17.)

Idem Caius iratus fuit Herennio Macro, quod illum Caium salutaverat. Nec impune cessit primipilari, quod Caligulam dixerat.

(Sen. Dial. 2. 18.)

*Continued on p. 827.*

Est autem impudens luctus mærore se conficientis, quod imperare non liceat liberis. (C. T. D. 3. 12.)

Hæc tibi dictabam post fanum putre Vacunæ, excepto quod non simul esses, cetera lætus. (Hor. Ep. 1. 10. 49, *where the writer's own reason is reported.*)

Cæsar sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissima missa. (Cæs. G. 1. 43.)

Romani, quia consules, ubi summa rerum esset, ad id locorum prospere rem gerent, minus his cladibus commovebantur. (L. 25. 22.)

Bene majores accubitionem epularem amicorum, quia vitæ conjunctionem haberet, convivium nominaverunt. (C. Sen. 13.)

Non sum eodem modo defensurus, Romani, quod Dolopas armis coercuerim: quia, etsi non merito eorum, jure feci meo, cum mei regni, meæ dicionis essent. (L. 42. 41.)

Pugiles in jactandis cæstibus ingemescunt, non quod doleant animo succumbant, sed quia profundenda voce omne corpus intenditur venitque plaga vehementior. (C. T. D. 2. 23.)

Mihi quidem laudabiliora videntur, quæ sine venditione et sine populo teste fiunt, non quo fugiendus sit, (omnia enim bene facta in luce se conlocari volunt,) sed tamen nullum theatrum virtuti conscientia majus est. (Ib. 2. 26.)

Non tam ut prosim causis elaborare soleo, quam ut ne quid obisim: non quin enitendum sit in utroque, sed tamen multo est turpius oratori nocuisse videri causæ, quam non profuisse. (C. Or. 2. 72.)

Jactatum in condicionibus nequiquam de Tarquiniis in regnum restituendis, magis quia id negare Porsinna nequiverat Tarquiniis, quam quod negatum iri sibi ab Romanis ignoraret. (L. 2. 13.)

*By a carelessness of expression the verb of 'saying' or 'thinking' is sometimes put in the subjunctive instead of the thing said. So especially diceret, dicerent. (Compare §§ 1742, 1722.)*

Ex his Bellovaci suum numerum non compleverunt, quod se suo nomine atque arbitrio cum Romanis bellum gesturos dicerent. (Cæs. G. 7. 75.)

Cum enim Hannibalis permissu exisset de castris, rediit paulo post, quod se oblitum nescio quid diceret. (C. Off. 1. 13.)

Qui istinc veniunt, superbiam tuam accusant, quod negent te percontantibus respondere. (C. Fam. 7. 16.)

*Continued on p. 328.*

Ita fit ut adsint propterea, quod officium sequuntur, taceant autem idcirco, quia periculum vitant. (C. *Rosc. Am.* 1. 1.)

Vitio mihi dant, quod mortem hominis necessarij graviter fero, atque eum quem dilexi perisse indignor; aiunt enim patriam amicitiae præponendam esse. (Matius ap. C. *Fam.* 11. 28.)

Quod spiratis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formas hominum habetis, indignantur. (L. 4. 3.)

Tusculanum et Pompejanum valde me delectant, nisi quod me sæpe alieno obruerunt. (C. *Att.* 2. 1.)

Prætor Achæorum Arcas fuit mediterraneus, externorum etiam omnium, nisi quod in Creta præfectus auxiliorum militaverat, ignarus. (L. 35. 26.)

Ut lubet, quod tibi lubet, fac, quoniam pugnis plus vales. 1747  
(Pl. *Amp.* 396.)

Principio externa corpus de parte necessumst, aëriis quoniam vicinum tangitur auris, tundier. (Lucr. 4. 933.)

Vos, Quirites, quoniam jam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite.  
(C. *Cat.* 3, fin.)

Abibo hinc, præsens quando promoveo parum. (Ter. *Hec.* 703.)

Quando igitur virtus est adfectio animi, laudabiles efficiens eos, in quibus est, ex ea profisciscuntur honestæ voluntates.  
(C. *T. D.* 4. 15.)

Æstatis insanabili perniciæ quando nec causa nec finis inveniebatur, libri Sibyllini ex senatus consulto aditi sunt. (L. 5. 13.)

Summa utilitas est in iis qui militari laude antecellunt, siquidem eorum consilio et periculo cum republica tum etiam nostris rebus perfrui possumus. (C. *Mur.* 11.)

Quandoquidem apud te nec auctoritas senatus nec ætas mea valet, tribunos plebis appello. (L. 8. 33.)

Cur enim non usquequaque Homericis versibus agam tecum? quatenus tu me tuis agere non pateris. (Plin. *Ep.* 1. 7.)

Et lædere quatenus illum non poterat, nec vellet amans, irascitur illi quæ sibi prælatast. (Ov. *M.* 14. 42.)

Quo quidem etiam magis sum exercitus, non quia multis debeo, sed quia sæpe concurrunt aliquorum de me meritorum inter ipsos contentiones. (C. *Planc.* 32.)

*The clause with quod sometimes simply introduces a matter for remark. If this is stated as a supposition only, the subjunctive is used.*

Quod quispiam ignem quærat, extingui volo, ne causæ quid sit quod te quispiam quæritet. (Pl. Aul. 91.)

Miles, edico tibi, si te in platea offendero hac post umquam, quod dicas mihi, 'alium quærebam, iter hac habui,' periisti.  
(Ter. Eun. 1064.)

Quod enim te liberatum jam existimationis metu, perfunctum honoribus, designatum consulem cogites, mihi crede, ornamenta ista et beneficia populi Romani non minore negotio retinentur quam comparantur. (C. Verr. 5. 68.)

3. *Reported condition: the apodosis not being set out separately, but absorbed into the principal sentence.*

(a) Prætor ædem Divoi vovit, si eo die hostes fudisset. (L. 31. 21.)

'Victor' inquit 'M. Fabi, revertar ex acie;' si fallat, Jovem patrem Gradivumque Martem aliosque iratos invocat deos. (L. 2. 45.)

Metellus evocat ad se magistratus; nisi restituissent statuas, vehementer minatur<sup>1</sup>. (C. Verr. 2. 67.)

Jugurtha timebat iram senatus, ni paruisset legatis<sup>2</sup>. (Sall. J. 25.)

Nec illos periculum, si animus hosti redisset, cogere potuit gradum accelerare. (L. 2. 43.)

Hernici pudore etiam, non misericordia solum, moti, si nec obstitissent<sup>3</sup> communibus hostibus, nec opem ullam obsessis sociis ferrent, Romam pergunt. (L. 3. 7.)

Cur M. Brutus, referente te, legibus est solutus, si ab urbe plus quam decem dies afuisset<sup>4</sup>? (C. Phil. 2. 13.)

Bucar præmiorum ingentium spe oneratus, si caput Masinissæ retulisset, aut vivum (id vero inæstimabile gaudium fore), cepisset. (L. 29. 32.)

Ubiis auxilium suum pollicitus est, si ab Suebis premerentur.  
(Cæs. G. 4. 19.)

Dumnacus desperata salute, si tempore eodem coactus esset et externum sustinere hostem et respicere oppidanos, cum copiis recedit. (Hirt. B. G. (8.) 27.)

Tumultuose decurrerat multitudo ad prohibendos si in terram egrederentur. (L. 24. 27.)

*Continued on p. 330.*

*Quod with indicative often expresses a fact, which is not so much the cause of the action of the principal verb, as the cause of the statement, a matter for remark.*

Verum, quod tu dicis, mea uxor, non te mihi irasci decet.

(Pl. *Amph.* 522.)

Quod scribis, te si velim ad me venturam, ego vero istic esse volo.

(C. *Fam.* 14. 8.)

Quod Silius te cum Clodio loqui vult, potes id mea voluntate facere.

(C. *Att.* 12. 30.)

Quæ cum ita sint, quod C. Pansa consul verba fecit de litteris, quæ a Q. Cæpione adlatæ sunt, de ea re ita censeo. (C. *Phil.* 10. 11.)

*Similarly* Itaque quoniam discerni placet quid publico consilio, quid sua sponte imperatores faciant: nobis vobiscum fœdus est a C. Lutatius consule ictum, in quo, &c. (L. 21. 18.)

*The following are instances of a vow in direct language.*

1751

At tu pater deum hominumque hinc saltem arce hostes: deme terrorem Romanis fugamque fœdam siste. Hic ego tibi templum Statori Jovi voveo. (L. 1. 12.)

Si duellum, quod cum rege Antiocho sumi populus jussit, id ex sententia senatus populi que Romani confectum erit, tum tibi, Jupiter, populus Romanus ludos magnos dies decem continuos faciet. (ap. L. 36. 2.)

<sup>1</sup> *i.e.* minatur, nisi restituissent statuas, se iis malum daturum.

<sup>2</sup> *i.e.* timebat, nisi paruisset legatis, ne senatus irasceretur.

<sup>3</sup> *i.e.* Hernici hæc secum reputabant: Pudebit nos, si nec obstitimus, &c.; or pudere se, si nec obstitissent, &c.

<sup>4</sup> *i.e.* Referente M. Antonio, senatui placuit ut M. Brutus, si... afuisset, legibus solveretur.



(b) *So especially in legal forms; si, ni, uti, quicquid.*

Rubrius Apronium sponsione laccessivit, ni<sup>1</sup> Apronius dictitaret te sibi in decumis esse socium. (C. *Verr.* 3. 57.)

Jubet P. Quinctium sponsionem cum Sex. Nævio facere, si bona sua ex edicto P. Burrieni prætoris dies xxx. possessa non essent. (C. *Quinct.* 8.)

Affirmabant qui una meruerant, secum Cæsonem tum, frequentemque ad signa sine ullo commeatu fuisse. Nisi ita esset, multi privatim ferebant Volscio judicem. (L. 3. 24.)

Vel da pignus, ni ea sit filia. (Plaut. *Epid.* 5. 2. 34.)

Buculeius cum ædis L. Fufio venderet, in mancipio lumina, uti tum essent, ita recepit. (C. *Or.* 1. 39.)

Arbitrum illum adegit, quicquid sibi dare facere oporteret ex fide bona. (C. *Off.* 3. 16.)

Nec prætor, postulante Pausania, quo ea pecunia pervenisset recipere voluit. (Cæ1. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 8, § 2. Cf. C. *Rab. Post.* 4.)

(c) *Sometimes the apodosis is omitted altogether, perhaps not even distinctly conceived (comp. § 1582). The principal sentence states the action taken or feelings excited in contemplation of a particular event, the conditional sentence states the condition on which the event would take place; this contemplated event itself, which is the real apodosis, is not stated. The conditional sentence appears like a dependent question. Si = 'whether.' (Possim, possem, &c. are frequently found in the conditional clause.)*

Quæsit iterum, si cum Romanis militare liceret. (L. 40. 49.)

Primum ab iis quæsit, si aquam hominibus jumentisque in totidem dies, quot frumentum, imposuissent. (L. 29. 25.)

Jamdudum, si des, porrexi manum. (Pl. *Ps.* 1148.)

Hanc paludem si nostri transirent, hostes expectabant.

(Cæs. *G.* 2. 9.)

Mirabar, hoc si sic abiret, et eri semper lenitas verebar quorsum evaderet. (Ter. *Andr.* 175.)

Tentata res est, si primo impetu capi Ardea posset. (L. 1. 57.)

Hannibal irritat de industria Fabium, si forte accensum tot cladibus sociorum detrahere ad æquum certamen possit. (L. 22. 13.)

Nunc comminus agamus experiamurque, si possimus cornua commovere disputationis tuæ. (C. *Div.* 2. 10.)

Ad Gonnum castra movet, si potiri oppido posset. (L. 42. 67.)

Omnibus deinceps diebus Cæsar exercitum in aciem produxit, si Pompeius prælio decertare vellet. (Cæs. *C.* 3. 56.)

*Continued on p. 332.*

3. *The wagers would be in some such terms as these: Rubrius (or 1753 Quinctius) would say:*

Si<sup>1</sup> dictitasti te mihi in decumis esse socium (Si bona mea ex edicto P. Burrieni prætoris dies xxx. possessa non sunt), Aproni, (Nævi) mihi xxv. nummos dare spondesne? *To which Apronius (or Nævius) would answer Spondeo.*

*The issues to be tried would then be severally stated as follows, being in the form of directions from the prætor to the judge:*

Titius iudex esto. Quod Rubrius (Quinctius) ab Apronio (Nævio) xxv. nummos stipulatus est, si Apronius dictitasset se Rubrio in decumis esse socium (si Quinctii bona ex edicto P. Burrieni prætoris dies xxx. possessa non essent), si paret Apronium Rubrio (Nævium Quinctio) xxv. dare oportere, Titi, Apronium Rubrio (Nævium Quinctio) xxv. nummos condemna: si non paret, absolve.

Cf. Gai. 4. 93 sq. and 39—50.

*A thing to be ascertained is sometimes expressed as the condition, 1755 instead of being expressed as the object, of the seeing or knowing.*

Ibo visam, si domist. (Ter. Haut. 170.)

Nunc redeo: si forte frater redierit, viso. (Ter. Ad. 549.)

Jam sciam, si quid titubatumst, reliquias ubi videro. (Pl. Men. 142.)

Vide, si hoc utile magis atque in rem deputas. (Pl. Trin. 748.)

Vide, amabo, si non, cum aspicias, os impudens videtur.

(Ter. Eun. 838.)

*Compare also the colloquial phrases, mirum ni, nimirum, &c. 1757*

Mira sunt, ni illic homost aut dormitator aut sector sonarius.

(Pl. Trin. 862.)

Mirum ni hic me quasi murænam exossare cogitat. (Pl. Amph. 319.)

Tu nisi mirumst, leno, plane perdidisti mulierem. (Pl. Ps. 1213.)

Ni mirum, dabit hæc Thais mihi magnum malum. (Ter. Eun. 508.)

Sic se gerendo minime est mirandum, si et vita ejus fuit secura et mors acerba. (Nep. 5, fin.)

Miror, illa superbia et inopportunitate si (Tarquinius) quemquam amicum habere potuit. (C. Læl. 15.)

<sup>1</sup> The substitution of *ni*, in *affirmative wagers*, for the *si* which is used in the formulæ, is probably due to the risk which the *plaintiff* runs, and the condition which involves this risk, being chiefly regarded. (The wager in the passage from Cic. *Quinct.* is negative, and therefore by the same rule *si* is used.)

4. *Other clauses, e.g. temporal clauses, similarly reported, 1756 are sometimes found.*

Pars deditionem, pars, dum vires suppeterent, eruptionem censebat.  
(Cæs. G. 7. 77.)

M. Lepidus interficiendi, simul in urbem revertisset, Cæsaris consilia inierat. (Vell. 2. 88.)

5. *Reported question. (Dependent interrogative.)*

1758

(N.B. *A rhetorical question in the first or third person, not dependent on a verb of asking, but being part of a continuous report of a speech, is put in the infinitive: see § 1781.*)

(a) Quid ab hac metuis? Pl. Quid ego metuam, rogitas?  
(Pl. Bac. 65.)

Obsecro, mea nutrix, quid nunc fiet? CA. Quid fiat, rogas?  
(Ter. Ad. 288.)

Qui sermo fuerit, et quid actum sit, scribam ad te, quum certum sciam. (C. Att. 7. 13.)

Eccos video incedere mei patrem sodalis et magistrum. Ausculto quid agant. (Pl. Bac. 404.)

Homo quidamst qui scit, quod quæris ubi sit. (Pl. Mil. 1012.)

Sum circumvectus: ita ubi nunc sim nescio. (Pl. Most. 996.)

Docui cunctarum exordia rerum qualia sint et quam variis distantia formis sponte sua volitent. (Lucr. 3. 31.)

Nunc nostræ timeo parti, quid hic respondeat. (Ter. Andr. 419.)

Nunc has expectationes habemus duas, unam, quid Cæsar acturus sit, alteram, quid Pompeius agat. (C. Att. 7. 16.)

Lesbonicum hic adulescentem quæro, in his regionibus ubi habitat.  
(Pl. Trin. 873.)

Cum de re agitur aut quid factum sit in dubium venit, aut quid fiat, aut quid sit futurum. (Quint. 7. 2. 2.)

Rogitant me ut valeam, quid agam, quid rerum geram.  
(Pl. Aul. 117.)

A senatu quanti fiam, minime me pœnitet. (C. Att. 1. 20.) 1760

Nosces tu illum actutum, qualis sit, (Pl. Bac. 786.)

Earum, si placet, causarum quanta quamque sit justa unaquæque, videamus. (C. Sen. 5.)

*Continued on p. 334.*

4. A direct question (or exclamation) is put in the indicative mood (unless it concerns what some one is to do, not what he is or was doing: see § 1610).

Quam mox licet te compellare, Dæmones? (Pl. Rud. 1227.)

Ut valet? ut meminit nostri? (Hor. Ep. 1. 3. 12.)

Quid tergiversamur, Epicure? sunt hæc tua verba, necne?

(C. T. D. 3. 18.)

Atticus. "Qui sermo fuit? quid actum est?" Cicero. "Scribam ad te, quum certum sciam."

Hæc honesta quæ dico, suapte natura per se sunt expetenda. Indicant pueri, in quibus ut in speculis natura cernitur. Quanta studia decertantium sunt! ut illi efferuntur lætitia, cum vicerunt! ut pudet victos! ut se accusari nolunt! quam cupiunt laudari!

(C. Fin. 5. 22.)

In conversational or animated language a question is often put, logically though not grammatically dependent on another verb or sentence, e.g. on such expletives as *dic mihi, loquere, cedo, responde, expedi, narra, vide; rogo, volo scire, fac sciam; viden, audin, scin; &c.* So frequently in Plautus and Terence, even where later writers would make the question dependent and use the subjunctive. (Compare English 'Tell me, where are you?' 'Tell me where you are.') Cf. §§ 1605, 1607.

Dic, ubi ea nunc est, obsecro? (Pl. Bac. 203.)

Cedo, quoque puerum hic adposisti? dic mihi. (Ter. Andr. 763.)

Dic, quæso, num te illa terrent, triceps apud inferos Cerberus, Cocyti fremitus, trajectio Acherontis? (C. T. D. 1. 5.)

Quid illi esse morbi dixeras, narra, senex? Num larvatust aut cernitus, fac sciam? (Pl. Men. 889.)

Habe modo bonum animum. BA. Quæso, qui possum, doce, bonum animum habere, qui te ad me adducam domum? (Pl. Ps. 866.)

Nimis velim, certum qui id faciat mihi, ubi Ballio hic leno habitat?

(Pl. Pseud. 599.)

Scire volo, quoi reddidisti? (Pl. Curc. 543.)

Quis ego sum saltem, si non sum Sosia? te interrogo.

(Pl. Amph. 282.)

Rogo vos, iudices, num si iste disertus est, ideo me damnari oportet?

(Vatin. ap. Sen. Rhet. Contr. 7. 4, § 6.)

Continued on p. 385

Expecto quam mox recipiat sese Geta. (Ter. Ph. 606.)

Mirum quantum illi viro nuntianti hæc fidei fuerit. (L. 1. 16.)

Incredibile est quam ego ista non curem. (C. Att. 13. 23.)

Illa quidem piget dicere, his armis quindecim quam ludibrio fueritis  
superbiæ paucorum, quam fæde quamque inulti perierint  
vostri defensores. (Sall. J. 31, § 2.)

Vide quam iniquos sis præ studio. (Ter. And. 825.)

176a

‘In dispositione argumentorum tu mihi semper deus videri soles.’  
‘Vide quam sim’ inquit ‘deus in isto genere, Catule.’

(C. Or. 2. 42.)

Hic vide quam me sis usurus æquo. (C. Verr. 5. 59.)

Videte, ut hoc iste correxerit. (C. Verr. 1. 45.)

Quid fuit causæ, cur in Africam Cæsarem non sequerere, cum præ-  
sertim belli pars tanta restaret? (C. Phil. 2. 29.)

In curiam compelluntur incerti, quatenus Volo exerceret victoriam.  
(L. 2. 55.)

Legatos speculari jusserunt, num sollicitati animi sociorum ab rege  
Perseo essent. (L. 42. 19.)

‘Læter’ ait ‘doleamne geri lacrimabile bellum, in dubio est.’

176b

(Ov. M. 8. 44.)

Hoc doce, doleam, necne doleam, nihil interesse. (C. T. D. 2. 12.)

Tantum id interest, veneritne eo itinere ad urbem, an ab urbe in  
Campaniam redierit. (L. 26. 11.)

Quid quaeris? Perisse omnia aiebat, quod haud scio an ita sit.

(C. Att. 14. 1.)

Qui scis an tibi istuc prius eveniat quam mihi? (Pl. Most. 58.)

Dī me perdant, si te flocci facio, an periisses prius. (Pl. Trin. 150.)

(b) *Sentences with forsitan (fors sit an), and some with quin, fall strictly under the head of dependent questions.*

Forsitan aliquis dicat aut Veis sacra nos facturos aut huc inde  
missuros sacerdotes nostros qui faciant. (L. 5. 52.)

Concedo: forsitan aliquis aliquando ejusmodi quippiam fecerit.

(C. Verr. 2. 31.)

Quid? illa quæ forsitan ne sentiamus quidem, quanta sunt!

(C. Verr. 2. 3.)

*Continued on p. 336.*

Quid mihi dicent aut quam causam reperient? demiror.

(Ter. Ph. 234.)

Vide, num ejus color pudoris signum usquam indicat? (Ter. And. 878.)

At enim scin', quid mi in mentem venit? (Pl. Ps. 538.)

Viden, egestas quid negoti dat homini misero male? (Pl. Trin. 847.)

Ergomecastor pulcher est: vide, cesaries quam decet! (Pl. Mil. 64.)

Viden, limulis, obsecro, ut contuantur! (Pl. Bac. 1130.)

Cor dolet, quom scio, ut nunc sum atque ut fui! (Pl. Most. 149.)

Circumspicedum, numquis est sermonem nostrum qui aucupet?

(Pl. Most. 472.)

Opta ocius, rapin' te optorto collo mavis an trahi? Utrumvis opta, dum licet. (Pl. Rud. 854.)

5. *Relative definitions are liable to be confused with dependent questions.* Scio quid quæras, 'I know your question.' Scio quod quæris, 'I know the answer to your question.' Scio quantum tu scis, 'I know as much as you.' Scio quantum tu scias, 'I know how much you know.' Dico quod sentio, 'I say what I mean' = 'I mean what I say.' Dico quid sentiam, 'I give you my opinion.' Utrum placet, roga, 'Put whichever question you like.' Utrum placeat, roga, 'Ask which is approved.'

Senes omnia quæ curant meminerunt, vadimonia constituta, qui sibi, cui ipsi debeant. (C. Sen. 7.)

Ausculda paucis, et, quid te ego velim et tu quod quæris, scies.

(Ter. Andr. 536.)

Quid concupiscas, tu videris: quod concupiveris, certe habebis.

(Antonius ap. Cic. Phil. 5. 12.)

*Such as the following may be taken as relative:* (§§ 1653, 1655): 1765

Audin, quæ loquitur? (Pl. Mil. 1222.)

Metuo ne persentiscat, aurum ubi est absconditum. (Pl. Aul. 63.)

Tacædum parumper: nam concorepuit ostium: videamus qui hinc egreditur. (Pl. Men. 349.)

Mirumst facinus, quomodo hæc hinc huc transire potuit.

(Pl. Mil. 877.)

Nunc quam rem oratum huc veni, primum proloquar. (Pl. Amph. 50.)

Sed, huc qua gratia te accersi jussi, ausculda. (Ter. Eun. 99.)

6. *Forsitan is (chiefly in the poets and later writers) sometimes put with indicative, as if it were the same as fortasse.* 1767

Sed ita forsitan decuit cum foederum raptore duce et populo deos ipsos committere bellum. (L. 21. 40.)

Forsitan hæc aliquis, nam sunt quoque, parva vocabit. (Ov. Rem. 419.)

Forsitan, infelix, ventos undasque timebas. (Ov. Fast. 2. 97.)

*Continued on p. 387.*

Quid est causæ quin coloniam in Janiculum possint deducere? 1768  
(C. Agr. 2. 27.)

Alterum dici non potest, quin ii qui nihil metuant, nihil angantur,  
nihil concupiscant, beati sint. (C. T. D. 5. 7.)

Non est dubium, quin, si quis animadverterit, quid sit, qua re alii  
melius, quam alii, dicant, id possit notare. (C. Or. 2. 8.)

Neque Cæsarem fefellit quin ab iis cohortibus, quæ contra equita-  
tum in quarta acie collocatæ essent, initium victoriæ oriretur.  
(Cæs. C. 3. 94.)

Orgetorix mortuus est: neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitran-  
tur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit. (Cæs. G. 1. 4.)

Id tibi suscensui, quia te negabas credere argentum mihi. DOR.  
Mirum quin tibi ego crederem. (Pl. Pers. 433.)

(c) *A question simply repeated in astonishment, &c. by the hearer* 1770  
*is similarly put in the subjunctive, if dependent on an interrogative*  
*pronoun.* (Comp. § 1618.)

Quid nunc faciundum censes? TR. Ego quid censeam? cape, ob-  
secro hercle, una cum eo iudicem. (Pl. Most. 556.)

Quid ergo narras? AN. Quid ego narrem? opera tua ad restim  
mihi quidem res redit planissime. (Ter. Ph. 685.)

Dixin' hoc fore? Quid fecit? DE. Quid ille fecerit? quem neque  
pudet quicquam nec metuit quemquam. (Ter. Ad. 83.)

Ehem, Demea, haud aspexeram te: quid agitur? DE. Quid agatur?  
vostram nequeo mirari satis rationem. (Ter. Ad. 374.)

*In some expressions, especially with nescio quis, &c. the fact of the action is asserted in the indicative, and the verb belonging to the dependent question is omitted. (Nescio quis = 'some one or other.') Comp. mirum quantum, §§ 1647, 1760.*

Venit eecum Calidorus: ducit nescioquem secum simul.

(Pl. Ps. 698.)

Nescio quoja vox ad auris mi advolavit. (Pl. Merc. 864.)

Scis meam fortunam nescio quo modo facile obtrectatores invenire, non meo quidem mehercules merito; sed quanti id refert, si tamen fato nescio quo accidit? (Vatin. ap. C. Fam. 5. 9.)

Minimæ assentior iis, qui istam nescio quam indolentiam magno opere laudant, quæ nec potest ulla esse, nec debet. (C. T. D. 3. 6.)

Acutæ crebræque sententiæ ponentur, et nescio unde ex abdito erutæ.

(C. Or. 24.)

7. *A reply often puts interrogatively or admiratively some of the words of the other speaker. The mood is not changed (except under § 1618 or § 1770), but the person or pronoun is changed if necessary. Frequently autem accompanies the reply.*

Ca. Attuli hunc. Ps. Quid? attulisti? Ca. Adduxi, volui dicere.

(Pl. Pseud. 711.)

Ac. Tuus pater— Ch. Quid meus pater? Ac. Tuam amicam. Ch. Quid eam? Ac. Vidit. Ch. Vidit? vae misero mihi.

(Pl. Merc. 180.)

Quæso edepol te, exsurge: pater advenit. Ca. Tuus venit pater?

Jube eum abire rursum. (Pl. Most. 376.)

Eademst mihi lex: metuo credere. Ps. Credere autem?

(Pl. Pseud. 304.)

Numquam credidi fore, ut ille hac viva posset animum inducere uxorem habere. Pa. Habere autem? Ph. Eho tu, an non habet?

(Ter. Hec. 100.)



## (H) Subjunctive because dependent on another subjunctive or infinitive.

Subordinate sentences are often found with the verb in the subjunctive, not because of any special meaning (*e.g.* a non-real condition, a command, purpose, concession, &c.) which the verb has to express, but because they are stated not as a fact but as part of a thought. The principal sentence which they qualify has its verb in the infinitive or subjunctive. (If the subordinate sentence would in any case have had the subjunctive, even though the principal sentence had the indicative or imperative, it is not referred to this head, but to the head suitable to the special meaning.)

The following are typical instances :

1. *Dicit eos qui boni sint beatos esse.*
2. *Petit, ut ille qui adfuerint credamus.*  
*Malim, quæ non desideres audias.*

The subjunctive expresses an action qualifying another supposed, or abstractly conceived, action, *i.e.* in sentences forming an essential part of an infinitive or subjunctive sentence, and neither expressing an independent declaration of facts, nor simply definitive of existing persons or things or classes.

N.B. To this head belongs the substitution of the subjunctive for the indicative, when a speech or thoughts are reported.

These sentences are chiefly relative, or introduced by *si*, *cum*, *dum*, or *quod*.

1. *Subjunctive, because dependent on infinitive.*

1776

For the distinctive use of tenses, see § 1527.

*Jam mihi videor navasse operam, quod huc venerim.* (C. Or. 2. 7.)

*Sapiens non dubitat, si ita melius sit, migrare de vita.* (C. Fin. 1. 19.)

*Se quisque hostem ferire, murum ascendere, conspici, dum tale facinus faceret, properabat.* (Sall. C. 7.)

*Hoc video, dum breviter voluerim dicere, dictum esse a me paullo obscurius.* (C. Or. 1. 41.)

*Continued on p. 340.*

# Indicative although dependent on a subjunctive or infinitive.

The use of the subjunctive mood in sentences subordinate to a principal clause which has the subjunctive or infinitive is carefully restricted, so as not to throw an air of unreality about what is intended to be stated as fact. There are indeed many sentences in which it matters not whether the subordinate clause retain the indicative, and thus state a thing as it appears to all, or whether the subjunctive be used so as to state the same fact as part of the thought of the speaker or some one else. But there are other sentences where what is a fact is to be stated as such, and then the indicative must be used. Especially frequent in this way is the indicative with *ut*, '*as*,' and *dum* when simply meaning '*while*.' Obviously in these cases a subjunctive might suggest a wrong meaning, *e. g.* a purpose or consequence or proviso.

The following are typical instances :

1. *Dicit quosdam, qui revera mali sunt, bonos esse.*
2. *Petit ut quibusdam, qui nunquam adfuerunt, credamus.*  
*Malim, id quod non desideras, hæc audias.*

*The indicative is regularly found where the sentence, grammatically dependent on a subjunctive or infinitive sentence, contains an independent declaration of fact, and frequently in other sentences, which express simple definitions or qualifications.*

1. *Indicative, although dependent on infinitive.*

1777

*Apud Hypanim fluvium, qui ab Europæ parte in Pontum influit, Aristoteles ait bestiolas quasdam nasci, quæ unum diem vivant.*

(*C. T. D. 1. 39.*)

*Eloquendi vis efficit, ut et ea, quæ ignoramus, discere, et ea, quæ scimus, alios docere possimus.* (*C. N. D. 2. 59.*)

*Putasne posse facere, ut, quæ Verres nefarie fecerit, ea æque acerba et indigna videantur esse his, qui audient, atque illis visa sunt, qui senserunt?* (*C. Cæcil. 12.*)

*Continued on p. 341.*

Dolum malum Aquillius tum teneri putat, cum aliud sit simulatum, aliud actum. (C. N. D. 3. 30.)

Nos quidem hoc sentimus: si exploratum tibi sit, posse te illius regni potiri, non esse cunctandum; si dubium sit, non esse conandum. (C. Fam. 1. 7, § 7.)

Philosophos ego existimo, etiam si qui ipsi rem publicam non gesserint, tamen, quoniam de republica multa quæsierint et scripserint, functos esse aliquo reipublicæ munere. (C. R. P. 1. 7.)

Negant intueri lucem esse fas ei, qui a se hominem occisum esse fateatur. (C. Mil. 3.)

Non enim is sum, qui, quicquid videtur, tale dicam esse, quale videatur. (C. Ac. 2. 7.)

2. *Subjunctive, because dependent on subjunctive; (usually on one which expresses an hypothesis, condition, purpose, result, or reported speech.)* 1773

Si luce quoque canes latrent, quum deos salutatum aliqui venerint, crura, opinor, eis suffringantur, quod acres sint etiam tum, quum suspitio nulla sit. (C. Rosc. Am. 20.)

Rex mittit: si videatur, ut Verres reddat. (C. Verr. 4. 29.)

Fraus fidem in parvis sibi præstruit, ut, quum operæ pretium sit, cum mercede magna fallat. (L. 28. 42.)

In Hortensio memoria fuit tanta, quantam in nullo cognovisse me arbitror, ut, quæ secum commentatus esset, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, quibus cogitavisset. (C. Brut. 88.)

Sic perpersio ceterorum facit, ut ea, quæ acciderint, multa minora, quam quanta sint existimata, videantur. (C. T. D. 3. 24.)

Sic enim mihi perspicere videor, ita natos esse nos, ut inter omnes esset societas quædam, major autem, ut quisque proxime accederet. (C. Læl. 5.)

Non committam, ut dum vereare tu ne sis ineptus, me esse judices. (C. Or. 2. 4.)

Erant multi, qui quamquam non ita se rem habere arbitrarentur, tamen libenter id, quod dixi, de illis oratoribus prædicarent. (C. Or. 2.)

Facturusne operæ pretium sim, si a primordio urbis res populi Romani perscripserim nec satis scio, nec, si sciam, dicere ausim. (L. præf.)

Ita mihi salvam rempublicam sistere liceat, ut moriens feram mecum spem, mansura in vestigio suo fundamenta reipublicæ quæ jecero. (Augustus apud Suet. *Aug.* 28.)

Hæc fieri, ut memoro, facile hinc cognoscere possis. (Lucr. 4. 749.)

Id ut ne fiat, uno modo arbitror caveri posse, si effectum erit, ne possitis rebellare. (L. 84. 17.)

Quicquid his annis libidine, quicquid fraude, quicquid scelere peccatum est, ex illo uno sacrario scitote ortum esse. (L. 39. 16.)

Vos quoque æquum est, quæ vestra munia sunt, quo quisque loco positus erit, quod imperabitur, impigre præstare. (Ib.)

2. *Indicative, although dependent on subjunctive.*

1779

Mors si timeretur, non L. Brutus arcens eum reditu tyrannum, quem ipse expulerat, in prælio concidisset. (C. T. D. 1. 37.)

Si hæc contra ac dico essent omnia, tamen, &c. (C. Verr. 4. 6.)

Ego omnibus, unde petitur, hoc consilii dederim. (C. Fam. 7. 11.)

Illud quidem statim curatur, ut quicquid cælati argenti fuit in illius bonis, ad istum deferatur. (C. Verr. 2. 19.)

Orator surripiat oportet imitationem, ut is, qui audiet, cogitet plura quam videat. (C. Or. 2. 59.)

Eum, qui palam est adversarius, facile cavendo vitare possis. (C. Verr. 1. 15.)

'Ne nihil remissum dicatis, remitto,' inquit Papirius, 'ne utique dorsum demulceatis, quum ex equis descendetis.' (L. 9. 16, § 16.)

Vos hortor, ut quodcumque militum contrahere poteritis, contrahatis et eodem veniatis quam primum. Arma quæ ad me missuri eratis, iis censeo armetis milites, quos vobiscum habetis. (Cn. Pompeius ap. C. Att. 8. 12 A.)

Quotus enim quisque philosophorum invenitur, qui sit ita moratus, ut ratio postulat? (C. T. D. 2. 4.)

Servus est nemo, qui non, quantum audet et quantum potest, conferat ad salutem voluntatis. (C. Cat. 4. 8.)

Existet autem hoc loco quædam quæstio subdificilis, num quando amici novi, digni amicitia, veteribus sint antepondi, ut equis vetulis teneros antepondere solemus. (C. Læl. 19.)

Cur paupertas aliarum sub hac legis specie latet, ut, quod habere non possunt, habituræ, si liceret, fuisse videantur? (L. 34. 4, § 14.)

Sub idem tempus consules, cum quoad viam colles obliqui dederunt ascendissent, flexere iter, &c. (L. 38. 22.)

## CHAPTER XXIV.

## OF REPORTED SPEECH.

THE use of the infinitive and subjunctive in reports of speeches <sup>1780</sup> and thoughts deserves collective notice.

When a statement is directly made, a question directly put, or a supposition directly expressed, the *language* is said to be *direct* (*oratio recta*). So also in a report which preserves the independent form in which the speech, &c. was delivered as, *Cæsar said: I am about to march*, &c.

When a statement, question, or supposition is reported in a form which makes it dependent in construction on some such words as *said*, the language is said to be oblique or indirect (*oratio obliqua*); thus, *Cæsar said that he was about to march*.

(A) The moods used in the *oratio obliqua* are the infinitive <sup>1781</sup> and subjunctive, never (unless by an irregularity) the indicative.

1. All statements in principal sentences in the indicative mood in the *oratio recta* become infinitives in the *oratio obliqua* (§§ 1351, 1352). Those relative sentences in which *qui*=*et is* or *nam is*, *quum*=*et tum*, &c. (being not really subordinate sentences) are put in the infinitive (§ 1794).

2. Questions in the indicative mood in *oratio recta*, are, if <sup>1782</sup> closely dependent on a verb of asking, put in the subjunctive, being in fact ordinary indirect questions (§ 1758); but if they are part of the continuous report of a speech, they are put in the infinitive, if of the first or third person<sup>1</sup>; in the subjunctive, if of the second person<sup>1</sup>.

e.g. *Quid facio?* becomes *quid (se) facere?*

*Quid facis?* becomes *quid (ille) faceret?*

*Quid facit?* becomes *quid (illum) facere?*

(But *rogavit, quid (ipse, ille, &c.) faceret* for all alike.)

3. All subordinate sentences (§ 1736), as also all sentences in <sup>1783</sup> the subjunctive and imperative moods in *oratio recta*, are put in the subjunctive (comp. § 1606), with few exceptions, viz.:

<sup>1</sup> Exceptions are rare, and are chiefly due to the sentence being conceived as a dependent interrogative. Liv. 7. 15, 'sequeretur'; 5. 2, 'facturi essent'; Cæs. C. 1. 32, 'passus esset'; Tac. A. 11. 19, 'conciaret'; 13. 42, 'paravisset'; 4. 4, 'loqueretur'; H. 4. 69, 'peteretur.'

<sup>2</sup> But except Liv. 45. 19, 'petiturum'; 6. 39, 'æstimaturos.'

(a) The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive in the apodosis to a <sup>1784</sup> conditional sentence, are (in *oratio obliqua*) expressed in the active voice by the future participle with *fuisset*: in the passive, by the periphrasis *futurum fuisset ut* (§ 1790). The future participle with *esse* is used also for the present (and sometimes for the imperfect) active; and *fore* or *futurum esse ut* for the present (and sometimes for the imperfect) passive.

(b) Occasionally short relative clauses are attracted into the infinitive: (compare §§ 1269, 1677).

Scribebant, ut feras quasdam mitescere arte, sic immitem et implacabilem ejus viri animum esse. (L. 33. 45.)

Admonemus cives nos eorum esse et, si non easdem opes habere, eandem tamen patriam incolere. (L. 4. 3, § 3.)

Affirmavi quidvis me potius perperurum, quam ex Italia ad bellum ante exiturum. (C. Fam. 2. 16.)

Rex supra Coclites Muciosque dicere id facinus esse, et præ se ferre, quemadmodum, si non dedatur Clælia obses, pro rupto fœdus se habiturum, sic deditam intactam inviolatamque ad suos remissurum. (L. 2. 13.)

(c) Sentences with *dum* sometimes (in poets, &c.) retain the indicative.

Dic hospes Spartæ nos te hic vidisse jacentes dum sanctis patriæ legibus obsequimur. (ap. C. T. D. 1. 42.)

Id se narrat sollerti furtim, dum traditur, astu supposita cepisse manu. (Ov. M. 4. 775.)

(B) 1. The tenses of the infinitive are present, or perfect, or <sup>1785</sup> future according as the time would have been present, past, or future in the *oratio recta*.

2. The tenses of the subjunctive are usually secondary, viz. imperfect and pluperfect, especially in commands or questions; but the present and perfect are sometimes used, especially if the verb on which the whole *oratio obliqua* depends be in the present.

(C) In ordinary historical accounts no other *person* than the <sup>1786</sup> third can in general be used. Thus

1. Instead of pronouns of the 1st or 2nd persons, the pronouns *eo*, *suus*, *ipse*, *is*, *ille*, in the requisite cases are used.

The pronouns *hic*, *this near me*, and *iste*, *that near you*, are rarely found in *oratio obliqua*.

(*Nos* and *noster* are sometimes used by Cæsar of the Roman people or Roman army generally.)

2. All finite verbs are put in the third person.

The following tabular statement of the above may be useful: 1787

(A) *Mood: Principal sentences.*

	<i>Oratio Recta.</i>	<i>Oratio Obliqua.</i>
<i>Statements</i>	Indicative	Infinitive
	Subjunctive (hypothesis)	In active, future part. with <i>fuisset</i> , or sometimes (for present or imperfect) <i>esse</i> . In passive <i>futurum fuisset</i> , <i>ut</i> , &c., or sometimes (for present or imperfect) <i>fore</i> or <i>futurum esse, ut, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Questions</i>	{ Indicative { 1st & 3rd pers. { 2nd pers.	Infinitive
	Subjunctive	Subjunctive
<i>Commands or Prohibitions</i>	Imperative }	Subjunctive
	Subjunctive }	

*Subordinate sentences.*

Indicative }	Subjunctive
Subjunctive }	

(B) *Tense.*

	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Present }	Imperfect, sometimes
Future }	Present
Completed Future }	Pluperfect, sometimes
Perfect }	Perfect
Imperfect }	Imperfect
Pluperfect { ordinary	Pluperfect
{ hypothetical	Future participle with <i>fuero</i>
	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Present	Present
Future	Fut. part. with <i>esse</i>
Completed Future }	
Perfect }	Perfect
Imperfect }	
Pluperfect }	

(C) *Person.*

ego, meus, tu, tuus, iste,  
is, ille

hic, nunc, often by

se, ipse, suus, (usually)  
of the subject of the  
sentence: is, ille, of  
what is not the sub-  
ject

ille, tum, tunc

The above rules will be best illustrated by the following <sup>1788</sup> extracts:

ORATIO RECTA.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvetii ubi tu eos constitueris atque esse volueris: sin bello persequi perseverabis, reminiscitor et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus es, cum ii qui flumen transierant suis auxilium ferre non poterant, ne ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtuti tribueris aut nos despexeris. Nos ita a patribus majoribusque nostris didicimus ut magis virtute, quam dolo contendamus aut insidiis nitamur. Quare ne commiseris ut hic locus ubi constitimus ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen capiat aut memoriam prodat.

Eo mihi minus dubitationis datur quod eas res quas vos (legati Helvetii) commemoravistis memoria teneo: atque eo gravius fero quo minus merito populi Rom. acciderunt; qui si alicujus injuriæ sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavere: sed eo deceptus

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

(Is ita cum Cæsare egit): Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios ubi eos Cæsar constitueret atque esse voluisset: sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii qui flumen transissent suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suæ magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret: se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute, quam dolo contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret ut is locus ubi constitissent ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

(His Cæsar ita respondit:) Eo <sup>1789</sup> sibi minus dubitationis dari quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent memoria teneret atque eo gravius fero quo minus merito populi Rom. accidissent: qui si alicujus injuriæ sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod



## ORATIO RECTA.

*est*, quod neque commissum a se intelligebat quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putabat. Quod si veteris contumeliæ oblivisci volo, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod *me* invito iter per provinciam per vim temptastis, quod Hæduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexastis memoriam deponere possum? Quod *vestra* victoria tam insolenter gloriamini quodque tam diu *vos* impune injurias tulisse admiramini eodem pertinet. Consuperunt enim *dii* immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiore interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum *hec* ita sint, tamen si obsides a *vobis mihi* dabuntur, uti ea quæ pollicemini facturos intelligam, et si Hæduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciatis, *vobiscum* pacem faciam.

## ORATIO OBLIQUA.

neque commissum a se intelligeret quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliæ oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod *eo* invito iter per provinciam per vim temptassent, quod Hæduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent memoriam deponere posse? Quod *sua* victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu *se* impune injurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Consuperse enim *deos* immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiore interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum *ea* ita sint, tamen si obsides ab *iis sibi* dentur, uti ea quæ polliceantur facturos intelligat, et si Hæduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, *sese* cum *iis* pacem esse facturum.

Cæs. G. I. 13, 14.

*Rem male egit natura*, quod cervis et cornicibus vitam diuturnam, quorum id nihil interest, hominibus, quorum maxime interfuit, tam exiguum vitam dedit: quorum si ætas potuisset esse longinquior, omnibus perfectis artibus, omni doctrina, hominum vita erudita esset.

Theophrastus moriens *accusasse naturam* dicitur, quod cervis et cornicibus vitam diuturnam, quorum id nihil interesset, hominibus, quorum maxime interfuisset, tam exiguum vitam dedisset: quorum si ætas potuisset esse longinquior, *futurum fuisse* ut omnibus perfectis artibus, omni doctrina, hominum vita erudiretur.

Cic. T. D. III. 28, § 69.

ORATIO RECTA.

Quid  
*est* levius aut turpius quam  
auctore hoste de summis rebus  
capere consilium?

Deorum immortalium benigni-  
tate, *meis* consiliis, patientia mi-  
litum Veis jam *erunt* in potestate  
populi Romani: quid de præda  
faciendum *censetis*?

Quod vero ad amicitiam po-  
puli Romani *adtulerint*, id iis  
eripi quis pati possit?

Ara *est* in vestibulo templi  
Laciniae Junonis, cujus cinis  
nullo unquam *movetur* vento.

*Regitur* mundus numine deo-  
rum: est quasi communis urbs  
et civitas hominum et deorum...  
ex quo illud natura *consequitur*  
ut, &c.

*Jacent* tamdiu irritæ actiones  
quæ de *nostris* commodis ferun-  
tur, cum interim de sanguine  
ac supplicio suo *lata* lex con-  
festim exercetur. (*Comp.* §§ 1174,  
1471.)

See also Cæs. Gall. I. 17, 18, 20, 31, 35, 36, 40, 44, 45. *Civ.*  
I. 9. *Cic. Mil.* 35. *Lal.* 10. *Liv.* I. 50, 53; IV. 2; V. 20. *Tacit.*  
*Ann.* XIII. 43; XIV. 1.

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

(Tribuni militum nihil temere <sup>1791</sup>  
agendum existimabant:) Quid  
*esse* levius aut turpius quam  
auctore hoste de summis rebus  
capere consilium?

Cæs. G. v. 28.

(Litteras ad senatum misit,) <sup>1792</sup>  
deum immortalium benignitate,  
*suis* consiliis, patientia militum  
Veis jam *fore* in potestate po-  
puli Romani: quid de præda  
faciendum *censerent*?

Liv. 5. 20.

(Dixit)...Quod vero ad ami- <sup>1793</sup>  
citiam populi Rom. *adtulissent*,  
id iis eripi quis pati posset?

Cæs. G. I. 43.

(Fama est) *aram esse* in ves- <sup>1794</sup>  
tibulo templi Laciniae Junonis,  
cujus (=et ejus) cinerem nullo  
unquam *moveri* vento.

Liv. 24. 3.

Mundum censent regi numine <sup>1795</sup>  
deorum *eumque esse* quasi com-  
munem urbem et civitatem homi-  
num et deorum...ex quo illud  
natura *consequi* ut, &c.

Cic. *Fin.* 19.

(Ægerrime id plebs ferebat:) <sup>1796</sup>  
*jacere* tam diu irritas actiones  
quæ de *suis* commodis *ferrentur*  
cum interim de sanguine ac  
supplicio suo *latam* legem con-  
festim exerceri. *Liv.* 4. 51.

*When an indicative mood is found in the midst of oratio obliqua, 1797 it expresses an assertion of the narrator, not of the person whose speech is being reported; as*

Cæsar per exploratores certior factus est, ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse. (Cæs. G. 3. 2.)

*(The clause quam Gallis concesserat is Cæsar's explanation for the benefit of his readers: the scouts would describe it to him by the local relations.)*

Interim Cæsari nuntiatur Sulmonenses, quod oppidum a Corfinio VII. milium intervallo abest, cupere ea facere quæ vellet, sed a Q. Lucretio senatore et Attio Peligno prohiberi, qui id oppidum VII. cohortium præsidio tenebant. (Cæs. G. 1. 18.)

Diogenes quidem Cynicus dicere solebat Harpalum, qui temporibus illis prædo felix habebatur, contra deos testimonium dicere, quod in illa fortuna tam diu viveret. (C. N. D. 3. 34.)

Premebat reum, quod M. Volscius testis exstiterat, se haud multo post quam pestilentia in urbe fuerat, in juventutem grassantem in Subura incidisse. (L. 3. 13.)

Dixit se a conspectu suorum ablatum ex strepitu tamen et clamore sensisse usque ad noctem extractum certamen; nec ad tumulum, quem ipse tenuerat, præ multitudine hostium credere perrumpi potuisse. (L. 4. 41.)

*But this principle is sometimes neglected, and the indicative put 1798 where the subjunctive ought to stand.*

C. Mario magna atque mirabilia portendi hæruspex dixerat: proinde, quæ animo agitabat, fretus dīs ageret. (Sall. J. 63.)

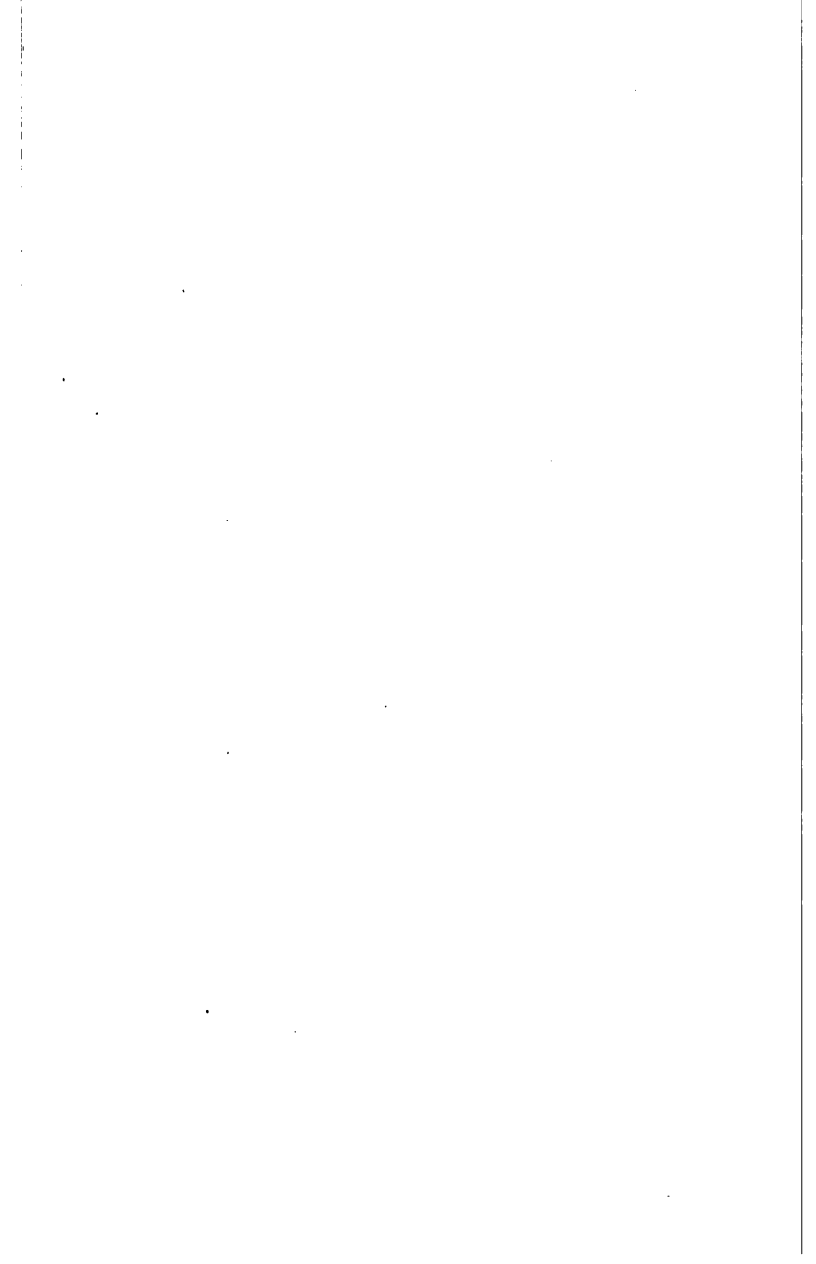
Hortatur ad cetera quæ levia sunt, parem animum gerant.

(Sall. J. 54.)

*(In the speech of Mithridates professedly quoted as in oblique language by Justin from Trogus Pompeius (Just. 38. 4—7), relative clauses are (in Jeep's text) sometimes put in subjunctive, sometimes in indicative, and ipse numeret occurs (4, § 9) for se numerare or sibi numerandum; obruantur (§ 16) for fore ut obruantur; expectat Asia and incussit (7, § 8) for expectare Asiam, incussisse, while other principal verbs are correctly in the infinitive. But the text requires correction. And see now Madvig, Advers. II. 628.)*

## SUPPLEMENT TO SYNTAX.

- I. *Prepositions and quasi-prepositional Adverbs.*
- II. *Conjunctions.*
- III. *Negative particles.*
- IV. *Interrogative particles.*
- V. *Pronouns.*



## 1. PREPOSITIONS AND QUASI-PREPOSITIONAL ADVERBS.

THE following pages contain instances of the use of all 1800  
Latin words which have a prepositional or quasi-prepositional use. All are indeclinable words, and are used in connexion with substantives in a certain case or in certain cases. But there is considerable difference in this respect among them. Some are never used except in such a connexion; others are frequently used independently without any substantive dependent on them; one (*versus*) appears to be scarcely entitled to a place in the list at all, as the accusative case, with which it is sometimes found in connexion, is explicable as an ordinary accusative of the *place towards which*; and almost the same may be said for *usque*. Some are used both with an accusative and ablative, others with one of these cases exclusively; two are used with the genitive, three with the dative, so far as a dative can be considered to belong to a particular word (see § 1132). Again, some of these prepositions are frequently compounded with verbs; others are frequently used with verbs, but the connexion is so loose that it is hardly to be called composition at all. Again, most prepositions are prefixed to the substantive; a few are always postponed; others are occasionally but rarely postponed in prose.

A few particles used only in composition, *viz.* *amb-*; *an-*, *dis-*, *per-*, *red-*, *-secus*; and a few adverbs closely akin to prepositions, *e.g.* *contro*, *intro*, *retro*, *simul*, *simultu*, are also noticed.

i. (a) Prepositions proper; *i.e.* which are never used except 1801  
with a substantive in an oblique case (or in composition).

*ab*, *ad*, *apud*, *cis*, *cum*, *de* (except in phrase *deque usque*), *ex*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *per* (but cf. § 986), *pro* (except in phrase *pro ut*), *sed* (also conjunction), *sine*, *sub*, *ultra*. To these may be added the otherwise peculiar *erga*, *penes*, *tenus*.

(b) Words which have both an adverbial and a prepositional use *i.e.* are used both without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in an oblique case:

*adversus*, *ante*, *circa*, *circiter*, *circum*, *citra*, *clam*, *clanculum*, *contra*, *coram*, *ergo*, *extra*, *infra*, *intra*, *intus*, *juxta*, *palam*, *pone*, *post*, *prae*, *præter*, *procul*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *simul*, *subter*, *super*, *supra*, *ultra*.

ii. (a) Used with accusative and ablative; *in*, *sub*, *super*; and possibly *clam*, *intus*.

(b) Used with accusative only;

*ad*, *adversus*, *ante*, *apud*, *circum*, *circa*, *circiter*, *cis*, *citra*, *clam* (?), *clanculum*, *contra*, *erga*, *extra*, *infra*, *inter*, *intra*, *ob*, *penes*, *per*, *pone*, *post*, *præter*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *supra*, *ultra*.

Of these however some are apparently used with ablatives in certain adverbial expressions: viz.

*adhuc*, *adeo*, *quoad*; *quocirca*.

*antehac* (*antidhac* Plaut.), *antea*; *posthac*, *postea* (*postidea* old), *postilla*, *interea*; *præterea*; *propterea*, *quapropter*:

Compare also *postibi* (Plaut.), *interibi* (Plaut.), *inibi*; *interim*, *deim*, *exim*, *proin*; *abhinc*.

(c) With ablative only; *ab*, *coram*, *cum*, *de*, *ex*, *intus* (?), *palam*, *præ*, *pro*, *procul*, *sed*, *simul*, *sine*.

(d) With accusative and dative; *adversum*, *contra*, *juxta*.

(e) With genitive and ablative; *tenus*.

(f) With genitive only; *ergo*.

iii. (1) Prepositions used in composition (as well as with oblique cases);

*ab*, *ad*, *apud*, *cum*, *de*, *ex*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *per*, *præ*, *pro*, *sed*, *sub*.

(2) Used with verbs, but without clear mark of composition; *ante*, *contra*, *intra*, *post*, *præter*, *subter*, *super*.

Occasionally the preposition is separated from its case by other words. This is usual with *per* in oaths and adjurations; but otherwise is almost confined to poetry.

*Ergo* and *versus* are always subjoined to the substantive; *tenus* to the substantive or its epithet. *Cum* is always subjoined to a personal pronoun, and often to a relative pronoun. Besides these:—

Cicero subjoins *propter* occasionally to personal and relative pronouns, *de*, *contra*, and, once each, *ante*, *circa*, *circum* to relatives.

Vergil occasionally subjoins *circum*, *contra*, *inter*, *juxta*, *penes*, *propter*, *sine*, *subter*, *supra*; and, when an attribute follows, *ab*, *ad*, *ex*, *in*, *per*, *sub*, *ultra*. Lucretius subjoins several times *ex*, *per* and once *ad*, *apud*, besides other instances where an attribute follows; Tacitus sometimes subjoins *apud*, *coram*, *inter*, *intra*, *juxta*, *penes*, *propter*, *simul*, *super*, *ultra*. Other writers have occasional instances, Livy not infrequently; especially after relatives.

Abs, ab, a, also in a few inscriptions *af*; (In Cicero's orations *abs* is frequently found, but before *te* only).

Used only as preposition with ablative case only. Compare, however, *abhinc* (§ 532).

'From,' of the starting-place.

1. 'From,' of place; in matters of movement and distance, literally and metaphorically. 1807

Si qui mihi præsto fuerit cum armatis hominibus extra meum fundum et me introire prohibuerit, non ex eo sed ab eo loco me dejecerit. (C. Cæcin. 30.)

Cadum modo hinc a me huc cum vino transferam. (Pl. Stich. 647.)

Sed foris concrepuit hinc a vicino sene. (Pl. Mil. 154.)

Diogenes, Alexandro rogitante ut diceret si quid opus esset, 'nunc quidem paululum,' inquit, 'a sole.' (C. T. D. 5. 32.)

Primum, irridere ex muro quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio instrueretur. (Cæs. G. 2. 30.)

Suma af Capua Regium milia CCCXXI.

(C. I. R. 551, given in this Grammar, Vol. I. p. 425.)

Ex intestinis autem secretus a reliquo cibo sucus is, quo alimur, permanat ad jecur per quasdam a medio intestino usque ad portas jecoris (sic enim appellantur) ductas et directas vias.

(C. N. D. 2. 55.)

Hæc Janus summus ab imo prodocet. (Hor. Ep. 1. 1. 54.)

Istæ nationes a ceterarum gentium more ac natura dissentiunt.

(C. Fam. 13.)

Non ab re sit quærendi aquas junxisse rationem. (Plin. 31. § 43.)

2. 'From,' of the starting-point in time and reckoning.

Ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis occasum pugnatum est.

(Cæs. G. 3. 14.)

Rem omnem a principio audies. (Ter. And. 48.)

Scipio confestim a prælio expugnatis hostium castris ad naves rediit.

(L. 30. 36.)

Surgit ab his solio ('after these words.' Ov. Met. 3. 273.)

Eodem die tuas litteras vesperi acceperam in Pompeiano, sane celeriter, tertio abs te die. (C. Att. 14. 18.)

His artibus a pueris dediti fuimus. (C. Or. 1. 1.)

Lex a quinquagesimo anno militem non legit, a sexagesimo senatorum non citat. (Sen. Dial. 10. 20.)



## 3. 'From;' of the thing left or shunned.

1809

Aversi a vento parumper consedere. (L. 21. 58.)

Hæc duobus æstatibus gesta conjunxi, quo requiesceret animus a domesticis malis. (Tac. A. 6. 44.)

Neque insidiæ consuli procedebant, et ab incendio intellegebat urbem vigiliis munitam. (Sall. C. 32.)

Elephanti tutum ab hostibus, quacunque incederent, agmen præbebant. (L. 21. 35.)

Neque sustinere se a lapsu potuerunt. (Ib.)

Si ab persequendo hostis deterrire nequiverant, disiectos ab tergo aut lateribus circumveniebant. (Sall. J. 50.)

## 4. 'From,' sometimes 'in consequence of;' of the source.

1810

Illæ in bellis gerendis ab dis immortalibus pacem ac veniam petunt. (C. Font. 13.)

Idque eo fuit mirabilius, quod ab eo laus imperatoria non admodum expectabatur. (C. Acad. 2. 1.)

A quo quidem genere iudices ego numquam timui. (C. Sull. 20.)

Quicquid ab hostibus cladis ignominiaque aut jam acceptum esset aut immineret, culpam penes Mænum fore testati sunt.

(L. 4. 53.)

Hermippi fide pecuniam sumpsit mutuam a Fufiis: a discipulis suis dicebat Fufiis persoluturum. (C. Flac. 20.)

Uxori testamento legat grandem pecuniam a filio, si qui natus esset: ab secundo herede nihil legat. (C. Clu. 12.)

Recte prætor a liberis initium fecit ab intestato successionis, ut, sicuti contra tabulas ipsis defert, ita et ab intestato ipsos vocet. (Ulp. ap. Dig. 38. 6. 1, § 5.)

Id a re, quod nunc quoque tenet nomen, interregnum appellatum. (L. 1. 17.)

Porsinna discedens ab Janiculo castra opulenta Romanis dono dedit, inopi tum urbe ab longinqua obsidione. (L. 2. 14.)

T. Manlium stolidè lætum et linguam ab irrisu exserentem producit. (L. 7. 10.)

Horum nomina non me a nimio favore sed a certo posuisse iudicio scietis, cum sententias eorum retulero.

(Sen. Rhet. Contr. 10, Præf. § 16.)

## 5. 'By,' 'from;' of the agent, especially with verbs in passive voice.

1811

Damippus, missus ab Syracusis ad Philippum regem, captus ab Romanis navibus erat. (L. 25. 23.)

Trebonium meum a te amari teque ab illo pergaudco.

(*C. Q. F. 3. 1, § 3.*)

Animum nostrum indoucimus ita, ut ei ante arbitrabamur, af vobeis peccatum non esse. (*Epist. ad Tiburt, G. I. R. 201.*)

Altero uti voluit, ut virtus audaciam vinceret; altero usus necessario est, ne virtus ab audacia vinceretur. (*C. Sest. 42.*)

Anima calescit ipso ab spiritu. (*C. N. D. 2. 55.*)

*Comp.* Est hominis ingenui et liberaliter educati velle bene audire a parentibus, a propinquis, a bonis etiam viris. (*C. Fin. 3. 17.*)

6. 'From,' 'on the side of;' of the side or department concerned. 1813

Picus et cornix ab læva, corvos parra ab dextera consuadent.

(*Pl. Asin. 260.*)

Jam phalanx a fronte, a lateribus, ab tergo, cæsa est. (*L. 44. 42.*)

Mæcium ab jugulo ita, ut per costas ferrum emineret, terræ affixit. (*L. 8. 7.*)

Renuntiaverunt non eadem esse diligentia ab decumana porta castra munita. (*Cæs. G. 3. 25.*)

Gallia attingit ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum.

(*Cæs. G. 1. 1.*)

Omnia ego istæc facile patior, dum hic hinc a me sentiat. *TR.*  
Atqui nunc a te stat, verum hinc abit testimonium.

(*Pl. Rud. 1100.*)

Nemo contra civium perditorum popularem turbulentamque de-  
mentiam a senatu et a bonorum causa stetit constantius.

(*C. Brut. 79.*)

Multi sunt præterea improbi, quos quidem a se primum numerare  
possunt qui hæc loquuntur. (*C. Phil. 7. 1.*)

Antonius ab equitatu firmus esse dicebatur. (*C. Fam. 10. 15.*)

Militem neque a moribus neque a forma probabat sed tantum  
a viribus. (*Suet. Jul. 65.*)

*So especially of the work assigned to a slave or officer.*

1814

Pollicem servum a pedibus meum Romam misi. (*C. Att. 8. 5.*)

Libertorum præcipue suspexit Polybium ab studiis, qui sæpe inter  
duos consules ambulabat; sed ante omnis Narcissum ab epis-  
tulis et Pallantem a rationibus. (*Suet. Claud. 28.*)

Æacus Menandro liberto suo Claudium tradidit ut a cognitionibus  
esset. (*Sen. Lud. de M. Claud. fin.*)

In composition: (See also §§ 986, 990).

**Ab** before **c, q, t**; **as** before **p**, except **aperire**; **ab** before **d, l, n, r, s, j, h** and vowels; **au** before **f** (but see Vol. I. p. 32 n.), except in **afui, afore**, and perhaps **amigere**; **a** before **m, v**. See § 78.

1. *Separation*: **abscedere**, go away; **abscidere**, cut off; **abscindere**, tear off; **abscondere**, hide away; **abdicare**, cry off, renounce; **abdicere**, assign away; **abdere**, remove, put away, bide; **abducere**, lead away; **aberrare**, wander off; **abesse**, be away; **aufferre**, bear away; **aufugere**, flee away; **abhorrere**, shrink from; **ablicere**, throw aside (also 4); **abigere**, drive away; **abire**, go away; **abjudicare**, take away by judgment; **abjurare**, swear off, abjure; **ablégare**, send away; **ablocare**, let off = sublet; **abluere**, wash off or away; **amandare**, remove; **amittere**, send away, lose; **amoliri**, remove; **amovere**, remove; **abnuere**, reject by nod; **abominari**, put from one as ominous, detest, deprecate; **aspellere**, drive away; **asportare**, carry off; **abrudere**, scrape off; **abripere**, drag off; **abrodere**, gnaw off; **abrogare**, remove by asking the people's consent, i.e. repeal; **abrumpere**, break off; **absillire**, leap away; **absistere**, stand aloof; **absolvere**, loose from, hence, take from the loom, i.e. finish; **abstergere**, wipe away, cleanse by wiping; **absterrere**, frighten off; **abstinere**, keep off, keep from; **abstrahere**, drag away; **abstrudere**, push away, thrust off; **aperire**, get off = uncover; **avellere**, carry off; **avellere**, tear away; **averruncare**, avert; **aversari**, turn oneself away, shun; **avertere**, turn away (hence **aversus**, at the back); **avocare**, call away; **avolare**, fly off.

With words of negative meaning **ab** merely strengthens: **abalienare**, alienate; **abnegare**, refuse; **aspernari**, spurn away, scorn.

2. *Consumption*: **abligurrire**, lick up; **absorbere**, swallow up; **absumere**, consume; **abuti**, use up.

3. *Reversal*: **abjungere**, unyoke; **abolere** trans., **abolescere**, intrans., stop growth; **aboriri**, to sink down, fail.

4. *Down*: **ablicere**, cast down (also § 1). Perhaps here belong (so Key, Lat. Gr. § 1304) **affigere**, throw down; **apponere**, put down; which however are usually regarded as, in all their uses, compounds of **ad**.

5. *Wrongly*: **abortus**, an untimely birth. (**Abuti** seems never to require this meaning; see above 2.)

6. *Abundare*, abound, from **abunde**, in abundance; if ultimately from **unda**, means washing over?

*Absque; with ablative only, 'without.'* Not in Cicero or in 1817 Augustan writers.

1. In Plautus and Terence, only in conditional clauses containing an impersonal *esset* or *foret* (§ 1556). The noun in the ablative is usually a person (me, te, &c.).

Nam apsq̄ue foret te, sat scio in alto distraxissent disq̄ue tulissent satellites tui miserum fœde. (Pl. *Trin.* 832.)

2. In post-Augustan writers (rare).

Post hæc intuendum videtur...an, etiamsi nulla ratione Milo ductus est, impetu raptus sit et absque sententia, nam vulgo dicitur scelera non habere consilium. (Quintil. 7. 44.)

*Ad; used only as preposition with accusative case. 'To, (but not 1818 into).'*

1. (a) 'To:' of a place, person, or thing, as the goal of motion literally and metaphorically.

Cum Fabio maximo quantum consule adolescentulus miles ad Capuam profectus sum, quintoque anno post ad Tarentum. (C. *Sen.* 4.)

Ubi ad Dianæ veneris, ito ad dextram. (Ter. *Ad.* 582.)

Itaque optimum visum est ad Hannibalem mitti legatos. (L. 24. 2.)

Velim domum ad te scribas, ut mihi tui libri pateant. (C. *Att.* 4. 14.)

Has litteras sibi a Lentulo ad Catilinam datas esse dicebat.

(C. *Cat.* 3. 5.)

Eo die invitatus est ad consulem Perseus. (L. 45. 8.)

Dubitabat ille, quod ad fratrem promiserat. (C. *Or.* 2. 7.)

Penes principes erat tota respublica, non provocatione ad populum contra necem et verbera relicta. (C. *R. P.* 2. 37.)

Collis in frontem leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planiciem redibat.

(Cæsar. *G.* 2. 8.)

Inde verso repente in iram luctu, discurrunt ad arma. (L. 25. 37.)

Veniri ad se confestim existimantes, 'ad arma' conclamant.

(Cæsar. *G.* 7. 70.)

Quæ vita maxime est ad naturam, ad eam me refero, ad litteras et studia mea. (C. *Att.* 4. 18.)

Discedentibus mandat, ut omnes ad bellum cogant. (Cæsar. *G.* 2. 8.)

I, lictor, deliga ad palum. (L. 8. 7.)

Nonne videtis rem ad seditionem spectare. (L. 25. 3.)  
 Profundat perdat pereat, nil ad me attinet. (Ter. *Ad.* 134.)

*Usque is rarely interposed between ad and its case.* 1819

Via pejor ad usque Bari mœnia piscosi. (Hor. *S.* 1. 5. 97.)  
 (Before the preposition or after its case *usque* is common.)

(b) 'At,' 'near,' of presence after motion. 1820

Supplicatio juventutis ad ædem Herculis indicta. (L. 21. 62.)  
 Plebes prope ripam Anienis ad tertium miliarium consedit.  
 (C. *Brut.* 14.)  
 Obsistens ad prima signa concitatam repressit aciem. (L. 25. 37.)  
 Ita solet narrare Scævola conchas eos et umbilicos ad Caietam et  
 ad Laurentum legere consuesse. (C. *Or.* 2. 6.)  
 Licinium servum sibi ille habuit ad manum. (C. *Or.* 3. 60.)  
 Nonnumquam etiam ad vinum diserti sint. (C. *Cæl.* 28.)  
 Non solum ad Aristophanis lucernam sed etiam ad Cleanthis lucu-  
 bravi. (Varr. *L.* 5, § 8.)  
 Est in Originibus solitus esse in epulis canere ad tibicinem de claro-  
 rum hominum virtutibus. (C. *T. D.* 1. 2.)

*So of proceedings before an officer or judge.* 1821

Demetrium iterum ad patrem accusavit Perseus. (L. 40. 24.)  
 Nomina dabant ad C. Postumium tribunum militum. (L. 45. 6.)

2. (a) 'To,' of the time, number, or place in a series, up to which one tends. (Compare the adverbs (originally ablatives?) *adhuc*, *adeo*, *quoad*. Some instances in §§ 1657, 1667, 1633.) 1822

Ab hora octava ad vesperum secreto collocuti sumus. (C. *Att.* 7. 8.)  
 Id ipsum scire cupio, quod ad tempus recte ad te scribere possim,  
 id est, quamdiu Romæ futurus sis. (C. *Att.* 5. 5.)

Fere ad quattuor menses a mamma non dijunguntur agni.  
 (Varr. *R.R.* 2. 1. 20.)

Rem integram ad reditum suum jussit esse. (C. *Off.* 2. 23.)  
 Hospes, volo ego hanc percontari. SAC. A terra ad cælum quidlu-  
 bet. (Pl. *Pers.* 604.)

Virgis te ad necem cædi necesse erit. (C. *Verr.* 3. 29.)  
 De amicitia omnes ad unum idem sentiunt. (C. *Læl.* 22.)

Ab quindecim ad sexaginta annos conjurant, nisi victores se non  
 redituros. (L. 26. 25.)

Sane frequentes fuimus; omnino ad cc. (C. *Q. Fr.* 1. 1.)

Eorum, qui circa quæstorium oppressi, pericre ad septingentos tri-  
 ginta. (L. 10. 33.)

*In these expressions of number ad sometimes lost its effect on the case, the whole phrase being treated as declinable.* 1823

Ad mille et septingenti cæsi non plus centum Romanorum socio-  
rumque occisis. (L. 22. 40.)

Occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor reliqui in oppidum rejecti  
sunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 33.)

(b) 'At,' 'on occurrence of.'

1824

Semina concurrunt calidi fulgoris ad ictum. (Lucr. 6. 316.)

En hic est ille terrarum victor in machina pendens et ad periculum  
suum plaudens. (Plin. 36, § 118.)

Ad famam obsidionis dilectus haberi cæptus erat. (L. 9. 7.)

Ad hiemem me ex Cilicia recepi. (C. Fam. 3. 7.)

Ingenti ad postremum edito gemitu fidum e servis vocat. (L. 30. 15.)

Ad hæc tot tam necopinata primo omnium incerti stupentesque  
referunt pedem. (L. 25. 37.)

3. 'In addition to.'

1825

His opinionibus inflato animo, ad hoc vitio quoque ingenii vehemens  
et impotens. (L. 6. 11.)

Si ad cetera vulnera hanc quoque plagam inflixisses auguratus tui.

(C. Vat. 8.)

4. 'Looking at;' hence (a) 'in accordance with.'

1826

Ad cursus Lunæ in duodecim menses describit annum. (L. 1. 19.)

Quæ omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 5.)

Numquam ego dicam, quos sapientis nostri majores indicabant, ad  
istorum normam fuisse sapientis. (C. Læl. 5.)

Fabellæ Latinæ ad verbum e Græcis expressæ. (C. Fin. 1. 2.)

Ad hunc modum institutus est. (C. T. D. 2. 3.)

Carmen reprehendite, quod non præsectum decies non castigavit ad  
unguem. (Hor. A. P. 294.)

(b) 'In reference to.'

1827

Invicti ad laborem corporis fuit. (L. 9. 16.)

Elephanto beluarum nulla prudentior: ad figuram quis vastior?

(C. N. D. 1. 35.)

Addit etiam illud, equites non optimos misisse. Credo, Cæsar, nihil  
ad tuum equitatum, sed misit ex eis, quos habuit, electos.

(C. Dejot. 8.)

Multo igitur mortem minus ad nos esse putandumst. (Lucr. 3. 926.)

Quinetiam, cibo quo utare, interesse aliquid ad mentis aciem putant.

(C. N. D. 2. 16.)

Cum mihi hoc responderis, tum memoriter respondeto ad ea quæ de te ipso rogaro. (C. *Vat.* 4.)

Ad mandata claudus, cæcus, mutus, mancus, debilis. (Pl. *Merc.* 630.)

Ad summam, DIC, M. TVLLI. Adsentior Cn. Pompeio. (C. *At.* 7. 7.)

Nonne ad senem aliquam fabricam fingit? (Ter. *Haut.* 545.)

Tecti esse ad alienos possumus: intimi multa apertiora videant necesse est. (C. *Ro. Am.* 40.)

5 'To,' 'for,' 'for the purpose of'

1828

Quibus enim nihil est in ipsis opis ad bene beateque vivendum, eis omnis ætas gravis est. (C. *Sen.* 2.)

Nondum ad petendum legitima ætas erat. (L. 24. 2.)

Ad colloquium vatem elicit. (L. 5. 15.)

Ad ludibrium regem eum consalutari jussit. (L. 36. 14.)

Inde Romam ad scribendum novum exercitum redit. (L. 5. 19.)

Iis rebus indigebant quæ ad oppugnationem castrorum erant usui. (Cæsar. *C.* 2. 35.)

Neque in omnibus satis est stipulatio aut solutio numerorum ad mutationem domini. (Varr. *R. R.* 2. 1. 15.)

Paucis ad speciem tabernaculis relictis. (Cæsar. *C.* 2. 35.)

Quantam fenestram ad nequitiam patefeceris. (Ter. *Haut.* 481.)

Ille ad omnes ictus expositus non ægre tamen exceptum poplitibus corpus tuebatur. (Curt. 9. 5. 9.)

Comparasti ad lecticam homines. (Catull. 10. 16.)

Servos ad remum, numero ex censu constituto, cum stipendio nostro dabamus. (L. 34. 6, § 13.)

In composition: (See also §§ 985, 986, 990).

1829

Ad is usually assimilated to c and (written o) to q, and the d omitted before gn. But it is often assimilated also to p, f, g, t, n, l, r, and the d omitted before s. For ar- see § 160, 10.

1. Local: 'to' or 'at.' (In English *up* is often used in the general sense of *approach*.)

accēdere, *approach*; accidēre<sup>1</sup>, *cut down*; accidere, *fall to, happen*; accingere, *gird on*; acclinare, *lean on*; accollere, *dwell by*; accrescere,

<sup>1</sup> The meaning *down*, as suggested by Key (see above p. 356, 4), suits these verbs (also *adsidēre*) in some passages exceedingly well; e.g. Ter. *Haut.* 99, *adpone rastros*, but perhaps they belong to 5.

grow on or to; *accubare*, *accumbere*, *lie at*=*sit at table*; *accurrere*, *run up*; *addere* (*throw on*), *add*; *adducere*, *lead to*; *adequitare*, *ride up*; *aderrare*, *wander to*; *adesse*, *be at*, *be present*; *adferre*, *bring to*; *adfigere*, *fix to*; *adfiare*, *blow on*; *adfigere*<sup>1</sup>, *dash to the ground*, *strike against*; *adfluere*, *flow up*; *adfrangere* (Stat.), *break on*; *adfricare* (post-Aug.), *rub on*; *adfulgere*, *shine on*; *adfundere*, *pour on*; *adgerere*, *bring to*, *heap up*; *adglomerare*, *wind on*; *adglutinare*, *glue on*; *adgredi*, *step up to*, *assail*; *adhaerere*, *cling to*; *adhibere* (*bold to*), *apply*; *adiacere*, *lie near*; *adicere*, *throw in*, *add*; *adigere*, *drive in or to*; *adire*, *approach*; *adjungere*, *join to*; *adlabi*, *slip or glide to*; *adlevare*, *lift up* (or to 5?); *adlidere*, *dash against*; *adligare*, *bind to*; *adlinere*, *besmear* (or to 5?); *adlucere*, *shine on*; *adluere*, *wash against*; *admittere*, *let in*; *admovere*, *move towards*; *adnare*, *swim up*; *adnavigare* (Plin.), *sail towards*; *adnectere*, *tie to*; *adniti*, *lean on* (also to 4 or 5); *adnotare*, *note down*, i.e. *against a name or entry*; *adoriri*, *approach*, *attack*; *appellare*, *accost*; *adpellere*, *push on*, *of boats*; *put in to land*; *adplicare*, *put to*; *adponere*<sup>1</sup>, *place near*; *adportare*, *carry to*; *adprimere* (Plin.), *press to*; *adpugnare* (Tac.), *fight against*; *acquiescere*, *rest in*; *adrepere*, *creep up*; *adrigere*, *set up*, *erect*; *adscendere*, *climb up*; *adsequi*, *overtake*; *adserere*, *sow*, *plant near*; *adaldere*, *sit near*; *adallire*, *leap up*; *adstere*, *stand near*; *adspargere*, *sprinkle on*; *adspicere*, *look at*; *adspirare*, *breathe on*; *adstringere*, *bind close*; *adstruere*, *build to*; *adsurgere*, *rise up*; *adstendere*, *stretch towards*; *adterere*, *rub against*; *adtollere*, *lift up*; *adtorquere*, *sawing up*; *adtrahere*, *draw to*; *advehere*, *carry to*; *advenire*, *come to*; *advertere*, *turn to* (hence *adversus*, *in the front*); *advocare*, *summon to*; *advolare*, *fly towards*; *advolere*<sup>1</sup>, *roll to*.

## 2. 'To' or 'at,' in a more general sense of reference:

1831

*acclamare*, *cry or shout at*; *adicioere*, *adjudge*; *adiri*, *speak to*; *adficere*, *affect*; *adfirmare* (Val. Fl.), *roar at*; *adgemere*, *groan in response*; *adhinnire*, *neigh to*; *adjudicare*, *adjudge*; *adlaborare* (Hor.), *labour at*; *adlacrime* (Verg.), *weep at*; *adlitrare*, *bark at*; *alligare*, *despatch*; *adloqui*, *speak to*; *adludiare* (Plaut.), *jest at*; *adludere*, *play upon*; *admetiri*, *measure out*; *admirari*, *wonder at*; *admoenire* (Plaut.), *fortify against*; *admugire*, *low to*; *admurmurare*, *murmur at*; *adnuere*, *nod assent*; *adorare*, *address*; *adornare*, *prepare*; *adparare*, *prepare*; *adparere*, *appear*; *adplaudere*, *clap at*; *adplorare*, *weep at*; *adprecari* (Hor.), *pray to*; *adridere*, *smile on*; *adsentiri*, *assent*; *adservare*, *preserve (for)*; *adsignare*, *assign*; *adsonare*, *sound to*; *adsvescere*, *accustom* (or to 5); *adstrepere*, *sound at*; *adstupere*, *be amazed at*; *adtemperare*, *adjust*; *adtestari*, *bear witness to*; *adtinere*, *belong* (see also 5); *adtonare*, *thunder at*; *adtremere*, *tremble at*; *adtribuere*, *assign*; *adulari*, *flatter upon* (for *adululari*?).



3. 'To oneself.' accipere, take up, receive; accire, call to one as an associate; agnoscere, recognize; adimere, take away; adlāgere, choose into one's own body; adlēcere, entice; adoptare, adopt; adprehendere, lay hold of; adripere, seize; adrogare, appropriate by bill = adopt; adscire, adsciscere, take to oneself by decree; adserere (join to oneself), claim freedom of; adsugere (Lucr.), suck; adsumere, take, take up.

4. 'In addition.' accensere, reckon among; accūdere, stamp in addition; addiscere, learn besides; addocere, teach besides; adesurire, be additionally hungry?; adfingere, invent in addition; adfodere (Plin.), dig in; agnasci, be born into a family; adgravare, make heavier; admiscere, mix in; admonere, remind (or to ?); adnumerare, count in; adpendere, add in weighing; adposcere, ask in addition; adpromittere (Cic.), promise in addition; acquirere, get in addition; adscribere, enrol; adsuere (Hor.), sew in; adtexere, weave in; advivere (Scaev.), live on (i.e. continue to live).

5. Pleonastic or (originally) intensive. adæquare, make level (but cf. § 990); adaggerare, heap up; adaperire, throw open; adaugere, increase; adbibere, drink; accelerare, hasten; accendere, kindle; accredere, yield belief to; accumulare, pile up (or from ad cumulum, § 990); accurare, bestow care on; addecere, befit; addensere, close up; addēdere, eat up; adfirmare, affirm; adhortari, incite; adimplere, fill up; adipisci, attain to; adjurare, swear, adjure (or from ad ius, § 990); adjuvare, help; adlaudare (Plaut.), praise; adlubescere (Plaut.), begin to please; administrare, serve, manage; admoderari (Plaut.), moderate (or from ad modum, § 990); admordere, bite at; admutilare (Plaut.), clip; annuntiare (Plaut.), announce; adolere, pile up?; adolescere, grow up; adoperire, cover up; adpetere, rush at; adprobare, approve; adproperare, hasten on; adradere, scrape at; adrodere, gnaw at; adsectari, attend; adseverare, assert strongly; adsiccare (post-Aug.), dry up; adsidēre, settle; adsimulare, pretend; adsociare (Stat.), associate; assolere, be accustomed; adtentare, strive after; adtenuare, thin (or from ad tenue, § 990; see also 2); adtondere, clip; adtrectare, handle; advellare (Verg.), veil over; adverberare (Stat.), beat; advigilare, watch; adurere, burn; agnoscere, recognize.

6. In the following *ad* is often considered to denote commencement; but they may not improperly be referred to the last head:

adamare, fall in love (chiefly found in tenses from perfect stem and participle; cf. § 1244); addubitare, come to doubt; adopinari, come to think; advesperascere, draw towards evening.

**Adversum, adversus;** used both without a substantive dependent, <sup>1836</sup> and with a substantive in the dative and accusative cases. 'Towards,' 'against.' Plautus and Terence are said always to use the form in -um.

1. 'Turned towards,' 'facing.' **Exadversum, exadversus** also <sup>1837</sup> are used in this sense.

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Priusquam ad portum venias, apud ipsum lacum est pistrilla et exadversum fabrica. (Ter. *Ad.* 583.)

Medicus neque in tenebris neque a capite ægri debet residere, sed illustri loco adversus. (Cels. 3. 6.)

(b) *With dative case.*

Tum facito ante solem occasum ut venias advorsum mihi. <sup>1838</sup>  
(Pl. *Men.* 437.)

Solus nunc eo advorsum ero ex plurimis. (Pl. *Most.* 880.)

Ferre advorsum homini occupemus osculum. (Pl. *Stich.* 89.)

Exadvorsum ei loco tonstrina erat quædam. (Ter. *Pb.* 89.)

(c) *With accusative case.*

<sup>1839</sup>

Regem introductum in tabernaculum adversus advocatos in consilium considerare jussit. (L. 45. 7.)

Gladiis dextris impetum adversus montem in cohortes faciunt.  
(Cæs. *C.* 1. 46.)

Me vestigia terrent, omnia te adversum spectantia, nulla retrorsum.  
(Hor. *Epist.* 1. 1. 75.)

Ara enim Aio Locutio exadversus eum locum consecrata est.  
(C. *Div.* 1. 45.)

Histria cognominata a flumine Histro in Hadriam effluente exadversum Padi fauces. (Plin. 3, § 127.)

Sed nunc peropus est aut hunc cum ipsa aut de illa me advorsum hunc loqui. (Ter. *And.* 265.)

Egone ut te advorsum mentiar, mater mea? (Pl. *Aul.* 682.)

2. 'In reply to,' 'in dealing with,' 'towards;' with accusative <sup>1840</sup> case.

Adversus ea consul respondit. (L. 4. 10.)

Utendum etiam est excusatione adversus eos quos invitus offendas.  
(C. *Off.* 2. 19.)

Cum hæc scribebam, censorem te esse sperabam; eo brevior est epistola, et, ut adversus magistrum morum, modestior.

(C. Fam. 3. 13.)

Cum justo et legitimo hoste res gerebatur, adversus quem et totum jus fetiale et multa sunt jura communia. (C. Off. 3. 29.)

In unica concordia inter ipsos summa adversus alios æquitas erat.

(L. 3. 33.)

3. '*Against;*' (a) **advorsum quam** (*once only*), '*contrary to* 1841 *ubat*' (comp. *contraquam*, *præterquam*).

Utrum indicare me ei thensaurum æquom fuit, advorsum quam ejus me opsecravisset pater? (Pl. Trin. 175.)

(b) *With accusative case.*

1842

Potine ut ne licitere advorsum mei animi sententiam? (Pl. Merc. 441.)

Tu, M. Manli, adversus edictum nostrum extra ordinem in hostem pugnasti. (L. 8. 7.)

Adversus petentem exceptione doli mali defendi debet.

(Gai. 3, § 168.)

Advorsum divitias invictum animum gerebat. (Sall. J. 43.)

Dux repente lectus, in annum creatus, adversus veterem ac perpetuum imperatorem comparabitur. (L. 24. 8, '*matched against.*') 1843

Cecidit Critias, cum quidem exadversus Thrasybulum fortissime pugnaret. (Nep. Thras. 3.)

Quid autem esse duo prospera in tot sæculis bella Samnitium adversus tot decora populi Romani? (L. 7. 32.)

**Amb-, am-, an-;** in composition only; '*around,*' '*on both sides*' 1843 (comp. ἀμφί, ἀμφω, ambo).

**ambēdere** (Plaut.), *eat round*; **ancisus**, *cut around, or at both ends*; **amicdre** (*am jacere?*) *throw round, clutche*; **ambigere** (*act in both ways*), *hesitate*; **ambire**, *go round*; **canvass**; **amplecti**, *fold oneself round*; **amputare**, *lop around, cut off*; **anquirere**, *search round, inquire*; **amsanctus**, *awarded round*; **amburere**, *scorch round*.

**amfr-actus** *a circuit, bend*, perhaps shows another form of the prefix (**ambr-, ampr-** in Umbrian). Key, *Phil. Soc. Trans.* 1868-9, p. 304.

An-<sup>1</sup> (*comp. àvā*); *in composition only*: 'up' *anhelare, pant.* 1844

Ante (*antld, old*); *used both without a substantive dependent, 1845 and with a substantive in the accusative case. 'Before.'*

1. *Of space. 'Before,' 'in front.'*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent; 'in front' (rarely in sense of prorsus, 'forwards').*

Fluvius ab tergo, ante circaque velut ripa præceps oram ejus omnem cingebat. (L. 27. 18.)

Si aut manibus ingrediatur quis, aut non ante, sed retro, fugere se ipse videatur. (C. Fin. 5. 12.)

(b) *With accusative.*

1846

Post me erat Ægina, ante me Megara, dextra Piræus, sinistra Corinthus. (Sulp. ap. C. Fam. 4. 5.)

Ante se statuit funditores. (L. 42. 58.)

Postquam ante ostium me audivit stare, adproperat. (Ter. And. 474.)

Una cohors temere ante ceteras extra aciem procurrerat.

(Cæs. C. 1. 55.)

Ingenii specimen est quoddam transilire ante pedes posita et alia longe repetita sumere. (C. Or. 3. 40.)

2. *'Before,' in time.*

1847

(a) *Without a substantive dependent on it. (For antequam see § 1672.)*

Paucis ante diebus dederam Q. Mucio litteras ad te. (C. Fam. 4. 9.)

Vitia maritimarum urbium ante paulo breviter attigi. (C. R. P. 2. 5.)

Nonne oportuit præscisse me ante? (Ter. And. 239.)

Arcis præsidium ex ante præparato (frumento) sustentari poterat.

(L. 26. 20.)

<sup>1</sup> Key refers to this preposition many other verbs. "Frequently it has the consonant assimilated to that which follows, as in *accumula-*, *addormisc-*, *alleva-*, *ammone-*, *apprehend-*, *acquiesc-*, *arrig-*, *as-*, *sicca-*, *atter-*. Sometimes the consonant is altogether lost, as in *agnosc-*, *ascend-*, more commonly it is attracted into the form of the familiar preposition *ad*, thus changing the dental liquid for a dental mute as in *adaresc-*, *adēd*, *adim-*, *adolesc-*, *adur-*. Not less frequently it is attracted into the form of the familiar preposition *in*, by an easy change of the vowel (so *in-* the negative prefix corresponds to the privative *av*) as in *incip-* or *incipi-*, *inhorre-*, *intumesc-*, *imbu-*, *ignosc-*." The significations assigned to *an* are as various as those of *ava*. (Key, *Lat. Gr.* § 1308, 1-4.)

(b) *With accusative.*

1848

Factus est consul bis, primum ante tempus, iterum sibi suo tempore, reipublicæ pæne sero. (C. *Lal.* 3.)

Edixit ut adesset senatus frequens a. d.<sup>1</sup> VIII Kalendas Decembris. (C. *Phil.* 3. 7.)

Ibi eadem negligentia erat, quæ Chalcidem dies ante paucos prodiderat. (L. 31. 24.)

Diem statuo satis laxam, quam ante si solverint, dico me centesimas ducturum. (C. *Att.* 6. 1, § 16.)

Ante Jovem nulli subigebant arva coloni. (Verg. *G.* 1. 125.)

Non multo ante urbem captam exaudita vox est a luco Vestæ. (C. *Div.* 1. 45.)

Amat scripsisse ducentos ante cibum versus, totidem cenatus. (Hor. *S.* 1. 10. 60.)

(c) *Apparently with ablative, in antehac (also antidhac Plaut.), antea.*

1849

Magis me benigne nunc salutas quam antidhac. (Pl. *Pæn.* 3. 5. 7.)

Antehac nefas depromere Cæcubum cellis avitis. (Hor. *Od.* 1. 37. 5.)

Non accusabimur posthac, neque hercule antea negligentes fuimus. (C. *Att.* 7. 3.)

## 3. 'Before,' in rank: with accusative.

1850

Cognoveram facundia Græcos, gloria belli Gallos, ante Romanos fuisse. (Sall. *C.* 53.)

Ante alios miserandi magis, qui unquam obsessi sunt; quod interclusi a patria obsidebantur. (L. 5. 42.)

Me primum dulces ante omnia Musæ accipiant. (Verg. *G.* 2. 475.)

Brevis erit oratio ante omnia, si inde cœperimus rem exponere, unde ad iudicem pertinet. (Quint. 4. 2, 40.)

In composition; (See also §§ 985, 990).

1851

*ante* is used both of place and time; and metaphorically. It is often difficult to say that there is any clear mark of composition.

*Antecapere*, obtain before; *antecedere*, come before; *antecellere* (project), excel; *antecurrere*, run before; *anteire*, go before; *anteferre* (bear before), prefer; *antegredi*, step before; *antehabere* (Tac.), prefer; *antemittere*, send on; *anteponere*, place before; *antestare*, stand before; *antestari* (for *antetestari*), call witnesses preliminarily; *antevenire*, come before.

*Ante dicere*, *ante occupare*, *ante perire*, &c. are not generally regarded as compounds.

<sup>1</sup> See App. D. Vol. I. p. 454.

*Apud; used only as preposition with accusative case, 'At.'*

1852

1. *Prefixed to names of persons.*

(a) *'At; of a person's abode.'*

Ubinamst quæso? Apud me dñmi. (Ter. Haut. 430.)

Fuisti igitur apud Læcam illa nocte, Catilina. (C. Cat. 1. 4. *Just before we find, Dico te priore nocte venisse in M. Læcæ domum.*)

Pompeius petiit ut secum et apud se essem cotidie. (C. Att. 5. 6.)

Bene vale: apud Orcum te videbo. (Pl. As. 606.)

(b) *'Before; of a person's presence, esp. of a judge.'*

1853

Hæc majorum hominum sunt, hæc apud majores factitata.

(C. Off. 2. 24.)

Cum in lecto Crassus esset et apud eum Sulpicius sederet.

(C. Or. 2. 3.)

Dictator consulibus in senatu et apud populum magnifice collaudatis dictatura se abdicavit. (L. 7. 11.)

Commodius fecissent tribuni plebis Quirites, si, quæ apud vos de me deferunt, ea coram potius me præsentē dixissent. (C. Agr. 3. 1.)

Apud proconsules manumitti possunt tam liberi quam servi et adoptiones fieri. (Marcian. ap. Dig. 1. 162.)

*So in the jurists, of a creditor to whom a surety is presented.*

1854

Fidejussor obligari non potest ei, apud quem reus promittendi obligatus non est. (Julian. ap. Dig. 46, 1. 16, pr.)

(c) *Of an author's works.*

1855

Apud Xenophontem moriens Cyrus major hæc dicit. (C. Sen. 22.)

Apud Agathoclem scriptum in historia est. (C. Div. 1. 24.)

(d) *Of a person's opinion or feelings.*

1856

Melius apud bonos quam apud fortunatos beneficium conlocari puto. (C. Off. 2. 20.)

Itan parvam mihi fidem esse apud te? (Ter. Ph. 810.)

Plus apud me antiquorum auctoritas valet. (C. Læl. 4.)

Apud prudentes vita ejus varie extollebatur arguebaturve.

(Tac. A. 1. 9.)

Non est simplicitatis meæ dissimulare apud bonitatem tuam, obiter te plurimum collaturum utilitatibus rei familiaris meæ.

(Plin. ad Traj. 8 (24).)

(e) *Of a person's composure or senses.*

1857

Præ iracundia non sum apud me. (Ter. *Haut.* 921.)Num tibi videtur esse apud sese? (Ter. *Hec.* 707.)2. *Prefixed to names of places. 'Near,' about. (Rare except in post-Augustan writers.)*

Consules senatum consoluerunt n. Octob. apud ædem Duelonai.

(S. C. de Bacc. 1.)

Quid illisce homines quærunť apud ædis meas? (Pl. *Most.* 935.)Apud forum modo e Davo audiui. (Ter. *And.* 302.)Ita victoria justa imperator appellatus apud Issum, abduxi exercitum. (C. *Fam.* 2. 10.)

Paulisper apud oppidum morati, ad castra Cæsaris contenderunt.

(Cæs. G. 2. 7.)

Italiam utroque mari duæ classes Misenum apud et Ravennam præsidebant. (Tac. *A.* 4. 5.)

Titus in consecrando apud Memphim bove Apide diadema gestavit.

(Suet. *Tit.* 5.)

*Circum, circā, circiter; used both without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in the accusative case. 'Round,' 'about.'*

1. *'Round,' about,' in space.*(a) *Without a substantive dependent on it; circum, circa.*Idoneus sub dio sumendus locus cocleariis, quem circum totum aqua claudas. (Varr. *R. R.* 3. 14.)Interea Rutuli portis circum omnibus instant. (Verg. *A.* 10. 118.)

Una crebris ictibus eversa est turris, quodque circa muri erat.

(L. 34. 29.)

Cœpi regiones circumcirca prospicere. (Sulpic. ap. C. *Fam.* 4. 5, § 4.)

Perseus ad Syconium stativa habebat, frumento undique circa ex agris convecto. (L. 42. 56.)

Anna, vides toto properari litore: circum undique convenere.

(Verg. *A.* 4. 416.)(b) *As indeclinable adjective, 'on each side.'*

1860

Media porta robora legionum et Romanos equites, duabus circa portis novos milites ac sociorum equites statuit. (L. 23. 16.)

(c) *With accusative; circum, circa.*

1861

Ligures incolentes circa Ticinum amnem. (L. 5. 35.)

Urgeris turba circum te stante. (Hor. S. 1. 3. 135.)

Illi robur et æs triplex circa pectus erat. (Hor. Od. 1. 3. 10.)

Ex iis trecentos juvenes inermes circa se habebat. (L. 29. 1.)

Terra circum axem se summa celeritate convertit. (C. Ac. 2. 39.)

Varios hic flumina circum fundit humus flores. (Verg. B. 9. 40.)

## 2. 'To (or 'in') and about.'

1862

*With accusative; circum, circa as prepositions.*

Nævius pueros circum amicos dimittit. (C. Quint. 6.)

Scribis, si Cæsar circum istæc loca commoraretur, te ei resistere velle. (Cn. Pomp. ap. C. Att. 8. 12 B.)

Misit circum fora et basilicas nomenclatores ad invitandos juvenes senesque. (Suet. Cal. 41.)

Romulus legatos circa vicinas gentes misit. (L. 1. 9.)

Carcinoma fit maxime in superioribus partibus, circa faciem, nares, aures, labra. (Cels. 5. 28. 2.)

3. *Of time, 'about.'*

1863

(a) *Without a substantive dependent; circiter.*

Diebus circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit. (Cæs. G. 2. 2.)

Hæc in Arpinati a. d. VI. circiter Idus Maias non deflebimus.

(C. Att. 2. 17.)

Circiter hora decima noctis P. Postumius ad me venit.

(Servius ap. C. Fam. 4. 12.)

(b) *With accusative; circa (not before Livy), circiter.*

1864

Circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. (Cæs. G. 1. 50.)

Nos, si di adjuvabunt, circiter Idus Novembris in Italia speramus fore. (C. Fam. 14. 5.)

Ab officiis octavam circiter horam redit. (Hor. Ep. 1. 7. 47.)

Postero die circa eandem horam in eundem locum rex copias admovit. (L. 42. 57.)

Post Zeuxis atque Parrhasius, non multum ætate distantes, circa Peloponnesia ambo tempora, plurimum arti addiderunt.

(Quint. 12. 10, § 4.)

Adiciunt doctores artis sero et circa Tisiam et Coraca primum re-  
pertos. (Quint. 2. 17, § 7.)

4. *Of number, 'about.' Without a substantive dependent; circiter.*

1865

Ex omni copia circiter pars quarta erat militaribus armis instructa.

(Sall. C. 56.)



Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim milia expedita cum omni equitatu mittit. (Cæs. G. I. 49.)

*So apparently circa, but the instances are not decisive.*

1866

Circa D Romanorum sociorumque victores ceciderunt. (L. 27. 41.)

Legato etiam circa sestertii vices eum prosecutus. (Suet. Claud. 6.)

Per insequentes dies circa singulas heminas emittendum. (Cels. 7. 18.)

5. *Metaphorically, 'about,' i.e. 'concerning,' 'in the case of;'* 1871  
*with accusative. Circa, frequent in post-Augustan.*

Tanta est circa verba dissensio. (Quint. 3. II, § 5.)

Quippe sermo circa rura est agrestisque usus. (Plin. 18, § 5.)

Circa deos ac religiones neglegentior. (Suet. Tib. 69.)

Circa consilium eligendi successoris in duas factiones scindebantur.  
(Tac. H. I. 13.)

Idem servandum et circa inquilinorum insulæ personas Proculus scribit. (Ulp. ap. Dig. 9. 2. 27, § 11.)

*A similar meaning occurs earlier in quocirca (abl.? or acc.? cf. 1868*  
§ 160. 11: *quocirca is in C. I. R. No. 206, vv. 93. 104. 118: but*  
*quodcirca C. I. R. No. 198, v. 13) and idcirco (locirco).*

Quocirca bene apud majores nostros senatus decrevit &c.

(C. Div. I. 41.)

Quo, bone, circa, dum licet, vive beatus. (Hor. S. 2. 6. 95.)

Suspicio est me idcirco hæc promittere. (Pl. Ps. 563.)

Idcirco nemo superiorum attigit, ut hic tolleret. (C. Ferr. 4. 4.)

In composition: (*see also* § 990).

1869

Circum, *around*, is compounded, somewhat loosely, with many verbs, and, usually, simply adds to them the meaning '*around*.'

-aggregare (Col.), *pile up around*; -agere, *drive round*; -arare (Liv.); -cidere, *cut*; -cingere (post-Aug.), -cludere; -colere, *draw well around*; -currere; -dare, *surround*; -ducere; -equitare (Liv.); -farcire (Plin.); -ferre; -flectere (Verg.); -flare; -fluere; -fodere; -fremare (Sen.); -fricare (Cato); -fundere; -gemere (Hor.); -gestare; -gredi; -jacere; -lære (Liv.); -ire; -lambere (Plin.); -latrare (Sen.); -ligare; -linere; -luere, *wash round*; -mittere; -munire; -nectere (Sen.); -peddare (Curt.); -plaudere (Ov.); -plecti, *embrace*; -plicare (Cic.);

-plumbare (Cato), *solder round*; -ponere; -radere; -retire, *ensnare*; -rodere; -scindere (Liv.); -scribere, *inclose in a circular line, confine*; -secare; -sedare; -sæpire; -serere (Plin.), *plant around*; -sillire; -sistare, *stand round*; -sonare; -spectare; -spargere; -spicere; -stare; -streperere; -struere; -tegere; -terere; -tinnire (Varr.); -tonare; -vadere; -vallare; -vectari; -vahi; -velare (Ov.); -venire, *encompass*; -vertere; -vestire; -visere (Plaut.); -volitare; -volare; -volvere; and some others rarely used.

Three of these verbs, viz. circumducere, -scribere, -venire, have a secondary meaning, *to cheat*.

Cis, citra; used with accusative case: citra and citro without <sup>1870</sup> a substantive dependent, 'On this side.' (Cis is usually opposed to trans (uls being almost antiquated); citra, citro to ultra, ultro.)

I. (a) Without a substantive dependent; citra, 'on this side,' citro, 'hitherwards,' both of place and relation.

Ad castra prætoris pergit. Paucis citra milibus lignatores ei cum præsidio occurrunt. (L. 9. 25.)

Inque petendo dextera diriguit nec citra mota nec ultra.

(Ov. M. 5. 186.)

Sæpe ultro citroque legati inter eos mittebantur. (Cæs. G. 1. 42.)

Magna est illa communitas quæ conficitur ex beneficiis ultro et citro datis acceptis. (C. Off. 1. 17.)

(b) With accusative case; cis, citra, 'on, or 'to, this side of.' <sup>1871</sup>

Pedem porta, quoad hostis cis Euphratem fuit, non extulit.

(C. Att. 7. 2.)

Paucos moratorum occiderunt citra flumen interceptos. (L. 21. 48.)

Erat cum suis navibus apud Haletem fluvium citra Veliam milia passuum III. (C. Att. 16. 7.)

Natura in omni verbo posuit acutam vocem, nec una plus, nec a postrema syllaba citra tertiam. (C. Or. 18.)

Ut omnes citra flumen eliceret, placide progrediebatur.

(Cæs. G. 6. 8.)

Tusci in utrumque mare vergentes incolere urbibus duodenis terras, prius cis Appenninum ad inferum mare; postea trans Appenninum totidem, quot capita originis erant, coloniis missis, quæ trans Padum omnia loca...usque ad Alpes tenuere. (L. 5. 33.)

2. *Of time, (rare) 'within;'* *cis, citra.* 18;

Cis hercle paucas tempestates, augebis ruri numerum.

(Plaut. *Most.* 18.)Forsitan et Pylius citra Trojana perisset tempora. (Ov. *M.* 8. 365.)3. *Metaphorically, short, 'short of'* 187(a) *Without a substantive dependent; citra.*Tela hostium citra cadebant. (Tac. *H.* 3. 23.)Cum a genere ducetur argumentum, non erit necesse id usque a capite arcessere; sæpe etiam citra licet, dum modo supra sit, quod sumitur, quam id, ad quod sumitur. (C. *Top.* 9.)

Cum res ipsa de qua loquendum est naturalem modum excessit, conceditur amplius dicere, quia dici quantum est non potest, meliusque ultra quam citra stat oratio. (Quint. 8, fin.)

*So citra quam, 'less than.'*

Culta quidem, fateor, citra quam debuit illa est.

(Ov. *Pont.* 1. 7. 55.)(b) *With accusative case; citra.* 187, 4

Exercitationis plerumque finis esse debet lassitudo, quæ citra fatigationem sit. (Cels. 1. 2.)

Nec virtus citra genus est. (Ov. *Met.* 10. 607.)4. *'Without regard to,' 'setting aside,' with accusative; citra.* 187, 5Solebat etiam citra spectaculorum dies, siquando quid inusitatum dignumque cognitu advectum est, id extra ordinem quolibet loco publicare. (Suet. *Aug.* 43.)

Aliqua ex re ipsa citra personam argumenta ducuntur.

(Quint. 7. 2, § 13.)

Hac ingressos lacus accipit longe lateque diffusus, citra magnitudinem prope Ponti similis. (Mela 1. 19, § 113.)

5. *'Without.' Citra as preposition, only in post-Augustan prose.* 187

Animalia et ingredi citius et pasci et tranare aquas citra docentem natura ipsa sciunt. (Quint. 2. 16, § 13.)

Phidias in ebore longe citra æmulum. (Quint. 12. 10, § 9.)

Marcia princeps Romanorum icta gravida, partu exanimato, ipsa citra ullum aliud incommodum vixit. (Plin. 2, § 137.)

Nec id (*i.e.* suam vitam narrare) Rutilio et Scauro citra fidem aut obtrectationi fuit. (Tac. *Agr.* 1.)

**Clam, clanculum;** *used both without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in the accusative case. (The instances of clam with ablative appear to be of doubtful authority; but cf. Cæs. Civ. 2. 32. Clam vobis; B. Afr. 11. clam hostibus.)* 1877

1. *Without a substantive dependent; 'secretly.'*

1878

Hanc tu mihi vel vi vel clam vel precario fac tradas.

(Ter. And. 319.)

Abi ad thensaurum jam confestim clanculum. (Pl. Trin. 798.)

Multa palam domum suam auferebat, plura clam de medio removebat. (C. Rosc. Am. 8.)

Soli Ætoli decretum decem legatorum clam mussantes carcebant.

(L. 33. 31.)

Nec id clam esse potuit. (L. 5. 36.)

Clam possidere eum dicimus, qui furtive ingressus est possessionem, ignorante eo, quem sibi controversiam facturum suspicabatur et ne faceret timebat. (Ulpian ap. Dig. 41. 2. 6.)

2. *With accusative case, of name of person; 'unknown to.' Al-* 1879  
*most confined to comic poets. Clanculum is found (as preposition) once only.*

Illius filiam conicit in navem miles clam matrem suam. (Pl. Mil. 112.)

Emptast amica clam uxorem et clam filium. (Pl. Merc. 545.)

Neque adeo clam me est, quam esse eum graviter laturum credam, hoc si rescierit. (Ter. Hec. 261.)

Alii clanculum patres quæ faciunt, ea ne me celet, consuefecit filium. (Ter. Ad. 52.)

**Com (old), cum,** *only used with a substantive in ablative case. It is placed after the personal pronouns and the relative pronoun. It generally, however, stands before quibus.* 1880

1. *'With,' 'in company with,' 'along with.'*

Cum Pansa vixi in Pompeiano. (C. Att. 14. 20.)

Cæsar cum quinque legionibus ad solis occasum naves solvit.

(Cæs. G. 5. 8.)

Abi cum immaturo amore ad sponsum. (L. 1. 26.)

Ego cum meis, si quicquam nunc cujusquam est, etiam in meis esse malui. (C. Fam. 7. 3.)

2. *'Containing,' 'wearing,' 'having,' &c.* 188a

Ipse prætor in hac officina majorem partem diei cum tunica pulla sedere solebat et pallio. (C. Verr. 4. 24.)

Sinuessæ satis constabat cum elephanti capite puerum natum. (L. 27. 11.)

Cognovi ex eo te Romam venisse cum feбри. (C. Att. 6. 9.)

Terra dicta ab eo, ut Ælius scribit, quod teritur; itaque terra in Augurum libris scriptis cum R uno. (Varr. L. L. 5, § 21.)

Enim vero, Antipho, multimodis cum istoc animo es vituperandus. (Ter. Ph. 465.)

Erit tum consul Hortensius cum summo imperio et potestate, ego autem ædilis. (C. Verr. Act. 1. 13.)

Raro cum corpore tellus est. (Lucr. 6. 631.)

3. *Of coincidence in time.* 188a

Ceterum cras cum filio cum primo luci ibo hinc. (Ter. Ad. 840.)

Cum prima luce Pomponii domum venisse dicitur. (C. Off. 3. 31.)

4. *Of accompanying circumstances.* 188b

Ad flammam accessit imprudentius satis cum periclo. (Ter. And. 131.)

Athenienses cum silentio auditi sunt. (L. 38. 10.)

Itaque classis bona cum pace accepta est. (L. 28. 37.)

Cum his nuntius Romam ad consulendum redit. (L. 1. 32.)

In jugero medimnum fere tritici seritur perpetua atque æquabili satione; ager efficit cum octavo, bene ut agatur; verum, ut omnes dii adjuvent, cum decumo. (C. Verr. 3. 47.)

Apud regem gratiam initam volebant cum eo ut caverent ne quid offenderent Romanos. (L. 36. 5.) 188c

Nec fortuiti sermonis contextum mirabor unquam; cum eo quod, si calor ac spiritus tulit, frequenter accidit ut successum extemporalem consequi cura non possit. (Quint. 10. 7, § 13.)

5. *Of reciprocal action.* 188c

Latini, cum quibus Tullo regnante ictum fœdus erat, sustulerant animos. (L. 1. 32.)

Tam eras excors, ut tota in oratione tua tecum ipse pugnares. (C. Phil. 2. 8.)

Cum his mihi res sit, qui eruptionem probant. (Cæsar. G. 7. 77.)

Quid tute tecum loquere? (Pl. Most. 512.)

Egi atque oravi tecum uxorem ut duceres. (Ter. *Hec.* 686.)

Docte atque astute mihi captandum est cum illo. (Pl. *Most.* 1069.)

Vos id potestis cum animis vestris cogitare. (C. *Agr.* 2. 24.)

Habent agricolæ rationem cum terra, quæ numquam recusat imperium nec cuiquam sine usura reddit quod accepit, sed alias minore, plerumque majore cum fœnore. (C. *Sen.* 15.)

In composition; (see also §§ 985, 986, 990).

1886

Com- before p, b, m; co- before vowels; con- before v, j, dentals and linguals, except that n is often assimilated (in some mss. and edd.) before l and r.

1. *Together, i. e. collectively*, by converging action. In the singular number some compounds express sympathy or companionship only.

coacervare, *heap together*; cogere, *collect, compel*; coalescere, *grow together*; coartare, *compress*; concelebrare, *join in celebrating*; concertare, *contend with*; concidere, *fall together*; concinere, *sing with*; concipere, *bold* (like a basin); conclamare, *shout together*; concludere, *shut up*; concorescere, *curdle*; concurrere, *run together*; concutere, *shake together*; condicere, *appoint by agreement*; condere, *store up*; conducere, *bring together, hire* (i. e. *take by agreement?*), *be of use*; coeplare (fit together), *take in hand*; coercere, *confine*; confectare, *stuff*; conferre, *bring together*; confiteri, *confess to another*; conflictare, *dash together*; confiare, *melt down* (see also 2); confluere, *flow together*; confringere, *break down*; confundere, *pour together*; confutare, *allay*; congelare, *freeze up*; congerere, *carry together*; conglobare, *make into a ball*; congregari, *meet with*; congruere, *agree*; coherere, *stick together*; cohibere, *hold together*; cohorresco, *shudder*; conloere, *throw together*; coire, *come together*; conjungere, *yoke together*; conjurare, *conspire*; collabi, *collapse*; collacrimare, *weep with others*; collidere, *clash*; colligare, *bind together*; colligere, *collect*; colloqui, *converse*; colluctari, *wrestle together*; comere (put together), *arrange*; commiscere, *mix up*; commiserari, *compassionate*; committere, *match, intrust*; commori, *die together*; commutare, *barter*; conectere, *tie together*; conivere, *wink*; compaciari, *make an agreement*; compellere, *drive together*; compensare, *balance*; compescere (feed together?), *restrain*; competere, *coincide, suit*; compingere, *frame*; complecti, *embrace*; complodere, *clap together*; complorare, *be wail in common*; componere, *put together*; comportare, *carry together*; comprehendere, *lay hold of on both sides*; comprimere, *squeeze together*; computare, *reckon up*; cooptare, *chose into one's own body*; conqueri, *complain*; conquirere, *search in*

order to bring *together*; *corrādere*, *scrape together*; *corrugare* (Hor.), *wrinkle up*; *corrūere*, *tumble down*; *consciscere*, *resolve with oneself*; *conscribere*, *write in a list*; *consenesce*, *grow old with another*, also simply, *grow old*; *consentire*, *agree in thoughts*; *conspire*, *bedge in*; *conserere*, *join*; *considēre*, *settle* (frequently of one person); *consociare*, *ally*; *consonare*, *sound along with*; *conspirare*, *accord*; *constare*, *agree*, *consist* (also 2); *constituere*, *put together*, *appoint*; *constringere*, *bind together*; *construere*, *heap up*, *build*; *consuere*, *stitch together*; *consvescere*, *accustom oneself*; *consummare*, *make up*; *consurgere*, *rise in a body*; *contendere*, *contend* (also to 2); *conterere*, *crumble*, *break up*; *contestari*, *join issue*; *contexere*, *wear together*; *continēre*, *keep together*; *contrahere*, *draw together*; *contribuere*, *contribute*; *contrudere*, *thrust together*; *contundere*, *pound*; *conturbare*, *throw into confusion*; *convehere*, *carry together*; *convēire*, *assemble*, *suit*; *convivere* (Sen.), *live with*; *convocare*, *summon together*; *convolvere*, *roll up*; and many others.

2. *Completely*, i.e. by acting on all the parts; often apparently only pleonastic. In the plural number especially such verbs may sometimes belong to Class 1.

*coacescere*, *become sour*; *coarguere*, *convict*; *concalescere*, *warm thoroughly*; *concedere*, *yield*; *concidere*, *cut up* (belongs to 1?); *conditare*, *rouse thoroughly*; *concoquere*, *digest*; *concremare*, *burn to ashes*; *concrepare*, *clash* (belongs to 1?); *conculcare*, *trample on*; *concupiscere*, *long for*; *condecere* (Plaut.), *befit*; *condemnare*, *condemn*; *condiscere*, *learn*; *condolescere*, *feel great pain*; *condonare*, *give up*; *coemere*, *buy up*, *buy*; *conficere*, *make up*, *do up* (= *exhaust*); *confidere*, *trust*; *confirmare*, *strengthen*; *conflare*, *blow up* = *produce by blowing* (also see 1); *confodere*, *dig round*; *conformare*, *fashion*; *confugere*, *flee for refuge*; *cogitare*, *ponder over*; *cognoscere*, *learn*; *congrascere*, *play the Greek thoroughly*; *cohortari*, *exhort*; *collaudare*, *praise*; *collinere*, *besmear*; *collocare*, *place*; *colluere*, *rinse*; *collustrare*, *put in a light*; *commaculare*, *pollute*; *commeminiare*, *remember*; *commemorare*, *recount*; *commendare*, *commend*; *comminuere*, *crush*; *commorari*, *delay*; *commovere*, *move*; *communire*, *fortify*; *conitil*, *strive*; *cooperire*, *cover over*; *cooriri*, *arise*; *compāre*, *appear*; *comparare*, *prepare* (for *comparare*, *match*, see § 960); *comperire* (*put together?*), *ascertain*; *complare*, *strip*; *complere*, *fill up*; *comprobare*, *approve of*; *compungere*, *prick*; *conquiescere*, *repose*; *corrigere*, *put straight* (*with something else?*); *corripere*, *catch up*; *corroborare*, *strengthen*; *corrotundare* (Sen.), *round off*; *corrumpere*, *spoil*; *conscendere*, *mount*, *embark*; *consecrare*, *devote*; *consectari*, *follow persistently*; *consequi*, *follow*, *overtake*; *conserere*, *sow*, *plant*; *conservare*, *preserve*; *consignare*, *stamp* (i.e. as well as *write*, &c.); *consistere*, *stand still*; *consolari*, *console*; *consopire*, *put to sleep*; *conspicari*, *conspicere*, *descry*; *constare*, *be well ascertained* (also

to 1); consternare, terrify; consternere, cover; consumere, consume; contabulare, plank over; contegere, cover up (belongs to 1?); contemnere, despise; contendere, stretch (also to 1); conterrere, frighten; conticescere, become silent; contingere, touch; contingere, besprinkle; contorquere, swing, hurl; contrectare, handle; contrucidare, cut down (belong to 1?); contuari, look at; convalescere, recover strength; convellere, tear up; convertere, turn round; convincere, conquer; and many others.

3. *consequare*, put on a level with; *commearare*, go to and fro.

*Contra*; used without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in dative and accusative cases; also in a quasi-adjectival use. 'Opposite to.' (Contra only in compound controversus.) 1889

In Plautus and Terence it appears to be never used with a substantive in the accusative, except in Plaut. Pers. 13; Pseud. 155.

1. Of place: 'opposite,' 'facing.'

1890

(a) Without a substantive dependent.

Ubi contra aspexit me, oculis mihi signum dedit ne se appellarem.

(Pl. Mil. 123.)

Stat contra starique jubet. (Juv. 3. 290.)

Jam omnia contra circaque hostium plena erant. (L. 5. 37.)

Propterea fit, uti, speciem quo vertimus, omnes res ibi eam contra feriant forma atque colore. (Lucr. 4. 243.)

Ne ut oculos quidem attollerent aut consolantes amicos contra intuerentur, efficere poterant. (L. 9. 6.)

(b) With accusative case.

1891

Quis illic est, qui contra me astat? (Pl. Pers. 13.)

Insula natura triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam.

(Cæs. G. 5. 13.)

Fulvius unum castellum loco edito contra arcem objecit. (L. 38.4.)

Diu quæsitus tandem in altissima turri repertus est, jacens contra solis exortum. (Suet. Aug. 94.)

2. 'On the other hand,' 'in return.'

1892

(a) Without a substantive dependent.

Si laudabit hæc illius formam, tu hujus contra. (Ter. Eun. 443.)



Jam non illud quæro, contra me ut diligit illa. (Catull. 76. 23.)  
 Ipsi modo eminus sauciabantur, neque contra feriundi aut conserundi  
 manum copia erat. (Sall. J. 50.)

(b) *With dative case; 'in return for.'*

1893

Contra auro<sup>1</sup> alii hanc vendere potuit operam. (Pl. Mil. 1076.)  
 Di immortales, aurichalco<sup>1</sup> contra non carum fuit meum mendacium.  
 (Pl. Pseud. 688.)

Paulisper tace, dum consulo, quem dolum doloso contra conservo  
 parem. (Pl. Mil. 198.)

Immo si scias quod donum huic dono contra comparet, magis id  
 dicas. (Ter. Eun. 355.)

3. *'On the contrary.'*

1894

(a) *Without a substantive dependent; contra, contra quam, contra ac.*

Qui arguat se, eum contra vincat jurejurando suo. (Pl. Mil. 188.)

Cui ego rei tantum abest ut impedimento sim, ut contra te adhorter,  
 liberes fenore plebem Romanam. (L. 6. 15.)

Ea generi sui, contra quam fas erat, amore capta. (C. Clu. 5.)

Si aliquid non contra ac liceret factum diceretur, sed contra atque  
 oporteret, tamen esset omnis ejusmodi reprehensio a vobis  
 repudianda. (C. Balb. 3.)

(b) *In predicativial use; contra.*

1895

Ut ceteri alia certa, alia incerta esse dicunt, sic nos ab his dissen-  
 tientes alia probabilia, contra alia dicimus. (C. Off. 2. 2.)

Illorum villæ rusticæ majoris quam urbanæ, quæ nunc sunt pleræ-  
 que contra. (Varr. R. R. 1. 136.)

Marius suorum et hostium res pariter attendere, cognoscere quid  
 boni utrisque aut contra esset. (Sall. J. 88.)

Relinquitur ut, si vincimur in Hispania, quiescamus: id ego contra  
 puto. (C. Att. 10. 8, § 2.)

In stultitia contra est. (C. Clu. 31.)

*The following may belong here or to the next division (c).*

1896

Hoc maxime officii est, ut quisque maxime opis indigeat, ita ei  
 potissimum opitulari; quod contra fit a plerisque.

(C. Off. 1. 15.)

Hi majorum fortia facta memorando clariores sese putant. Quid  
 contra est. (Sall. J. 85, § 21.)

<sup>1</sup> Key also takes this as dative (*Lat. Gr.* § 1320).

(c) *With accusative case; 'contrary to,' esp. contra ea, quod* 1897  
 contra. *Comp. secundum ea, extra ea; also interea, præterea.*

Omnia contra opinionem accidebant. (Cæs. G. 3. 9.)

Superbe ab Samnitibus legati prohibiti commercio sunt, contra ea  
 benigne ab Siculorum tyrannis adjuti. (L. 4. 52.)

Scio ego, Quirites, plerosque non eisdem artibus imperium a vobis  
 petere et, postquam adepti sunt, gerere; sed mihi contra ea  
 videtur. (Sall. J. 85.)

Agamemno cum universa Græcia vix decem annis unam cepit  
 urbem, ego contra ea una urbe nostra dieque una totam Græ-  
 ciam liberavi. (Nep. 15. 5.)

Vereor ne forte rearis impia te rationis inire elementa viamque indu-  
 gredi sceleris: quod contra sæpius illa religio peperit scelerosa  
 atque impia facta. (Lucr. 1. 82.)

Cujus a me corpus est crematum, quod contra<sup>1</sup> decuit ab illo  
 meum. (C. Sen. 23.)

4. 'Against.'

1898

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Quantum juniores patrum plebi se magis insinuabant, eo acrius  
 contra tribuni tendebant. (L. 3. 15.)

(b) *With accusative case.*

1899

Dixerunt neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse neque contra  
 populum Romanum conjurasse. (Cæs. G. 2. 3.)

Qua re hoc non modo non pro me sed contra me est potius.

(C. Or. 3. 20.)

Non est committendum ut iis paream, quos contra me senatus, ne  
 quid res publica detrimenti acciperet, armavit. (C. Att. 10. 8.)

Consequeris in plurimorum controversiis dijudicandis, ut eos ipsos,  
 quos contra statuas, æquos placatosque dimittas. (C. Or. 10.)

Jam morbi tot atque medicinæ tot contra mala excogitatæ.

(Plin. 7. 1.)

Jussit Amor: contra quis ferat arma deos? (Tib. 1. 6. 30.)

In composition: *contradicere, oppose; contraponere* (Quint.), 1900  
*place opposite to. Also controversus, disputed.*

<sup>1</sup> Madvig (ad C. Fin. 5. 26) punctuates this *quod contra decuit, ab illo meum* and compares C. Læl. 24, Quint. 28; *quod nunc* in Lucr. 1. 222; Varr. 3. 38; and *mihi vero ista valde probata sunt, quod item fratri puto* (C. Fin. 1.c.). With this view may also be compared ὁ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀμαθία μὲν θράσος, λογισμὸς δὲ δεινὸν φέρει (Thuc. 2. 40), and (see Munro in Lucr. 1. 82) *quod si, quod utinam, &c.*, in which phrases Ritschl supposes *quod* to be an old ablative.

**Coram**, used both without a substantive dependent on it, and with a substantive in ablative case. Occasionally, especially in Tacitus, put after its case. 1901

1. *Without a substantive dependent: 'face to face,' 'before a person's eyes.'*

Eadem fere, quæ ex nuntiis literisque cognoverat, coram perspicit.  
(Cæs. G. 5. 11.)

Quid ergo opus erat epistola? quid? cum coram sumus et garrimus quicquid in buccam? (C. Att. 12. 1.)

Erit igitur nobis coram odorandum et constituendum, tutone Romæ esse possimus. (C. Att. 15. 3.)

Absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horruerunt.  
(Cæs. G. 1. 32.)

Ut veni coram, singultim pauca locutus. (Hor. S. 1. 6. 56.)

Essedum argenteum sumptuose fabricatum ac venale ad sigillaria redimi concidique coram imperavit. (Suet. Claud. 16.)

2. *With ablative case; 'in the presence of?'* 1902

Mihi vero ipsi coram genero meo quæ dicere ausus es? (C. Pis. 6.)

Ad ea Quinctius, coram quibus magis quam apud quos verba faceret, dicere Archidamum rationem habuisse. (L. 35. 49.)

Cantabit vacuus coram latrone viator. (Juv. 10. 22.)

Isque prisco instituto propinquis coram de capite famaue conjugis cognovit. (Tac. A. 13. 32.)

**De**, used (except in one phrase) only as preposition with ablative case. 'From.' Compare also *dein* (for *deim*?). 1903

1. *Of place: 'down.'* 1904

(a) *Without a substantive: only in old phrase, susque deque, 'up and down,' i.e. 'any how,' 'of no consequence.'*

Quæ neque sunt facta neque ego in me admisi, arguit, atque id me susque deque esse habituram putat. (Pl. Am. 886.)

Verum hæc ludus ibi susque deque omnia deque fuerunt; susque hæc deque fuere, inquam, omnia ludus jocusque.

(Lucil. 3. 7, ed. Moll.)

Nam de Octavio susque deque. (C. Att. 14. 6.)

See also Gell. 16. 9, who quotes also Laberius and Varro.

## (b) 'Down from,' 'from off.'

1905

Lucretius et Attius de muro se dejecerunt. (Cæs. C. 1. 18.)

De digito anulum detraho. (Ter. Haut. 650.)

Deque viri collo dulce pendit onus. (Ov. F. 2. 760.)

Eum ad se vocari et de tribunali citari jussit. (C. Verr. 5. 7.)

Anagninæ nuntiatum est murum portasque de cælo tactas.

(L. 26. 23.)

Proscripsit se per omnes dies comitiales de cælo servaturum.

(C. Att. 4. 3. 3.)

Quodcunque imperator vel cognoscens decrevit vel de plano interlocutus est, legem esse constat. (Ulpian ap. Dig. 1. 4. 1.)

## 2. Of the source or abode: 'from.'

1906

Coponem de via Latina subornatis. (C. Clu. 59.)

Non enim declamatorem aliquem de ludo aut rabulam de foro quærimus. (C. Or. 15.)

Senatus consultum ita est perscriptum, ut a me de scripto dicta sententia est. (C. Fam. 10. 13.)

Equidem sæpe hoc audiui de patre et de socero meo. (C. Or. 333.)

Fundum Cymæum Romæ mercatus est de pupillo. (C. Flacc. 20.)

Cæsar optime eum de se meritum judicabat. (Cæs. C. 3. 99.)

Juris utilitas vel a peritis vel de libris depromi potest. (C. Or. 1. 59.)

Africanus de Numantinis triumpharat. (C. Phil. 11. 8.)

## 3. Of the basis or starting-point: 'from,' 'on.'

1907

Ne ut de gradu quidem libero ac stabili conarentur, spatium habebant. (L. 34. 39.)

Duo de concursu corpora lata si cita dissiliant, &c. (Lucr. 1. 384.)

Diem de die prospectabat, ecquod auxilium ab dictatore appareret.

(L. 5. 48.)

De consilii sententia Mamertinis se frumentum non imperare pronuntiat. (C. Verr. 5. 21.)

Si quid erit, quod illi placeat, de exemplo meo ipse ædificato.

(Pl. Most. 773.)

Primum disputabat de illa parte quam Marcellus dixerat: deinde dicebat contrariam partem. (Sen. Rhet. Contr. 4. Præf. 3.)

Id nisi gravi de causa non fecisset. (C. Att. 7. 7.)

In his sermonibus de industria id faciendum fuit. (C. Or. 44.)

Censores dicit de integro sibi creari placere. (C. Verr. 2. 56.)

Ut numerabatur forte argentum, intervenit homo de improvviso.

(Ter. Ad. 406.)

4. *Of the whole from which something is subtracted: 'from among,' literally and metaphorically.* 1908

De capite deducite quod usuris pernumeratum est. (L. 6. 15.)

Duodeviginti. Undeoctoginta annos natus. (Hor. S. 2. 3. 117.)

Hominem certum misi de comitibus meis. (C. Att. 8. 1.)

Concedite pudori meo ut aliquam partem de istius impudentia retinere possim. (C. Ferr. 1. 12.)

De lucro prope jam quadriennium vivimus, si aut hoc lucrum est aut hæc vita superstitem reipublicæ vivere. (C. Fam. 9. 17; i.e. as a piece of luck.)

5. *Of the material.* 1909

Illud vero tæterrimum de templo carcerem fieri. (C. Phil. 5. 7.)

Viridi in campo templum de marmore ponam. (Verg. G. 3. 13.)

Iis stipendium de publico statuit. (L. 1. 20.)

Sed aliquid atque adeo multa addunt et adferunt de suo.

(C. Fam. 4. 3.)

6. *Of time: (a) 'immediately after.'* (Compare § 1907.) 1910

Prandium uxor mihi perbonum dedit: nunc dormitum jubet me ire: minime...non bonust somnus de prandio: apage.

(Pl. Most. 697.)

De media nocte missus equitatus novissimum agmen consequitur.

(Cæs. G. 7. 88.)

(b) *'During,' 'in the course of.'* (Compare § 1908.) 1911

Vigilas tu de nocte, ut tuis consultoribus respondeas: te gallorum cantus exsuscitat. (C. Mur. 9.)

In comitium Milo de nocte venit: Metellus cum prima luce furtim in campum currebat, adsequitur inter lucos hominem Milo.

(C. Att. 4. 3, § 4.)

Navem sopitis omnibus de tertia vigilia conscendunt. (L. 40. 4.)

Epulari coeperunt de die. (L. 23. 8.)

7. *'Of,' 'concerning,' 'in the matter of.'* 1912

Diffidens de numero dierum Cæsarem fidem servaturum, quod nulla de reditu ejus fama afferebatur. (Cæs. G. 6. 36.)

Neque tamen de nostra sed de omni republica disputo.

(C. Off. 2. 21.)

De rationibus referendis, non erat incommodum te nullam referre.

(C. Fam. 2. 17.)

Maxime firmatur similitudine ejus rei, qua de agitur, ad eam rem qua de judicatum est. (C. Inv. 1. 44.)

Nihil est de Scipionis provincia commutatum. (C. Phil. 11. 7.)

Claudius vix Apronio illi de familiaritate concedere videtur.

(C. Ferr. 2. 44.)

De ducentis nummis primum intendam ballistam in senem.

(Pl. Bacch. 709.)

Actumst de me: jam morior, Simo. (Pl. Pseud. 1221.)

De fratre quid fiet? (Ter. Ad. 996.)

In composition: (see also §§ 986, 990):

1913

1. Down, down off: *decidere*, fall down or off; *decondere* (Sen.), bury; *deculcare* (Plin.), tread down; *decumbere*, lie down; *decurrere*, run down, neut. (also 2 and 5); *decutere*, shake off; *deferre*, bring down (also 2); *defigere*, fix down; *deflagrare*, burn down (also 6); *defluere*, flow down (see also 2); *defodere*, dig down, bury; *defricare*, rub down, rub hard; *defringere*, break down; *defundere*, pour down or out; *degrassari* (Stat.), rush upon; *degravare*, weigh down; *degredi*, step down; *dehiscere*, split down so as to gape; *deicere*, cast down; *delabi*, slip down; *deligare*, tie down; *demergere*, plunge; *demetere*, mow down; *demittere*, send down, let down; *demoliri*, demolish; *demulcere*, stroke down; *denatare* (Hor.), swim down; *deoccare* (Plin.), barrow in; *depangere*, drive down; *depectere*, comb down; *dependere*, hang down; *depluere*, rain down; *deponere*, lay down; *deprimere*, press down; *derepere*, creep down; *deripere*, pull down or away; *deruere*; throw down; *descendere*, descend; *deserpere* (Stat.), creep down; *desidere*, sink, settle down; *destillare*, leap down; *despicere*, look down, despise; *destillare*, trickle down; *destinare*, fix down (*stān-ere* = *statuere*); *detrudere*, thrust down; *deturbare*, knock down from; *devincire*, bind down; *devolare*, fly down; *devolvere*, roll down; *devorare*, gulp down.

2. With especial reference to the place or object reached. To, originally down to, away to: *decurrere*, have recourse (also 1); *deferre*, report, actuse (also 1); *denuntiare*, announce; *derigere*, keep straight; *desacrare*, consecrate; *devēnire*, come to; *deversari*, go to lodge.

3. Off, away, aside: *decedere*, depart; *decerpere*, pluck off; *decidere*, cut off, determine; *declinare*, turn aside; *decondere*, bide away; *decurtare*, curtail; *deducere*, lead away, escort; *deerrare*, wander astray; *defendere*, ward off; *deficere* (make away), revolt, fail; *definire*, to mark off; *deflectere*, turn aside; *defluere*, flow away (see also 1); *defugere*, flee from, shun; *defungi*, acquit oneself of; *degerere* (Plaut.), carry off; *deglubere*, peel; *degere* (do away?),

1915

*spend time; degustare, taste off; dehibere (Plaut.), debere (have from 1916 another? but comp. 7), owe; dehortari, dissuade; delectare (entice away), delight; delere, wash out, destroy; delibare, take a taste or drop off; deligere, pick out; deliquare, strain away (hence delicatus?); delitescere, lurk aside; demere, take away; demerere, deserve of a person; demetiri, measure off; demigrare, emigrate; deminuere, lessen; demordere, bite off; demori, die off; demorari, detain; demovere, move away; demutare, change from a former condition; depellere, drive away; deperire, be lost, die for love off; depingere, paint a copy off; deplantare, take off a shoot; deportare, convey away; deponere, demand; deprehendere, lay hold (among others?), detect; depromere, draw forth; deputare (Col.), cut off (also 4); deradere, scrape off; derivare, draw off; derogare, repeal in part; desciscere, desert; describere, copy, mark off; desecare, cut off; designare, mark off; desinere, leave off; desistere, stand off, give up; despuere, spit away; destituere, set apart, abandon; desumere, pick out; desurgere, rise from; detergere, wipe off; determinare, mark off; deterere, wear away; deterrere, frighten off; detondere, clip off; detorquere, twist, turn aside; detrahere, take away; detruncare, lop off; devehere, carry away; devellere, pull away; devenerari (Tib.), deprecate (see also 3); deverti, turn aside; devocare, summon away.*

4. *From oneself: dedere, give up; dedicare (see also 5), dedicate; deferre, hand over from oneself; delegare, make over; demandare (chiefly Suet.), give in charge; dependere, pay away; or pay down? (cf. 1); deperdere, lose; deponere, resign (see 1); despondere, promise, esp. betroth; deprecari, pray against; devenerari (Tib.), deprecate; devovere, vow away.*

5. *Completely; sometimes formally or methodically: dealbare, whitewash; deambulare, promenade; deamare, be desperately in love with; deasciare (Plaut.), dress with the axe; deblaterare (Plaut.), prate away; declamare, declaim; declarare (make clear), declare; decurrere, run in procession (also 1); dedicare, declare (Lucr., see also 4); dedolare, be smooth; defingere, fashion; deflere, lament; deformare, form, depict (see also § 990); defraudare, defraud; degrunnire (Phædr. 5. 5. 27), grunt in his turn; dejurare, swear; delamentari (Ov.), lament; delenire, cajole; delibutus, besmeared; delingere, lick up; demirari, wonder at; demitigare (Cic.), mollify; demonstrare, point out; demurmurare (Ov.), mutter over; denarrare, recount; denegare, refuse; denigrare, blacken; denominare, specify by name; denotare, mark out; denubere, marry in set form; denudare, lay bare; deosculari, kiss; depactisci, bargain for; depeculari, pillage; deplangere (Ov.), bewail; deplorare, weep bitterly, give up for lost; depolire (Plaut., Plin.), polish off; depopulari, lay waste; depravare, pervert; deprehendere, catch, detect; deproperare, hasten; depurgare, clean out; deputare, consider (see also 3); derellinqvere,*

*abandon*; *derigescere*, become rigid; *deruncinare* (Plaut.), plane away, i.e. cheat; *desaltare* (Suet.), dance off, i.e. accompany music in dancing; *deservire*, be devoted to; *desiccare* (Plaut.), dry up; *desidère*, remain inactive; *desolare*, leave alone; *despoliare*, despoil; *desudare*, sweat; *detexere*, weave; *devastare*, lay waste; *devenenari* (Ov.), worship (see also 4); *deverberare*, cudgel; *devincere*, conquer completely; *devitare*, avoid; *deurere*, burn up.

6. 'Till exhaustion' ('down to the dregs'):

1919

*debacchari*, rave oneself out; *debellare*, bring a war to an end; *decantare*, sing over and over; *decernere* (sift down), decide; *decertare*, fight a matter out; *decoquere*, boil down, become bankrupt; *decrepitus* (Plaut.), one that has rattled itself out; *dedolère* (Ov.), cease to grieve; *defatigare*, tire out; *deservescere*, boil away; *defetisci*, get tired out; *deflagrare*, burn itself out (see also 1); *deflorescere*, cease flowering, fade; *delassare*, weary out; *deliquescere*, melt away; *delitigare* (Hor.), scold to exhaustion; *deluctari*, wrestle it out; *depascere*, feed a flock on; *depasci*, consume; *depudère*, cease to blush; *depugnare*, fight it out; *desavire*, rage to exhaustion; *despumare* (Sen.), cease foaming; *detonare*, thunder away, cease thundering.

7. 'Un-:' negative.

1920

*dearmare*, disarm; *deartuare* (Plaut.), unlimb; *decorticare* (Plin.), unbark; *decrescere* (grow downwards), decrease; *dedecère*, be unbecoming; *dedecorare*, disgrace; *dedignari*, think unworthy; *dediscere*, unlearn; *dedocère*, unteach; *deesse*, be wanting; *desecare*, cleanse of dregs; *deglutinare* (Plin.), unglue; *dehonestare*, disgrace; *dejungere* (Plaut.), unyoke; *dejuvare* (Plaut. once), cease to help; *delapidare* (Cato), stone, i.e. clear of stones; *delibrare* (Col.), bark, trees; *denasare* (Plaut.), unnose; *deonerare*, disburden; *depilare* (Mart.), deprive of hair; *deplere*, draw off, empty; *deserere* (disjoin), desert; *desipere*, be tasteless, foolish; *desperare*, be hopeless; *despumare*, clear from froth (see also 5); *desquamare*, scale, i.e. clear from scales; *desvescere*, disuse; *detegere*, uncover; *detendere*, unstretch, of taking down tents; *detrectare*, decline.

8. In a bad sense: *decipere* (catch up? comp. 1), deceive; *delinquere*, leave undone (comp. 3 and 7); *deludere* (make game of, comp. 6), delude; *deridere*, laugh to scorn (comp. 6); *detestari*, abominate (comp. 6).

9. Of uncertain origin: *deliberare* (from *libra*? thoroughly weigh), deliberate; *desiderare*, miss, regret.



*Dis-*, *di-* 'in twain'; in composition only: (see also § 986).

1923

*dis-* before sharp mutes and *s*; *dir-* before a vowel or *h*; *di-* before flat mutes, liquids, nasals, semi-vowels (but *disjungo*; and cf. § 144. 2), and *sp*, *sc*, *st*. Before *z*, *s* is assimilated.

1. 'Asunder,' 'in different directions': *discedere*, part asunder, 1924 depart; *disceptare* (pull apart?), decide, be judge; *discernere*, separate, distinguish; *discerpere*, tear in pieces; *discludere*, cleave asunder; *discludere*, keep apart; *discoquere*, boil to rags; *discrepare*, ring differently; *discruciare*, torture to pieces; *discumbere*, stretch oneself out at table; *discurrere*, run about; *discutere*, break up; *didere*, distribute; *diducere*, divide; *directus* (Plaut.), crucified; *dirimere* (*dis emere*), break off; *disfamare*, noise about; *differre*, carry different ways, put off, differ; *diffindere*, cleave asunder; *diffingere* (Hor.), alter; *diffiare* (Plaut.), blow apart; *diffuere*, flow different ways; *diffringere*, break in pieces; *diffugere*, flee asunder; *diffundere*, diffuse; *digere*, distribute, digest; *digladiari*, fight on different sides; *digredi*, go aside; *dilabi*, melt away; *dilacerare*, tear in pieces; *dilaniare*, tear in pieces; *dilapidare*, throw away like stones; *dilargiri*, give away; *dilatare*, spread out; *diluere*, wash out, dissolve; *dimanare*, flow different ways; *dimetiri*, measure out; *dimetari*, lay out by measurement; *dimicare*, fight on different sides; *diminuere* (Plaut., Ter.), break to pieces; *dimittere*, send in different directions; *dimovere*, divide; *diribere* (*dis habere*), distribute voting-tickets; *disiacere* (*dis jacere*), scatter; *dispalari* (Nep.), wander about; *dispalescere* (Plaut.), be noised abroad (*palam*); *dispandere*, stretch out; *disparare*, arrange in different divisions; *dispellere*, disperse; *dispensare*, pay out, dispense; *disperdere*, squander, ruin; *dispergere*, scatter; *dispartire*, distribute; *dispescere* (Plin.), (feed apart), separate; *displodere*, burst with a clap; *disponere*, arrange; *dispungere* (prick apart), in accounts, check off; *disquirere*, examine into in different directions; *diripere*, tear asunder; *dirumpere*, burst asunder; *diruere*, demolish; *dissæpire*, hedge apart; *dissecare*, cut up; *disseminare*, sow about; *dissentire*, think differently; *disserere* (Lucr., Col.), scatter seed; *disserpere* (Lucr.), creep about; *disaldere* (sit apart), differ; *disallire*, jump apart; *dissipare*, disperse; *dissolvere*, unloose; *dissultare*, leap asunder; *distabescere* (Cato), melt away; *distare*, stand apart, be distant; *distendere*, distend; *disterninare*, separate; *distinere*, keep apart; *distingvere* (mark differently), distinguish; *distrahere*, pull apart; *distribuere*, distribute; *distringere*, bind apart, distract; *disturbare*, knock to pieces, disturb; *divaricare*, stretch asunder; *divellere*, rend asunder; *divendere*, sell piecemeal; *diverberare*, beat asunder; *divertere*, turn in different directions; *divexare*, pull asunder; *dividere*, part; *divulgare*, publish abroad.

2. 'Un-': *discalceatus* (Suet.), *unshod*; *discingere*, *ungird*; *dis-* 1925  
*conducere* (Plaut.), *be injurious*; *disconvenire* (Hor.), *disagree*;  
*disbulare* (Stat.), *unclasp*; *diffidere*, *distrust*; *diffiteri*, *disavow*;  
*disjungere*, *disjoin*; *diloricare* (Cic.), *uncorslet*; *displacere*, *displease*;  
*disserere* (*unravel?*), *discuss*; *dissimulare*, *make unlike*, *conceal*; *dis-*  
*sociare*, *disunite*; *dissuadere*, *dissuade*; *dissuere*, *unsew*.

3. 'Exceedingly': *differtus*, *crammed*; *dilaudare* (Cic.), *praise* 1926  
*warmly*; *discupere*, *eagerly desire*; *disperire*, *utterly perish*; *dispu-*  
*dere* (Plaut., Ter.), *be greatly ashamed of*; *dissavari* (Q. Cic.),  
*kiss warmly*; *distsedere*, *be quite weary of*.

4. 'Among,' 'through,' 'between': *dignoscere*, *distinguish*; *dirigere* 1927  
*(better derigere)*, *keep straight, direct*; *dijudicare*, *decide, distinguish*;  
*diligere*, *single out, love*; *diluocescere* (*of dawn breaking through*),  
*to become light*; *dispicere*, *see through*; *disserenare*, *of weather clear-*  
*ing up*.

5. *dinumerare*, *count up singly*; *disputare* (*reckon over*), *go* 1928  
*through the details, discuss*.

**Erga**; *used only with a substantive in accusative case. In Plautus* 1929  
*and Terence it is sometimes put after the substantive, if that be a per-*  
*sonal pronoun.*

1. *Usually of (a) friendly or (b, more rarely) unfriendly feel-* 1930  
*ings or action towards persons or personal interests.*

(a) 'Towards.'

*Satis spectata erga te amicitia mea.* (Ter. *And.* 820.)

*Fidem erga imperatorem suum Gn. Pompeium conservare volue-*  
*runt.* (Cæs. C. 84.)

*In meis moribus erga meos necessarios declarandis mansuetissimus*  
*videbar.* (C. Or. 2. 49.)

*Merita Pompeii summa erga salutem meam.* (C. Att. 8. 3.)

*Magistratus Campani suprema erga memoriam Germanici munia*  
*fungebantur.* (Tac. A. 3. 2.)

(b) 'Towards' or 'against.'

1931

*Sic absens amicitiam gerebat, ut non beneficiis mutuis, sed communi*  
*odio, quod erga regem susceperant, contineri viderentur.*

(Nep. 14. 10.)

Siquid med erga tu hodie falsa dixeris. (Pl. *Asin.* 20.)

Quibus iris impulsus nunc in illam iniquos sum? quæ nunquam quidquam erga me commisitast quod nollem, et sæpe meritam quod vellem scio. (Ter. *Hec.* 485—487.)

Res secundæ valent commutare naturam, et raro quisquam erga bona sua satis cautus est ('on his guard against his own advantages.' Curt. 10, 1, § 40).

3. 'In relation to,' only post-Augustan.

1932

Isque illi finis inicitæ erga domum suam fuit. Haud multo post flagitia uxoris noscere ac punire adactus. (Tac. *A.* 11. 25.)

At illis vix decumæ super porciones erant, isdem erga aliena sumptibus quibus sua prodegerant. (Tac. *H.* 1. 20.)

**Ergo:** used without a substantive dependent, and as a postposition with genitive case. 1933

1. 'In consequence,' 'therefore,' 'then.'

Ergo iste metus me macerat, quod ille fastidiosus, ne sententiam mutet. (Pl. *Mil.* 1233.)

Istuc ego satis scio. Si. Quid ergo, quod scis, me rogas? (Pl. *Ps.* 914.)

Ergo illi intellegunt quid Epicurus dicat, ego non intellego. (C. *Fin.* 2. 4.)

Itaque ergo perpaucis effugium patuit. (L. 9. 31. fin.)

Exitus ergo quis est? O gloria! vincitur idem nempe. (Juv. 10. 159.)

2. *As postposition:* 'in consequence,' 'for the sake of.' Rare, except in old language. 1934

Mulieres genas ne radunto neve lessum funeris ergo habento. (Lex XII Tab. ap. C. *Leg.* 2. 23.)

Porco piaculo facito. Sic verba concipito. Ejus rei ergo te hoc porco piaculo immolando bonas preces precor, ut sis volens propitius mihi. (Cato *R. R.* 139.)

Communis exempli et fidei ergo visum, ut te salvum velimus. (Letter of the consuls to Pyrrhus. ap. Gell. 3. 8.)

Hæc est origo ludorum Apollinarium, victoriæ non valetudinis ergo, ut plerique rentur, votorum factorumque. (L. 25. 12.)

Hostibus intulerant ignem formidinis ergo. (Lucr. 5. 1246.)

**Ex, e** (sometimes **eo** in composition before **f**), 'out of,' as preposition with ablative case only. Compare also **exim** (Ritschl, *Opusc.* II. 456), 'from that,' **exinde**. 1935

In some expressions the one or other form of the prepositions is exclusively, or almost exclusively, used: thus **e** *republica*, **e** *re nata*, **e** *regione*, **e** *vestigio*, **e** *medio*; otherwise usually **ex**, e.g. **ex** *senatus consulto*, **ex** *sententia*, **ex** *lege*, **ex** *tempore*, **ex** *facili*, **ex** *parte*, &c.

1. Of place: 'out of,' 'from.'

1936

*Clanculum ex ædibus me dedi foras.* (Pl. *Mos.* 683.)

*Quid mirum igitur ex spelunca saxum in crura ejus incidisse?*  
(C. *Fat.* 3.)

*Collis ex planicie editus.* (Cæs. *G.* 2. 8.)

*Herennium negotiatorem ex Africa pro testimonio dixit securi esse percussum.* (C. *Verr.* 1. 5.)

*Pœnus mancipia Romana et ex ergastulo militem verbis obterebat.*  
(L. 24. 15.)

*Non ex vita sed ex domo in domum visus est migrare.* (Nep. 25. 22.)

*Dormientis spectatores metuis ne ex somno excites?* (Pl. *Merc.* 160.)

2. 'From off.'

1937

*T. Labienus ex loco superiore, quæ res in nostris castris gererentur, conspicatus.* (Cæs. *G.* 2. 26.)

*Judices aut e plano aut e quæstitoris tribunali legum et religionis et noxæ de qua cognoscerent admonebat.* (Suet. *Tib.* 33.)

*Sæpe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus præliantur.* (Cæs. *G.* 4. 2.)

*In nostra acie Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare visi sunt.*  
(C. *N.D.* 2. 2.)

*Quorum magno numero interfecto Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sontiatum oppugnare coepit ('without halting,' 'while on the march.' Cæs. *G.* 3. 21).*

**So e** *vestigio*, 'without delay' ('starting from the footprint'); **ex** 1938 *tempore*, 'on the spur of the moment.'

*Medicos coegi, et e vestigio eo sum profectus prima luce.*  
(Sulp. ap. C. *Fam.* 4. 2.)

*Sine hoc ipsa illa ex tempore dicendi facultas inanem modo loquacitatem dabit.* (Quint. 10. 3. 28.)

3. *Of the source.*

193

Nolebam ex me morem progigni malum. (Pl. *Ps.* 492.)

Quæ gerantur, accipies ex Pollione. (C. *Fam.* 1. 6.)

Licuit mihi majores ex otio fructus capere. (C. *R. P.* 1. 4.)

De solibus istis duobus studeo ex te audire quid sentias. (Ib. 11.)

Sunt gradus officiorum, ex quibus, quid cuique præstet, intellegi possit. (C. *Off.* 1. 45.)

Ex hac nimia licentia ait ille, ut ex stirpe quadam, exsistere et quasi nasci tyrannum. (C. *R. P.* 1. 44.)

Quoniam igitur tum ex me doluisti, nunc ut duplicetur tuum ex me gaudium, præstabo. (C. *Fam.* 16. 21.)

Ex Transalpinis gentibus majores nostri triumphaverunt.

(C. *Phil.* 8. 6.)

Arcis præsidium etiam sine invecto (frumento), quia pauci erant, ex ante præparato sustineri potuit. (L. 26. 20.)

4. *Of the basis or standard; 'in accordance with.'*

194

Hoc nomine abs te sestertium miliens ex lege repeto. (C. *Cecil.* 5.)

Initio scripsi totius facti tui iudicium non tam ex consilio tuo quam ex eventu homines esse facturos. (C. *Fam.* 1. 7. 5.)

Cum ita, uti mos erat, censor dixisset 'ut tu ex animi tui sententia uxorem habes?' 'Habeo equidem,' inquit, 'uxorem, sed non hercle ex animi mei sententia.' (Gell. 4. 20.)

Senatus existimat colonias provinciæ Galliæ recte atque ordine exque re publica fecisse et facere. (C. *Phil.* 3. 15.)

Veritus est ex anni tempore et inopia aquæ, ne siti conficeretur exercitus. (Sall. *J.* 50.)

Facit heredem ex deunce et semuncia Cæcinam, ex duabus sextulis M. Fulcinium. (C. *Cæsin.* 6.)

Ab seriis rebus ludicrum ex multo ante præparato, et in Asiæ civitates et ad reges missis qui denuntiarent, magno apparatu Amphipoli fecit. (L. 45. 32.)

Ex qua parte Panurgus erat Fannii non erat HS IIII<sup>00</sup>; ex qua parte erat Roscii amplius erat HS CCCI<sup>000</sup>: nemo enim illum ex trunco corporis spectabat, sed ex artificio comico æstimabat.

(C. *Rosc. Com.* 10.)

Si omnia deorsum e regione ferrentur et ad lineam, nunquam foret ut atomus altera alteram posset attingere ('in accordance with a ruling,' i.e. 'in a straight line.' C. *Fin.* 1. 6.)

Erat e regione oppidi collis ('in the line of the town,' i.e. opposite to it. Cæs. *G.* 7. 36.)

So also in many adverbial phrases; e.g. *ex æquo*, *equally*; *ex bona fide*, *in good faith*; *ex contrario*, *on the contrary*; *ex composito* (L. 25. 9), *as agreed*; *ex confesso* (Quint. 3. 5. 3), *admittedly*; *ex commodo* (Sen. Ep. 46. 1), *at leisure*; *ex destinato* (Sen. Clem. 1. 7. 3), *of set purpose*; *ex diverso*, *on the contrary, in opposite directions*; *ex facili* (Ov. Am. 2. 2. 55), *easily*; *ex inopinato* (C. N. D. 2. 48), *on the sly*; *ex integro*, *afresh*; *ex merito* (Sall. J. 85. 37), *on the ground of desert*; *ex more*, *in accordance with custom*; *ex pari* (Sen. Ep. 59. 14), *on a level*; *ex parte aliqua, nulla, omni, magna ex parte*, *in some, no, every, a great degree*; *ex supervacuo* (L. 2. 37), *superfluously*; *e re tua*, *to your interest*; *ex toto* (Plin. II. 17. 17), *entirely*; *ex vano* (Liv. 33. 31), *without cause*; *ex vero* (Ov. Am. 3. 9. 4), *well-grounded*; *ex usu esse*, *to be serviceable*; &c.

In the jurists frequently, *ex empto*, *ex vendito*, *ex testamento agere, teneri* &c., *to sue (be liable) upon a purchase, a sale, a will, i.e. the action rises out of and is based on a purchase, &c.*

5. *Of the whole from which a part is taken: 'out of,' 'from' among.*

Vellem aliqui ex vobis robustioribus hunc male dicendi locum suscepisset. (C. Cael. 3.)

Aliud nihil ex tanta præda domum suam deportaverat.

(C. R. P. 1. 14.)

Ex Afranianis interficiuntur T. Cæcilius et præter eum centuriones IIII. (Cæs. G. 1. 46.)

6. *Of the material or earlier condition:*

1943

Exponit multum argentum, non pauca etiam pocula ex auro.

(C. Verr. 4. 27.)

Non enim (ille sapiens) est e saxo sculptus aut e robore dolatus.

(C. Ac. 2. 31.)

Erat totus ex fraude et mendacio factus. (C. Clu. 26.)

Pæan aut e longa est et tribus brevibus, aut e totidem brevibus et longa. (C. Or. 64.)

Celeriter ex tertia acie singulas cohortes detraxit, atque ex his quartam instituit. (Cæs. G. 3. 89.)

Tua virtute nobis Romanos ex amicis amicissimos fecisti.

(Sall. J. 10.)

Set eccum, qui ex incerto faciet mihi, quod quæro, certius.

(Pl. Pseud. 965.)

In later imperial Latin we have frequently such expressions as *ex quæstore*, *ex consule*, &c.

Puppienum et Clodium Balbinum Augustos appellavit ambos ex consulibus. (Lampr. Gord. 22.)

7. 'Mixed with,' 'in:' of the vehicle of medicines, &c.; also in 1945 the blending of colours and flavours (of the 'ground'?).

Resinam ex melle Ægyptiam vorato; salvom feceris. (Pl. Merc. 119.)

Ex jure hesterno panem atrum vorant. (Ter. Eun. 929.)

Malum miscetur cum sale et pipere atque ex his edendum est...

Rubi cacumina, in aqua decocta et ex oleo atque aceto assumpta, efficacia sunt. (Cels. 4. 26 = 19.)

Hic frutex est ramosus crassiore ac molliore quam laurus folio, baxis e nigro rufis ('blackish red.' Plin. 15. 30. 39).

Mellis sequens probatio ut sit odoratum et ex dulci acre ('sweetish sharp.' Plin. 11. 15, § 15).

#### 8. Of time: 'After.'

1946

Ex ea die ad hunc diem quæ fecisti, in iudicium voco.

(C. Verr. 21. 12.)

Romæ vereor ne ex K. Jan. magni tumultus sint. (C. Verr. 16. 9.)

Cotta ex consulatu est profectus in Galliam. (C. Brut. 92.)

Diem ex die ducere Hæduli. (Cæs. G. 1. 16.)

Cœpi egomet inter vias aliam rem ex alia cogitare. (Ter. Eun. 631.)

In composition (see also §§ 986, 990):

1947

**Ex** before vowels, **h**, and sharp consonants; **ef**, sometimes **ec**, before **f**; otherwise **e**. An initial **s** is frequently dropped after **ex**.

1. *Out, forth*: **exagitare**, disturb; **exardescere**, flame out; **exau-** 1948  
**dire**, catch a sound, hear; **ebullire**, bubble out, utter boastfully; **ex-**  
**candescere**, give out a white heat; **excedere**, go out, go beyond; **excel-**  
**lere**, be eminent; **excernere**, sift out; **excerpere**, pick out; **excidere**, fall  
out, be lost; **excidere**, cut out; **excire**, excite, rouse out; **excipere**, take  
out, except, catch (from), succeed in order; **exclamare**, cry out; **exclu-**  
**dere**, shut out, batch; **excrecere**, grow out; **excubare**, lie out; esp.  
on guard; **exculcare** (Plaut.), trample out; **excurrere**, run out; **ex-**  
**cutere**, shake out; **edicere**, declare publicly; **edisserere**, **edissertare**, set  
forth in full; **edere**, give forth; **educere**, lead forth; **exercere** (drive  
out?), set to work, employ, exercise; **effari**, utter; **efferre**, bring forth,  
express (see also 5); **efficere**, produce effect; **effingere**, express; **efflare**,  
breathe out; **efflorescere**, blossom forth; **effluere**, flow out; **effodere**,  
dig out; **effricare**, rub off; **effringere**, burst open; **effugere**, flee away;  
**effulcire**, stuff out; **effulgere**, gleam out; **effundere**, pour forth; **effu-**  
**dire**, prate; **egerere**, carry forth; **egredi**, come forth, overstep; **ex-**  
**halare**, breathe out; **exhaustire**, draw out; **exhibere**, hold forth, pro-

*duce*; *ejaaculari*, shoot forth; *elocare*, cast out; *exigere*, drive forth, export, exact, test; *eximere*, take out; *exire*, go out; *ejurare*, resign or reject on oath; *elabi*, slip away; *elargiri*, expend in gifts; *elavare*, wash out; *elicare*, entice out; *elidere*, knock out, crush; *eligere*, select; *eliquare*, strain out; *elocare*, let out on hire; *eloqui*, utter; *elucare*, shine forth; *eluctari*, struggle out; *eluere*, wash out; *emancipare*, convey away legally, set free from the father's power; *emanere* (Stat.), stay away from; *emanare*, flow forth; *ementiri*, state falsely; *emergere*, rise up from; *emetere* (Hor.), reap off; *emicare*, spring out; *emigrare*, remove habitation; *eminere*, project; *emittere*, send or let out; *emovere*, move out; *emungere*, wipe the nose, cheat; *enasci*, issue forth; *enatare*, swim out; *enavigare*, sail forth (also 2); *enitere*, shine forth; *eniti*, bring forth children (see also 5); *enubere*, marry away (i.e. out of one's rank, country, &c.); *enucleare* (take out kernels), explain; *enuntiare*, disclose, declare; *exoriri*, rise forth; *expandere*, spread out; *expedire*, extricate, procure, be useful; *expellere*, drive out; *expendere*, pay out; *expersisci* (begin to stretch myself out), awake; *experiri* (get out for oneself), try; *expiare* (press out?), plunder; *expiscari*, fish out; *explodere*, hiss off; *explorare* (shout out?), spy out, search; *exponere*, set out, disembark; *exporrigere*, stretch out; *exportare*, carry out; *exprimere*, squeeze out (also under 4); *expromere*, draw forth; *expungere*, cross out; *reckon up* (comp. *dispungere*); *exquirere*, search out; *eradere*, scrape out; *erepere*, creep out; *eripere*, snatch away; *erogare*, spend by public consent; *eructare*, belch out; *erumpere*, break out; *eruere*, dig out; *exscindere*, extirpate; *exscreare*, cough up; *exscribere*, write out, copy; *exsculpere*, scratch out; *exsecare*, cut out; *exserere*, thrust out; *exsibilare*, hiss off; *exsillire*, spring forth; *existere*, emerge, spring up; *exsolvere*, unloose; *exspatiari*, walk out; *expectare*, look out, await; *exspargere*, sprinkle out; *exspirare*, breathe out; *exsplendescere*, shine forth; *exspuere*, spit out; *exstillare*, trickle out; *exsudare*, sweat out; *exsugere*, suck out; *exsuscitare*, rouse from sleep; *extendere*, stretch out; *exterere*, rub out; *extorquere*, wrench out; *extrahere*, drag out; *extrudere*, push out; *extuberare*, swell out; *extunderè*, strike out; *exturbare*, turn out, drive away; *evadere*, go forth; of events, turn out; *evagari*, wander forth; *evanescere*, vanish away; *evahere*, carry out; *evellere*, pluck out; *evenire*, come out, issue; *everrere*, sweep out; *evidens* (looking forth), clear; *evigilare*, awake out of sleep? (see also 4); *evocare*, summon; *evolare*, fly out; *evolvere*, roll out, i.e. unroll; *evomere*, vomit forth; *evulgare*, publish forth; *exuberare*, come forth in abundance; *exululare*, bowl out; *exundare*, well out; *exuere*, put off clothes.

2. Throughout, to the end: *exanclare* (serve out? Cf. *ancilla*, 1949 and *Fest.* p. 19, v. *ancillæ*), go through toils, &c.; *ebibere*, drink up; *excarnificare*, cut to pieces; *edormire*, sleep through; *exadare*, eat up; *effigere*, strike dead (so *effictim*, passionately, to death);



*elugere*, mourn the full time for; *emerere*, serve out one's time; *emetiri*, traverse; *emolere* (Pers.), grind up, i.e. consume; *emulgere*, milk out, i.e. drain; *enarrare*, explain in detail; *enavigare* (Hor.), sail over; *enumerare*, count over; *exolescere* (grow out), pass away; *explere*, fill to the brim, glut; *epotare*, drain; *exsequi*, follow up, execute; *extinguere*, stamp out, extinguish; *exsudare*, toil through; *evanescere*, vanish away; *exungere* (Plaut.), ruin in unguents; *exurere*, burn up.

### 3. *Thoroughly*: often pleonastic.

1959

*exacerbare*, irritate; *exacuere*, sharpen; *exaedificare*, build up; *exaequare*, equal (better referred to § 990); *exalbescere*, become white; *exarescere*, become dry; *exaugere*, increase; *excalfacere* (Plin.), beat; *excavare*, hollow out; *excolare*, improve; *excoquere*, boil away, melt, dry up; *excruciare*, torture; *ediscere*, learn, esp. by heart; *edocare*, teach, inform; *edomare*, tame; *effervescere*, boil up (neut.); *emagitare*, demand vehemently; *exhilarare*, make glad; *exhorrescere*, shudder at; *exhortari*, encourage; *exinanire*, make empty; *existimare*, judge, think; *elaborare*, exert oneself; *elangvescere*, languish away; *elevare*, lighten, disparage; *elimare*, polish; *eludere*, make sport of (see also 4); *emaciare*, emaciate; *ematurescere*, grow riper or soft; *emerere*, earn (see also 2); *eminari* (Plaut.), threaten; *emirari* (Hor.), wonder at; *emollire*, soften; *emori*, die away; *emundare* (Col.), clean out; *emunire*, fortify; *emutare* (Quint.), change; *enarrare*, explain in detail; *enecare*, stifle (in Plaut. frequently = plague); *enotescere* (post-Aug.), become known; *enotare*, note down; *enumerare*, recount; *emutrire*, feed, bring up; *exoptare*, greatly wish; *exordiri*, begin a web; *exornare*, fit out; *exosculari*, kiss fondly; *expalescere*, grow pale; *expavescere*, become greatly frightened; *expetescere*, *expetere*, seek eagerly; *explare*, atone for, purify; *expingere*, paint; *explanare*, make plain (or to § 960, *ex plano*); *expolire*, polish; *exposcere*, earnestly ask; *expostulare*, demand vehemently, quarrel; *exprobrare*, make a reproach of; *expurgare*, cleanse; *exputare*, prune, consider; *exsarcire*, repair; *exsatiare*, *exsaturare*, sate; *exsecrari*, execrate (but cf. § 990); *exsiccare*, dry up; *exsorbere*, suck up; *exspoliare*, spoil; *exsternare*, frighten; *exstimulare*, goad on; *exsuperare*, mount above; *exsurdare*, deafen; *extenuare*, make thin, lessen; *extergere*, wipe; *exterrere*, frighten; *extimescere*, be in a panic; *evacuare*, empty out; *evalescere*, become strong; *evastare* (Liv.), devastate; *everberare*, strike; *evilesce* (post-Aug.), become vile; *evincire*, bind round; *evincere*, vanquish; *evitare*, avoid; *exulcerare*, make sore.

4. 'Till success:' *oblandiri*, gain by coaxing; *exoccare*, make<sup>1951</sup> blind; *excantare*, charm forth; *excogitare*, think out; *edolare*, brew out, i.e. make by brewing; *elucubrare*, produce by lamplight toil; *alu-*

dere, win, frustrate (also 3); emendicare (Suet.), obtain by begging; emercari, prevail on by bribes; exorare, obtain by pleading; expalpāre (Plaut.), coax out; exprimere, express, portray (also 1); expugnare, gain by fighting; exterebrare, get by boring; evigilare, effect by watching (also 1); evincere (Dig.), recover by eviction.

5. 'Up.' exestuare, boil up; exaggerare, pile up; exarare, plough 1952 up, write; efferre, carry up (see also 1); elevare, lift up (also under 3); eradicare, root up; enīti, climb up (see also 1); erigere, set up, raise; exstirpare, pull up by stalk, extirpate; exstruere, build up; exsultare, jump up; exurgere, rise up; extollere, lift up; evadere, go up; evertere, turn up, overturn.

6. un-: (some may be formed from compound adjectives, and 1953 therefore not strictly belong here), exanimare, deprive of breath or life; exaugurare, unconsecrate; excalceare, unsboe; excusare, excuse; edentare, render toothless; exdorsuare (Plaut.), take out back; effrenare, unbridle; exheredare (from exheres?), disinherit; emendare, free from faults; enervare, enervate; enodare, unravel; exoculare (Plaut.), render eyeless; exonerare, disburden; exossare, bone, i.e. take out bones; explicare, unfold, make plain; erudire (cf. § 974), instruct; erugare (Plin.), take out wrinkles, smooth; exsaniare, free from matter; eviscerare, disembowel.

**Extra** (Extrad, S.C. de Bacc.); used both without a substantive 1954 dependent and with a substantive in accusative case. 'Outside.'

1. Of place: 'outside.' (a) Without a substantive dependent.

Tota maceries opere tectorio levigatur extra intraque. (Col. 8. 15.)

Extra et intra hostem habebant. (Cæs. G. 3. 69.)

Et sensibus et animo ea quæ extra sunt percipimus atque comprehendimus. (C. N. D. 2. 59.)

Helleborum medetur extra corporis eruptionibus, pituitæ inlinitum. (Plin. 25, § 61.)

Argumenta extra petita, nisi ad aliquam præsentis disceptationis utilitatem ingenio adplicantur, nihil per se valent.

(Quint. 5. 11.)

(b) With accusative case.

1955

Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi. (Cæs. G. 1. 10.)

Solane beata vita, quæso, relinquitur extra ostium limenque carceris? (C. T. D. 5. 5.)

Ne calonem quidem quemquam extra munitionem egredi passus est. (Cæs. G. 6. 36.)

2. *Of time: with accusative (rare).*

1956

In consulatu pedibus fere, extra consulatum sæpe adaptata sella per publicum incessit. (Suet. *Aug.* 53.)

3. *Metaphorically. (a) Without a substantive: 'not included.'* 1957

'Quædam' inquit 'pluris sunt quam venierunt, et ob hoc aliquid mihi extra pro illis, quamvis empta sint, debes.' (Sen. *Ben.* 6. 15.)

(b) *With accusative: 'not included in,' 'free from,' 'without.'* 1958

Fuere tamen extra conjurationem complures, qui ad Catilinam initio profecti sunt. (Sall. *C.* 39.)

Ab reo pecuniam, cum iudex esset, clam atque extra ordinem accepit. (C. *Clu.* 31.)

Histrionum, si paulum se movit extra numerum, exhibentur, exploditur. (C. *Par.* 3. 2. 26.)

Filius meus extra sortem urbi præerit (*i. e. without casting lots.*

L. 4. 45.)

Sed mehercules, extra jocos, homo bellus est. (C. *Fam.* 7. 16.)

Conclamavere privatos suo periculo peccaturos: rempublicam non extra noxam modo sed extra famam noxæ conservandam esse.

(L. 34. 61.)

Cavendum est ne extra modum sumptu et magnificentia prodeas.

(C. *Off.* 1. 39.)

Seponi et occultari possunt, ut extra ruinam sint eam quæ impendit.

(C. *Att.* 11. 24.)

Pedius ait inæqualitatem maxillarum oculorum brachiorum (servi), si nihil ex ministerio præstando subtrahit, extra redhibitionem esse. (Dig. 21. 1. 12.)

4. *'Not including,' 'except.'*

1959

(a) *Without a substantive: only in legal phrase, extraquam.*

Ego tamen habeo tectiorem exceptionem; 'Extraquam si ita negotium gestum est, ut eo stari non oporteat ex fide bona.'

(C. *Att.* 6. 1.)

Ne navigato citra Calycadnum neu Sarpedonium promuntoria, extraquam si qua navis pecuniam in stipendium aut legatos aut obsides portabit. (Foedus ap. L. 38. 38.)

(b) *With accusative case; 'besides.'*

1960

Offendi, extra ducem paucosque præterea, reliquos ita crudeles ut ipsam victoriam horrerem. (C. *Fam.* 7. 3.)

Ad hæc quæ interrogatus es, responde: at extra ea cave vocem mittas. (L. 8. 32.)

In: used both with accusative and with ablative cases.

1961

In old language the forms *endo*, *indu* occur. Ennius uses them in his epic poem, *endo* with the accus. *indu* with the abl. Lucretius has *indu manu* and *endo mari*, and *jacere indu* for *inlicere*. (Munro, *Lucr.* I. 82.)

1. Place *wherein*, literally and metaphorically.

1962

(a) With accusative: 'into.'

Influxit enim non tenuis quidam e Græcia rivulus in hanc urbem.

(C. R. P. 2. 19.)

Quæ in castra Siculorum nuntiata sunt. (L. 25. 28.)

Cohortes v in Eburones misit. (C. G. 5. 24.)

Antemnatium exercitus in fines Romanos incursionem facit.

(L. I. II.)

Hoc facio semper, ut, quicumque calamus in manus meas venerit, eo sic utar tamquam bono. (C. Q. Fr. 2. 14.)

Querebantur Decemviri se in ordinem cogi. (L. 3. 51.)

Equitatu immisso celeriter hostes in fugam dat. (Cæs. G. 5. 51.)

Tum se in conspectum nautis paulisper dedit. (C. Verr. 5. 33.)

Abin hinc in malam rem cum suspitione istac, scelus.

(Ter. And. 317.)

Si constitueris cuiquam te advocatum in rem præsentem esse venturum. (C. Off. 1. 10.)

Si vim faciet, in jus ducito hominem. (Ter. Eun. 768.)

In dicionem<sup>1</sup> se suaque omnia Romanis permiserunt. (L. 40. 49.)

Implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent. (Cæs. G. I. 51.)

Multo prius me conlocavi in arborem. (Pl. Aul. 698.)

Adulescenti aurum dabis, ubi erit locata virgo in matrimonium.

(Pl. Trin. 782.)

Omnia hæc tum intereunt, cum in naturam aliam convertuntur.

(C. N. D. 3. 12.)

(b) With ablative: 'in.' (The ablative, not the accusative is usual with verbs of 'placing.') 1963

Vigebat in illa domo mos patrius et disciplina. (C. Sen. II.)

<sup>1</sup> The accusative is often found in MSS. (see Böcking's fourth edit. of *Gaius*, p. 342) in expressions such as *in potestatem populi Romani esse* (Liv. 2. 14); *tenentur in adoptionem* (Gai. 2. 136); *esse in amicitiam* (C. Cæcil. 20); *in gratiam habere* (Sall. J. III); *in mentem esse* (Ter. Haut. 986); &c. These seem to have arisen from a confusion of the accusative and ablative, which in these words differed little in pronunciation or in writing (e.g. *potestate*, *potestatem*). For, as Madvig remarks, we do not find *in vincla habere* for *in vinculis habere*.

Quod genus endo marist Aradi fons. (Lucr. 6. 890.)

Non illud jusjurandum per cæsos in Marathone ac Salamine propugnatores reipublicæ satis manifesto docet, præceptorem ejus Platonem fuisse? (Quint. 12. 10. 24.)

Cæsar is erat in barbaris nomen obscurius. (Cæs. C. 1. 61.)

Socrates in eo libro loquitur cum Critobulo. (C. Sen. 17.)

Aut suis finibus Germanos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. (Cæs. G. 1. 1.)

Attendere te volo quæ in manibus sunt. (Brut. ap. C. Fam. 11. 13.)

Plures in eo loco sine vulnere quam in prælio aut fuga intereunt.

(Ib. 2. 35.)

In fuga salutem sperare dementia est. (Sall. C. 58.)

Monumentum sceleris audaciæque suæ voluit esse in conspectu Italiæ, vestibulo Siciliæ, prætervectione omnium qui ultro citroque navigarent. (C. Verr. 5. 66.)

Eodem anno inter populum Carthaginiensem et regem Masinissam in re præsentî disceptatores Romani de agro fuerunt.

(L. 40. 17.)

Ad populum aut in jure aut apud ædilem res est. (Plaut. Men. 587.)

Proficiscitur tentaturus urbes, quæ in dicione Ptolemæi essent.

(L. 33. 19.)

In quam angusto domus meæ fortuna posita est!

(Sen. Rhet. Contr. 7. 18, § 3.)

Pecuniam dum vult in prædio ponere, non posuit sed abiecit.

(C. Tull. 6.)

Curio te in matrimonio stabili et certo conlocavit. (C. Phil. 2. 18.)

(c) *With ibi, in phrase inibi 'therein.'*

1954

Marsuppium habeat: inibi paulum præsidî. (Pl. Pers. 125.)

## 2. *Place whereon.*

1955

(a) *With accusative: 'on to.'*

Tum, lituo in lævam manum translato, dextra in caput Numæ imposita, precatus ita est. (L. 1. 18.)

Civem Romanum sublatum esse in crucem dixerunt. (C. Verr. 1. 5.)

Rejecit se in eum flens quam familiariter. (Ter. And. 136.)

Jam pluribus scalis in murum evadebant. (L. 25. 24.)

Ademptum tibi jam faxo omnem metum, in aurem utramvis otiose ut dormias. (Ter. Haut. 342.)

(b) *With ablative: 'on.'*

1966

Ipse coronam habebat unam in capite, alteram in collo.

(C. Ferr. 5. 11.)

'Non hominem occidi.' Non pasces in cruce corvos.

(Hor. Ep. 1. 16. 48.)

In eo flumine pons erat. (Cæs. G. 2. 5.)

Cogitabat legiones ad urbem adducere et in cervicibus nostris collocare. (C. Fam. 12. 23.)

3. *Of time.*

1977

(a) *With accusative: 'to,' or 'for.'*

Romani ab sole orto in multum diei stetere in acie. (L. 27. 2.)

Ad cenam hominem in hortos invitavit in posterum diem.

(C. Off. 3. 14.)

Legati pacem fœdusque in triginta annos impetraverunt. (L. 9. 37.)

Dixit in noctem atque etiam nocte inlatis lucernis. (Plin. Ep. 4. 9.)

(Dicebant) antea subitariis gradibus et scæna in tempus structa ludos edi solitos. (Tac. A. 14. 20.)

Omnia ordine exposuit patribus, ingenti hominum et in præsens lætitia et in futurum spe. (L. 30. 17.)

(b) *With ablative: 'in the course of,' or 'at.'*

1968

Bruto curata hoc anno talenta circiter c: Pompeio in sex mensibus promissa cc. (C. Att. 6. 3.)

Nihil in vita vidit calamitatis A. Cluentius. (C. Clu. 6.)

Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones ab extremo contrarias facit.

(C. N. D. 2. 40.)

In tali tempore nulli novus magistratus videbatur mandandus.

(L. 22. 35.)

Cæsar satis habebat in præsentia hostem rapinis pabulationibus populationibusque prohibere. (Cæs. G. 1. 15.)

Sed eccum ipsum video in tempore huc se recipere. (Ter. Ph. 464.)

Hoc ipso in itinere alteræ dum narrat, forte audiui. (Ter. Haut. 271.)

(c) *With ibi; inibi, 'on the point of being done.'*

1969

Quod speramus aut inibi esse aut jam esse confectum. (C. Phil. 14. 2.)

4. *In reckoning.*(a) *With accusative: of the unit of measure, 'against,' 'for.'* 1970

Quadragesena milia nummum in singulos judices distributa.

(C. Clu. 27.)

Quingenos denarios pretium in capita, quod redderetur dominis, statuerant. (L. 34. 50.)

Scaptius centesimis renovato in singulos annos fœnore contentus non fuit. (C. Att. 6. 3.)

Mihi scito in dies majori curæ esse dignitatem tuam. (C. Fa. 2. 18.)

Is se ternis nummis in pedem tecum transegisse dicebat.  
(C. Q. Fr. 3. 1. 2.)

*Compare:* Hæc civitas mulieri in redimiculum præbeat, hæc in col-  
lum, hæc in crinis. (C. Verr. 3. 33.) 1971

(b) *With ablative:* 'among.'

In primo congressu circiter LXX ceciderunt, in his Q. Fulginius.  
(Cæs. C. 1. 46.) 1972

Peto ut eum complectare, diligas, in tuis habeas. (C. Fam. 13. 78.)

Erat certe tuum nihil præter virtutem in bonis ducere. (C. Fin. 3. 3.)

Partus ancillæ sitne in fructu habendus, disseretur inter principes civitatis. (C. Fin. 1. 4.)

5. *Of the position or circumstances.*

1973

(a) *With accusative, (1) of the direction, or line:* 'along,' 'in accordance with.'

Fossam et maceriam sex in altitudinem pedum præduxerat.  
(Cæs. G. 7. 69.)

Intervallum justum arborum, si aretur solum, quadragenî pedes in terga frontemque, in latera vicini; si non aretur, hoc in omnis partes. (Plin. 17, § 202.)

Cives Romani servilem in modum cruciati. (C. Verr. Act. 1. 5.)

Hunc pellis ænis in plumam squamis auro conserta tegebat.  
(Verg. A. 11. 770.)

Hoc in speciem varietatemque opus non deforme. (Cæs. G. 7. 23.)

Crescebat urbs munitionibus, cum in spem magis futuræ multitudinis, quam ad id quod tum hominum erat, munirent. (L. 1. 8.)

Loquendo plura scribendoque dedita opera, quæ in rem non essent, dies consumptus est. (L. 26. 17.)

Condiciones, in quas pax cum tyranno fieret, has conscripsit.  
(L. 34. 35.)

Fatetur, iudicium quin acciperet in ea ipsa verba quæ Nævius edebat, non recusasse. (C. Quint. 20.)

Significatio fit per ambiguum, cum verbum potest in duas plurive sententias accipi, sed accipitur in eam partem, quam volt is qui dixit. (Corn. 4. 53.)

Non nominatim qui Capuæ, sed in universum qui usquam coissent conjurassentve adversus rempublicam, quæri senatus jussit.  
(L. 9. 26.)

Mari virtutem in majus celebrare. (Sall. J. 73.)

Priusquam id sors cerneret, in incertum, ne quid gratia momenti faceret, in utramque provinciam (*see* 6. a) quod res desideraret supplementi, decerni placuit. (L. 43. 12.)

Inter duas acies Etrusci, cum in vicem his atque illis terga darent, occisione occisi. (L. 2. 51.)

Illi inter sese brachia tollunt in numerum. (Verg. G. 4. 175.)

Videlicet it in orbem ista tempestas et sine delectu vastat omnia.

(Sen. Dial. 6. 15.)

Bene credi tibi scio: itaque in antecessum dabo. (Sen. Ep. 118. 1.)

(a) *In post-Ciceronian writers, also of the effect intended.*

1974

Semper et somno et cibo in vitam, non in voluptatem utebatur.

(Vell. 2. 41.)

An ille dolebit, qui audiet me, qui in hoc dicam, non dolentem?

(Quint. 6. 2. 27.)

(b) *With ablative: 'in,' used of the circumstances in which a person is involved.*

Cæteri reges aut bello victi in amicitiam a vobis recepti sunt, aut in suis dubiis rebus societatem vestram adpetiverunt.

(Sall. J. 14, § 5.)

Magno in ære alieno majores etiam possessiones habent.

(C. Cat. 2. 8.)

Tanta usus est Atticus moderatione, ut neque in sestertio vicies parum se splendide gesserit, neque in sestertio centies affluentius vixerit quam instituerat. (Nep. 25. 14.)

Fulvium Vulturnus tenuerat amnis, rates ad trajiciendum exercitum in magna inopia materiæ ægre comparantem. (L. 26. 9.)

Dicit Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Hæduæ fuisse. (Cæs. G. 2. 14.)

Ei servi apud Chrysogonum sunt in honore et pretio. (C. R. Am. 28.)

Consul percussis omnibus ipse satis, ut in re trepida, impavidus turbatos ordines instruit. (L. 22. 5.)

Compulsos in cavas valles, cum exitus haud in facili essent, circumveniunt. (L. 3. 8.)

De centurionibus tamen res est in integro. (C. Fam. 3. 20.)

In Æquis varie bellatum adeo, ut in incerto fuerit, vicissent victine essent. (L. 5. 28.)

*So also in many adjectival or adverbial phrases: in æquo (L. 39. 37), on an equality; in difficili (L. 3. 66), a matter of difficulty; in obscuro (L. præf.), obscure; in obvio (L. 37. 23), in the way to meet; in occulto (L. 25. 23), secretly; in primo (L. 25. 21), first, in front; in promiscuo (L. 7. 17), open promiscuously; in propinquo (L. 25. 15), near; in summo (L. 27. 18), at the top.*



6. *Of the object.*

(a) *With accusative: 'towards,' 'against,' 'for,' used of the particular person or thing, who or which is the object of feeling or action.*  
 Ita ad impietatem in deos, in homines adjunxit injuriam.

(C. N. D. 3. 34.)

Vos prius in me strinxeritis ferrum, quam in vos ego. (L. 7. 40.)  
 Hoc in bello sæpius vindicatum est in eos, qui contra imperium in hostem pugnaverant. (Sall. C. 9.)

Mihi quidem a pueritia quasi magistra fuit illa in legem Cæpionis oratio. (C. Brut. 44.)

Altera sententia est, ut nostra in amicos benevolentia illorum erga nos benevolentia pariter æqualiterque respondeat. (C. Lel. 16.)

Petunt Hædúi ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur.

(Cæs. G. 2. 14.)

Rex scripsit nullam pecuniam Gabinio, nisi in rem militarem, datam.

(C. Rab. P. 12.)

Quoad in opus lapidis opus erit, pro lapide et manupretio dominus redemptori in pedes singulos septem dabit. (ap. Dig. 19. 2. 30.)

Pila manu sævosque gerunt in bella dolones. (Verg. A. 7. 664.)

Quis in hanc rem fuit arbiter? (C. Rosc. C. 4.)

Incurrit quæstio an venenum habere in mortem suam liceat.

(Sen. Rhet. Contr. 7. 18, § 7.)

Pomptinæ manubiæ, quæ perducendo ad culmen operi destinatæ erant, vix in fundamenta suppeditavere. (L. 1. 55.)

(b) *With ablative: 'in,' 'in the case of,' used of the particular person or matter, in dealing with whom or which an action or quality is exhibited.*

Velitis jubeatis uti L. Valerius L. Titio jure legeque filius siet, utique ei vitæ necisque in eum potestas siet, uti patri endo filio est? (Formula adrogationis ap. Gell. 5. 19.)

Etiam L. Torquatus elegans in dicendo, in existimando admodum prudens, toto genere perurbanus. (C. Brut. 68.)

Ecquem autem Cæsare nostro acriorem in rebus gerendis, eodem in victoria temperatiorem aut legisti aut audisti?

(Cæl. ap. C. Fam. 8. 15.)

Vexatur ab omnibus, primum in eo libro quem scripsit de vita beata. (C. T. D. 5. 9.)

Atque hoc idem in parentis, in amici, re aut periculo fecerit.

(C. Off. 1. 43.)

Refugit animus eaque dicere reformidat, quæ L. Antonius in Parmensium liberis et conjugibus effecerit. (C. Phil. 14. 3.)

Non ille Achilles talis in hoste fuit Priamo. (Verg. A. 2. 541.)

In composition: (see also §§ 985, 986, 990).

1979

(Key refers some of these compounds to a preposition *an* = *dva*; see above, p. 365.)

1. 'In,' 'into:' sometimes the compound is merely an equivalent for the simple verb and the preposition *in* with its case. 1980

*inædificare*, build in (see also 2); *inæstunare* (Hor.), rage in; *in-arare*, plough in = bury; *imbuerere*, steep; *incidere*, cut in, engrave; *inclare* (Lucr. 3. 963), reproach (cautare, engrave? comp. *ocillare*, Pl. Am. 183); *inclinare*, bend in, stoop; *includere*, shut in; *incolere*, dwell in; *incoquere*, boil in, dye; *incutere*, strike into; *indere*, put in or on; *inducere*, lead in (see also 2); *inire*, go in; *inerrare*, wander in; *in esse*, be in; *infarcire*, stuff in; *inficere*, dip in; *infigere*, fix in; *infindere* (Verg.), cut in; *infricare*, rub in; *infulcire* (post-Aug.), cram in; *infundere*, pour in; *ingenerare*, implant; *ingerere*, throw in; *ingignere*, engender; *ingredi*, step in; *inhabitare*, dwell in; *inhærescere*, stick in; *inlcere*, throw in (see also 2); *inlgere* (Varr.), drive in; *inlabi*, fall into; *immeare*, go in; *immergere*, plunge in; *immigrare*, move into; *immiscere*, mix in; *immordere*, bite into; *immugire*, bellow in; *immulgere*, milk into; *innasci*, be born in; *innubere*, marry into; *innutrire*, bring up in; *innocare* (Col.), barrow in; *in-ocular* (Col.), inoculate; *inolescere*, grow in; *impedire*, entangle; *inplectere*, entwine; *implicare*, fold in, entwine, entangle; *impluere*, rain into; *inportare*, carry in; *imprimere*, dig in, impress; *inquirere*, search into; *inrẽpere* (Irreptare, Stat.), steal in; *inrumpere*, burst in; *inruere*, force one's way in; *inscribere*, inscribe; *inculpere*, carve in; *inserere*, plant in; *inserere*, insert; *insillire*, leap into; *insinuare*, get in by windings; *inspicere*, look into; *inspirare*, breathe into; *instillare*, trickle in; *instituere*, set in, set up; *instruere*, build in, draw up; *insuere*, sew in; *insusurrare*, whisper into; *interere*, rub in; *intexere*, weave in; *inurere*, burn in; *invehere*, carry in; *invisere*, go into; *invocare*, call in, invoke; *involvere*, wrap up.

2. 'On,' 'at,' 'over.' (This meaning is sometimes scarcely distinguishable from 1.) 1981

*inædificare*, build up, i.e. obstruct by building (see also 1); *in-aurare*, gild over; *imminere*, hang over; *incantare*, sing charms over; *incerare*, cover with wax; *incidere*, fall on; *incingere*, gird round; *incrustare*, incrust; *incubare*, hatch; *incumbere*, lie over, apply oneself to; *indormire*, go to sleep over; *inducere*, cover over, cross out (see also 1); *induere*, put on; *infricare*, crumble over; *ingerere*, heap on; *inlcere*, throw over (see also 1); *injungere*, attach to; *inlacrimare*, weep over; *inlgere*, tie on; *inlinere*, smear over; *includere*, mock at; *inluminare*, light up (perhaps belongs to § 990); *imminere*, hang over; *immolare*, sprinkle with meal, sacrifice; *immori*,

*die over; immorari, linger over; immurmurare, murmur at; innatare, float on; innectere, tie on; inniti, lean on; innare, float on; inopacare (Col.), overshadow; impallescere, grow pale over; impendēre, hang over; imperare, put upon; enjoin; impingere, fasten on; imponere, place on; inquinare, befoul; inridere, laugh at; inscendere, mount on; insenscere, grow old over; insidēre, sit on; insidēre, settle on; insistere, stand over, persist in; inspergere, sprinkle on; inspuere, spit on; insternare, cover; instare, insist on; insurgere, rise on; integere, cover over; inumbrare, overshadow; inundare, overflow; inungere, anoint; invadere, rush into; inventire, come upon, find; investire, clothe over; invidere, look at with ill intent; invigilare, spend waking-time over.*

3. 'Against,' 'towards.' *incedere, march on, befall; incessere, 1931 attack; inclamare, invoke, abuse; increpitare, increpare, upbraid (see also 4); incurrere, run against; indicere, proclaim, appoint; inferre, bear against; ingruere, assail; inhiare, gape after; inlidere, dash against; impellere, drive against; impendēre, spend on; implorare, call to entreat; imprecare, call down upon by prayer; impugnare, fight against; imputare, reckon against; inrogare, propose a fine upon a person; instigare, instigvere, goad on; insumere, employ upon; intendere, stretch towards, aim; intorquere, burl at; intueri, look at; invadere, go against (see also 1); involare, fly at.*

4. Almost pleonastic: it is especially frequent with inchoative forms.

*imbibere, drink in; inacescere, become sour; inaequare (Cæs.), make level; inamarescere (Hor.), taste bitter; inambulare, walk about; inardescere, glow; inarescere, dry up; inaudire (Indaudire, Plaut.), hear, esp. hear secretly; inaugurare, take auguries, consecrate; incalescere, grow hot; incalfacere, make hot; incandescere, glow; incanescere, become hoary; incendere, set fire to; incipere, take up, commence; incitare, urge on; increbescere, gain ground; increpare, make a noise (see also 3); increscere, grow; incudere, stamp; incusare, accuse (or from in causam? § 990); indicare, declare; indolescere, feel pain; indurescere, become hard; inescare, allure; infervescere, get hot; inflectere, bend in; infremere (Verg.), bellow; infrendere (Verg.), gnash the teeth; infrenare, rein in; infringere, break; infuscare, make dusky; ingeminare, redouble; ingemiscere, ingemere, groan; ingravare, weigh down; ingravescere, grow heavy; inhibere, hold in, restrain; of rowing, back water; inhorrescere, inhorre, shudder; inlicere, inveigle; inlucescere, dawn; immutare, change; innotescere, become known; innovare, renew; innuere, give a nod; inpartire, share, bestow; impetere, attack; impetrare, obtain; implere, fill; inradere, scrape; irrigare, water; irrorare, bedew; inrubesce (Stat.), grow red; insecare, cut up;*

*insequi*, follow up; *inservire*, be devoted to; *inservare* (Stat.), observe; *insibilare*, hiss; *insonare*, sound; *instrepere*, creak; *insuescere*, accustom; *intabescere*, pine away; *intendere*, stretch out (also 3); *intepere*, *intepescere*, become hot; *intonare*, thunder; *intremere*, tremble; *intumescere*, swell up; *inurgere* (Lucr.), push; *invalescere*, become strong; *invertere*, turn upside down; *investigare*, track out; *inveterare*, render old; *inveterascere*, become old.

5. *Of reversal: inconciliare* (Plaut.), unfelt, hence pull to pieces<sup>1984</sup> (*conciliare*, felt from *cilia*, hairs); *ignoscere*, unknow, i.e. forget, pardon; *insimulare*, unmask, charge with crime. (Key, *Essays*, pp. 15, 16. See above, under *an*, p. 365.) In *indescere* (Plin. *Ep.*), misbecome, the *in* is apparently negative; which meaning is common in adjectives, but in no other verbs. (*Inprobare*, &c. is from *inprobus*, &c.)

6. *Of uncertain origin: incohare*, begin; *inquam*, quoth I; *ir-<sup>1985</sup>*  
*ritare*, stir up; *instaurare*, repair; *invitare*, invite.

**Infra:** used both without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in accusative case. 'Below.'

1. *In space:* 'below.' (a) *Without a substantive dependent; sometimes infra quam.*

Tunc putes, cum in uno mundo ornatus hic tam sit mirabilis, innumerabilis supra infra, dextra sinistra, ante post, alios dissimilis, alios ejusdem modi, mundos esse? (C. *Ac.* 2. 40.)

Earum litterarum exemplum infra scripsi. (Pomp. ap. C. *Att.* 8. 6.)

Stomachi autem partes eæ, quæ sunt infra quam id quod devoratur, dilatantur, quæ autem supra contrahuntur. (C. *N. D.* 2. 54.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

1987

Infra autem hanc (Saturni stellam) propius a terra Jovis stella fertur. (C. *N. D.* 2. 20.)

Delata confestim materia omnis infra Veliam. (L. 2. 7.)

Accubueram apud Volumnium Eutrapelum et quidem supra me Atticus, infra Verrius, familiares tui. Infra Eutrapelum Cytheris accubuit. (C. *Fam.* 9. 26.)

2. *Of time.* (a) *Without a substantive dependent: 'later.'*

1983

Quid quod Ciceronis temporibus paulumque infra, fere quotiens S littera media vocalium longarum vel subjecta longis esset, geminabatur. (Quint. 1. 7, § 20.)

(b) *With an accusative: 'later than.'*

Homeri etsi incerta sunt tempora, tamen annis multis fuit ante Romulum; siquidem non infra Lycurgum fuit. (C. Brut. 10.)

3. *In number, size, or worth. (a) Without a substantive dependent.* 1989

Alter (crocodilus), illi similis, multum infra magnitudine, in terra tantum odoratissimisque floribus vivit. (Plin. 28, § 108.)

Piso vix Tiberio concedere, liberos ejus, ut multum infra, despectare. (Tac. A. 2. 43.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

1990

In eum diem ternadena (ova gallinis) subicito æstate tota, hieme pauciora, non tamen infra novena. (Plin. 18, § 231.)

Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos. (Cæs. G. 6. 28.)

In poetis non Homero soli locus est aut Archilochus aut Sophocli aut Pindaro, sed horum vel secundis vel etiam infra secundos. (C. Or. 1.)

Neque Neroni infra servos ingenium. (Tac. A. 13. 2.)

**Inter:** *used with a substantive<sup>1</sup> in accusative case.*

1991

1. *Of space. 'Between,' 'among.'*

Paucos inter media præsidia hostium præmiserat. (L. 44. 3.)

Erat inter ceteram planitiem mons saxeus. (Sall. J. 92.)

Inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum non amplius quinque aut senis milibus passuum interfuit. (Cæs. G. 1. 15.)

Alius inter manus e convivio tamquam e proelio auferebatur. (C. Verr. 5. 11.)

Iidem porticum extra portam Trigeminam inter lignarios fecerunt. (L. 35. 41.)

Buten aversum cuspidem fixit lorica galeamque inter. (Verg. A. 11. 692.)

2. *Of time: (a) 'in the course of;' (b) 'between.'*

1992

(a) Germani exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos quatuordecim tectum non subissent. (Cæs. G. 1. 36.)

Eos omnes præter Turpilium inter epulas obtruncant. (Sall. J. 66.)

Inter hæc jam præmissi Albani erant equites. (L. 1. 29.)

Inter simul complorationem feminarum puerorumque, simul nefandam cædem milites oppidum intrarunt. (L. 41. 11.)

<sup>1</sup> In Valer. Flac. 5. 637; 6. 220, &c., it is used adverbially.

So *interdius*, 'in the day time' (§ 514).

Apparently with ablative in *interea*. *Comp. interibi* (Plaut.); 1993  
*interim*, 'meanwhile,' in Quintilian also, 'sometimes.'

*Interea miles...in Cariamst profectus: te interea loci cognovi.*

(Ter. Eun. 125.)

Abi et istuc cura. *Interibi* ego ad amicam meam volo puerum  
mittere. (Pl. Pers. 165.)

Hæc interim ad veniam valent, interim ad probationem criminis.

(Quint. 5. 10. 34.)

(Other ordinary examples of *interea*, *interim* in §§ 1458, 1732, 1733.)

(b) Hoc si Romæ fieri posset, certe aliqua ratione expugnasset iste, 1994  
ut dies xxxv inter binos ludos tollerentur, per quos solos judi-  
cium fieri posset. (C. Verr. 2. 52.)

Ne quid inter cæsa et porrecta, ut aiunt, oneris mihi addatur aut  
temporis. (C. Att. 5. 18.)

### 3. Metaphorically of position and relation.

(a) 'Included in,' 'among.'

1995

Inter multos saucios consul spe incerta vitæ relatus. (L. 2. 17.)

Nupsit A. Melino adulescenti in primis, ut tum habebatur, inter  
suos et honesto et nobili. (C. Clu. 5.)

Florus in eloquentia Galliarum princeps, alioqui inter paucos diser-  
tus. (Quint. 10. 3. 13.)

Longo intervallo iudicium inter sicarios hoc primum committitur.  
(C. Rosc. Am. 5.)

Tandem Ligures inter cetera etiam vigiliis confecti terga dederunt.  
(L. 36. 38.)

(b) 'Between.'

1996

Qua de re inter Marcellos et Claudios patricos centumviri judica-  
runt. (C. Or. 1. 39.)

Alias revocabat eos, inter quos jam decreverat, decretumque mutabat,  
alias inter aliquos contrarium sine ulla religione decernebat ac  
proximis paulo ante decreverat. (C. Verr. 1. 46.)

Inter Siciliam cæterasque provincias in agrorum vectigalium ratione  
hoc interest, quod, &c. (Ib. 3. 6.)

(c) Reciprocal relation: 'with,' 'from,' 'to' one another.

1997

Di nulla re egentes et inter se diligunt et hominibus consulunt.

(C. N. D. 1. 44.)

Concede hinc domum, ne nos inter nos congruere sentiant.

(Ter. Haut. 510.)

Furtim nonnumquam inter sese aspiciebant. (C. Cat. 3. 5.)

Ex eo quidem libro ego, quod inter nos liceat dicere, millesimam  
partem vix intellego. (C. Att. 2. 4.)

In composition (see also § 990):

1. *Between, among*: *intercalare*, insert a day, month, &c.; -*ca-* 1998  
*dere*, come between, interpose; -*cipere*, intercept; -*currere*, be among;  
 -*dicere*, forbid; -*equivitare* (Liv.), ride between; -*esse*, be a difference,  
 be of importance; -*fluere*, flow between; -*fodere* (Lucr.), pierce;  
 -*fari* (Liv.), interrupt by speaking; -*fulgere* (Liv.), shine between;  
 -*fusus*, flowing between, spotted; -*jacere*, lie between; -*iacere*, throw  
 between; -*labi*, glide between; *intelligere* (pick among), perceive,  
 understand; *interlinere*, smear between; -*loqui*, interrupt in speaking;  
 -*lucare* (Plin.), let light through; -*lucere*, shine out, or through;  
 -*luere*, wash between; -*meare* (Plin.), go between; -*micare* (Stat.),  
 glitter among; -*miscere*, mix among; -*nasci*, grow between; -*nigrare*  
 (Stat.), be interspersingly black; -*nitere*, shine among; -*noscere*, distin-  
 guish between; -*pellare*, interrupt by speaking, disturb; -*plicare*, in-  
 terweave; -*ponere*, interpose; -*pungere*, interpunctuate; -*putare*,  
 prune here and there; -*quiescere*, rest between whiles; -*radere* (Plin.),  
 scrape here and there; -*rogare* (question among statements), cross-  
 question; -*scribere* (Plin. Ep.), write between; -*serere*, plant be-  
 tween; -*serere* (Ov.), link in; -*sistere*, make a pause; -*sonare* (Stat.),  
 sound among; -*stingere*, chequer; -*strepere* (Verg.), screech among;  
 -*texere*, interweave; -*turbare* (Plaut.), cause a disturbance; -*vellere*,  
 pluck out here and there; -*venire*, intervene; -*visere*, interpose with  
 a visit, visit occasionally; -*volare* (Val. Fl.), fly between.

2. *Of breaking a continuity*: esp. of death, often = Engl. off. 1999  
 (Key Lat. Gr. § 1342. I, Essays p. 47, sqq. refers the following and  
 many of the preceding words to a preposition equivalent to Germ.  
*unter-* (when an inseparable prefix). This *inter* he considers to be  
 a comparativ form, the *t* being parasitical (cf. § 48), of the prepo-  
 sition *in* = *ava*.)

*interarescere*, dry up; -*bibere* (Plaut.), drink up; -*bitere* (Plaut.),  
 perish; -*cidere* (fall through), be lost; -*cidere*, cut through; -*cludere*,  
 shut off, block up; -*acere* (do away), destroy; -*fringere* (Cato), break  
 off; -*imere*, take off, kill; -*ire*, die; -*minari* (Plaut., Ter.), forbid with  
 threats; -*mittere*, leave off, drop; -*mori*, die away; -*necare* (Plaut.),  
 kill off; -*rumpere*, break off; -*scindere*, cut through, cut off; -*aspire*,  
 bedge off; -*stingere*, stamp out; -*trahere* (Plaut.), draw off;  
 -*vertere*, turn away, embezzle.

*interjungere* in Martial is once used for *unioke*.

3. *Together*: *interjungere*, yoke together; -*nectere*, tie together; 2000  
 -*primere* (Plaut.), squeeze together; -*stringere* (Plaut.), draw to-  
 gether, throttle; -*struere*, (Sil.), join together.

**Intra, intro, used without a substantive dependent; intra also with a substantive in the accusative case.** 2001

1. *Of space.*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent: intra, 'within,' intro, of motion within.*

Primos ab oriente Garamantas, post Augilas, et ultimos ad occasum Atlantas audimus. Intra, si credere libet, vix jam homines, magisque semiferi. (Mela 1, § 23.)

Deni in quadram pedes, quadraginta per oram, intra centum erunt. (Quint. 1. 10. 43.)

Me sequimini intro huc ambæ. (Ter. Hec. 793.)

(b) *With accusative case: intra, both of being and of moving within either a space or a boundary line.* (Cf. Gell. XII. 13.) 2002

Capsenses una modo atque ea intra oppidum jugi aqua, cetera pluvia utebantur. (Sall. J. 90.)

Nulla jam pernicies a monstro illo atque prodigio mœnibus ipsis intra mœnia comparabitur. (C. Cat. 2. 1.)

Alium intra sacra mensæ jura percussit, alium intra leges celebrisque spectaculum fori lancinavit. (Sen. Ir. 1. 2.)

Belgæ Teutonos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi prohibuerunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 4.)

Spectatores receperunt se intra urbem. (L. 7. 11.)

Moles intra teli jactum erat. (Curt. 4. 3. 14.)

Sedentem ipsumque, quem pridie recitaverat, librum intra manus habentem deprehendimus. (Tac. Or. 3.)

2. *Of time; with an accusative: intra, 'within,' also intra... quam.* 2003

Intra vicesimum diem, ingentibus rebus gestis, dictatura se abdicaverunt. (L. 9. 34.)

Omnes intra annum cum stirpe extincti. (L. 9. 30.)

Milites duarum legionum Romanarum intra dies LX, quam in provinciam venit, dimisit. (L. 43. 9.)

Quod dicimus intra dies centum bonorum possessionem peti posse, ita intellegendum est, ut et ipso die centesimo bonorum possessio peti possit, quemadmodum intra kalendas etiam ipsæ kalendæ sunt. (Ulp. ap. Dig. 38. 9. 1.)



3. *Metaphorically with an accusative: intra, 'not going beyond.'* 2004

In omni voce acuta (syllaba) intra numerum trium syllabarum continetur. (Quint. 1. 5.)

Modice hoc faciam aut etiam intra modum. (C. Fam. 4. 4.)

An omnes visuros peccata putem mea, tutus et intra spem venie cautus? (Hor. A. P. 266.)

Utinam Philotas quoque intra verba peccasset. (Curt. 7. 1. 3.)

Neque enim tam refert, qualia sint quæ intra nosmet ipsos composuimus, quam quo modo efferantur; nam ita quisque, ut audit, movetur. (Quint. 11. 3. 2.)

*Intro is loosely compounded with the verbs -ducere, -ire, -ferre, -gredi, -mittere, -rumpere, -spectare, -spicere, -vocare. Also introrsus, introrsum = introversus, &c. Cf. § 512.* 2005

*Intus, 'within,' usually without a substantive, but in a few passages as preposition with an ablative. (Lucilius ap. Char. p. 86, Putsch, says, Intro nos vocat ad se, tenet intus apud se. Quintilian (1. 5. 50), Eo intus et intro sum solœcismi sunt. But, as might be expected from this warning, some instances are found.)* 2006

1. *Without a substantive.* 2007(a) *'From within' (frequent in Plautus).*

Ostium pultabo atque intus evocabo aliquem foras. (Pl. Ps. 604.)

Abeamus intro hinc ad me. St. Atque aliquanto lubentius, quam abs te sum egressus intus. (Pl. Epid. 3. 2. 44.)

(b) *'Within.'* 2008

Ne expectetis dum exeant huc: intus despondebitur; intus transigetur si quid est quod restet. (Ter. Andr. 980.)

Nasica, cum ei ab ostio quærenti Ennium ancilla dixisset domi non esse, sensit illam domini jussu dixisse et illum intus esse.

(C. Or. 2. 68.)

(c) *'To within' = intro.* 2009

Nam cibus atque umor membris adsumitur intus. (Lucr. 4. 1091 and so frequently; see Munro on 6. 23.)

Jamque fores aperit, jam ducitur intus. (Ov. M. 10. 457.)

Metalla nunc ipsæque opes et rerum pretia dicentur, tellurem intus exquirente cura multiplici modo. (Plin. 33, § 1.)

2. *As preposition with ablative.*

2010

Flagrabit stomacho, flamma ut fornacibus intus. (Lucr. 6. 1169.)  
 Tali intus templo divom patriaque Latinus sede sedens Teucros ad  
 sese in tecta vocavit. (Verg. *A.* 7. 192.)  
 Romæ intus cella ædis Fortis Fortunæ de capite signum quod in  
 corona erat in manum sponte sua prolapsum. (L. 27. 11. Cod.  
 Put. *bas cella, i.e. cellam; Madvig reads in cella.*)

**Juxta; used both without a substantive (so also rarely *juxtim*) 2011  
 and with a substantive in the dative and accusative cases.**

1. *Of space: 'close to.'*(a) *Without a substantive.*

2012

Quin socios amicos, procul juxta sitos, inopes potentisque, trahant  
 exscindant. (Sall. *Ep. Mith.* 17.)  
 Ingens ara fuit juxtaque veterrima laurus. (Verg. *A.* 2. 513.)  
 Hanc procul ut vidit—neque enim est accedere juxta ausa.  
 (Ov. *M.* 8. 809.)  
 (Quæ causa est,) cur ea quæ fuerint juxtim quadrata, procul sint  
 visa rutunda? (Lucr. 4. 501.)

(b) *With an accusative case.*

2013

Cæsar juxta murum castra posuit. (Cæs. *G.* 1. 16.)  
 Hæc Tiberius, non mari, ut olim, divisus neque per longinquos  
 nuntios, accipiebat, sed urbem juxta. (Tac. *A.* 6. 45.)

2. *Metaphorically.*(a) *Without a substantive: 'alike,' 'as much,' often with *ac*, 2014  
 ac si.*

Adjecti poenæ ceteri juxta insontes. (L. 24. 5.)  
 Ita cuncti suæ hostiumque vitæ juxta pepercerant. (Sall. *C.* 61.)  
 Sulla litteris Græcis et Latinis juxta atque doctissime eruditus.  
 (Sall. *J.* 95.)  
 Ut scias juxta mecum mea consilia. (Plaut. *Mil.* 234.)  
 Inde ad populandum agrum ducti milites navalesque socii, juxta  
 effusi, ac si in insulis cultorum egentibus prædarentur.  
 (L. 22. 31.)

(b) *With a dative.*

2015

Fabius omittendam rem parvam ac juxta magnis difficilem.

(L. 24. 19.)

Respondit vita se malle excedere quam in metu violentæ mortis  
amicos inimicis juxta ponere. (Val. M. 3. 8, Ext. 5.)

(c) *With accusative: 'next to,' 'close upon,' 'bordering on.'*

2016

Periculosiores sunt inimicitiae juxta libertatem. (Tac. G. 21.)

Ipsi deinde morbi moderationem desiderant, ut neque aliud quam  
expedit neque ejus ipsius nimium sumatur; neque enim conve-  
nit juxta inedium protinus satietatem esse. (Cels. 2. 16.)

Nam populi imperium juxta libertatem, paucorum dominatio regiae  
libidini propior est. (Tac. A. 48.)

Neque ego infitias eo tam sponsiones quam fœdera sancta esse apud  
eos homines, apud quos juxta divinas religiones fides humana  
colitur. (L. 9. 9.)

## Ob; used only as preposition with accusative case.

2017

1. *Of place: 'upon,' i.e. 'before,' 'against.'*

Ob Romam noctu legiones ducere cœpit. (Enn. Ann. 295.)

In Cumanum mihi ob viam venisti. (C. Fam. 2. 16.)

Hicine est ille Telamon, cujus ob os Graii ora obvertebant sua.

(Poet. ap. C. T.D. 3. 18.)

Illic qui lanam ob oculum habebat, nauta non erat. (Pl. Mil. 1430.)

Non mihi mors, non exitium ob oculos versabatur. (C. Sest. 21.)

*Compare also obiter, 'on the way.'*

2. *Metaphorically: 'against,' 'in consideration for.'*

2018

Ager oppositust pignori decem ob minas. Ædiculae item sunt ob  
decem alias. (Ter. Ph. 661.)

Ego pretium ob stultitiam fero. (Ter. And. 610.)

Græcus tragœdus gloriæ sibi ducebat, talentum magnum ob unam  
fabulam datum esse...Isti nunc pretia maxima ob tacendum  
accipiunt. (C. Grac. ap. Gell. 11. 10.)

Obviam ire factionis potentiæ animus subigit...Id frustra an ob  
rem faciam, in vostra manu situm est. (Sall. J. 31. 5.)

Amicum castigare ob meritam noxiam immune est facinus. Ego  
amicum hodie meum concastigabo pro commerita noxia.

(Pl. Trin. 23.)

3. 'In view of' = 'on account of' used both of facts and emotions. 2019

Romulus dicitur ab Amulio rege Albano ob labefactandi regni timorem ad Tiberim exponi jussus esse. (C. R. P. 2. 2.)

An tu ob peccatum hoc esse illum iratum putas? (Ter. Haut. 990.)

Una nocte ignaris hostibus et ob id quietis aliquantum emensus est iter. (L. 25. 35.)

Nec meliores ob eam scientiam nec beatiores esse possumus.

(C. R. P. 1. 19.)

Quam ob rem utrique nostrum gratum admodum feceris.

(C. Lael. 4.)

Nec existimaram Metellum fratrem ob dictum capite ac fortunis a te oppugnatum iri. (Metell. ap. C. Fam. 5. 1.)

Rarely of a future event: 'with a view to.'

2020

Monet hominem, accusatores inimicosque ejus habere in animo pecuniam prætore dare; prætorem tamen ob salutem malle accipere.

(C. Verr. 2. 28.)

Dicit se non hostili animo, sed ob regnum tutandum arma cepisse.

(Sall. J. 102.)

P. Clodius ob expellendum urbe Ciceronem plebeio homini in adoptionem se dedit. (Suet. Tib. 2.)

Servus pecuniam ob libertatem pactus est. (Alf. ap. Dig. 40. 1. 6.)

Obs, ob, in composition (see also §§ 985, 986, 990):

2021

Ob is generally assimilated to **p**, **f**, **c**, **g**; often written (as pronounced, cf. Quint. 1. 7. 7), **op** before **s** and **t**; the **b** of **obs** is omitted in **ostendere**.

1. Over against, against, over, before, as an obstruction: **ob-** 2022  
**ambulare**, walk before or about; **obardescere** (Stat.), glow opposite; **obarare** (Liv.), plough over, i.e. so as to cover; **obcæcare**, make blind by covering; **obcallescere**, grow callous; **occedere**, go up to; **occentare**, sing at, serenade; **occlinere**, sing against, i.e. inauspiciously; **occludere**, shut against; **occulere** (cover over?), conceal; **occupare** (cf. § 970), take so as to prevent, i.e. seize on; **occurrere**, go to meet; **obdere**, place against, shut; **obducere**, draw before or over; **obdurare**, hold out against; **obdurescere**, harden over; **obequivitare**, ride up to; **oberrare**, wander over; **obesse**, be against; **offendere**, strike against; **offerre**, bring before, offer; **officere**, get in the way, obstruct; **offigere**, fix before; **offirmare**, strengthen (against others); **obfringere**, cross-plough; **offulgere**, shine upon; **offundere**, pour over; **obgannire**, yelp at; **objacere**, lie in the way; **obicere**, throw in the way, expose; **obirasci** (Sen.), be angry at; **obire**, meet, go over or through (see also 3); **objurgare**, scold (perhaps from **ob jus agere**,

§ 990); *oblitrare*, *bark at*; *oblidere* (*dash together so as to close*), *squeeze*; *obligare* (*bind so as to close*), *bind up*; *oblimare*, *slime over*; *oblignere*, *smear over*; *oblitterare*, *write over* (or *do something over letters*? *oblitteras*, § 990); *oblivisci* (*cover with black*), *forget*; *obloqui*, *speak against*; *obluctari*, *struggle against*; *obmoliri*, *construct as an obstruction*; *obmurmurare*, *murmur against*; *obmiti*, *struggle against*; *obnubere*, *veil over*; *obnuntiare*, *announce an unfavourable omen*; *obolere*, *emit scent towards*; *operire* (*put over*? cf. vol. i. p. 254), *cover*; *oppangere* (Plaut.), *imprint (a kiss)*; *opperiri*, *put oneself in the way, wait for*; *oppetere*, *go to meet*; *oppicare* (Cato), *pitch over*; *oppignerare* (*pledge against money*), *pawn*; *oppillare*, *stop up*; *opplere*, *stop up, fill*; *opplorare*, *cry against*; *opponere*, *place against*; *oppugnare*, *fight against*; *obrepere*, *steal upon*; *obruere*, *bury*; *obsæpire*, *block up*; *obserare*, *bolt up*; *obserere*, *sow over*; *obsidère*, *sit down before, frequent*; *obsidère*, *blockade*; *obsignare*, *seal up*; *obsistere*, *set myself against*; *obstare*, *stand in the way*; *obstinare*, *fix against*; *obstrepere*, *make a noise so as to drown*; *obstringere*, *bind so as to compress*; *obstruere*, *build against, block up*; *obsuere*, *sew up*; *obsurdescere*, *grow deaf to*; *obligare*, *cover over*; *ostendere*, *hold forth, show*; *ostendere* (post-Aug.), *spread over*; *obtestari* (*call witnesses against*), *protest*; *obtexere*, *weave over*; *obtinere*, *hold firm (against)*; *obtorquere*, *twist towards*, esp. of seizing the throat; *obtrectare* (*handle injuriously*), *disparage*; *obstrudere*, *thrust upon* (see also 3); *obtucri*, *look at*; *obturare*, *block up*; *obumbrare*, *overshadow*; *obvagulare*, *go towards (vagari)?, avail to (vagire)?*; *obvallare*, *fortify*; *obvenire*, *come in the way*; *obversari*, *move before*; *obvertere*, *turn towards*; *obvigilare*, *be watchful against*; *obvolvere*, *muffle up*. Compare *Resistant*, *occurent*, *obstant*, *obstringillant*, *obagitant* (Enn. Sat. 2, ap. Non. P. 147).

2. *Towards*, with the idea of *favour* or *compliance*: *obcedere*, <sup>2023</sup> *hearken to*; *oblectare* (*draw towards*), *delight, amuse*; *oblenire*, *soften*; *obsecundare*, *be compliant*; *obsequi*, *follow compliantly*; *obseruare*, *pay attention to (also watch against)*; *obtemperare*, *restrain oneself in order to gratify*; *obtingere* (*touch so as to benefit*), *befall* (rarely of unfavourable events).

3. *Down* (from the notion of *down upon*?): *occidere*, *fall down*, <sup>2024</sup> *set (of the sun), die*; *occidere*, *cut down, kill, ruin*; *occubare*, *lie down, repose (of the dead)*; *occulcare*, *tread down*; *occumbere*, *fall in death*; *obducere* (*take down*), *drink* (see also 1); *offringere* (*break down?*), *cross-plough* (but see 1); *obire* *go down, die* (see also 1); *obligare*, *bind down, oblige* (but see also 1); *opprimere*, *squeeze, crush*; *obsorbere*, *swallow down*; *obstringere*, *bind down* (also under 1); *obterere*, *crush, disparage*; *obstrudere*, *gulp down* (see also 1); *obtruncare*, *cut down*; *obtundere*, *beat down, blunt*.

4. *Completely*; almost pleonastic: **obarmare** (Hor.), *arm*; **ob-** 2025  
**brutescere** (Lucr.), *grow brutish*; **obcanere** (Tac.), *sound trumpets*;  
**occipere**, *take up*; **obdormire**, *sleep*; **obhaerescere**, *stick fast*; **oblan-**  
**guescere** (Cic.), *languish*; **omittere**, *drop*; **obmutescere**, *become*  
*dumb*; **oboriri**, *rise up*; **obrigescere**, *grow stiff*; **obrodere** (Plaut.),  
*gnaw*; **obsaturare** (Ter.), *satiates*; **obsolescere**, *wear out*; **obstupes-**  
**cere**, *be stupefied*; **obticescere**, *become silent*; **obtorpescere**, *become*  
*numb*; **obturbare**, *disturb*; **obturgescere**, *swell*; **obustus**, *burnt*.

**Obesus** (*overeaten?*), *fat*.

**Palam**; used chiefly without a substantive dependent, sometimes 2026  
 (in post-Ciceronian writers) with an ablative case.

1. *Without a substantive dependent (a)*; 'openly.'

Auferimus aurum omne illis praesentibus palam atque aperte.

(Pl. Bac. 302.)

Jouranto apud quaestorem ad aearium palam luci per Jovem deos-  
 que penateis. (Corp. I. R. 197, i.e. Tab. Bant. 24.)

Arma in templum Castoris luce palam comportabantur. (C. Pis. 10.)

Hæc in foro palam Syracusis, in ore atque in oculis provinciæ, gesta  
 sunt. (C. Verr. 2. 2. 33.)

Verres præteriens, lectica paulisper deposita, non per præstigias, sed  
 palam per potestatem, uno imperio ostiatim totum oppidum  
 compilavit. (C. Verr. 4. 24.)

(b) *Used predicatively with esse, facere, 'public,' 'well-known.'* 2027

Oppido ego interii: palamst res. (Pl. Aul. 721.)

Mitto domestica quæ negari possunt: hæc commemoro quæ sunt  
 palam. (C. Pis. 5.)

Pisces quidem audituus nec membra habent nec foramina, audire  
 tamen eos palam est. (Plin. 10, § 193.)

Nondum palam facto, vivi mortuique per omnes pæne domos pro-  
 miscue complorabantur. (L. 22. 55.)

Hannibal ut palam faceret suis, quo loco Eumenes esset, tabellarium  
 in scapha cum caduceo mittit. (Nep. 23. 11.)

2. *With ablative case: 'in presence of.'*

2028

Hæc severus te palam laudaveram. (Hor. Epod. 11. 19.)

Inde rem creditori palam populo solvit. (L. 6. 14.)

Venus Marte palam semel est Vulcanum imitata. (Ov. A. A. 2. 569.)

**Penes**; used only with accusative case; and almost exclusively with names of persons.

1. 'In the possession of,' 'with.'

Poterat intellegere thesaurum tuum me penes esse.

(Plaut. *Trin.* 1145.)

Edicunt, penes quem quisque sit Cæsaris miles, ut producat.

(Cæs. *C.* 1. 76.)

Si argentum deposuero et is, penes quem depositum fuit, me invito contrectaverit, et depositi et furti actio mihi in eum competit.

(Paulus ap. *Dig.* 16. 3. 29.)

2. *Metaphorically.*

2030

Quasi fundamentum oratoris vides locutionem emendatam et Latinam, cujus penes quos laus adhuc fuit, non fuit rationis et scientiæ sed quasi bonæ consuetudinis. (C. *Brut.* 74.)

Beneficia vostra penes optimos, non audacissimos forent.

(Sall. *J.* 31, § 16.)

Penes quos igitur sunt auspicia more majorum? Nempe penes patres. (L. 6. 41.)

Cadent, quæ nunc sunt in honore vocabula, si volet usus, quem penes arbitrium est et jus et norma loquendi. (Hor. *A. P.* 72.)

Quid? cum Picens excerpens semina pomis gaudes, si cameram perculisti forte, penes te's? (Hor. *S.* 2. 3. 274.)

Plures ejus rei causas afferebat, potissimam penes incuriam virorum feminarumque. (Tac. *A.* 4. 16.)

**Per**; used only with accusative case. Compare however its semi-adverbial use in combination with adjectives, e.g. *per mihi mirum est*, &c. § 986.

1. *Of space.*

(a) *Of passing through, or along.*

2031

Mihi quidem videtur Brutus noster jam vel coronam auream per forum ferre posse. (C. *Att.* 14. 16.)

Natura oculos membranis vestivit, quas perlucidas fecit, ut per eas cerni posset. (C. *N. D.* 2. 57.)

Elephanti per artas præcipientes vias magna mora agebantur.

(L. 21. 35.)

Occursant per obliqua montani (*on the flanks?* L. 21. 34).

Nobis cum urbe simul positæ traditæque per manus religiones sunt.  
(L. 5. 51.)

Subibant alii aliis in custodiam valli stationesque, donec per omnes suffragium iret. (L. 25. 37.)

(b) *Of occurrence in different parts: 'throughout.'*

2033

Amici tui per provinciam atque imperium tuum pecunias regi crediderant. (C. Fam. 1. 7, § 6.)

Animai semina corporibus nostris inmixta per artus. (Lucr. 3. 393.)

Invitati hospitaliter per domos. (L. 1. 9.)

Præsiidiis inde dispositis per recepta oppida, Romam decessere.

(L. 8. 13.)

Rufus Egnatius per omnia gladiatori quam senatori propior.

(Vell. 2. 91.)

2. *Of time: 'in the course of.'*

2034

Nulla res per triennium, nisi ad nutum istius, judicata est.

(C. Verr. Act. 1. 5.)

Duo fuerunt per idem tempus dissimiles inter se, sed Attici tamen.

(C. Brut. 83.)

Experiri juvat, utrum alios repente Carthaginienses per viginti annos terra ediderit. (L. 21. 41.)

3. *Of that which helps or does not obstruct.*

2035

(a) *'Through,' 'by the agency of,' 'by the aid of.'*

Quæ domi gerenda sunt, ea per Cæciliam transiguntur.

(C. Rosc. Am. 51.)

Plura proferre possim detrimenta publicis rebus quam adjumenta per homines eloquentissimos importata. (C. Or. 1. 9.)

Lentulus, quoscumque moribus aut fortuna novis rebus idoneos credebatur, aut per se aut per alios sollicitabat. (Sall. C. 39.)

Si poterit fieri ut ne pater per me stetisse credat, quominus hæc fierent nuptiæ, volo. (Ter. Andr. 699.)

Qui per tutelam aut societatem aut rem mandatam aut fiduciæ rationem fraudavit quempiam, in eo, quo delictum est majus, eo poena est tardior? (C. Cæcin. 3.)

Per aliquot dies, quum jam expirasset Tarquinius, celata morte, per speciem alienæ fungendæ vicis suas opes firmavit. (L. 1. 41.)

*Often in oaths and entreaties.*

Quid enim est, per deos, optabilius sapientia? (Ib. 2. 2.)

Intra paucas horas, jurantes per quicquid deorum est, fidem obstrinximus. (L. 23. 9.)



Quod ego per hanc te dextram oro et genium tuum, per tuam fidem perque hujus solitudinem te obtestor, ne abs te hanc segreges neu deseras. (Ter. *And.* 289.)

(b) 'In,' 'by,' i.e. 'with nothing else than.'

2036

Satis per te tibi consulis. (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 17. 1.)

Ille nihil aliud honestum intelligit nisi quod sit rectum ipsumque per se sua vi, sua sponte, sua natura laudabile. (C. *Fin.* 2. 15.)

Tantum dicam, paucos homines hoc adjutore Q. Opimium per ludum et jocum fortunis omnibus evertisse. (C. *Verr.* 1. 60.)

(c) 'Without hindrance from.'

2037

Ita judicia contempserat, ut eum nihil delectaret, quod aut per naturam fas esset aut per leges liceret. (C. *Mil.* 16.)

Sin hoc non licet per Cratippum, at illud certe dabis. (C. *Off.* 3. 7.)

Trahantur per me pedibus omnes rei. (C. *Fam.* 7. 32.)

Inveniebat Nervios mulieres, quique per ætatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur, in eum locum conjecisse. (Cæs. *G.* 2. 16.)

Omnis consularis, qui per valetudinem exsequi cladem illam fugamque potuissent, expulsos memoriæ proditur. (C. *Phil.* 2. 22.)

Decreverunt ut consul ipse, si per commodum reipublicæ posset, ad opprimendum Gallicum tumultum proficisceretur. (L. 31. 11.)

In composition: (see also §§ 985, 986, 990).

2038

1. *Through, all over:* **peragere**, pierce through (also 2); **perambulare**, walk through; **perarare**, plough through, write; **percensere**, enumerate; **percipere**, feel through, understand (see also 2); **percolare**, filter through; **percurrere**, run through; **perflare**, blow through; **perfluere**, flow through; **perfodere**, dig through; **perforare**, pierce; **perfricare**, rub all over; **perfringere**, break through; **perfundere**, pour all over; **perlegere**, read through; **perlustrare**, wander through; **permanare**, flow through; **permeare**, pass through; **permetiri**, measure out; **pernumerare**, count over; **perpluere**, rain through; **perrepere**, crawl through; **perrodere**, gnaw through; **perrogare**, ask all in succession; **perrumpere**, break through; **persalutare**, greet all in succession; **perscindere**, tear through; **perscribere**, write in full; **perscrutare**, search through; **persecare**, cut into; **personare**, sound through; **perspergere**, sprinkle all over; **perspicere**, look through; **persultare**, dance about; **pertundere**, make a hole through; **perungere**, anoint all over; **pervadere**, go through; **pervagari**, wander through; **pervigilare**, watch throughout; **pervolitare**, pervolare, fly about.

2. *Thoroughly, to completion*: *peragitare*, bunt about, stir up; *peragere*, finish (also 1); *perbibere*, drink in; *percalescere*, make hot; *percallescere*, become callous, get knowledge of; *perclare*, stir up; *percipere*, gather for oneself (see also 1); *percolare*, greatly honour; *percontari*, poke into, cross-question (from *conto*, a pole, *Corss.*); *percoquere*, cook thoroughly; *percrebescere*, become prevalent; *percupere*, greatly desire; *percurare*, beat thoroughly; *percute*, strike, shock; *perdiscere*, learn thoroughly; *perdocere*, teach thoroughly; *perdomare*, thoroughly tame; *perducere*, lead; *peredere*, eat away; *perferre*, carry through, bear; *perficere*, achieve, complete; *perfrui*, enjoy; *perfungi*, go through a duty, discharge; *pergere*, proceed; *pergræcari*, be a very Greek; *perhorrescere*, shudder; *perlibere*, be very pleasing; *perlibrare*, poise exactly, hurl; *perlitare*, sacrifice favourably; *perluere*, wash; *permanere*, last out; *permiscere*, mix up; *permittere*, let loose, surrender, allow; *permovere*, stir up; *permulcere*, stroke, soothe; *permutare*, exchange; *pernegare*, deny stoutly; *pernoscere*, get thorough knowledge of; *perodisse*, detest; *perorare*, speak throughout, wind up; *perrellere*, prevail upon; *perpendere*, weigh carefully; *perpeti*, endure; *perpetrare*, accomplish; *perplacere*, please much; *perpolire*, polish well; *perpopulari*, lay utterly waste; *perpotare*, continue drinking; *perpurgare*, cleanse thoroughly; *perquirere*, search diligently; *persanare*, cure completely; *persedere*, remain sitting; *persentire* (*Verg.*), feel deeply; *persequi*, follow up, persecute, discuss; *persidere* (*Lucr.*), settle down; *persistere* (*Liv.*), persist; *persolvere*, discharge in full; *perspectare* (*Suet.*), behold to the end; *perspeculari*, reconnoitre thoroughly; *perstare*, stand firm; *perstreperere*, ring with a noise; *persvadere*, talk over, persuade; *pertaedere*, be wearied out; *pertendere*, proceed; *pertentare*, test well; *pertergere*, wipe; *perterrere*, frighten; *pertexere*, weave throughout; *pertimescere* (very frequent in *Cic.*), be greatly afraid; *pertinere*, extend, concern; *pertractare*, handle; *pertrahere*, drag along; *perturbare*, throw into confusion; *perurere*, burn; *pervastare*, lay waste; *pervehere*, carry to the end; *pervellere*, pluck hard; *pervenire*, reach; *pervestigare*, track out; *pervidere*, look carefully at; *pervincere*, conquer completely; *pervivere* (*Plaut.*), live on; *pervolvere*, roll over; *pervulgare*, make quite public; and many others used occasionally.

3. In a bad sense: *perbitere* (*Plaut.*), go to destruction; *percellere*, strike down; *percidere*, cut to pieces; *perdere*, destroy; *perimere*, destroy; *perire*, perish; *perfugere*, desert; *pejorare*, swear falsely (but comp. § 990); *pellicere*, inveigle; *pervertare*, overturn, turn the wrong way.

4. *perhibere*, hold out, assert, name.

**Pone** (for *pos-ne*; cf. *post*, &c. § 535): *used both without a substantive dependent and with an accusative case.* 'Behind.' (Quintilian (8. 3. 25) speaks of *pone* as archaic.)

1. *Without a substantive dependent.*

Nostros pone versus hosteis esse ab dextra parte.

(Cato ap. Charis. p. 191.)

Ita totum animal movebatur et ante et pone et ad lævam et ad dextram et sursum et deorsum modo huc, modo illuc. (C. Tim. 13.)

Sequiturque patrem non passibus æquis. Pone subit conjux.

(Verg. A. 2. 727.)

2. *With accusative.*

Tute pone te latebis, facile ne inveniatur te honor. (Pl. Trin. 663.)

Pone castra utrique pabulatum et lignatum ibant. (L. 40. 30.)

Vinctæ pone tergum manus. (Tac. H. 3. 84.)

**Por-**, old form of **pro** (comp. *porro*, *πρόσω*, *πρόρῳ*): found only in composition.

*Forth: pollere (por-valere?), be powerful; polliceri (por-liceri), bold forth an offer, promise; pollingere, lay out a corpse; pollucere (por+?), offer in sacrifice; polluere (wash over? comp. pollubrum), defile; ponere (por-sino, posno), set forth, place; porcere (porarcere?), keep off (Enn., Lucil., &c.); porricere (por-jacere: comp. dissidia, § 144), offer in sacrifice; porrigere (por, regere), offer; portendere (bold forth), portend; portare (frequentative of a simple verb formed from the preposition *por-*? comp. *πορέω*), forward, carry; possidere (por, sedere, occupy in advance?), possess (of land originally).*

**Post** (also apparently *pos*, and in Plautus *postid*, *poste*): *used both without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in the accusative case.*

1. *Of space: 'behind.'*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Illi partim cedere incipiunt ejus servos, qui post erant. (C. Mil. 10.)

(b) *With an accusative case.*

2044

Locavit porticum post navalia et ad fanum Herculis et post Spei a Tiberi ad ædem Apollinis medici. (L. 40. 51.)

Sed magnum metuens se post cratera tegebat. (Verg. *A.* 9. 346.)

Cohortes aliquot subductas e dextro cornu post aciem circumducit. (L. 27. 48.)

2. *Of time: 'after' (cf. postquam, §§ 1471, 1475).*

2045

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Deos salutabo modo: poste ad te continuo transeo. (Pl. *Stich.* 623.)

Pecunia recuperata est multis post annis. (C. *Flac.* 24.)

Arva Timavi nunc quoque post tanto videat. (Verg. *G.* 3. 475.)

Substringebat caput (jumentum) loro, deinde post verberibus cogebat exultare. (Nep. 18. 5.)

Quædam sunt in quibus res dubia est, sed ex post facto retro ducitur et apparet quid actum est. (Marc. ap. *Dig.* 34. 5. 14.)

*So with partitive genitive (cf. § 1296).*

Postid locorum tu mi amanti ignoscito. (Pl. *Pæn.* 1. 1. 16.)

(b) *With an accusative case.*

2046

Cuncta tuus sepelivit amor, nec femina post te ulla dedit collo dulcia vincla meo. (Prop. 4. 14. 9.)

Apud Salamina parvo numero navium maxima post hominum memoriam classis est devicta. (Nep. 2. 5.)

Ludos scenicos triduum post dedicationem templi Junonis, biduum post Dianæ et singulos dies fuit in circo. (L. 40. 52.)

(c) *Apparently with ablative, in phrases posthac, postea, postideâ (old), postillâ: so also postibi (Plaut.); cf. § 509.*

2047

Hunc tu in ædis cogitas recipere posthac? (Ter. *Eun.* 897.)

Hæc mihi Stertinus, sapientum octavus, amico arma dedit, posthac ne compellarer inultus. (Hor. *S.* 2. 3. 297.)

P. Considius qui in exercitu L. Sullæ et postea in M. Crassi fuerat. (Cæs. *G.* 1. 21.)

Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit hostes terga verterunt. (Cæs. *G.* 4. 38.)

Eum qui mihi illam vendidit, nunquam postilla vidi.

(Plaut. *Curc.* 529.)

Nec sibi postilla metuebant talia verba. (Catull. 84. 9.)

Postibi videtur ad me simia adgredirier. (Pl. *Rud.* 600.)

3. *Of worth. (a) Without a substantive dependent.*

2048

Ubi periculum advenit, invidia atque superbia post fuere.

(Sall. C. 23.)

Festivom caput, qui ignominias sibi post putavit esse præ meo comodo. (Ter. Ad. 262.)

(b) *With an accusative case.*

Tantus erit ambitionis furor ut nemo tibi post te videatur, si aliquis ante te fuerit. (Sen. Ep. 104, § 9.)

4. *Of a logical consequence: postea.*

2049

Dices: 'quid postea, si Romæ adsiduus fui.' (C. Rosc. Am. 33.)

At enim nemo post reges exactos de plebe consul fuit. Quid postea? nullane res nova institui debet? (L. 4. 4.)

In composition: The following may be here noticed, though no clear mark of composition is to be found:

1. *After, of time: ex post facto* (cf. § 2045), *made afterwards*; *postfuturus* (Sall., Plin.); *postgenitus* (Tac.), *of posterity*; *postscribere*, *write as a postscript*; *postvenire* (Plin.), *come after*.

2. *After, of worth: postferre, posthabere, postponere, postputare*, *put second, esteem less*.

**Præ:** *used both without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in the ablative case. 'In front.'*

1. *In space.*(a) *Without a substantive dependent; with ire and compounds.*

Abi præ, Sosia: jam ego sequar. (Pl. Amph. 543.)

Eamus nunciam intro. So. I præ, sequor. (Ter. And. 171.)

(b) *With an ablative case; usually of persons: 'before.'*

2050

Ille qui stillantem præ se pugionem tulit, is a te honoris causa nominatur. (C. Phil. 2. 12.)

Ubi paulo asperior ascensus erat, singulos præ se inermos mittere.

(Sall. J. 94.)

*Metaphorically:*

2053

Si huic aliquid paulum præ manu dederis unde utatur, reddet tibi cito. (Ter. *Ad.* 980.) *We say 'to his hand.'*

Petenti mutuam pecuniam creditori, cum præ manu debitor non haberet, species auri dedit, ut pignori poneret.

(Ulpian ap. *Dig.* 13. 7, § 27.)

Nec vero cum venit, præ se fert, aut quis sit aut unde veniat aut etiam quid velit. (C. R. P. 2. 3.)

Fortasse ceteri tectiores; ego semper me didicisse præ me tuli.

(C. Or. 42.)

2. *In comparison.*

2054

(a) *Without a substantive dependent: in phrases præut, præquam* (cf. §§ 1645, 1707. b).

Folia nunc cadunt præut si triduum hoc hic erimus; tum arbores in te cadent. (Plaut. *Men.* 376.)

Nihil hercle hoc quidemst præut alia dicam, tu quæ nunquam feceris. (Pl. *Mil.* 20.)

Satin' parva res est voluptatum in vita atque in ætate agunda, præquam quod molestum est. (Plaut. *Am.* 633.)

Compare Immo res omnis relictas habeo præ quod tu velis.

(Pl. *Stich.* 362.)

(b) *With ablative case: 'in comparison with.'*

2055

Plerumque hominibus Gallis præ magnitudine corporum suorum brevitatis nostra contemptui est. (Cæs. G. 2. 30.)

Nobis (videris) non tu quidem vacuus molestiis, sed præ nobis beatus. (C. *Fam.* 4. 4.)

3. *Of a hindrance; in the early writers also of other causes; 'for,' 'in consequence of.'*

Nec loqui præ mœrore potuit. (C. *Planc.* 41.)

Solem præ jaculorum magnitudine et sagittarum non videbitis.

(C. T. D. 1. 42.)

Nec divini humanive juris quicquam præ impotenti ira est servatum.

(L. 31. 24.)

Adversus tam obstinatam orationem tribunorum præ indignitate rerum stupor silentiumque inde cæteros patrum defixit.

(L. 6. 40.)

Ut præ lætitia lacrumæ prosiliunt mihi. (Plaut. *Stich.* 466.)

Murenæ in summa aqua præ pinguedine flutantur.

(Varr. ap. Macr. *Sat.* 3. 15. 8.)

In composition: (see also §§ 985, 986, 990).

1. Of place; *before, in front, at the end*: also metaphorically; *præhibere* (Plaut.), *præbere*, *hold forth, furnish*; *præcedere*, *go before*; *præcelerare* (Stat.), *hasten in advance*; *præcidere*, *cut short*; *præcingere*, *gird in front, gird*; *præcludere*, *shut up, block up*; *præcurrere*, *run in advance*; *præcutere*, *brandish before*; *prædicare* (*publish in front*), *declare*; *præditus* (*advanced*), *endowed*; *præesse*, *be at the head of*; *præferre*, *bear before*; *præficere*, *put at the head*; *præfigere*, *fasten in front*; *præfluere*, *flow in front*; *præfocare* (*hold the throat in front?*), *throttle*; *præfodere*, *dig in front* (see also 2); *præfringere*, *break off at the end*; *præfulcire*, *hoop up in front*; *præfulgurare* (Stat., Fl.), *lighten in front*; *prægredi*, *go in front*; *præjacere*, *lie in front*; *præire*, *go before*; *prælabi*, *glide in front or along*; *præligare*, *bind in front*; *prælucere*, *light in front*; *præmordere*, *bite at the end, bite off*; *præmunire*, *fortify in front*; *prænatare*, *swim in front*; *prænavigare*, *sail in front or past*; *præpandere*, *spread before*; *præpedire* (*bind the fore feet?*), *shackle*; *præpendere*, *hang in front*; *præponere*, *set in front or at the head*; *præportare*, *carry in front*; *prærigescere*, *stiffen at the extremity*; *prærodere*, *gnaw at the end*; *præsapire*, *block in front*; *præscribere*, *write at the top* (see also 2); *præsecare*, *cut at the end*; *præsidere*, *sit in front or at the head*; *præspargere*, *scatter abroad*; *præstare*, *vouch for* (see also 3); *præstringere*, *blunt the edge*; *præstruere*, *erect in front*; *præsuere*, *sew at the end*; *prætendere*, *spread before*; *præterere*, *wear away at the end*; *prætexere*, *edge*; *prætruncare*, *mutilate at the end*; *prætorquere*, *twist forward*; *prævaricari* (*straddle so as to prevent?*), *act collusively*; *prævehi*, *ride in front*; *prævolare*, *fly in front*; *præustus*, *burnt at end*.

2. Of time; *before*, also *too soon*: *præbibere*, *drink before*; *præcavere*, *guard against beforehand*; *præcerpere*, *pluck beforehand*; *præcinere*, *sing before*; *præcipere*, *seize beforehand, admonish*; *præcogitare*, *ponder beforehand*; *præcognoscere*, *foreknow*; *præcolere*, *cultivate beforehand*; *præconsumere* (Ov.), *consume before*; *præcontrectare* (Ov.), *handle by anticipation*; *præcoquere*, *cook before*; *præcorrumpere* (Ov.), *bribe beforehand*; *prædamnare*, *pre-condemn*; *prædelassare* (Ov.), *weaken before*; *prædestinare* (Liv.), *predetermine*; *prædicere*, *foretell*; *prædiscere*, *learn beforehand*; *prædivinare*, *have a presentiment of*; *prædocere*, *forewarn*; *prædomare* (Sen.), *fore-tame*; *præfestinare*, *be over hasty*; *præfinire*, *mark out beforehand*; *præflorere* (Plin.), *flower early*; *præfodere*, *dig beforehand* (see also 1); *præfari*, *say before*; *præformidare*, *dread before*; *præformare*, *preform*; *prægerminare* (Plin.), *bud early*; *prægustare*, *taste beforehand*; *præire*, *go over first as a pattern*; *præjudicare*, *prejudge*; *prælambere*, *lick before*; *prælegare*, *bequeath before the heir takes*; *prælegere*, *read first, lecture on*; *prælibare*, *foretaste*; *præloqui*, *spea*

before; *præludere*, prelude; *præmandare*, order beforehand; *præmeditari*, think over in advance; *præmercari*, forestall; *præmetuere*, fear in advance; *præmigrare*, move beforehand; *præmittere*, send on; *præmoliri* (Liv.), prepare beforehand; *præmollire*, soften beforehand; *præmonere*, forewarn; *præmonstrare*, point out before; *præmori*, die before; *prænarrare*, tell beforehand; *prænoscere*, foreknow; *prænuntiare*, foretell; *præoccupare*, pre-occupy; *præparare*, prepare beforehand; *præripere*, snatch beforehand; *prærogare*, ask first; *præsagire*, have a presentiment of; *præsanare*, heal prematurely; *præscire*, know beforehand; *præsciscere*, learn beforehand; *præscribere*, write before as a pattern, direct (see also 1); *præsentire*, feel beforehand; *præsignare*, mark beforehand; *præsignificare*, foreshow; *præstinare* (fix beforehand, cf. *destinare*), purchase beforehand; *præstituere*, settle before; *præstolari*, stand waiting for; *præstruere*, prepare beforehand; *præsumere*, take before; *prætemptare*, try before; *prætepscere*, grow warm previously; *prætimere*, fear beforehand; *prætingere*, moisten beforehand; *prævenire*, outstrip; *prævertere*, anticipate; *præverti*, give first attention to; *prævidere*, foresee; *prævitare* (Ov.), drug beforehand.

3. Before others, in comparison, greatly: *præcellere*, be distinguished; *præeminere* (Tac.), be prominent; *præfulgere*, glitter; *præfurere* (Stat.), rage violently; *prægestire* (Cic.), exult; *prægravare*, weigh down; *prænitere*, outshine; *præoptare*, prefer; *præpollere*, be superior in power; *præponderare*, turn the scale; *præposse* (Tac.), excel in power; *præradiare* (Ov.), gleam brighter; *præstare*, excel (see also 1); *præstringere*, tie tightly? (see also 1); *prævertare*, prevail.

**Præter**: used both without a substantive dependent, and with accusative case. 2060

1. In space: with accusative case; 'past.'

*Postridie ejus diei præter castra Cæsaris suas copias produxit.*

(Cæs. G. 1. 48.)

*Servi ejus præter oculos Lollii cenam ac pocula ferebant.*

(C. Verr. 3. 25.)

[Perhaps here belongs the phrase *præter propter vitam vivitur* 2061 used by Ennius (in Gellius 19. 10), 'men live beside and near life, not in it.' But *vitam* may also be taken as a cognate accus. and *præter propter* used absolutely as it is in the earlier part of that chapter of Gellius.]



2. *Besides: 'in addition.'* 206a(a) *Without a substantive; præter, præterquam.*

Habent autem (insecta) oculos, præterque e sensibus tactum atque gustatum. (Plin. II. 4. 3.)

Syracusarum oppugnatio ad finem venit, præterquam vi ac virtute ducis exercitusque, intestina etiam prodicione adjuta. (L. 25. 23.)

Cruciatus contumeliasque, quas parat hostis, effugere morte, præterquam honesta, etiam leni possum. (L. 26. 13, § 14.)

(b) *With an accusative.* 206b

Præter se denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit.

(Cæs. G. I. 43.)

(c) *Apparently with ablative in phrases præterhac (Plaut.), præterea.*

Præterhac si mihi tale post hunc diem faxis, faxo foris vidua visas patrem. (Pl. Men. 113.)

Multæ sunt causæ quamobrem cupiam abducere; primum, quod soror est dicta, præterea, ut suis restituam ac reddam.

(Ter. Eun. 146.)

Quod præterea navium longarum habebat legatis præfectisque distribuit. (Cæs. G. 4. 22.)

3. *'Beyond,' 'beyond the bounds of.'* 206c(a) *Without a substantive: only in phrase præterquam.*

Mihi videris præter ætatem tuam facere et præterquam res te adhortatur tua. (Ter. Haut. 59.)

(b) *With an accusative.* 206d

Ut amplissimum nomen consequeremur, unus præter ceteros adjuvisti. (C. Q. Fr. I. 1, § 15.)

Lacus Albinus præter modum creverat. (C. Div. I. 44.)

Morem geras, dum caveatur, præter æquom ne quid delinquat.

(Pl. Bac. 418.)

Id fecimus præter consuetudinem Græcorum. (Corn. 4. 1.)

Catilina, si hoc quod agit nunquam antea cogitasset, tamen, &c.

Nunc vero nihil adhuc præter ipsius voluntatem cogitationemque accidit. (C. Cat. 2. 7.)

4. *'Except.'* 206e(a) *Without a substantive: rare except in phrase præterquam.*

Ceteræ multitudini diem statuit, ante quam sine fraude liceret ab armis discedere, præter rerum capitalium condemnatis.

(Sall. C. 36.)

(Nero fuit) religionum usquequaque contemptor, præter unius Dæ Syriæ. (Suet. *Ner.* 56.)

Nullum ego a vobis monumentum laudis postulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam sempiternam. (C. *Cat.* 3. 11.)

Nullas adhuc acceperam (litteras), præter quæ mihi binæ simul in Trebulano redditæ sunt. (C. *Att.* 5. 3.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

2067

Omnibus sententiis præter unam condemnatus est. (C. *Clu.* 20.)

Neque vestitus præter pellis habent quicquam. (Cæs. *G.* 4. 1.)

Ne quis præter redemptorem post Idus Martias cotem ex insula Creta fodito neve eximito. (ap. *Dig.* 39. 4. 15.)

In composition. None of the words, except *prætergredi*, has any clear mark of composition. 2068

*Past*: præter -bitere (Plaut.), *go past*; -ducere (Plaut.), -ire, -equivitare (Liv.), -ferri, -fluere, -gredi, -labi, -meare (Lucr.), -mittere, *let go, overlook*; -navigare (Suet.) -vehi, -volare.

*Pro*: used with ablative case, and not otherwise, except in phrase *pro ut*. Compare also *proin* (*for proim*, 'in accordance with that'), *proinde*. 2069

1. *In space.*

2070

(a) 'Before,' 'in front of.'

Castra Sabina pro mœnibus sociorum locata erant. (L. 2. 53.)

Cæsar pro castris suas copias produxit. (Cæs. *G.* 1. 48.)

Donatum ac laudatum magnifice pro contione Jugurtham in prætorium abduxit ibique secreto monuit. (Sall. *J.* 8.)

(b) 'On the front of.'

2071

Ad hoc mulieres puerique pro tectis ædificiorum saxa et alia quæ locus præbebat certatim mittere. (Sall. *J.* 67.)

Id me arbitror Synnadis pro tribunali multis verbis disputavisse.

(C. *Fam.* 3. 8, § 3.)

Id agimus, non ut pro ripa Hiberi stantes arceamus transitu hostes, sed ut ultro transeamus transferamusque bellum. (L. 26. 41.)

2. 'In behalf of,' i.e. (a) 'on the side,' or 'interest of,' (b) 'in support of,' (c) 'in virtue of.'

(a) Hæc cum contra legem proque lege dicta essent. (L. 34. 8.)  
Convenit dimicare pro legibus, pro libertate, pro patria.

(C. T. D. 4. 19.)

Quæritur an pro Cæsare fuerit occidi Pompeium. (Quint. 3. 8. 56.)

(b) Tribuni secedunt proque collegio pronuntiant placere consules  
senatui dicto audientes esse. (L. 4. 26.)

(c) Jam pro imperio Valerius discedere a privato lictores jubebat.

(L. 3. 49.)

3. 'Instead of,' 'as good as.'

2073

Libenter etiam copulando verba jungebant ut 'sodes' pro 'si  
audes,' 'sis' pro 'si vis.' (C. Or. 45.)

Nam Sertorianum bellum a senatu privato datum est, quia consules  
recusabant, cum L. Philippus pro consulibus eum se mittere  
dixit non pro consule. (C. Phil. 11. 8.)

P. Terentius operas in portu et scriptura Asiæ pro magistro dedit.

(C. Att. 11. 10.)

Nuper postea quam est comperendinatus, cum jam pro damnato  
mortuoque esset. (C. Verr. 4. 15.)

Eduxi a parvulo, habui, amavi pro meo. (Ter. Ad. 48.)

Torti post paulo insontes, quum scirent ipsi nihil, opinione omnium  
pro indicio Zeuxippum et Pisistratum nominaverunt. (L. 33. 28.)

4. 'In return for,' 'in consideration of.'

2074

Par pari datum hostimentumst, opera pro pecunia. (Pl. Asin. 171.)

Signa, quæ nobis curasti, ea sunt ad Caietam exposita: misimus qui  
pro vectura solveret. (C. Att. 1. 3.)

Pro eo quod pluribus verbis vos quam vellem fatigavi, veniam a  
vobis petitam impetratamque velim. (L. 38. 49.)

Proque ministerio magni sibi ponderis aurum postulat.

(Ov. M. 2. 750.)

See also Pl. Trin. 234, quoted in § 2018.

5. 'According to,' 'in proportion to.'

2075

Prælium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium editur. (L. 21. 29.)

Hæc cum omnes sentirent et cum in eam rationem pro suo quisque  
sensu ac dolore loqueretur, omnes ad eam domum profecti  
sunt. (C. Verr. 1. 27.)

Hæc qui pro virili parte defendunt, optimates sunt, cujuscumque sunt ordinis. (C. Sest. 66.)

Equidem pro eo, quanti te facio, quicquid feceris, adprobabo.

(C. Fam. 3. 3.)

Quis potis est dignum pollenti pectore carmen condere pro rerum maiestate hisque repertis? (Lucr. 5. 1.)

Numquam in Sicilia frumentum publice est emptum, quin Mamertinis pro portione imperaretur. (C. Verr. 5. 21.)

Legatarius pro parte adquirere, pro parte repudiare legatum non potest. Si legatum nobis relictum constituerimus nolle ad nos pertinere, pro eo erit quasi nec legatum quidem sit.

(Pompon. ap. Dig. 30. 38.)

Existimaram pro mutuo inter nos animo et pro reconciliata gratia nec absentem me ludibrio læsum iri, nec, &c.

(Metell. ap. C. Fam. 5. 1.)

Si quis aliam rem pro alia (*supr.* 3) volenti solverit et evicta fuerit res, manet pristina obligatio. Etsi pro parte fuerit evicta, tamen pro solido obligatio durat; nam non accepisset re integra creditor, nisi pro solido ejus fieret. Sed et si duos fundos verbi gratia pro debito (*supr.* 4) dederit, evicto altero fundo remanet integra obligatio. Tunc ergo res pro re (*supr.* 4) soluta liberationem præstat, cum pro solido facta est suscipientis.

(Marcian. ap. Dig. 46. 3. 46.)

In composition: (see also §§ 985, 986, 990).

2076

The *o* is usually long in verbs, except before *f*. The old form *prod* remains before vowels (§ 160. 8).

1. *Forth, forwards*: *prodambulare* (Ter.), *walk forth*; *procedere*, *proceed*; *procellere* (Plaut.), *throw forwards*; *procidere*, *fall forwards*; *proclamare*, *shout out*; *proclinare*, *bend forward*; *procrastinare*, *put off* (orig. till the morrow); *procrecere*, *progress*; *procubare* (Verg.), *lie forward*; *procutere*, *beat forward*, *beat flat*; *proculcare*, *trample flat*; *procumbere*, *fall prostrate*, *lean forwards*; *procurrere*, *run forwards*; *procurvare* (Stat.), *bend forwards*; *prodicere* (Liv.), *put off*; *prodere*, *produce*, *give up*, *protract*; *producere*, *lead forth*; *prodesse* (*be in advance*), *profit*; *profari*, *speak out* (see also 3); *proferre*, *bring forth*, *extend*, *mention*; *proficere*, *advance*; *proficisci* (*put oneself forward*), *travel*; *profiteri*, *declare publicly*, *offer*; *proflare*, *breathe out*; *profigare*, *strike forwards*, *knock down*, *finish*; *profluere*, *flow forth*; *profugere*, *flee away*; *profundere*, *pour forth*; *progerere*, *carry forth*; *progredi*, *advance*; *prohibere*, *keep forth*, i.e. away from, *prohibit*; *proicere*, *cast forth*, *throw*

*away*; *prodigere* drive away, waste away; *prodire* come forth; *prolabi*, slip forward, sink; *prolibare*, pour forth an offering; *prolicere*, entice forth; *proloqui*, utter; *proluere*, wash out; *prominere*, project; *promittere*, let grow long, hold out a promise; *promere*, produce; *promovere*, push on; *promulgare*, publish; *pronectere* (Stat.), spin out; *pronuntiare*, announce, recite; *propellere* (Lucr. has also *pröpell-*), drive forward; *propendere*, hang forward, incline; *proponere*, set forth, propose; *propugnare*, sally to fight, fight in defence of; *prorepere*, creep forth; *proripere*, throw forth; *proritare* (post-Aug.), provoke (comp. *irritare*); *prorogare* (propose a law for postponement), postpone; *proruere*, throw to the ground; *prorumpere*, burst forth; *proscribere*, advertise, proscribe; *prosequi*, follow on, escort, pursue; *proserpere* (Plaut.), creep forth; *prosilire*, leap up or forth; *prospeculari*, explore in front; *prospicere*, look forward; *prostare*, be exposed for sale; *prosternere*, prostrate; *prostiture*, expose, prostitute; *prosubigere* (Verg.), dig up in front; *protegere*, cover by a projection; *protendere*, extend; *proterere*, trample under foot; *proterrere*, scare forth or away; *protollere* (Plaut.), lift forward; *protrahere*, drag forth, protract; *proturbare*, drive forth; *provehere*, carry on; *provenire*, come forth, turn out (of events); *provertere*, turn forwards; *providere*, look onwards or ahead; *provocare*, call out, summon, challenge; *provolvere*, roll along; *provomere*, (Lucr.), vomit forth.

2. Almost pleonastic: *procreare*, beget; *pröcurare* (also *prö-cur-*), manage; *progenerare*, beget; *prognere*, beget; *promerere*, deserve; *pröpinare* (also *pröpin-*), drink a health (from *πρωπινειν*); *proscindere*, cleave of the first ploughing; *prosecare*, cut off, esp. of the 'exta' in a sacrifice; *proserere*, produce by sowing; *prospergere* (Tac.), besprinkle.

3. Before of time (comp. *πρῶ-*): *pröfari*, foretell (see also 1); *proludere*, practise or skirmish beforehand.

**Procul**: used both without a substantive dependent, and with ablative case. 'At a distance, 'far.'

1. In space. (a) Without a substantive dependent.

Amabo quoja vox sonat procul? (Pl. Curc. 111.)

Procul o, procul este profani, conclamat vates. (Verg. *A.* 6. 258.)

Ambiorix pronuntiarum jubet, ut procul tela coniciant neu propius accedant. (Cæs. *G.* 5. 34.)

Non quæsit procul alicunde sed proximum, quem illam pecuniam diceret abstulisse. (C. *Verr.* 2. 20.)

Catilina in abditam partem ædium secessit, atque ibi, omnibus arbitris procul amotis, orationem habuit. (Sall. *G.* 20.)

(b) *With preposition ab, or adverb of place.*

2081

Repente te quasi quidam æstus ingenii tui procul a terra abripuit,  
atque in altum a conspectu pæne hominum abstraxit.

(C. Or. 3. 36.)

Quem cum istoc sermonem habueris, procul hinc stans accepi, uxor.  
(Ter. Hec. 607.)

(c) *With ablative case.*

2082

Multi suam rem bene gessere et publicam patria procul.

(Enn. ap. C. Fam. 7. 6.)

Dein cum egressis ad tuendos fines haud procul mœnibus ipsorum  
depugnat. (L. 10. 37.)

Beatus ille, qui procul negotiis paterna rura bobus exercet suis.  
(Hor. Epod. 2. 1.)

2. *In time: with preposition ab.*

2083

Omitto innumerabilis viros, quia sunt procul ab ætatis hujus me-  
moriam. (C. R. P. 1. 1.)

3. *Metaphorically. (a) Without a substantive dependent.*

2084

In obsequio comitas adsit, adsentatio, vitiorum adiutrix, procul  
amoveatur. (C. Læl. 24.)

Homines superbissumi procul errant. (Sall. J. 85.)

(b) *With preposition ab.*

2085

Quæ est enim alia fortitudo nisi animi adfectio, cum in adeundo  
periculo et in labore ac dolore patiens, tum procul ab omni  
metu? (C. T. D. 5. 14.)

Quis tam inperitus, quis tam procul a litteris, quin sic incipiat?  
(Quint. 7. 1. 46.)

(c) *With ablative case.*

2086

Jamque haud procul seditione res erat. (L. 6. 16.)

Adjutamur enim dubio procul atque alimur nos certis ab rebus.  
(Lucr. 1. 812.)

Quid quod quædam, quæ singula procul dubio vitiosa sunt, juncta  
sine reprehensione dicuntur? (Quint. 1. 5. 14.)

Jam liber invidia, procul contentionibus famam in tuto collocavit.  
(Quint. 12. 11, § 7.)

Alia haud procul fabulis vetera facunde executus. (Tac. A. 12. 58.)

**Prope:** *used chiefly without a substantive dependent or with a preposition; sometimes with an accusative case. 'Near.'* (On the accusative with *propior*, *proximus*, &c. see §§ 1106, 1107.)

1. *In space.* (a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Quoja prope me hic vox sonat? AM. Pertimui; quis loquitur prope?  
(Plaut. Rud. 229.)

(b) *With a preposition ab, ad.*

In illo ipso tempore apud socrum tuam prope a meis ædibus sedebas. (C. Pis. 11.)

Nec posse (ostendit), quum hostes prope ad portas essent, bello præverti quicquam. (L. 2. 24.)

(c) *With an accusative.*

Ut non modo prope me, sed plane mecum habitare posses.  
(C. Fam. 7. 23.)

Castris prope oppidum positis. (Cæs. G. 7. 36.)

2. *In time.* (a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Prope adest, quom alieno more vivendumst mihi: sine nunc meo me vivere interea modo. (Ter. And. 153.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

Multi aiunt, excruciatum doloribus nocte tota, defecisse prope lucem. (Suet. Claud. 44.)

3. *Metaphorically.* (a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Trinobantes prope firmissima earum regionum civitas. (Cæs. G. 5. 20.)

Quo ubi allatum est hostes adventare, prope est factum ut injussu prætoris signis convulsis in aciem exirent. (L. 25. 21.)

Ejus filiam ille amare coepit perditæ, prope jam ut pro uxore haberet.  
(Ter. Haut. 97.)

Quia non tantum mulieri sed Titio quoque consultum videtur, prope est ut ipse legatarius intellegatur.

(Papin. ap. Dig. 35. 1. 71.)

(b) *With a preposition.*

Licinius Mucianus in secretum Asiæ sepositus, tam prope ab exule fuit quam postea a principe. (Tac. H. 1. 10.)

Res Romana, quæ prope exitium clade Cannensi venerat, in dies melior atque auctor fiebat, Hannibalis vis senescebat ac prope ad nihilum venerat. (L. 25. 16, § 11.)

(c) *With an accusative.*

Romani Horatium accipiunt eo majore cum gaudio, quo prope metum res fuerat. (L. 1. 25.)

**Propter** (*for propt-ter*): used both without a substantive, and with an accusative case. Compare also **propterea**, **quapropter**.

1. In space: 'near.' (a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Ibi angiportum propter est. (Ter. Ad. 576.)

Vites a caulibus, si propter sati sint, ut a pestiferis et nocentibus refugere dicuntur. (C. N. D. 2. 47.)

Adulescentia, voluptates propter intuens, magis fortasse lætatur, sed delectatur etiam senectus, procul eas spectans, tantum quantum satis est. (C. Sen. 14.)

(b) *With an accusative case.*

2095

Nimium istoc abisti: hic propter hunc adsiste. (Ter. Ad. 169.)

Qui tenuit insulas propter Siciliam, quæ Volcaniæ nominabantur.

(C. N. D. 3. 22.)

Prostrati in gramine molli propter aquæ rivum jucunde corpora curant. (Lucr. 2. 30.)

2. *Of the cause: 'on account of;'* (a) *with an accusative case.* 2096

Propter frigora frumenta in agris matura non erant. (Cæs. G. 1. 16.)

Proficiscar magno equidem cum dolore, nec tam id propter me aut propter fratrem meum, quam propter pueros. (C. Att. 10. 4.)

Quis igitur vivit, ut volt, nisi qui ne legibus quidem propter metum paret? (C. Par. 4. 1.)

(b) *Apparently with an ablative case, in phrases propterea, quapropter.* 2097

Quia mist natalis dies, propterea te vocari ad cenam volo.

(Pl. Capt. 175.)

Num propterea nulla est reipublicæ gerendæ ratio atque prudentia, quia multa Cn. Pompeium fefellerunt? (C. Div. 1. 14.)

Qua me propter exanimatum citius eduxi foras. (Ter. Hec. 364.)

Quapropter id vos factum suspicamini? (Pl. Most. 483.)



**Red-, re-,** in composition only. (See also § 986.)

**Red-** before vowels and **h**; **re-** before consonants. But see also § 160. 7.

1. *Back, backwards*: **red-ambulare** (Plaut.), *walk back*; **rebitere** (Plaut.), *go back*; **recalcitrare** (Hor.), *kick back*; **recanere** (Plin.), *call back by song* (see also 7); **recedere**, *go back*; **recellere**, *spring back*; **reclidere**, *recoil, sink*; **reclinare**, *lean back*; **recubare**, *lie back*; **recumbere**, *lie down, sink down*; **recurrere**, *run back* (see also 5); **recurvare**, *curve backwards*; **reducere**, *lead back*; **referre**, *bring back* (see also 2 and 5); **reflectere**, *bend back*; **reflare**, *blow back*; **refluere**, *flow back, overflow*; **reformidare**, *start back in fear, dread*; **refrenare**, *rein back, restrain*; **refringere**, *break back, break open* (see also 6); **refugere**, *flee back, shrink from*; **refundere**, *pour back, cause to overflow*; **refutare**, *repress, refute*; **regerere**, *throw back*; **regredi**, *step back, turn back*; **reicere**, *throw back, reject*; **red-igere**, *drive back* (see also 2 and 5); **redire**, *return* (see also 5); **relabi**, *slip back*; **religare**, *bind back, fasten up*; **remanare**, *flow back*; **remeare**, *go back*; **remigrare**, *journey back*; **remittere**, *send back, let go back, relax, yield*; **remoliri**, *move back*; **renavigare**, *sail back*; **renare** (Hor.), *float back*; **renuntiare**, *report*; **repectere** (Ov.), *comb back*; **repellere**, *drive back*; **repercutere**, *strike back*; **replicare**, *fold back, and thereby unfold*; **reportare**, *carry back*; **reprahendere**, *bold back, rebuke*; **reprimere**, *press back, curb*; **resillire**, *spring back*; **respergere**, *splash*; **respicere**, *look back, be mindful of*; **respirare** (Lucr.), *blow back* (see also 5); **restagnare**, *overflow*; **restringere**, *bind back, restrict*; **resupinare**, *bend back*; **retinere**, *bold back* (see also 4); **retorquere**, *twist or turn back*; **retrahere**, *draw back*; **retrudere**, *thrust back*; **retundere**, *beat back, blunt*; **revehere**, *carry back*; **revenire**, *come back*; **reverti**, *return*; **revincire**, *bind back*; **redundare**, *flow back, overflow*; **revocare**, *call back*; **revolare**, *fly back*; **revolvere**, *roll back, and thereby unroll*.

[In Lucr. 6. 568—574 there are in seven lines nine compounds of **re-**, all but one belonging to this head.]

2. *In response, or return*; and so of objects emitting scent or reflecting light, &c.: **red-amare** (Cic.), *love in return*; **red-arguere**, *refute*; **reboare**, *re-bellow*; **recandescere** (Ov.), *grow white, or glow in return*; **recantare** (Mart.), *recinere, re-echo* (see also 5); **recipere**, *receive* (as it were in return for an offer), *take upon oneself, guaranty* (see also 4, 5); **reclamare**, *resound* (see also 3); **recrepare**, *ring again* (i.e. in response); **reddere**, *give in return* (see also 1, 5); **referire**, *return a blow*; **referre**, *repay, retort* (see also 5); **refulgere**, *flash back*; **regomere**, *resound with groans*; **regerere**, *retort*; **enter in a**

book (see also 1); *red-halare* (Lucr.), *breathe back*; *red-igere*, *get in money* (see also 1, 5); *red-imere*, *take a contract* (see also 5); *relucere*, *relucescere*, *shine back*; *reludere*, *banter*; *remaledicere* (Vespas. ap. Suet.), *retort abuse*; *remetiri*, *measure out in payment*; *remugire*, *belly back*; *remunerari*, *recompense*; *red-olere*, *smell of*; *rependere*, *pay back*; *repromittere*, *bind oneself in return*; *resalutare*, *greet in return*; *rescribere*, *write back*; *resequi*, *follow in speaking*; *resipere*, *have a smack of*; *resonare*, *resound*; *resplendere*, *shine*; *respondere*, *answer*; *respuere*, *spit back*, *reject*; *restipulari*, *obtain a promise in return*; *reticere*, *keep silent* (when asked something); *retribuere*, *repay*; *revomere*, *vomit up again*.

3. *Against, counter*: *recinere*, *give deterring omens*; *reclamare*, <sup>2100</sup> *cry out against*; *recusare*, *refuse*; *refragari*, *gainsay*; *reluctari*, *struggle against*; *reniti*, *withstand*; *renuere*, *shake the head, decline*; *reprobare*, *disapprove*; *repugnare*, *resistere*, *restare*, *resist* (see also 4); *retardare*, *bind*; *retractare*, *draw back* (see also 5); *revincere*, *repress, refute*.

4. *Behind, back*: *recalare*, *remain warm*; *recipere*, *reserve* (see <sup>2101</sup> also 2, 5); *relinquere*, *leave behind*; *remanere*, *stay behind, endure*; *remorari*, *linger, detain*; *reservare*, *reserve, save up*; *residere*, *resistere*, *remain behind* (see also 3); *restare*, *remain, be left* (see also 3); *retinere*, *keep back*.

5. *Again; especially of a restoration to a former or a supposed* <sup>2102</sup> *normal state*: *red-auspicare* (Plaut.), *take the return auspices*; *rebellare*, *make war again, rebel*; *recalcare* (Col.), *tread again, retrace*; *recalfacere* (trans.), *recalescere* (intrans.), *warm up again*; *recinere* (Hor.), *sing over and over* (see also 2, 3); *recipere*, *take back, recover*; *recogitare*, *think over*; *recognoscere*, *recognize*; *recolere*, *recultivate*; *recolligere*, *gather up*; *recommentari* (Plaut. Trin. 912), *recomminisci* (Plaut.); *recomponere*, *rearrange*; *reconciliare*, *reunite, reestablish*; *recondinnare*, *repair*; *recondere*, *store away again*; *reconducere*, *hire again*; *recoquere*, *reboil, remould*; *recorrigere* (Sen.), *amend*; *recrastinare* (post-Aug.), *put off again*; *recreare*, *reproduce, refresh*; *recrescere*, *grow again*; *recrudescere*, *of wounds, break open afresh*; *recuperare*, *recover*; *recurare*, *prepare a second time*; *recurrere*, *revert*; *red-dere*, *give back*; *redonare* (Hor.), *give back, yield up*; *redormire*, *sleep again*; *referre*, *restore* (see also 1, 2); *reficere*, *renew, refresh*; *refingere* (Verg.), *remake*; *reflagitare*, *demand back*; *reflare*, *breathe again* (see also 1); *reflorescere*, *reblossom*; *refocillare* (post-Aug.), *revive*; *refodere* (Plin.), *dig up again*; *reformare*, *remould*; *refovere*, *warm again*; *refricare*, *fret anew*; *refrigerare*, *cool again, cool off*; *refrigescere*, *grow cool, grow stale, flag*; *regenerare* (Plin.), *reproduce*; *regeminare* (Plin.), *sprout again*; *regnare* (Lucr.), *beget again*; *regustare*, *taste again*; *red-hibere* (of sold goods), *give or take back*; *red-igere*, *reduce* (see also

1, 2); *redimere*, repurchase, buy off (see also 2); *redintegrare*, restore; *redire*, return, e.g. into favour (see also 1); *relangescere*, grow faint (again); *relaxare*, unloose, relax; *relucescere*, grow light again; *remancipare* (Gai.), reconvey; *remandere*, chew the cud; *remetiri*, remeasure (see also 2); *reminisci*, recall to mind; *remollescere*, become soft again; *remollire*, resoften; *remordere*, bite again; *remulcere*, resoothe; *renarrare*, tell over again; *renasci*, be born again, revive; *renovare*, renew; *reparare*, repair; *repastinare*, dig again; *reperire*, find again, discover; *repetere*, revisit, resume, recollect; *replere*, refill, fill up; *reponere*, replace (see also 6); *reposcere*, ask back; *repraesentare*, represent, discharge a debt in cash (see also 6); *repuerascere*, become a child again; *repullulare*, sprout forth again; *repungere*, prick again; *repurgare*, cleanse again; *reputare*, count over; *requiescere*, rest; *requirere*, seek to recover; *resavire*, rage again; *resarcire*, patch up; *rescindere*, cut loose, abolish; *resecare* (Plaut.), implore again; *reseminare* (Ov.), resow; *reserere*, replant; *residere*, settle down; *resipiscere*, recover one's senses; *resolvere*, unloose, unnerve, cancel; *resorbere*, suck back; *respirare*, breathe again, recover breath (see also 2); *restaurare*, restore; *restituere*, set up again, restore; *resumere*, take back, resume; *resurgere*, rise again; *retentare*, reattempt; *retexere*, reweave (see also 7); *retractare*, rehandle; *revallescere*, regain strength; *reverttere* (Plaut.), scatter again; *revirescere*, grow green or young again; *revisere*, revisit; *reviviscere*, come to life again; *revolvere*, turn over and over (see also 1).

6. *Intensive action*: sometimes the preposition is *pleonastic* (as 213) indeed is the case in other verbs already enumerated).

*Recensere*, review; *recidere*, cut up; *recitare*, read aloud; *recognoscere*, review; *recutere*, shake; *refercire*, stuff up; *refervescere*, boil up; *refringere*, break up (see also 1); *religare*, banish; *religere*, go over in thought; *remiscere*, mix up; *removere*, withdraw, take away; *reponere*, put away (see also 5); *repraesentare*, do or apply at once (see also 5); *resciscere*, ascertain; *resecare*, cut off, check; *restingvere*, stamp out, extinguish; *retorrescere* (Col.), dry up; *revellere*, pluck up by the roots; *revereri*, stand in awe of.

7. *Un-*: *recanere* (Plin.), disenchant (see also 1); *recantare* (Hor.), recant (see also 2); *re-Charmidare* (Plaut.), i.e. no longer pretend to be Charmides; *recingere*, ungird; *recludere*, open; *refellere*, undeceive, refute; *refigere*, unfix; *regulare* (post-Aug.), thaw; *reglutinare* (Catull.), unglue; *retinere*, take off the pitch, &c.; *renare*, unspin; *renodare*, unknot; *red-ordiri* (Plin.), unweave; *replumbare* (post-Aug.), unsolder; *reserere*, unlock; *resignare*, unseal, cancel; *retegere*, uncover; *retendere*, unstretch; *retexere*, unweave; *revelare*, uncover; *revolvere* (see 1).

**Retro**, 'backwards' (so also *retroorsus*, cf. § 2175). Not used with a substantive dependent on it.

1. *Of space: both of motion and rest.*

Quod ob scelus iter mihi necessarium retro ad Alpes versus incidit?  
(Cæsar. ap. C. Fam. 8. 15.)

Præcepit ut pergeret protinus, quid retro atque a tergo fieret, ne laboraret. (C. Div. 1. 24.)

2. *Of time:*

2106

Non tamen (Jupiter) irritum quodcunque retrost efficiet.

(Hor. Od. 3. 29. 46.)

Proconsul debet ferias secundum mores et consuetudinem, quæ retro optinuit, dare. (Ulp. ap. Dig. 1. 16. 7.)

3. *Metaphorically (a) 'back again,' (b) 'in the reverse direction,' (c) 'behind.'* 2107

(a) Prout quidque contractum est, ita et solvi debet; veluti, cum mutuum dedimus, ut retro pecuniæ tantundem solvi debeat.

(Pompon. ap. Dig. 46. 3. 80.)

(b) Est argumentorum locus ex consequentibus. 'Si malum perfidia, non est fallendum:' idem retro. (Quint. 5. 10. 74.)

(c) Uterque honestatem sic complectitur, ut omnia, quæ sine ea sint, longe retro ponenda censeat. (C. T. D. 5. 31.)

**Retro** is loosely compounded with *agere*, 'turn back,' 'reverse;' gradi, and -ire. 2108

**Sed, sē**, found with ablative case in the old language, and also in composition: 'without.' The conjunction *sed* is probably the same word. 2109

Si plus minusve secuerunt se fraude esto.

(Lex XII. Tab. ap. Gell. 20. 1. 49.)

(See also *Lex Repet.* cited below under *sine* § 2122.)

So once *seorsum* (cf. § 2173). Nequit ullam dispicere ipse oculum rem seorsum corpore toto. (Lucr. 3. 564.) 2110

In composition:

2111

*Apart: secedere, go aside, withdraw; secernere, sift away, separate; secludere, confine, sunder; secubare, lie apart; seducere, take apart; segregare (pasture apart), separate; sejungere, disjoin, sever; seligere, pick out, select; semigrare, move away; semovere, move aside; separare, separate; seponere, put apart; sevocare, call apart.*

Comp. also *sed-itio*, a secession, sedition.

**Secundum**: properly the neuter of the gerundive form from **sequor**; <sup>2112</sup> used chiefly with an accusative case<sup>1</sup>.

1. *In space*: 'after,' 'behind.'

(a) *Without a substantive dependent (rare).*

Age i tu secundum. So. Sequor, subsequor te. (Plaut. *Am.* 551.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

Fimeo nos secundum ferri nunc per urbem hæc omnia, nequis hoc <sup>2113</sup> tibi vitio vortat. (Plaut. *Mil.* 1349.)

Duo volnera accepit, unum in stomacho, alterum in capite secundum aurem. (Sulpic. ap. C. *Fam.* 4. 12.)

2. *In space*: 'along,' with an accusative. <sup>2114</sup>

Legiones Macedonicæ iter secundum mare superum faciunt.

(C. *Att.* 16. 8.)

In aperto loco secundum flumen paucæ stationes equitum videbantur. (Cæs. *G.* 2. 19.)

3. *In time or order*: 'after,' 'next to,' with an accusative. <sup>2115</sup>

Castra secundum prælium capta. (L. 8. 10.)

Hannibali secundum quietem visam esse Junonem Cælius scribit.

(C. *Div.* 1. 24.)

Secundum ea quæro, servarisne in eo fidem. (C. *Vat.* 6.)

Ille mihi secundum te et liberos nostros ita est, ut sit pæne par.

(C. *Q. Fr.* 3. 5.)

In hac nostra actione secundum vocem voltus valet. (C. *Or.* 3. 58.)

Passienus noster cum cœpit dicere, secundum principium fuga fit: ad epilogum omnes revertimur. (Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 3, Pr. § 10.)

4. *'In accordance with,' 'in favor of,' with an accusative.* <sup>2116</sup>

Tigna bina sesquipedalia in flumen defixit prone ac fastigate, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumberent. (Cæs. *G.* 4. 17.)

Facilius esse oportebat secundum naturam quam contra eam vivere. (Quint. 12. 11, § 13.)

Suo quisque loco sententiam rogatus, multa secundum causam nostram disputavit. (C. *Att.* 4. 2.)

Si iudex pronuntiaverit contra testamentum nec fuerit provocatum, suus heres erit secundum quem iudicatum est.

(Ulp. ap. *Dig.* 5. 2. 8, § 16.)

<sup>1</sup> A form **secus** is mentioned as new and vulgar by Charisius, p. 61, (ed. Putsche). Andrews' *Lexicon* is apparently mistaken in supposing **secus** in this sense to be found in Cato *R. R.* 21 and Plin. 24, § 135.

*Secus, 'from,' only in the words altrinsecus (Plaut.), utrinque 2117  
secus, extrinsecus, intrinsecus, 'from the other, each (out-, in-) side.'  
Also where we say 'on the...side,' cf. § 1813. (Probably same word  
as secus, 'otherwise.')*

Perge porro: ego adistam hinc altrinsecus. (Pl. Merc. 977.)

Utrunque secus corpus vapulat. (Lucr. 4. 939.)

Quod habet extremum, id cernitur ex alio extrinsecus.

(C. Div. 2. 50.)

Jecur a dextra parte sub præcordiis ab ipso septo orsum, intrinsecus  
cavum, extrinsecus gibbum. (Cels. 4. 1.)

Jubebat vasa intrinsecus et exterius crasse picari. (Col. 12. 44, § 5.)

*Simul, and in early language, simitu: frequent as adverbs with- 2118  
out any dependent substantive; simul is sometimes, in Augustan and later  
poets and in Tacitus, used with an ablative.*

1. *Without a substantive dependent: simul, simitu, 'together.'* 2119

Vix elocutast hoc, foras simul omnes proruont se. (Ter. Eun. 599.)

Propter vicinitatem totos dies simul eramus. (C. Att. 5. 10.)

Vis hæc quidem herclest et trahi et trudi simul. (Pl. Capt. 746.)

Ita tres res simitu agendæ sunt. (Pl. Merc. 117.)

Gratia habetur utrisque illisque tibiue simitu.

(Lucil. 30. 17, ed. Müller.)

*Frequently with cum.*

2120

I mecum opsecro una simul. (Pl. Most. 1037.)

An nobiscum simul moritura omnia arbitremur? (C. Arch. 12.)

Jussit rogare, mecum simitu ut ires ad sese domum. (Pl. Stich. 249.)

2. *With ablative case: simul, 'together with.'*

2121

Quippe simul nobis habitat discrimine nullo barbarus.

(Ov. Tr. 5. 10. 29.)

Acervatim ex eo Annius Pollio, Appius Silanus Scauro Mamercus  
simul ac Sabino Calvisio majestatis postulantiur.

(Tac. A. 6. 15 = 9.)

Avulsa est nam protinus hosti ore simul cervix. (Sil. 5. 417.)

**Sine:** *used-only with the ablative case; 'without.'*

2122

Pol, si istuc faxis, haud sine poena feceris. (Pl. *Capt.* 691.)

Quoi pecuniam ex hac lege, quod sine malo pequlatu fiat, prator, quei ex hac lege quæret, darei solvi iusserit, id quæstor, quei ærarium provinciam optinebit, sed fraude sua extra ordinem dato solvitoque. (*Lex Repet.* 68, C. I. R. 198.)

Sex. Clodium vidistis hominem sine re, sine fide, sine spe, sine sede, sine fortunis. (C. *Cal.* 32.)

Coloniarum et municipiorum sine ulla dubitatione hostis est.

(C. *Phil.* 14. 4.)

Videsne igitur minus quadringentorum annorum esse hanc urbem, ut sine regibus sit? (C. *R. P.* 1. 37.)

Restituebantur exsules, quasi lege, sine lege. (C. *Phil.* 5. 4.)

Fons dulci digne mero non sine floribus. (Hor. *Od.* 3. 13. 2.)

Præfecti classis id unius erat jus, ut agere de ea re sine rogatione ulla perlata posset. (L. 45. 25.)

Cum civitate mihi res est acerrima et conficientissima literarum, in qua nummus commoveri nullus potest sine quinque prætoribus, quæstoribus tribus, quattuor mensariis. (C. *Flac.* 19.)

Adeo infestus confertos hostes invasit, ut parci ei sine multorum perniciæ non posset. (L. 25. 16, § 23.)

**Sub, subter:** *used both with accusative and ablative cases; subter* <sup>2123</sup> *also used without a substantive dependent on it. Compare also subim in subinde (§ 522), susque deque (§ 1904), sursum (§ 2173).*

I. *In space: 'beneath,' 'under,' sub, subter.*

2124

(a) *Without a substantive dependent. (Subter only.)*

Omnia hæc, quæ supra et subter, una vi naturæ constricta esse dixerunt. (C. *Or.* 3. 5.)

(b) *With accusative case: 'to and under.'*

2125

Tota se luna sub orbem solis subjecerat. (C. *R. P.* 1. 16.)

Hic pagus L. Cassii consulis exercitum sub jugum miserat.

(Cæsar. *G.* 1. 12.)

Non ego variis obsita frondibus sub divum rapiam.

(Hor. *Od.* 1. 18.)

Cupiditatem subter præcordia locavit. (C. *T. D.* 1. 10.)

(c) *With ablative case: 'under.'*

2126

Quid, si essent qui sub terra semper habitavissent, nec tamen exist-  
sent unquam supra terram? (C. N. D. 2. 37.)

Sub hoc jugo dictator Æquos misit. (L. 3. 28.)

Vitam sub divo et trepidis agat in rebus. (Hor. Od. 3. 2. 5.)

Nunc tamen omnis ferre juvat supter densa testudine casus.

(Verg. A. 9. 514.)

2. *In space: 'at foot of.'*

2127

(a) *With accusative case: 'to the foot of,' 'close under.'*

In locum iniquum progrediuntur, et sub montem, in quo erat oppi-  
dum positum Ilerda, succedunt. (Cæs. G. 1. 45.)

Ædis suas detulit sub Veliam. (C. R. P. 2. 31.)

Equo citato subter murum hostium ad cohortes avehitur.

(L. 34. 20.)

(b) *With ablative case: 'at foot of.'*

2128

Certior factus hostes sub monte consedissee. (Cæs. G. 1. 21.)

Demonstravi digito pictum Gallum in Mariano scuto Cimbrico sub  
Novis distortum. (C. Or. 2. 66.)

3. *In time: sub only.*(a) *With accusative: 'just after.'*

2129

Sub eas (litteras) statim recitatæ sunt tuæ. (C. Fam. 10. 16.)

Peccat, sub noctem qui puer uvam furtiva mutat strigili.

(Hor. Sat. 2. 7. 109.)

Sub galli cantum consultor ubi ostia pulsat. (Ib. 1. 1. 10.)

Sub vesperum Cæsar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire jussit,  
ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus injuriam acciperent.

(Cæs. G. 2. 33.)

(b) *With ablative (rare): 'at.'*

2130

Necesseset fulmina sic uno fieri sub tempore multa. (Lucr. 6. 416.)

Pompeius, quo facilius impetum Cæsaris tardaret, ne sub ipsa pro-  
fectione milites oppidum irrumperent, portas obstruit.

(Cæs. G. 1. 27.)

Sub luce Hexapylo effracto Marcellus urbem ingressus. (L. 25. 24.)

Bacchi sub nomine Juno risit. (Ov. Met. 4. 522.)



4. *Metaphorically: 'under the reach of,' 'under,' sub.*

2131

(a) *With accusative case: 'to and under.'*

Deinde, ut sub ictum venerunt, telorum primo omnis generis vis ingens effusa in eos est. (L. 27. 18.)

Non est beneficium, quod sub oculis venit, sed beneficii vestigium et nota. (Sen. Ben. 1. 5.)

Lepide hoc succedit sub manus negotium. (Plaut. Mil. 873.)

(b) *With ablative case: 'under,' sub.*

2132

Appropinquare non ausæ naves, ne sub ictu superstantium rupibus piratarum essent. (L. 37. 27.)

Et jam luciscebat, omniaque sub oculis erant. Adjunxi hoc, in loco deligendo, Vocontii sub manu ut essent, per quorum loca fideliter mihi pateret iter. (Planc. ap. C. Fam. 10. 23.)

Impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis infirmiore animo adoriri cogitabant. (Cæs. G. 3. 24.)

Sese non recusatos, quominus perpetuo sub Romanorum dicione atque imperio essent. (Ib. 1. 31.)

Quid enim sua sponte Hieronymum, puerum ac vixdum pubescentem facere potuisse? Tutores ac magistros ejus sub aliena invidia regnasse. (L. 24. 25.)

Affirmavit fremere Philippum, et ægre pati sub specie pacis leges servitutis sibi impositas. (L. 36. 7.)

Quæ modo vena fuit, sub eodem nomine mansit. (Ov. Met. 1. 410.)

Grammatici certant, et adhuc sub judice lis est. (Hor. Ep. 2. 3. 78.)

5. *Of an accompaniment: sub, with ablative.*

2133

Reliquos urbe summovit sub poena perpetuæ servitutis nisi obtemperassent. (Suet. Tib. 36.)

Latum clavum etiam libertini filio tribuit, sed sub conditione, si prius ab equite R. adoptatus esset. (Suet. Claud. 24.)

**Sub**, in composition: **b** is often assimilated to labials, **f**, **r**, and gutturals; **sub-** before **t** and sometimes **c** and **p**; **su** before **s** (usually).

1. *Under, from under, to under, down:*

2135

**succedere**, go under (see also 2); **succendere**, set on fire from below; hence (from **succensus**) **succensere**, be angry; **succernere**, sift out below; **succidere**, fall under; **succidere**, cut under or below; **succollare**, put the neck under; **succumbere**, lie under, succumb; **succurrere** (Lucr.), run under (see also 4); **subdere**, place under (see

also 2); *subdomare*, *subdue*; *subducere*, *draw from under*, *withdraw* (see also 3); *subdēre* (Ov.), *eat underneath*; *sufficere* (*put under*), *supply*, *be sufficient*; *suffodere*, *stab or dig under*; *suffricare*, *rub underneath*; *suffringere*, *break underneath*; *suffugere*, *slip from under* (see also 5); *suffulcire*, *underprop*; *suffumigare*, *fumigate from below*; *suffundere*, *pour underneath*; *suggerere*, *put under*, *supply*; *subjacere*, *underlie*; *subicere*, *throw under*, *subject*; *subigere*, *drive* (e.g. the plough) *under*, *subdue*; *subire*, *go under*, *enter*; *sublabi*, *slip down*; *subjungere*, *yoke*, *bring under*; *subligare*, *bind under*; *sublinere*, *smear on underneath* (see also 6); *subluere*, *wash underneath*; *submergere*, *plunge under*; *submittere*, *lower*, *let down* (see also 3, 6); *summovere*, *move away*; *subnatere* (Sil.), *swim under*; *subnectere*, *tie underneath*; *subnotare* (Plin. Ep.), *mark under*, *note down*; *subpingere*, *fasten underneath*; *supplantare* (*put foot under*), *trip up*, *overtrow*; *supplicare* (*fold under*, *kneel*), *supplicate*; *supplodere*, *stamp the foot*; *subponere*, *put under* (see also 2); *supprimere*, *keep under*, *suppress*; *suppurare*, *form matter*, *suppurate*; *supputare*, *prune below*; *subremigare* (Verg.), *row underneath*; *subruere*, *undermine*; *subscribere*, *write below*, *sign*; *subsecare*, *cut down*, *pare*; *subservire*, *be a slave under*; *subsidiere*, *settle down*; *subsignare*, *subscribe*; *substernere*, *lay under*; *substare*, *be under*; *substringere*, *bind down*; *substruere*, *build underneath*; *subesse*, *be underneath*; *subrubere* (Ov.), *be red underneath*; *subterere*, *wear away below*; *subtexere*, *weave or spread under*; *subtrahere*, *drag from under*, *withdraw*.

## 2. In substitution:

2136

*succedere*, *come into place of another* (see also 1); *sucenturiare*, *put into a century in place of another*; *subdere*, *substitute*, *forge*; *sufficere*, *elect in the place*, &c. (see also 1); *sublégere*, *elect*, &c. (see also 3); *summittere*, *send a successor* (see also 1); *subnasci*, *grow into place*, &c.; *subolescere* (Liv.), *grow up to supply a place*, &c.; *suboriri* (Lucr.), *rise up in places*; *supponere*, *substitute*, *counterfeit* (see also 1); *surrogare*, *substitute by law*; *subsortiri*, *choose by lot in substitution*; *substituere*, *substitute*.

## 3. Up, from under up:

2137

*succedere*, *mount*, *go on well* (see also 1); *succingere*, *gird up*; *suscipere*, *take up*, *recognize as one's child*, *undertake*; *suscitare*, *stir up*; *succrescere*, *grow up*; *succutere*, *toss up*; *subducere*, *draw up* (see also 1); *suberigere* (Sil.), *raise up*; *suffarcinare*, *cram up*; *sufferre*, *bear up*, *support*; *suffigere*, *fix up to*; *sufflare*, *inflate*; *subire*, *go up to* (see also 1); *sublegere*, *gather up* (see also 2); *sublevare*, *lift up*; *summittere*, *send up*, *produce*, *rear* (see also 1, 6); *sumere* (*sub-emere*), *take up*, *assume*, *employ* (time); *subnixus*, *resting on*

(or to 1); *suspendere*, *hang up*; *supportare*, *carry up to*; *surgere*, *rise*; *suspectare*, *susplicere*, *look up at, respect* (see also 6); *suspirare*, *beave a sigh*; *subillire*, *leap up*; *sustinere*, *bold up, check*; *sustollere*, *lift up*; *subvehere*, *convey up*; *subvertere*, *upset*; *subvolare*, *fly up*; *subvolvere* (Verg.), *roll up*.

4. *In assistance:*

2138

*succurrere*, *to succour* (see also 1); *subministrare*, *supply*; *subornare*, *equip*; *suppetere*, *be at hand*; *subvenire*, *come up to aid*.

5. *Close to, just after:*

2139

*subarare*, *plough at the foot of*; *succedere*, *follow after* (see also 3); *succinere*, *chime in, play in accompaniment*; *succlamare*, *shout in answer*; *subesse*, *be near* (see also 1); *suggredi* (Tac.), *approach*; *subnectere*, *tie on* (see also 1); *subsequi*, *follow after*; *suburgere*, *press close to*.

6. *Secretly:*

2140

*subauscultare*, *overhear*; *subducere*, *withdraw secretly* (see also 1); *suffugere* (Liv.), *slip off* (see also 1); *suffurari*, *filch*; *sublinere* (Plaut.), *secretly smear a man's face, bamboozle*; *summittere*, *send secretly* (see also 1, 3); *submonere*, *give a hint to*; *subornare*, *equip secretly, suborn*; *suppilare*, *pilfer*; *subrepere*, *creep softly on*; *subripere*, *snatch away secretly*; *suspectus*, *looked at slyly, suspected* (see also 3); *suspectare* (Tac.), *to suspect* (see also 3); *susplicari*, *suspect*.

7. *Slightly:*

2141

*subaccusare* (Cic.), *blame somewhat*; *subbibere* (Plaut., Suet.), *tipple*; *subblandiri*, *fondle somewhat*; *subdeficere* (Curt.), *fail somewhat*; *subdiffidere* (Cic.), *be somewhat distrustful*; *subdubitare* (Cic.), *have some hesitation*; *subinvidere* (Cic.), *be somewhat envious of*; *subinvitare* (Cic.), *half-invite*; *subirascl* (Cic.), *be a bit angry*; *sublucere*, *faintly gleam*; *subnegare* (Cic.), *half-deny*; *subolere*, *give out slight scent*; *suppalpari*, *coax*; *subpudere* (Cic.), *be somewhat ashamed*; *subridere*, *smile*; *suburere* (Suet.), *scorch*.

8. *Pleonastic: subsistere, stop, remain.*

**Subter:** There is no clear mark of composition.

2142

*Under, beneath: subteractus* (Cels.), *driven beneath*; *subterducere* (Plaut.), *withdraw*; *subterfugere*, *fly away*; *subterlabi*, *step from under*; *subterlinere*, *anoint underneath*; *subtervolare* (Stat.), *fly under*.

**Super:** *used without a substantive dependent, and with accusative and ablative case.* 2143

1. *In space: 'over,' 'upon;'* super, insuper.

(a) *Without a substantive dependent: so also desuper, 'from above.'*

Eo super tigna bipedalia iniciunt. (Cæs. C. 2. 10.)

Digiti fovendi aqua ex verbenis, imponendumque super medicamentum ita factum. (Cels. 6. 19.)

(b) *With accusative:*

2144

Suo lateres coria inducuntur. (Cæs. C. 2. 10.)

Suos consanguineos aliena rogorum insuper extructa ingenti clamore locabunt. (Lucr. 6. 1283.)

(c) *With ablative:*

2145

Destrictus ensis cui super impia cervice pendet. (Hor. Od. 3. 1. 17.)

Hanc mecum poteras requiescere noctem fronde super viridi.

(Verg. B. 1. 80.)

Aliis aliæ nubes nimbiue rigantes insuper atque omni vulgo de parte feruntur. (Lucr. 6. 521.)

2. *In place and rank: super, 'above,' desuper, 'from above.'* 2146

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Hæc super e vallo prospectant Troes. (Verg. A. 9. 168.)

Collis plurimus urbi imminet, adversasque adspectat desuper arces.  
(Ib. 1. 420.)

(b) *With an accusative case: 'above,' 'higher,' 'beyond.'*

2147

Pars maxima super theatrum circaque, assueti et ante spectaculo contionum, consistunt. (L. 24. 39.)

Nomentanus erat super ipsum, Porcius infra. (Hor. S. 2. 8. 23.)

Super et Garamantas et Indos proferet imperium.

(Verg. A. 6. 794.)

3. *In time (rare).*

2148

(a) *With accusative case: 'over,' i.e. during a meal, &c.*

De hujus nequitia omnes super cenam loquebantur. (Plin. Ep. 4. 21.)

Pudebat amicos (Alexandri) super vinum et epulas socerum ex deditis esse delectum. (Curt. 8. 5. 30.)

(b) *With ablative case: 'on,' 'at.'*

2149

Pleno lupus insidiatus ovili fremit ad caulas nocte super media.

(Verg. *A.* 9. 61.)

Centaurea cum Lapithis rixa super mero debellata.

(Hor. *Od.* 1. 18. 8.)

4. *In number and quantity: 'over,' 'besides,' 'above,' 'left over.'* 2150

(a) *Without a substantive dependent: super, superquam; insuper, insuper quam.*

Satis superque esse sibi suarum cuique rerum. (C. *Lael.* 13.)

Cui neque aput Danaos usquam locus, et super ipsi Dardanidæ infensi pœnas cum sanguine poscunt. (Verg. *A.* 2. 71.)

Incedere inde agmen cœpit primoribus, superquam quod dissenserant ab consilio, territis etiam duplici prodigio. (L. 22. 3.)

Quid jam integri esset in corpore loci ad nova vulnera accipienda, quid super sanguinis, qui dari pro re publica posset, rogitabant. (L. 4. 58.)

Parumne hoc est malæ rei, quod amat Demipho, ni sumptuosus insuper etiam siet? (Pl. *Merc.* 692.)

Hæc pacta: illa insuper quam quæ pacta erant facinora Campani ediderunt. (L. 23. 7.)

(b) *With accusative case.*

2151

Sin suos ejus pæniteat, quippe qui alii super alios trucidentur, quid spei melioris Latinis portendi? (L. 1. 50.)

Convenit ut habitationes secundum defuncti voluntatem super pretium libertis præstarentur. (Papin. ap. *Dig.* 18. 6. 19 [18]).

(c) *With ablative: insuper.*

2152

Præterea bis sex genitor lectissima matrum corpora captivosque dabit, suaque omnibus arma; insuper his, campi quod rex habet ipse Latinus. (Verg. *A.* 9. 274.)

5. *In worth: 'above,' with accusative case.*

2153

Vox quidem (erat Trachalo) non, ut Cicero desiderat, pæne tragædorum, sed super omnes, quos ego quidem audierim, tragædos. (Quint. 12. 5, § 5.)

Ætas et forma et super omnia Romanum nomen te ferociorem facit. (L. 31. 18.)

Super omnia erit populi sedere ausi furor tam infida instabilique sede. (Plin. 36, § 118.)

6. 'Upon,' 'concerning,' with ablative case. Infrequent in Cicero; 2154 not in Caesar.

Dixi tibi, mater, juxta rem mecum tenes super Euclionis filia.  
(Plaut. *Aul.* 674.)

Scribas ad me velim, quid agendum nobis sit super legatione votiva.  
(C. *Att.* 14. 22.)

Mitte civilis super urbe curas. (Hor. *Od.* 3. 8. 17.)

**Super** in composition. Few words have any clear mark of com- 2155 position.

1. Over, upon, of place: **supercernere** (Plin.), *sift upon*; **-crescere** (Cels.), *grow upon*; **-dare** (Cels.), *throw over*; **-eminere**, *rise above*; **-emori** (Plin.), *die upon*; **-ferre**, *carry over*; **-fluere**, *flow over*; **-fugere** (Val. Fl.), *flee over*; **-fundere**, *pour over*; **-gredi**, *step over*; **-jacere**, *throw over*; **-ligare** (Plin.), *bind upon*; **-illinere**, *smear over*; **-imminere**, *hang over*; **-imponere**, *put upon*; **-incidere** (Cels.), *cut in above*; **-increscere** (Cels.), *grow over*; **-incumbere** (Ov.), *lying over*; **-inducere**, *draw over*; **-induere** (Suet.), *put on over*; **-infundere** (Cels.), *pour over*; **-ingerere**, *heap upon*; **-iniciere**, *cast on over*; **-insternere**, *lay on over*; **-inungere** (Cels.), *anoint over*; **-labi** (Sen.), *glide over*; **-linere** (Plin.), *smear over*; **-natere**, *sawim on top*; **-obruere** (Prop.), *overwhelm*; **-ponere**, *place over*; **-scandere**, *climb over*; **-sedere**, *sit upon*; **-sternere**, *lay over*; **-stare**, *stand over*; **-struere**, *build over*; **-tegere**, *cover over*; **-vadere**, *climb over*; **-vehi**, *ride over*; **-venire**, *come over*; **-volare**, *fly over*; and some others little used.

2. Metaphorically: *over and above*; **superaddere**, *add over and above*; **-bibere** (Plin.), *drink besides*; **-esse**, *remain, survive, abound*; **-ferri**, *be left*; **-sedere**, *be above, forbear*.

**Supra**, rarely **supera**: used both without a substantive dependent 2156 on it, and with an accusative case.

1. In space.

(a) Without a substantive dependent: 'on the top,' 'above,' 'higher up.'

Magno numero jumentorum in flumine supra atque infra constituto traducit exercitum. (Cæs. *C.* 1. 64.)

Cotem autem illam et novaculam defossam in comitio, supraque impositum puteal accepimus. (C. *Div.* 1. 17.)

(b) *With an accusative case: 'above,' 'higher up,' 'beyond.'* 2157

Supera magnum mare venti nubila portant. (Lucr. 6. 505.)

De ea muliere versus plurimi supra tribunal et supra prætoris caput scribebantur. (C. Verr. 3. 33.)

Dux hostium cum exercitu supra caput est. (Sall. C. 52, § 24.)

Syene oppidum est supra Alexandriam quinque milibus stadiorum. (Plin. 2, § 183.)

2. *In time: 'above,' 'before,' only of things written or spoken.* 2158

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Priusquam hujuscemodi rei initium expedio, pauca supra repetam. (Sall. J. 5.)

Atque hæc quidem, ut supra dixi, veteris sunt Græciæ. (C. R. P. 2. 4.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

Paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, justis funeribus confectis, una cremabantur. (Cæs. G. 6. 19.)

3. *In number or quantity: 'more,' 'beyond.'*

2159

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Pisonis humanitas, virtus, amor in omnis nos tantus est, ut nihil supra possit. (C. Fam. 14. 1.)

Paulatim mercaris agrum fortasse trecentis aut etiam supra numerorum milibus emptum. (Hor. Ep. 2. 2. 165.)

Corpus patiens inedia, aloris, vigiliæ supra quam cuiquam credibile est. (Sall. C. 5.)

Supra decem milia hostium occisa, supra septem milia capitum cum frumentatoribus Campanis capta sunt. (L. 25. 14.)

(b) *With an accusative case.*

2160

Ternos ter cyathos attonitus petet vates: tris prohibet supra rixarum metuens tangere Gratia. (Hor. Od. 3. 18.)

Deinde in admirationem versus, supra Coclites Muciosque dicere id facinus esse. (L. 2. 13.)

Murus, ut in suspecto loco, supra ceteræ modum altitudinis emunitus erat. (L. 21. 7.)

Catones Scipionesque et alios, quos audire cum admiratione consuevimus, supra imitationem positos putamus. (Sen. Ep. 70, § 22.)

**TenuS**, 'as far as,' frequent in Augustan verse, is used both with <sup>2161</sup> the genitive and accusative cases. (Originally, probably, a substantive signifying 'stretch' in the adverbial accusative.) It is always put after the word dependent on it.

[The only passage in Plautus where the word occurs is *Bacch.* 793. Nunc ab transenna hic turdus lumbricum petit: pendeat hodie pulcre, ita intendi tenuS, where Nonius interprets it as 'a noose.' In *Pl. Men.* 859, *tenuS* is from Ritschl's conjecture.]

1. With genitive case (lit. 'the extent of').

<sup>2162</sup>

Extrema prope nocte et Cepheus conditur alte, lumborum tenuS a palma depulsus ad umbras. (*C. Arat.* 83.)

Rumores de comitiis Transpadanorum Cumarum tenuS caluerunt. (*CæL. ap. C. Fam.* 8. 1.)

Additum ut urbium, Corcyrae tenuS ab Ætolia incipienti, solum tectaque et muri cum agris Ætolorum, alia omnis præda populi Romani esset. (*ap. L.* 26. 24.)

Cui crurum tenuS a mento palearia pendent. (*Verg. G.* 3. 53.)

Quod (jumentum) per aquam, ferme genus tenuS altam, tres milites sequebantur. (*L.* 44. 40.)

2. With ablative case (lit. 'stretching from'). So especially <sup>2163</sup> *eatenus*, *hactenus*, *quatenus*, *quadamtenus*, *aliquatenus*.

(a) In space.

Lateri capulo tenuS abdidit ensem. (*Verg. A.* 2. 553.)

Destinarat etiam Ostia tenuS mœnia promovere. (*Suet. Ner.* 16.)

(b) Metaphorically.

<sup>2164</sup>

Est quadam prodire tenuS, si non datur ultra. (*Hor. Ep.* 1. 1. 32.)

Sed hæc hactenus: nunc ad ostenta veniamus. (*C. Div.* 2. 24.)

Nos pro tuis injuriis continuis animo tenuS commoti inimiciter tecum bellare studemus. (*Lit. cos. ap. Gell.* 3. 8.)

Veteres verbo tenuS acute de re publica disserebant. (*C. Leg.* 3. 6.)

Tertium et quartum consulatum titulo tenuS gessit. (*Suet. Jul.* 76.)

Creditoris, cujus pignus subreptum est, non credito tenuS interest, sed omnimodo in solidum furti agere potest.

(*Paul. ap. Dig.* 47. 2. 15.)



[The ablative *fine*, or *fini*, was used in this sense (with either a <sup>2165</sup> genitive or ablative case, or with a relative adjective) in the older and probably the conversational language. It is similar in construction to *regions*, § 1173, *spatio*, § 1248, *diverticulo*, p. 103.]

Qua fini = quatenus (Cato R. R. 21, § 3); postea operito terra radicibus fini (ib. 28); amphoras nolito implere nimum, ansarum infimarum fini (ib. 113); qua vendas fini dicito (ib. 149); ad summum, qua fini culleum capiet, perfundito (ib. 154); deinde voluptas est e succo fine palati (Lucr. 4. 627); fine inguinum (Sall. ap. Arus. p. 518); per mare umbilici fine ingressi (Bell. Afr. 857); fine genus vestem ritu succincta Dianæ (Ov. M. 10. 536); dabitur ei compensatio peculii fini, quod servus publicus habebit (Papin. ap. Dig. 16. 2. 19); and in three other places of Papinian. Also in Apuleius, Hyginus, and Gellius.]

3. With *pro*; *protenus* (*protinus*) lit. 'stretching on;' also in early <sup>2166</sup> language *protinam*.

(a) In space 'forwards.'

En ipse capellas protinus æger ago; hanc etiam vix, Tityre, duco.  
(Verg. B. 1. 13.) See also C. Div. 1. 24, quoted in § 2105.

(b) In time 'right on'; 'forthwith.'

Nunc ad oppidum hoc ego vetus continuo legiones meas protinus adducam. (Pl. Ps. 586.)

Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt.  
(Cæs. G. 2. 9.)

Aliquid convasassem atque hinc me conicerem protinam in pedes.  
(Ter. Pb. 190.)

**Trans**, 'across,' with an accusative case only: always in strictly <sup>2167</sup> local meaning.

1. With verbs of motion.

Illam abstrahat, trans mare hinc venum asportet. (Pl. Merc. 354.)  
Postulavit, ne quam hominum multitudinem amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret. (Cæs. G. 1. 35.)

Vibius arreptum vexillum trans vallum hostium trajecit. (L. 25. 14.)

2. *With verbs of rest.*

2168

Cogito interdum trans Tiberim hortos aliquos parare.

(C. Att. 12. 19.)

Redemptor hostias constituit omnis in litore, ut, qui trans flumen essent, videre possent. (C. Inv. 2. 31.)

Trans in composition; often tra before j, d, l, m, n;

2169

1. *Across*: transadigere, thrust through; transcidere (Plaut.), cut across, beat; transcurre, run across; traducere, lead across, parade, hence disgrace; transferre, bear across, transfer; transfigere, transfix; transfluere (Plin.), flow through; transfugere, flee across, desert; transgredi, step across, go beyond; transigere, drive through (see also 3); tralcere, throw across, transport, pierce; transire, go over, pass by; translucere, shine through; transmeare, go across; transmigrare, migrate across; transmittere, send across, pass over; transmovere, remove; tranare, transnatare, swim across; transponere, put across; transportare, convey across; transcendere, climb over; transillire, leap over; transpicere (Lucr.), look through; transuere, stitch through; transumere (Stat.), transfer; transtinere (Plaut.), pass through; transvehere, carry over; transverberare, strike through; transvertere, turn across; transvolare, fly across.

2. *Of a change or transference*: tradere, hand over, surrender, 2170 hand down to posterity; transfigurare (post-Aug.), transform; transformare, transform; transfundere, decant, transfer; transmutare (Lucr.), transmute; transnominare (Suet.), change the name of; transcribere, copy out, consign over.

3. *Through to the end*: transigere, complete a business, settle 2171 a suit, spend time; translegere (Plaut.), read through; transloqui (Plaut.), recount; transnumerare (Corn.), count over.

**Versus, versum** (vorsus, vorsum; lit. 'turned'), 'towards' used 2172 both with a preposition, a locative adverb, and an accusative case, which however rarely requires versus to justify its construction.

1. *With a preposition both (a) absolutely and (b) when attended* 2173 *by a case. Hence adversus; which see, §§ 1836—1842.*

(a) *Absolutely* (see § 512).

Palpebras quoque ejus, ne conivere posset, sursum ac deorsum diductas insuebant. (Tubero ap. Gell. 7 (6). 4.)

Non prorsus, verum transvorsus cedit, quasi cancer solet.

(Pl. Ps. 955.)

Nam me hodie senex seduxit solum sorsum ab ædibus.  
(Pl. *As.* 362.)

Seorsus item sapor oris habet vim, seorsus odores nascuntur, sorsum sonitus. (Lucr. 4. 494.)

Ego cunas recessim rursum vorsum trahere et ducere.  
(Pl. *Amph.* 1112.)

Naturis iis, ex quibus omnia constant, sursus deorsus, ultro citro commeantibus, mundi partium conjunctio continetur.

(C. *N. D.* 2. 33.)  
Ea dissensio civium, quod seorsum eunt alii ad alios, seditio dicitur.

(C. *R. P.* 6. 1.)  
Prorsus 'quite,' rursus 'again,' are more commonly used metaphorically.

(b) *With preposition, attended by a case.*

2174

Labienum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceanum versus in eas partes, quæ Messapios attingunt, proficisci jubet. (Cæs. *G.* 6. 33.)

Catilina per montes iter facere, modo ad urbem, modo in Galliam vorsus, castra movere. (Sall. *C.* 56.)

Convorso equo animadvortit fugam ad se vorsum fieri. (Sall. *J.* 58.)

2. *With a locative adverb (see also § 512); and even with com-* 2175  
*pounds of itself.*

Hic te opperiar: eadem illi insidias dabo, quam mox horsum ad stabulum juvenix recipiat se a pabulo. (Pl. *Mil.* 304.)

Nescio hercle, neque unde eam, neque quorsum eam. (Ter. *Eun.* 305.)

Hic via Prænestina ad miliarium VI diverticulo sinistrorsus passuum DCCCCLXXX, proxime viam Collatiam accipit fontem.

(Frontin. *Aquad.* 5.)

Abi sane istac, istorsum, quovis. (Ter. *Haut.* 588.)

Censeo senatui placere, circum eam statuam locum ludis gladiatoribusque liberos posterosque ejus quoquo versus pedes quinque habere. (C. *Phil.* 9. 7.)

Laqueis falces avertabant, quas, cum destinaverant tormentis, introrsus reducebant. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 22.)

Cum semel dictum sit directe, invertatur ordo, et idem quasi sursum versum retroque dicatur. (C. *Part. Or.* 7.)

Omnes numeri a duobus susum versus multitudinis sunt.  
(Varr. *L. L.* 9, § 65.)

3. *With an accusative, (a) of the name of a town (§ 1108).* 2176

Initio belli civilis, cum Brundisium versus ires ad Cæsarem, venisti ad me in Formianum. (C. Fam. 11. 27.)

Hac (nave) adjuncta ad reliquas naves cursum Massiliam versus perficit. (Cæs. G. 2. 3.)

(b) *Of other names (rare).*

2177

Quem locum Ægyptum versus finem imperi habuere Carthaginenses. (Sall. J. 19.)

Ab his omnibus vastæ solitudines orientem versus usque ad Garamantas, verissima opinione Homeri, qui bipertitos tradit Æthiopas, ad orientem occasumque versos. (Plin. 5, § 43.)

**Ultra, ultro, 'beyond' used without a substantive dependent on them; uls, and ultra also, used with an accusative case.** 2178

1. *In space; literally and metaphorically*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent; ultro, 'to that side,' 'away.'*

Proin tu ab istoc procul apscedas. HE. Ultro istum a me.

(Plaut. Capt. 551.)

Detractis frenis bis ultro citroque cum magna strage hostium transcurrerunt. (L. 40. 40.)

(b) *With an accusative: uls (in older language), ultra, 'beyond.'* 2179

In eo (ponte) sacra et uls et cis Tiberim non mediocri ritu fiunt.

(Varr. L.L. 5. 15, 83.)

Adjutores triumviris quinqueviri uls cis Tiberim suæ quisque regionis ædificiis præessent. (ap. L. 39. 14.)

Post mutato consilio quibusdam de causis Cæsar paulo ultra eum locum castra transtulit. (Cæs. G. 1. 48.)

At ut manum alius ultra sinum proferre non audeat, alius, in quantum patet longitudo, protendat, aut ad tectum erigat, aut, repetito ultra lævum humerum gestu, in tergum flagellet, sæpe scio evenire, (Quint. 11. 3, § 118.)

2. *In time.*

2180

(a) *Without a substantive dependent: ultra, 'later.'*

Nec ultra bellum Latinum, gliscens jam per aliquot annos, dilatam.  
(L. 2. 19.)

Semivocalis geminare diu non fuit usitatissimi moris, atque e contrario usque ad Accium et ultra porrectas syllabas geminis, ut dixi, vocalibus scripserunt. (Quint. 1. 7, § 14.)

(b) *With an accusative: ultra, 'later than.'*

2181

Gorgias beneficio longissimæ ætatis,...et illorum, de quibus supra dixi, fuit æmulus, et ultra Socratem usque duravit.  
(Quint. 3. 1, § 8.)

Cujus disciplinæ usus a me nec ultra pueriles annos retinebitur nec in his ipsis diu. (Ib. 1. 11, § 19.)

Ex his (seminibus) quæ sunt fortissima, nullum ultra quadrimum utile est, dumtaxat serendo, culinis et ultra tempestiva sunt.  
(Plin. 19, § 181.)

3. *In quantity, degree, &c.*

2182

(a) *Without a substantive dependent: ultra, 'beyond,' 'besides,' ultra quam.*

Estne aliquid ultra, quo crudelitas progredi possit? (C. Verr. 5. 45.)

Possum equidem dicere mortem cuncta mortalium mala dissolvere, ultra neque curæ neque gaudio locum esse. (Sall. C. 51, § 20.)

Per dies aliquot nihil ultra motum, quam ut hæ duæ turmæ subducerentur. (L. 40. 30.)

Dicendi mutavimus genus et ultra nobis, quam oportebat, indulsimus. (Quint. 2. 5, § 24.)

(b) *Ultra, 'beyond:' with an accusative case.*

2183

Adhibent modum quendam, quem ultra progredi non oporteat.  
(C. T. D. 4. 17.)

Sunt certi denique fines, quos ultra citraque nequit consistere rectum.  
(Hor. S. 1. 1. 106.)

Sunt quibus in satura videor nimis acer, et ultra legem tendere opus.  
(Hor. S. 2. 1. 1.)

Mæcenās, vir otio ac mollitiis pæne ultra feminam fluens.  
(Vell. 2. 88.)

(c) **Ultrō**, 'further,' 'of one's own accord,' 'unasked,' 'unprompted:' in colloquial English often = 'actually,' 'even.'

Cavendo, ne metuant, homines metuendos ultro se efficiunt.

(L. 3. 65.)

Non debui tibi pecuniam: numquam me appellasti, usuram non accepisti, ultro a me mutuatus es. (Quint. 5. 10, § 107.)

GN. Jam hæc tibi aderit supplicans ultro. THR. Credin? GN. Immo certe: novi ingenium mulierum: nolunt, ubi velis; ubi nolis, cupiunt ultro. (Ter. Eun. 812.)

Cæsar eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti denegasset, ultro polliceretur. (Cæs. G. 1. 42.)

Gratissimum mihi feceris, si ad eum ultro veneris. (C. Fam. 7. 21.)

Cum rex ab Attalo et Rhodiis ultro se bello lacessitum diceret, 'Num Abydeni quoque,' inquit, 'ultro tibi intulerunt arma?'

(L. 31. 18.)

Vectigalia summis pretiis, ultro tributa infimis locaverunt.

(ult. trib. 'voluntary expenditure,' i.e. public works. L. 39. 44.)

So, in legal language, of a right to bring an action, especially as opposed to a mere plea in defence:

Contractum definit Labeo ultro citroque obligationem, veluti emptionem venditionem, locationem conductionem.

(ap. Dig. 50. 16. 19.)

Quæsitum est an maritus, si de tota dote conveniatur a filio, doli mali exceptione se tueri possit, et an ultro ex causa fideicommissi actio ei competat. (Scæv. ap. Dig. 32, l. 37, § 4.)

**Usque**: often used independently and with prepositions; rarely used with an accusative case (except under § 1108): 'all the way,' 'right on,' 'continuously.'

1. In space.

(a) Usually with prepositions or local adverbs.

2187

Perreptavi usque omne oppidum: ad portam, ad lacum, quo non?

(Ter. Ad. 715.)

A fundamento mi usque movisti mare. (Pl. Rud. 539.)

Portus usque in sinus oppidi et ad urbis crepidines infusi.

(C. R. P. 3. 31.)

Aut undique religionem tolle aut usque quaque conserva.

(C. Phil. 2. 43.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

2188

Theatrum ita resonans, ut usque Romam significationes vocesque referantur. (C. Q. Fr. 1. 14.)

Eratosthenes, inter ostium Oceani et Sardiniam quicquid est, Sardinum (mare appellat), inde ad Siciliam Tyrrhenum, ab hac Cretam usque Siculum, ab ea Creticum. (Plin. 3, § 75.)

Sed postea imperium usque extremos orientis terminos prolatum.  
(Just. 7. 1.)

Modo nempe horrendus ab astris descendit vos usque fragor.  
(Stat. Theb. 11. 88.)

2. *In time and order; with prepositions, or local adverbs, or* 2189  
*dum, donec, &c.*

A mani ad noctem usque in foro degi diem. (Pl. Most. 519.)

Id augures omnes usque ab Romulo decreverunt. (C. Vat. 8.)

Romæ rex erat deinceps retro usque ad Romulum. (C. R. P. 1. 37.)

Adsenserunt consules designati, omnes etiam consulares usque ad Pompeium. (Plin. Ep. 2. 11, § 20.)

Bubulcum usque adeo verberari jussit, dum animam efflavit.  
(C. Grac. ap. Gell. 10. 3.)

Quæ cum ita essent, tamen usque eo se tenuit, quoad a Cn. Pompeio ad eum legati litteræque venerunt. (C. Dejot. 4.)

'Parentem' hic utriusque sexus accipe; sed an in infinitum, queritur. Quidam parentem usque ad tritavum appellari aiunt, superiores majores dici. (Ulp. ap. Dig. 2. 4. 4.)

*Occasionally put immediately after the preposition.*

2190

Sic illa patriciorum nobilitas fundamentis urbis ab usque in hæc tempora constitit. (Sen. Rhet. Contr. 2. 9. 17.)

Ad usque supremum tempus, ne se penuria victus opprimeret, metuebat. (Hor. S. 1. 1. 97.)

Cf. Stat. Theb. 1. 440, in usque manus.

3. *In amount. (a) Absolutely.*

2191

Cantantes licet usque, minus via lædit, eamus. (Verg. B. 9. 64.)

Pœnas dedit usque superque, quam satis est. (Hor. S. 1. 2. 65.)

(b) *With particles; e.g. eo, adeo.*

2192

Ubi coctum erit, lacte addat paulatim usque adeo, donec cremor crassus erit factus. (Cato R. R. 86.)

Anco regi familiaris est factus usque eo, ut consiliorum omnium particeps putaretur. (C. R. P. 2. 20.)

## II. (CO-ORDINATING) CONJUNCTIONS.

(Mainly from Madvig.)

Co-ordinate sentences, regularly expressed, either have a conjunction with every member, or with all but the first. In the former case the writer shows that he has foreseen, and determines to mark, the distribution of his sentence into two or more co-ordinate clauses or parts; in the latter case the first clause expresses the original idea, the others are in the nature of after-thoughts.

### i. Copulative Conjunctions.

Copulative conjunctions are those which connect both the sentences and their meaning: *et*; *-que*, appended to (usually) the first word of a clause; *atque* (before consonants or vowels), *ac* (before consonants only).

1. *et* simply connects, whether words or sentences:

*que* marks the second member as an appendage or supplement to the first: and is often used in joining two words, which together make up one conception:

*ac*, or *atque*, lays a greater stress on the appended second member: e.g. *omnia honesta et inhonesta*: 'all things becoming and unbecoming.'

*omnia honesta inhonestaque*: 'all becoming things, and the unbecoming too.'

*omnia honesta atque inhonesta*: 'all becoming things, and no less the unbecoming also.'

These distinctions are not always clearly marked, and the selection is sometimes made rather to give variety to the sentence and avoid the confusion of principal with subordinate divisions.

*Quas res pro salute hujusce imperii et pro vita civium proque universa republica fecimus.* (C. Arch. II.)

*Illa autem sapientia, quam principem dixi, rerum est divinarum et humanarum scientia.* (C. Off. I. 43.)

*Est enim amicitia nihil aliud, nisi omnium divinarum humanarumque rerum cum benevolentia et caritate consensio.*

(C. Lael. 6.)



Est tamen quaedam philosophi discriptio, ut is, qui studeat omnium rerum divinarum atque humanarum vim naturam causasque nosse, et omnem bene vivendi rationem tenere et persequi, nomine hoc appelletur. (C. Or. I. 49.)

Molliebantur iræ, et ipsa deformitas Pleminii memoriaque absentis Scipionis favorem ad vulgum conciliabat. (L. 29. 22.)

Senatus populusque Romanus. Jus potestatemque habere.

2. *et, ac* are sometimes used emphatically in commencing a reply, e.g. 2197

Curæ est mihi. MIC. Et mihi curæ est. (Ter. Ad. 129.)

To. Tace, stulte: hic ejus geminust frater. DO. Hicines? To. Ac geminissimus. (Pl. Pers. 830.)

E cælo? SY. Atque e medio quidem. (Pl. Trin. 941.)

So *et quidem* 'aye and' § 1623.

*et* is also used for 'also,' chiefly in such expressions as, *et ille, et ipse, et nunc, &c.* 2198

Certum esse ratus omnia Romæ venalia esse, simul et illorum pollicitationibus accensus, quos &c., in regnum Adherbalis animum intendit. (Sall. J. 20.)

Principio deinde veris et ipsi ad bellum profecti sunt. (L. 28. 11.)

Sunt et mea contra fata mihi. (Verg. A. 9. 136.)

For *ac* in comparisons see §§ 1275, 1580, 1581. 2199

Plautus in a few places has *atque* in the apodosis to an adverbial clause, e.g.

Forte ut adsedi in stega, atque ego lembum conspikor. (Bac. 278.)

3. An affirmative sentence, following a negative sentence and expressing the same general meaning, is joined to it by *et, ac, -que*, not, as in English, by an adversative conjunction. 2200

Nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt. (Cæs. G. 4. 35.)

Socrates nec patronum quæsivit ad iudicium capitis, nec iudicibus supplex fuit, adhibuitque liberam contumaciam a magnitudine animi ductam. (C. T. D. I. 29.)

4. When the distribution of a sentence or expression is foreseen and marked, the conjunctions are used as follows: 2201

*et...et* connect either words or sentences. This is the regular mode.

*que...et* connect words only; (not in Cicero.)

*que...que in prose are rare; but are used with a double relative.  
et...que only as a loose connection of two sentences.*

Et mittentibus et missis ea læta expeditio fuit; nam et illis, quod jam diu cupiebant, novandi res occasio data est; et hi, sentinam quandam urbis rati exhaustam, lætabantur. (L. 24. 29.)

De Scipione nusquam, nisi in senatu, actum, ubi omnes legatique et tribuni classem exercitum ducemque verbis extollentes, fecerunt ut &c. (L. 29. 22.)

Omnes eam rogationem, quique Romæ quique in exercitu erant, æqui atque iniqui, præter ipsum dictatorem in contumeliam ejus latam acceperunt. (L. 22. 26.)

Namque urget ab alto arboribusque satisque notus pecorique sinister. (Verg. G. 1. 444.)

Quis est quin intellegat et eos qui fecerint, dignitatis splendore ductos, immemores fuisse utilitatum suarum, nosque, cum ea laudemus, nulla alia re nisi honestate duci? (C. Fin. 5. 22.)

5. (a) *In stating three or more perfectly co-ordinate words, 2202  
Either no conjunction is put, e.g. summa fide, constantia, justitia;  
or (b) each is connected with the preceding, e.g. summa fide (or  
et fide) et constantia et justitia;  
or (c) the conjunction is omitted between the first members and  
que is annexed to the last, e.g. summa fide, constantia justitiaque.*

*A conjunction is usually put between two epithets, and either 2203  
omitted or inserted between three, e.g.*

*multæ et graves et diuturnæ causæ; or causæ multæ, graves,  
diuturnæ.*

*multæ et graves causæ (not multæ graves causæ; but multæ aliæ  
causæ is frequent).*

6. *Occasionally two co-ordinate words are put without any con- 2204  
junction. This is chiefly (a) in lively language; or (b) when the  
words are opposites completing one another; or (c) in old forms; or  
(d) for legal precision.*

(a) *Ligur non aderat; L. frater ejus causam agebat: aderant  
amici, propinqui. (C. Verr. 1. 48.)*

*In feris inesse fortitudinem sæpe dicimus; ut in equis, in leonibus.  
(C. Off. 1. 16.)*

(b) *Democritus luminibus amissis alba scilicet discernere et atra  
non poterat: at vero bona mala, æqua iniqua, honesta turpia,  
utilia inutilia, magna parva poterat. (C. T. D. 5. 39.)*

*Omnes te di homines, summi medii infimi, cives peregrini, viri mu-  
lieres, liberi servi oderunt. (C. Phil. 13. 20.)*

- (c) Deus optimus maximus. Cn. Pompeio, M. Crasso consulibus. Velitis, jubeatis Quirites, &c.
- (d) Quosque quomque quæstores ex lege plebeive scito præcones legere sublegere oportebit, ei quæstores eo jure ea lege præcones IIII legunto sublegunto, quo jure qua lege quæstores qui nunc sunt præcones III legerunt sublegerunt. (*Lex Corn. de xx. quest.* [*C. I. R. I. No. 202*] II. 10.)
- Sarta tecta erigere. (*C. Verr. I. 50.*) Qui damnatus est, erit.

7. *Co-ordinate words and sentences are connected or introduced by <sup>2205</sup> other adverbs also, e.g. tum...tum 'at one time'... 'at another time'; (cum...tum 'as well'...as); modo...modo; nunc...nunc; more rarely in prose jam...jam; simul...simul; qua...qua; e.g.*

Disserens in utramque partem, tum Græce, tum Latine.  
(*C. Att. 9. 4.*)

Modo nebulonem, modo nugatorem appellat. (*L. 38. 56.*)

Tacita mæstitia ita defixit omnium animos, ut nunc in liminibus starent, nunc errabundi domos suas pervagarentur. (*L. 1. 29.*)

Qui jam contento, jam laxo fune laborat. (*Hor. S. 2. 7. 20.*)

Adeo simul spernebant, simul tantam in medio crescentem molem sibi ac posteris suis metuebant. (*L. 1. 9.*)

Intellego te distentissimum esse, qua de Buthrotiis, qua de Bruto.  
(*C. Att. 15. 18.*)

*Any word may however serve in rhetorical language in place of a <sup>2206</sup> co-ordinative conjunction.*

Quod si recte Cato judicavit, non recte frumentarius ille, non recte ædium pestilentium venditor tacuit. (*C. Off. 3. 16.*)

Nec tamen omnes possunt esse Scipiones aut Maximi, ut urbium expugnationes, ut pedestris navalisve pugnas, ut bella a se gesta, ut triumphos recordentur. (*C. Sen. 5.*)

Nihil enim habet præstantius, nihil quod magis expetat, quam honestatem, quam laudem, quam dignitatem, quam decus.  
(*C. T. D. 2. 20.*)

*A series of propositions are often marked by the use of, first primum, then deinde or tum, then (sometimes) porro, postea, or præterea, last denique or postremo.*

Primum Latine Apollo numquam locutus est: deinde ista sors inaudita Græcis est; præterea Phœbi temporibus jam Apollo versus facere desierat; postremo...hanc amphiboliam versus intellegere potuisset. (*C. Div. 2. 56.*)

## ii. Adversative Conjunctions.

Adversative conjunctions contrast the meaning, while they connect the sentences. Such are *sed, verum, ceterum, autem, vero, at, at, atqui, quod*, and in some uses *quamquam, tamen, etsi, tametsi*. Of these *autem* and *vero* are placed not at the beginning of the sentence, but after one word, or sometimes two closely connected words; *tamen* is placed either at the beginning of the sentence or after an important word.

1. (a) *Sed*, 'but,' introduces a statement which alters or limits the assertion of the preceding sentence; or it expresses transition to another subject of discourse.

*Verum*, sometimes *verum enimvero*, is similar, but is used with a stronger effect.

*Ceterum* is similarly used; chiefly in Sallust and Livy.

(b) *Autem* 'however' introduces a different statement, in continuation of the preceding, without really altering or limiting it. Sometimes it is used to pick up, for special notice, a preceding word or statement.

*At* is similar but is almost confined<sup>1</sup> to old legal language, to Vergil, and post-Augustan poets.

*Vero* 'indeed' is similarly used, and gives special emphasis to the word preceding it: it is also often used after *nec* or *tum*.

(c) *At*, 'but,' introduces an emphatic remark different from and opposed to the preceding statement. Sometimes it appears in the apodosis of a conditional sentence. It is especially used in a lively retort or exclamation: *at enim* in the statement of an adversary's objection.

(d) *Atqui*, 'but,' sometimes introduces an objection, sometimes a fresh step in the reasoning.

(e) *Quod*, 'but', (cf. § 536) is used (chiefly before *si, nisi*, but also before *etsi, quia, quoniam*) to continue a statement.

(a) Video te, Scipio, testimoniis satis instructum, sed apud me argumenta plus quam testes valent. (C. R. P. i. 38.)

Jura, set ego jusjurandum dabo: jura per patris cineres, qui inconditi sunt. (Sen. Rhet. Contr. 7, Præf. § 7.)

Sed jam ad id, unde digressi sumus, revertamur. (C. Brut. 87.)

In M. Catone quæ bona nonnumquam requirimus, ea sunt omnia non a natura, verum a magistro. (C. Mur. 29.)

<sup>1</sup> Baiter reads *at* in C. Att. i. 16, 17; 15. 4 (ex Victorii conj.); 16. 6 § 1: but Wesenberg alters these passages,

Vidi ego multa sæpe picta, quæ Acherunti fierent cruciamenta: verum enimvero nulla adæque est Acheruns, atque ubi ego fui in lapicidinis. (Pl. *Capt.* 1000.)

Nunc amitte, quæso, hunc: ceterum, posthac si quicquam, nihil precor. (Ter. *Ph.* 141.)

(b) Gyges, cum palam ejus anuli ad palmam converterat, a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia videbat. (C. *Off.* 3. 9.)

Nunc quod agitur agamus: agitur autem, liberine vivamus an mortem obeamus. (C. *Phil.* 11. 10.)

Evoca aliquem huc intus ad te, Tranio. TR. Ecce autem perii. (Pl. *Most.* 676.)

Quid tu tibi vis? ego non teneam meam? CH. Tuam autem, furcifer? (Ter. *Eun.* 798.)

Num quis testis Postumium appellavit? testis autem? num accusator? (C. *Rab. P.* 5.)

Quæsi, viveretne ipse et Paulus pater et alii quos nos extinctos esse arbitraremur. Immo vero, inquit, ii vivunt, qui e corporum vinculis, tamquam e carcere, evolaverunt; vestra vero, quæ dicitur vita, mors est. (C. *R. P.* 6. 14.)

Scimus musicen nostris moribus abesse a principis persona, saltare vero etiam in vitiis poni. (Nep. 15. 1.)

Est igitur causa omnis in opinione, nec vero ægritudinis solum, sed etiam reliquarum omnium perturbationum. (C. *T. D.* 3. 11.)

Navita sed tristis nunc hos, nunc accipit illos; ast alios longe summos arcet harena. (Verg. *A.* 6. 315.)

(c) Igitur præclara facies, magnæ divitiæ, ad hoc vis corporis, et alia omnia hujusmodi brevi dilabuntur; at ingeni egregia facinora, sicuti anima, immortalia sunt. (Sall. *J.* 2.)

Quod si se ipsos nostri illi liberatores e conspectu nostro abstulerunt, at exemplum facti reliquerunt. (C. *Phil.* 2. 44.)

Non cognoscebantur gemini illi Servilii foris; at domi: non ab alienis; at a suis. (C. *Ac.* 2. 18.)

Horum omnium studium una mater oppugnat. At quæ mater! quam cæcam crudelitate et scelere ferri videmus, cujus &c. (C. *Clu.* 70.)

At quam sunt similes! at quam formosus uterque! (Ov. *F.* 2. 395.)

Vapulabis meo arbitrato et novorum ædiliū. CH. At etiam male dicis? (Pl. *Trin.* 991.)

At enim, quid ita solus ego civium curam ago? Nihilo magis, quod respondeam, habeo, quam si quæras, quid ita solus capitoliū arcemque servaverim. (L. 6. 15.)

(d) Satis scite promittit tibi. SV. Atqui tu hanc jocari credis? <sup>2213</sup>  
(Ter. Haut. 729.)

Tum ut me Cotta vidit 'peropportune,' inquit, 'venis'... 'Atqui mihi quoque videor,' inquam, 'venisse, ut dicis, opportune.'  
(C. N. D. I. 7.)

Quod si virtutes sunt pares inter se, paria esse etiam vitia necesse est: atqui pares esse virtutes facillime potest perspicui.  
(C. Par. 3. I.)

(e) Coluntur tyranni simulatione, dum taxat ad tempus: quod <sup>2214</sup>  
si forte, ut fit plerumque, ceciderunt, tum intelligitur quam fuerint inopes amicorum. (C. Læl. 15.)

Statuæ sunt istius dejectæ et eversæ ante ipsum Serapim, in primo aditu vestibuloque templi. Quod nisi Metellus hoc tam graviter egisset, atque illam rem imperio edictoque prohibuisset, vestigium statuarum istius in tota Sicilia nullum esset relictum. (C. Verr. 2. 66.)

Quod quia nullo modo sine amicitia firmam et perpetuam jucunditatem vitæ tenere possumus, idcirco amicitia cum voluptate connectitur. (C. Fin. I. 20.)

Quod absque hoc esset, qui mihi hoc fecit palam, usque offrenatum suis me ductarent dolis. (Pl. Capt. 754.)

2. The statement of a fact opposite to or corrective of previous <sup>2215</sup> statements, is often introduced by *quamquam*, *tamen*, *etiam*, *tametsi*, 'And yet.' (For *nisi* in this sense, see § 1569.)

Pater curabit clandestina ut celetur consuetio. Quamquam, ut jam dudum dixi, resciscet tamen Amphitruo rem omnem.  
(Pl. Amph. 491.)

Non video quo pacto Hercules 'in domum æternam patris' pervenerit, quem tamen Homerus apud inferos conveniri facit ab Ulixæ. Quamquam quem potissimum Herculem colamus, scire sane velim. (C. N. D. 3. 16.)

Hæc enim est tyrannorum vita, nimirum in qua omnia semper suspecta atque sollicita, nullus locus amicitiae. Coluntur tamen simulatione, dumtaxat ad tempus. (C. Læl. 15.)

"Quid est? Crasse," inquit Julius, "imusne sessum? etsi admonitum te venimus te, non flagitatum. (C. Or. 3. 5.)

Nec hoc dico, quia severiores sequi placet leges, pro patre, fratre, amico periclitantibus; tametsi non mediocris hæsitatio est, hinc justitiæ proposita imagine, inde pietatis.

(Quint. 12. I. 40.)

(The ordinary use of *etiam* and other concessive conjunctions is given in §§ 1560, 1561.; of *quamquam* in § 1697.)

## iii. Disjunctive Conjunctions.

Disjunctive conjunctions are those, which connect the sentences, <sup>2216</sup> but disconnect their meaning; viz. *aut*, *vel*, *-ve* (appended to first word of clause), *sive* or (before consonants only) *seu*.

(a) *aut* is used where the difference between the conceptions or propositions is real or important; (b) *vel* (often *vel potius*, *vel dicam*, *vel etiam*), and *-ve*, where the difference is unimportant, or concerns the expression more than the substance. Both *aut* and *vel* are sometimes used in adding the consequence of denying a former proposition: 'or else,' 'otherwise.' (c) *Seu* (*sive*) is used chiefly to correct a previous assertion, and, when without a following *seu*, usually has *potius* with it.

(a) *Qua re vi aut clam agendum est.* (C. Att. 10. 12, § 5.) <sup>2217</sup>  
*Profecto cuncti, aut magna pars Siccensium, fidem mutavissent.*

(Sall. J. 56.)

*Potestne igitur quisquam dicere, inter eum qui doleat et inter eum qui in voluptate sit nihil interesse? aut, ita qui sentiat, non apertissime insaniat?* (C. Ac. 2. 7.)

*Quæcunque in hominum disceptationem cadere possunt, bene sunt ei dicenda, qui hoc se posse profitetur; aut eloquentiæ nomen relinquendum est.* (C. Or. 2. 2.)

(b) *Ejusmodi conjunctionem tectorum oppidum vel urbem appel-* <sup>2218</sup>  
*laverunt.* (C. R. P. 1. 26.)

*Ubii Cæsarem magnopere orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, vel, si id facere occupationibus reipublicæ prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret.* (Cæs. G. 4. 16.)

*Post obitum vel potius excessum Romuli.* (C. R. P. 2. 30.)

*Unum illud extimescebam ne quid turpiter facerem, vel dicam, jam fecissem.* (C. Att. 9. 7.)

*Quod ipsum a se movetur, id nec nasci potest nec mori; vel concidat omne cælum, omnisque natura consistat necesse est.*

(C. T. D. 1. 23.)

*Post hanc habitam contionem duabus tribusve horis optatissimi nuntii et literæ venerunt.* (C. Phil. 14. 6.)

(c) *Quid perturbatius hoc ab urbe discessu sive potius turpissima* <sup>2219</sup>  
*fuga?* (C. Att. 8. 3.)

*Ascanius urbem matri seu novercæ reliquit.* (L. 1. 3.)

2. Where the distribution is foreseen, the conjunctions are doubled, <sup>2220</sup> preserving their usual distinction from each other.

(a) *aut...aut* are used of things mutually exclusive, especially where an alternative is put distinctly.

(b) *vel...vel* (in poetry also *ve...ve*) are used of things, both or all of which may co-exist ('partly'...'partly'), or where the choice is a matter of indifference to the speaker or concerns the expression only.

(c) *sive (seu)...sive (seu)* are used where it is uncertain or indifferent which conception should be taken. (When used with verbs, they are often conditional particles = *vel si*. Cf. §§ 1563—1567.)

(a) *Omne enuntiatum aut verum aut falsum est.* (C. *Fat.* 9.)

*Deserendi officii plures solent esse causæ; nam aut inimicitias aut laborem aut sumptus suscipere nolunt, aut etiam negligentia, pigritia, inertia, aut suis studiis quibusdam occupationibusve impediuntur.* (C. *Off.* 1. 9.)

(b) *Postea vero, vel quod tanta res erat, vel quod nondum audieramus Bibulum in Syriam venisse, vel quia administratio hujus belli mihi cum Bibulo pæne est communis, quæ ad me delata essent, scribenda ad vos putavi.* (C. *Fam.* 15. 1.)

*Hanc tu mihi vel vi vel clam vel precario fac tradas.*

(Ter. *Eun.* 391.)

*Quæro etiam, si velim scribere quid aut legere aut canere vel voce vel fidibus, aut geometricum quiddam aut physicum aut dialecticum explicare, somniumne expectandum sit an ars adhibenda?* (C. *Div.* 2. 59.)

*Corpora vertuntur: nec, quod fuimusve sumusve, cras erimus.*

(Ov. *M.* 15. 2 5.)

(c) *Homines nobiles seu recte seu perperam facere cœperunt, in utroque excellunt.* (C. *Quint.* 8.)

*Seu preces coloniarum seu difficultas operum sive superstitio valuit, ut in sententiam Cn. Pisonis concederetur, qui nil mutandum censuerat.* (Tac. *A.* 1. 79.)

3. *Vel* is used, especially with a superlative, as an intensive particle ('even') to introduce what is regarded as the climax, the inferior stages being left to the imagination or implied in the context.

*Heus, te tribus verbis volo. Sy. Vel trecentis.* (Pl. *Trin.* 964.)

*Atqui ea condicio vel primariast.* (Pl. *Trin.* 746.)

*Hoc in genere nervorum vel minimum, suavitatis autem est vel plurimum.* (C. *Or.* 26.)

*So it introduces a special instance: 'why even,' 'for instance.'* 2222

*Nulla est tam facilis res, quin difficilis siet, quam invitus facias. Vel me hæc deambulatione, quam non laboriosa, ad languorem dedit.* (Ter. *Haut.* 806.)

*Raras tuas quidem, sed suaves accipio litteras. Vel quas proxime acceperam, quam prudentes! quam multi et officii et consilii!* (C. *Fam.* 2. 13.)



## III. NEGATIVE PARTICLES.

The negative particles are *nē*, *nē*, *ni*, *nec*, *neque*, *non*, *haud*. 2223

*Nē* is found in composition, e.g. *nēque*, *nēqueo*, *nōlo* (*nēvis*), 2224  
*nescio*, *nēfas*, *nēmo* (*ne hemo* old for *homo*), *nullus* (*ne ullus*),  
*nūtiquam* (*neutiquam*). It is identical with the enclitic interrogative *-ne*, and is found in *quā* (see p. 297), and probably in *sin*.

*Nē* and *ni* were originally identical, and at one time (6th Cent. 2225  
 U.C.) often written *nei*. Hence *nihil* for *nē* (*nei*, *ni*) *hīlum*. *Nē*  
 is used in the phrase *nē...quidem*; and sometimes by itself, some-  
 times following *qui* (adj. and adv.), *ut*, *dum*, in sentences with  
 imperative, or subjunctive signifying wish, command, purpose &c.  
 (Chap. xxi). *Ne* or *nec* is found, in composition with *quicumque*  
 (abl?) or *quidquam* (acc.), in the words *nequicquam* or *nequicquam*  
 'in vain;' it is also found in *nequaquam*, 'by no means;' *nedum*  
 (§ 1658). The enclitic disjunctive *-ve* is often appended, and  
 makes *neve* or *neu*.

*Ni* is generally used as a negative conditional particle for *nisi* 2226  
 (originally *ne si?*), especially in reported conditions § 1752. Origin-  
 ally it was probably a simple negative, as in phrases, *nimirum*,  
 (§ 1757), *quidni* (§ 1614), *quipptni* (§ 1616), and became specially  
 appropriated to conditional clauses, as *ne* did to final clauses. *-ve* is  
 sometimes appended.

*Nec* is usually a co-ordinate conjunction, interchangeable with 2227  
*neque*, of which it is regarded as an abbreviation. But it is also  
 found as a simple negative in the phrases, *nec manifestum* (XII  
 Tables), *res nec mancipi* (in legal language), *nec recte* Plautus and  
 perhaps in other expressions: also in the compounds *nec-optima*,  
*neglego*, *neg-otium*, and in the derivative *nego*. It is also used,  
 with *-ne* appended, in the second member of a disjunctive question  
 (*nec-ne* 'or not,' § 2255).

*Non*, originally *nonum* (for *ne unum* acc. cf. § 264) is the 2228  
 ordinary simple negative.

*Haud* (*haut*, *hau*) is a simple negative, used chiefly before 2229  
 adverbs (e.g. *haud quaquam*, *haud sane*, *haud procul*) and adjec-  
 tives, not often before verbs, at least after Plautus, except in phrase  
*haud* (*hau*) *scio an*.

*In-* and *ve-* are used only in composition (§§ 986, 1984).

I. (a) Non, haud, nec (in the phrases referred to above) are 2230 used as simple negatives, as English 'not.' Both non and nec are occasionally (nec frequently in Ovid and Livy) found with an imperative or jussive subjunctive (instead of nō).

Nihil as adverbial accusative (§ 1094), and nullus as adjective, are sometimes used where we use, 'not at all.'

(b) Ne before a word and quidem after it are together equal to 'not even,' or 'not...either,' (when we use this latter expression as adverb without 'nor' following,) e.g. ne hoc quidem, 'not even this,' 'not this either.'

Nec is also sometimes used in the sense of ne...quidem in and after the Augustan age.

(c) Ne with the imperative or the subjunctive of wish or command is 'not,' but with a subjunctive of purpose (without ut) is 'lest' or 'that not.' So (in such sentences) ne quis, ne quando, ne ullus, necubi, &c. are used instead of ut nemo, ut nunquam, ut nullus, ut nusquam, &c. Noli dicere, cave dicas are equivalent simply to 'do not say.'

(d) Minus, especially after si, sin (§§ 1563, 1565), or quo (§ 1644), and minime, 'least of all,' are used as equivalent to 'not at all,' 'not.' Vix 'scarcely,' parum 'but little,' and sometimes male, have a character approaching to that of a negative.

(a) Non, non sic futurumst: non potest. (Ter. Ph. 303.) 2231

Qui honeste aliquid facturum est, quicquid opponitur, id, etiamsi incommodum putat, malum non putet, velit, libens faciat.

(Sen. Ep. 66, § 17.)

Sedit, qui timuit, ne non succederet. (Hor. Ep. 1. 17. 37.)

Nec tibi turpe puta ingenua speculum sustinuisse manu.

(Ov. A. A. 2. 215.)

Quod dixi semel, haud mutabo. (Pl. Bac. 1203.)

Etiam bene dicere haud absurdumst. (Sall. C. 3.)

Nec recte si illi dixeris, jam ecastor vapulabis. (Pl. Most. 240.)

Consules in nec opinatam fraudem lapsos esse. (L. 27. 33.)

Thebani nihil moti sunt, quamquam nonnihil succensebant Romanis. (L. 42. 46.)

Scripsi Sextum adventare, non quo jam adesset, sed quia certe id ageret, ab armisque nullus discederet. (C. Att. 15. 22.)

Hæc bona in tabulas publicas nulla redierunt. (C. Rosc. A. 44.)

(b) Postero die Curio milites productos in acie collocat. Ne Varus <sup>223a</sup> quidem dubitat copias producere. (Cæs. C. 2. 33.)

De vita beata nihil repugno, quam tu ne in deo quidem esse censes, nisi plane otio langueat. (C. N. D. 1. 24.)

Hæc non idcirco dico, quod inutilem horum locorum cognitionem putem; alioqui nec dixissem; sed ne &c. (Quint. 5. 10. 119.)

Tu voluptatem summum bonum putas: ego nec bonum.

(Sen. Dial. 7. 10.)

Cum sis tam pauper, quam nec miserabilis Iros, tam juvenis, quam nec Parthenopæus erat, tam fortis, quam nec, cum vinceret, Artemidorus, quid te Cappadocum sex onus esse juvat?

(Mart. 6. 77.)

(c) Facite fingite invenite efficite qui detur tibi; ego id agam, <sup>223b</sup> qui ne detur. (Ter. Andr. 335.)

Siste gradum, teque aspectu ne subtrahe nostro. (Verg. A. 6. 465.)

Lata lex est, ne auspicia valerent, ne quis obnuntiaret; ne quis legi intercederet, ut lex Aelia, lex Fufia ne valeret. (C. Sest. 15.)

(d) Egone ut, quod ad me adlatum esse alienum sciam, celem? <sup>223c</sup> minime istuc faciet noster Dæmones. (Pl. Rud. 1245.)

At nonnumquam ea, quæ prædicta sunt, minus eveniunt.

(C. Div. 1. 14.)

Ille, qualiscumque est, conlegit ipse se vix, sed collegit tamen.

(C. Pis. 12.)

Ego autem illum male sanum semper putavi. (C. Att. 9. 15.)

2. A negative sentence, or member of a sentence, requiring to be <sup>223d</sup> joined to the preceding by a co-ordinate conjunction, is introduced by neque (nec); or if a purpose or command, &c. be implied, usually by neve (neu). So nec for et non, necdum for et nondum, nequequam for et nemo, neque ullus for et nullus, &c. Usually also the Romans said neque enim, neque vero, nec tamen, though sometimes non enim is found, and rarely non tamen.

Et (or ac) non, et nullus, &c., are found where the negative belongs to a special word in the sentence, or the new sentence is intended as a correction of the former. So also et (sometimes ac) ne...quidem.

Non metuo mihi nec quoiquam supplico. (Plaut. Bac. 225.) <sup>227</sup>

Senatui pacis auctor fui, nec sumptis armis belli ullam partem attigi.

(C. Att. 9. 11 A.)

Non Græca facundia neque urbanis munditiis sese exercuit.

(Sall. J. 63.)

Magis adformido, ne is pereat neu corrumpatur. (Pl. Bac. 1078.)

Pator, judices, et non moleste fero. (C. Verr. 1. 1.)

2237

Eo simus animo, ut horribilem illum diem (moriendi) aliis, nobis faustum putemus, nihilque in malis ducamus quod sit vel a dis immortalibus vel a natura parente omnium constitutum.

(C. T. D. 1. 49.)

Quasi nunc id agatur, quis ex tanta multitudine occiderit, ac non hoc quærat, utrum &c. (C. Rosc. A. 33.)

C. Antonius, tamquam extruderetur a senatu in Macedoniam et non contra prohiberetur proficisci, ita cucurrit. (C. Phil. 10. 5.)

In Siciliam quoque eadem inclinatio animorum pervenit, et ne domus quidem Hieronis tota ab defectione abstinuit.

(L. 23. 30.)

*Sometimes neque (nec) is used, where the negative belongs only to a participial or other subordinate clause, but the principal verb or sentence has to be united with that preceding.*

Haud cunctanter Hiberum transgrediuntur; nec ullo viso hoste Saguntum pergunt ire (L. 22. 22) = et, nullo viso hoste, pergunt.

Deustos pluteos turrium videbant, nec facile adire apertos ad auxiliandum animadvertebant (Cæs. G. 7. 25) = et animadvertebant non facile, &c.

Tum demum ingemuit: 'Neque' ait 'sine numine vincis' (Ov. M. 11. 263) = aitque, Non sine, &c.

3. *Several negative sentences or clauses may in fact form one sentence, without the connexion being marked, or foreseen. Either (a) there is no conjunction used, or (b) the conjunction is used (§ 2202), only with the second or third members, not with the first.*

(a) Non gratia, non cognatione, non aliis recte factis, non denique aliquo mediocri vitio, tot tantaque ejus vitia sublevata esse videbuntur. (C. Verr. Act. 1. 16.)

Nil oriturum alias, nil ortum tale fatentes. (Hor. Ep. 2. 1. 17.)

Nullum meum minimum dictum, non modo factum, intercessit.

(C. Fam. 1. 9, § 21.)

(b) Justum et tenacem propositi virum non civium ardor prava jubentium, non voltus instantis tyranni mente quatit solida, neque auster, ... nec fulminantis magna manus Jovis.

(Hor. Od. 3. 3. 1.)

Cressa ne careat pulchra dies nota, neu promptæ modus amphoræ, neu morem in Salium sit requies pedum, neu, &c.

(Id. 1. 36. 10.)

4. When the distribution of the sentence or thought into two or more co-ordinate clauses or expressions is foreseen, it may be marked in several ways.

If all the clauses are negative, we have

(a) *neque* (*nec*)...*neque* (*nec*), 'neither...nor'..., except usually in commands, &c.

(b) *neve* (*neu*)...*neve* (*neu*), 'neither...nor,' where a prohibition or wish is intended: 'that neither...nor,' 'lest either...or,' where a purpose &c. is intended. (This is not frequent.)

(c) *non modo*<sup>1</sup> (*solum*) *non*...*sed ne*...*quidem*, 'not only not... but not even;' where the second member implies a stronger statement than the first.

If a predicate or other word is common to both clauses, but stands with the latter, the *non* after *modo* or *solum* is frequently omitted, and we have

*non modo* (*solum*)...*sed ne*...*quidem*.

(See also § 1657 and *nedum*, *ne dicam*, *non dico*, &c. §§ 1658—1660.)

(a) *Virtus nec eripi nec subripi potest; neque naufragio neque incendio amittitur; nec tempestatum nec temporum turbatione mutatur.* (C. *Par.* 6. 3.)

*Ipsus neque amat nec tu creduas.* (Pl. *Bac.* 476.)

*Neve cibo prohibe, nec amari pocula suci porrige.*

(Ov. *A. A.* 2. 335.)

(b) *Peto a te, ut id a me neve in hoc reo neve in aliis requiras.*

(C. *Fam.* 1. 9, § 19.)

(c) *Non modo, ut sumptum faciat in militem, nemini vis adfertur, sed ne cupienti quidem cuiquam permittitur.* (C. *Man.* 13.)

*Obscenitas non solum non foro digna, sed vix convivio liberorum.*

(C. *Or.* 2. 62.)

*Hæc genera virtutum non solum in moribus nostris, sed vix in libris reperiuntur.* (C. *Pis.* 17.)

*Regnat Romæ advena, non modo vicinæ, sed ne Italicæ quidem stirpis.* (L. 1. 40.)

<sup>1</sup> *Non modo* is 'not exactly,' 'I do not say;' *non solum* 'not only,' *non tantum* 'not so much.' *Non modo* is more common, at least in Cicero, and is applicable in some cases, where the others are not: e.g. 'Quæ civitas est in Asia, quæ non modo imperatoris aut legati sed unius tribuni militum animos ac spiritus capere possit?' (C. *Man.* 22.)

If all the clauses are not negative, these clauses are introduced by 2241

(a) et...neque 'both...and not,' if the first be affirmative. If the negative belong to a word only, et...et non may be used.

(b) neque...et 'neither...and,' if the second be affirmative. neque...que is more rare.

(c) non modo (solum, tantum) non...sed (verum) etiam, if the second be affirmative and a stronger statement than the first.

Patebat via et certa neque longa. (C. Phil. 11. 2.)

T. Manlius et semper me coluit diligentissimeque observavit, et a studiis nostris non abhorret. (C. Fam. 13. 22.)

Uva, vestita pampinis, nec modico tepore caret et nimi s solis defendit ardores. (C. Sen. 15.)

Illud profecto perficiam, ut neque bonus quisquam intereat, paucorumque pœna vos omnes salvi esse possitis. (C. Cat. 3. 13.)

Tu id non modo non prohibebas, verum etiam approbabas.

(C. Att. 16. 7, § 3.)

Nec domi tantum indignationes continebant, sed congregabantur undique ad regem Sabinorum. (L. 1. 10.)

5. Sometimes a negative is prefixed, and the distribution is 2242 effected by (a) neque...neque, or non modo (or solum) (non)...sed ne...quidem; (b) aut...aut; (c) rarely in prose by ac, et, -que, unless the distribution is rather in the expression than in the thought.

(a) See below (§ 2246).

(b) Equites palatos eodem recipit, nec aut colli aut flumini satis fidens castra vallo permunit. (L. 23. 26.)

Consciorum nemo aut latuit aut fugit. (L. 24. 5.)

(c) Nulla res tanta est ac tam difficilis, quam ille non et consilio regere et integritate tueri et virtute conficere possit. (C. Man. 20.)

[Sometimes a negative word (nego, nemo, &c.) prefixed belongs 2243 to both members, but the negative to the first only, e.g.

Negant Cæsarem in condicione mansurum, postulataque hæc ab eo interposita esse, quominus, &c. (C. Att. 7. 15.)

6. One negative, applied to another, destroys its effect, and the re- 2244 sult is equivalent to an affirmative. This is chiefly seen in the phrases non nemo, 'some one;' non nullus, 'some;' non nihil, 'something;' non nunquam, 'sometimes;' nemo non, nullus non, 'everyone;' nihil non, 'everything;' nunquam non, 'always;' nusquam non, 'everywhere;' non possum non, 'I cannot help myself;' i.e. 'I must.'

*Necnon in the earlier prose is not used, as it is sometimes in verse and in later prose, as little more than an equivalent for etiam.*

Nec hoc ille non vidit, sed verborum magnificentia est et gloria delectatus. (C. Fin. 4. 22.)

Nec tilia leves aut torno rasile buxum non formam accipiunt ferroque cavantur acuto; nec non et torrentem undam levis innatat alnus, missa Pado; nec non et apes examina condunt.  
(Verg. G. 2. 449.)

Gratissima est esca terrestris leguminis panicum et milium, necnon et hordeum. (Col. 8. 15, § 6.)

*The negatives are not applied to one another in such sentences as* 2245

At iste non dolendi status non vocatur voluptas. (C. Fin. 2. 9.)

*But negatives do not destroy one another, when the first negative is general, and this is followed* 2246

(a) *By ne . . quidem or non modo emphasizing some particular word or phrase.*

(b) *By several subordinate members each with a negative.*

(c) *By another co-ordinate member joined by neque (nec).*

(a) Quid præterea sit bonum, negat Epicurus se posse ne suspicari quidem. (C. Fin. 2. 10.)

Se quoque dictatorem Romæ fuisse, nec a se quemquam, ne plebis quidem hominem, non centurionem, non militem violatum.  
(L. 8. 33, § 12.)

Cave Catoni anteponas ne istum quidem ipsum, quem Apollo, ut ais, sapientissimum judicavit: hujus enim facta, illius dicta laudantur. (C. Læl. 2.)

Nihil erit quod oratorem effugere possit, non modo in forensibus disceptationibus, sed omnino in ullo genere dicendi.  
(C. Or. 2. 41.)

(b) Nemo umquam neque poeta neque orator fuit, qui quemquam meliorem quam se arbitraretur. (C. Att. 14. 20.)

Quædam præclara cupiebant, eaque nesciebant nec ubi nec qualia essent. (C. T. D. 3. 2.)

Hanno, nequaquam satis valido non modo ad lacessendum hostem, sed ne ad tuendos quidem a populationibus agros, equitatu accepto, id primum egit, &c. (L. 29. 34.)

Quibus nihil non modo de fructu, sed ne de bonis quidem suis, reliqui fecit. (C. Verr. 3. 48.)

(c) Itast amor, ballista ut jacitur: nil sic celerest neque volat.  
(Pl. Trin. 668.)

Nequeo satis mirari neque conicere. (Ter. Eun. 547.)

Magis opportunus, nec magis ex usu tuo nemo. (Ter. Eun. 1077.)

[The second co-ordinate member may of course also be appended by *aut* or *ve*.

Ut timet, ne quid plus minus ve, quam sit necesse, dicat!  
(C. Flac. 5.)]

Sometimes other cases occur, in which the negatives strengthen, *not* destroy, each other; especially *neque*...*haud* in Plautus.

Neque mi haud imperito eveniet tali ut in luto hæream.  
(Pl. Pers. 535.)

Inrides? nihil me fallis: sed dico tibi, ne temere facias; neque tu  
haud dicas tibi non prædictum: cave. (Ter. Andr. 204.)

Jura te nociturum non esse de hac re nemini. (Pl. Mil. 1411.)

#### IV. INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES.

Interrogative particles are used in those sentences in which a question is asked relating to the truth or falsehood of a particular statement, and a simple affirmative or negative answer is expected.

These questions are either simple or alternative.

Simple questions may be expressed without any interrogative pronoun or particle. An affirmative sentence then not infrequently expects a negative answer, and *vice versa*, the tone of voice or circumstances supplying the necessary warning. In alternative questions the first member is similarly left sometimes without any interrogative particle.

The particles which are used in introducing simple questions (when they have no interrogative pronoun) are

*-ne*, properly '*not*', (appended to another word), *non-ne*, and *num*, properly '*now*', (*numne*, *numnam*, *numquid*). *An* is also found in what appear at first to be simple questions.

The particles used in introducing alternative questions are *utrum* (neut. of *uter*) '*whether*' *-ne*, and *an*.

For dependent questions, see §§ 1758—1764.



i. *In Simple Questions.*

-*Ne* puts a question without any implication as to the character of the answer: e.g. *Sentisne?* 'Do you feel?'

*Nonne* implies the expectation of an affirmative answer: e.g. *Nonne sentis?* 'Do you not feel?'

*Num* implies the expectation of a negative answer: e.g. *Num sentis,* 'You do not feel, do you?'

An affirmative answer is expressed by *etiam, ita, factum, vero, verum, sane, ita, vero, ita est, sane quidem, &c.*; or with the proper pronoun, as, *ego vero*; or by the verb (or other words), repeated in the proper person, e.g. *sentio*. (Cf. 1021 c.)

A negative answer is expressed by *non minime, minime vero*; or with the pronoun, e.g. *minime ego quidem*; or with the verb &c. e.g. *Non sentio*. When the contrary is asserted by way of reply, we have *immo, immo vero*, 'No, on the other hand,' 'Nay rather.'

*Quid hoc?* *Dasne, aut manere animos post mortem aut morte ipsa interire?* *Do vero.* (C. T. D. 1. 11.)

SI. *Etiam tu hoc respondes, quid istic tibi negotist?* DA. *Mihin?*

SI. *Ita.* DA. *Mihin?* SI. *Tibi ergo.* (Ter. And. 849.)

Tun te abisse hodie hinc negas? AM. *Nego enimvero.*

(Pl. Am. 758.)

PH. *Satin tibist?* CH. *Mihin?* *immo vero pulchre discedo et probe et præter spem.* (Ter. Pb. 1047.)

*Estne? vici? et tibi sæpe, quod me negaras discedens curaturum, litteras mitto?* *Est; si quidem perferuntur, quas do.*

(Cæl. ap. C. Fam. 8. 3.)

AP. *Sed visne locum mutemus, et in insula, quæ est in Fibreno, sermoni reliquo demus operam sedentes?* MA. *Sane quidem.* (C. Leg. 2. 1.)

*Quid? Autronio nonne sodales, non collegæ sui, non veteres amici defuerunt?* (C. Sull. 2.)

*Quid? canis nonne similis lupo?* (C. N. D. 1. 35.)

AN. *Num tu intelligis, hic quid narret?* PH. *Num tu?* AN. *Nil.*

PH. *Tantundem ego.* (Ter. Pb. 846.)

*Num igitur peccamus?* *Minime nos quidem.* (C. Att. 8. 9.)

*Numne si Coriolanus habuit amicos, ferre contra patriam arma illi cum Coriolano debuerunt?* (C. Læl. 11.)

*Quis hic loquitur?* *perii: numnam hæc audivit?* (Ter. Haut. 517.)

Dicdum hoc rursum, Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi? DO. 2253  
Factum. PH. Et eamst indutus? DO. Factum.

(Ter. Eun. 707.)

Huic ego 'studes?' inquam. Respondit 'etiam.' (Plin. Ep. 4. 13.)

Huc abiit Clitipho. CH. Solus? ME. Solus. (Ter. Ph. 905.)

AN. Jam ea præterit? DO. Non. (Ter. Ph. 525.)

Causa igitur non bona est? Immo optima. (C. Att. 9. 7, § 4.)

Non dices hodie, quorsum hæc tam putida tendant, furcifer?  
Ad te, inquam. (Hor. S. 2. 7. 21.)

Hunc tu morem ignorabas? numquam epulum videras? numquam  
puer aut adolescens inter cocos fueras? (C. Pat. 13.)

Ego eum non tuear, quem omnes in republica principem esse  
concedunt? ego C. Cæsaris laudibus desim? (C. Planc. 39.)

## ii. In Alternative Questions.

*In alternative questions utrum or -ne are used in the first member 2254  
of the sentence, an (sometimes anne) in the second member. (In depen-  
dent questions -ne is frequent in the second member, especially if the  
first have no particle. -Ne...ne are found occasionally, chiefly in the  
poets.) 'Or not' is expressed by an non or nec-ne.*

Utrum nescis quam alte ascenderis, an pro nihilo id putas?

(C. Fam. 10. 26.)

Vosne vero L. Domitium an vos Domitius deseruit? (Cæs. G. 2. 32.)

Utrum voltis patri Flacco licuisse necne? (C. Flac. 25.)

Set isne est quem quæro an non? Ipsus est. (Ter. Ph. 852.)

Quid? vos duas habetis patrias? an est una illa patria communis?

(C. Leg. 2. 2.)

Nam quid ego de consulatu loquar, parto vis, anne gesto?

(C. Pis. 1.)

Non ignoscis? an non credis? (Sen. Rhet. Contr. 7. 16, § 1.)

*An is frequently used in a question apparently simple, but which 2255  
may be regarded as really the second member of an alternative ques-  
tion, the first being either not put in the form of a question or left to  
be inferred from the context. It introduces questions which imply the  
needlessness of the preceding remark, or meets an anticipated objection.*

TOR. Sed ad hæc, nisi molestum est, habeo quæ velim. TUL. An  
me, nisi te audire vellem, censes hæc dicturum fuisse? 'Do  
you then think?' (C. Fin. 1. 8.)

Pultando pæne confregi hasce ambas foris. TR. Eho, an tu tetigisti  
has ædis? 'Have you then touched, &c.?' (Pl. Most. 456.)

Quid ais? an venit Pamphilus? PAR. Venit. (Ter. *Hec.* 346.)

Quando ista vis autem evanuit? An postquam homines minus creduli esse cœperunt? 'Was it not after, &c.?' (C. *Div.* 2. 57.)

Modo introivi cum tuo gnato una. SI. Anne est intus Pamphilus? (Ter. *Andr.* 851.)

[An is often used dependent on nescio or haud scio. These expressions generally in Cicero express a modest affirmation, &c. 'I almost think:' in post-Augustan writers express mere ignorance or doubt.

Est id quidem magnum, atque haud scio an maximum.

(C. *Fam.* 9. 15.)

Eloquentia quidem nescio an habuisset parem neminem.

(C. *Brut.* 33.)

Nescio an noris hominem: quamquam nosse debes. (Plin. *Ep.* 6. 21.)]

From alternative questions must be distinguished such questions as have several subordinate parts, which are different from, but not alternatives to, one another. These are connected by aut.

An tu mei similem putas esse aut tui deum? Profecto non putas.

Quid ergo? solem dicam aut lunam aut cælum deum?

(C. *N. D.* 1. 30.)

Adeon' me ignavom putas? adeon' porro ingratum aut inhumanum aut ferum, ut neque me consuetudo neque amor neque pudor commoveat neque commoneat ut servem fidem?

(Ter. *And.* 277.)

Num igitur me fefellit? aut num diutius sui potuit dissimilis esse?

(C. *Phil.* 2. 36.)

## V. PRONOUNS.

### Hic, iste, ille, is.

The demonstrative pronouns are hic, iste or istic, ille or illic. They denote respectively, hic, that which is near the speaker in place, time, or thought: iste, that which is near the person addressed; ille, that which is not (comparatively) near either. Is has no definite demonstrative meaning, but always refers to some person or thing named in the context. If more emphasis is required, hic or ille is used. The adverbs (Vol. I. p. 459) derived from these pronouns are used with the same relative signification.

Eam, ego hodie faciam, ut hic senex de proximo sibi uxorem poscat: id ea faciam gratia, quo ille eam facilius ducat. (Pl. *Aul.* 31.)

Hoc neque istic usust, et illi miseræ suppetias feret, si id dederit, qui suos parentes quærat. (Pl. *Rud.* 1083.)

Gripe accede huc: tu, puella, istinc procul dicito quid insit.  
(Ib. 1178.)

Ego is sum, qui te produxi pater. (Ib. 1173.)

Nosti jam in hac materia sonitus nostros: tanti fuerunt, ut ego eo  
brevior sim, quod eos usque istinc exauditos putem.  
(C. Att. 1. 14.)

Suspensi Eurypylum scitantes oracula Phœbi mittimus, isque  
adytis hæc tristia dicta reportat. (Verg. A. 2. 115.)

*In time and thought hio and ille are opposed, hio referring to that which is near, ille to that which is remote. Ille is also used of a well known or famous person or thing. Iste is specially used of an opponent in a lawsuit, and hence of something despised or disliked. Is, with conjunction et or ac prefixed, is used to give additional emphasis to a new predicate or description; ille (like other pronouns), with quidem appended, is used in making concessions (where in English we use no pronoun). See also § 1182.*

Hanc urbem hoc biennio consul evertes. (C. R. P. 6. 11.) 2260  
Atat hoc illud est, hinc illæ lacrymæ, hæc illast misericordia.  
(Ter. And. 98.)

Scitum est enim illud Catonis, ut multa, melius de quibusdam  
acerbos inimicos mereri, quam eos amicos, qui dulces videantur:  
illos verum sæpe dicere, hos nunquam. (C. Lael. 24.)

Gratia te flecti non magis potuisse demonstras, quam Herculem  
Xenophontium illum a voluptate. (C. Fam. 5. 12, § 3.)

Nemo istuc Marco illi Catoni seni, cum plurimos haberet inimicos,  
nemo huic ipsi nostro C. Mario, cum ei multi inviderent, objecit  
umquam. (C. Sull. 7.)

Audivimus hoc jam diu, iudices, socios istius fuisse decumanos.  
Nihil aliud arbitror falso in istum esse dictum ab eis, qui male  
de isto existimarunt, nisi hoc. (C. Verr. 3. 20.)

Hic et ille, ille et ille, 'this or that.'

Habet homo memoriam et eam infinitam rerum innumerabilium. 2261  
(C. T. D. 1. 24.)

Uno atque eo facili proelio cæsi ad Antium hostes. (L. 4. 57.)

Doctum igitur hominem cognovi et studiis optimis deditum, idque  
a puero. (C. Fam. 13. 16.)

P. Scipio non multum ille quidem nec sæpe dicebat, sed Latine  
loquendo cuivis erat par. (C. Brut. 34.)

So Oratorias exercitationes non tu quidem, ut spero, reliquisti,  
sed certe philosophiam illis anteposuisti. (C. Fat. 2.)

**Se, suus, ipse.**

**Se** and **ipse** are both used where we in English use 'self,' but they are also found where we do not use it. Thus **se** often corresponds to 'him,' 'her,' 'them;' **ipse** to the adjective 'very,' or other expressions of emphasis. **Se** is of the third person only; **ipse** is simply an adjective of emphasis, and can be used of any person, but when in an oblique case by itself, (without *me, te, nos, vos*), it is of the third person. **Se, suus** are distinguished from other pronouns of the third person, by being used always either of the subject or of some word in the sentence. If 'him,' 'her,' &c. requires emphasis, when not relating to the subject (or otherwise where **se** is suitable), **ipsum** is used, either with or without *eum*.

**Suus**, the possessive of **se**, relates also to the subject of discourse. When it is an attribute of the grammatical subject, it can of course only relate to some other subject of discourse, very commonly to the direct or indirect object.

1. **Se, suus** are used primarily in reference to the grammatical subject of the sentence. If the subject itself requires emphasis, **ipse** is used.

Eas se non negat personas transtulisse in Eunuchum suam ex Græca.  
(Ter. Eun. 31.)

Sese ipse dicit tuam vidisse filiam; ejus sibi complacitam formam.  
(Ter. Haut. 772.)

Athenæ urbs est ea vetustate, ut ipsa ex sese suos civis genuisse dicatur. (C. Flac. 26.)

Ad ea Crispinus nec sibi nec illi ait hostes deesse, in quibus virtutem ostendant, conversusque abibat. Tum Campanus increpare mollitiam ignaviamque, et se digna probra in insontem jacere, hospitalem hostem appellans, simultantemque parcere, cui sciat parem se non esse. (L. 25. 18.)

Alii accipiunt imperia disceduntque ad suas quisque officiorum partes. Alexander, Perdicca interrogante quando cælestes honores haberi sibi vellet, dixit tum velle, cum ipsi felices essent. (Curt. 10. 5, § 6.)

Illi relictæ, in rabiem desperatione versa, parem suo exitum, similesque ipsis amicos et contubernales precabantur. (Curt. 9. 10, § 16.)

Neque sane, quid ipse sentiret, sed quid ab illis diceretur, ostendit.  
(C. Or. 2. 10.)

Perseus, et suo maxime tempore adque alieno hostibus, incipere bellum poterat. (L. 42. 43.)

Tiberius identidem felicem Priamum vocabat, quod superstes omnium suorum exstitisset. (Suet. Tib. 62.)

*In speaking of actions by the subject upon himself, ipse is very* 2264 *common and agrees normally with the emphasized word. But it is predicated of the subject, not merely when (a) what is emphasized is the subject, and not others, acting, but also sometimes (b) when it is the subject acting on, or by, himself, and not on others.*

(a) Non ego medicina: me ipse consolor. (C. Læl. 3.)

Ut quisque quidque conditum gustaverit, ipse sibi faciam ut digitos prærodât suos. (Pl. Ps. 884.)

Claudius a populo condemnatus est, Junius necem sibi ipse conscivit. (C. N. D. 2. 3.)

Quo quidem auctore nos ipsi (*opposed to tu*) ea gessimus, ut omnibus potius quam ipsis nobis consuluerimus. (C. Fin. 2. 19.)

Sunt qui Tarpeiam dicant, fraude visam agere, sua ipsam peremptam mercede. (L. 1. 11.)

Pompeianus miles fratrem suum, dein cognito facinore se ipsum interfecit. (Tac. H. 3. 51.)

Calpurnius jussu Muciani custodia militari cinctus, ad quadragessimum ab urbe lapidem Appia via extinguitur: Priscus se ipse interfecit, pudore magis quam necessitate. (Tac. H. 4. 11.)

(b) Iste repente ex alacri atque læto sic erat humilis atque demissus, ut non modo populo Romano sed etiam sibi ipse condemnatus videretur. (C. Verr. Act. 1. 6.)

Nec vero id satis est, neminem esse qui ipse se oderit, sed illud quoque intelligendum est, neminem esse qui, quo modo se habeat, nihil sua censeat interesse. (C. Fin. 5. 10. *See the whole chapter: partly quoted in § 1558.*)

Quos delectari videmus, si quid ratione per se ipsi invenerint.

(C. Fin. 3. 5.)

Bellum pacem fœdera societates per se ipse, cum quibus voluit, injussu populi ac senatus fecit diremitque. (L. 1. 49.)

2. *Se, suus, especially the latter, are also used in reference to* 2265 *some word in the sentence which is not the subject. This is rarely done where the context would create ambiguity.*

Is est servos ipse, neque præter se umquam ei servos fuit.

(Pl. Capt. 580.)

Etiam feras inter sese partus atque educatio et natura ipsa conciliat.

(C. Rosc. Am. 22.)

Jubet salvere suus vir uxorem suam. (Pl. Merc. 713.)

Nunc, si ille huc salvos revenit, reddam suum sibi (Pl. Trin. 156), *i. e.* reddam ei suum sibi. Cf. § 1143.

Placet ille meus mihi mendicus: suus rex reginæ placet.

(Pl. *Stich.* 133.)

Hannibalem sui cives e civitate ejecerunt. (C. *Sest.* 68.)

Sua cujusque animantis natura est. (C. *Fin.* 5. 9.)

Suis flammis delete Fidenas. (L. 4. 33.)

Dicæarchum vero cum Aristoxeno æquali et condiscipulo suo, doctos sane homines, omittamus. (C. *T. D.* 1. 18.)

Desinant insidiari domi suæ consuli. (C. *Cat.* 1. 13.)

Hæc assuefaciebant militem minus jam tandem aut virtutis aut fortunæ pænitere suæ. (L. 22. 12.)

Id multos quidem patrum, ipsos possessores, periculo rerum suarum terrebat. (L. 2. 41.)

Insidias veriti, liberam facultatem sui recipiendi Bellovacis dederunt. (Hirt. *B. Gall.* 8. 16.)

Neque occasione tuæ desis, neque suam occasionem hosti des.

(L. 22. 39 fin.)

*But also* Pisonem nostrum merito ejus amo plurimum.

2266

(C. *Fam.* 14. 2.)

Deum adgnosces ex operibus ejus. (C. *T. D.* 1. 28.)

3. *See, suus* are also used in reference to the subject of the sentence<sup>2267</sup> or clause, on which the subordinate clause containing *se, suus* depends. So regularly when the subordinate clause has a subjunctive of the classes<sup>1</sup> D, G, or H. (See § 1788 sqq.)

(a) Meus me oravit filius, ut tuam sororem poscerem uxorem sibi. (Pl. *Trin.* 459.)

Non enim illum expectare oportet, dum erus se suscitet ad suum officium. (Pl. *Rud.* 922.)

Tum ei dormienti idem ille visus est rogare, ut, quoniam sibi vivo non subvenisset, mortem suam ne inultam esse pateretur. (C. *Div.* 1. 27.)

Qui totos dies precabantur et immolabant, ut sibi sui liberi superstites essent, superstitiosi sunt appellati. (C. *N. D.* 2. 28.)

Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo præsentem conclamavit; quid ad se venirent? (Cæsar. *G.* 1. 47.)

Scipionem Hannibal eo ipso, quod adversus se dux potissimum lectus esset, præstantem virum credebat. (L. 21. 39.)

Domitius ad Pompeium in Apuliam peritos regionum mittit, qui petant atque orent, ut sibi subveniat. (Cæsar. *C.* 1. 17.)

<sup>1</sup> In consecutive sentences *eum*, not *se*, is regularly used.

(b) Similarly of what is the logical, though not the grammatical, subject, of the principal sentence.

A Cæsare valde liberaliter invisor, sibi ut sim legatus. (C. Att. 2. 18.)  
Jam inde ab initio Faustulo spes fuerat, regiam stirpem apud se educari. (L. 1. 5.)

The rule is that the subject of the principal sentence is referred to <sup>2268</sup> *se* in the dependent sentence, if that dependent sentence have a subjunctive of the classes named above (§ 2267). But

(a) *Se* is sometimes found, when the dependent sentence has the indicative:

In eis urbibus, quæ ad se defecerant, præsidia imponit. (Sall. J. 61.)  
Nil rectum, nisi quod placuit sibi, ducunt. (Hor. Ep. 2. 1. 83.)

(b) Occasionally *eum*, &c. is found instead of *se*, though the dependent sentence has the subjunctive.

Helvetii persuadent Rauracis, uti, eodem usi consilio, oppidis suis (i.e. Rauracorum) vicisque exustis, una cum iis (i.e. Helvetiis) proficiscantur. (Cæs. G. 1. 5.)

An, quod a sociis eorum non abstinuerim, justam querelam habent?  
(L. 32. 34.)

Datames captus est Mithridatis dolo. Namque is pollicitus est regi, se eum interfectorum, si ei (i.e. Mithridati) rex permetteret; ut, quodcunque vellet, liceret facere. (Nep. 14. 10.)

4. *Ipsius, ipsi*, &c. are sometimes found for *suum ipsius, sibi* <sup>2269</sup> *ipsi*, &c., and in post-Augustan writers for simple *suum, sibi*.

Cæsar milites incusavit: cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? (Cæs. G. 1. 40.)

Socrates Xenophonti consulenti sequereturne Cyrum, postquam exposuit quæ ipsi videbantur, ...ad Apollinem, inquit, censeo referendum. (C. Div. 1. 54.)

Intemperantiam in morbo suam experti, parere ipsis in adversa valetudine vetant. (Sen. Ir. 3. 13.)

Itaque Græcis nuntiari jubet, ipsum quidem benevolentiae illorum gratias agere. (Curt. 3. 8. 7.)

5. *Se, suus* are also used in reference to the unexpressed subject of <sup>2270</sup> an abstract infinitive or gerund.

Honestius est alienis injuriis quam sua commoveri. (C. Ferr. 3. 72.)  
Ceterum et interrogandi se ipsum et respondendi sibi solent esse non ingratae vices. (Quint. 9. 2. 14.)



*When only two persons or things are concerned, uter is (rarely) used corresponding to quisquam; utervis, uterlibet to quivis, quilibet.*

*For non quisquam, non ullus, non quidquam, non uter, &c. are generally used, at least in prose, nemo, nullus, nihil, neuter, &c. (For the use of the forms of quisquam, see § 382; of nemo, nullus, § 372; of nihil, nihilum, § 369.)*

Vivo fit, quod numquam quisquam mortuo faciet mihi. 2277  
(Pl. *Amph.* 459.)

Numquam quicquam facinus feci pejus. (Pl. *Men.* 447.)

Nihil quicquam vidi lætius. (Ter. *Ad.* 366.)

Iste nihil umquam fecit sine aliquo quæstu atque præda.  
(C. *Verr.* 5. 5.)

Nego esse quicquam a testibus dictum, quod aut vestrum cuiquam esset obscurum, aut cuiusquam oratoris eloquentiam quæreret.  
(C. *Verr.* 1. 10.)

Metellus edixit, ne quisquam in castris panem aut quem alium coctum cibum venderet. (Sall. *J.* 45.)

Nemo ullius nisi fugæ memor. (L. 2. 59.)

An me existimas ab ullo malle mea legi probarique, quam a te? 2280  
Cur igitur cuiquam misi prius? (C. *Att.* 4. 5.)

Quasi vero quisquam vir excellenti animo in rempublicam ingressus optabilius quicquam arbitretur, quam se a suis civibus reipublicæ causa diligi. (C. *Vat.* 3.)

Quam diu quisquam erit, qui te defendere audeat, vives.  
(C. *Cat.* 1. 2.)

Laberis, quod quicquam stabile aut jucundum in regno putas.  
(C. *Phil.* 8. 4.)

Quicquid bene dictum est ab ullo, meum est. (Sen. *Ep.* 16, § 7.)

Si qua me res isto adduxerit, enitar, si quo modo potero—potero autem—ut præter te nemo dolorem meum sentiat, si ullo modo poterit, ne tu quidem. (C. *Att.* 12. 23.)

Una horum quævis causa me ut faciam monet. (Ter. *Andr.* 904.)

Faciat quidlibet: sumat, consumat, perdat, decretumst pati. 2281  
(Ter. *Haut.* 464.)

Non recito cuiquam nisi amicis, idque coactus, non ubivis, coramve quibuslibet. (Hor. *S.* 1. 4. 73.)

Cuius potest accidere quod cuiquam potest.  
(Publ. ap. Sen. *Dial.* 9. 11.)

Ut enim histrioni actio, saltatori motus non quivis sed certus quidam est datus, sic vita agenda est certo genere quodam, non quolibet. (C. Fin. 3. 7.)

Quivis unus homo potest quamvis turpem de quolibet rumorem proferre. (Corn. 2. 8.)

Illa vero præclara est clausula edicti, quod omnium controversiarum, 2282 quæ essent inter aratorem et decumanum, si uter velit, edicit se recuperatores daturum. (C. Verr. 3. 14.)

At minus habeo virium, quam vestrum utervis. (C. Sen. 10.)

Ea non dicere, si utrumlibet esset liberum, maluissemus.

(Quint. 11. 1. 60.)

Utriusque accepi ejusmodi litteras eodem tempore, quo tuas, ut neuter quemquam omnium pluris facere quam me videretur.

(C. Att. 7. 1, § 3.)

**Quisque, uterque; ambo, singuli, alterni, &c.**

**Quisque**, 'each' (and sometimes, in Lucretius frequently *quisquis*) 2283 is used of each several case, where there are more than two: *uterque* (rarely *quisque*, except with *suus*) of each several case, where there are two only. In the plural *quisque* and *uterque* are properly used of 'each party,' or of 'each set of cases.'

When all are spoken of without implying any distinction between them, *omnes* or *nemo* non are used; *ambo* of two only. *Cunctus* (usually in plural), and *universus* are 'all together,' *totus* is 'the whole.' *Unus quisque*, 'every single person,' *singuli*, 'one apiece,' 'several,' *alterni*, 'every other.' (Cf. Vol. 1. p. 443.)

**Quisque** is frequently accompanied by *se* or *suus*; and also frequently joined to a superlative or ordinal, which is always placed before *quisque*, e.g. *optimus quisque*, 'all the best people'; *decimus quisque*, 'every tenth,' 'one in ten,' *primus quisque*, 'one after the other,' also 'the very earliest,' *quotus quisque*, 'how few!' To *quisque* correspond generally (though not as distinguished from *omnes*) *ubique*, *usque*; to *uterque*, *utrobique* or *utrinque*.

Certum ac dispositumst, ubi quicquid crescat et insit. (Lucr. 3. 787.) 2285.

Magni est judicis statuere, quid quemque cuique præstare oporteat.

(C. Off. 3. 17.)

Abduci non potest, quia uterque utrique est cordi. (Ter. Ph. 800.)

Horum pedum nullus non in orationem venit, sed quo quique sunt temporibus pleniore, hoc graviores faciunt orationem.

(Quint. 9. 4. 83.)

Pro se quisque, ut in quoque erat auctoritatis plurimum, ad populum loquebatur. (C. *Verr.* 1. 27.)

Duas civitates ex una factas: suos cuique parti magistratus; suas leges esse. (L. 2. 44.)

Scrobibus latitudo ternorum pedum in quamque partem satis est.

(Plin. 17, § 167.)

Magnam vim esse in fortuna in utramque partem, vel secundas ad res, vel adversas, quis ignorat? (C. *Off.* 2. 6.)

Quid ubique habeat frumenti et navium, ostendit.

(Cæs. C. 2. 20.)

Qui timet his adversa, fere miratur eodem, quo cupiens, pacto: pavor est utrobique molestus. (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 6. 10.)

Ut aliæ bonæ res, ita bonus liber melior est quisque, quo major.

(Plin. *Ep.* 1. 20, § 4.)

Alius excessisse materiem, alius dicitur non implese: æque uterque, sed ille imbecillitate, hic viribus peccat. (Ib. 221.)

Sed utros ejus habueris libros, duo enim sunt corpora, an utroque, nescio. (C. *Q. F.* 2. 11 [13].)

Est autem quidam interjectus inter hos medius, vicinus amborum, in neutro excellens. (C. *Or.* 6.)

Ex ceteris philosophis nonne optumus et gravissimus quisque confitetur multa se ignorare? (C. *T. D.* 3. 28.)

Multi mortales convenere, maxime proximi quique, Cæninenses, Crustumini, Antemnates. (L. 1. 9.)

In foro vix decumus quisque, qui ipse sese noverit.

(Pl. *Ps.* 973.)

Primum quicquid aquai tollitur, in summaque fit ut nil umor abundet. (Lucr. 5. 264.)

Primum quidque videamus. (C. *N. D.* 3. 3.)

Forma dei munus. Forma quota quæque superbit?

(Ov. *A. A.* 3. 103.)

Disjunctio est, cum eorum, de quibus dicimus, aut utrumque aut unum quidque certo concluditur verbo. (Corn. 4. 27.)

Unum quicquid, quod quidem erat bellissimum, carpan.

(Ter. *Ad.* 591.)

Censeo, uti C. Pansa, A. Hirtius consules, alter ambove, si eis videbitur, de ejus honore præmiæ primo quoque die ad senatum referant. (C. Phil. 8 fin.)

In viduitate relictæ filiæ singulos filios parvos habentes. (L. 40. 4.)

Si jam campus martius dividatur, et uni cuique vestrum ubi consistat bini pedes adsignentur; tamen promiscue tota, quam propria parva, frui parte malitis: qua re etiam, si ad vos esset singulos aliquod ex hoc agro perventurum, tamen honestius eum vos universi quam singuli possideretis. (C. Agr. 2. 31.)

Vix hostem, alterni si congregiamur, habemus. (Verg. A. 12. 233.)

Nuntiant dictatorem avidum pœnæ venire, alternis pæne verbis T. Manli factum laudantem. (L. 8. 30.)

Cuncta putas una virtute minora. (Hor. Ep. 1. 12. 11.)

Est autem, quod omnes et semper et ubique deceat, facere ac dicere honeste. (Quint. 11. 1. 14.)

*Quisque following suus is occasionally attracted into the case of suus: (suus quisque = 'each several,' 'its own proper').*

Postremo quodvis frumentum non tamen omne quique suo genere inter se simile esse videbis. (Lucr. 2. 371.)

Atque hæc aliorum ad alios morbos proclivitas late patet... Hæc igitur proclivitas ad suum quodque genus ægrotatio dicitur.

(C. T. D. 4. 12.)

Tradunt armatum exercitum decucurrisse cum motibus armorum et corporum suæ cuique genti assuetis. (L. 25. 17.)

Ante omnia colonus curare debet, ut opera rustica suæ quoque tempore faciat. (Gai. ap. Dig. 19. 2. 25, § 2.)

**Quisquis, quicumque, qualiscunque, utercunque, &c.; utique.**

*The indefinite relative pronouns are sometimes used absolutely, i. e. instead of 'whoever,' 'whichever,' they denote 'any one whosoever,' 'some one or other,' 'any thing whatever.' So quisquis, quantusquantus, quicumque, qualiscunque, utercunque, &c.*

Ne stirpem domi relinquerent, liberos suos quibus quibus Romanis in eam condicionem, ut manumitterentur, mancipio dabant.

(L. 41. 8.)

Quapropter, quoquo pacto, tacitost opus. (Ter. Ad. 342.)

De Drusi hortis quanti licuisse tu scribis, id ego quoque audieram, sed quantiquanti bene emitur, quod necesse est. (C. Att. 12. 23.)

Quæ sanari poterunt, quacumque ratione, sanabo. (C. Cat. 2. 5.)

Læti quamcumque condicionem paciscendi acceperunt. (L. 22. 58.)

Tu non concupisces quanticumque ad libertatem pervenire?

(Sen. Ep. 80. 44.)

Dixerunt, qualicumque urbis statu, manente disciplina militari, sisti potuisse. (L. 2. 44.)

Si enim libertatem sequimur, qui locus hoc dominatu vacat? sin qualemcumque locum, quæ est domestica sede jucundior?

(C. Fam. 4. 8.)

Hoc quaecumque discrimen raro admodum eveniet.

(Quint. 11. 1, § 14.)

Si numina divum sunt aliquid, si non perierunt omnia mecum, quandocumque mihi poenas dabis. (Ov. M. 6. 544.)

Utrocumque modo sequetur summa confusio. (Quint. 3. 6, § 29.)

Nisi mercedem aut nummos unde unde extricat, amaras porrecto jugulo historias, captivus ut, audit. (Hor. S. 1. 3. 88.)

Bonam deperdere famam malumst ubicumque. (Hor. S. 1. 2. 62.)

So quotquot ann's, &c. (§ 1179); quoquo versus (§ 2175).

(a) Quisque, which is in early writers used sometimes as a <sup>2299</sup> relative = quicumque, (e.g. Pl. Mil. 160; so also quandoque<sup>1</sup>, Hor. A. P. 359) is even in Cicero, &c. with modi, generis &c. used as equivalent to cujusvis, e.g. cujusquemodi voluptatis, C. Fin. 2. 7; materia cujusque generis, Cæs. G. 512.

(b) Similarly utique comes to mean 'anyhow,' 'at all events'; non utique, 'not of course,' 'not necessarily.'

Velim M. Varronis et Ollii mittas laudationem, Ollii utique, nam illam legi, volo tamen regustare. (C. Att. 13. 48.)

Concurrunt ad eum legati tribunique, monentes ne utique experiri vellet imperium, cujus vis omnis in consensu obedientium esset. (L. 2. 59.)

Sapienti propositum est in vita agenda non utique, quod temptat, efficere, sed omnino recte facere: gubernatori propositum est utique navem in portum perducere. (Sen. Ep. 85, § 31.)

Omnis generalis quæstio speciali potentior, quia universo pars continetur, non utique accedit parti quod universum est. (Quint. 12. 2, § 18.)

<sup>1</sup> Also = aliquando, e.g. ne quandoque (L. 21. 3. fin.); quandoque fiunt trabes, quandoque clipei (Sen. N. Q. 1. 1. fin.)

## Idem, alius, alter, ceteri.

*Idem* is 'same,' as opposed to *alius*; *alius* is 'other' generally, *alter*, 2291 'other of two' or 'the second' of many, *ceteri* is 'the others.' *Relicuius* is 'remaining,' i.e. after something has been subtracted. Often it is indistinguishable from *ceteri*.

When *alius* or *alter* is repeated in different clauses, the first is in English often to be translated 'one,' the second *alius* is 'another,' *alter*, 'the other.' In Livy, &c. *alius* is sometimes used where *ceteri* would be more strictly right. When repeated in the same sentence, *alius* is often to be translated by 'different'; e.g. *alius alium videt* (*vident*), 'Different men see different things,' or 'one sees one thing, another another'; sometimes *alius alium* (*alter alterum*) *vident* is 'they see one another.' *Unus et alter* is 'one or two.' (For *idem* ac, *alius* ac see § 1581; *alius quam* § 1267; *alius* with ablative § 1268.)

*Multæ idem istuc aliæ cupiunt.* (Pl. *Mil.* 1040.)

2292

*Equidem certo idem sum qui semper fui.* (Pl. *Amph.* 447.)

*Alium esse censes nunc me atque olim, cum dabam?*

(Ter. *Andr.* 545.)

*At primum quot hominum linguæ, tot nomina deorum; non enim ut tu Velleius, quocunque veneris, sic idem in Italia Volcanus, idem in Africa, idem in Hispania.* (C. *N. D.* 1. 30.)

*Tu autem eodem modo omnis causas, ages? aut in eisdem causis perpetuum et eundem spiritum sine ulla commutatione obtinebis?* (C. *Or.* 31.)

*Eidem multa ex aliis causis aliquando a se acta, multa ab aliis audita meminerunt.* (C. *Or.* 87.)

*Alias bestias nantis aquarum incolas esse voluit, alias, volucres cælo frui libero, serpentis quasdam, quasdam esse gradientis: earum ipsarum partim solivagas, partim congregatas, inmanis alias, quasdam autem cicures, nonnullas abditas terraque tectas.*

(C. *T. D.* 5. 13.)

*Cum de intercessione referretur, primaque M. Marcelli sententia pronuntiata esset, frequens senatus in alia omnia iit.*

(Cæ. ap. C. *Ram.* 8. 13.)

*Fimbria ita furebat, ut mirare tam alias res agere populum, ut esset insano inter disertos locus.* (C. *Brut.* 66.)

*Non alia ante Romana pugna atrocior fuit.* (L. 1. 27.)

*Volcanus, Luna, Sol, Dies, dei quatuor, scelestiorem nullum inluxere alterum.* (Pl. *Bac.* 256.)

Illi alias aliud eisdem de rebus et sentiunt et judicant. (C. Or. 2. 7.) 2293  
 Itidem, ut tempus anni, ætatem aliam aliud factum concedet.  
 (Pl. Merc. 984.)

Aliud est maledicere, aliud accusare. (C. Cæl. 3.)

Contraria autem ea dico, cum alterum aiat, alterum negat.  
 (C. Acad. 30.)

Alius alium percontamur: quoja navis? quid vehit? (Pl. Stich. 370.)

Alterum alteraprehendit eos manu perneciter. (Pl. Amph. 1116.)

Alteri apud alteros formidinem facere. Pro metu repente gaudium  
 mutatur: milites alius alium læti appellant. (Sall. J. 53.)

Amicus est tanquam alter idem. (Ib. 21.)

2294

Numero centuriarum Tarquinius alterum tantum adjecit.  
 (L. 1. 36.)

Exitus quidem omnium unus et idem fuit. (C. Div. 2. 47.)

Unus et alter adsuitur pannus. (Hor. A. P. 15.)

Ut rem gestam tanto opere laudarem, adductus sum tuis unis et  
 alteris litteris. (C. Att. 14. 18.)

Altero vicesimo die litteras reddidit. (C. Fam. 12. 25.)

Ille cohortis veteranas in fronte, post eas ceterum exercitum in  
 subsidiis locat. (Sall. J. 59.)

O spectaculum uni Crasso jucundum, ceteris non item!  
 (C. Att. 2. 21.)

Quod sparti satis in usum fuit, sublato, ceterum omne incensum est.  
 (L. 22. 20.)

Sine manibus trunca esset actio ac debilis: nam ceteræ partes  
 loquentem adjuvant, hæ, prope est ut dicam, ipsæ locuntur.  
 (Quint. 11. 3, 85.)

Scriptum est 'si mihi filius genitur isque prius moritur' et cetera,  
 'tum mihi ille sit heres.' (C. Or. 2. 32.)

Et ipse sentit et reliqui omnes, me ab illo abalienatum.  
 (C. Att. 16. 15.)

Alterum periodi genus constat membris et incisis: 'aderat janitor  
 carceris, carnifex prætoris,' reliqua. (Quint. 9. 4, § 124, re-  
 ferring to C. Verr. 5. 45.)

Iter exquisivit per Divitiacum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem  
 habebat, (Cæs. G. 1. 41.)

Refugientes pauci aliam omnem multitudinem in potestate hostium  
 esse afferebant. (L. 24. 1.)

Quis? quisnam? ecquis? ecquisnam? numquis?

Of the interrogative pronouns quis and (usually) quisnam <sup>2296</sup> (sometimes namquis) denote 'who?' 'which (of many)?' 'uter, 'whichever of two'; ecquis, numquis, and sometimes siquisnam, num quisnam inquire whether 'any' one or thing of the kind exists. In all these quis, quid are substantive, qui, quod adjective. (§ 381.)

TH. Quis fuit igitur? PY. Iste Chærea. TH. Qui Chærea?  
PY. Iste ephebus frater Phædriæ. (Ter. Eun. 823.)

Canephoræ ipsæ vocabantur; sed earum artificem, quem? quemnam? recte admones, Polycletum esse dicebant.  
(C. Verr. 4. 3.)

In sese redit, atque hominis tandem ore locutus? Nam quis te, juvenum confidentissime, nostras jussit adire domos?  
(Verg. G. 4. 445.)

Qui me Thebis alter vivit miserior? (P. Amph. 1046.)

Ecquis in ædibust? Heus ecquis hic est? ecquis hoc aperit ostium?  
ecquis exit? (Pl. Bac. 582.)

Ecquidnam meminit Mnesilochi? (Pl. Bac. 206.)

Numquidnam ad filium hæc ægritudo attinet? (Pl. Bac. 1110.)

Nihil jam querere aliud debetis, nisi uter utri insidias fecerit.  
(C. Mil. 9.)

### Miscellaneous Remarks on Pronouns.

1. The second person plural is not used in Latin (as in English) <sup>2297</sup> for the singular. e. g. Quid ais? 'What say you?'

The first person plural is sometimes so used, as in English. <sup>2298</sup>

Tu, quæso, festina ad nos venire. (C. Att. 3. 36.)

Reliquum est ut de felicitate (Pompeii) timide ac pauca dicamus.  
Ego enim sic existimo. (C. Man. 16.)



Mirum me desiderium tenet urbis, incredibile meorum atque in primis tui, satietas autem provinciæ, vel quia videmur eam famam consecuti ut, &c., vel quia totum negotium non est dignum viribus nostris, qui majora onera in republica sustinere et possim et solem, &c. (C. Fam. 2. 11.)

2. *On the usual omission of any separate personal pronoun, when it would be the subject, see § 1425 sq.*

*It is also, if no ambiguity is likely to arise, often omitted, when it would be in the accusative or dative.*

Fratrem tuum in ceteris rebus. laudo: in hac una reprehendere cogor.

Non obsistam fratris tui voluntati, quoad honestas patietur; favere non potero.

Libri, de quibus scribis, mei non sunt: sumpsi a fratre meo.

*So always* vidi eum rogavique; *never* vidi eum et rogavi eum. 2300  
Meos Cæsarisque libros reliqui, 'I left my own books and those of Cæsar'; (*never* eosque Cæsaris.)

*The possessive pronoun is similarly omitted.*

2301

Roga parentes (*sc.* tuos).

Patris (*sc.* mei) animum mihi reconciliasti.

3. *The possessive pronouns are sometimes used in the sense of* 2302  
*'favourable to me, you,' &c. (For suus, cf. 1142, 1143, 2288.)*

Vadimus inmixti Danaï, non numine nostro. (Verg. A. 2. 396.)

Loco æquo, tempore tuo pugnasti. (L. 38. 45.)

Alfenus utebatur populo sane suo. (C. Quint. 7.)

Ignoranti, quem portum petat, nullus suus ventus est.

(Sen. Ep. 71, § 3.)

*Another application of the notion of 'one's own' is seen in the* 2303  
*jurists' phrases, suus heres, sui heredes, 'a man's proper heir (heirs).'*

Suos heredes accipere debemus filios filias sive naturales sive adoptivos. (Ulp. Dig. 38. 16. 1, § 2.)

4. *The indefinite pronoun 'one' is variously expressed in Latin:* 2304  
*but these different modes are not all equally applicable in all circumstances.*

(a) *By a personal passive: e.g.* Rex hic valde diligitur; 'One feels strongly attached to the king.'

(b) *By an impersonal expression: e.g.* Non licet, 'one may not;'  
solet dici, 'one often says;'  
parendum est, 'one must obey.'

(c) *By the first person plural: e.g.* Quæ volumus, credimus libenter, 'What one wishes, one readily believes.'

(d) *By the second person singular subjunctive; e.g. putares 'one would have fancied.'* (§ 1546.)

(e) *By quis or aliquis; e.g. dicat quis, 'should one say,' &c.*

(f) *By is with a relative, e.g. is qui hoc dicit, 'one who says this,' &c.*

(g) *By se after, or with, a general infinitive (cf. § 2270); e.g.*

*Neglegere quid de se quisque sentiat ('what people think of one'), non solum arrogantis est sed etiam omnino dissoluti. (C. Off. 1. 28).*

*Melius est ire se ipsum, 'It is better (one does better) to go oneself.'*

(b) *See also § 1430.*

*Frequently this indefinite pronoun is omitted altogether in Latin: 2305 e.g. Libros quæris: bonum affero, 'You seek books: I bring you a good one.'*

*So after 'any,' 'each,' 'some,' 'certain;' e.g. quisquam, quivis, 'any one;' quisque, 'each one;' aliquis, 'some one;' quidam, 'a certain one;' or (simply) 'one.'*

5. *'Each other,' 'one another,' &c. are expressed in Latin by, 2306*

(a) *alius alium (alter alterum) intueri, 'They began to look at one another.' (Cf. § 2291.)*

(b) *Inter se, inter nos, &c.*

*Veri amici non solum colent inter se ac diligunt, sed etiam verebuntur. (C. Læl. 22.) 'Not only look after and love, but also respect one another.'*

*Quam sancta est societas civium inter ipsos. (C. Leg. 2. 7.)*

(c) *Sometimes by repetition of the noun.*

*Manus manum lavat. (Similarly, but without implying reciprocity: Vir virum legit. Dies diem docet.)*

*(Atticus moriens) non ex vita, sed ex domo in domum migrare videbatur. (Nep. 25. 22.)*

*Tantæ fuerunt tenebræ, ut per biduum nemo hominem homo agnosceret. (C. N. D. 2. 38.)*

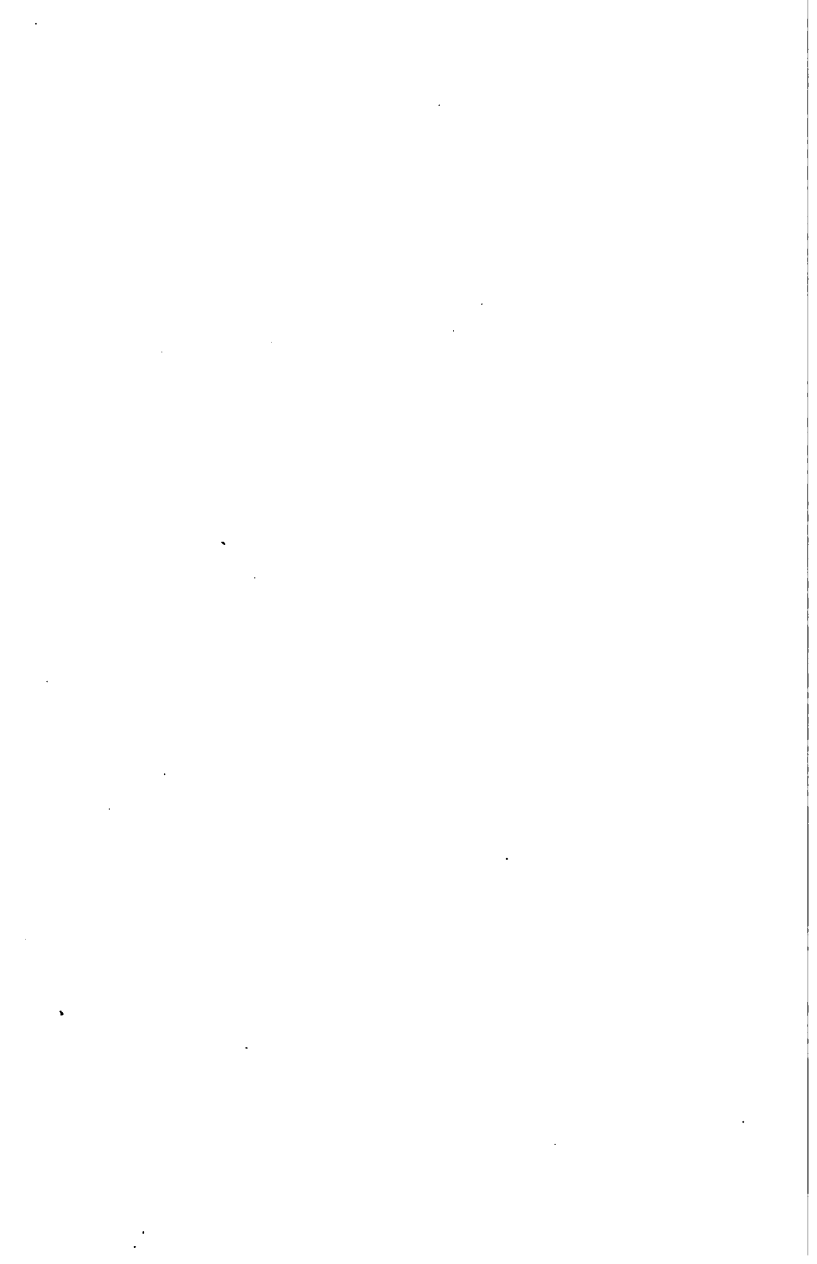
(d) *In later writers by invicem ('in turn').*

*Quæ omnia huc spectant, ut invicem ardentius diligamus. (Plin. Ep. 7. 20.)*

*Hæc invicem obstare, et utroque utentibus in neutro haberi fidem, putant. (Quint. 4. 5, § 13.)*

(e) *Sometimes by ultro citro.*

*Societas inter populum Carthageniensem regemque data ultro citroque fide affirmatur. (L. 29. 23.)*



## Index (to Part II).

See Preface, sub fin.

The numbers denote sections, unless *p* (for page) is prefixed. An asterisk is added to the number of a section, when the section does not professedly relate to the usage in question, but contains an instance of it.

Verbs are sometimes entered in the 1st pers. sing. ind., sometimes in the infinitive. A typical verb (e.g. "dare, facere," &c.) is occasionally named instead of the verb actually occurring.

*A in exclamations* 1532d\*.

*A, ab, abs, general use of* 1806—1814; *with gerunds* 1392; *in composition with verbs* 1815, 1816;

*of the agent after passive verbs* 1221, 1812; *after gerundive* 1147, *Pref. p. lxxiv*; *of ancestors* 1265; *of the cause* 1209, 1211, 1811; *in place of abl. of instrum.* 1213; *'on the side of'* 1209, 1813; *with names of towns* 1259; *of places, in Livy* 1257; *with compounds of dis-* 1263: a propinquis bene audire 1812 fin.; ab herede legare 1810; a milibus passuum duobus 1087, 1206; a moribus probare 1813; servus a rationibus 1814; a me stare 1813; ab aliquo timere 1810; a Tiberi 'on the Tiber side' 2044\*; a tergo 1813, 2105\*.

*Abdicare, with abl.* 1212; *acc.* 1211; fin.

*Abdere aliquid sinu* 1687\*; *ensem lateri* 2163\*.

*Abesse sex milia* 1086, 1690\*; *sex milibus* 1206.

*Abest (tantum) ut* 1699; *with double ut* 1700, 1702, 1581\*, 1894\*; *paulum abest quin* 1702, 1070\*, 1574\*.

*Abhinc, with acc.* 1092; *with abl.* 1091.

*Abire magistratu* 1701\*, 1720\*.

*Ablative, general use of* 1077 foll.; 1164 *with note*; *Pref. p. lvi*; *distinguished from adverbial accus.* 1109; *of gerund how used* 1384 foll., 1391 foll.; *of verbal stems in -tu (supine)* 1387 foll., 1393; *absolute* 1240 foll.; *cognate* 1299, 1725\*:

*expressing agent (with ab)* 1147; *amount* 1196 foll.; *amount of difference* 1204; *cause* 1230; *circumstances* 1240 foll.; *comparison, standard of* 1266; *cost* 1198; *crime* 1229, 1323; *date of letters* 1260, 1261, 1490\*; *deprivation* 1212, 1335; *description* 1232, 1309; *instrument* 1214 foll., *cf.* 1236; *instrument in appos. to per omnia* 1213; *manner* 1234 foll.; *means* 1214, 1174; *measure* 1204, 1206, 1085; *origin* 1264; *part concerned* 1210; *penalty* 1199, 1200; *place at which* 1170, 1172; *place from which* 1258 foll.; *price* 1196; *road by which* 1176; *separation* 1262; *size* 1085; *space over which (with totus)* 1083; *thing over which movement takes place* 1083; *time when* 1180; *time in course of which* 1182; *time throughout which* 1089, 1184; *tribe* 1264;

*after* abdicare se, 1212; abdere 1687\*; abire 1701\*, 1720\*; absistere 1391, 1674; absolvere 1593\*; abundare 1212; accipere 1720\*; adductus 1222; æque 1272; æquom 1201; afficere 1214; alienus 1263; alius 1268; ante 1204; arcessi 1197; ardere 1667\*; arcere 1263; assuefactus 1216; bene esse 1533c\*; cadere 1260, 1262; canere 1218; captus 1210; carere 1212; carus 1197; cavere 1218; censeri 1229; circumdare 1120b; circumducere 1212; comitatus 1220; constare, 'cost,' 1198; 'consist of' 1216; contentus 1216; contineri 1174, 1217; cumulare 1216; damnari 1200; decorus 1201; deducere 1479\*; delibutus 1216; demptus 1544; desistere 1696\*; dignus 1202; discere 1218; discribere 1218; distare 1204; docere 1217; donare 1214; egere 1335; emoriri 1359\*; erudire 1222; expers 1303; extorris 1211; exuere 1211; facere 1224; fidere 1229; florere 1212; frequens 1170\*; fretus 1216; frui 1226; fungi 1226; gestare 1174; haustus 1692\*; jacere 1220; jejunos 1335; implere 1216; indigere 1335; indignus 1201; interdicare 1212; interesse 1285; interitus 1228; invidere 1331; junctus 1216, cf. 1228; laudare 1228; liber 1263; liberare 1593\*; ludere 1218; macte 1228; manare 1212; mergi 1174; miscere 1216; multare 1200; mutare 1198; natus 1264; niti 1226; nudari 1650\*; nudus 1212; oberare 1421\*; occultare 1733\*; opus 1226, 1250, 1256, 1255; ortus 1264; pauperare 1676\*; pellere 1262; perire 1440 fin.\*; plenus 1339; plure 1212; post 1204; potiri 1226; privare 1335, 1468\*; prohibere 1262; procumbere 'be thrown down' 1491\*; quater 2239b\*; rasilis 2244\*; referre 1285; remotus 1335; replere 1335; sacrificare 1224; satus 1264; secretus 1335; sedere 1170, 1173; semotus 1262;

seorsum 2110; spoliatus 1335; stare 'stand to' 1172; 'stand one in' 1198; sterilus 1335; subtrahere 2233\*; summovere 2133\*; supersedere 1212; surgere 1808\*; triumphare 1535d\*; vacare 1262; vendere 1196; vesci 1226; vivere 1214; usus 1226, 1250, 1256, 1255; uti 1226.

Absente nobis 1249.

Absistere aliqua re 1391.

Absolvere, with gen. of 'charge' 1324; peccato 1593\*.

Absolutioni esse, Pref. p. xxxvii.

Absque 1817; absque te esset, &c. 1556, 2214\*.

Abstinerere, with gen. 1338; with abl. 1341, 1263\*; se abstinere, with abl. 1262, cf. 1163; abstinere ab 2237\*, 2268\*.

Abundare with abl. 1212; abundare, with gen. 1211.

Abunde salis 'abundance of wit' 1296.

Abusque 2190.

Abuti, with acc. 1223.

Ac 2195; in comparisons 1581; in affirmative clause, following a negative 2200; in answers 2197, 2007\*; in apodosis to clause with ut 2199:

æque ac 1275, 1777\*; alius ac 1581; contra ac 1679\*; idem ac 1143; juxta ac si 2014\*; ac non 2235, 2237; plus ac 1553\*; proinde ac 1581; proinde ac si 1580; non secus ac 1583.

Accedit quod 1701; ut 1700; accedere ad rempublicam, 'take part in politics' 1535c\*.

Acceptum retulit alicui, 'acknowledged receipt from' 1134; accepti et expensi codex 1565\*.

Accessionis 1306; accessio crescendi 1394b.

Accidit quod 1701; ut 1700, 1884\*.

Accipere, with gerundive 1401; mancipio 1243; in duas sententias, 1973; verberibus, 'treat to blows' 1720\*.

Accompanying circumstances, ablativus of, 1240.

Accusare tuam superbiam, 'charge

*you with pride* 1746\*; cf. 1323c\*; te superbiæ 1324.

*Accusative, general use of*, 1084 *with note*; of gerund how used 1377, 1397; of gerundive, special use 1401; of verbal stem in -tu (supine in -um) 1114, 1379 *follow.*; of participles without esse 1347:

*with infin.* 1351 *follow.*, 1356—1358; as oblique pred. of unexpressed subject of infin. 1357, 1726\*; adverbial acc. distinguished from abl. 1109; cognate 1100; double 1106 a, 1122, cf. 1094; in exclamations 1128, 1532 d, 1660\*; factitive 1059, &c.:

*expressing action as the goal of motion* 1114, 1379 *follow.*; compass 1086 *follow.*; description 1104; distance 1086; extent of action 1094 *follow.*; measure 1086; direct object of transitive verb 1120; double object 1122; object of passive verbs 1124, 1126; of verbs originally intransitive 1121, 1123; of verbal substantives (e.g. notio, receptio) 1400; of supine 1379; part concerned 1102; penalty 1199; place towards which 1108; space over which 1086; time throughout which 1090; totum annum 1603\*; aliquos viginti dies 1605\*:

*after abdicare* 1211; abesse 1086, 1672\*; abhinc 1092; abuti 1223; adigere 1118; altus 1086, 1311; animadvertere 1118; anteire 1121, 1647\*; auctor 1094; -bundo, stems in 1405; cavere 1120; censeri 1127; coire 1121; condonare 1125; convenire 1120 b; currere 1123; defendere 2241\*; deflere 1657\*; dignus 1201; frui, fungi 1223; indutus 1127; inluxit 2292\*; innatare 2244\*; interesse 1189; invadere 1120 b, 1437\*; invidere 1331; -ion, stems in 1400; latus 1086, 1305; ludere 1217; meminisse 1333; natus 1090; oblivisci 1333; occumbere 1120 b; offendere 1960\*; opus (nihil, &c.) 1094, 1255; permittere 1139; posus 1120 a; pluere 1211; posse 1094; potiri 1223; præire 1082\*;

præstare 1121; præverti 1121; precari 1125; prope 2087 *follow.*; propius, proxime 1106 c, 2175\*; recordari 1333; referre 1189; ridere 1097, 1123; sapere 1123; saucius 1101; sinere 1139; sonare 1096, 1123; stupere 1123; subire 1572\*; traicere 1106 b; vesci 1223; vincere 'win' 1100; uti 1223.

*See also list of compound verbs in* 1121.

Acerbitati esse, *Pref. p.* xxxvii.

Acervus frumenti 1304.

Acie 1239.

Acta 'journals' 1101 *fin.*\*

Actio depositi, &c. 1323.

*Action as object to a verb* 1344 *follow.*; as goal of motion 1114; used as general term for what a verb denotes, *p.* 220 *note*; without doer expressed 1431.

Actutum 'immediately' 1434\*.

*Ad general use* 1818 *follow.*; sometimes put after noun 1038, 1805; in composition with verbs 1829 *follow.*; often repeated after compound verbs 1145; with gerund 1377; thus forming a substitute for supine 1115; also for genitive gerund 1313; with numerals, 'up to the number of' 1822, 1823; with names of towns 1111; of part concerned, &c. 1209, 1826, 1827; of (place of) penalty 1199:

ad hoc, 'besides' 2212\*; ad id respondere 1827; ad litteras rescribere 1468\*; ad me 'to my house' 1818, 2007\*; ad me refert or interest 1287; nihil ad me 1441 *fin.*\*, 1827; ad mercatum, ad pastum 1381; ad pocula 1441\*; ad postremum 'at last' 1824; ad remum servi 1828; ad verbum ediscere 'learn word for word' 1403; ad vinum 'over the wine' 1820; ad unum omnes 1829; ad usque 1819, 2190.

Addere eodem 1113.

Adeo 1657; atque adeo 1533 a a\*; usque adeo 2189, 2192.

Adequitare alicui 1144; ad aliquem 1145.

- Adesse scribendo 'be present at enrolment' 1264 fin.\*
- Adhibere aliquid alicui 1345\*.
- Adhortor te liberares 1894\*.
- Adicere quod 1427.
- Adigere aliquem arbitrum jusjurandum 1118; ad jusjurandum 1117; jurejurando 1119; sacramento 1245, 1492\*; followed by *orat. obl.* 1752; adigo aliquem facere 1110\*, 1932\*.
- Adjective, definition of* 1004, 1015 b; 1060; *general use* 1061—1069; as *attribute or predicate to abl. of place* 1170; *of time* 1180; *of description, manner, circumstances*, 1230; *to accusative of extent* 1086; *to genitive of quality* 1308; *position of, in sentence* 1041:
- instead of adverb* 1017 c, 1069; *of possessive genitive* 1277; *of partitive genitive* 1295; *of objective genitive* 1315:
- used with dependent genitive, viz. possessive* 1280; *partitive* 1092, 1290—1300; *objective* 1314, 1318; *of 'respect'* 1320; *of matter charged* 1326; *of things lacking, &c.* 1336; *with dependent dative* 1131, 1142; *with dependent ablative, viz. of thing in point of which* 1210, 1212, 1339; *of thing lacking* 1263, 1339; *with animi* 1321; *with supine in -u* 1210, 1388; *with dependent infinitive* 1361:
- not generally used with predicative dat.* 1158, *Pref. p.* xxix; *not used to qualify gerunds* 1374:
- as substantive* 1060, 1063; *in genitive masc.* 1283; *in genitive neuter* 1299; *neuter accus. used as adverb* 1095, 1097; *neuter locative so used* 1186; *neuter ablative so used* 1251; *with prepositions* 1061; *especially with ex* 1941; *with in* 1976.
- Adimere 1832; aliquid alicui 1604\*.
- Adire hereditatem 1716\*.
- Adjumento esse *Pref. p.* xxxvii.
- Admirationi esse, *Pref. p.* xxxvii.
- Admodum, with *adj.* 'very' 1978\*, 2019\*; raro 2289\*; with *verb* 1562\*.
- Admonere, with *gen.* 1332.
- Adque *i.e.* atque 2263\*.
- Adspargere aliquid alicui 1647\*.
- Adventu alicujus 1180.
- Adverb, definition of* 1005; *use of* 1018—1020; *position of, in sentence* 1039; *prepositional adverbs* 1800 *follow.*:
- pronominal, denoting place* *whither* 1113; *where* 1153, 1171; *whence* 1263; *compounded with prepositions* 1802; *in comparative sentences* 1635—1645, 1271; *used when antecedent is in locative* 1165:
- used with accus.* (*propius, proxime*) 1106 c; *with dative* 1142; *with partitive genitive* 1294, 1296; *with abl. of standard of comparison* 1270:
- used quasi-substantively, viz. a-bunde, adfatim* 1296; *partim* 1294, 1429; *comipare pondo* 1209:
- adjectivally, viz. circa* 1020 b, 1860; *contra* 1895; *palam* 2027; *semper (lenitas)* 1754\*.
- Adversaria (*pl.*) 'day-book' 1565\*.
- Adversative conjunctions 2208—2215; omitted 1027 b.
- Adversum, adversus (*adv.*) *general use* 1836—1842; *ea 'against this'* 1603\*, *cf.* 1842; *'in reply to this'* 1840.
- Adversus his 2285\*; adversa basis 'the front of base' 1295.
- Adusque 1819, 2190.
- Ægre, 'hardly' 1017 f\*, 2132\*.
- Æmulus, with *gen.* 2181\*.
- Æquare aliquem alicui 1622\*.
- Æque, with *abl.* 1272; *ac, with indic.* 1275, 1777\*; *ac si, with subj.* 1580; *et, with nouns* 1566\*.
- Æqui boni facere 1191: æquo animo 1237, 1607\*; æquo gravius 1270; in æquo 1976.
- Æquius erat, 'it were fairer' 1535c.
- Ære in meo esse 1687\*.
- Æstimare quanti 1186; unius assis 1186; magno 1197; cladibus, 'by means of disasters', &c. 1218.
- Æstivo 1181.
- Æstu magno 1242.

- Ætatem, 'for his life' 1090; hoc ætatis 1091; istuc, id ætatis 1092.  
 Æternum 1095.  
 Af 1807, 1812.  
 Afferre alicui *and* ad aliquem 1141.  
 Afficio aliquem leto 1588\*.  
 Affinis alicujus 1280; alicui 1281.  
 Age, agite 1553\*, 1603, 1723\*; agendum, agitodum, 1082, 1603.  
 Agere furti 1324; ex empto, ex testamento 1941; primas 1063.  
 Aggredior, *with inf.* 1344.  
 Agmine 1239; longo 1670\*; quadrato 1234; uno 1672\*.  
 Agon? 'shall I strike?' 1461.  
 Aio, *with infin. object-sentence*, 1698\*, 1745\*; *opposed to nego* 1422\*, 1553\*, 2277\*, 2293\*; ain' tu 1730\*.  
 Alea ludere 1218; aleam ludere 1217.  
 Alias 1885\*, 2239\*, 2293.  
 Alicubi hic, 'somewhere here' 1535c\*.  
 Alicunde procul 'somewhere far off' 2080\*.  
 Alienus, *with abl.* 1262.  
 Alimento esse, *Pref. p.* xxxvii.  
 Alioqui 1534\* (*p.* 226); 1995\*.  
 Aliquando, 'sometime or other' 1430\*, 1515\*, 1689\*, 1766\*, 2274; tandem aliquando, 1476.  
 Aliquanto æquius 1204; ante 1671\*.  
 Aliquis, *use of* 2271—2277; si numina sunt aliquid 2289\*; aliquid pulchri or pulchrum 1299; dicet, dixerit aliquis 1545; dicat aliquis 1542, *Pref. p.* ci; aliquos viginti dies 1605\*.  
 Aliquo, 'somewhither' 1690\*, 1571\*.  
 Aliquot 2271, 2276, 1607\*.  
 Aliter ac (*ind.*) 1581.  
 Alius, *with abl.* 1268; *general use of* 2291, 2292; alius alium 1440, 2293; alio die 1180; alii modi 1311; alius omnis, 'all the rest' 2291, 2295, 2162\*; in alia omnia ire 2292; alias res agere, 'to be inattentive' 2292\*; alius ac 1581; præter hunc 1302\*; nihil aliud (*sc. fecerunt*) quam 1441; quam ut 1094.  
 Allevatur animum 1127.  
 Alter, *use of* 2291 *fol.*; alter alterum, 'one another' 1254\*, 2293; alter idem, 'a second self' 2294; alterum tantum, 'as much again' 2294; unus et alter 2294; alteræ (*dat.*) 1968\*.  
 Alterni 2283, 2287; alternis 1237.  
 Alteruter, *use of* 2271, 2275, 1664 *fin.*\*  
 Altrinsecus 2117.  
 Altus ducenos pedes 1311, 1086; ducenum pedum 1308; ducenis pedibus 1085.  
 Amabo, 'prythee' 1605, 1614\*, 1664\*, 1755\*, 2080\*.  
 Amans, 'a lover' 1075; amantia verba 1554\*.  
 Amb- 1843.  
 Ambigitur (non) quin 1572\*.  
 Ambiguus, *with gen.* 1318, 1320.  
 Ambo 2287.  
 Amfractus 1843.  
 Amicire 1843.  
 Amictui 1161, *Pref. pp.* xxxiii, xxxvii.  
 Amiculo esse, *Pref. p.* xxxvii.  
 Amicus, amicissimus, *with dat.* 1142, 1228\*; *with gen.* 1280 (*p.* 118).  
 Amor, *with infin.* 1346.  
 Amori esse, *Pref. p.* xxxvii.  
 Amplector 1419.  
 Amplius, *with abl.* 1273, 1991\*; *without affecting case* 1273, 1557\*, 1692\*; 'any more' of time 1105\*.  
 An, *in direct questions* 2250, 2254; *in apparently simple (direct) questions* 2255; *in dependent questions* 1764, 1977\*; haud scio, nescio, an 1764, 2256, 2274\*; an non 2254. *See also* Forsitan.  
 An- (*adv.*) 1844.  
 Anaphora 1052.  
 Angere animi or animo 1321.  
 Animadvertere in aliquem 1745\*; fugam fieri 2174\*.  
 Animum advertere aliquid 1118; ne quid oriretur 1606\*; intendere ad aliquid 1151 *fin.*\*; inducere istuc animum 1602\*; inducere animum, uxorem habere 1771\*, peccatum esse 1812; concedere in animum inducere. 1344; habere in animo dare, &c. 2020\*.  
 Animi angere, pendere, fallere, &c. 1168, 1169, 1321; animi causa, 'for amusement' 1280\*; ex animi sententia 1940, 1695\*.



- Animo angere 1321; *tenus* 2164\*;  
eo animo esse 2237\*.
- Anne 2254, 2255.
- Anno vertente, 'in the course of a year'  
1182; his annis, '(within) all these  
years' 1777\*; tot annos esse 1610  
(p. 264)\*; totum annum esse, 'all  
the year through' 1603\*;  
annorum novem, 'when nine years  
old' 1310; minor annos xxx natus  
1273, 1603\*.
- Anquirere capitis 1324, 1134\*.
- Answers, how expressed 2251, 2252;  
made in words co-ordinate to part of  
question 1021 c.
- Ante, general use of 1845—1851; dies  
ante paucos 1848; paucos dies ante  
1207; paucis diebus ante 1206, 1847;  
ante decimum diem 1181; ante  
diem (a. d.) 1443\*, cf. Vol. I. p.  
454:  
ante aliquem natum 1407; ante  
Ciceronem consulem 1017 d; ante  
expectatum 1407; ex multo ante  
præparato 1940\*. See also Antequam.
- Antecedent 1066; agreeing with relative  
(arma quæ) 1779\*.
- Antecedere, with dat. 1390\*.
- Antecellere, with dat. 1140; with  
acc. 1121.
- Antecessum, dare in, 'give in advance'  
1973.
- Anteferre aliquem alicui 1700\*.
- Antehac 1849.
- Anteire, with acc. 1121, 1647\*, 1385\*.
- Antepondere aliquid alicui 1704\*, 2261\*;  
anteponi alicui 1140, 1438\*.
- Antequam, with indic. 1671, 1675,  
1475; with present of future event  
1462; with subj. 1672, 1674, 1391\*.
- Antestari 1851.
- Antidhac 1849.
- Anxius, with gen. 1318; animi 1321.
- Aorist (i.e. historical perf.) 1448, 1449,  
1452, 1453, 1473—1475.
- Apiscor 1419.
- Apodosis 1025; of a conditional sentence,  
1528; apodosis to a conditional subj.,  
various forms of 1548; absorbed into  
principal sentence 1750; expressed by epithet 1576; not distinctly  
conceived 1578, 1754; omitted 1580, 1582:  
apodosis to an indicative condition,  
various forms of 1549; in subj. for  
collateral reasons 1575; omitted 1579.
- Apparet, with infin. sentence 1471\*.
- Appellare, with sec. pred. 1068;  
Græco nomine 1392\*, cf. 1691\*;  
'ask payment from' 1183 fin.\*;  
'appeal to' 1747\*.
- Appellatives 1003 b.
- Appellere (sc. navem) 1413.
- Applicare se ad 1145.
- Appone rastros 1830 note, cf. 1691\*;  
apponi gratiæ 1163, Pref. p. xxxvi.
- Apposition 1015; often same as  
secondary pred. 1017 c, 1058; position  
in sentence 1041; gerundial expressions  
in appos. 1377\*, 1395\*;  
id, illud, in appos. to infin. 1351,  
1355; genitive in appos. to possessive  
pronouns 1059; clause with quod in  
appos. to oblique case 1701.
- Appropinquare portæ 1094\*, 1720\*.
- Aptus, with qui 1634; with dat. 1659.
- Apud, general use of 1852—1858;  
apud Numantiam, 'in the camp at  
Numantia' 1344\*; ædes 1858, 1398\*.
- Aqua una jugis, 'a single spring of  
water' 2002\*.
- Arbiter, 'a witness' 2080\*.
- Arbitratu alicujus or meo, &c. 1246,  
1668\*.
- Arbores abietis 1304.
- Arcere, with abl. 1263, 1769\*, 2211  
fin.\*; hinc 1751\*.
- Arcessere capitis 1325; iudicio capitis  
1323; mercede 1197.
- Ardere puellâ 1667\*.
- Argumento esse, Pref. pp. xxviii,  
xxxvii.
- Arrhaboni dare, Pref. p. xxxvii.
- Arte 1236.
- Artificio 1239.
- Assentiri litteris 1093; illud Theophrasto  
1094; de triumpho tibi 1541\*.

- Assis aestimare 1186, *cf.* 1187; asse carum est 1197.
- Assuefacere, *with dat.* 1215; *with abl.* 1216; *with infin.*, besides personal object, 1348, 2265\*.
- Assuetus, *with dat.* 2288\*; spectaculo 2147\*; *with infin.* 1349; as-suetio longius, 'farther than usual' 1270.
- Ast 2209 b, 2211.
- Astu 1239.
- At, *general use of* 2209 c, 2212, 1059\*; *in statement of an opponent's objection*; at enim, &c. 1623, 1654\*, 2049\*; *in apodosis to si* 1561 bis; at...certe 2037\*; at *in answers* 1720\*; at at 2260\*.
- Atque, *see* Ac.
- Atqui 2209 d, 2213, 1430\*, 1813\*.
- Attinet, quod ad vos 1534\*.
- Attraction of subject into case of relative 1067; of pronoun into gender and number of predicate 1068; of gerund 1374, *Pref. p.* lxvii foll.; of finite verb into infin. 1784 b; (quibus me ipsum) 1351\*; of quisque into case of suus 2288; mire quam for mirum quam 1649.
- To attraction are sometimes referred the constructions in* 1269, 1435, 1677; *the dative* Menæchmo, &c. *in* 1059, *and the predicate, if dative, in* 1357. *See also some sentences in* 1066, *where the relative is perhaps attracted.*
- Attribuere, *see* Unde.
- Attribute, *general description of*, 1011, 1015; *position in sentence* 1041—1043; *oblique cases and adverbs as attributes* 1019, 1020.
- Auctor sum, *with inf. object-clause* 1352; quid? 1094; *with gen.* 1152 fin.\*, 2236\*; *genitive gerund* 1093, 1395; auctore me 1246.
- Audeo, *with infin.* 1344 fin.; ausi capitalia 1721\*.
- Audire eum dicentem 1073; me stare 1846\*; ex eo cum diceret 1724; ex eo quid sentiat 1939\*; de ('from') aliquo 1906; fando 1239; audior dicere 1353; mihi auditum 1146; dicto audiens esse 1163; audio ('said to be') fortis 1059, 1812 fin.
- Auditus, *gen. sing.* 2027, *cf. Vol. I. p. 22, note.*
- Aveo scire 2273\*.
- Avertere (*pass. imper.*) perdes, 'turn your back and you will lose it' 1557; aversa charta, 'the back of the paper' 1295; aversum Buten 1991\*.
- Auferre aliquid alicui 1140, 1532 b\*; ab aliquo 1141.
- Augurato 1253.
- Avidus, *with gen.* 1314, 2287\*.
- Auscultare alicui 1603\*.
- Auscultatio, *with double dat.* 1400.
- Ausim 1540.
- Auspicato 1254.
- Auspicio Teucro, auspice Teucro 1246.
- Aut, *general use* 2216—2220, 1533 a\*, *ib. aa\**; distinguished from an in questions 2257; aut...aut...aut etiam 2053\*.
- Autem, *general use* 2209 b, 2211; *position in sentence* 1055; *use in question by way of answer*, 1613, 1771; si potero, potero autem, enitar 2280\*.
- Autumno 1181.
- Auxilio esse, ire, &c. *Pref. p.* xxxviii, 1115, 1162; auxilium ferre alicui 1115 (3).
- Belli as locative 1168; bellum facere alicui 1571\*; indicere 1558 fin.\*; sumere cum Antiocho 1751\*.
- Bellum canere 1098.
- Bene esse alicui 1153, 1431 c; *cf.* 1140\*; emere 1197; credere, 'lend safely' 1973 fin.\*; bene Messallam (*sc.* valere jubeo), 'Messalla's health' 1441.
- Beneficia in aliquem 1744\*.
- Benevolus, *subst.*, 'a well-wisher' 1075.
- Bibere, *object to dare*, &c. 1345, *Pref. p.* xxxiii.
- billi, *adjectives ending in*, *used with dat. of agent* 1146.
- Bona fide 1234; ex fide bona 1959\*; bona venia 1245, 1589\*, 1590;

- bonæ frugi 1160, *Pref. p.* xlv;  
bonam partem 1102; boni consu-  
lere, 1191; bono esse, *Pref. p.*  
xxxviii; bono publico (*abl.*) 1245.  
Brevi 2212.  
-bundo, *participles in, with direct obj.*  
*in acc.* 1405, *Pref. p.* lxxviii.
- Cadere, *with abl.* 1260, 1262.  
Cælo (*dat.*) ire 1144; *abl.* 1170.  
Calamitati esse *Pref. p.* xxxviii.  
Caletur 1431b.  
Callere, *with acc.* 1120c.  
Canere classicum 1097; bellicum 1098;  
receptui 1157, *Pref. pp.* xxxiii, lii;  
fidibus 1218.  
Capere judicem cum aliquo 1770\*.  
Capite damnare 1200; deminutus  
1210; censi 1229; capitis anqui-  
rere, absolvere, damnare, &c. 1324,  
1325, 1199; minor 1320.  
Captioni esse alicui 1654\*, *Pref. p.*  
xxxviii.  
Captus auribus 1210; oculis 1210,  
1724\*.  
Carere, *with abl.* 1212, 1192\*.  
Carus asse 1196; aurichalco contra  
1893.  
Cases, *general use of*, 1018—1020;  
*summary of distinctions* 1076—  
1079.  
Castris habere 1717\*.  
Casu, 'by chance' 1236, 1441\*, 1599  
fin.\*  
Causa dandi, 'the dative case,' &c.  
1297.  
Cave facias 1608; cavere, 'beware  
of' aliquem 1220; ab aliquo 1345\*,  
1651\*; 'take precautions for' ali-  
cui 1393b\*; 'give security in' ali-  
qua re 1218; id ut ne fiat 1777\*;  
quo ne plus &c., 'prescribe the  
maximum &c.', 1634; *with perf.*  
*infin.* 1371a.  
Causā, *with gen.* 1244, 1280, 1052\*;  
*with gen. gerund* 1115 (2), 1720\*;  
[supposed by some to be omitted with  
genitives in 1286, 1288;] mea causa  
'for my sake' 1535 a\*; 'for all  
I care' 1668\*.  
Causæ esse *Pref. p.* xxxviii; quid est  
causæ cur 1762; quā 1768; hæc  
est causa quominus 1644; ut 1696.  
Causor velle 'profess (as a reason) to  
desire' 1283\*.  
Cautio alicujus 'a mode of guarding  
against' 1312; cautio est ne 'I must  
take care lest' 1400, 1652.  
Cautost opus 1253.  
Cedere 'withdraw from,' *with abl.*  
1262; bonis 1399\*; ex Italia 1399\*;  
ab aqua 1670\*; de sede 1704\*;  
*with dat.* 'yield to' 1040\*, 1061  
(p. 25)\*, 1593\*; 'turn out,' 'hap-  
pen,' impune 1745\*; secus 1488\*.  
Cædo, *parenthetical* 1761; *with accus.*  
1120 a, 1190\*, 1535 a\*, 1541\*.  
Celare aliquem aliquid 1122, 1371\*;  
de aliqua re 1125; celatum me 'that  
I was kept in ignorance' 1356.  
Cenatus 1848\*; esse 'get supper over'  
1371.  
Censeo faciendum 1399, 1541 fin.\*;  
rem faciendam 1444; me malle  
1101\*; senatui placere 2175\*; edici  
1167 (3); oportere 1175\*; facias  
1606, 1541 fin., 1779\*; ut faciant  
1457\*;  
censendi causa 'for the review'  
1394; censeri 'be assessed at' 1229;  
'be valued for' 1228; *with acc.* 'have  
entered against one' 1126 (2), 1127.  
Centesimis (sc. usuris) 1970\* (*cf. Vol.*  
*I. p.* 450).  
Cernere acutum 'have sharp sight'  
1096.  
Certe 1704\*, 2175\*, &c.  
Certiorum aliquem facere rei 1332.  
Certo 2292\*; discernere 'decide for  
certain' 1618\*.  
Certum est, *parenthetical* 1607; dicere  
1355.  
Cesso, *with inf.* 1611\*, 1642\*; ab  
opere 1707c.  
Ceteri, *general use* 2295, *cf.* 2056;  
ceteri præter 2066; cetera 1102,  
1209\*, 1744 (p. 326); ceterum  
2209, 2210.  
Ceui, *with subj.* 1580.  
Chiasmus 1051.  
Cibatui esse, *Pref. p.* xxxix.  
Cibo esse, *Pref. p.* xxxix.

- Cingor *with acc.* 1126, 1127.  
 Circa, circum, circiter, *general use of* 1859—1869; *circa, with gerund* 1378; *circum undique* 'from all sides' 1859.  
 Circuitu 'in circumference' 1209.  
 Circumcirca 1859.  
 Circumdare aliquid alicui 1126 (2)\*; aliquem aliqua re 1120 b, 1121.  
 Circumducere 'cheat' 1869; aliquem aliqua re 1212; 'lead round' aliquem aliquid 1106 b.  
 Circumfundere 'surround' 1121; 'throw around' 1144.  
 Circumjectui 1383, *Pref. pp.* xxxiii, xxxix.  
 Circumire orbem 1535 a.  
 Circumvenire 'come round' i.e. 'cheat' 1691\*.  
 Cis, *general use of*, 1870—1872; 2179\*.  
 Cito 'readily,' citius 'sooner' 1540; dicto citius 1270; citius quam 1676, 1675.  
 Citra, *general use of*, 1870—1876; 2183\*.  
 Citro 1870, 2178\*; ultro citroque obligatio 2185; *comp.* 2306 c.  
 Cladi esse, *Pref. p.* xxxix.  
 Clam, *use as adverb* 1878; *with accus.* 1879; *with abl.* (doubtful) 1877.  
 Clamore 1239.  
 Clanculum *as adverb* 1878; *with accus.* 1879.  
 Classicum canere 1097; classica 'trumpets' 1097.  
 Co- *in composition* 1886 *fol.*  
 Cœpit, cœptum est, *with pass. infin.* 1355, 1422.  
 Cogito plura, 1779\*; *with inf.* 1344, 1422\*; id te esse 1533a\*; liberatum te 1748\*; *with dep. question* 1612; mecum 1711\*.  
 Cognosco hinc hæc fieri 1777\*.  
 Cogo *with inf. and personal object* 1381, 1750\*; cogor pugnare 1353; cogendus id sum 1094.  
 Collective nouns *with plural verb* 1434.  
 Colloquio dies, locus, &c. 1156.  
 Com-, *see* Cum.  
 Comedere aliquem 1629\*.  
 Comitatus *with abl.* 1220.  
 Comitia consulibus creandis 1156; augurum creand. 1157; comitiis 'at the comitia' 1382 a.  
 Commendationi esse, *Pref. p.* xxxix.  
 Comminiscor habere, 1594\*.  
 Comminus pugnare 1664\*.  
 Committere ut 1778\*.  
 Commodare alicui omnibus rebus 1694\*.  
 Commodum tuo 1244, 1694\*; per commodum tuum 2037; commodum est alicui 1114 b\*, 1511\*, 1741\*.  
 Commodum 'just' (of time) 1458\*; cum (subj.) 1722.  
 Commonefacio *with gen.* 1332.  
 Communicare aliquid cum aliquo 1145 (p. 61).  
 Communis, *with gen.* 1280 bis; *with dat.* 1281; alicui cum aliquo 1281, 1650\*.  
 Comparatives *used absolutely*; asperius 1623\*; longius 1605\*; *comp.* ocius 1613\*.  
 Comparison: *measure of excess expressed by abl.* 1204; *by adverbial accus.* 1203; *by longe* 1203: *standard of, expressed by abl.* 1266—1272, 1273; *by quam after adj. in comp. degree* 1022, 1267—1275: *with correlative adj. and adv.* 1635—1643; *with cum...tum (of two actions), ac, tamquam* 1581; quasi, ceu, veluti, &c. 1580; (majora) quam quæ 1682; quam ut 1700; potius quam 1676, 1677; quam ut 1678; præquam, proquam 1645; præut 1707; proinde, sic, &c....ut 1707 *fol.*  
 Compendi facere 1307.  
 Compensare voluptatem cum labore, 'set the pleasure against the toil' 1392\*.  
 Comperio cognatam esse 1457\*; compertus *with gen.* 1326.  
 Competit alicui actio 'has a right of suing' 2183\*.  
 Complacitus alicui 2263\*.  
 Complere, *with gen. or abl.* 1335; *with abl.* 1578\*.  
 Completeness of action *expressed by perfect tense* 1450—1454.

- Componere 'match' 1145 (p. 61).  
 Compos voti 1314; urbis 1534\*.  
 Compositio 'as agreed on' 1254; ex composito 1941.  
 Conari facere 1533 aa\*.  
 Conatus erumpendi *and* ad erumpendum 1313.  
 Concedere, *with inf. and dat. pred.* 1357; tibi ut disseras 1541\*, 1671\*; conceditur dicere 1873\*.  
 Conceptis verbis 1237.  
 Concession expressed by conditional sentence *with* si, si maxime, etsi, &c. (subj.) 1560; (ind.) 1561; *by* ut, ut non (*consecutive subj.*) 1706; *by* ut, ita...ut (ind.) 1707 b, c, d; *by* rhetorical command (subj.) 1620; *with* sane, fortasse, &c. 1622; *with* quamvis 1624; *with* modo 1626; *by* direct assertion (ind. or imp.) *with* sane, quidem, fortasse 1621; quamvis 1627; modo 1629; *with* licet, licebit 1625; *by* cum, cum tamen (subj.) 1730—1732; (ind.) 1727, 1731; *by* quamquam 1697; quamquam, etsi, &c. *in independent sentence, 'and yet'* 2215.  
 Conciliare, derivation of 1984.  
 Conclamatum est, *as signal for marching* &c. 1457\*; ad arma 1422 (p. 176), 1818\*.  
 Concutior, middle voice 1553 fin.\*  
 Condecere *with accus.* 2293\*.  
 Condemnare *with gen. of charge* 1324; *of penalty* 1325; dupli 1190; *with accus. of penalty* 1199; ad bestias 1199; *with dat. of creditor* 1199.  
 Condicione 1228; condicionibus 'on conditions' 1239; in eam conditionem dare 2289\*.  
 Condition expressed by subordinate clause *with* si, nisi, ni (ind.) 1533, 1561—1579; (subj.) 1532; 1560—1578; typical examples 1518—1521; use of subj. tenses 1530; *by* si without verb 1439, 1441, 1563; *by* subordinate clause without any particle (ind.) 1553; (imper.) 1557; (subj.) 1552—1556; *with relative adjective (ind.)* 1559; (subj.) 1558; *by clause with absque* 1556; *with* quasi 1580; *with* dum 1668; *with* ut 1706; *by a word or phrase* 1534; *by ablative of circumstances* 1240—1250.  
 Condition suppressed 1536—1546 reported 1750, 1752, 2133\*; expressing a thing to be done 1754; or to be ascertained 1754, 1755.  
 Condonare aliquid aliquem or alicui 1125.  
 Conducere 'hire,' *with abl. of price* 1198; *with gerundive Pref.* 1. lxxvi.  
 Conferre se Romam *betake oneself o* Rome 1111, 1229\*; iter 1108\*; quo 1113.  
 Confestim 1878\*.  
 Conficientissimus *with gen. of object* 2122\*.  
 Conficio me mærore 1744\*; conficiat venisse tempus 1351.  
 Confidere *with dat.* 1134; *with ab.* 1228; see 1229.  
 Conjugatio periphrastica (*so called*) *with perf. part.* 1453; *with fut. part. (and indic.)* 1494; (ind. *with conditional subj.*) 1520, 1570; (subj.) 1521, 1572; (inf.) 1784.  
 Conjunctio sua 'union with him,' 1315; Cæsaris 1318.  
 Conjunction, definition of 1006; general use 1022, 1026; copulative 2194—2203; adversative 2208—2215; disjunctive 2216—2220; negative 2235—2242.  
 Conjunctive, see Subjunctive.  
 Conjunctus *with dat.* 1142, 1215; *with abl.* 1216; cum aliquo 1143.  
 Connexive adverbs 1005, 1031.  
 Consciscere mortem sibi 1768\*, 2264\*.  
 Conscius alicui facinoris 1314.  
 Consecutio temporum, general rules for 1509—1517, 1523—1527.  
 Consecutive sentences, Chap. xxii 1678 foll., also 1524; *with subordinate conditional sentence* 1521, 1568, 1572; *as equivalent to a conditional clause* 1706.

- Consequor ut (*subj.*) 1899\*.  
 Consilium capio *with inf.* 1345; *with gen. gerundive* 1395; meo consilio 1246, 1442\*; consilio '*with judgment*' 1236; '*of design*' 1441\*; in consilio, '*in council*' 1457\*.  
 Consensio *with gen. gerundive* 1395.  
 Consensu 1239, 1389.  
 Consimilis *with dat.* 1725\*.  
 Consistere, *how used* 1217.  
 Consolationi esse *Pref. p.* xxxix.  
 Consors *with obj. gen.* 1300.  
 Conspectus oculorum '*power of seeing*' 1721 *fin.*\*  
 Constare '*cost*' *with abl.* 1198; '*be composed of*' 1218, 1217, 2295\*; auribus '*have the full use of hearing*'; non constat mihi *with dep. question* '*I am not clear*' 1612\*; constat laudari disertum 1668\*.  
 Constituo subeundam condicionem 1677\*.  
 Consuetudine '*according to custom*' 1236.  
 Consulere aliquem 1319; aliquid 1319; aliquem aliquid 1125; alicui 1134; male suis rebus 1558 *fin.*\*; consulum (esse) volo 1304, 1402; consultum videtur 2091\*; boni consulere 1191.  
 Consulibus *as note of the year* 1180, 1181.  
 Consultatio nullast '*no time for deliberation*' 1400.\*  
 Consulto '*purposely*' 1253.  
 Consultus *with gen.* 1316, 1319.  
 Contemptui esse *Pref. p.* xxxix; 2055\*.  
 Contendere suffragio de principatu 1533 a\*.  
 Contingere alicui 1717\*.  
 Continere me risu 1393; contineri '*be contained in*' *with abl.* 1174; virtute 1704\*; quæ solo continentur 1177; '*kept in by*' metu 1698\*; contentus *with abl.* 1216; paucis 1554\*; modicis 1570\*.  
 Continuo (*adv.*) 1253, 1633\*, 1669\*.  
 Contra, *general use of* 1889—1899; *with dative* 1893; *sometimes subjoined to noun* 1805; contra ac 1581, 1779\*, 1894; contra aspicere 1890; contra auro 1893; contra esse 1895; contra ea 1896, 1897; contra pugnare 1745\*; contra quam 1894; quod contra 1896, 1897; quem contra dicit 1038; quem contra venit 1262\*.  
 Contrarius ac 1996\*.  
 Contumacia '*obstinately*' 1239.  
 Conturbare 1413.  
 Convenienter naturæ 1142; cum aliquo 1143.  
 Convenire '*assemble*' 1062, 1349\*; '*visit*' aliquem 1120 b, 1671\*; quibus conventis opus est 1740\*; '*sue at law*' aliquem 2185\*; '*agree with*' cum aliquo 1181 *fin.*\*; '*be fit*' esse 1386\*; convenit te interfectum esse '*was (i.e. would have been) right for you to have been killed*' 1371 d; '*be agreed upon*' 1061 b, 1533 a\*, 1567\*, 2151\*.  
 Convivio vigilata nox '*spent in feasting*' 1239.  
 Co-ordinate sentences, definition 1024; kinds of 1026, 1027.  
 Co-ordinate expressions 1021, 2202—2204; eodem iudicium scelere, quo tyrannorum 1280; opera ut minora, sic laboris majoris 1377\*.  
 Co-ordinatim 1021.  
 Copia feriundi 1892\*; *cf. Pref. p.* lxxviii.  
 Copula, expression of logical 1010, 1012.  
 Copulative conjunctions 2194—2203.  
 Coram 1901, 1902.  
 Cordi esse 1260, *Pref. p.* xxxix; 2285\*.  
 Corruptelæ esse *Pref. p.* xxxix.  
 Crassitudine (femoris) '*as thick as a thigh*' 1083.  
 Credere '*trust*' alicui 1134; aliquid alicui 1557\*; '*believe*' omnia (*adv. acc.*) 1656\*; alicui omnium rerum 1334 *fin.*; deos esse 1693\*; mihi crede, *parenthetical* 1535 b\*, 1607, 1748\*; credo 1533 c\*, 1535 a\*, 1607; credor '*I am believed*' 1421; crederes '*one would have thought*' 1544.

- Creduat, creduis (*cf.* 589), 1486, 2240 *a*\*.
- Crescendo accessio 1394 *b*; *cf.* *Pref.* p. lxviii.
- Criminor aliquem 1722\*; aliquem fecisse 1395; *cf.* 1328.
- Crimine eodem &c., *abl. of circumstance* 1323; *cf.* 1327; crimini esse *Pref.* p. xxxix.
- Cuicuiusmodi 1311, 1168\*.
- Culpæ esse *Pref.* p. xxxix.
- Cultui esse *Pref.* p. xxxiii.
- Cum (quom, quum) 1499; *of time, general use of* 1710, 1709; 1716—1735; *typical examples* 1525; 'whenever' (*subj.*) 1716, (*ind.*) 1717, 1460\*; 'when' (*subj.*) 1720, 1468\*, (*ind.*) 1721, 1468\*; 'to the time when' (*ind.*) 1723; 'because' (*ind.*) 1725; 'whereas,' 'since' (*subj.*) 1726; 'in that' (*ind.*) 1729; 'although' (*subj.*) 1730, (*ind.*) 1731; 'and then' (*ind.*) 1733; *with histor. infin.* 1733, 1359; *as relative adverb, fuit (tempus) cum &c., 'during which' (subj.)* 1684, 1686, (*ind.*) 1685, 1687. *in subsequent clause (subj.) with interea, præsertim &c.* 1722, 1728, 1732; (*ind.*) *with subito, interea, &c.* 1733, 1460\*; *cum diceret 'saying as he did' 1722; cum primum (subj.) 1720, (ind.) 1721, 1723; cum maxime 1641; cum tamen (subj.) 1722, (ind.) 1727; cum quidem (subj.) 1732, 1842\**; *cum...tum in comparing two actions &c. (subj.) 1734, (ind.) 1735; tum...cum 'at the time when' 1721, 1358\*; cum...tum 'as well as' 1473\*; nunc cum (subj.) 1730, 1726, (ind.) 1731, 1721; hei mihi cum (ind.) 1632.*
- Cum 'with'; *general use of* 1880—1888; *in expressions of manner, dress, &c.* 1235; *after communis* 1281; *communicare* 1145; *discrepare, discordare* 1137; *secum agitare* 1716\*; *cogitare* 1711\*; *habere* 1135; *esse (mihi tecum)* 1152, 1885; *par* 1281; *cum octavo, decimo &c., 'with (the seed?) the eighth, tenth,' &c., i. e. 'eightfold,' 'tenfold' 1823; cum eo ut 1650, 1884; quod 1884: two nouns joined by cum may have plural predicate 1437.*
- Cumulare *with abl.* 1216.
- Cuneis 'in wedges' 1236.
- Cupio esse (*cf.* 1344) 1365, 1617\*: *me esse* 1351; *me conventum* 1402; *ego sum bellum cupiens* 1683\*.
- Cur *in dependent question* 1465\*; *quid fuit causæ cur* 1762.
- Curâ et cogitatione 1239.
- Curæ esse 1669\*, *Pref.* p. xxxix.
- Curare aliquem 1616\*; *aliquid* 1760\*, 1763\*; *aliquid faciundum* 1401, 1258\*; *aliquid factum* 1402; *facere* 1344; *quid faciat* 1532 *a*\*; *cura ut (subj.)* 1495, 1779\*, 2288\*.
- Currere *with accus. of obj.* 1120 *c*; *cognate accus.* 1100.
- Curriculo 1236.
- Cursu 'at full speed' 1236, 1389.
- Damnare *with penalty in accus. (pecuniam)* 1199; *in dat. (morti)* 1199; *in locative (quantum)* 1190; *quindécim millibus* 1073\*; *in abl. (morte)* 1200; *in gen. (capitis)* 1325; *with place of penalty in acc. with ad* 1199; *with creditor in dative* 1199; *with charge expressed by genitive* 1324; *by crimine* 1323 *a*; *by scelere* 1229; *by de aliquo* 1323 *b*.
- Damnas esto 1190\*, 1603\* (*p.* 261).
- Damnationi esse *Pref.* p. xl.
- Damni infecti promittere, 'promise to be answerable for damage not sustained (but expected)' 1324; *damni facere* 1307; *damno esse* *Pref.* p. xli.
- Dare, *with predicative dat.* 1162, *Pref.* p. xxix; *with acc. of gerundive* 1401; *of past part.* 1402; *with infin. as object* 1344; *with cognomen* 1064; *dono* 1162; *donum* 1161; *doti* 1162; *dotem, dotis, in dotem* 1161; *fœnori, in fœnus* 1163; *frenos* 1599\*; *se in fugam* 1962; *medias in acies* 1719\*;

in lectum (dari) 1102\*; litteras alicui ad aliquem 1260\*, 1818; malum 1757\*; mancipio 1243; nomen dare ad 1821; (noxæ dedere *not* dare 1163, *Pref. p. xlix*); nuptum 1114, 1108\*, 1379; operam alicui 1092\*; dis placandis 1382; sermoni 2252\*; operam ut 1638; pessum 1112; pignus ni 1752; potui 1161, 1383; *Pref. pp. xxxiii. l.*; pugnam 1100; quæstioni servos 1143; terga 1973\*; turbas 1067\*; venum 1112; verba (q. v.) 1120, 1460\*; verborum quicquam, 1460\*; dabam (*opposed to* dedi) '*I offered*' 1454; *so* dares '*had you offered*' 1552; datur '*it is possible*' 1637\*: sic datur '*there you catch it*' 1421.

*Dative, general use of* 1130 *and note; compared with other cases* 1076—1079; *use of gerund* 1382; *of stems in -tu* 1383; *use for genitive* 1154; animos ducibus accendere 1492\*;

*expressing agent* 1146, 1397, 1400; *creditor* 1199; *indirect object* 1132—1156; *local relations* 1144; *person interested* (dativus ethicus) 1150, 1118\*; *person judging* 1148; *person possessing* 1152; *place (?) to which* (Orco) 1144, 1484\*; *purpose, comp.* 1156—1162, *Pref. p. xxxiv*; *work contemplated* 1156.

*Predicative dative* e.g. curæ, cordi est 1158—1162, *Pref. pp. xxv—lvi*.

*Dative after, or in special relation to, various words; (specimens in* 1131, *but see* 1132): e.g. abesse 1152; acceptum referre 1134; accipere 1143; accomodatus 1142; addicere 1143; adequare 1144; adicere 1532b\*; adjungere 1535d; admoveere 1142; adspargere 1647\*; advorsum 1838; affigere 1410\*; affinis 1281; agere gratias 1443\*; amicus 1142; antecellere 1140; anteponeere 1140; apponere 1163; appropinquare 1094\*, 1720\*; aspici 1146; assentiri 1093 (p. 39) fin.\*; 1533aa\*, assuetus 1215; auditus est 1146; auferre 1134; auscultare 1603\*; auscultatio 1400; bonus

1443\*; canere (receptui) 1157, 1345; circumdare 1126 (2)\*; circumfundere 1144; comitia habere, &c., 1156; commodum est 1114b\*; communis 1281; conferre 1306\*; confidere 1134, 1229; conicere 1144; conjunctus 1142; consulere 1134, 1598\*; contra 1893; convenienter 1142; credi 1422; dare 1162; debere 1134; decemviri 1156, 1294\*; decernere 1553\*; dedere 1143, 1163 (noxæ); deesse 1047\*, 1212\*; deligere 1156, *Pref. p. xlii*; denegare 1553\*, dicere (diem) 1134, 1720\*; dicto audiens esse 1163; dies 1156; difficilis 1383a; discolor 1137; discordare 1136; discrepare 1136; dispar 1137; displicere 1545\*; diversus 1137; dolet 1152; ducere (despicatui) 1162; ecce 1150 *cf.* 1128; eripere 1220\*; esse 1152 (male, bene, &c.) 1153; (solvendo) 1156, 1382; (mihi exitio) 1160; excusare 1144; expensum ferre 1134; exequias ire 1114\*; extorquere 1140; extrahere 1144; facere 1223 (modum, finem, &c.), 1154, 1155; (bellum), 1571\*; facilis 1142; familiaris 2192\*; favere 1422\*, 1429\*; fidere 1229; fides? 1402; flebilis 1146; fretus 1217; gratulari 1120\*; gratus 1134; habere (sibi) 1134, (bene mihi) 1153, (quæstui) 1162; habilis 1382; hei 1152; heres 1154; idem 1142, 1143; ignoscere 1163; imminere 1666\*, 2146\*; incidere 1142; incidere 1155\*; includere 1144; incutere 1492\*; indere 1059; indulgere 2182\*; inesse 1062, 4\*; infestus 1060\*; inlacrimari 1130; inmolare 1138; inopinata 1545\*; inperare 1140; inpertire 1382; inponere 1144, 1051\*; insidiari 2149\*; insidias dare 2175\*; insinuare se 1898\*; insitus 1069\*; instillare 1546\*; intemptatum est 1146; intentus 1142; interdicere 1134; interjacere 1144; intertrahere 1486\*; invidere 1331; inrurere 1144; inutilis 1382a; jucundus 1134, 1467\*; iudicium 1156; junctus 1215;



- juxta 2015; libet 1494\*; licet 1357; locus 1156; mederi 1198; minitari 1358\*; miscere 1115; miserabilis 1146; mittere (auxilio, &c.) 1162, 1115(4), (Orco) 1484\*; moderari 1134; molestus esse 1654\*; nocere 1134; nomen esse 1059; nubere 1114\*; obedire 1136; obesse 1640\*; obicere 1140; obsequi 1654\*; obsistere 2299\*; obstar 1750\*; obtemperare 1136; obviam 2018\*; occurrere 1711 fin.\*; officere 1389\*; operam dare 1379\*, 1382a; opportunus 1382a, 1383a; par 1142, 1281; paratus 1142; parcere 1134; parere 1136; patere 1143, 1149; permittere 1382; præbere 1134, 1971\*; præstare 'surpass' 1210\*; præsto esse 1134; prævorti 1140, 2088\*; primus 1148; probare 1149; prodesse 1540\*; promptus 1422\*; propinare 1138; purgare 1149; quo 1152, 1357\*; redire 1750\*; relinquere 1142, 1143; respondere 1134; reticere 1134; scripta sunt 1146; servire 1134, 1598\*; similis 1140, 1317; sinister 2201\*; spatium 1281; spernendus 1146; studere 1382a; succedere 1144; succclamare 1649\*; succumbere 1485\*; sufficere 'suffice for' 1143, 1438\*; suffici 'be elected on a vacancy' 1161; suppetias 1114; supplicare 1142; suscensere 1768\*; suus 1142, 1143, 1848\*; temperare 1658\*, 1646\*; tempus 1156; timere 1143, 1758\*; tribuere 1163; vacare 1134, 1135; vae 1152; videor 1148; -viri (e.g. duoviri) 1156, 1382a; vovere 1751, utilis 1473\*.
- De *general use of* 1903—1912; *in composition with verbs* 1913—1922; *sometimes placed after relatives* 1038, 1912\*; *often used after compounds* 1263; *used of 'matter charged'* 1223; *after audire* 1906; celare, docere, interrogare 1125; mereri 1906; triumphare 1906.
- de cælo servare 1905; de die 1911; diem de die 1907; de inproviso 1443\*; de industria 'designedly' 1907, 1754\*; de integro 1907, 1403\*;
- de lucro 1307, 1908; de nocte 1911; de plano 1905; de proximo 2258\*; de suo 1909; susque deque 1904.
- Debebam, debui colere 1366, *comp.* 1535; *with conditional subj. in protasis* 1520, 1566; debeo vicisse, 'ought to be declared winner' 1561\*.
- Decemviri *with gerundival dat.* 1156, 1294\*.
- Decernere imperium alicui 1553\*.
- Decet *not really impersonal* 1431; quod decet 2287\*; quid me facere decuit 1610\*; erubuisse decebat, 1371c.
- Decidere 'come to terms' de aliquo 1711\*.
- Decipi *with gen.* 1338.
- Decori esse, *Pref. p.* xli.
- Decurrere 'manœuvre' 1065\*, 1918, 2288\*.
- Dedecori esse *Pref. p.* xli.
- Dedere aliquem tormentis 1570\*; noxæ 1163; cruci 1669\*.
- Deesse *with dat.* 1047\*, 1716 fin., 2253\*, 2263\*.
- Defendere 'keep off' ardore 2241\*.
- Deferre rem ad aliquem 1714\*.
- Deflere aliquid 1657\*.
- Deformitati esse *Pref. p.* xli.
- Dehonestamento *Pref. p.* xli.
- Dehortor te scribere 1348, aliquem ab aliquo 1574 (1).
- Dein 1903.
- Deinceps 'in succession' 1754 fin., 1664\*, 2189\*.
- Deinde 'next' 1589\*; *after primum* 1471, 1546\*, 1640\*, cf. 1719\*; 'for the future' 1715\*.
- Delectare aliquem 1641\*; delectari his 1214, 1735\*, 2244\*; dici 1439\*.
- Delectationi esse *Pref. p.* xli.
- Delegare aliquid ad aliquem 1302.
- Deligere domum sibi 1701\*; locum domicilio sibi 1159, *Pref. p.* xlii.
- Delibutus *with abl.* 1216.
- Delinquere majora 1682\*.
- Deliquo esse *p.* xli.
- Demonstrative pronouns often used without substantives* 1061, 1066; *often attracted into gender of substantives predicated* 1068; *used to in-*

- introduce an *infin.* clause 1351; distinguished from one another 2258—2261; position in a sentence 1041.  
 Demum after noctu 1720 fin.\*; nunc 1721\*.  
 Denegare aliquid alicui 1553\*; dare 1553 fin.\*  
 Denique 2207, 2239\*.  
 Deorsum, deorsus 2173, 1940\*.  
 Deponent verbs 1418; meaning of passive inflexions 1419. [See list § 734]  
 Derecto 'straight' 1603 fin.\* (For form see derigere 1914; for case 1253).  
 Derelictui habere *Prof. p.* xli.  
 Deridiculo esse *Prof. p.* xli.  
 Derisui esse *Prof. p.* xli.  
 Desciscere a patria 1691\*.  
 Desiderio esse, *Prof. p.* xli.  
 Desinere with *gen.* 1338; with *accus.* 1341; with *act. infin.* 1180\*; with *pass. infin.* 1344; desitus est vocari 1353.  
 Desipere mentis 1321.  
 Desisto with *inf.* 1344\*, 1667\*, 1672\*; with *abl.* 1696\*.  
 Despectui esse *Prof. p.* xli.  
 Despero pacem 1120a; *cf.* 1750\*; with *infin.* object sentence 1567\*.  
 Despicatui habere &c., *Prof. p.* xli.  
 Despiciens with *gen.* 1314.  
 Destino with *inf.* 2163\*; destinatus operi discendo 1977\*.  
 Desuper 2143, 2146.  
 Deterreo ne permaneas 1587\*.  
 Detrahere alicui 'be a drawback to a man' 1701\*.  
 Detrimento esse *Prof. p.* xli.  
 Deversorium commorandi 1394c.  
 Di melius! 1129; di vostram fidem! 1129; di magni! 1128.  
 Dico esse = dico me esse 1347 (visere dicet) 1403\*; with *infin.* object sentence 1351; dicor esse 1353, *cf. Prof. p.* xxii.; dico venias 1571b\*; dico te peregrinum 1602\*; quid dicis melius 'what do you mean by better?' 1729\*; vestra quæ dicitur vita 'your so-called life' 2211\*; introducing a secondary predicate without affecting its case 1059, 1283, 1659, 1660;  
 dic mihi, *parenthetical* 1761; dicet, dicat, dixerit aliquis 1542, 1545, *Prof. p.* ci—cvi; quod diceret 'because, as he said' 1746, 1558 fin.\*; cum diceret 'saying as he did' 1722; audiui cum diceret 1724; dico often omitted 1441; dixisse 'the formula dixi' 1347; diem dicere 1134\*; duo milia æris 'as a fine' 1134\*; fide publica 1225; nec recte alicui (= male dicere) 2231; sacramento 1238; sacramentum 1245;  
 dictum ac factum 1485c\*; dicto audiens esse 1163, 2072b\*; dicto citius 1270; dictu dignum 1387; facile, &c., 1388; pudet 1388; opus est 1253.  
 Dies *fem. and masc. see* 1062 (*cf.* 337); 'pay day' 1172\*; colloquio 1156; colloquendi 1157, 1394\*; diem dicere 1134; obire 1721\*; dies noctesque 1090, 1181, 1711\*; *cf.* 1558 fin.\*; die ac nocte 1181, *cf.* 1707c; diebus ac noctibus 1101; *cf.* 1089; die quinti, &c., 1178, 1179; alio die in adjournments 1180; aliquos viginti dies 'for some twenty days' 1605\*; aliquot dies 1607\*;  
 ad diem 'to the day' 1826; ante diem (a. d.) 1443\* [*cf. vol. i. p.* 454]; de die 'in the daytime' 1911; diem de (ex) die 'one day after another' 1907, 1946; in posterum diem 1967; in dies 1970; intra decimum diem, decem dies 2003; per decem dies 'for ten days' 1089, 1473\*; in centum diebus proximis quibus scies poterisque 1603\*.  
 Differre cum aliquo, or ab aliquo, 1263.  
 Difficilis concoctioni, concoctu, 1383; transitu 1068\*, 1716\*; difficile est servare 1682\*.  
 Diffidere with *dat.* 1533d (*p.* 224); with *infin.* object-sentence 1912\*.  
 Dignitati esse *Prof. p.* xlii.  
 Dignus with *abl.* 1202, (*supine*) 1387; with *gen.* or *neut. acc.* 1201; with *inf.* 1361, 1534\*; with *qui and final subj.* 1634; dignius with double *abl.* 1266.

- Dimidius quam 1267; dimidio minoris '(at) half as much' 1188.
- Dis-*in composition* 1923—1928; dis-que tulissent 1817\*; *compounds sometimes have object of difference in dative* 1136, 1137; *rarely a simple ablative* 1263; *sometimes with cum, usually with ab*, 1137, 1263; *matter of divergence in abl.* 1210.
- Discedere a te 1764\*.
- Discessus Arpinum '*departure for Arpinum*' 1168\*; animi a corpore 1686\*; discessu oratorum, 1247.
- Disceptato 1253.
- Disciplinæ esse, *Pref. p.* xlii.
- Discolor, *see* Dis-
- Discordare, *see* Dis-
- Discrepare, *see* Dis-
- Discrĭbere '*classify*' populum 1218\*; '*allot*' jura *ib.*; '*pay away*' argentum 1691.
- Discrucior animi, 1321.
- Discursu 1239.
- Disjunctive conjunctions*, 2216—2220.
- Disjunctive questions* 2255.
- Disputare hoc esse '*maintain*' 1517\*; de aliqua re 1352\*.
- Dissensio reipublicæ '*political differences*' 1318.
- Dissentire cum aliquo *or* ab aliquo 1263; *comp.* 1319; *ab* 1622\*.
- Dissidere animo '*in feeling*' 1210.
- Dissimilis *with dat.* 1539 *fin.*\*.
- Distædet me tui 1686.
- Distance in space, with acc.* 1088; *with abl.* 1087; *in time, with acc.* 1092; *with abl.* 1091.
- Distare duo milia 1086; duobus milibus 1206; alicui 1137; aliquo 1263.
- Diversus *with dat.* 1137; *cf.* 1263.
- Diverticulo passuum, &c., *p.* 103 *fin.*; 2175\*.
- Dives *with abl.* 1212; *with gen.* 1211.
- Dividere aliquos curandos, 1401, 1395\*.
- Dividiæ esse *Pref. p.* xlii.
- Divisui esse 1383, *Pref. p.* xlii.
- Docere aliquem aliquid 1122; aliquem de aliqua re 1125; aliquem tacere 1348; docendus loqui 1349; doceo '*shew*' aliquem fecisse 1110\*; quanti docet, '*what does he charge for lessons?*' 1186; mercede docere 1197; equo '*train in riding*' 1217.
- Documento esse, *Pref. p.* xlii.
- Dolere casum 1120c, 1123; dolet *impersonal* 1431c, 1152\*.
- Dolo 1239.
- Dolori esse, *Pref. p.* xlii.
- Domi tuæ, suæ 1169; domi militiæque, domi forisque, 1168; domo petere, unde domo 1258; domo abire 1686\*; domum, domos abire, accipere '*receive at*' 1108; avertere '*carry off to*'; restituendus 1110; domum ad Ciceronem ire 1111; domum regiam comportare, 1457\*.
- Domicilio deligere 1156, *Pref. p.* xlii.
- Donare aliquem aliqua re 1214; alicui aliquid 1740\*; *with Greek inf.* 1363.
- Donec 1681 *note*; *with subj. pres., imperfect, and, rarely, pluperf.* 1664, 1666; *with indic.* '*so long as*' 1667; *with indic. perf.* '*until*' 1669.
- Donicum 1699.
- Dono dare 1162, 1811\*; *Pref. p.* xlii; *cf. p.* xlviii. s.v. Mancipio.
- Dormire in aurem 1965; dormitur hiemps 1421.
- Doti dicere 1160, *Pref. p.* xlii; in dotem esse *Pref. ib.*; dotem, dotis, dare, &c., 1161.
- Dubitatio adventus '*doubt about the arrival*' 1318.
- Dubito *with inf.* 2232\*; dubitatis quin conferatis? 1378\*; Quis dubitet quin 1538.
- Dubius salutis 1318; non (haud) est dubium quin 1768, 1068\*, 1568\*; in dubium venit *with dep. question* 1758; in dubio est 1764; *see also p.* 274 *note*; dubio procul, procul dubio 2086; haud dubio 1253.
- Ducere despiciatui, &c. 1162; *Pref. p.* xxix; tutelæ *gen.* 1282; omnia hostilia 1646 *fin.*\*.
- Dudum 1721\*; jamdudum 1723.
- Duellum 1751.
- Duint 1708\*.
- Dum *enclitic*; agedum 1579\*; agitedum 1599 *fin.*; dicdum 2253; tacedum 1765\*.
- Dum '*until*' (*subj.*) 1664, (*ind.*) 1669,

1462; 'while' (*subj.*) 1666, (*ind.*) 1663—1667, usually with *pres. tense* 1458, 1461, even in oblique language 1784c; with *plup.* 1491; 'provided that' (*subj.*) dum, dummodo 1668, with ne 1668, 1873\*; 'in consequence of' (*ind.*) 1665.

Dumtaxat 1459, 2181\*, 2214\*.

Dux bello gerendo 1485d\*.

E see Ex.

'Each other,' how expressed in Latin 2305

Eadem 'by the same road' 1176; 'on the same journey' 2175\*; eadem opera 'while doing that' 1257.

Ecastor 2231\*.

Ecce with *nom.* 1081, 1129; with *acc.* 1128; ecce autem 1569 fin.\*, 2211.

Eccillam, eccum (*i. e.* ecce illam, ecce eum) 1128; eccos 1758\*.

Ecquis 2296, 1688\*, 1978\*.

Edepol 1114b\*, 1725\*, 1729\*; with *acc.* 1128; edepol qui 1651.

Edicere ut *subj.* 1848\*; aliquid faciendum, *Pref. p.* lxxvi.

Edocere cerimonias placandosque manes 1401; edoctus aliquam rem 1124.

Efferre aliquid laudibus, 1609; efferri lætitiā 1759\*.

Efficere aliquid esse 1351; te iratum 1533b\*; ut 1700; efficere non potest quin 1702.

Efflictim 1949.

Egenus with *abl.* (*rare*) 1339; with *gen.* 1336.

Egere with *abl.* 1212, 1335, 1634\*, 1714\*; with *gen.* 1334.

Ego expressed 1619\*, 1704\*, 1758\*, &c.

Egredi urbem 1488\*, *comp.* 1121.

Eho 1771 fin.\*.

*Ellipse of special substantive with certain adjectives* 1063—1066; of oculis (limulis) 1761\*; of templum (ad spei) 1280; of sortes 1513\*; of vires (tauri) 1643\*; of canere 1218; of bibere 1217;

of quam after plus, &c., 1273; of si after tanquam, &c. 1580; of verbal predicate 1439—1441;

especially of dico, facio, &c. 1441; in nihil aliud (facit) quam 1441; tantum (verum est) quod 1705; di meliora 1129; with *acc.* of exclamations 1128; of apodosis in wishes o si, &c. 1582; with quid si 1578, 1579; with quam, quam qui, &c. 1637—1641; with quasi, tamquam, &c. 1580, 1583; after quærere, tentare, &c. 1754; *comp.* also 1750, 1752.

Possible ellipse with luci facere 1307; with ambitus or capitis accusare 1327; with meā interest 1285; descensuros pollicentur, *Pref. p.* xxiii.

So-called ellipse of uxor, urbem &c. 1280; of causā 1286, 1283; of pretii cf. 1186, 1187, *Pref. p.* lx; of me, te &c. in dico facere 1347; of est 1442, 1443; of esse 1444; of si 1552, 1553.

Ellum (*i. e.* en illum) 1128.

Emere parvo 1186, 1188; quanti 1186, 1187; pluris, minoris, &c. 1186, *Pref. pp.* lvii—lxi; bene, male, &c. 1197.

Emolumento esse 1160, *Pref. p.* xliii.

Emphasis, effect of, on the position of words in sentence 1048—1052.

En, with *nom.* 1081, 1129; with *acc.* 1128.

Endo 1961, 1963.

Enim 1687\*; in answer 2298\*; position in sentence 1055; at enim 1623; neque enim 2235; non enim 1532c\*, 2292\*.

Enimvero 2210a\*, 2881\*; in answers 2252.

Eo 'I go,' see ire.

Eo 'thither' used also of persons and things 1113; used with *gen.* 1296; 'to such a point' 1568 (2)\*; usque eo, usque ad eo 2189, 2192.

Eo 'by that much': eo...quo 1205, 1643; eo...quantum 1203; 'on that account' eo...quod 1643; eo ipso... quod 2267\*; eo...quo 1228; pro eo ut 1707 b; pro eo...quanti 2075.

Eodem 'to the same place' 1113; recipere 2242\*; eodem loci...est 1296.

Equidem 1460\*, 1609\*, 1693\*, 2096\*, &c.

Equis virisque 1239; equo ire 1716\*; advehi 1174; in equo sedere, ex equo pugnare 1177; ex equis descendere 1779\*.

Eram in apodosis 'should, would, have been' 1520, 1535, 1570; comp. 1656\*; in protasis 1575\*.

Erga, general use of 1929—1932.

Ergo 'therefore,' 'so then,' 1933, 1532 fin.; in answers 2252; 'on account of' with gen. 1934, 1384 fin.\*.

Eripere aliquid alicui 1220\*.

Erubescere, with acc. 1121 c, 1123; with inf. 1344.

Erudire aliquem aliqua re 1222, 2014\*.

Erumpere, with acc. 1121.

Eruptione 'making a sally' 1236.

Esse, use in predication 1012, 1017, 1019; with part. pres. 1074, 1163\*; predication of an adj. or subst. without est, &c. 1009, 1017 a, 1442—1444, Pref. p. xxii; position in sentence 1049, 1707 c.

with dative of ind. obj. e.g. formosa a multis 1148; mihi volenti est 1152, 1153, cf. 1409\*; bene, male, pulchre, est mihi 1152, 1153, 1431 c, 1532 a\*; nulli rei esse 1156, Pref. p. xxxvi.; solvendo, oneri ferendo esse 1156, 1382 b; esui et potui esse 1383, Pref. p. xliii; with nom. in similar expressions 1161, Pref. p. xxviii.

with predicative dative, e.g. bono, curæ, &c. 1160, Pref. p. xxviii, &c. usui 1160, 1383, Pref. p. lv; operæ 1283, 1355\*; with predicate in dat., because subject in dat. 1357, Pref. p. xxiii.

with locative: tanti est 1192, 1193;

with ablative of price 1196; of description 1232, 1311; quo statu sit 1232;

with genitive, e.g. est prudentis, prudentiæ, &c. 1282; suarum rerum esse 1282; conservandæ libertatis esse 1286, 1394, 1157; of description 1308, 1233; meum est 1282, 1656\*; tua indicatiost 1400:

esse pro hoste, &c. 1159, 1627\*; pro damnato 'as good as condemned' 2073; pro me 'on my side' 1621\*; in expectatione 'to be waited for' 1390; in potestatem 1963 with note:

with adverbs 1019, 1020; e.g. bene see above; clam 1878; contra 1895; extra 1954; impune 1642\*; ita 1607\*, 1621\*, cf. 2115\*; palam 2027; præsto 1134; procul 2080, 2083; prope (est ut) 2091; retro 2105; susque deque 1904;

longum est 'it were tedious' 1535; moris 2180\*; ut est 'as in fact he is' 1707 a; ut est, erat, furiosus, &c. 1707 c; est qui, quatenus, cum, &c. (subj.) 1684, 1686, (ind.) 1687; est quod, quid est quod 1686, 1687; est-ne 'is it so?' 2252\*.

Esto 'be it so' in concessions 1621, 1620\*, 1371 c\*.

Esui esse, Pref. pp. xxxiii, xliii.

Et, general use of 2195; 'also' 2198, 1706\*, 1589\*; 'even' (et istinc) 1541\*, (et ferentes) 1697\*; et...et, et...que 2201; et...neque 2241; et is 2259, 2261; et quidem in replies 'True but,' aye and 1622, 2197; et ipse 1065\*, 1068\*.

Etenim 1683\*.

Etiā 'even' 1687\*; 'actually' 1729\*; in questions of surprise 1611, 1730\*; implying an exhortation 1613; quin etiam 1617; vel etiam 1990\*; præterquam...etiam 2062\*; as an affirmative answer 1563, 1564, 2251, 2253;

etiam si, with subj. 1560, ind. 1561, 1533 aa.

Etsi, with ind. 1561; 'and yet' 2215, 1535 a\*.

Evertere aliquem fortunis 2036\*.

Ex, e, general use 1935—1946; in composition with verbs 1947—1953; often used with abl. after verbs of separation 1263; after constare, consistere 1217; use of acc. after compounds of ex 1121; of a divided whole 1291, 1942; of origin 1939; e.g. parents 1265, domicile 126:

- (*p.* 113); *of the vehicle of medicines*, &c. 1945;  
 ex eo numero qui sunt &c. 1061 *b*;  
 ex aequo 1941; ex animi sententia 1940, 1695\*; ex ante præparato 1939; ex asse, *cf.* 1940; ex composito 1941; ex consule 1944; e contrario 2180\*; ex empto 1941; ex equo 1937, 1177, 1779\*; ex fide bona 1752\*, *cf.* 1941; ex integro 1941; ex itinere 1937; ex parte 1941; e plano 'from level ground,' i.e. 'not on the bench' 1937; ex post facto 2045, 2050; e regione 1940; e (or ex) republica 'for the interest of the state' 1086\*, 1400\*, 1940; ex se considerari 'from (i. e. by) itself' (*cf.* ex omni parte) 1380\*; ex senatus consulto 1747\*; ex sententia 1940, 1751\*; ex tempore 1938; e vestigio 1938; ex usu 1941, 2246 *c*\*.
- Exactor artis 1320.  
 Exadversum, exadversus 1837.  
 Exanclare 1949.  
 Excedere acie 1719\*; vita 2015\*.  
 Excidere uxore 'lose his wife' 1695.  
 Exclamare Ciceronem 'to shout out Cicero' 1120; maximum 'at the top of his voice' 1096.  
 Excrucior animi 1321.  
 Excusare me tibi 1120, 1149; aliquid 1323 *c*.  
 Exemplo 'according to precedent' 1236; litteræ hoc exemplo 'a letter in these terms' 1232; esse *Pref. p.* xliii.  
 Exire portu 1719\*.  
 Existimo te posse 1682\*.  
 Exitio esse alicui 1160, 1484\*, *Pref. p.* xliii; exitium esse 1161, *Pref. p.* xxviii.  
 Expellere urbe 2020\*.  
 Experimento *Pref. p.* xliii.  
 Experiri si possumus 1754; utrum (*subj.*) 2034\*; aliquid esse 1659\*; imperium 2290\*; multos expertus casus 1617\*.  
 Expers, with *gen.* 1300, 1043\*; with *abl.* 1303.  
 Expiare scelus in aliquem 1410\*.  
 Explorato ante 1253.  
 Exscidio venire *Pref. p.* xliii.  
 Exsecrari aliquem 1740\*.  
 Expectationi esse *Pref. p.* xliii; in expectatione esse 'be waited for' 1390.  
 Exspecto dum, with *subj.* 1664, 1611\*; with *indic. cf.* 1663, 1642; quam mox (*ind.*) 1760; quid respondeas 1171\*.  
 Exspoliare aliquem aliqua re 1665\*.  
 Exstare litteris 1694\*.  
 Extemplo 1646\*.  
 Extent of action, expressed by *accus.* 1086, 1094.  
 Extersui, *Pref. pp.* xxxiii, xliii.  
 Extorquere aliquid alicui 1140, 1572\*; ex aliquo 1141.  
 Extorris, with *abl.* 1212, 1211.  
 Extra, general use 1954—1960; jocum 'without joking' 1958; noxam 1958; noxiam 1729\*; numerum, ordinem, sortem 1958\*; extra redhibitionem 'not matter for rescission of purchase' 1958\*; extra quam 1959; extra ea 1960.  
 Extrahere aliquid alicui 1144; ex aliquo 1145.  
 Extremo anno 'at the end of the year' 1295.  
 Extrinsecus 2117.  
 Exuere aliquem aliqua re 1212, 1211; exui castris 1568 *fin.*; exutus pedem vinclis 1126 (1).  
 Fabiâ, of the Fabian tribe 1264 *fin.*  
 Facere aliquid alicujus, 'make something a man's property' 1282, 2075 *fin.*\*; aliquid alicui 2279\*; adversus ea, 'transgress these rules' 1603 *fin.*\*; æqui boni 1191; certiore rei 1332; compendi 1307; de me 1912; dicionis alienæ 1282; exheredem 1486\*; finem rogandi 1669\*; sollicitudinis 1155; finem orationi 1155; follem me, 'make me into a ball' 1579\*; lucri 1317; ludos me, 'make sport of me' 1120, 1707 *c*\*; ludos mihi, 'make sport for me' 1120; mecum, 'make on my side' 1413, 1533 *b*\*; missos, 'dismiss' 1402, 1965\*; modum lugendi 1155; quid modi flendo 1154; pluris, minoris 1186, 1187, *Pref. pp.*

- lviii, lxi; palam 2027; prædam aliquid 1073\*; pretium, 'make a bid,' 'set a price' 1400\*; pretium operæ, 'make (i. e. earn) the value of toil' 1281; quid facias huic homini or hoc homine 1223, 1224, 1553\*, 1610\*; recte 2290; recte alicui 1358\*; reliquum 1301; nihil reliqui 1298, 2246 b\*; terunci, 'value at a farthing' 1186; vitulæ (sc. sacra) 1224, cf. 1413:  
 fac sciam 1606; faxo visas 2063\*, but see *Pref. p. ciii note*; fac me ut sciam 1601; face ut deferatur 1616\*; facio ut (subj.) 1700, 1610\*; faxo ne juvet 1303\*; faxo erit 1605; facere non possum, quin 1702; facis humaniter, quod 1701; fac me esse, 'suppose me to be' 1621:  
 quid facto opus est 1255, 1256; quod facto usus est 1255 fin., 1256; factum in answers 2251, 2253; factu, *p. 160 note*; facere omitted in some phrases 1441.  
 Facilis with such constructions as partienti 1142; partiendæ rei 1142, cf. 1383 (difficilis); ad partiendum 1143, 1377, *Pref. p. lxxv*; partitu 1388:  
 facile, 'easily' 1262\*.  
 Facultas with gen. 1037; gen. gerund 1395, 1396\*, 2242\*, 2265\*, *Pref. p. lxxviii*.  
 Fænerato, 'with interest' 1291.  
 Fænorī, or in fænus dare 1251; fænore accipere 1163.  
 Fallere, with participle as sec. pred. 1073; me animi fallit 1321; with gen. 'to cheat of' 1334; non me fallit quin 1768.  
 Famæ esse *Pref. p. xliii*.  
 Familiaris, with dat. 2192\*.  
 Fando audire, 'hear tell' 1239, *Pref. p. lxxv*.  
 Fas est 2037\*.  
 Fastidio esse *Pref. p. xliii*.  
 Fastidiosus, with gen. 1314.  
 Fastidire, with gen. 1328; with acc. 1329.  
 Faucibus, 'by the pass' 1457\*.  
 Favea, 'a lady's maid' 1580\*.  
 Favere alicui 1422\*, 1429\*.  
 Fautor, with gen. 1734\*.  
 Faxo 1486, 1303\*, 1605, 2063\*.  
 Fere qualifying nemo 1569\*; ullus 1729\*; semper 1724\*; eodem 2285\*.  
 Ferox linguæ 1320.  
 Ferre, 'bear,' with inf. object-sentence 1205\*; moleste, with do. 1589 fin.\*; me ortum, 'report me sprung' 1517\*; feror, with sec. pred. 1065\*; præceps amentia 1682\*; ad populum, 'propose' 1648\*; expensum alicui 1134, 1697\*; ferre sumptui 1697\*; mea refert 1285.  
 Fessus aliqua re 1547\*.  
 Fide jubere, promittere 1245; jussor 1245; fide publica dicere 1245; fide credi, fidei commissum 1143; di vostram fidem 1129; fidem habere alicui 1532a\*; fides pelago? 1402\*.  
 Fidere with abl. 1228; with dat. 1229, 2242\*.  
 Fiducia tua, 'confidence in you' 1315.  
 Fieri plurimi 1186; alicujus 1282, 2075 fin.\*; quid fiet mihi 1223; me 1224; de me 1912; fit ut (subj.) 1521, 1700. See also Facere.  
 Fine genus, 'as far as the knee,' qua fini, 'how far' 2165.  
 Finem facere, reperire, &c. alicui rei 1154; alicujus rei 1155, 1574 (2)\*; with gen. gerund 1731\*; tributorum afferre 1516\*.  
 Fingere with gen. of quality 1233; finge me esse eum, 'suppose me to be him' 1599, 1621; equum ire, 'train a horse to go' 1312.  
 Finitimus with dat. 1720 fin. (*p. 316*)\*.  
 Firmamento esse *Pref. p. xliii*.  
 Firmus ab equitatu, 'strong in cavalry' 1813.  
 Flagitare aliquem aliquid 1122, 1740\*; me ut eloquar 1731\*.  
 Flagitio esse *Pref. p. xliii*.  
 Flebilis alicui, 'causing one tears' 1146.  
 Flere aliquem: cf. flendus Peleus 1570\*.  
 Flocci (non) facio 1186, 1187, 1764 fin.\*; non existumo 1611\*.

Florere aliqua re 1212.  
 Flumen in appos. to Druentia 1730\*;  
 Rhenus 1813\*.  
 Foras, foris 1169; foras locare 1110;  
 cenare 1728\*.  
 Fore ut amem, amer, &c. 1369, 1784,  
 2277\*; fore with past part. 1369.  
 Formidini esse *Pref. p.* xliii.  
 Forsit 1331\*; forsitan with subj. 1766,  
 with ind. 1767.  
 Fortasse riserit 1545; dices 1547; dicet  
*Pref. p.* cii; in concessions 1621—1623.  
 Fortassis with ind. 1541, 1545.  
 Forte 1239; si forte 1573, 1754\*;  
 nisi forte 1569, 1573.  
 Fortuito 1253.  
 Fortunæ esse *Pref. p.* xliii.  
 Fractus membra 1127.  
 Fraude 1236, 2264\*; sed fraude sua,  
 'without risk to himself' 2122; fraudi  
 esse 1160, *Pref. p.* xliv.  
 Frequens esse ad signa 1752\*.  
 Fretus with abl. 1216; with dat. 1217.  
 Frontem tutus 1127.  
 Fructui esse *Pref. p.* xliv.  
 Frugi 1160, 1357\*, *Pref. p.* xliv.  
 Frui with abl. 1226; with acc. 1223.  
 Frunisci with acc. 1223.  
 Frustra esse *Pref. p.* xlv\*; concipere, properare 1642\*.  
 Frustratui aliquem habere *Pref. p.* xlv.  
 Fuas 1390.  
 Fugiens vinum 'wine growing flat' or 'spoiling' 1558\*.  
 Fui amatus different from sum amatus 1453, and note (*p.* 188), 1473; fueram, with past part. 1449, 1453; with future part. 1494; fuero with past part. 1449, 1453; with future part. 1494; fuerim, fuisset, with fut. part. in dependent hypothetical sentences 1521, 1572; fuisse, with fut. part. 1784; sometimes omitted 1444.  
 Funditus everti 1685\*; tollere 1692\*.  
 Fungi, with abl. 1226; with accus. 1223, 1930\*.  
 Future compl. indic. 1480—1485; in conditional protasis without si 1553; after cum 1721; of repeated actions

1717; infin. 1369. For subj. compl. fut. compare 1507, and see under Perfect Subj.:

future participle active with verb esse in indic. 1494, 1520; in subj. 1507, 1521, 1526:

future simple indic. 1464—1466; in conditional sentence sometimes interchangeable with pres. subj. *p.* 220 note; in 2nd pers. used for imper. 1589, 1591; videbimus 1595:

future imper. 1495, 1597, 1603; future infin. 1369:

future in -so, 1486; also 623; faxo 1605; si capso 1571 a; respexis 1669\*; ni liberasso, enicasso 1575; nunquam dixis, induxis 1602; ne excussit 1652; surrepsit 1642.

Futurum esse ut 1369; fuisse 1784.

Gaudeo gaudium 1100; munere 1727\*; ruinis 1532 aa\* (*p.* 222); Brutum fuisse 1626\*:

gaudio esse *Pref. p.* xlv.

Gender, use of inflexions of 1060—1062; attraction of gender 1068.

Genitive (see also Locative):

general use 1020 b, 1276 and note; difference from other cases 1078, 1079; use of gerundial genitive 1394—1396; expressing age 1310; crime 1324; definition, kind, material 1302—1306, cf. 1299 fin.; divided whole (partitive genitive) 1290—1298; object direct 1312—1316; remoter 1318; secondary 1322—1338; penalty 1325; possessor 1278, cf. 1152; place where (locative) 1168; price, value 1186, 1187; purpose 1157, 1286, 1288, 1394; quality or description 1233, 1308, 1309; interchangeable with dative 1154, 1155, 1157, 1317; with abl. comp. 1200 with 1325; 1210 with 1320; 1211, 1309; 1334—1339; with accus. 1328—1333; with accus. and ad 1313; with omission of uxor, filius, &c. 1280; rare after predicative dative, *Pref. p.* xxx:

dependent on pronoun, as substitute for a noun elsewhere expressed,



*e. g.* quo tyrannorum 1280; hanc laudis 1302; quam annorum nonaginta 1311 (*p.* 129).

*Genitive in various uses, dependent on various words, e. g.:*

absolvere 1324, 1325; abstinere 1338; abundans 1211; abunde 1296; acervus 1304; adfatim 1296; adfinis 1280; adhuc (locorum) 1299; adligare 1324; admonere 1332; adpetens 1314; æmulus 2181\*; æstimare 1186; agere 1324; aliquid 1296; ambiguus 1318; amicus 1280; anquirere 1324; anxius 1318; arbitrato 1246; arbor 1304; arguere 1324; auctor 1152 fin.\*, 1395, 1396; auspicio 1246; casus 1279; causa 1302, &c.; causā 1115 (2), 1280; cautio 1312; certiore facere 1332; classis 1302; coactu 1389; commonefieri 1332; communis 1280; compertus 1326; complere 1215, 1335; compos 1314, 1534\*; condicio (paciscendi) 2289\*; conscius 1314; consensio 1395; consilia 1395; consors 1300; conspectus (oculorum) 1721 fin.\*; constare 1188; constrata 1293; consuetudo 1280; consultus 1316, 1319; copia 1395, 1396; credere 1334; cunctatio 1312; damnare 1324, 1325; decipi 1338; deprecator 1312; desinere 1338; desipere 1321 fin.; despiciens 1314; deversorium 1394 *c.*; dies 1157, 1394 *a.*; dignus 1201; disertus 1320; dissensio 1318; diverticulo 1248 *note*; dives 1211; dolor (injuriae) 'arising from' 1545 (*p.* 233); dubitatio 'doubt respecting' 1318; dubius 1318; ducere 1282; edax 1314; egere 1334, 1335; emere (pluris) 1186; eo. 1296; ergo 1934; esse 1282; exactior 1320; experts 1300; extracta (*plur.*) 2144; extremum 1292; facere 1306; facultas 1037\*, 1395; fallere 1334; fastidire 1328; fautor 1734\*; ferox 1320; fertilis 1443\*; fessus 1357; fieri 1282; fine 2165; finis 1155; genus 1302; gereus 1314; gratiā 1115 (2), 1280; habere (pensi) 1300; hoc 1296; id

(ætatis) 1092; ignarus 1745 fin.\*; imber 1304; inimicus 1336; imperium 'command over' 1318; implere 1215, 1334, 1335; impotens 1314; impunitas 1318; incertus 1318; incuriosus 1665\*; inductus 1316; ingens 1320; inimicus 2277\*; injussu 1246; inops 1336; insimulare 1324; insons 1326; instar 1280; intemperantia 1565\*; interest 1284, 1285; interritus 1318; invidere 1330; ira 1409, 1227\*; irritus 1320; istuc (ætatis) 1092; judicari 1325; iudicium 1156\*; lacrimæ (sunt rerum) 1433\*; lassus 1337; lepidus 1320; levare 1334; lex 1157; liberare 1324; lites 1324; locus 1157; ludus 1304; majores 1273; manifestus 1321, 1326; maturus 1320; maximè 1294; maximus 1290; medium 1242; meminisse 1332; memor 1314; minor (capitis) 1320; minores 1273; minime (gentium) 1299; mirari 1330; misereri 1328; misericordia 1409; missu 1389\*; modicus 1320; modus 1155, 1395; monstrum (hominis) 1299; mos (impigræ linguæ) 1545\*; multi 1290; naufragus 2277\*; nemo (omnium) 1688\*; nihil 1296; nomine 1244; nudus 1211 (*p.* 89); numerus (trecentorum) 1302; (equeorum) 1304; occultus 1320; omnia (retinendæ dominationis) 1394; onustus 1337; opinio 'reputation for' 1318; opus 1225; orator 1310; orbus 1211 (*p.* 89); otium 1395; pænitet 1328; par 1280; particeps 1281, 2192\*; partim 1294, 2293; patiens 1314, 1730\*, 2159\*; periculum 1315; peritus 1314; permisu 1746\*; piget 1328; pigritia 1312; plenus 1336; pondo 1209; popularis 1117\*; possessio 1312; postulare 1324; potestas 1312, 1396; potire, potiri 1334; prædæ 1304; præsidium (legum 'afforded by the laws') 1545\*; in prætervectione 1963; precatio 1312; pretium 1280; profugus 1318; promittere 1324; proprius 1280; prudens 1314;

prudencia 1316; pudet 1328; pudor 1409, 1053\*; purgare 1324; quid (mulieris) 1296; quidquam 1296; quod 1296; quod (ejus) 1297; rectus 1320; refert 1284, 1285; refertus 1336; regione 1170, 1173; e regione 1940; in rem 1588\*; reminisci 1332; res minus commode gestæ 1686\*; respectu 1389; reus 1326; ritu 2165\*; satur 1336; scelus 1299; secretus 1335; serus 1320; signum 1280; similis 1314, 1317; similitudo 1314 (*p.* 130); socius 1300; solus 1290; spatio 1248, 1280; spernendus 1320; stare 1188; studere 1328; subita 1280; suspectus 1326; tacita 1280; tædet 1328; tantundem 1296; tenax 1314; teneri 1324; tenuis 2162; trepidus 1318; vacatio 1318; vacuus 1533c\*; ubicunque 1294; vectiones 1389\*; venire in mentem 1332; vereri 1328, 1329; vicinus 2285\*; viduat 1211; virtus 1302; ultimum 1296; vocivus 1336; voluntate 1246; voluptas 1428\*; urbs 1302; usus 1225; uterque 1292.

Gentium *after* ubicunque, &c. 1294, 1559\*.

Genus (id, quod, omne) = ejus generis, &c. 1104; quod genus *as for instance* 1103; quo genere 1103, 1232; cujus generis 1103, 1358 (*p.* 146), *cf.* 1308; cujusque generis 2290a; in isto genere esse 1721\*; hoc in genere *'in a thing of this kind'* 1732\*.

Gerens negotii 1075, 1314; gerere morem alicui 1399\*; aurum alicui corbibus 1571\*; rem latrocinii 1488\*.

*Gerund and gerundive: nature of* 1374; *origin of form*, *Pref. p.* lxxxv; *general use of*, 1376; *in ablative (locative and instrumental)* 1384—1386; 1222, 1238, 1250; *of place whence* 1391, 1392; *in accusative* 1377, 1378; *in dative* 1156, 1382; *in genitive* 1394, *with causæ*, gratiæ 1115 (2); (*gerund*) *with plural noun* 1396; *Pref. p.* lxxviii; (*gerun-*

*dive*) *after esse to denote purpose* 1286, 1288:

*in nominative (and oblique accusative)* 1398, 1399; *with agent in dative* ib.; *also* 1146; *notion of obligation*, *Pref. pp.* lxxi—lxxviii.

*Gerund, limitations of use* 1375; *sometimes apparently passive* 1384\*, *Pref. pp.* lxxiii—lxxvii; *use in nominative, &c. with direct obj.* 1298, *Pref. pp.* lxxi—lxxiii; *English gerund*, *Pref. p.* xcii.

*Gerundive formed from deponents*, *Pref. p.* lxxv; *as substitute for gerund: in oblique cases*, *Pref. pp.* lxxvii—lxx; *in nominative*, *Pref. p.* lxxiii; *with agent expressed by abl.* *with ab* 1147, *Pref. p.* lxxiv; *as oblique pred. to object of curare, dare, &c.* 1401, *Pref. p.* lxxvi; *as a mere attribute with meaning of destiny* 1403, *Pref. p.* lxxvii; *with meaning of possibility* 1404, *Pref. p.* lxxvii; *as present part.*, *Pref. p.* lxxviii; *use of form in -bundo with direct object* 1405:

*use of gerundive agreeing with unexpressed antecedent of a relative clause, e.g.* ad sepeliendos 1377; populandis 1585; a violandis 1392; *comp. ad prohibendos, si* 1750 fin.\*

Gignentia *'growing things'* *Pref. p.* lxxvii.

Gladiatoribus *'at the gladiator-show'* 1180, 2173\*.

Gloriæ esse *Pref. pp.* xxxvi, xlv.

Glorior aliquid 1094; aliqua re, *or in aliqua re* 1093.

Gratiam habere alicui *'feel thankful to one'* 1120—1711\*; referre 1147\*; inire apud aliquem 1884; gratias agere alicui *'return thanks to one'* 1147\*, 1443\*:

gratiæ, *with gen. or adj. pron.* 1244, 1052\*; qua gratia *'wherefore'* 1765\*; *with gen. of gerund* 1115 (2); gratiis, gratis 1198, 1239, 1642\*.

Gratis 1253.

Gratulari alicui recuperatam libertatem 1120; de reditu 1721\*; cum venit 1725.

Gratulationi esse *Pref. p.* xlv.

Habere annos decem 'be ten years old' 1185\*; febre 1120; gratiam alicui 1711\*; in gratiam, *p.* 397 *note*; honorem alicui 1725\*; metum 1399\*; in hostium numero 1175; rectam viam ad 'make straight for' 1398\*; susque deque 1904; tecum 1135; tibi 1134, 1599\*:

with *obl. pred. noun* (bellum integrum habeo) 1456\*; with *gerundive as pred. of obj.* (dicendum habui) 1401; with *past part.* (dictum habui) 1064, 1402: with *infin.* (dicere habui) 1345; with *final relative clause* (quæ dicerem habui) 1345, 1468\*; with *predicative dat.* 1162, *Pref. p.* xxix: = habitare 'dwell' 1413:

haberi with *sec. pred.* 1061b; alijus 1061b; iudicium numero 1172.

Habilis tundendo 'for beating' passively 1382\*, *cf. Pref. p.* lxx.

Hactenus 2164; hac...tenus 1588\*.

'Half as much' dimidio minoris, 1188.

Haud, haud 2229, 2231; haud scio an 1764, 2256; haudquaquam 1570\*; neque haud (=neque) 2248.

Hei mihi 1152; hei mihi quom nihil est 1632.

Hem 1120\*; *comp. em* 1114b.

Hercle 1395, 1398, 1532b\*; put between *prep. and its case* 1872; hercule 1540\*; mehercules 1129, 1958\*.

Herctum (or erctum) ciere 'to summon to divide (an inheritance)' 1114; iudicium fam. erciscundæ 1156.

Heres ex deunce 1940.

Heus 1618\*, 2221\*.

Hic distinguished from ille, iste 2258

—2261; 'latter' 1534 *fin.*\*; referring to what is subsequent 2027\*; his quattuor annis 'within four years from now' 1182; hic terror = huius rei terror 1279; hoc præmi 1296; hoc litterarum 1720\*; hoc non dolere 1707d *fin.*\*; hoc ipsum nihil agere 1717\*; hoc pugnatur 1423; hoc luciscit 1431b; præter hanc laudis (sc. mercedem) 1302; quicquid huius 1290; huius (accom-

panied with gesture) of price 1187; hoc noctis 'at this time of night' 1092, 1091; hoc populo 'with a people like this' 1242; quo...hoc with comparatives 1643; *cf.* 1204.

Hic locative of persons, things, &c. 1171.

Hiemabit 'there will be wintry weather' 1431.

Hieme 1178\*, 1180.

Hinc 1807; of persons, things, &c., 1263, *cf.* 1751\*; hinc...inde 2215\*.

Homo frugi 1195, *Pref. p.* xlv; nihili 1195; trium litterarum 1308; multarum imaginum 1310; plebis 2246a\*.

Honorem alicui habere 1725\*, 1745\*; honoris causa nominare 'name with respect' 2052\*; honori esse *Pref. p.* xlv; honore me honestare 1725\*; honore honestiorem 1099.

Horrere with *acc.* 'shudder at' 1123, 1901\*, 1960\*.

Horsum 2175.

Hortamento esse *Pref. p.* xlv.

Hortari milites pauca 1094, 1093; faciant 1606; ut faciant 1371c, 1779\*; ne faciant 1218\*, 1371c\*.

Hospitio patere *Pref. p.* xlv.

Huc of persons, things, &c. 1113.

Humi 'on the ground' 1168; humo 1258.

Hypothecæ esse *Pref. p.* xlv.

Hypothetical sentences (i.e. apodosis of conditional), in subj. 1528—1546, 1552—1562; use of tenses, 1518, 1530; with condition expressed by phrase only 1534; not expressed at all 1536—1542; hypothetical subj. in 2nd pers. sing. ('you' = 'one') 1544; hypothesis in dep. interrog. or consec. sentence 1521, 1568, 1572: ausim 1540; censuerim 1540; cuperem 1536; dicat aliquis 1542, *Pref. p.* ci; mallet 1536; putes, putares 1544; quis dubitet? quis dixerit? 1538; velim, vellem 1536.

Jacere aliqua re 'be overthrown by' 1220.

Jam, in argument, 'then again' 1283\*;

- jam...jam, 'at one time'... 'at another time' 2205; jam diu, jam pridem, jam dudum *with pres. tense* 1460, 1723; *with perfect* 1476 fin.
- Ibi *of persons, things, &c.*, 1153, 1171.
- Ictus femur, 1127.
- Id ætatis, id temporis, 1092, 1684\*; id genus 'of that sort' 1104.
- Idcirco 1868; *answering to quia* 2214\*; *to quod* 1558\*, 2232; *to si* 1533 aa; *to ut* 1868, 1638.
- Idem *general use* 2291—2294; *with dative* 1142, 1143; idem ac 1581; idem et 1897\*; idem = 'at the same time', 'notwithstanding' 1732\*; alter idem 'a second self' 2294.
- Identidem 2263\*.
- Ideo ut *with subj.* 1465\*, 1642\*.
- Idibus, 1180.
- Idoneus qui 1634; alicui rei 2035\*; ad aliquam rem 1610\*.
- Jejunus *with abl.* 1335.
- Igitur, *position in sentence* 1055; *as second, &c. word* 1616\*, 1632 fin.\*; *as first word* 1645 fin.\*.
- Ignarus *with gen.* 1745 fin.\*.
- Ignominie esse *Pref. p.* xlv.
- Ignoscere *with dat.* 1422\*, 1599\*; *with double indirect obj.* 1163.
- Ilico 'on the spot' i.e. 'at once' 1120 a fin.\*.
- Illabi cerebro 1574 (4)\*.
- Ille, *general use distinguished from hic*, istic 2258—2261; 'former' 1534 fin.\*; *with adj. e.g. miser ille* 1772\*; illis quattuor annis 'in four years from then' 1182; ille *of future time* 1684\*, 1685\*; *of something subsequent* 1552\*, 1741\*; ille qui 1533 fin.\*; ille quidem, *in making concessions*, 2259, 2261.
- Illo 'thither' 1108\*.
- Imber lapidum, &c., 1304.
- Immane quantum 1647.
- Imminere spei, 1666\*; urbi 2146\*.
- Immo 2252, 2254, 1619\*, 2184\*; vero 1652\*, 2211; certe 2184\*.
- Immolare aliquid alicui 1138.
- Immunis *with abl.* 1263, 1339; *with gen.* 1336.
- Impedimento esse 1160, *Pref. p.* xlv; impedimentum esse 1161, *Pref. p.* xxviii.
- Impedire aliquid 1604\*; aliquem facere 1348; ne faciat 1535 b\*; quominus faciat 1644.
- Impendio *with comparative* 1204, 1205; *with constare*, 1198.
- Impensæ esse *Pref. p.* xlv.
- Imperare, 'put as a task on one,' alicui aliquid 1140, cf. 1347; alicui agere 1345; ut agat 1648; 'command' alicui 1344; quæ imperantur 1347, 1643; deduci imperantur 1353.
- Imperative, *general use* 1597—1603; *distinction of tenses* 1495; *as apodosis of conditional sentence* 1571; *as protasis of do.* 1557; *used parenthetically* 1607, 1761; *expressed by subj. in orat. obl.* 1783.
- Imperfect indic., *general distinction from other tenses* 1448—1454; *different meanings* 1467—1471; *use in letters* 1468; *after postquam*, 1471; *in hypothetical and conditional sentences* 1533; *in statements of duty, possibility, &c.* 1535.
- Imperfect subjunctive: *general uses* 1507—1510; *in hypothetical and conditional sentences* 1530; *dependent on historical present* 1512, 1514; *in hypothetical sentences, how expressed in orat. obl.* 1784; *in consecutive sentences* 1696.
- Impersonal verbs 1431; *often with infinitive clause for subject* 1355—1357; *passive verbs used impersonally* 1422; *with neuter pronoun* 1423; *impersonal use of passive participle* 1411.
- Impertire aliquid periculis sublevandis 1382a; populo 1557.
- Impingere fustem alicui 1579\*.
- Implere aliquem aliqua re 1216, 1572\*; alicujus rei 1334, 1335.
- Imploro deum fidem 1129.
- Imponere aliquid alicui 1144, 1051\*, 1066\*; *in aliquem* 1145.
- Impune credit alicui aliquid 1745\*; esse 1642\*; includere 1642\*.
- In, *general usage* 1961—1978; *in composition* 1979—1985, 1121; *in with*

*abl. used parallel to dative* 1145; *to simple abl. of place where* 1167, 1175, 1177; *after inesse* 1153; *of a divided whole* 1291, 1972; *tota Italia and in tota Italia* 1173; *of time within which* 1183, 1968; *with accus. of place to which* 1111:

in antecessum dare, 'advance' 1973; in aurem dormire, 'sleep on an ear' 1965; in dies, '(increasing) every day' 1970; in eum diem, 'up to that day' 1990\*, 1967; in expectatione esse, 'be expected' 1390; in incertum decernere, 'decree while this or that was undecided' 1973; in integro, 'untouched' 1975; in noctem, 'till night' 1967; in numerum, 'keeping time' 1973; in ordinem cogi, 'forced into the ranks', i.e. 'to have one's authority set at naught' 1962; in ore, in oculis, 'before the face', 'eyes' 2026\*; in potestatem esse, *p.* 397 note; in rem praesentem venire, 'to come to the spot' 1962; in praesens, in praesentia, 'for the present' 1967, 1968; in praesentiarum 529; in promptu esse, trahere 1390; in quaestione esse, 'be to seek' 1390; in hanc rem arbitri 1592\*; in rem esse, 'to concern the matter' 1973, *cf.* 1755\*; in rem Bacchidis 1588; in parentis re et periculo, 'when it touched his parent's property or life' 1978; in solidum agere, 'bring an action for the whole' 2164\*; in tempore, 'in good time' 1179, 1968; in ea verba accipere, 'to accept on those terms' 1973; invicem, 'in turn' 1973; in usu esse 1390.

Inanis with *abl.* 1183 fin.\*

Inaugurato 1253.

Inaurari aliquem 1588\*.

Incertus, with dependent question 1762.

Incidere huc, 'fall on this expression' 1608\*.

Incitare 1980.

Includere aliquem urbi 1144; in urbe 1145.

Inconciliare 1984.

Inconsulto 1253.

Incultu 1239.

Incuriosus, with *gen.* 1665\*.

Incutere terrorem plebi 1492; pollicem limini 1663\*.

Inde = ea de re 1263; stupor silentiumque inde (= ex stupore ortum) 2056\*; hinc...inde 2215 fin.\*

Indecere 1984.

*Indicative: general use* 1445; *distinction of tenses* 1447—1454; *in statements of duty, power, &c.* 1520, 1535; *of wish* 1587; *command* 1589, (vidēris, videbis) 1593, 1595; *purpose with future participle* 1494, 1570;

*In the following sentences:*

*Causal*, quod, quia, &c. 1745—1749, *comp.* 1701—1705; cum 1725;

*Comparative*, alius ac, idem ac, tam...quam, 1581, 1583; tantus...quantus, tam...quam, sic...ut 1635—1641; eo...quo, quam, 'than' 1643; ut, sicut, ita ut 1707; citius quam 1671—1675;

*Concessive*, 1621—1629; etsi 1561; quamvis 1627; quamquam 1697; ut 1707 *b, c, d*; cum 1731;

*Conditional, in apodosis* 1533; *with subjunctive protasis* 1554, 1556, 1570, 1574; (*indicative*) *in protasis without si* 1553; *with si* 1533, 1561—1579, 1717, 1751—1755;

*Dependent, on infinitive* 1777, 1784*c*; *in orat. obl.* 1797—1799; *on subjunctive* 1779;

*Definitive*, 1681—1691 (*see also below under Relative*);

*Interrogative*, 1609—1619, 1759, 1761; *repeating words of other speaker* 1771;

*Limiting*, 1693—1697;

*Relative*, qui 1633, 1681—1695, 1711, 1741; 'such' 1715; ut qui 1641; quam qui 1641; quippe qui 1711, 1713; quantus 1637, 1693; quisquis, quicunque, &c. 1697, 1717;

*Substantival, with quod* 1701—1705;

*Temporal*, cum 1719—1713, 1733; donec, dum, quoad, quamdiu 1661—1669, 1458, 1784; antequam, priusquam 1671, 1675, 1462; ubi, quoties, simul ac, postquam 1717, 1719;

*Indicative in clauses with faxo* 1605; forsitan 1767; fortasse 1547, 1621; nescio quis 1769; nisi forte, nisi vero 1569; modo 1693; praequam 1645; praet 1707; proquam 1645; prout, pro eo ut 1707; quasi 1583; quo 1643; seu, sive 1563—1567; sunt qui 1687; tantum quod 1705;

*In the following and the like expressions:* dicet aliquis 1545, *Pref. p. cii*; fortasse dices 1547, *Pref. p. ciii*; dico quod sentio 1763; etiam taces? 1613; licet, licebit 1625, 1606; peream si (si non) 1575; quam vis, quam volet 1624; quid ago? adeo? 1609; quid si manebo? 1579; quod dicis 1749; quod facere poteris 1695; quantum in te est, quod ad te attinet 1695; satius est, 'it were better' 1708\*, cf. 1535; videro, viderit 1593, *Pref. p. cvi*.

Indicio esse *Pref. p. xlvi*; indicium esse *Pref. p. xxviii*.

Indico bellum alicui 1058\*, 1064\*; exercitum Romam, 'summon to Rome' 1108; ut convenient 1513.

Indigere with *genitive* 1334; with *abl.* 1335, 1828\*.

Indignor quod spiras 1745; te spirare 1745\*; indignatur se 1546\*.

Indignus with *ablative* 1202; with *genitive* 1201.

Indo nomen alicui 1059.

Indu 1961.

Induco animum, *see under Animum*.

Inducor artus tunicā 1126(1); inductus cornibus aurem 1126(2).

Indulgere, 'concede,' with *acc.* 1123,

Induor faciem 1126(2); indutus with *acc.* 1127(2).

Indutui *Pref. pp. xxxiii, xlvi*.

Inesse, of *mental qualities*, alicui or in aliquo 1153, 1145 (*p. 61*).

Infamiae esse *Pref. p. xlvi*.

Inficior genas 1126.

Inferre deos Latio (*dat.*) 1664\*.

Infestus alicui 1069\*.

*Infinitive: its substantival character* 1160; *its verbal character* 1161;

*use of its tenses* 1364—1368; *special use of perfect tense* 1370—1372; *completed future* 1369; *periphrasis for fut. infin.* 1369;

*use as direct object to a verb* 1344, 1345; *to a verb of saying or thinking* 1347, 1777\* (*putas posse*); *object of thing (besides an object of person)* 1348; *to passive verbs* 1349; *in exclamations* 1358;

*use as primary (direct) predicate or historic infinitive* 1359; *after cum* 1733; *as (primary) oblique predicate (i. e. acc. and infin.)* 1351, 1367; *as secondary (direct) predicate* 1353;

*use as subject or in apposition to subject* 1355, 1532aa\* (*p. 222*);

*use with pronouns like articles (hoc non dolere, &c.)* 1355, 1707d\*, 1717\*; *after substantive* 1346, 1360; *comp.* 1345; *after adjectives* 1361; *denoting purpose* 1115, 1362;

*use with sec. pred.* 1017, *Pref. p. xxii*; *but with no subject expressed* 1357, *Pref. p. xxiii*, 1726\*;

*use in orat. obl.* 1352, 1781; *after cum* 1706; *in questions* 1782, 2132\*, 2151\*; *by attraction* 1784;

*simple infinitive, used after (or with) the following words:* adactus 1932\*; æcum erat 1566; ægrotus 1361; aggrediōr 1344; amo (*scripsisse*) 1848\*; amor 1344; apparo 1733\*; assuefieri 1349; audeo 1344; aveo 2273\*; blandus 1361; causor 1283\*; certum est 1355; cesso 1642\*; cogito 1344; cogor 1353; comminiscor 1594\*; concedo 1357; conceditur 1873\*; consilium capio 1345; conor 1533aa\*; cupio 1365; curo 1344; curro 1362; damnas 1190\*, 1603\*; debeo 1344, 1371a; delector 1439\*; desino 1344; desisto 1344; desitus 1353; destino 2163\*; dico 1347; dicor 1353, 2285; difficile est 1682\*; dignus 1361; disco 1344; do 1345; doceor 1349; dono 1363; enitesco 1344; est 1354; est in animo 1459\*; fingo 1363; habeo 1344; impero 1345; imperor 1353; induco in animum 1344; induco

animum 1771\*; insto 1344; insuesco 1344; intelligor 1353; inter 1363; intermitto 1561\*; introeo 1362; jubeo 1344, 1371*d*; jubeor 1350, 1353; licet 1355, 1357; longum est 1535*a*; maturo 1068\*, 1344; metuo 1771\*; ministro 1345; mitto 1115, 1362; modus 1360; moneo 1345; natus 1363; necesse est 1357; nefas est 1534; nequeo 1611\*; nescio 1344, 1471\*; nolo 1345; obstino 1344; occipio 1611\*; occupo 1344; operæ est 1345; operam do 1345; oportet 1430\*; opus est 1255; parco 1344; paro 1344; pergo 1386\*, 1432 fin.\*; periculum 1360; peritus 1361; piger 1361; possum 1344, 1371, 1520, 1521; prodest 1371*c*; prohibeor 1349; proporo 1422; putor 1353; ratio 1360; reformido 1978\*; religio 1360; remitto 1600\*; reperior 1353; satius est 1708\*; scio 1344, 1465\*; soleo 1344, 1427\*; statuo 1344; studeo 1350; suadeo 1345; tempus est 1360; timeo 1371*c*; turpe est 1726\*; valeo 1931\*; venio 1362; venio in suspicionem 1347; vereor 1344; veto 1344; vector 1349, 1728\*; videor 1353; volo 1344, 1371.

*Accusative with infin. (both as object-sentence and as combination of objects of thing and person), after, or with, the following:* accipio 1351, 1784\*; adigo 1110\*, 1932\*; admonéo 1351; affirmo 1617\*; ago illud 1533*c*; animadverto 2174\*; apparet 1471\*; arbitror 1633 fin.\*; arguo 1348; assuefacio 1348; auctor sum 1352; audio 1672 fin.\*; censeo 1352; cogito 1533*a*; cognosco 1644 fin.\*; concedo 1179; conficior 1351; constat 1702\*; constituo 1677\*; criminor 1395; cupio 1351; decet 1356; dehortor 1348; despero 1567\*; dico 1784\*; dicitur 1351; disputo, 'maintain' 1517\*; do 2252\*; doceo 1348, 1110\*; doleo 1677\*; dolore afficio 1352; edico 2288\*; efficio 1351; est 1356; pro Cæsare fuit 2072*a*; existimo 2280\*;

fac 1621; fama est 1104\*; fateor 1535*c*; fero 1205\*; fero præ me 2053; fidem do 1475; fingo 1599\*; impero 1351; impedio 1348; indignor 1745\*; infatias eo 2016\*; insimulo 1348; intelligitur 1672\*; jubeo 1348, 1351; juvat 1356; memini 1351, 1372; moneo 1348; narro 1352; necesse est 1356; nego 1538\*; nolo 1621\*; obliviscor 1458\*, 1653\*; opinio 1351; oportet 1356, 1371; opus est 1253, 1356; paret 1753; patior 1747\*; persuadeo 1422 (*p.* 176)\*; prohibeo 1348; proporo 1776\*; puto 1351, 1533*c*; recorder 1643\*; religio est 1161\*; rumor 1733\*; scisco 1351; scribo 1784*d*\*; sentio 1535*a*\*; signum est 1729\*; sino 1348, 1351; spero 1436\*; spes 1352; suspicor 1351; ille timor 1717\*; trado 2288\*; verum est 1706\*; veto 1348; utile est 1638\*; video 1351; videtur 1356; volo 1351.

Infatias ire 1114*b*; hoc 1407\*; *with infin. object-sentence* 2016\*.

Infra, *general use of* 1986—1990; infra quam 1986.

Ingratius 1239.

Inhibere 1413, 1983.

Inibi 1964, 1969.

Inicere eo 2143\*.

Inimicus, *with dat. or gen.* 1143; Milonis 1351\*; otii 2277\*.

Inire praelium 1217; consilia 1756\*.

Initio 1180.

Injuria 1239.

Injussu 1544\*; meo 1239, 1532*b*, 1728\*; alicujus 1246, 2264 fin.\*.

Inlucere, *with acc.* 2292\*.

Inopinatum omnibus 1545 fin.\*.

Inops, *with gen.* 1336, 2214\*; *with dat.* 1339.

Inquam, *in repeating and emphasising a statement* 1094\*, 2277\*; *comp.* 1601\*; *inquiet, with subj. unexpressed* 1430; *inquiet (inquietat) aliquis* 1545. *Pref. p. ci;* *inquies, inquis, Pref. p. ciii.*

Inridere nos 1611\*.

Insanum, *used adverbially* 1095.

- Inscribere aedis 1120a; inscriptus nomina 1126b.
- Insectari aliquem 1625\*.
- Insidere locum 1121, 1377\*.
- Insidiari ovili (*dat.*) 2149\*.
- Insidias alicui dare 2175\*.
- Insignis ad inridendum 1377.
- Insimulo 1084; aliquem fecisse 1348; aliquem fraudis 1324.
- Insinuare se plebi 1898\*.
- Insistere rationem 1612\*.
- Insitus alicui 1069\*.
- Insons culpæ 1326.
- Instar *with gen.* 1280, 1345\*; *cf.* 897.
- Instillo lumini oleum 1546\*.
- Insto, *with infin.* 1344; *with acc.* 1123.
- Insuesco, *with infin.* 1344, 1574(3)\*; insueta rudentem 1097.
- Intellego deos esse 1693\*; castra muniri 1672\*.
- Inter, *general use of* 1991—1997; *in composition* 1998—2000; *used with inf.* 1363; *with gerund and gerundive* 1378; *separated from its case by simul* 1992; *put after its case* 1805, 1991;
- inter cæsa et porrecta, 'between the slaughter and the offering,' = 'between cup and lip' 1994; inter falcarios, 'in the scythe-makers' quarter;' inter lignarios, 'in joiners' street' 1991; inter hæc, 'while this was going on' 1992; inter manus, 'in one's arms' 1991; inter nos, i.e. 'confidentially' 1997; inter paucos 1995; inter se, *used for se (sibi)* 1997; inter se 2306, 1997, 1670\*, 2034\*, 2288\*; inter sicarios, 'on a charge of being among the assassins' 1327, 1995; inter vias, 'on the road' 1946\*.
- Intercedere legi 2233\*.
- Intercludere aliquem aliqua re 1262.
- Interdicere aliquem aliqua re 1212; alicui aliqua re 1135.
- Interdicto 1239.
- Interdius 1993.
- Interdum 1714\*, *contrasted with nonnumquam, &c.* 1304\*.
- Interea 1993; interea loci 1993; cum interea 1732, 1733; interea cum 1458.
- Interesse alicui rei 1674\*; in aliqua re 1729\*; interest Ciceronis 1284; meâ 1188, 1285; ad meam rem 1287, 1574(3)\*; tanti, tantum, magis, &c. 1189.
- Interjacere, *with dat.* 1144; *with acc.* 1145.
- Interibi 1993.
- Interim, 'meanwhile' 1458\*; cum interim 1732, 1733; interim dum 1458, 1663; interim.....interim, 'sometimes'... 'at other times' 1993.
- Interior ictibus 1266.
- Interitus fame, 'death by starvation' 1228.
- Intermitto dare 1561\*; nunquam diem quin 1698.
- Interpellare aliquem 1708\*.
- Interpres ei rei, 'a go-between in the business' 1580\*.
- Interrogative particles 2249—2256; pronouns 2296; dependent interrog. sentences 1758; quasi-dependent do. 1761.
- Interrogo aliquem aliquid 1122; de aliqua re 1125.
- Intertraho aliquid alicui 1486\*.
- Intervallo sex milium 1087; longo 1248, 1610\*.
- Intervenire alicui discenti 1284\*.
- Intestato 1253.
- Intra, *general use of* 2001—2004; intra dies centum, intra Kalendas 2003.
- Intransitive verbs: defined 1414; become transitive by stretch of conception 1123, 1120c; or by composition 1121, 1120b; sometimes have a personal pass. 1421; are usually impersonal in pass. 1416, 1422; with acc. of extent 1094; or cognate 1100; with indirect obj. 1132; with abl. of part concerned 1210; have gerund, but not gerundive 1374; except sometimes *Præf. p.* lxxvii.
- Intrare mundum 1553\*.
- Intrinsecus 2117.
- Intro 2001.
- Introrsus 2175.
- Intus, *general use* 2006—2009; as *prep. with abl.* 2010.
- Invadere civitatem 1120b; hostes 2122 fin.\*; aciem 1437\*.



- Inventrix, *with gen.* 1058\*.  
 Invidere, *construction of* 1330, 1331.  
 Invidi mei 1280; invidia mea, 'envy of me' 1315; senatoria 1315.  
 Invidiæ esse *Pref. p.* xlv.  
 Invito me 1246, 1536\*; invita Minerva 1589\*.  
 Inurere notam alicui 1144.  
 Inutilis rei 1382a; ad rem 2037\*.  
 Joco, jocolo 1239.  
 Ipse, *general use* 2262, 2263; me ipse, me ipsum 2264; ipsum *for se* 2269; suo ipse casu 1070, 1073\*, *Pref. p.* xxiii; is et ipse 1068, 1065\*; triginta dies ipsi, 'exactly thirty days' 1723\*; nunc ipsum, tum ipsum 1095; in ipso tempore 1179; re ipsa 1639\*.  
 Ira interfecti domini, 'on account of the killing' 1409; diremptæ pacis 1227\*; iræ esse *Pref. pp.* xxix, xlv.  
 Irascor alicui 1578\*, 1747\*.  
 Ire, *with supine* 1379; iri, *with supine* 1380; ire exequias, infitias 1114b, 2016\*; venum, pessus 1112; auxilio, &c. 1162, *Pref. pp.* xxix, xxxi, xxxviii, &c.; via 1176, *comp.* 1099; viam 1100, 1363\*; obviam alicui 1599\*; pedibus ire in sententiam 1241; in alia omnia ire 2292; cælo 1144.  
 Irridiculo haberi *Pref. p.* xlv.  
 Irrisui esse *Pref. p.* xlv.  
 Is, *general use of* 2258; often attracted into gender and number of predicate 1068; eo consilio=eorum consilio 1279; et is 2259; idque 2261; nec is (usura nec ea solida contentus) 1216\*; eum *for se* 2268b.  
 Iste, *general use of* 2258—2260.  
 Istic, 'where you are' 1749\*.  
 Isto, 'thither' 1113, 2280\*.  
 Istorsum 2175.  
 Ita...ut (ne, ut ne) *with final subj.* 1638, 1650; ita...ut (ut non) *with consecutive subj.* 1696, 1704, 1238\*, 1468\*, 1813\*; ita vivam ('so may I live')...ut 'as' *with indic.* 1707c, 1778\*, 1383b, *comp.* 1588; ita...ut (utei) 'so'...as' 1812, 2004\*; ut (uti) 'as'...ita 'so' *with indic.* 1707a, 1486\*, *comp.* 1544\*; *with subj. (in orat. obl.)* 1752; prout...ita *with indic.* 2107\*; ut 'although'...ita 'yet' 1707c; ita...ut si 1430\*; ita...quasi 1580, 1210\*; quasi...ita 1593\*; ita='since thus' 1699; ita nescio 'so completely ignorant am I' absolutely 1758; ita fatuus es 1588\*; non ita pridem 'not so very long ago' 1704\*; ita 'yes' 2251, 2252; ita est 'so it is' 1617; ita facere = id facere 1486\*; si ita vis 1623\*; ita 'in these words' 1695\*; ita in apposition to an *infin. object-sentence* 1473\*; itan (for itane) 1611, 1856\*.  
 Item 2018\*.  
 Iterum 1095, 1719\*.  
 Itidem...ut 2293.  
 Jubeo canere or cani 1344; aliquem ire 1348; jubetur aliquis ire 1350\*; jubeo aliquem mitti 1351, 1106\*, 1721\*; aliquis jubetur mitti 1353; jube veniat 1236 (*p.* 100).  
 Jucunditati esse *Pref. p.* xlv.  
 Jucundus alicui 1134, 1467\*, 2295\*; cognitu 1210; potui 1383c.  
 Judicare aliquem capitis 1324, 1325; *with infin. object-sentence* 1351, 1906\*, *cf.* 1567\*.  
 Judice te 1246; judicem ferre alicui 'propose an arbitration (arbitrator)', 1752; capere cum aliquo 1770\*.  
 Judicio capitis aliquem arcessere 1323; judicio pati 1239; judicio 'deliberately' 1236.  
 Jungtus *with abl. or dat.* 1215; *with abl. of cause* 1228, 1229.  
 Jungere aliquem alicui 1958\*.  
 Jurare in verba 1382a\*, 1606\*.  
 Jure 1239; summo jure, meo jure 1237.  
 Jusjurandum, *origin of phrase* *Pref. p.* lxxxiii; adigere 1118, 1695\*; adigere ad 1117; jurejurando adigere 1119.  
 Jussu meo 1246.  
 Justo lætior 1266.  
 Juvo aliquem aliquid 1094; aliqua re 1572\*; me juvat rem ita esse 1356.  
 Juxta *general use of* 2011—2016; *position in sentence* 1805; juxta mecum 2014; *with dative* 2015; juxta ac

- 1383*b*; ac si 2014; procul juxta sitos 1646 fin.\*  
 Juxtim 2011, 2012.
- Laborare aliqua re 1677\*.  
 Labori esse *Prof. p.* xlvii.  
 Lacessere sponsione 1752.  
 Lætitia esse *Prof. p.* xlvii.  
 Lætor aliqua re 1443\*; aliquid esse 1483\*.  
 Laniatui esse *Prof. p.* xlvii.  
 Lapidavit (*impers.*) 1431.  
 Largior hoc alicui 1687\*.  
 Lassus maris 1337; *with abl.* 1337.  
 Latine loqui 'to speak Latin' 1344\*, 2207\*.  
 Latinis indictis 'on the proclamation of the Latin games' 1350\*.  
 Latitudinis in measurements 1304; latitudine 1085, 1209; in latitudinem 1305.  
 Latus 'broad' *with acc. of measure* 1086; *with abl.* 1085; *with gen. of quality* 1308; *in comparisons, various constructions* 1273.  
 Laudare utilitate 'for its usefulness' 1228.  
 Laudi esse *Prof. p.* xlvii.  
 Lege agere 'to bring a statutable action' (*esp. as authorised by the lex xii. tab.*) 1236.  
 Lessum (*acc.*) 'lamentation' 1934\*.  
 Letters, mode of dating 1260, 1261, 1168, 1490\*; *tenses used—imperf.* 1468, *plup.* 1490.  
 Levamento esse *Prof. p.* xlvii.  
 Levare aliquem onere 1212, vitiis 1052\*, vectigali 1683\*; laborum 1334.  
 Levationi esse *Prof. p.* xlvii.  
 Lex mancipii 1243, 1280; operi faciundo 1156.  
 Liber *with abl.* 1263.  
 Liberare aliquem culpæ 1324; domi-natu 1262; supplicio 1593.  
 Libertati esse *Prof. p.* xlvii.  
 Libet (lubet) id mihi 1741\*, 1747\*; *with inf.* 1617, 1689\*; si credere libet 2001\*; libeat as *protasis of conditional sentence* 1574; libens, libenter 1540\*, 1541\*.
- Libidine 1239; libidini esse *Prof. p.* xlvii.  
 Libro dixi 1174; in libro 1177.  
 Licere: quiqui licebunt 'at whatever price they shall be bid for' 1196; quanti licuisse 2289\*; liceri 'to bid' 1633 fin.\*  
 Licet lascivire 1355; mihi negligentem esse 1357; mihi negligentem esse *p.* 145 *note*, *Prof. p.* xxiii; licet (licebit) dicant 1606, 1534\* (*p.* 226); quamvis licet dicant 1625; si licuerit 1483; omnia licere tibi 1575\*; per aliquem licet 2037, 1574 (3)\*, 1741\*.  
 Limulis (*sc. oculis*) contueri 1761\*.  
 Litato 'after favourable sacrifice' 1254.  
 Litteras dare alicui 1260\*, alicui ad aliquem 1818; hoc litterarum 1720 fin.\*; *with place of despatch in abl.* 1260; *in loc.* 1261.  
 Locare opera facienda 1401, *cf. Prof. p.* lxxvi; locare non nummo sed partibus 'to lease not for a moneyrent, but a share of produce' 1198.  
 Locative, general use of 1164; followed by relative adverb, not adjective 1165; of place 1168; in apposition to ablative *with* in 1167*c*; of time when 1178, 1179; of amount (*genitive of price*) 1186—1192; reasons for assigning this to locative, *Prof. p.* lvii; for not assigning predicative dative thereto, *Prof. p.* xxxvi:  
 æqui boni 1191; alii modi (?) 1311; animi 1168, 1169, 1321; centussibus 1187; cotidie 1178; cuicunimodi (?) 1168, 1311; domi 1168; humi 1168; fœnori (?) 1163; foris 1169; meridie 1178; quanti 1192; quotannis 1178; tanti 1187, 1189, 1192; temperi 1178.  
 Locative adverbs, used of persons and things 1113, 1153, 1171, 1263; used with prepositions 1802.  
 Loci, locorum of place and time; used after quo 1172; eodem, post id 1296; adhuc 1299; ad id 1744\*; interea 1993;  
 Loco 1170; 'in his proper place' 1172, 2116\*; in loco 1175, 1713\*; suo quisque loco, 'each in his turn' 2116\*;

- argumenti loco sumere 1457\*; patris loco colere 1566\*; alio loco demonstrare 1695\*.
- Locus *with dat.* 1156, 1382 *b*, 1512\*, 2182\*, 2273\*; *with gen.* 1157; locum ludis habere 'to have a reserved place at the games' 2175\*.
- Longe 1203; digitum longe (ire) 'a finger's length' 1086; longius abire 'to go away so far' 1605.
- Longus, longitudinis, &c., in measurements, see under Latus; longum est (erit) dicere 1535 *a*.
- Lubet, see Libet.
- Luce 1778\*; luci 1178; prima luce 1176\*; cum primo luci, cum prima luce 1882; palam luci, luce palam 2026.
- Lucet, luciscit 1431.
- Lucri 1306; lucri facere, facere lucri 1307; de lucro 1908, 1307; lucro esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Ludere ludo 1099; alea 1218; aleam 1217; aliquem, 'make sport of one' 1441\*.
- Ludibrio esse 1760\*, *Pref. p.* xlvii; *abl.* ludibri 2075\*; *after dignus, Pref. p.* xxxii; ludibrium esse *Pref. p.* xxviii.
- Ludificatui habere *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Ludus discendi 1304; ludis, 'on festival days' 1181; 'at the games' 2175\*; in ludo 'in the exercise ground' 1732\*; ludo ludere 1099; ludos facere mihi 1120; me 1120, 1707e\*.
- Luxuriæ esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Macte (*cf.* 516), *with abl.* 1228, 1540\*, 1384 *fin.*\*
- Maculæ esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Mærori esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Magis quam 1271; non magis quam 1552\*; magis quia...quam quod 1744; magis est ut 'there is more reason that' 1700; magis interest, refert, 1189, 1284; magis juvare, laudare, &c. 1532 *b*, 1534 *fin.*\*, 1544\*, 2236\*; exercitus sum 1747 *fin.*\*
- Magni of price 1187; interest, refert 1188; magno of price 1197, 1198; magno opere 1237, 1769\*; silentio 1241; æstu 1242; illorum malo 1244; *with predicative dative* 1158, *Pref. p.* xxix.
- Major opinione dolor 1266; major trimus 'more than three years old' 1398; annos natus quadraginta 1090; in other statements of age 1273; majoris of price 1187, *Pref. p.* lx.
- Male emere 1197; esse alicui 1153; nunquam tam male est quin 1698; almost a negative (*e.g.* male sanus) 2234.
- Maledicto esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Malo non roges 1535 *a*\*; taceas 1537\*; id probatum esse 1371 *d*; cives recte fecisse 1371 *c*; malo existimari bonus 1704\*; malim, mallet 1536; *with accus.* 1269\*; mallet traderet 1606.
- Malum 'plague take it,' 'it's a plague' 1081, 1188\*; magno illorum malo 1244 (*cf.* pessimo publico 1245); malo reipublicæ 1721\*; malo esse 1160, *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Manare mella 1123.
- Mancipi lex 'the terms of the conveyance' 1280; res mancipi, mancipio dare, &c. 1243, 2289, *Pref. p.* xlvii; mancipium 1243.
- Mane 'in the morning' 1178\*, 1179\*.
- Manere 'await' aliquem 1613; 'remain' alicui 1626\*, 1627\*; in villa apud aliquem 1720\*; in condicione 'abide by terms' 1669\*.
- Manifestus culpæ (*gen.*) 1326; vitæ 1320; manifesto 1253.
- Mansio Formiis 'staying at Formia' 1168.
- Manu mittere 1262; emittere 1708\*; decertare 1438\*; manum de tabula (*sc. tolle*) 1441; manum conserere 'to join issue' 1114, 1263 *fin.*\*; manibus ingredi 1241, 1845\*; ad manus 1820; in manibus 1963; inter manus 1991; per manus 'from hand to hand' 2032; præ manu 2053; sub manus 2131; sub manu 2132.
- Marte nostro 1234.
- Materialiter, words used, i.e. as names of themselves 1003 *d*; usually put in the appropriate case *e.g.* nomen mihi Titius or Titio est 1058, 1059, *Pref. p.* xxiii; (legem a

- legendo) 1392; (vox voluptatis) 1302; (optimam matrem) 1120:  
*but also* 'veto' 1303; 'scripserunt' 1538\*; specierum, speciebus 1536; quasi corpus 1583; hoc facito 1603 fin.\*; 'adduxi' 1771\*; 'ad arma' 1818; 'sodes pro si audis' 2073;  
*after* non dico, ne dicam 1283, 1659, 1660.  
 Maturo proficisci 1068\*, 1344; quam maturato opus est 1637.  
 Maturus ævi 1320.  
 Maximè omnium 1294; si maxime 1560, 1561; quam qui maxime 1641; ut qui maxime 1641; cum maxime 1641.  
 Maximus omnium 1290; inter omnes 1291.  
 Me miserum 1128.  
*Measure in accus.* 1086; *in abl.* 1085; *in gen.* 1308; *measure of difference in abl.* 1204; *in acc.* 1203.  
 Mecastor 1761\* (*p.* 335); *see also* 1120.  
 Med (*acc.*) 1698\*, 1931\*.  
 Mederi alicui 1198, 1954\*.  
 Medius fidius 1120, 1573 (3)\*, 1675\*, 1721\*, &c.  
 Medium viæ 1292; medio ædium, medio oppido 1170; in media urbe 1294; media æstate 1180; medius *with gen.* 'between' 1088\*; pacis mediusque belli 1047 fin.  
 Mehercules, mehercule 1129, 1562\*, 1648 fin.\* *See also* Hercle.  
 Mei *as partitive genitive* 1290; *as objective gen.* 1312; *as secondary object* 1328.  
 Melius est, *with pres. inf.* 1463; *with perf. inf.* 1371 c; melius fuit, *with pres. inf.* 1535 b; melius fuerat, *with perf. inf.* 1535 d.  
 Melli esse *Pref. p.* xlviii.  
 Memini, *with gen.* 1332, 1653\*; *with accus.* 1333; *with pres. and perf. inf.* 1351, 1372; cum videbare 1687.  
 Memoria tenere 1174; in memoria habere 1177; memoriæ prodi 2037\*; supra hanc memoriam 'before our time' 2158 b\*.  
 Memoriter 'with good memory' 1707 b fin., 1827.  
 Mercede 'for pay' militare, conducere, &c. 1198, 1197.  
 Mereri bene de aliquo 1906.  
 Mergere se *in with acc.* 1177; *with abl.* 1177; mersus, *with abl.* 1174.  
 Meridie 1179.  
 Merito 1253; quis dixerit 1540; fecerit 1532 b; non meo merito 'not by my fault' 1769\*; merito populi Romani 1789\*.  
 Metuo ut, metuo ne 1652; metuo credere 1771\*; aliquem 1770\*; mihi 2256\*; aliquid mihi 2205\*; ab aliquo 1758\*; metuens rixarum 2160\*.  
 Meus *as possessive gen.* 1278—1282; *as objective gen.* 1315; mea interest, refert 1285.  
 Mi (*voc.*) 1082.  
 Middle voice, *see* 1417; *cf.* concutitur 1553\*.  
 Mihi *as ethical dat.* 1150, 1151; 'in my judgment' 1148; quo mihi? (*sc. prodest*) 1152; (*prodest habere or di dant, &c.*) 1441.  
 Militiæ domique 'in the (war) field and at home' 1198.  
 Mille Thracum 1304, 1305.  
 Minari alicui 1722\*; minatur nisi, *with subj.* 1750; minari daturos 1617\*.  
 Minime *as negative* 2230 d, 2234; *in (negative) answers* 2251, 2252; minime gentium 1299; omnium 1533 c\*.  
 Minimo of price 1196.  
 Minor in expressions of age 1266, 1273, 1389\*; capitis minor 1320; minoris *as gen. of price* 1186, 1270\*, *Pref. p.* lviii; dimidio minoris 'at half as much' 1187; minore of price 1187, *Pref. p.* lviii.  
 Minus *with or without quam* 1086\*, 1273; uno minus est 'there is one less in the world' 1204; nihilo minus 1204; *as negative* 2230 d, 2234; si, or sin minus 1563, 1565; minus commode 'not very well' 1686\*; minus lætum 1534\*; minus posse

- (=non posse) 1476\*; nihil minus quam 'anything but' 1733\*.  
 Miraculo esse *Pref.* p. xlviii.  
 Miror aliquem or aliquid 1331; with *secondary obj.* in *gen.* 1330; miror si (*subj.*) 1754; (*ind.*) 1757, 1610\*; with *inf. obj. sentence* 1569\*, 1578\*, 1160\*; with *dep. interrog.* (e.g. quo abire possit) 1605\*.  
 Mirum ni, mira sunt ni, with *indic.* 1757; nisi mirumst, ni mirum 1757, cf. 2226; mirum quam with *indic.* 1647; mire quam 1649; mirumst quomodo, with *indic.* 1765; mirum quantum, with *indic.* 1647; with *subj.* 1760; mirum quin, with *subj.* 1768.  
 Miscere aliquid aliqua re 1216, 1277\*; alicui rei 1215.  
 Miseratus labores 1588\*.  
 Misereri, with *gen.* 1328.  
 Miseret me tui 1328, 1431, 1591\*.  
 Miseriæ esse *Pref.* p. xlviii.  
 Missu Caesaris 1389.  
 Mittere qui dicat 1632; ut dicat 1377\*; with *supine* 1114, 1379; ad dicendum 1115 (1); dicendi gratia 1115 (2); dicere 1115 (4); auxilio 1115 (5); Orco 1484; manu 1262; mitto 'I say nothing of' 2027\*; mitto quod, with *indic.* 1701; missum facio 1402; missus stipendiis 'discharged from service' 1695\*.  
 Moderor with *acc.* 1135; with *dat.* 1136  
 Modi: ejus modi 1308; cujusque modi 2290 a; cuicui modi 1311; istius modi 1150\*; quid modi 1154\*.  
 Modicus virium 1320.  
 Modo 'in moderation' 1172\*; meo modo 'after my fashion' 2090\*; 'only' in wishes modo, ut modo 1594; in *provisoes*, dummodo 1668; qui modo 1692, 1264\*; in *concessions* with *subj.* 1626, cf. 1595\*; modo ut 1706; with *imperative* 1629, 1534\* (p. 226), 1557\*, 1579\*; in *limitations* with *indic.* qui modo 1693, 1264\*; si modo 1676\*: in a *climax* non modo 2239, 2240 and *note*; non modo...sed 1657, 2246.  
 modo ivit 'just gone' 1069\*, 1115 b\*, 1615\*; modo.....modo 1716\*, 2174\*, 2205\*.  
 Modus with *dat.* 1154; with *gen.* 1155, 1395, 1567\*; with *inf.* 1360.  
 Molestē ferre 'to be vexed' with *inf. object-sentence* 1589 fin.\*  
 Molestiæ esse *Pref.* p. xlviii.  
 Moneo aliquem aliquid 1348; quæ moneor 1094; moneo ne (*subj.*) 2290\*.  
 Monumento esse *Pref.* p. xlviii; monumentum esse *Pref.* p. xxviii.  
 Moræ esse *Pref.* p. xlviii; moram certamini facere 1714\*.  
 Morbo esse *Pref.* p. xlviii.  
 Moror nihil aliquem 'I care nothing for a man' 1094.  
 Morte multare, damnare 1200; morte damnare 1199; esse *Pref.* p. xlviii; mortem occumbere 1120 b; obire 2211\*; sibi consciscere 1768\*.  
 Mos vendendi 1302; mos erat vendere 1354; moris non erat 2180\*; in morem alicujus 'after the manner of one' 2239\*; more 1236; more majorum 2030\*; alieno 2090\*; moribus 'by custom' 1239.  
 Moveo aliquem senatu 1262; tribu 1720 fin.\*; *intrans.* ex stativis 1721\*; res moventes *Pref.* p. lxxvii.  
 Multæ esse *Pref.* p. xlviii.  
 Multare aliquem morte 1200; poculo 1486\*.  
 Multimodis 1881\*.  
 Multitudinis esse 'to be of the plural number' 2175 fin.\*  
 Multus 'frequent,' 'troublesome,' 1069; quos multos habet 1295; multi vestrum 1290; multa (*adv.* *acc.*) 1125; multum te fallo 1094; refert, interest 1189; multo '(by) much,' multis partibus 'many times,' with *compar.* or *superl.* 1204; multis annis non 'not for many years' 1182; multi of price (rare) 1187, *Pref.* p. lx.  
 Muneri accipere, dare, &c. *Pref.* p. xlviii.  
 Munimento esse *Pref.* p. xlviii.  
 Mutare, commutare aliquid aliqua re cum aliquo, 'change a thing for a thing with some one' 1198; uvam strigili 'purchase grapes with a

- scraper* 2129\*; *crinem in hydros* 1642\*; *folia sanguineo colore mutantur* 1674\*; *pro metu mutari* 2293\*.
- Mutua adverbially used* 1096, 1097.
- Nam position in sentence* 1055 *a*; *nam-quis, quis nam* 2289, 2296; *namque position in sentence* 1055 *a*; *put second* 1490\*.
- Natione* 1210, 1065\*.
- Natu grandis* 1210; *cf. p. 160 note*.
- Naturā* 1061 *b*, 1662\*; *suā naturā* 2036\*.
- Natus patre* 1264; *ex patre* 1265; *ab Inacho* 1265; *nobili genere* 1232; *viginti annos* 1090; *annis* 1089; *plus viginti annos natus, and other expressions of age* 1273, 1090; *natus with inf.* 1363; *ad decus* 1609\*.
- Nauci non facio* 1187.
- Naufragus patrimonii* 2277\*.
- Navigare, with direct obj.* 1123.
- Navigazione tridui esse ab 'to be a three days' voyage distance from'* 1206.
- Ne (val) in affirmations* 1114 *b*, 1422\*, 1534\*, 1707 *b fin.*\*, 1721.
- Nē negative: old forms of* 2225; *with certain classes of subj.* 1498; *in wishes* 1588, 1592; *in prohibitions* 1596—1604, 1371; *with pres. subj.* 1600 *and note*; *with perf. subj.* 1602; *with plup. subj.* 1604, 1575\*; *with imperative* 1597, 1601; *in concessions* 1622; *in provisoers, dum ne, dummodo ne* 1668; *in (ordinary) final sentences ne, ut ne, ne* 1636—1642, 1648—1650; *qui ne* 2233; *quo ne* 1634; *after verbs of fearing ne, ne non* 1652; *used absolutely in similar sentences* 1654; *ne, nedum* 1658; *ne dicam, &c.* 1660, 1460\*; *appended as the reason for making a previous statement, = 'this I say lest'* 1662, 1118\* (*ne immittas*); 1377\* (*ne...credas*); *used after the following (among other) verbs and expressions: ad-*
- nitor* 1642; *adverto animum* 1606; *cavetur* 2065\*; *cautiosus* 1400; *consuefacio aliquem* 1879\*; *deterreo* 1587\*; *efficio (non ne...sed ut non)* 1700\*; *formido* 1649\*; *ita gero* 1638; *ita æquumst* 1650\*; *obsecro* 1533 *a a*\*; *obsisto* 1642 *fin.*; *signum do* 1890\*; *teneo* 1648; *timeo* 1652, 1879\*; *vide (ne, ne non)* 1656; *video* 1648; *ne...quidem* 1657, 2230 *b*, 2231 *b*, 2280\*; *after a negative* 2246 *a*, 1536\*.
- Nē in composition* 2224; *cf. 984, 985; as enclitic interrogative* 2250, 2254; *-ne...an* 1168\*; *in second member* 1612\*; *joined to relative adjective qui* 1691\*; *in questions of surprise* 1708.
- Nec, use as simple negative* 2227; *'not even'* 2230 *b*, 2231 *b*, 1534\* (*p. 226*).
- Nec, neque as conjunction* 2227; *following non* 2235, 2236; *neque...* 2240, 2246 *b*; *neque...et, et...neque* 2241, 1533 *d*\*; *neque aut...aut, &c.* 2242 *b*; *ut neque...* 2016\*; *nec dum* 1566\*; *necnon* 2244; *neque haud (= neque)* 2248; *necne see s. v.*; *neque enim* 2225, 1560\*; *nec nunc quidem* 1643\*; *belonging to participial clause* 2238; *with jussive subj.* 1602.
- Necesse est with inf. obj. clause* 1356, 1198\*, 1533 *a a*\*; *&c.*; *with simple infin.* 1561\*; *with subj.* 1606, 1545\*, 2218\*; *nisi quid necesse erit* 1535 *a*; *necessum st* 1747\*.
- Necessario* 1253.
- Necne* 2255, 1420\*, 1477\*, 1764.
- Necnon* 2244.
- Necopinus* 2227; *necopinatus* 2231.
- Necubi* 2230 *c*.
- Nedum* 1658.
- Nefas est tendere* 1534\*.
- Negative particles distinguished* 2223—2230; *may destroy one another* 2243; *may strengthen* 2244—2248; *negative in first clause, not carried on to second* 2243, 1476 *a*\* (*nemo extulit...sed contempsit*).

Neglectui esse *Pref. p.* xlviii.

Nego *in contrast to* ajo 1422\*, 2277\*; *with inf. object clause* 1729\*; 'I say ...not' 2243; 'I refuse' 1744\*; *with pres. inf. object-clause* 1291\*, 1768\*.

Negotium alicui dare, faciat 'appoint to do' 1606.

Nemo non 2244, 2283; nemo neque... neque 2246 *b*; non nemo 1610\*, 2244, 2271, 2276; nemo homo 1623 *fin.*\*; orator 1639\*; nemo omnium militum 1688\*.

Nempe 1933\*, 2030\*, 2188\*.

Nequaquam 2225, 2246 *b*.

Neque, *see* Nec.

Nequiquam 2225, 1537\*, 1544\*; nequiquam 2225.

Nescio an 2256; nescio quis 1769; nescio quo pacto 1244.

Neve, neu, *general use of* 2235, 2240; 1596, 1602, 1603; 2236\*, 2239\*.

Neuter, *general use of* 2278 (*p.* 484).

*Neuter adjectives, general meaning* 1060; *form special substantives* 1061, 1063; *used as predicate to subjects of other genders* 1061; *in nominative* (meum est, optimum est, &c.) 1282, 1356, &c.; *neuter participle pass. used as subject* 1411:

*pronouns, &c. used with partitive gen.* 1296, 1299; *in accus. of extent* 1094—1097, 1189; *after dignus* 1201; *after passives* 1423; *in locative of price* 1187, *Pref. pp.* lvii—lx; *in ablative of price* 1196; *of amount of difference* 1204:

*neuter adjectives and part. in abl. of circumstances* 1252; *used absolutely* 1251, 1256; *in partitive gen.* 1296, 1298, 1301.

*Neuter verbs* 1414; *used impersonally in passive* 1422, 1423; *used in lieu of the passive voice of other verbs, e.g. jacere* 1220\*; *audire* 1812; *procumbere* 1491\*.

Nexu 1239.

Ni (nei), *general use* 1226; *in reported conditions* 1750, 1752; *why used in affirmative wagers, p. 331 note*; ni ...nive 1486\*, 1562; ni...et ni 1575;

peream ni (*ind.*) 1575, 1588; quid ni 1614; quippini 1616; nimirum 1757. *See also* Nisi.

Nihil origin 2225; *used adverbially* 1094, 1439, 2230, 2231; nihil aliud quam 1094, 1441; si nihil aliud 1384<sup>a</sup>\*; nihil aliud nisi 1574(4)\*; nihil opust 1094; nihil ad me (*sc. pertinet*) 1441; nihil negoti 1296; nihil pacati, &c. 1298, 1299; nihil reliqui facere 1298, 2246<sup>b</sup>\*; nihil est, 'it's no good' 1481\*; nihil est quod (*subj.*) 1686, 1535<sup>a</sup>\*; nihil non 2244.

Nihili (nili) *as locative of price* 1186; nihili homo, servus, &c. 1194, 1195; nihilo minus 1204, 1039\*; pro nihilo ducere 1187.

Nimio, *with compar.* 1204.

Nimirum 1757, 2229.

Nimis quam 1649; nimis valde, sæpe 1540\*; nimis novit 1714 *fin.*\*

Nimum quantum (*ind.*) 1647.

Nisi (ni), *general use, with subj.* 1532 *fol.*; *with indic.* 1533 *fol.*; *with compl. fut.* 1486; *with plup. subj. after exaggerated statements* 1573<sup>c</sup>, *d*; *with subjunctive where protasis is an adjective* 1576; *with reported condition, after minatur, &c.* 1750; *ferre judicem* 1752; *with indic. appended as afterthought, nisi forte, nisi vero, nisi tamen* 1569, 1573\*; *nisi si* 1605\*;

*with subject* 1439; *with object* 1229\*; *with infin.* 1465\*; *with infin. object clause* 1182\*; *with predicate in nom.* 1442; *in accus.* 1428\*. 1535<sup>c</sup>, 1822\*; *in dat.* 1073; *in gen.* 1623\*; *with abl. of means* 1533<sup>c</sup>, 1544 *fin.*\*; *with abl. of circumstances* 1250; *with prepositional phrase* 1907\*, 1977\*;

*quis alius nisi* 2036\*, 2085\*; *quis nisi qui* 2096\*; nihil nisi quod 1352; nullus nisi verborum 1351\*; parum est nisi 1715\*; nihil aliud nisi ut 1574(4)\*; uter 2296; numquam nisi 1443\*, 1623\*; nisi cum (*subj.*) 1716\*, (*ind.*) 1717\*; nisi quantum 1694\*; nisi quod (*adv.*) 1745.

- Nitor, 'rest on,' mulierculâ 1226; corporibus, 'strain with their bodies' 1580\*.
- Ni-ve 1486\*, 1562; see also Ni.
- Nobis absente 1251.
- Nocere alicui 1134, 1594; nihil iis noceri potest 1423, 1228\*.
- Nocte, 'by night' 1180; nocte dieque, noctes ac dies 1181, 1090; non nocte, non die 1707c; nocte ac die, 'within a day and a night' 1182; diem ac noctem 1181; duabus noctibus for duas noctes 1184; hoc noctis, 'at this time of night' 1091, 1092; de media nocte 1910; de nocte 1911; in noctem 1967; sub noctem 2129.
- Noli esse 1597, 1599; nollem dixisset 1608, cf. 1536; nolo videat 1537, 1608; nolo me esse 1652\*, 1759\*; nolo pluribus 1237; quod nollem 1931\*.
- Nomen mihi est Menæchmus 1058; Menæchmo 1059, 1154\*;  
suonome, 'on their own account' 1746\*; nomine negligentiae, 'on the score of' 1244, 1282\*, 1323; notus nomine tantum 2275\*; uno nomine appellare 1234; Græco nomine 1392\*; servus nomine illo 1232; homines nominis Latini 1233; nomina dare ad aliquem 1820.
- Nominal predicate, cf. 1009—1012, 1014, 1015.
- Nominative, general use 1009, 1076; as subject 1080; as subject to historical infin. 1359; as vocative 1082; with en, ecce 1081, 1129; as secondary predicate 1059, 1061, 1069, &c.; after object-infin. 1350; after passive verb with inf. 1353, 1402, Pref. p. xxii.  
of gerund and gerundive 1376, 1397—1399; of stems in -ion 1400; of stems in -bundo 1405; of passive part. with subst. in lieu of abstract nouns 1410; neuter part. so used absolutely 1411; neuter adjunct. possibly subject to impersonal verb 1423.
- Non, general use 2228; in jussive (dubitative) questions 1610; in consecutive sentences 1660 foll.; qui non 1686, 1714; ut non 1696 foll.; ut non in concessions 1706; ne non 1652, 1656; adeo non 1657; ac non, et non 2235, 2237, 1233 fin.\*;  
attached closely to a word, hoc non dolere 1707d\*; adnondolendum, ad non parendum 1377; non acerbum 1386\*; non omnia, non semper 1598\*; non dico, non dicam 1659; non enim 1532c\*, 2292\*; non modo 2239, 2240 note; non modo (solum) ...sed (verum) 1657, 2240—2246; non nemo, non nullus, &c. 2244, 2276; non omnis 1381\*; non possum quin 1646; non possum non 2244; non quod, non quo, &c. with subj. 1744; non si (ind.) ...idcirco 1533aa; non si (subj.) 1532b; si non 1563; non utique 2290 b.
- Nonne 2251, 2252.
- Nonnemo 1610\*, 2244, 2271, 2276.
- Nonnihil 2231, 2244.
- Nonnullus 2271, 2276, 2292\*.
- Nonnunquam (contrasted with sæpe, interdum) 1304\*, 1632\*, 1716 fin\*.
- Nos, noster for me, meus 2298; in orat. obl. of Cæsar and his army 1786.
- Noster for possessive gen. 1278; nostri as objective gen. 1312, 1759\*; nostrum as possessive gen. with omnium 1278, 1280; as partitive gen. 1290; for meus 2298; noster (Dæmones), i. e. 'I myself' 2234\*.
- Noxæ, noxiæ, esse 1163, Pref. p. xlix.
- Nubere alicui 1995\*, 1581\*; nuptum alicui dare 1114, 1379; Romam 1108; quo? 'into what family?' 1113.
- Nudari, with abl. 1650\*.
- Nudus, with abl. 1212; with gen. 1211.
- Nugas, in exclamations, 'nonsense!' 1578.
- Nullus, general use 2278; for non (e.g. nullus dixeris, nullus venit) 1069, 2231; nullo equitatu, 'without cavalry' 1234, cf. 1244; nullust (for nemo st) 1688\*; nullo as dative, Pref. p. xxix; nullus non 2244.



- Num 2250, 2252, 2097\*; numquis 1761 fin.; numnam 2252; num in indirect questions 1762, 1389\*, 1458\*.  
 Number: noun inflexions, use of 1061, 1062, 1068; verb inflexions 1425 foll., 1433—1439.  
 Numero 1159, 1172, 1175, 1865; in numero 1175; numero versuque 1239; extra numerum 1958.  
 Numerare a se, 'to count on one's side' 1813.  
 Numnam, numne 2252.  
 Nunc...cum (subj.) 1726, 1730; (ind.) 1721, 1731; nunc, 'as things are' 1532c\*; ib. d\*; 1534 fin.\*; nunc ipsum 1095; nunc demum 1721.  
 Nunciam (i.e. nunc jam) 2051\*.  
 Nunquam non 2244.  
 Nuntiare Romam, 'bring news to Rome' 1108; patribus muniant, 'bid the fathers fortify' 1606.  
 O with voc. 1082; with acc. 1128; o si in wishes 1582.  
 Ob, general use of 2017—2020; in composition 2021—2025; use with gerund 1378, 2020; ob rem 2018; quam ob rem 2019; obviam alicui venire 2017, 1685\*; ire 2018, 1599\*.  
 Obducor, 'I am covered,' cortice 1644\*.  
 Obedire alicui 1136; obediens esse 1074.  
 Obesse with dat. 1640\*.  
 Obesus 2025 fin.  
 Obicere aliquid alicui 1140, 2260\*; ad aliquem 1141; alicui quod neglexerit 1744.  
 Object, several kinds of 1079; object sentence 1029; direct object to active verbs (accus.) 1013, 1120; (infin.) 1344; to a verb of saying, &c. (e.g. dicit dividere, 'talks of dividing') 1347; two direct objects (both nouns) 1122; (noun and infin.) 1348; object to passive verbs (rogatus sententiam) 1124; (percussus mentem, &c.) 1126, 1127; (doctus loqui) 1349; to verb understood 1128; (accus.) after supine in -um 1379; after stems in -iōn 1400; after ge-  
 rundive in -bundo 1405; after nom. gerund 1397, 1398, Pref. p. lxxii; after other cases of gerund 1375, &c. Pref. p. lxvii;  
 direct object (genitive) to nouns 1312;  
 indirect (or remoter) object (dat.) to verbs and adjectives 1132—1152; rarely expressed by gen. after nouns 1318; two indirect objects (both dat.) 1163; secondary object (gen.) to verbs 1322—1334, cf. Pref. p. lix.  
 Obire mortem 2211\*; diem (= mori) 1721\*; omnia, 'go over' 1572\*.  
 Ob iter 2017, 1856\*.  
 Objurgare 2022.  
 Oblectamento esse Pref. p. xlix.  
 Obligare se nexu 1120b.  
 Obliqua oratio, see Oratio.  
 Oblique cases, use of 1018—1020; 1076—1079.  
 Oblivisci 2022; with gen. 1332; with accus. 1333; me senem esse 1458\*, 1653\*.  
 Obruere aliquem ære alieno 1745\*.  
 Obsæpire iter 1675 fin.\*.  
 Obsequi alicui 1654, 1784c.  
 Obsistere with dat. 2290\*.  
 Obstare alicui 1750\*; hoc mihi obstat quin faciam 1646.  
 Obstrepere portis 1675 fin.\*.  
 Obtemperare alicui 1134, 1677\*.  
 Obtendere lateribus (dat.) 1670\*.  
 Obtinere, 'carry one's point,' de aliqua re 1392; 'maintain,' legem 1598.  
 Obtrectationi esse Pref. p. xlix.  
 Obviam, see Ob.  
 Occidione occidere, 1099, 1239.  
 Occultare se tugurio 1733\*.  
 Occumbere mortem 1120b.  
 Occupo with infin. 1344, 1838\*; locum 1610\*.  
 Occurrere malivolentiæ 1483\*; hostibus 1711 fin.\*; tibi 1717\*.  
 Oculis captus 1210, 1724\*; vix constare 1210.  
 Odio esse 1160, Pref. p. xlix; odium esse 1161.  
 Odorari omnia, 'scent out' 1544.  
 Offendere aliquem crudelem, 'find a

- man cruel* 1960\*; *pedem, 'strike a foot'* 1663\*.
- Offensioni esse *Pref. p.* xlix.
- Offerre se alicui 1604\*; *moram alicui* 1687\*.
- Officere *with dat.* 1389 fin.\*.
- Olere alumnum, '*smell of a nursling*' 1120c, 1123.
- Olim *with pres. tense* 1460; '*in former days*' 1576 fin.\*.
- Omnino, '*at all hazards*' 2290b\*; *omnino quinque, 'five in all'* 1222\*; *with negative* 1232\*, 1463\*, 1569\*, 2246a.
- Omnium *as part. gen.* 1290, 1068\*; *primus, solus* 1075; *quisquam* 2282; *ex omnibus* 1291; *ex omni parte* 1941.
- 'One,' *indef., how expressed in Latin* 2303, 2271; '*one another*' 2305.
- Oneri esse *Pref. p.* xlix.
- Onustus *with abl., rarely gen.* 1337.
- Opera dedita, una opera, eadem opera 1237; qua opera.....eadem opera 1558; operæ esse 1281, *Pref. p.* xlix; operæ pretium esse 1280, 1778\*; facere 1778 fin.\*; operam dare *with dat.* 1379\*, 1382; ut veniat 1589\*; venire 1345.
- Opere magno, summo, &c. 1237—1769\*; tanto 2294\*.
- Operire 2022.
- Opinio '*reputation for*' *with gen.* 1318; opinione præcipere 1238; major 1266; celerius 1270; opinione omnium, '*following the general opinion*' 2073\*.
- Opinor, *parenthetical*, 1607; hoc esse 1532 a\*.
- Oportet faciam 1606, 1779\*, 1494\*; facere 1638\*; hoc fieri 1356, 1761\*; hoc factum or factum esse 1371 d, 1402, 1444; fieri oportuit, oportuerat 1366, 1535 b, d.
- Opperi aliquem 1663; dum exeat 1664; dum exit 1663.
- Oppetere letum 1385\*; mortem 1610\*.
- Oppido *cf.* 511 (1); '*utterly*' 2027\*; quam *with adj.* 1649.
- Opportunus, *with dat.* 1382 a, 1383 a.
- Opprobrio esse *Pref. p.* xlix.
- Oppugnari capite ac fortunis '*in respect of*' 2019 fin.\*.
- Optative subjunctive 1586—1592.
- Optentui esse *Pref. p.* xlix.
- Opto aliquid 1120 a; decorari 1587.
- Opus est, *general use* 1255, *cf. Pref. p.* lxxi; mihi gladius 1225; gladio 1226; gladii 1225; sumpti '*cash*' 1113\*; videre, me videre 1255; viso 1256; tacito 2290\*; hoc viso 1255; visu 1255; often *with quid* 1255; nihil 1094.
- per opus '*very necessary*' 1839\*.
- Orare aliquem 1622; aliquem aliquid 1122; aliquid alicui 1138; ut redeas 1468 fin.\*.
- Oratio obliqua defined 1780; *use of moods* 1781—1784 (*for infin. comp.* 1351, 1352; *for subj.* 1774 and 1736); *use of pronouns* 1786; *use of tenses* 1785, 1527; *tabular statement of conversion of or. rect. into or. obl.* 1787; *instances* 1788; *expression of questions* 1782; *occurrence of indicative in midst of or. obl.* 1797, 1798.
- Orator pacis petendæ 1310, *Pref. p.* lxvii.
- Orbus, *with abl.*, 1212, 1335; *with gen.* 1211.
- Ordine 1236; recte atque ordine 1940\*; extra ordinem 1958, 2122\*.
- Ornamento esse *Pref. p.* l.
- Ornatu esse *Pref. p.* l.
- Ortus, *with abl.* 1264, 1517\*; *with ex* 1777\*; *with a* 1687\*; ab aliquo oriri 1768\*.
- Ostentui esse 1160, *Pref. pp.* xxxiv, l.
- Pace tua, or alicujus, dixerim 1246, 1590; bona cum pace 1883.
- Pacto nescio quo 1244; quo 2215\*; eodem quo 2285\*; quoque pacto 2290\*.
- Pæne, *with perf. ind. in apodosis* 1574 c; *with subst.* 2153\*.
- Pænitet me tui 1328, 2265\*; quod

- traduxerim 1744; pænitebit curasse 1371 c.
- Palam, *general usage* 2026; *with abl.* 2028; palam esse, facere 2027; fieri 1717\*; palam facto 1253.
- Pallere, *with acc.* 1123.
- Par alicui 1142, 1281, 1153\*, 1460\*; alicujus 1280; cum aliquo 1281.
- Parare 'procure' aliquid aliqua re 1218; 'set about' *with infin.* 1344; bellum 1533 a\*; omnia ad ludos 1642\*.
- Paratus 'ready' *with dat.* 1142; *with infin.* 1382\*; ad vim 1557\*; ad pugnandum 1696\*.
- Parcere alicui 1134; dignitati 1571\*; vitæ 2014\*; *with infin.* 1344.
- Parentetical verbs, &c. 1607, 1761.
- Parere 'obey' alicui 1136, 1668\*, 1750\*; si paret, 'if it appears' 1753.
- Pars militum 1290; *with sing or plur. verb* 1434; pars...pars *in apposition to the whole* 1289, 1434\*.
- partem maximam, bonam 1102; magnam partem æstatis 'for a great part of' &c. 1643\*; multis partibus major 'many times greater' 1204; omnibus part. maj. 'infinitely greater' 1204.
- 'Part concerned,' *in abl.* 1210; *in acc.* 1102; *in gen. after adjectives* (Tacitean use) 1320; *part of body after passive verbs (acc.)* 1126, 1127.
- Particeps, *with gen.* 1300, 1281\*, 2192\*.
- Participles: *general use* 1014, 1017 f, 1071—1075; *as simple adjectives* 1074; *as simple substantives* 1075; *in abl. of circumstances, with substantive* 1250; *with sentence* 1252; *alone* 1254, 1253; *dependent on opus, usus* 1250, 1256, 1255; *with quasi, nisi* 1250.
- Partic. Future: *with sum to form future tenses* 1494; *as apodosis of certain conditional sentences, (indic.)* 1570; (fuerim) 1521, 1572; *in accus. without esse* 1347, 1444; *denoting a purpose* 1115 (3), 1073.
- Partic. Perfect: *use to form perfect tenses of passive* 1450—1453; *used predicatively without est, &c.* 1443 b; *in accus. without esse* 1347, 1444; *with substantive to express abstract notion* 1406—1411, 1556\*; *also by itself in neuter* 1411; *having part of body, or thing worn, as object in accus.* 1126, 1127; *used as obl. predicate after habeo, curo, volo, &c.* 1402.
- Partim 1429, 1294, 2292\*.
- Partitive genitive 1290—1300; *not used, when the whole is not divided* 1295; *exchanged for an apposition* 1289; *for a prepositional phrase* 1291, e.g. *with ex* 1942; *de* 1908; *in* 1972; *inter* 1995.
- Parum *as adverbial accus.* 1095; parum optimatem esse 1665\*; parum prudentiæ 1296; parum est rebus servandis (dat.) 1382\* a; parum est, *with inf.* 1715\*.
- Parvi esse 1186; interest, refert 1189; parvo emere 1186, 1197.
- Pascor, *with abl.* 1214, 1104\*.
- Passive: *general meaning of inflexions,* 1415—1417; *passive of intransitive verbs rarely personal* 1421; *generally impersonal* 1422; *change of active expression to passive* 1420, 1353.
- Passive verbs with cognate nominative 1424; *with neut. pron. (acc. or nom. ?) of extent* 1423; *with object of thing asked* 1124; *of part of body, or thing worn,* 1126, 1127; *with infinitive object* 1349; *with infin. as secondary predicate* 1353; *with agent expressed by ablative with ab* 1221, 1812; *by dative* 1146; *substitutes for passive future infin.* 1369, 1380; *for pluperf. subj.* 1521.
- Patere *with dat.* 1401, 1153\*.
- Patior te ire 1099\*, 1553\*, 1747; navium patiens esse 1730\*; inediæ, &c. 2159\*.
- Paucis te volo (i.e. verbis monere) 1237; ausculta paucis (possibly = mihi paucis monenti) 1763\*.
- Pauperare aliquem nuce 1676\*.
- Peccare libidine, fraude 1777\*; imbecillitate, viribus 2285\*.
- Pecunia vænire, &c., 1196; pecuniæ judicari, damnare, &c., 1325.

*Pedes in measurements* 1086; *pedum* 1304, 1308; *pedibus præliari* 1236; *metiri, iter conficere*, 1241; *ire, &c.* 1170\*, 1716\*, 1957\*; (*ire in sententiam alicujus* 'vote for a man's resolutions') 1241; *trahi* 1575\*, 2037\*.

*Pellere aliquem sede* 1262.

*Pendere animi, animis* 1321.

*Penes, general use* 2029, 2030, 1810\*, 1818\*.

*Penetro me* 'hide myself' 1615\*.

*Pensi nihil habere* 'to have no consideration' 1298, 1301; *nec fidem pensi habere* 'not to hold honour in consideration' 1301.

*Penus defined* 1383 a\*.

*Per general usage* 2031—2037; *in composition* 2038—2040; *of thing along which* 1083, 1173, 2032; *of time throughout which* 1089, 1515\*; *in the course of which* 1183, 2034; (*per imbrem*) 1533; *of personal (and other) instruments* 1213, 2035, 1233\*, 1691\*; *in oaths, e.g. per quicquid deorum est, per hanc dextram, &c.* 2035; *of the manner* 1239; *per domos* 'in the several houses' or 'from house to house' 2033; *per manus* 'from hand to hand' 2032; *per me* 'for all I care' 2037; *per me stare quominus* 2035, 1644; *per aliquem licere* 1574 (3)\*, 1741\*; *per mutua* 1097; *per obliqua* 2032; *per pedes lora trajectus* 1127; *ipse per se* 2036; *per turmas* 'in squadrons' 1538 fin.\*.

*Percontari aliquem aliquid* 1122.

*Perdunt* 1588, 1594.

*Peream ni, si non with indic.* 1575; *periisti si* 'you are a dead man, if' 1533 b.

*Perfect indicative: corresponds to two English tenses* 1452; *contrasted with imperfect tenses* 1454; *general use, historical perfect (i.e. aorist)* 1473—1475; *perfect proper (= present perfect or absolute perfect)* 1476—1479; *Perfect passive with sum as distinguished from fui* 1453;

*in absolute statements of power,*

*duty, &c.* 1535 b: *of repeated action in principal clause* 1479; *in subordinate clause with cum* 1478, 1717; *corresponding to English pluperfect, with pæne, prope* 1474, 1574; *with postquam, antequam* 1475, 1671; *in sentences with dum* 1665—1669; *for perfect future* 1533 b\*.

*Perfect subjunctive, general use* 1507, 1509; *in apodosis to conditional sentences* 1530, 1532 b; *in modest assertions, e.g. crediderim, dixerim* 1538, 1540; *in prohibitions* 1596, 1602; *in final sentences* 1642; *after verbs of fearing* 1652; *in consecutive sentences* 1516, 1524, 1696, 1700; *in concessive clauses* 1622; *with ut* 1706.

*Perfect infinitive: general use* 1364—1367; *of repeated acts* 1370; *after volo, possum, satis est, &c.* 1371; *melius (utilius) fuerat* 1535 d; *after memini* 1372; *potest optasse contrasted with potuit optare* 1366; *amat scripsisse* 1848\*.

*Perfectus litteris græcis 'accomplished in Greek literature'* 1314.

*Pergo with infin.* 1386\*, 1432\*; *Romam* 1756\*.

*Periculo tuo* 'at your risk' 1244, cf. 1958\*; *periculo esse* *Pref. p. l.*; *periculum est ne* 1652; *with infin.* 1360.

*Perinde celebris* 1665\*; *ac* 1707 a; *ut* 1547\*.

*Periphrastic conjugation, see Conjugatio.*

*Perire ferro, morbo* 1440 fin.\*; *eodem leto* 1624\*.

*Peritus, with gen.* 1314; *juris* 1706\*; *regionum* 2267\*; *with infin.* 1361.

*Permissu Hannibalis* 1746\*.

*Permitto alicui ire* 1138, 1139; *corpora cremari* 1139.

*Pernicii esse* *Pref. p. l.*

*Per opus est* 1839\*.

*Perosus, with accus.* 1120 a.

*Perpetuitate dicendi* 'in the whole of a speech' 2274\*.

*Perquam* 1649.

*Person of verb when the subject is com-*

- posed of several persons 1436: second person subjunctive of an assumed subject ('you'='one') 1544, 1546; third person sing. of indefinite person without expressed subject 1430; third pers. plural 1428.
- Personal pronouns, see Pronouns.
- Persuadere, with dat. of person 1422, 1539\*; animus persuasus est 1421; persuadetur mihi animos emori 1422; ut with subj. 1671\*, 2268\*.
- Pertæsum est me tui 1328.
- Pertinet ad te 1533 c.
- Pes, see Pedes.
- Pessimo publico (abl.) 'to the greatest possible injury of the state' 1245, 1572\*.
- Pessum 'to the bottom' ire, dare, premere 1112.
- Petere 'be a candidate for' consulatū 1439\*; supra 'aim higher' 1569\*; abs te ut (subj.) 1694\*.
- Piget me tui 1328; me civitatis morum 1665\*; quod piget 1329; me vidisse 1687\*.
- Pignori (pigneri) opponere 2018\*; ponere 2053\*; retinere 1162; esse, &c., Pref. p. 1; pignus esse, Pref. p. xxviii.
- Pili non facere 'not to value at a hair' 1187.
- Place from which 1258 sq.; (with prep.) 1259; at which 1168, 1170; (with prep.) 1167; whither 1108, &c.; (with prep.) 1111; about which 1086; (with prep.) 1083.
- Placet with infin. obj. sentence 1749\*; alicui 1728\*.
- Plane 'quite' with verbs 1638\*, 1757\*, 2232\*; bene peculiatius 1041; dicere 'to say plainly' 1690\*.
- Plebis homo 2246 a\*.
- Plenus with gen. 1336, 1648\*, 1684; with abl. 1339, 1039\*.
- Plerumque 1095, 1874\*, 1885\*.
- Ploro commissum 1123; subducta viatica 1120 c.
- Pluit lapidibus 1212; lapides 1211.
- Pluperfect indicative: contrasted with imperfect 1454; amatus eram and fueram 1449, 1453; amaturus fueram 1494; general use 1487—1493: in absolute statements of power, duty, &c. 1535 d; in apodosis of conditional sentences 1533 d; of repeated actions 1493, 1717; use in letters 1490; in reference to time of action named in subsequent sentence 1489; of action immediately consequent upon another 1492; pluperf. of act used as imperfect of state 1491; with dum, postquam, &c. 1491.
- Pluperfett subjunctive: in conditional sentences (prolasis and apodosis) 1533 d; in reported conditions 1750; not found in dependent apodosis 1521 and note; used after ni, nisi in qualifying extravagant statements 1574 (3); in wishes 1588, 1592; in concessions 1622; with quamvis 1624; with cum 'although' 1730; jussive subjunctive 1604; in final sentences 1642; after donec 1670; of repeated actions 1716; of occasion, with cum 1720; with qui relative (for cum) 1714.
- Plural predicate when subject is noun of multitude 1434, 1061 b; or is composed of several substantives 1436; or of two substantives united by cum or nec 1437; or is distributed by alius...alius, &c. 1440: ex eo numero, qui (plur.) 1061 b; uter eratis 1434; nos, &c. for ego 229\*; verb in third person plural of 'persons in general' 1428; predicative dative not found in plural, Pref. p. xxvii; plural noun with singular gerundive in genitive 1396, Pref. p. lxxviii.
- Plure, pluris of value and price 1187, Pref. p. lviii; pluris emere 1188, 1634\*, stare 1188; facere 2282\*.
- Plures = mortuos 1615\*; nolo pluribus (i.e. verbis dicere) 1237.
- Plus qualifies adjectives 1021, and verbs 1095, 1643\*, with and without quam 1273; plus ac 1553\*; plus eo 1270; unā plures tribus 'the tribes by a majority of one' 1204; plus frumenti' 1643\*.
- Pœnæ esse Pref. p. 1; pœnas dare alicui 2290\*.

- Pœnitet, *see* Pœnitet.  
 Pol 1725\*.  
 Politus est artibus 1683\*.  
 Pollere 2042.  
 Polliceor auxilium Ubiis 1750\*.  
 Pondo 1209.  
 Pone *prep. with accus.* 2041; pone versus 'hindwards' 2041 (1).  
 Pono in *with abl.* 1963, 1066\*.  
 Populabundus agros 1405\*.  
 Popularis sceleris 'companions in crime' 1117\*.  
 Por- in *composition* 2042.  
 Porricere, porrigere 2042.  
 Porro 1539\*; porro dare, 'to pass (athing) on' 1580\*; describere 1691\*.  
 Porta ingredi, eruptionem facere 1176; se proripere 1110\*.  
 Portare 2042.  
 Poscere aliquem aliquid 1122; ab aliquo 1125.  
*Position of words in sentence* 1035—1056; *of subordinate sentences* 1056, 1057.  
 Possidere 2042.  
 Possum *with infin.* 1344; *with perf. infin.* 1371 b; *in proper sense* 1552\*; possum omnia 1094; persuaderi potuit 1422; nihil noceri potest 1423;  
 possum, poteram, potui, &c. *where* possim, &c. *might have been expected* 1535; *in apodosis of conditional sentence* 1520, 1566; *use in lieu of dependent pluperf. subj.* 1521, 1568; potui optare, 'I might have wished' 1366, 1420\*; si possit, 'whether he can,' 'in order that he may if possible' 1754; potin' ut (*subj.*) 1642 fin.; ut ne (*subj.*) 1842; non possum facere quia 1702; non possum quin 1646; non possum non 2243;  
 quanta maxima potest esse 1637; quam maximas potest copias 1637; quibus (diebus) scies poterisque 1603\*; quam potes ambiguus notis 1639.  
 Post, *general use of* 2043—2049; *in composition* 2050; post fuere 2048; post memoriam 1075\*; ex post facto 2045; post paulo 2073\*; post tanto 2045; paucis post dietus 1206; post sextum annum 1310; post spei (*sc. ædem*) 2044. *See also* Postquam.  
 Poste 2043, 2045.  
 Postea 2047; *of logical consequence* 2048 b; posteaquam, *see* Postquam.  
 Posthac 2047, 1602\*.  
 Postibi 2047.  
 Postid locorum 2045; postidea 2047.  
 Postilla 2047.  
 Postquam (posteaquam) *with pres. indic.* 1460, 1719; *with imperf. indic.* 1491, 1719; post diem tertium quam 1181, 1799.  
 Postridie 1178; *with accus.* 1106 c; ejus diei 2060\*.  
 Postulo aliquid ab aliquo 1125; aliquem repetundarum 1324; majestatis 2121\*; facias 1606; ut ne facias 1648.  
*Potential mood—a name often given to the uses of the subjunctive in* 1536—1546.  
 Potestas *with gen. gerund.* 1396, 1558 fin.\*.  
 Potior *with abl.* 1226, 1532 c; *with gen.* 1334, 1776\*; *with accus.* 1223.  
 Potivi eam servitutis 1334.  
 Potius quam *with subj.* 1676, 1603\* bis; *with infin.* 1677; potius quam ut *with subj.* 1678; sive potius 2219; vel potius 1722\*, 2218\*.  
 Pōtū esse, &c. *Pref. pp.* xxxiii, 1, lxxxix.  
 Præ, *general use of* 2051—2056; *in composition* 2057—2059; *compounds often transitive* 1121; *used of a hindrance* 1227, 2056; *of a cause* 2056, 1762\*; præquam 1645, 2054; præ ut 1707 b, 2054; præ quod tu velis (*i.e.* præ eo quod) 2054; præ manu, 'ready to hand' 2053; præ se ferre, 'to exhibit' 2053, 1784\*.  
 Præbere aliquid alicui 1134, 1971\*.  
 Præcipes = præceps 1649\*, *cf.* 417.  
 Præcipio hoc alicui ut faciat 1545\*.  
 Præcipitare se in Tiberim 1678\*.  
 Prædæ esse *Pref. p.* 1.  
 Prædibus cavere 1218.  
 Præditus *with abl.* 1677\*.

- Præesse alicui 1134; *used absolutely* 1135.  
 Præficere aliquem legioni 1290\*.  
 Præire verba 1121.  
 Præmio esse *Pref. p. li.*  
 Præpedire 2057.  
 Præquam 1645, 2054; præquod 2054.  
 Prærodere ungues 2264\*.  
 Præsentē nobis 1251.  
 Præsertim qui (*ind.*) 1432\*; qui præsertim (*subj.*) 1714 fin.; præsertim cum (*ind.*) 1725; (*subj.*) 1728, 1732.  
 Præsidere *with dat.* 1073 fin.\*.  
 Præsidio esse, &c. 1162, *Pref. p. li.*; præsidium esse *Pref. p. xxviii.*  
 Præstare, 'excel' 1066\*; aliquem 1121, 1203\*; alicui 1203\*, 1205\*, 1210\*, 1939\*; 'exhibit', se invictum 1221\*; 'perform', aliquid 1541\*.  
 Præsto esse alicui 1134, 1621 fin.\*, 1807\*.  
 Præter, *general use of* 2060—2067; *in composition* 2068; ceteris præter condemnatis 2066.  
 Præterea, præterhac 2063.  
 Præterpropter 2061.  
 Præterquam 2062, 2064, 2066.  
 Prævaricari 2047.  
 Prævortī alicui rei 1140, 1135\*, 2088\*.  
 Præut, *see* Præ.  
 Pransus 1732\*, *cf.* 735.  
 Precor deos, precor salutem 1125; aliquid alicui 1138.  
 Predicate defined 1008; *contrasted with attribute* 1012, 1015:  
     *primary* 1016; *formed by finite verb* 1017; *by noun* 1017, 1442, 1443; *by participle*, 1072; *by infinitive* 1359:  
     *secondary* 1016, 1017; *formed by substantive* 1059, 1357; *by adjective* 1060, 1357; *by participle* 1072, 1073; *by infinitive* 1353: *in special case* 1019, 1020, *viz. genitive* 1282; *dative* (*i.e. curæ esse*) 1158, *Pref. p. xxvii.*:  
     *oblique* 1017d, e; *formed by infinitive* (*primary*) 1351; (*in exclamations*) 1358; *gerundive* 1401; *past part.* 1402; *with accus.* in exclamations 1128; *cognate* 1100; *in ablative of description, manner, circumstances* 1230  *foll.*, *especially* 1242—1250; *secondary pred. of unexpressed subject of infin.* 1357, *Pref. p. xxiii.*; 1726\* (*inanem redire*).  
*Noticeable secondary predicates:*  
 facio exheredem 1486; fero expensum 1134\*; gero majus 1633; habeo fidelissimum 1291; indictum 1064; nisi admonito 1073; nisi victores 1428\*; nomen mihi est Menæchmo 1059; potissimus temptabat 1383a\*; præceps quærebat 1383a\*; repetit insaniens 1532aa\* (*p. 222*); proponi cereus 1587\*; quamvis audaci 1627; Jovi Statori 1751\*; video callidiorē 1249\*; uti me æquo 1762\*; ut Poenus 1059; ut suffecturas 1073.  
*Prepositions: general use of* 1005e, 1800—1803; *position* 1038, 1804, 1805; *not prefixed to supine* 1381, *comp.* 1390; *when used with gerund* 1375, 1376; *when used in expressing 'place whither'* 1111; 'place where' 1167; 'place whence' 1259; *repeated after compounds* 1263; *often compounded with intransitive verbs, make them intransitive* 1120b, 1121; *prepositional phrases used as predicates* 1019, 1020a; *as attributes* 1019, 1020b.  
*Present tense: indicative, general use of* 1455; *in apodosis to subj. protasis* 1574; *historic present* 1457; *with dum* 1458, 1663; *with jam pridem, olim, &c.* 1460; *for future* 1461; *with dum, 'until'* 1462, 1663; *in orat. obl.* 1784a:  
     *imperative* 1495; *in prohibitions* 1597:  
     *subjunctive* 1507—1509; *interchangeable with future indic. in conditional sentences* 1531 *and note*; *in prohibitions* 1596, 1600:  
     *infinitive, general use of* 1364, 1368; *after memini* 1372; *historic* 1359.  
 Pretio (*abl.*) 'for a price' 1196, 1218.  
 Pridie 1178; pridie Compitalia 1106c.  
 Primus, primum *as second. pred.* 1017c, d, 1122\*, 1124\*; primus quisque

- 2284, 1464 fin.\*; 1598\*; primum omnium 1545\*; cum primum (*subj.*) 1720, (*ind.*) 1721; quam primum *see* Quam; simul primum (*subj.*) 1720; simul ac primum (*ind.*) 1719; primum...deinde 1471\*, 1640\*, 2207; primo...deinde 1546\*.
- Privare *with abl.* 1335, 1468\*, 1621\*.
- Priusquam *with subj.* 1672, 1674; *with indic.* 1671, 1675, 1476; *with present, of future event* 1462; *with infin.* 1677; amicitia prius quam salutis 1665\*; priusquam.....prius 1100\*.
- Pro, *general use of*, 2069—2075; *with gerund* 1386; *in composition* 2076—2079;  
*for indirect object* 1133; *for predicative dative* 1159, 1162\*;  
 pro cauto timidum (vocare) 1606\*;  
 pro damnato 2073; pro eo quasi 2075; pro eo quod 2074; pro eo ut 1707b; pro imperio 2072; pro indicio 2073; pro nihilo 1159; pro noxia castigare 2018\*; pro parte 2075; pro quam 1645; pro virili parte 2075; pro se proque Remo esse 1627\*; pro solido 2075; prout 1707a, b, 2107\*.
- Pro, *in exclamations with nom. or voc.* 1082; pro di immortales 1539\*; pro deum immortalium (*sc. fidem*) 1129; *with accus.* 1128.
- Probare 'gain one's approval of,' aliquid alicui 1149, 1041\*, 1152\*, 1537\*; 'approve of,' aliquid 1066\*.
- Probe acutus 1640\*.
- Probro esse *Pres. p. li.*
- Procul, *general use of*, 2080—2086; *with abl.* 2082, 2086, 1336\*; procul juxta sitos 1646 fin.\*.
- Procumbere terræ 1168; anni tempore atque imbribus 1491\*.
- Profecto, 'no doubt' 1538\*, 1571\*, 1726.
- Profiteri se philosophum 1694.
- Profugus regni 1318.
- Prohibere aliquem aliqua re 1262, 1963\*, 2240a\*; ab aliqua re 1263; munitiones 1566\*; nepotem habere classis 1377\*; prohibeor ponere 1349, 2218\*.
- Proin 2069, 2178\*.
- Proinde, 'wherefore' 1533a\*, 1546\*, 1624\*; uti (*ind.*)...proinde, 'according as' 1707a; proinde ac (*ind.*) 1581; ac si (*subj.*) 1580.
- Promptu, esse in, habere in 1390; promptus esse veniæ dandæ 1422\*.
- Pronouns defined 1003, 1004; *general distinctions of demonstrative pron.* 2258—2261; *of indefinite pron.* 2271—2282; *of interrogative* 2296; *dependent (interrog.)* 1758—1764; *logically, not grammatically, dependent* 1761;  
*use of personal pron.* 1426, 2295—2299; *expressed* 1615, 1618, 1619; *of possessive pron.* 1278—1284, 2302; *for objective genitive* 1315; *of reflexive pron.* 2262—2270; *of relative pron. in simple definitions* 1633, 1681—1693, *comp.* 1026b, 1711—1715, 1741; *in final sentences* 1632, 1634; *in consecutive sentences* 1680—1690; *in limiting sentences* 1692, 1694; *in conditional sentences* 1558, 1559; *of attendant circumstances* 1714; *in reported definitions, &c.* 1740; *distinguished from interrogatives* 1763, 1765; *in indefinite relative clauses* 1697, 1402\* (ubi ubi), 2290.
- Prope, *general use of* 2087—2093; prope ab 'near to' 2088, 2092; prope diem 1074\*; prope est (or est factum) ut (*subj.*) 2091, 2295\*; prope *with perfect* 1474; prope similis 1875\*.
- Properat *with infin. object-clause* 1776\*.
- Propino hoc alicui 1138.
- Propior, propius *with accus.* 1106c; *with dative* 1107, 2016\*, 2033\*.
- Proprius *with gen.* 1280; *with dat.* 1281.
- Propter, *general use of* 2094—2097; propterea quod 1580 fin.\*, 1745\*; quia 2097; ut (*subj.*) 1603\*; quia propter 2097; præter propter 2061.
- Propugnaculo esse *Pres. p. lii.*
- Proquam...ita 1645.
- Prorsus, 'forwards' 2173; 'quite'



- 2173 fin.; nihil prorsus 1363; nullus prorsus 1583\*.  
*'Protasis' explained* 1025; *comp.* 1518, 1519, &c.  
 Protinam 2166.  
 Protinus (protenus) 2166, 2105\*; protinus juxta, 'close to,' 'immediately after' 2016.  
 Providere loca idonea 1398\*.  
 Prout 1707 b, 2107\*.  
 Proximus, proxime *with accus.* 1106 c, 2175\*; *with dative* 1107, 1248\*, quam proxime 1637.  
 Prudens *with gen.* 1314.  
 Pudet 1431; me alicujus 1328; prodire 1725\*; optimum esse 1665\*; id pudet, hæc pudet 1329.  
 Pudor *with obj. gen.* 1409; pudori esse 1638\*, *Pref. p.* lii; pudor esse *Pref. p.* xxviii.  
*Punishment in locative* 1190; *in abl.* 1200; punire capite 1407\*; *in genitive* 1325; (*strictly place of punishment*) *in accus. with ad* 1199.  
 Purgare se alicui 1149; aliquem culpæ 1324.  
 Puto posse facere 1777\*; me videre 1533 c\*; hæc eventura 1532 c\*; tecru- delem civem *ib.* cf. 1602\*; puta ita esse 1621; putes, 'one would think' 1544.  
 Qua modo 1692; qua opera...eadem opera 1237, 1558\*; qua...qua (=et ...et) 1176, 1177, 1180\*, 2205.  
 Quadam tenus 2164.  
 Quæro ab or ex aliquo 1125; quæro si 1754; quid quæris? 'in short' 1764; si quærimus 1573.  
 Quæsito opus est 1538\*, cf. 1256.  
 Quæso *parenthetically* 1607, 1761, 1729\*; liberum quæsumdum gratia 1115 (2).  
 Quæstione, esse in, 'to be to seek' 1390; abesse ab, 'be out of the way when sought' 1393 fin.  
 Quæstui esse *Pref. p.* lii.  
 Qualiscumque 2290.  
 Quam 'how?' 1759; *dependent* 1760, 1762; quam mox? 1759; clam me est, quam graviter, &c. 'concealed from me, how greatly,' &c. 1879; 'how!' 1759, 1761; quam clem- ter, 'so mildly!' 1579; quam fami- liariter 1965\*; quam non laboriosa 2222\*:  
 'as'; after tam 1639; quam maxi- me, quam possum maxime 1637, 1146\*, 1733\*; quam minumo, 'at the lowest possible price' 1196; quam primum, 'as soon as possible' 1694\*, 1287\*, 1379\*; quam sæpe, 'as often as' 1639; quam volet &c. 1624; quam vellet 1535 c\*:  
 'than'; *with coordinate words* 1021, 1267, 1269, 1271, 1682\*; *with new sentence* 1269, 1243; *after dates* 1180, 1673, 1674; major quam qui 1682; quam qui maxime 1641; quam quantus 1204\*, 1641, 1778\*; (plus) quam est necesse 2247\*; quam pro 2075; potius (nihil longius) quam ut 1678; nihil putat optabi- lius quam me diligi 2280\*; magis quia...quam quod 1744:  
 'how,' 'than,' &c., *after the follow- ing words*: admodum 1649; advorsum 1841; æque 1275; alius 1277; ante 1671—1675; citius 1541, 1671, 1676; citra 1873; contra 1894; dimidius 1267; extra 1959; infra 1986; in- super 2150; intra 2003; libentius 1676; magis 1271; mire 1649; mirum 1647; nimis 1649; oppido 1649; per 1649; post 1471, 1475, 1719; potius 1676, 1677, (*with infin.*) 1784 b; præ 1645, 2054; præter 2062, 2064, 2066; pridie 1674; prius 1671—1677; pro 1645; sane 1649; super 2150; supra 1645, 1873\*, 2159; tam 1580, 1583; tantum 1639; triduum 1673; valde 1649; vide 1762, 1761; ultra 1645, 2182:  
 often omitted after plus, amplius 1273, 1557\*.  
 Quamobrem, *relative* 2019; *direct in- terrog.* 1441; *dependent interrog.* 1575\*.  
 Quamquam, 'although,' *with indic. and subj.* 1697; (*subj.*) 1670 fin.\*; 'and yet' 2215, 1708\*.

- Quamvis *with subj.* 1624, 1707d; *with indic.* 1627; *with licet* 1625; *with adjectives* 1627, 1188\*, 1580\*, 2281.
- Quando 'when?' 1612\*; *in dependent clause* 2263\*; 'since' 1747, 1611\*, cf. 1358; 'at any time' 1779\*;  
quandocumque 'sometime or other' 2290; quandoquidem (*ind.*) 1797.
- Quantus maximus potest, &c. 1637, 1570\*; quantum in te est 1693; quantum vis 1283; quantum potest 1779\*; nisi quantum (*subj.*) 1694; immane, mirum, &c. quantum 1647; quantum...habent, 'so great...have they' 1715; tanto...quanto 1204; eo...quantum 1203; quanti 'at how much' 1186; quanti...tanti 1533a\*; quanti damnatus 1190; *as depend. interr.* 1760; pro eo quanti te facio 2075; quantiquanti 2290.
- Quantuscunque 1697, 2290.
- Quapropter, *rel. and interrog.* 2097, 2289\*.
- Quare 1768\*.
- Quasi, *with ind.* 'just as' 2173\*; *with subj.* 1580, 1569\*, 1610\*, 2237\*; *with noun* 1583, 1110\*, 1593\*, 1977\*, 2030\*; quasi quidam 2081\*; 'about' 1120a fin.\*; pro eo quasi 2075; quasi...ita, *see Ita.*
- Quatenus 2163; 'inasmuch as' (*ind.*) 1747; 'how far,' *dep. interr. (subj.)* 1762; est quatenus (*subj.*) 1686.
- Quatere aliquem mente 'from his mind' 2239\*.
- Que difference from et, ac 2195; appended (rarely) to word common to the joined members 1047 fin.; quodque 1233\*.
- Queror *with acc.* 1072\*, 1120c; questum injurias 1379; de se 1114; de metu 1468\*.
- Questions simple, *with particles* 2249, 2251—2253; *with pronouns* 2289, 1609, 1610, 1613—1615, 1619; *without either* 2249, 2254; *dubitative i.e. with jussive subj.* 1610; *repeated in surprise (with pronouns) subj.* 1770; *in reply, taking up another's words (subj.)* 1618; (*ind.*) 1619; (*without change of mood*) 1771;  
quasi-dependent (*ind.*) e.g. after audin', scio, &c. 1761; *dependent, ordinary (subj.)* 1758—1764; *with jussive subj.* 1612; *with quin* 1768; *use of tenses* 1526;  
alternative 2250, 2254; (*dependent*) 2253.
- Direct questions *with an* 2256; etiam 1611; nonne 2251, 2253; -ne 2251; num 2251, 2254; numne 2254; quam mox 1759; quid 1609, 1610; quidni 1614; quin 1615; quippini 1616; satin' 1611; ut 1759; utrum 2256.
- Dependent on (*amongst others*) agitur 1612; ausculto 1758; causa 1760; cerno 1688\*; clam me est 1879; cogito 1612; constat 1612; curæ est 1669; dico 1760; disco 1671 fin.\*; disputo 1622\*; doceo 1764; forsitan 1766; habeo 1612; impero 1612; interest 1764; mirum est 1760; nescio 1758; nosco 1760; pænitet 1760; quæro 1758; quam 1760; quam mox 2175\*; quatenus 1762; quin 1768; rationem habeo 1902\*; refero 1626; rogo 1758; scio 1764; statuo 1612; si 1754; timeo 1758; video 1760; vide quam 1762; vide ut 1762.
- Qui *rel. adj. (see Pronoun): position in sentence* 1044, 1045; *often before preposition* 1038, 1805; *attracted in case (?)* 1066; *in gender and number* 1068; qui, 'such' 1715; sunt qui *with subj.* 1686, 1432\*; est quod (*subj.*) 1533a\*; *with indic.* 1687, 2183\*; qui, 'since he' 1714, 1512\*; præsertim qui (*ind.*) 1432; qui præsertim (*subj.*) 1714; quippe qui *with subj.* 1714; *with indic.* 1711; ut qui, ut pote qui *with subj.* 1714; ut qui maxime 1641; quam qui maxime 1641; qui quidem, qui modo *with subj.* 1692, 1264\*, *with indic.* 1693; qui non *with subj.* 1686; *with indic.* 1689; qui-nē 1691; qui nē 1634; præ quod (=præ eo quod) 2053; præter quæ sunt

- (=præter ea quæ) 2066; quos= quod aliquos 1743; qui=et is 1781, 1794; =si is 1698\* (quem invitus facias).
- Qui, 'at what price' 1196; quique, 'at whatever price' 1196.
- 'with which' 1152\*, 1218, 1632\*, 2258\*.
- 'how?' interrog. and rel. 1228 fin., 1074\*, 1590\*, 1761 (qui possum); ut qui 1696; quippe qui 1713; qui in wishes 1794; 'so that' with subj. 1604\*; cf. 2223\*.
- Quia with subj. 1744; with ind. 1745, 1747; propterea quia 2097.
- Quicumque in limiting clauses (ind.) 1697; of frequent occurrences (ind.) 1717: (subj.) 1716; in protasis of a quasi-conditional sentence 1558; cf. 1560\*; quodcumque militum 1779\*; qui separated from cunque 1717; as indefinite pron. 1482\*, 1540\* (p. 230), 2289.
- Quid prodest? quid hoc juvat? &c. 1094; quid ea commemoro? 1609; quid mi auctor es? 1609; quid opust gladio? 1094, 1255; quid opust facto? 1255, 1256; quid usust facto? 1250, 1255; quid tua refert? 1188, 1189; quid mulieris 1296, 1299; quid est? imusne? &c. 1613; quid ago? 1609; quid est quod with subj. 1632; with ind. 1633; quidni? 1614; quid si with subj. 1578, 1236\*; with indic. 1519, 1110\*, 1441\*; quid faciam, facerem? 1610; scio quid quæras, quod quæris 1763; quid quæris? 'in short' 1764\*; elliptical expressions with quid 1441, 1442.
- Quidam 2271, 2275; quamdam suam 1621\*.
- Quidem in concessions 1621, used after cum 1732, 1842\*; et 1623, 1690\*; ille 2259, 2261; non tu quidem 2055\*, 2261; quando 1747; qui adj. 1692, 1693; si 1747; ut 'as' 1707b. For ne...quidem, see N8.
- Quilibet 1626\*, 2278, 2281; sis qui lubet 1668\*.
- Quin interrog. 1615; with imperat. 1617; with indic. 1617; dependent (e.g. non est dubium quin) 1768, 1378\*, 1568(2).
- relative with subj. in final clauses 1636 and note, 1646; non recusare quin 1622\*, 1973\*; non possum (facere) quin 1646, 1702; in consecutive clauses, for qui non, 1680 and note, 1688, 2085\*; for ut non 1698; nunquam est emptum quin 2075\*; haud multum abest quin (subj.) 1574(3); neque abest suspicio quin 1768; non quin...sed quia 1744.
- Quin etiam 1617, 1606\* (p. 262).
- Quippe, 'since of course' 1701\*; qui (adj.) with subj. 1714; with ind. 1711; qui (adv.) 1713.
- Quippini 1616.
- Quiritare 1732\*.
- Quis, indef. pron. 2271, 2272, 1648\*; nescio quis 1769; dicet, dicat, dixerit quis 1542, 1545, Pref. pp. ci—cvi.
- interrog. 1759, 1761; quis dubitet? 1538; quis negat? 1539; quis dixerit? 1538; in subordinate clause 1638; with participle 1073 (p. 29 fin.); dependent interrog. 1758. See also Quid.
- Quispiam 2271, 2273.
- Quisquam 2278—2280.
- Quisque meaning 2283; with superlative 2284, 2286; primus quisque 1464\*, 2284, 2286; after quo 1643; quotus 2286, 1706\*, 1779\*; unus 2283, 2287; ut 1707, 1716; 1717; with se, suus 2285, 2265, 1069; attracted into the case of suus 2288; used to distribute the first person plur. 1440; as a relative=quisquis 2290 c.
- Quisquis in limitative clauses with ind. 1697, 1569\*, 1611\*, 1717; used absolutely 2289; ut quicquid=ut quidque 1533c\*, 2283, 2285; quicquid hujus 1292; per quicquid deorum est 2035; cuiusmodi 1311, 1168\*; quicquid appropinquabant, 'the nearer they approached' 1094; arbitrum adegit, quicquid oporteret &c. 1752; quique libebunt 'at whatever price they shall be bid for' 1196.
- Quivis 2278, 2281; quem voles 1557\*.

Quo interrogative 1260\*; *after ut* 1638; *quo loci* 1174; *quo of persons and things* 1113, 1752; '*for what purpose?*' *Pref. p. xxx. note*; *quo mihi?* 1152, 1441; *quo mihi tantum opus fuit* 1152:

*relative, of place eodem...* *quo* 1296; *of measure quo...eo* (hoc) 1204, 1643, 2285\*; '*on which account*' *eo...quo* 1228; *non quo...* *sed quia* 1744, 2231\*; *quo magis* 1643; *quo facilius* (*subj.*) 2130\*; *ea gratia...quo facilius* 2258\*; *quo minus with subj. p. 274 note*, 1644, 2035\*; *with indic.* 1643:

*quo genere* 1232; *quo pacto* '*how*' 2215\*; *quo pluris* '*at a larger price than which*' 1634\*:

*indefinite, ne quo Pref. p. xxx*; *si quo* 1225.

Quoad '*up to which point*' 1633; '*until*' *with subj.* 1664; *with indic.* 1661, 1669; '*so long as*' *with indic.* 1667, 1779\*, 1977\*, 2299\*; *quoad ejus, see Quod ejus* 1297.

Quocirca 1868.

Quod, '*what*'; *quod genus, 'as for instance'* 1103, 1104; *quod ejus* 1294, 1297, 1095\*; *quod factost opus* 1256; *quod ego fui* 1426; *dico quod sentio, quid sentiam* 1463; *quod sciam* 1694, 1360\*; *quod...sit* '*so that it is*' 1690 *fin.*; *quod in te fuit* 1695; *quod...facere poteris* 1695; *quod ad te pertinet* 1026b\*; *attinet* 1534\*, 1695; *quod aiunt* '*as the saying is*' 1539\*; *quod bonum sit* 1588; *quod contra* 1897 *and note*.

Quod, '*because*' *with ind.* 1745; *with subj.* 1744; '*the fact that*' (*ind.*) 1701, 1703; *used after accedit* 1701; *accidit* 1701; *adice* 1428\*; *ad id* 1703; *magni æstumo* 1485a\*; *defendo* 1744; *laudo* 1744; *mitto* 1701; *obice* 1744; *pænitet* 1744; *parum est* 2150\*; *prætereo* 1701; *non temere st* 1619\*; *reprehendo* 1745:

*quod dicis, 'as to your saying'* 1749; *quod dicas* 1748; *quod di-*

*ceret* = *quod, ut dicebant* 1746, 1558 *fin.\**:

*est quod with subj.* 1686; *with indic.* 1687; *non quod* 1744; *propterea quod* 1745, 1580 *fin.\**; *quid est quod* (*indic.*) 1615\*; (*subj.*) 1045\*, 1632, 1686\*:

*quod ni* 1137\*; *quod quia, quod quoniam &c.* 2214; *quod si* '*but if*' 1577, 2209e, 2214, *cf. p. 379 note*.

*Quo magis*, 1643.

*Quominus, see Quo.*

*Quom, see Cum.*

*Quoniam, 'as soon as'* 1719; '*since*' 1747, 1465\*.

*Quopiam* '*in any direction*' 1656\*, 1716\*.

*Quoquam*, 1608\*.

*Quodque* 1553\*, 1726\*; *position in sentence* 1055.

*Quoquo modo* 1697; *quoquo versus* 2175.

*Quorsum* 2175, 1569\*.

*Quot* (*quotquot*) *annis* 1178; *quot mensibus, &c.* 1179; *quot...tot* 2292\*.

*Quotidie* 1178.

*Quoties, relative, with subj.* 1716; *quotiescumque with indic.* 1717, 1583\*;

*dependent interrog.* 1599 *fin.\**.

*Quotus quisque* 2284, 2286, 1706\*, 1779\*, 1341\*.

*Quum, see Cum.*

*Ratio nulla est, with infin.* 1360; *ratio conciliandorum hominum* 1394; *ratione, 'on system,' 'with good reason'* 1236; '*by calculation*' or '*by reasoning*' 2264\*; *rationem habere, 'to have regard to'* 1902\*.

*Re* 1656; *opposed to dictu* 1210; *to verbis* 1137\*, 1439\*; *to consiliis* 1485\*; *re fert* 1285; *e re tua* 1941; *qua re* 1768; *re ipsa* 1639\*; *re vera* 1552\*; *rei esse Pref. pp. xxxvi, lii*; *nulli rei esse* 1156; *quid rei* (*gen.*) *est?* '*what's the matter?*' 1434\*.

*rerum suarum esse* 1282; *sunt lacrymæ rerum, 'events do find tears'* 1433; *quid rerum gero* 1758.

- Re-, red- *in composition* 2098—2104.  
 Recedere ab armis 1719\*.  
 Receptaculo esse *Pref. p. lii*.  
 Receptio est *with accus.* 1400.  
 Receptui esse, &c. *Pref. pp. xxxiii, lii*;  
 receptui signum 1156; canere 1157.  
 Recessim, 'back' 2173\*.  
 Recipere aliquem tecto 1174; in tec-  
 tum 1177; ex hostibus 1673\*.  
 Recordor aliquid 1333, 1473\*; de ali-  
 qua re 1333; hæc me vidisse 1657\*.  
 Recta, 'straightway' 1176; recta re-  
 gione 1173; recto litore, 'along the  
 shore' 1176.  
 Recte (*in answers*), 'all right' 1458\*;  
 recte sane 1713; nec recte 2227,  
 2231.  
 Rectus iudicii 1320.  
 Recusare (non) quin. (*subj.*) 1622\*,  
 1973\*; quominus 1644, 2132\*.  
 Red-, see Re-.  
 Reddere. *with two nouns in accus.*  
 1059; *with pass. part. as obl. pred.*  
 1402.  
 Redit animus hosti 1750\*.  
 Redolere aliquid 1123.  
 Referre alicui acceptum, 'to enter to  
 one's credit' 1134; gratiam 1138;  
 refero ad vos, 'refer it to you' 1626\*;  
 (Actiam pugnam) 'rehearse' 1664\*.  
 Refert meâ, or Ciceronis 1284, 1285;  
 ad me 1287; magni 1188, 1189;  
 magis, magnopere 1189.  
 Refertur *with abl.* 1606\*, 1692\*; *with*  
*gen.* 1336.  
 Reformido dicere 1978\*.  
 Regione 1170; recta, certa 1173; e  
 regione 1940.  
 Regnari, 'be under a king' 1421.  
 Relative pronouns, see Pronouns, and  
 Qui.  
 Religioni haberi 1162; esse, &c. *Pref.*  
*p. lii*; religio est hoc fieri 1161;  
 religionem rumpere 1691\*.  
 Relinquere locum mihi 1511\*; aliquid  
 direptioni 1142; prædæ *Pref. p.*  
*xxxv*; præsidio 1162.  
 Reliqui, 'left', nihil facere 1298,  
 2246b\*;  
 reliquum, 'left' 1301; 'left un-  
 done' 1301, 1384a\*; reliquum diei  
 1384a\*; reliquum est ut *with subj.*  
 1721\*.  
 Remedio esse *Pref. p. lii*; remedium  
 esse *Pref. p. xxviii*; remedium *with*  
*gen.* 1713\*.  
 Remigio sequi 1719\*, cf. 1236.  
 Reminiscor *with gen.* 1332; *with accus.*  
 1333.  
 Remis navigare 1210.  
 Remitto quærere 1600\*.  
 Reperior venisse 1353.  
 Res, see Re.  
 Resonant Amaryllida 1120c.  
 Rescribere ad ea 1593\*; argentum,  
 'pay back' 1691\*.  
 Respondere alicui 1134; benevolentie  
 1977\*.  
 Restat ut *with subj.* 1441\*.  
 Retinere pignori 1162.  
 Retro 2105—2108.  
 Retrorsum 1839\*, cf. 2175.  
 Reus, 'answerable for', *with gen.* 1326,  
 1854\*; capitis 1356\*; 'answerable  
 to', *with gen.* 1280 (*p. 118*).  
 Rideo perfidum or inamabile 1097;  
 hoc præceptum 1545\* (*p. 233*).  
 Ridiculo esse *Pref. p. lii*.  
 Risui esse 1160, *Pref. p. lii*; risus  
 esse *Pref. p. xxviii*; risu emoriri  
 1470\*.  
 Rite 1233, 1714\*.  
 Ritu alicujus 1266\*, 2165\*.  
 Ravis 1239.  
 Rogare aliquem sententiam, &c. 1122;  
 in hæc verba 1536\*; de aliqua re  
 1125; aliquid utendum 1401; num-  
 quid velit 1458\*; ut faciat 1511.  
 Rubori esse *Pref. p. lii*; rubor esse  
*Pref. p. xxviii*.  
 Rure, 'from the country' 1258; rure  
 meo, 'at my country house' 1170;  
 ruri 1168.  
 Rursum vorsum 2173.  
 Sacramento dicere 1238; rogare, a-  
 digere 1245, 1492\*; sacramentum  
 dicere 1245.  
 Saltare Cyclopa 1120, 1123.  
 Saltem 1751\*, 1761\*.  
 Salva fide 1576\*; salvo te 1573\*.  
 Salvare jubet, i. e. 'says salve' 2265\*.

- Salutare aliquem Caium, '*greet one by the name of Caius*' 1745\*.
- Saluti esse, *Pref. p. lii*; salus esse, *Pref. p. xxviii*.
- Sane in concessions 1622, 1599\*; abi sane 2175\*; with *obl. pred.* 1593\*; nisi sane 1569; sane quam 1649; recte sane 1713\*; sane exsomnis, '*quite sleepless*' 1716\*.
- Sapere, '*taste of*', mare 1123.
- Sat, see Satis.
- Satiare aliquem libertate 1557 fin.\*
- Satin' abiit? 1611, 1639\*; satin' ut 1653.
- Satis agere, '*be pretty busy*' 1581 (*p.* 251); satis cum periculo 1883\*; satis dato 1253; sat diu esse 1626\*; satis bono viro est 1371 c; satis superque humili est 1385; satis facere alicui 1700\*; sat habeo, '*I am content*' 1601\*; satis impavidus 1975\*; politus 1683\*; valere 1683\*; validus ad 2246 b\*;  
satis diei 1568(2)\*; tritici quod satis est 1296.
- Satius esse emori 1708\*.
- Satui semen 1157, *Pref. p. xxxiii*.
- Satur with *gen.* 1336; with *abl.* 1339.
- Satus, '*sprung from*' 1264.
- Saucia pectus 1102, 1101 fin.
- Scatere aliqua re 1212.
- Scilicet, '*you may be sure*' 1468\*.
- Scio quid quæras, quod quæris 1763; scire licet aliquid esse 1546\*; scio *parenthetical* 1607; scire volo 1761; scin' 1616\*, 1761; quod sciam 1694; sciens, '*knowingly*' 1588\*.
- Sciscere with *infin. sentence* 1351.
- Scribere Romā 1260; with *inf. object-sentence* 1260\*, 1721\*; de aliqua re 1728\*.
- Se, sibi, *general use* 2262; refer to the grammatical subject 2263; to a word in the sentence, not the subject 2265; to the subject of the principal sentence 2267, 2268 a; to the unexpressed subject of an *infin.* 2270, 2304 g;  
se ipse 2264; se quisque 2285; se inserted by way of emphasis (se quisque conspici poterat) 1776\*; inter se, see Inter.
- secum habere, '*keep to oneself*' 1135; cogitare, '*picture to oneself*' 1232\*, 1711\*; volutare 1663\*; agitare animo 1716\*.
- Se, sed, *prep.* 2109—2111.
- Secretus with *gen.* 1335; with *abl.* 1335.
- Secundum 2112—2116.
- Secus=secundum *p.* 438 note.
- secus, e.g. *altrinsecus*, &c. 2117.
- Secus, '*otherwise*' 1593\*, 1639\*; ac, '*otherwise than*' 1583\*; cedere, '*turn out badly*' 1488\*.
- Secus virile, '*of the male sex*' 1104.
- Sed 2208—2210; sed tu videris 1593; sed tamen 1621\*; sed...tamen 2034\*, 2234\*.
- Sedere, with *abl.* carpento, vestibulo 1170; culmine 1173; sede 2153\*.
- Semper used *adjectively* (eri semper lenitas) 1754\*.
- Senecta ætate, '*in old age*' 1180.
- Senio esse *Pref. p. liii*.
- Sensim excitare, 1672\*.
- Sententia mea 1246; ex animi sententia 1941, 1695\*; ex sententia senatus 1751\*; in qua sententia fuit, '*was of this opinion*' 1439\*; in hanc sententiam ire 1241.
- Sentio aliquem aliquid 1228 fin.\*
- Seorsum, seorsus, sorsum 2174; seorsum corpore toto 2110.
- Seponere aliquid aliquo 1436\*.
- Sermoni esse *Pref. p. liii*.
- Serva (*neut. adj.*) 1646 fin.\*
- Servire salutem alicujus 1134; alicui 1134; servitutem 1100, 1073\*.
- Sestertium: in sestertio vices '*with a property of 2,000,000 sesterces*' 1975 (*cf. vol. I. p. 446*).
- Seu with *verb (ind.)* 1533 c, 1563, 1567; (*subj.*) 1716; with nouns 1154\*, 2220 c.
- Si in regular conditional sentences with *subj.* 1532; with *ind.* 1533; in *protasis*, when *apodosis* has *fut. part.* or *gerundive* 1570; with *pres. subj.* when *apodosis* has *fut. ind.* 1574(2); in reported condition 1750, 1752; sub conditione, si 2133\*; used without *verb* 1439, 1441, 1604\*; with *infin.* 1784:

- si, 'whenever' (*subj.*) 1716; (*ind.*) 1717; 'whether' (*subj.*) 1754; (*ind.*) 1765; 'because' 1533*b* fin. (si fefellerat); 1761\* (si disertus est):  
in protasis, with *ad in apodosis* 1561; with *tamen in apod.* 1560 &c. (*see Tamen*):  
si diis placet 1533; si etiam 1563, 1565; si forte 1441, (*subj.*) 1754, (*ind.*) 1573; si maxime (*subj.*) 1560, (*ind.*) 1561; si minus 1563, 1565, 1726\*; si modo (*ind.*) 1533*a*; sin (*subj.*) 1562, (*ind.*) 1533*a*, 1563; si nihil aliud, 'if he did nothing else' 1384*a*; si non 1533*aa*, 1563, 1565; si quaerimus 1573; si quidem 1747, 1533*a*; si tamen 1533*b*: sive 1563, 1567:  
ac si (*subj.*) 1580; etsi (*ind.*) 1561, (= 'but') 1609\*, 1613\*; etiam si (*subj.*) 1560, (*ind.*) 1561; ideo... si 1761\*; miror si (*subj.*) 1754; (*ind.*) 1757; moriar &c. si (*ind.*) 1575, 1588; nisi 1569, 1574, &c.; non si 1533*aa*; o si (*subj.*) 1562; qua si (*subj.*) 1580, (*ind.*) 1581; (*qualifying a word only*) 1583; quero si (*subj.*) 1754; quam si (*subj.*) 1580, (*ind.*) 1533*aa*; quid si (*subj.*) 1578, (*ind.*) 1579; quod si 2209*e*, 2212; sic...si 1571; tametsi (*subj.*) 1560, (*ind.*) 1561; tamquam si (*subj.*) 1580; tento si (*subj.*) 1754; velut si (*subj.*) 1580; vide si, viso si (*ind.*) 1755; ut si 1430\*.  
Sic referring to what follows 1533; illud sic habeto 1603; sic existumo 2208\*; sic...ne 1650; sic...si 'on this condition, if' 1571*a*\*; *see also* sic ut (*below*):  
referring to what precedes 1672\*, 1757\*; in answers 'so' = 'yes' 1616; sic datur, 'there's for you' 1422\*; sic rideant 1592; 'on these terms' 1668\*; ut...sic 1377 fin.\*, 1581\*, 1717\*:  
sic...ut (*subj.*) 1535*a*\*; *f*\*; (*ind.*) 1591, 1357\*; sicut 1583, 1600\*, 1624\*, 1707*a*, *e*; sicuti 1810\*, 2212\*.  
Siccata manu capillos 1126 (*s*).  
Sicut, sicuti, *see* Sic.  
Signo esse *Pref. p.* liii; signo funebri (*abl.?*) 'by way of notifying a death' 1231\*; signum receptui 1156, *Pref. p.* xxxiii.  
Silentio 1236 (*p.* 100), 1371*d*; magno silentio 1241; cum silentio 1241, 1883.  
Sileo rem 1123.  
Similis with *dat.* 1142, 1052\*, 1314, 1464, 1568\*, &c.; with *gen.* 1314, 1039\*, 1101\*, 1532*c*\*, 2257\*, &c.; *summary of usage* 1317; similis ac 1581.  
Simitu 2118, 2119.  
Simul as *adv.* 2118, 2119; with *cum* 2120; with *abl.* 2121; simul ac (*primum*) with *ind.* 1719, *cf.* 1717; ubi...simul 1717; simul *primum* (*subj.*) 1720; simul...simul 2205.  
Simulare se esse uxorem 1580\*.  
Sin with *subj.* 1562; with *ind.* 1533*a*, 1563, 1575\*.  
Sine with *abl.* 2122; never with *gerund* 1392; non sine aliquo 2279.  
Singuli 2283, 2287, 1690\*.  
Singultim 'with gasps' 1901\*.  
Sinister with *dat.* 2201\*.  
Sinistrorsus 2175.  
Sino 'leave alone' aliquem 1120*a*; 'allow' aliquem ire 1139, 1348, 1355\*; aliquid fieri 1351; sine faciam 1462\*, 1906; ne dem 1336\*.  
Siquidem 'if indeed' (*of things not assumed to be true*) 1533*a*, 1080\*, 1603 fin.\*, 1684\*, 2252\*; 'since' 1747, 1988*b*\*.  
Siremps 'in the same way' 1325\* (*cf.* 542).  
Sis (*i.e.* si vis § 725, 2073) 1606\*, 1629\*; vide sis 1656\*; sis vide 1655\*.  
Sisti non potest 'a stand cannot be made', 'all is over' 1422, 1704\*, 2290\*.  
Sistis=sivistis 1722\*.  
Sitire sanguinem 1123.  
Sive with *verb* 1563, 1567; with *noun* 2216, 2219, 1222\*, 2303\*.  
'So-called' qui dicitur &c. *Pref. p.* lxxxiv.  
Socius regni 1300; in decumis 1752\*.

- Sodes 2073\*.  
 Solacio esse *Pref. p. liii*; solacium esse *Pref. p. xxviii*.  
 Soleo *with infin.* 1344; solent *without expressed subject* 1428; solitus *with dat.* 1382a; solito magis 1270.  
 Solidum, in 'for the whole value' 2164\*.  
 Sollicitudini esse *Pref. p. liii*.  
 Solvere aliquem 'to set free' 1607\*; solvendo esse 1156, 1382b; solutus opere 1262; legibus 1750.  
 Solum: non solum...sed 2240—2242; etiam, non solum 1750\*.  
 Sonare atavos 1123; hominem 1097; contrarium, raucum &c. 1096, 1097; sincerum 1546\*.  
 Sonarius (Σώνη) 'of purses' 1757\*.  
 Sorsum 2173.  
 Sortiri judices 1741; sortito 1254.  
 Spatium consilii habendi 1280; *with dat. and gen.* 1281; spatii sex dies 1304; spatio XV milium abesse 1248; spatium habere ut (*subj.*) 1907\*.  
 Spectaculo esse *Pref. p. liii*; spectaculis 'at the shows' 1180.  
 Spectare ad 'tend to' seditionem 1818.  
 Spernendus morum 1320.  
 Spero campum itineris finem 1144\*; aliquid esse 1436\*; aliquid futurum 1599\*; aliquid fuisse 1569 fin.\*; spero *parenthetical* 1607.  
 Spes hoc futurum 1029a\*, 1352; ea spes bellatum iri et finem adesse 1422\*; ad aliquam spem reservare 1610\*; spe *qualifying comparatives* 1266, 1270a.  
 Spirare flammam 1123.  
 Splendori esse *Pref. p. liii*.  
 Spoliatus *with abl.* 1335.  
 Spondeo *with inf.* 1753.  
 Sponsione lacessere 1752; sponsionem facere 1752; sponsionis condemnari 1324; examples of wagers 1753.  
 Sponte 1239; sua sponte 1749 fin.\*, 2036\*; sponte sua 1758\*.  
 Stare *with abl.* 'stand by means of' 1384\* (*p.* 159); 'stand to' 1172, 1279\*, 1959\*; in eo 1175; pluris stare, 'of cost' 1188; magno 1198; per aliquem stare quominus 1644, 2035.  
 Statim 1779\*.  
 Stativa (*i.e.* castra) 1063, 1721\*; castra 1717\*.  
 Statu liber 1239.  
 Statuere contra aliquem 'decide against one' 1899.  
 Sterilus *with abl.* 1335.  
 Stillare rorem 1123.  
 Stomacho esse *Pref. p. liii*.  
 Stratui esse *Pref. pp. xxxiii, liii*.  
 Strepitu 1739.  
 Studere alicui rei 1382a; alicui 1329; alicujus 1328; id studere 1725\*; eadem 1094; *with infin.* 1350, 1939\*, 2164\*.  
 Studio esse *Pref. p. liii*.  
 Studiosus *with gen.* 1318.  
 Stupere *with accus.* 1123; *with abl.* 2277\*.  
 Suadeo alicui agere 1345; *with infin.* sentence 1360.  
 Suapte natura 1759\*.  
 Sub, *general use of* 2123—2133; in composition 2134—2141; sub conditione 2133; sub manus succedere 2131; sub manu esse 2132.  
 Subinde 1719\*.  
 Subire, 'pass under' 1696\*; tectum 1992; 'undergo' *with accus.* 1192, cf. 1717\*; alicui in custodiam 'succeed a person on guard' 2032\*; pone subire, 'follow behind' 2041(1).  
 Subita belli 1280 fin. (*p.* 118).  
 Subject defined 1008; contained in finite verb 1425; not separately expressed, e.g. 'persons in general' 1428; (quod aiunt) 1539\*; inferred from a preceding clause 1430; from a subsequent clause 1432, 6; of impersonal verbs 1431; composed of several persons or things 1436, 1437; expressed by infinitive mood 1355; quod *with indic.* 1701.  
 Subjunctive, *general use* 1496—1505; use of tenses 1507—1517; see also 1530, 1596, 1630; typical examples 1518—1527;  
 in the following sentences: Concessive 1620—1626; with ut 1706;



*Conditional* 1548 sqq.; *reported condition* 1750; *Consecutive* 1678 sqq.; *Dependent on subjunctive* 1778; *on infinitive* 1766; *dependent question of fact* 1758—1766; *of command* 1612; *with quin* 1766; *Final* 1628 sqq.; *Hypothetical* 1528 sqq.; *Interrogative of command* 1610; *of supposition with ut* 1708; *repeated in surprise* 1770, cf. 1618; *Jussive* 1596—1626; *Optative* 1588—1594; *in orat. obl.* 1780—1791; *Restrictive with qui quidem, &c.* 1692; *with ut* 1650, 1704:

*with or after the following words:* absque te 1556; antequam 1672; cave 1608; censeo 1606; ceu 1580; cum, 'whenever' 1716, 'when' 1720—1724, 'since' 1726, 1728, 'although' 1730, 1732, 'such that then' 1684, *in contrasts* 1734; dico 1606; dignus qui 1634; donec 1664, 1670; dum, 'until' 1664, 'while' 1666, cf. 1756, 'provided that' 1668; dummodo 1668; est cum 1684; est quod 1686, 1533a\*; etiamsi 1561; etsi 1560; fac 1606; faxo 2063\* (but cf. *Pref. p. ciii, note*); forsitan 1766; hortor 1606; ita (in wishes) 1588; licet, licebit, &c. 1606; modo (in wishes) 1592; (in concessions) 1626; (with qui) 1692; ne, 'not' 1596, 1600—1602, 'lest' 1636—1650; necesse est 1606; nedum 1658; negotium do 1616; nihil est quod 1535a\*; nolo 1608; non quia, non quo, &c. 1744; nuntia 1606; O si 1582; oportet 1606; optumumst 1616\*; postulo 1606; potin' ut 1643; potiusquam 1676, 1603\*; potiusquam ut 1678; præcipio 1205\*; priusquam 1672; quamquam 1697; quam quia 1288; quam si 1580; quamvis 1624; quasi 1580; qui (adj.) causal 1714, 1716; conditional 1558; consecutive 1680—1686; final 1632, 1634; restrictive 1692, 1694; qui (adv.) in execration 1594; quicunque, 1716; quidni 1614; quid si 1578; quin p. 274 note; quippe qui 1714; quis est qui, &c. 1686;

quo 1644; quoad, 'until' 1664; quod 1744, 1748; quom, see Cum; quominus 1644; si, see s.v.; sicuti 1580; si maxime 1560; sine 1606; sive 1562; sunt qui 1686, 1432; tametsi 1560; tamquam, tamquam si 1580; timeo ut 1652; ubi, 'whenever' 1716; velut, velut si 1580; vide quam 1762; vide ut 1640, 1656; volo, vis, &c. 1606 (p. 262); ut, see s.v.; uti (in reported statement) 1752; utinam 1592; ut qui, ut pote qui 1714; ut qui (adv.) 1696:

*in such expressions as:* censuerim, non facile dixerim 1540; crederes 1544; dicat aliquis 1542, *Pref. p. ci*; ne dicam 1660; pace tua dixerim 1590; putares 1544, 1546; quod dicas 1748; quod diceret 1746; quod sciam 1694; velim, vellem 1536.

Subsidio missus 1115 (5), 1568 fin.; proficisci 1162, see *Pref. p. liii*; subsidium mihi diligentiam comparavi 1643\*.

*Substantive defined* 1003; *as subject* 1008, 1009; *as attribute* (i.e. in apposition) 1012, 1015, 1058; *as predicate* 1012, 1016, 1017, 1059; *often omitted* 1063—1066; *qualified by genitive* 1020, 1276, *by dative of 'work contemplated'* 1156, *by infinitive* 1346, 1360; *oblique cases how used* 1018—1020:

*verbal substantives (with verbal qualifications): viz. gerund* 1373 sqq.; *infinitive* 1342 sq.; *stems in -iōn* 1400; *supine in -um* 1114, 1379. Compare also: concursatio 1110; discessus Arpinum 1168\*; exequias 1114 (2); fides pelago? 1402\*; hospes Zacyntho 1264; infitias 1114; interitus 1228; introitus Zmyrnam 1110; mansio Formiis 1168; opus 1226, 1255; reditus Narbone 1258; suppetias 1114 (2), 1117; usus 1226, 1255.

Subter, general use 2124—2127; *in composition* 2142.

Subtrahere aliquem aspectu 2233\*.  
Subvenire mihi 1599\*, 2267\*.

- Succedere tecto 1144; sub manus 2131.  
 Succensere 2135; alicui 1745\*.  
 Succlamare alicui 1649\*.  
 Sudare mella 1123.  
 Sufficere, *see under Dative*.  
 Sui *as partitive gen.* 1290; *as objective gen.* 1312; sui colligendi facultas (*where sui is for plural*) 1395, 2242\*.  
 Sum, *see Esse*.  
 Summovere urbe aliquem 2133\*; sum-moto, 'when the lictors had cleared a way' 1254; *comp.* summoventes 1073\*.  
 Summus mons, 'the top of the mountain,' &c. 1295; summum, 'at most' 1095, 1196\*.  
 Sumptui esse *Pref. p. liv.* ferre expensum, 'to pass to expenditure account' 1697 fin.  
 Sunt qui *with subj.* 1686; *with ind.* 1687.  
 Super, *general use of* 2143—2154; *with gerundive* 1386; *in composition* 2155; super quam 2150; satis superque 2150, 1539 fin.\*; super omnia esse, 'to beat everything' 2153.  
 Supera=supra 2157.  
 Superare aliquem 1384\*; veriverbio 1686\*; proelio 1744\*.  
 Superbire *with abl.* 2286\*.  
 Superimposita monumento 1473\*.  
 Superlatives *with partitive gen.* 1290; *with abl. of measure of difference* 1204; *with longe* 1203; *in expressions like* extremus annus, 'end of year' 1295; *with quisque, e.g.* optimus, primus quisque 2284, 2286; *with tam...quam* 1637; *cum maxime* 1641; *quam maximus* 1637; *quam qui maxime* 1639.  
 Supersedere *with abl.* 1212.  
 Superstes suorum 2263\*, sibi 2267\*.  
 Supine (1) *in -um* 1114, 1379; *with iri forms fut. pass. inf.* 1380; *not used after prepos.* 1381; *used after following verbs:* abire 1283\*; advenire 1619\*; agere 1663\*; cieri 1114; conducere 1114; dari 1114, 1379; dilabi 1379; dimittere 1538\*; ire 1114, 1371c\*, 1379; migrare 1618\*; mittere 1114, 1379; proficisci 1379; recipere 1114; venire 1114, 1379; vocare 1114, 1379.  
 (2) *in -u* 1210, 1387, 1388 and *note: cf. also* 1383, 1393; *with dignus* 1387; *opus* 1255, 1389\*; *surgere cubitu* 1262; *arcere transitu* 2071\*.  
 Suppetias alicui venire 1114(2), 1117; ferre 1117, 2258\*.  
 Supplemento, *cf. Pref. p. liv.*  
 Supplicare alicui 1142, 2236\*.  
 Supra, *general use* 2156—2160; *qualifying numerals* 2159; *supra adicere, 'bid higher'* 1633 fin.\*; *supra quam* 1645, 2159; *with indic.* 1569\*.  
 Surgere solio 1808\*; cubitu 1262.  
 Surrepsit (surrîpere) se mihi 1642.  
 Sursum 2173, 2175.  
 Suscipere juvenem regendum 1401; maculam sibi 1648 fin.\*, *cf.* 1696\*.  
 Suspensus lacerto oculos 1126 (2).  
 Suspectus *with gen.* 1326.  
 Suspicio cælum, 'look up to' 1120b.  
 Suspicio: *in suspicionem venire alicui* 1566\*; *in susp. ven. expilasse* 1347.  
 Suspitor te commoveri 1351; id fore. 1561\*.  
 Suspirare Chloen 1123.  
 Susque deque 1904.  
 Susum 2175.  
 Suus *for possessive gen.* 1278—1282; *for objective gen.* 1315; *distinguished from ejus* 2262; *refers to subject of sentence* 2263; *to word other than subject* 2265; *to subject of principal sentence* 2267; *to subject of general infinitive* 2270:  
 suus heres 2303; suum ipse, &c. 1070, 2264; suum quisque 1070, 1440, 2150\*, 2285; suus sibi 1142; 'favourable' 2302, 1848\*, 2263\*.  
 Tacere clades 1123; etiam taces? non taces? 1613, 1618\*; tacedum 1765\*? tacitus *as sec. pred.* 1069; tacitost. opus 2290\*; usus 1255.  
 Tædet me alicuius 1328.  
 Tædio esse *Pref. p. liv.*  
 Tam...quam 1635—1641; tam diu...

- quamdiu 1667; non tam propter id ...quam propter, &c. 1227; tam multa quam paucis diebus 1659\*; numquam tam facilis...quin 1698; tam sceleratus....ut 1572\*; tam, *without any correlative expressed* 1441\*, 1539\*, 1572\*, 1729\*, 1730 fin.\*; tam mane, 'so early' 1441\*.
- Tamen 2115; *after* dum 1668\*; et 1562; nec 2206; nisi 1569; sed 1621\*, 2234\*; verum 1571a\*, 1638; *in same clause as cum* 1722, 1359\*; *as* quamquam 2215; *in apodosis to concessive subjunctive* 1624; *to cum* 1730, 1734; *to etiamsi* 1560; *to etsi* 1457\*, 1561; *to quamquam* 1697; *to quamvis* 1533b\*, 1624, 1627; *to si* 1533b, 1545\*, 1560, 1566, 1568, 1574 (4); *to sive* 1567; *to tametsi* 1561; *to relative clause* 1266.
- Tametsi *with subj.* 1560; *with indic.* 1561.
- Tanquam (tanquam) *with indic.* 1581; *with subj.* 1580, 1622 fin.\*, 2237\*; *with fut. part.* 1250\*; *with noun* 1583, 1399\*, 1533c\*, 1546\*, 1726\*, 1962\*; *tanquam si* 1580.
- Tandem, 'almost' = 'pray' 1610\*, 1622 fin.\*, 1726 fin.\*.
- Tantillum 1605\*.
- Tantisper 1485d\*, 1663\*.
- Tantummodo 1546\*, 1476\*.
- Tantundem 2252\*.
- Tantus...ut, *with subj.* 1682\*, 1696; alterum tantum 2294; tanti est 1192, 1193; tanti refert, interest 1189; tanto opere 1237; tanto *with comparative* 1204; *Tacitean use* 1205; tanto vincere 1204; tantum præstare 1203, crescere 1516; tantum refert, interest 1189; tantum abest ut (*subj.*) 1699; tantum abest ut...ut (*subj.*) 1702; tantum quod 1705; tantum, 'only' 1180\*; ideo tantum 1642\*; non tantum...sed 2241; nec tantummodo...sed 1476\*; tantum vide ne 1640.
- Tegimento esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Temere non dico 1467\*; non temerest quod 1619\*.
- Temperi 1178, 1114b\*.
- Tempero animis (*dat.*) 1646\*, 1658\*; ab aliqua re 1475\*.
- Tempore brevi 1182; in tempore, in ipso tempore 1179 (*p. 77*); in tempore hoc 1608\*; quibusdam temporibus, 'under certain circumstances' 1533c\*; temporibus errare 1210.
- Tempus esse colloqui 1360; colloquendi 1157, 1313; colloquio 1156; ad colloquendum 1313, *cf.* 1828; ad tempus redire 1179 (*p. 77*), 1822; id temporis, *see* Id.
- Tendere, 'make for,' limina 1110; 'encamp' 1413.
- Tenere memoria 1174; se oppido 1667 fin.\*; teneri cædis 1324; ad exhibendum 1323; dolum malum 1776; ex empto 1941; hereditatibus, 'by rights of inheritance' 1228.
- Tenses of indicative 1447—1493; of imperative 1495; of infinitive 1364—1372; of subjunctive 1506—1527; *in hypothetical and conditional sentences* 1530; *in jussive* 1596; *in final* 1630; *in reported speech (or. obl.)* 1785, 1787.
- Tenus, *meaning of* 2161; *general use of* 2161—2164; hactenus, &c. 2163, 1588\*; protenus 2166.
- Terræ, 'on the ground' 1168 fin. (*p. 70*), 1169; terra marique 1170, 1177 (*p. 75*); in terra 'on land' 1178.
- Terrori esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Testimonio esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Time 'when' (*loc.*) 1178; (*abl.*) 1180, 1181; (*acc.*) 1092; 'in the course of which' (*abl.*) 1182; *with in* 1183, 1967; *with per* 2034; *with de* 1089, 1911; *with inter* 1089, 1992; 'throughout which' (*acc.*) 1090; (*abl.*) 1089, 1184, 1185; (*acc.*) *with per* 1089; 'by' or 'up to which' (*acc.*) *with ad* 1183, 1822; 'from which' (*abl.*) *with ab* 1808; 'after which' (*abl.*) *with ex* 1946; *with de* 1910; (*acc.*) *with post* 2045.
- Timeo iram 1750; ab aliquo 1810; alicui 1758; ne, ut, ne non (*subj.*)

- 1523, 1652; *verb omitted* 1654; *used with dependent question* 1758.
- Timori esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Tis (cf. 386) 1334\*.
- Tonat 1431; *with accus.* 1123.
- Tormento esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Tota Italia, 'all over Italy' 1170, 1083; tota in Italia 1173; aetate tota 1990\*; toto opere 1086\*; totum diem, 'all through the day' 1090; per noctem totam 1089; nocte tota 2090\*.
- Tradere aliquem alicui 1606 fin.\*; 1675\*.
- Traducere aliquos Rhenum, 'lead some across the Rhine' 1105; trans Rhenum 1105; Romam 'to Rome' 1108.
- Traicere aliquos Rhenum 1106 b; trajectus lora 1127 (2).
- Tramittere maria 'cross the seas' 1115 (2)\*.
- Trans *with accus.* 2167, 2168; *in composition* 2169—2171; *verbs compounded with, have double accus.* 1106 b.
- Transferre, 'translate' (of language) 1534\*.
- Transfundere aliquid ad aliquid 1676 fin.\*
- Transitive verbs defined 1413; *verbs become transitive by composition* 1120 b, 1121; *or by metaphor* 1120 c, 1123; *often have abl. of means* 1214.
- Transportare milites flumen 1106.
- Transvorsus 2173; transversum unguem 'a nail's breadth' 1086; transversa tuens 'squinting' 1097.
- Tremo artus 1102; artubus cf. 1101.
- Tribuere aliquid alicui ignaviae 1163; ultro tributa 2184.
- Triumphare gaudium 1535 a\*.
- Tu, *emphatic* 1426; *in addresses* 1082, 1441; *rarely of hypothetical subject* 1544.
- Tum, *in a series* 2207, 1640\*; tum... tum, *as coordinate particles* 2205; cum...tum vero, 'as well...as' 1473\*; tum...cum, 'at the time when' 1721, 1358\*; cum...tum (*in contrasts*) 1734, 1735; si...tum 1751\*; tum ipsum 1095.
- Turpitudini esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Tutelae esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Tutus frontem 1127 (1).
- Tuus, *for possessive gen.* 1278; *with gen. in appos.* 1059; *for objective gen.* 1313: tui, *as partitive gen.* 1290; *as objective gen.* 1312; tempore tuo 2301.
- Vacare pecunia 1262, 1135\*, 2290\*; a scribendo &c. 1392; philosophiae 1135; vacat mihi praebere 1134.
- Vacatio muneris 1318; a munere 1319.
- Vacui (vocivus) labore 1262; laboris 1336, 1533 c\*.
- Vae victis 1152; misero mihi 1771\*.
- Valde quam pauci 1649.
- Vale, 'farewell' 1601, 1660\*; valebis 1589; valeant 1588; valens 'in health' 1074, 1589\*; idem valere, 'to have the same force' 1690\*; plus valere 1378\*; quantum 1434\*; valeo commutare 1931\*.
- Ubi, 'when' *with ind.* 1719, 1471\*; ubi primum 1073; 'whenever' (ind.) 1717, 1493: (subj.) 1716: 'where?' 1633; 'where' 1494\*; ut ubi *with subj.* 1714; ubi, *relating to persons or things* 1171: ubiubi 'wheresoever' 1402\*.
- Ubiicumque, 'anywhere' 2290.
- Ubique 2284, 2287.
- Ubivis 2281.
- ve, *general use of* 2216, 2218; *see also Neve, Sive*; ve...ve 2220 b.
- Vel, *general use of* 2216, 2218; vel potius 1722\*, 2218; vel dicam 2218; vel...vel 2220; vel...vel...vel etiam 1741\*; vel, *with superlative &c.* 2221; vel tres 1540\*; *introducing a special instance* 2222; scio vel exsignavero, 'why I'll even write them out' 1541.
- Velle, velim, vellem, *see Volo.*
- Velor, 'cover myself' 1102 fin.\*
- Velut, *with indic.* 1581; *with subj.*

- 1580; *with noun* &c. 1232\*, 1845\*; *velut si, with subj.* 1580, 1901\*.
- Vendere auro 1196; auro contra 1893; plure 1187, *Pref. p.* lviii; magno 1039\*.
- Veneno esse *Pref. p.* liv.
- Venerationi esse *Pref. p.* liv.
- Venia sit dicto, bonā veniā vestrā &c. 1590; *with future indic.* 1589 fin.
- Venire *with infin.* 1362; *supine* 1114; subsidio *cf.* 1162, *Pref. p.* xxix; adversum mihi 1838; usu venire 1238, 1389; venit mihi in mentem, *with gen.* 1332; *with nom.* 1333; *with infin.* 1355; ventum est eo ut (*subj.*) 1568 (2).
- Venum dare 1112; ire 1112, 1356\*; asportare 2167\*.
- Verb finite, definition of 1002; use of 1009; transitive and intransitive 1412—1414; deponent 1418, 1419; use of verb-inflexions 1425 foll.; qualifications of verb, 1018; verb omitted 1439—1444.
- Verba dare, 'give words' (and nothing more) i.e. 'cheat' 1120, 1461\*; uno verbo dicere 1617\*; verbis confiteri 1439\*; discrepare 1137\*; efferre 1476\*; prosequi 1476\*; alternis verbis laudare, 'every other word' 2287; eisdem verbis reddere 1778\*; verbis omitted in paucis te volo; nolo pluribus 1237; ausculata paucis 1763\*.
- Verbal nouns, see Chapp. XII—XIV; and under Substantives.
- Verbero (*subst.*) 1698.
- Verecundiae esse *Pref. p.* liv; quae verecundia est *Pref. p.* xxviii.
- Vereor facere 1344; ne faciam 1652; vereor te 1329; tui 1328.
- Veriverbio 'in truth telling' 1686\*.
- Vero 'indeed,' 'but' 2209 b, 2210 b, 1282\*; enimvero 2210 a, 1881\*, 1331, 2252; at vero 1623; immo vero 2251, 2252, 1652\*; nunc vero 2065\*; neque vero 1745\*; tum vero 1070\*, 1473\*.
- Versibus scribere 1238.
- Versum, versus (vorsum, vorsus), 2172—2177; pone versus 'hindwards' 2041.
- Vertere vitio, see Vitio; quod bene vertat (verteret) 1588; di bene vortant, *parenthetical* 1611\*; anno vertente, 'in the course of a year' 1182.
- Verum 'but' 2209, 2210 a, 1473\*, 2173\*; verum enimvero 2210 a; verum etiam 1614\*, 1622\*; verum tamen 1571\*, 1638\*; 'true' in answers 2251.
- Vescor *with abl.* 1226; *with accus.* 1223; 'take food' absolutely 1716\*.
- Vesperī 1178.
- Vester, for possessive genitive 1278; followed by qui *with verb* 1066; vestrum as partitive genitive 1290, 1545\* (*p.* 233); *with omnium as possessive genitive* 1278; vestri, as objective gen. 1312.
- Vestigium 'a foot's breadth' 1086; vestigiis sequi 'follow in the track' 1177 (*p.* 75), 1344\*.
- Vestitui (*predicative*) 1160, *Pref. p.* liv.
- Veto facere 1345; te facere 1348; vetor facere 1349, 1728\*.
- Vi 'by force' 1238; per vim 1239.
- Via 'methodically' 1236, 'by the road' 1176; sua via 1177 fin.; in via 'on the road' 1177 (*p.* 75); ire viam 1100; aliquot dierum viam abesse 1672\*.
- Vicem alicujus 1102, *cf.* 1101; invicem 1973; vice 'like' *with gen.* 1101.
- Vicinus amborum 2285 fin.\*; vicino (sita) 'in the neighbourhood' 1173 (*p.* 73).
- Vicissim in quasi-correspondence to partim 1211\*.
- Victui (*predicative*) 1160; *Pref. p.* liv.
- Vide ut...detur 'see that it be given,' vide ne 1640; vide ut sit, 'perhaps it is not,' ne sit 1656; vide ut 'see how,' vide quam (*subj.*) 1762 (*cf.* 1392\* videmus ut); vide quid (*subj.*) 1706\*; vide si (*with indic.*) 1755; vide, viden *parenthetical with ut* 1655, 1761; *with noun* 1761; vide sis 1656, sis vide 1655 fin.; me vide

- '*trust to me*' 1594\*, 1601; viderent ne quid detrimenti resp. caperet 1648.
- Videlicet '*it is plain*' 1604\*, 1672\*.
- Video me esse 1352; civem duci '*see a citizen led*' 1532 b\*, 1676\*; hæc picta 1560\*; hos petentes 1583\*; hoc consecuturum 1561\*; vidimus cum facerent 1724; quid facias 1526; videres '*one might have seen*' 1544; videro, videris, &c. 1593, *Pref. p. cvi*; videbis 1595, *Pref. p. cvii*.
- Videor facere 1353; videtur eum facere 1356; mihi 1148; futurus 1570\*.
- Vigilata nox '*night spent in watching*' 1123.
- Vin faciam? 1606.
- Vincere sponsionem '*win a wager*' 1100; sponsione 1009; praelio 1532 b\*; cantando 1610 fin.\*; ut crearent 1648; vicisse debeat '*ought to be declared winner*' 1561\*.
- Viso si, with ind. 1755.
- Vitabundus castra 1405, cf. *Pref. p. lxxviii*.
- Vitio aliquid vertere 1162, 2113\*, *Pref. p. lv*; vitio creari 1238; dare 1743\*; meum vitium esse 1161.
- Vituperationi esse *Pref. p. liv*.
- Vivere vitam 1100; Bacchanalia 1123; carne 1214.
- Vix 2230 c, 2234; vix temperavere quin (*subj.*) 1646; non modo non ...sed vix 2240 c; vix homines 2001\*.
- Ullus 2278—2280; ullius (*subst.*) '*of any thing*' 2280.
- Uls, ultra general use of 2178—2183; ultra fidem 1627\*; ultra quam 1645, 2182.
- Ultrō '*to that side*' 2178; opposed to citro 2178, 1870, 2173\*, 2185; metaphorically 2184, 1731\*, 2071\*; ultrō tributa 2184.
- Unā '*together*' 1176; una opera '*just as well*' 1237, 1540 fin.\*, 1558\*.
- Unde of persons, unde petitur '*the defendant*' 1263, 1779; unde attributa erat pecunia '*on whom he had received an order for the money*' 1198; unde=qua de re 1263 fin.;
- unde unde '*from somewhere or other*' 2290.
- Universus 2283, 2287, 2290\*.
- Unus with quisque 2283, 2287, 1760\*; with quicquid 2287; with superlatives '*above all*', '*singularly*' 1232 fin.\*, 1233 fin.\*; una altissimis defixa radicibus 1683\*; unus et idem 2294; unus et alter '*one or two*' 2294; unus qui (*subj.*) 1692; omnes ad unum 1822, 1719\*; uno minus '*one less*' ('*less by one*') 1204.
- Vobis as dativus ethicus 1150.
- Vocative, use of 1022, 1082.
- Vocivus, see Vacuus.
- Volo id 1289; facere 1344, 1588\*; me facere 1351, 1588\*; numquid me vis 1094; rempublicam salvam velle 1606; plebem fuisse, '*will have it, that the people was, &c.*' 1533 d\*; nequis velit emisse 1371 a; hoc emptum esse 1371 d; volo te levatum 1402; volo, velim sis, vellem esses 1606; volo ut sit 1648; volo scire parenthetical 1761; quam vis, quam volent, &c. 1624; velim, vellem 1536; velitis, jubeatis 1536, 2204 c; voluero 1454 (2), 1483; volenti mihi est 1152, 1153; volvendis mensibus, volventibus annis *Pref. p. lxxix*.
- Voluntate 1239, 1535 c\*; alicujus 1246; sua 1706 fin.\*.
- Voluptas factæ contumeliæ 1428\*; voluptati esse 1725\*, *Pref. p. lv*.
- Vorsum, vorsus, see Versum.
- Voveo templum Divo 1750; tibi Jovi Statori 1751\*, *Pref. p. xxii*.
- Urgeo illud '*press that point*' 1552\*.
- Uspiam 1565\*.
- Usquam 1973\*.
- Usque, general use of 2186—2192, 2284; usque adhuc 1590\*; adusque 1819, 2190; usque eo (adeo) dum, donec, quoad 2189, 2192, 1664, 1669; usque eo ut 2192; usque dare '*continue to give*' 1642\*.
- usque quaque 1741\*, 2066\*, 2187.
- Usus aliqua re 1226; aliqua re facta

1250; quod factu usust 1256, 1255 fin.; alicujus rei 1225; in usum satis 2295\*:

usui esse, &c. 1160, *Pref. p. lv*; usu capere 1243; venire 1238; usu dare 1238; in usu esse 1390.

Ut (uti) 1499; (1) 'how?' (ind.) 1759, 1940\*; *in depend. question (subj.)* 1758 fin., 1762, 1221\*, 1695\*: *so probably* timeo ut 1652; vide ut 1656 (*comp. videmus ut 1392\**):

'how!' (ind.) 1759, 2247\*; *with parenthetical viden, scio* 1761; *in wishes* 2592, 1594:

(2) 'how' relative: *so perhaps* satin ut (ind.) 1653; vide ut (ind.) 1655:

'as' (ind.) 1707, 1532 c\*, 1686\*; ut fit 2214\*; *with infin.* 1784, 1351; *with noun* 1377 fin.\*; *with noun as sec. pred.* 1050\*, 1059 (*p. 24*), 1073 fin., 1075, 1547\*; ut in re trepida 1470\*; ut adversus magistrum 1840; ut tam multa 'considering the number' 1707 b:

(3) 'although' (ind.) 1707 c:

(4) 'when' (ind.) 1719, 1080\*, 1222\*, 1461 fin.\*:

'since' (ind.) 1719 fin.; *in clause depend. on infin. (subj.)* 2122\*:

(5) 'in order that' (subj.) 1638—1642, 1648, 1650, 1660; *with perf. and pluperf.* 1642; *with interrogative quo* 1638:

(6) 'so that' (subj.) 1696, 1700, 1714; = 'if only' (ut liceat) 1540\*; (ut effugiat) 1539\*:

(7) 'supposing that' in concessions (subj.) 1706, 1883\*; (with si in same sentence) 1328\*:

*in questions to express surprise* 1708, 1839\*:

utcumque (ind.) 1697; ut cum maxime 1641; ut modo (subj.) 1594; ut ne 1636; ut non 1696; ut neque...neque 2016\*; ut qui maxime 1641; ut qui (adv.) 1698, 1700 fin.; (adj.) 1714; ut quisque 1707, 1716, 1717, 1778\*, 2264\*; ut quicquid 1533 c; ut ubi (subj.) 1714; utut 1697;

ut revertar 'to return,' ut sic dixerim, &c. 1660:

ut (*in various senses*) after the following words or expressions: abest, *see tantum below*; accedit 1700; accidit 1700; additum 2162\*; adeo 1696, 1358\*; id ago 2071\*; ad id venit 1568 (2); altera est res 1648; caveo 1777; causa 1696; censeo 1457\*; cogo id 1094; committo 1778\*; concedo 1541\*, 1672\*; consequor 1899\*; constituo 1560\*; contigit 1029 d; cum eo 1656, 1884; curo 1648, 1495\*, 1779\*; decerno 2037\*; edico 1848\*; efficio 1700; eo 1642; eo ventum est 1568 (2); evenit 2248\*; facio 1700; fieri potest 1700, (ut ne) 2035\*; fit 1700, 1745\*; flagito 1731\*; fore 1369, 1771\*; hoc copiae 1086\*; hortor 1371 c; huc tendere 1642; idcirco 1638, 1868\*; ideo 1465\*, 1642; impero 1648; impetro 1607\*; indico 1513; insto 1359; integrum est 1382; is 1696; ita *see s. v.*; longius quam 1678; magis est 1700; mando 1094; metuo 1652; modo 1706; mos est 1700; munus est 1648; negotium do 1457\*; operam do 1638; oro 1648, 1469\*; perinde 1547\*, 1707; persuadeo 1671 fin.\*; peto 1029 d, 1977\*; postulo 1648, 2063\*; potin' 1642, 1842\*; potius quam 1678, 1842\*; prae 1707 b; praecipio 1545\*; precor quaeoque 1099\*; pro, pro eo 1707 a, b; pronuntio 2080\*; prope est 2091, 2295\*; propterea 1603\*; proximum est 1648; quam, *see potius, &c.*; quando fuit 1029 d; relinquitur 1895; reliquum est 1721\*; restat 1441\*; rogo 1511, 1641\*; satin 1653; scio 1761; scribo 1818\*; sic, *see s. v.*; spatium habeo 1907\*; tam excoors 1885\*; tantus 1696; tanti est 1192; tantum abest 1699, 1702, 1894\*; timeo 1652; valeo 2220 fin.\*; vide, *see s. v.*; viden 1761; vinco 1648; ultra quam 2182\*; volo 1648.

Utcumque 'in whatever manner' 1697, 2290.

- Uter, *interrog.* 1431 *c*; *uter eratis?* 1434; *ex duobus* 1291; *dependent* 1560\*, 2285:  
*relative* 1486\*; *utrum est 'which-ever it is'* 1697;  
*indefinite* 2278 (*p.* 484), 2282, 2284.  
 Uterlibet 2282.  
 Uterque, *with plural verb* 1434 (*but usually singular*); *uterque nostrum* 1292 (*p.* 122); *uterque frater (not fratrum)* 1293; *distinguished from quisque* 2283; *utræque for utraque* 1065\*.  
 Utervis 2278 (*p.* 484), 2282, 1579\*.  
 Uti, *after face* 1616; *fit* 1890\*; *jubeatis* 1978; *postulo* 1648; *rogo* 1120 *fin.*\*; *siremps atque utei* 1325; *'as'* 1480; &c.; *see Ut.*  
 Utilis reipublicæ 1473; *ad nullam rem* 1532 *b*\*.  
 Utinam, *in wishes* 1592, 1708 *fin.*\*  
 Utique 2289 *b*; *non utique* 2299 *b*; *ne utique* 1779\*.  
 Utor, *with abl.* 1226; *with accus.* 1223.  
 Utpote qui, *with subj.* 1714.  
 Utqui (*adv.*) 1696, 1698, 1700 *fin.*  
 Utrique secus 2117.  
 Utrobique 2285.  
 Utrum...an, *in independent question* 2254; *in dependent question* 1210\*, 1396\*; *utrum...necne* 1400\*, 2254.  
 Vulgo 'generally' 2145\*; *as if for 'persons in general'* 1428.  
 'Way' i.e. 'road' (*abl.*) 1176; i.e. 'manner' (*abl.*) 1234.  
 'Without' expressed in Latin by *se (abl.)* 2109; *sine (abl.)* 2122; *citra (acc.)* 1392; *extra (acc.)* 1958; *nulus e.g. nullo equitatu* 1234; *cf.* 1242 (*p.* 102):  
*'without doing' &c., nihil proficiens* 1073; *nondum 'comperto'* 1252; *nullis...tradendis* 1250; *nisi perfectis (after non)* 1250; *quin (subj.)* 1698; *ut non (subj.)* 1704.





# MACMILLAN AND CO.'S

## CLASSICAL PUBLICATIONS.

---

MACMILLAN'S CLASSICAL SERIES, for COLLEGES and SCHOOLS, being select portions of Greek and Latin authors, edited, with Introductions and Notes at the end, by eminent scholars. The series is designed to supply first rate text-books for the higher forms of Schools, having in view also the needs of Candidates for public examinations at the Universities and elsewhere.

The following volumes are ready :—

**Æschylus.**—**PERSAE.** Edited by A. O. PRICKARD, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of New College, Oxford. 3s. 6d.

**Catullus.**—**SELECT POEMS.** Edited by F. P. SIMPSON, B.A., late Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford. 4s. 6d.

**Cicero.**—**THE SECOND PHILIPPIC ORATION.** From the German of KARL HALM. Edited, with Corrections and Additions, by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. New edition, revised. 5s.

**THE CATILINE ORATIONS.** Edited, after KARL HALM, with Additions, by Professor A. S. WILKINS, M.A. 3s. 6d.

**THE ACADEMICA.** Edited by JAMES REID, M.A., Fellow of Caius College, Cambridge. 4s. 6d.

**Demosthenes.**—**THE ORATION ON THE 'CROWN,** to which is prefixed **ÆSCHINES AGAINST CTESIPHON.** Edited by B. DRAKE, M.A. 5s.

**Homer's Odyssey.**—**THE NARRATIVE OF ODYSSEUS,** Books IX.—XII. Edited by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A. Part I. 3s.

**Juvenal.**—**SELECT SATIRES.** Edited by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. Satires X. and XI. 3s. Satires XII.—XVI. 3s. 6d.

**Livy.**—**HANNIBAL'S FIRST CAMPAIGN IN ITALY,** Books XXI. and XXII. Edited by W. W. CAPES, Reader in Ancient History at Oxford. With 3 Maps. 5s.

**Sallust.**—**CATILINE and JUGURTHA.** Edited by C. MERIVALE, B.D. New edition, carefully revised and enlarged. 4s. 6d. Or separately 2s. 6d. each.

**Tacitus.**—**AGRICOLA and GERMANIA.** Edited by A. J. CHURCH, M.A. and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. New edition. 3s. 6d. Or separately 2s. each.

**THE ANNALS, Book VI.** By the same Editors. 2s. 6d.

**Terence.**—HAUTON TIMORUMENOS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton College. 3s. With Translation, 4s. 6d.

**Thucydides.**—THE SICILIAN EXPEDITION, BOOKS VI. and VII. Edited by PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. New edition, revised and enlarged, with Map. 5s.

**Xenophon.**—HELLENICA, BOOKS I. and II. Edited by H. HALLSTONE, B.A. With Map. 4s. 6d.

**Æschylus.**—THE EUMENIDES. The Greek Text, with Introduction, English Notes, and Verse Translation. By BERNARD DRAKE, M.A. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**Aristotle.**—AN INTRODUCTION TO ARISTOTLE'S RHETORIC. With Analysis, Notes and Appendices. By E. M. COPE. 8vo. 14s.

ARISTOTLE ON FALLACIES; OR, THE SOPHISTICAL ELENCHI. With Translation and Notes by E. POSTG, M.A. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

**Aristophanes.**—THE BIRDS. Translated into English Verse, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by Professor B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Crown 8vo. 6s. Help-Notes to the same, for the use of Students. 1s. 6d.

**Blackie.**—GREEK AND ENGLISH DIALOGUES FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By Professor JOHN STUART BLACKIE. New edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

**Geddes.**—THE PROBLEM OF THE HOMERIC POEMS. By W. D. GEDDES, Professor of Greek in the University of Aberdeen. 8vo. 14s.

**Gladstone.**—JUVENTUS MUNDI; or, Gods and Men of the Heroic Age. By the Rt. Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE, M.P. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

THE TIME AND PLACE OF HOMER. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

A PRIMER OF HOMER. By the same Author. 18mo. 1s.

**Goodwin.**—SYNTAX OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF THE GREEK VERB. By Professor W. W. GOODWIN. New edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

**Greenwood.**—THE ELEMENTS OF GREEK GRAMMAR, including Accidence, Irregular Verbs, and Principles of Derivation and Composition; adapted to the System of Crude Forms. By J. G. GREENWOOD, Principal of Owens College, Manchester. New edition. Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d.

**Homer.**—THE ODYSSEY. Done into English by S. H. BUTCHER, M.A., Fellow of University College, Oxford, and ANDREW LANG, M.A., late Fellow of Merton College, Oxford. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**HOMERIC DICTIONARY.** For Use in Schools and Colleges. Translated from the German of Dr G. Autenreith, with Additions and Corrections, by R. P. KEEP, Ph.D. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 6s.

**Horace.**—THE WORKS OF HORACE, rendered into English Prose, with Introductions, Running Analysis and Notes. By J. LONSDALE, M.A., and S. LEE, M.A. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**Jebb.**—THE ATTIC ORATORS FROM ANTIPHON TO ISAEOS. By Professor R. C. JEBB, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo. 25s.

**SELECTIONS FROM THE ATTIC ORATORS BEFORE DEMOSTHENES.** Edited, with English Notes, by the same Author. Being a companion volume to the preceding work. 8vo. *In preparation.*

**THE CHARACTERS OF THEOPHRASTUS.** Translated from a revised Text, with Introduction and Notes. By the same Author. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

**Juvenal.**—THIRTEEN SATIRES OF JUVENAL. With a Commentary. By JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Kennedy Professor of Latin at Cambridge. Vol. I. Second edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d. Vol. II. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**Lloyd.**—THE AGE OF PERICLES. A History of the Politics and Arts of Greece from the Persian to the Peloponnesian War. By WILLIAM WATKISS LLOYD. 2 vols. 8vo. 21s.

**Mahaffy.**—SOCIAL LIFE IN GREECE; from Homer to Menander. By Professor J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A. Third edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 9s.

**RAMBLES AND STUDIES IN GREECE.** With Illustrations. Second edition. By the same Author. With Map. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**Nixon.**—PARALLEL EXTRACTS arranged for translation into English and Latin, with Notes on Idioms. By J. E. NIXON, M.A., Classical Lecturer, King's College, Cambridge. Part I.—Historical and Epistolary. New edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**A FEW NOTES ON LATIN RHETORIC.** With Tables and Illustrations. By J. E. NIXON, M.A. Crown 8vo. 2s.

**Peile (John, M.A.).**—AN INTRODUCTION TO GREEK AND LATIN ETYMOLOGY. By JOHN PEILE, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Christ's College, Cambridge, formerly Teacher of Sanskrit in the University of Cambridge. Third and revised edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**Pindar.**—THE EXTANT ODES OF PINDAR. Translated into English, with an Introduction and short Notes. By ERNEST MYERS, M.A., Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. Crown 8vo. 5s.

**Plato.**—THE REPUBLIC OF PLATO. Translated into English, with an Analysis and Notes. By J. LL. DAVIES, M.A., and D. J. VAUGHAN, M.A. New edition, with Vignette Portraits of Plato and Socrates, engraved by JEENS from an Antique Gem. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

**Plautus.**—THE MOSTELLARIA OF PLAUTUS. With Notes, Prolegomena, and Excursus. By WILLIAM RAMSAY, M.A., formerly Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. Edited by Professor GEORGE G. RAMSAY, M.A., of the University of Glasgow. 8vo. 14s.

**Potts (A. W., M.A.).**—HINTS TOWARDS LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. By ALEXANDER W. POTTS, M.A., LL.D. New edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s.

**Roby.**—A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE, from Plautus to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. In Two Parts. Third edition. Part I. containing :—Book I. Sounds. Book II. Inflexions. Book III. Word-formation. Appendices. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d. Part II.—Syntax, Prepositions, &c. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

"Marked by the clear and practised insight of a master in his art. A book that would do honour to any country."—*Athenæum*.

**SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR.** By the same Author.

*In preparation.*

**Tacitus.**—COMPLETE WORKS TRANSLATED. By A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A.

**THE HISTORY.** With Notes and a Map. New edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

**THE ANNALS.** With Notes and Maps. New edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE AGRICOLA AND GERMANY, WITH THE DIALOGUE ON ORATORY.** With Maps and Notes. New and revised edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**Theophrastus.**—THE CHARACTERS OF THEOPHRASTUS. An English Translation from a Revised Text. With Introduction and Notes. By R. C. JEBB, M.A., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

**Virgil.**—THE WORKS OF VIRGIL RENDERED INTO ENGLISH PROSE, with Notes, Introductions, Running Analysis, and an Index. By JAMES LONSDALE, M.A., and SAMUEL LEE, M.A. New edition. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.; gilt edges, 4s. 6d.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.





NOV 6 '58



3 2044 038 403 432

SEP 14 '56

NOV 2 '62

NOV 30 '62

JAN 4 1971

MAY 2 6 1971

